

FIRST CLASS
CAR-RT SORT

1994 DATA BOOK

INTEGRATED CIRCUITS FOR
COMMUNICATIONS
PRODUCTS

Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



Represented
in Canada by:



HAR-TECH ELECTRONICS LTD.
20 Staffern Dr., Unit 10
Concord, Ontario
L4K 2Z7
Tel: (416) 660-3419
Fax: (416) 660-5102

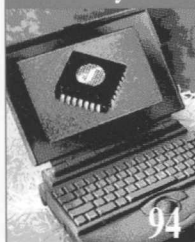
Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



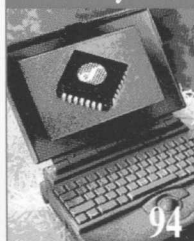
Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



Silicon Systems



silicon systems[®]
A TDK Group Company

The Company



*Silicon Systems' Santa Cruz facility,
site of six-inch wafer fabrication line.*

Silicon Systems specializes in the design and manufacture of application-specific, mixed-signal integrated circuits (MSICs®). It offers a sophisticated line of custom and standard ICs aimed primarily at the storage, communications and automotive products marketplace.

The company, which is headquartered in California, 30 miles south of Los Angeles, was founded in 1972 as a design center. It soon entered into manufacturing and today has two fabrication sites in California and approximately 2,000 employees worldwide. Additional operations include assembly and test facilities in California and Singapore and design engineering centers in California as well as in Tokyo and Singapore.

Reliability and quality are built into Silicon Systems' products through the use of statistical problem solving techniques, analytical controls, and other quantitative methods. The company is committed to the goal of customer satisfaction through the on-time delivery of defect-free products that meet or exceed the customer's expectations and requirements. This statement reflects the corporate quality mission and contains key elements instrumental in attaining true customer satisfaction. Listed in the back of this publication is a worldwide network of sales representatives and distributors ready to serve you.



NOTICE

All products listed herein and subsequently sold by Silicon Systems, Inc. are covered by the warranty, limitation of liability and patent indemnification provisions reflected in the Silicon Systems Order Acknowledgment Form only. Silicon Systems, Inc. makes no warranty, express or implied, statutory or by description regarding the information set forth herein and or freedom from patent infringement. Silicon Systems, Inc. reserves the right to discontinue production, change specifications and prices at any time and without notice.

Applications requiring mechanical and electrical parameters outside of the published specifications are not recommended without additional review and acceptance by Silicon Systems, Inc. Silicon Systems, Inc. further assumes no responsibility for the use of any integrated circuit technology other than integrated circuit technology embodied in a Silicon Systems, Inc. product. These products are not authorized for use as components in life support devices or systems. No patents or licenses regarding the integrated circuit technology herein are implied unless otherwise stated.

© Copyright 1994 Silicon Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. Product and company names listed are trademarks of their

1994 Data Book



NOTICE

All products listed herein and subsequently sold by Silicon Systems, Inc. are covered by the warranty, limitation of liability and patent indemnification provisions reflected in the Silicon Systems Order Acknowledgement Form only. Silicon Systems, Inc. makes no warranty, express or implied, statutory or by description regarding the information set forth herein and/or freedom from patent infringement. Silicon Systems, Inc. reserves the right to discontinue production, change specifications and prices at any time and without notice.

Applications requiring mechanical and electrical parameters outside of the published specifications are not recommended without additional review and acceptance by Silicon Systems, Inc. Silicon Systems, Inc. further assumes no responsibility for the use of any integrated circuit technology other than integrated circuit technology embodied in a Silicon Systems, Inc. product. These products are not authorized for use as components in life support devices or systems. No patents or licenses regarding the integrated circuit technology herein are implied unless otherwise stated.

© Copyright 1994 Silicon Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. Product and company names listed are trademarks of their respective companies.

K-Series integrated circuits are protected by the following patents:

4,691,172 / 4,777,453 / 4,847,868 / 4,866,739 / 4,870,370 / 4,789,995

Contents

| | | |
|-------------------|--|-----------|
| Section 1 | CUSTOM SOLUTIONS | 1 |
| Section 2 | RELIABILITY & QUALITY ASSURANCE | 2 |
| Section 3 | K-SERIES MODEM FAMILY | 3 |
| Section 4 | MODEM PROTOCOL & BUS INTERFACE | 4 |
| Section 5 | SPECIAL MODEM PRODUCTS | 5 |
| Section 6 | ANALOG SIGNALLING & SWITCHING | 6 |
| Section 7 | PCM | 7 |
| Section 8 | LAN | 8 |
| Section 9 | PROGRAMMABLE ELECTRONIC FILTERS | 9 |
| Section 10 | PACKAGING/ORDERING INFORMATION | 10 |
| Section 11 | SALES OFFICES/ DISTRIBUTORS | 11 |
| Section 12 | APPLICATION NOTES AND GLOSSARY | 12 |

Target, Advanced and Preliminary Information

In this data book the following conventions are used in designating a data sheet "Target," "Advanced" or "Preliminary":

Target Specification—

The target specification is intended as an initial disclosure of specification goals for the product. Product is in first stages of design cycle.

Advance Information—

Indicates a product still in the design cycle, undergoing testing processes, and any specifications are based on design goals only. Do not use for final design.

Preliminary Data—

Indicates a product not completely released to production. The specifications are based on preliminary evaluations and are not guaranteed. Small quantities are available, and Silicon Systems should be consulted for current information.

| | |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Contents | III |
| Index | IV |
| Numerical Product Index | VII |
| Discontinued Parts List | VII |
| Product Selector Guide | VIII |

Section 1. CUSTOM SOLUTIONS1-0

Section 2. QUALITY ASSURANCE AND RELIABILITY2-0

Section 3. K-SERIES SINGLE-CHIP MODEM FAMILY

| | |
|---|-------|
| K-Series Modem Family Introduction | 3-0 |
| 73K212L Bell 212A/103 Single-Chip Modem | 3-1 |
| 73K221L CCITT V.22, V.21 Single-Chip Modem | 3-21 |
| 73K222L V.22, V.21, Bell 212A Single-Chip Modem | 3-43 |
| 73K222U Single-Chip Modem with UART | 3-65 |
| 73K224L V.22bis Single-Chip Modem | 3-105 |
| 73K302L Bell 212A, 103, 202 Single-Chip Modem | 3-133 |
| 73K312L CCITT V.23, V.21 Single-Chip Modem | 3-157 |
| 73K321L CCITT V.23, V.21 Single-Chip Modem | 3-177 |
| 73K322L CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21 Single-Chip Modem | 3-197 |
| 73K324L CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23 Single-Chip Modem | 3-219 |

Section 4. MODEM PROTOCOL & BUS INTERFACE PRODUCTS

| | |
|---|-------|
| NEW 73D246 Microcontroller | 4-1 |
| 73D2240 V.22bis 2400 Bit/s Low Power Modem Device Set | 4-37 |
| 73D2247 MNP5, V.42bis, Datacom Modem Device Set | * |
| 73D2248/2348 MNP5 Datacom Modem Device Set | 4-61 |
| NEW 73D2910 Microcontroller | 4-71 |
| NEW 73D2950 Microcontroller | 4-75 |
| 73M550/1550/ 2550 Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter with FIFOs | 4-107 |

Section 5. SPECIAL MODEM PRODUCTS

| | |
|--|-----|
| 73M223 1200 Baud FSK Modem | 5-1 |
| 73M376 K-Series Integrated Line Interface Unit | 5-7 |

Section 6. ANALOG SIGNALLING & SWITCHING PRODUCTS

| | |
|--|------|
| 75T201 Integrated DTMF Receiver | 6-1 |
| 75T202/203 5V Low-Power DTMF Receiver | 6-9 |
| 75T204 5V Low-Power Subscriber DTMF Receiver | 6-17 |
| 75T2089/90/91 DTMF Transceivers | 6-25 |
| 75T980 Call Progress Tone Detector | 6-33 |
| 78A093A/B 12 x 8 x 1 Crosspoint Switch with Control Memory | * |
| 78A207 MFR1 Receiver | 6-39 |

* Data Sheet available upon request.

Section 7. PCM PRODUCTS

| | | |
|---------|---|------|
| 78P233A | DS-1 Line Interface | * |
| 78P234 | 2048 Kbit/s PCM Interface Unit | * |
| 78P236 | DS-3 Line Interface | 7-1 |
| 78P2361 | STS-1 Line Interface | 7-11 |
| 78P2362 | 34.368 Mbit/s Line Interface | 7-21 |
| 78P300 | T1/E1 Short-Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation | 7-31 |
| 78P304A | Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation | 7-47 |
| 78P7200 | DS-3 Line Interface with Receive Equalizer | 7-65 |

Section 8. LAN PRODUCTS

| | | |
|--------------------|---|-------|
| 78Q902 | Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media Attachment Unit | 8-1 |
| 78Q903 | 10Base-T Hub Transceiver | * |
| 78Q8330 | Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver | 8-15 |
| 78Q8360 | Ethernet Controller/ENDEC Combo | 8-27 |
| 78Q8370 | PCMCIA Ethernet Combo | 8-63 |
| NEW 78Q8373 | 3V/5V PCMCIA Ethernet Combo | 8-103 |

Section 9. PROGRAMMABLE ELECTRONIC FILTERS

| | | |
|--------------------------|--|------|
| 32F8001 | Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter | 9-1 |
| 32F8002/8003 | Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter | 9-13 |
| 32F8011/8012 | Programmable Electronic Filter | 9-23 |
| 32F8020/8022 | Programmable Electronic Filter | * |
| 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023 | Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter | 9-35 |
| 32F8030 | Programmable Electronic Filter | 9-47 |
| 32F8101/8102/8103/8104 | Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter | 9-57 |
| 32F8120 | Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter | 9-69 |
| 32F8130/8131 | Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter | 9-77 |
| NEW 32F8144 | Programmable Electronic Filter | 9-85 |

Section 10. PACKAGING/ORDERING INFORMATION

| | |
|---|-------|
| Package Index | 10-1 |
| Ordering Information | 10-2 |
| Plastic DIP 8, 14, 16 and 18 Pins | 10-3 |
| Plastic DIP 20, 22, 24 and 24S Pins | 10-4 |
| Plastic DIP 28, 32 and 40 Pins | 10-5 |
| Cerdip 8, 14, 16 and 18 Pins | 10-6 |
| Cerdip 22, 24 and 28 Pins | 10-7 |
| Quad (PLCC) 20 and 28 Leads | 10-8 |
| Quad (PLCC) 32 and 44 Leads | 10-9 |
| Quad (PLCC) 52 and 68 Leads | 10-10 |
| Quad Flatpack (QFP) 52, 100 Leads | 10-11 |
| Quad Flatpack (QFP) 128 Leads | 10-12 |
| Thin Quad Flatpack (TQFP) 32, 48 Leads | 10-13 |
| Thin Quad Flatpack (TQFP) 64 Leads | 10-14 |
| Thin Quad Flatpack (TQFP) 100 Leads | 10-14 |
| Thin Quad Flatpack (TQFP) 120 Leads | 10-15 |
| Thin Quad Flatpack (TQFP) 128 Leads | 10-15 |
| Very Thin Quad Flatpack (VTQFP) 48 and 64 Leads | 10-16 |
| Very Thin Quad Flatpack (VTQFP) 100 Leads | 10-17 |
| Very Thin Quad Flatpack (VTQFP) 120 Leads | 10-1 |
| Ultra Thin Quad Flatpack (UVQFP) 64 and 100 Leads | 10-19 |

(Continued)

Section 10. PACKAGING/ORDERING INFORMATION (continued)

Page #

| | |
|--|-------|
| SOM 8, 14 and 16 Leads | 10-20 |
| SOL 16, 18, 20, 24 and 28 Leads | 10-21 |
| SOL 34 Leads | 10-22 |
| SOW 32 Leads | 10-22 |
| SOM 36 Leads | 10-22 |
| SOM 44 Leads | 10-23 |
| VSOP 20, 24 Leads | 10-23 |
| VTOP 16, 20 Leads | 10-24 |
| UTSOP 20, 36 Leads | 10-25 |
| Small Form Factor Package Selector Guide | 10-26 |

Section 11. SALES OFFICES/DISTRIBUTORS

11-1

Section 12. APPLICATION NOTES AND GLOSSARY

| | |
|--|--------|
| K-Series Application Notes | 12-1 |
| K-Series General Application Notes | 12-1 |
| - Setting DTMF Levels for 1200 Bit/s K-Series Modems | 12-5 |
| - SSI 73K212A High Speed Connect Sequence | 12-6 |
| - V.22 & V.22bis Connect Sequences | 12-7 |
| - Remote Loop Handshake Sequence | 12-8 |
| - SSI 73K224L Retrain at 2400 bit/s | 12-9 |
| - SSI 73K212, 73K222 Originate & Answer Handshake Sequences | 12-10 |
| - SSI 73K224L Originate & Answer Handshake Sequences | 12-12 |
| - Modem Performance Testing | 12-14 |
| - Troubleshooting the Modem Design | 12-20 |
| 73M376 Integrated Line Interface Application Note | 12-23 |
| 78P236/2361/2362/7200 Demo Board Application Note | 12-27 |
| 78Q8330 Demo Board Application Note | 12-37 |
| 78Q8360 Technical Reference Guide | * |
| NEW 78Q8370 Technical Reference Guide | 12-41 |
| DTMF Receiver Application Guide | 12-85 |
| NEW 78Q9001 UCJ - DAA Micromodule Design Guide | 12-99 |
| NEW 78Q9002 Superintendent DAA Micromodule Design Guide | 12-111 |
| GLOSSARY | 12-123 |
| Voiceband Modem Standards Reference Chart | 12-135 |

Numerical Index

SSI Device Numbers

Page

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| 32F8001 | 9-1 |
| 32F8002/8003 | 9-13 |
| 32F8011/8012 | 9-23 |
| 32F8020/8022 | * |
| 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023 | 9-35 |
| 32F8030 | 9-47 |
| 32F8101/8102/8103/8104 | 9-57 |
| 32F8120 | 9-69 |
| 32F8130/8131 | 9-77 |
| 32F8144 | 9-85 |
| 73D246 | 4-1 |
| 73D2240 | 4-37 |
| 73D2247 | * |
| 73D2248/2348 | 4-61 |
| 73D2910 | 4-71 |
| 73D2950 | 4-75 |
| 73K212L | 3-1 |
| 73K221L | 3-21 |
| 73K222L | 3-43 |
| 73K222U | 3-65 |
| 73K224L | 3-105 |
| 73K302L | 3-133 |
| 73K312L | 3-157 |
| 73K321L | 3-177 |
| 73K322L | 3-197 |

SSI Device Numbers

Page

| | |
|------------------------|-------|
| 73K324L | 3-219 |
| 73M223 | 5-1 |
| 73M376 | 5-7 |
| 73M550/1550/2550 | 4-107 |
| 75T201 | 6-1 |
| 75T202/203 | 6-9 |
| 75T204 | 6-17 |
| 75T2089/90/91 | 6-25 |
| 75T980 | 6-33 |
| 78A093A/B | * |
| 78A207 | 6-39 |
| 78P233A | * |
| 78P234 | * |
| 78P236 | 7-1 |
| 78P2361 | 7-11 |
| 78P2362 | 7-21 |
| 78P300 | 7-31 |
| 78P304A | 7-47 |
| 78P7200 | 7-65 |
| 78Q902 | 8-1 |
| 78Q903 | * |
| 78Q8330 | 8-15 |
| 78Q8360 | 8-27 |
| 78Q8370 | 8-63 |
| 78Q8373 | 8-103 |

*Data Sheet available upon request.

Discontinued Parts List

The following parts are no longer supplied or supported by Silicon Systems.

Part

73D2180
73D2404
73D2420/2421
73D2247F
73K212 (12V Version)
73K221 (12V Version)
73K222 (12V Version)
73M214
73M450L/1450/2450
73M650/1650
75T957
75T981
75T982
78P8050
78P8060

COMMUNICATION PRODUCTS REFERENCE

| Device Number | B212 B103 | B202 | CCITT V.21 | CCITT V.23 | CCITT V.22 | CCITT V.22bis | Description | Power Supply | Available Packages |
|--|--------------|------|---------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|---|-----------------|---|
| K-SERIES SINGLE CHIP MODEM FAMILY | | | | | | | | | |
| SSI 73K212L | X | | | | | | Low Power 73K212 | +5V | 28 DIP, 28 PLCC |
| SSI 73K212SL | X | | | | | | 73K212L with serial interface only | +5V | 22 DIP |
| SSI 73K221L | | | X | | X | | Low Power 73K221 | +5V | 22, 28 DIP, 28 PLCC |
| SSI 73K221SL | | | X | | X | | 73K221L with serial interface only | +5V | 22 DIP |
| SSI 73K222L | X | | X | | X | | Low Power 73K222 | +5V | 22, 28 DIP, 28 PLCC |
| SSI 73K222SL | X | | X | | X | | 73K222L with serial interface only | +5V | 22 DIP |
| SSI 73K222U | X | | X | | X | | 73K222L with 16C450 UART | +5V | 40 DIP, 44 PLCC |
| SSI 73K224L | X | | X | | X | X | Bell 212A/103, CCITT V.22bis/V.22/V.21 | +5V | 28 DIP, 28, 32 PLCC, 52 QFP, 64 TQFP |
| SSI 73K224SL | X | | X | | X | X | 73K224L with serial interface | +5V | 22 DIP |
| SSI 73K302L | X | X | | | | | Bell 212A/202/103 | +5V | 28 DIP, 28 PLCC |
| SSI 73K302SL | X | X | | | | | Bell 212A/202/103; serial interface only | +5V | 22 DIP |
| SSI 73K312L | B103 | X | X | X | | | BELL 202/103; CCITT V.21/V.23 | +5V | 28 DIP, 28 PLCC, 52 QFP, 64 TQFP |
| SSI 73K321L | | | X | X | | | CCITT V.23/V.21 | +5V | 28 DIP, 28 PLCC |
| SSI 73K321SL | | | X | X | | | 73K321L with serial interface only | +5V | 22 DIP |
| SSI 73K322L | | | X | X | X | | CCITT V.23/V.22/V.21 | +5V | 28 DIP, 28 PLCC |
| SSI 73K322SL | | | X | X | X | | 73K322L with serial interface only | +5V | 22 DIP |
| SSI 73K324L | B212 | | X | X | X | X | CCITT V.22bis/V.22/V.23/V.21 | +5V | 28 DIP, 28, 32 PLCC, 52 QFP, 64 TQFP |
| MODEM PROTOCOL PRODUCTS/ DEVICE SETS | | | | | | | | | |
| SSI 73D246 | | | | | | | Modem Controller Device | +5V | Various QFP & TQFP |
| SSI 73D2240 | X | X | X | X | | | Modem Device Set w/ AT (73K224L based design) | +5V | Various DIP & PLCC |
| SSI 73D2247 | X | X | X | X | X | X | Modem Device Set w/ AT, MNP 4&5 | +5V | Various DIP & PLCC |
| SSI 73D2248/2348 | | | | X | X | X | Modem Device Set w/ AT, MNP | +5V | Various QFP & TQFP |
| SSI 73D2910 | | | | | | | Modem Controller Device | +3V/+5V | Various QFP & TQFP |
| SSI 73D2950/2950T | | | X | X | X | X | FAX/Data Modem Device Set = W/AT, MNP485 V.42, V.42 bis EIA - 57F Class I, Industry Class II. Truespeech Voice Compression | +3V/+5V | Various QFP & TQFP |
| Notes: The SSI 73D2247 Device Set comes with a Configurable Command Interpreter. | | | | | | | | | |

| Device Number | Circuit Function | Features | Power | Available Packages |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|----------|------------------------|
| SPECIAL MODEM PRODUCTS | | | | |
| SSI 73M223 | 1200 bit/s Modem IC | Compact HDX V.23 modem | +5V | 16 DIP, 16 SOL |
| SSI 73M376 | Integrated Line Interface | The active components of a DAA in a chip used on 73M9001 | +5V | 28 PLCC, 24 VSOP |
| ANALOG SIGNALLING AND SWITCHING PRODUCTS | | | | |
| SSI 75T201 | Integrated DTMF Receiver | Binary coded 2-of-8 output | +12V | 22 DIP |
| SSI 75T202 | Integrated DTMF Receiver | Low power, binary output | +5V | 18 DIP |
| SSI 75T203 | Integrated DTMF Receiver | Early detect, binary output | +5V | 18 DIP |
| SSI 75T204 | Integrated DTMF Receiver | Low power, binary output | +5V | 14 DIP, 16 SO |
| SSI 75T2089 | Integrated DTMF Transceiver | Generator & receiver, μ P interface | +5V | 22 DIP |
| SSI 75T2090 | Integrated DTMF Transceiver | Like 75T2089 w/ call progress detect | +5V | 22 DIP |
| SSI 75T2091 | Integrated DTMF Transceiver | Like 75T2090 w/ early detect | +5V | 28 DIP, PLCC |
| SSI 75T980 | Imprecise Call Progress Detector | Energy detect in 305-640 Hz band, Teltone | +5V | 8 DIP |
| SSI 78A093A/B | 12x8x1 Crosspoint Switch | Low ON resistance, two versions | +5, +12V | 40 DIP, 44 PLCC |
| SSI 78A207 | Integrated MF Receiver | Detects central office toll signals | | |
| PCM PRODUCTS | | | | |
| SSI 78P236 | DS-3 Line Interface | T3 clock & data recovery, transmit equalization | +5V | 28 DIP |
| SSI 78P2361 | STS-1 Line Interface Transceiver | STS-1 clock & data recovery, transmit equalization | +5V | 28 DIP |
| SSI 78P2362 | CEPT E-3 Line Interface Transceiver | E3 clock & data recovery, transmit equalization | +5V | 28 DIP |
| SSI 78P300 | T1/E1 Short Haul Transceiver | Receive jitter attenuation | +5V | 28 DIP, PLCC |
| SSI 78P304A | Low-Power 38P300 | Receive jitter attenuation | +5V | 28 DIP, PLCC |
| SSI 78P7200 | DS-3 Line Interface Transceiver | DS-3 Transceiver w/Receive equalization & higher transmitter drive | +5V | 28 DIP |
| LAN PRODUCTS | | | | |
| SSI 78Q902 | 10Base-T MAU Transceiver | Direct interface to twisted pair and AUI | +5V | 28 DIP, PLCC |
| SSI 78Q903 | 10Base-T Hub Transceiver | Programmable squelch, detect/correct reverse polarity | +5V | 24 DIP, 28 PLCC |
| SSI 78Q8330 | 802.3 Coax Transceiver | 10Base-2 applications | +9V | 20 DIP, PLCC, 64 TQFP |
| SSI 78Q8360 | Ethernet Controller/ENDEC Combo | Fully integrated MAC ENDEC & AUI | +5V | 100 QFP, TQFP |
| SSI 78Q8370 | 10Base-T/PCMCIA for Ethernet | Single-chip Ethernet for PCMCIA card | +5V | 100 QFP, 100 TQFP |
| SSI 78Q8373 | 3V/5V 10-BaseT/PCMCIA for Ethernet | 3V or 5V for PCMCIA Ethernet | 3V or 5V | 100 QFP, TQFP |
| BUS INTERFACE PRODUCTS | | | | |
| SSI 73M550 | 16C550 pin compatible UART | Receive and Transmit FIFOs | +5V | 40 DIP, 44 PLCC, 48 GT |
| SSI 73M1550 | 28-pin version of 73M550 | Full UART in 28-pin package | +5V | 28 DIP, PLCC |
| SSI 73M2550 | 28-pin version of 73M550 | Adds μ PRST function | +5V | 28 DIP, PLCC |

X

Section **1**

**CUSTOM
SOLUTIONS**

1

1

Section

CUSTOM
SOLUTIONS

**SILICON SYSTEMS LEADS THE WAY
DEVELOPING MIXED-SIGNAL CUSTOM
PRODUCTS.**

This is a story about leadership. Silicon Systems is dedicated to taking the point in the creation of high-performance, application-specific custom, mixed-signal integrated circuits (MSICs®).

Such dedication means we bring a lot to the party. Including truly innovative analog, digital, and mixed analog/digital ICs. A full complement of mixed-signal CMOS, BiCMOS and Bipolar wafer fabrication processes, state-of-the-art automated design tools, production, assembly, test, and QA capability.

No one's more experienced

More than 20 years of successful IC design work makes us the most experienced engineering team in the MSICs field. Add it all up and you get a company that saves you time and money while delivering you the most sophisticated mixed-signal custom ICs you can get.

Faster to market for mixed-signal applications

Whatever your mixed-signal design application, Silicon Systems gives you a competitive advantage. In communications, disk drives, other storage products, automotive control systems, or other analog/digital signal processing applications, you can depend on our technical know-how to do the job right and turn your design around faster.

**CMOS. Bipolar. BiCMOS. Analog. Digital.
We've done it**

Our designers are an experienced bunch. They're uniquely able to take a look at your specific application problem and move quickly to the right IC solution.

Our team is particularly adept at identifying key issues such as power, cost and performance trade-offs. So we can gear our efforts toward delivering you an optimized solution, manufactured with the appropriate fab process.

| Technique | Application | Silicon Systems Designed Examples |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| CMOS Analog Processing | For analog continuous time, samples data (switched-capacitor implementation), and high-current power transistor applications. Low power, high density capability also allows inclusion of ROMs, RAMs, and other analog/digital subsystems. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Complete single-chip 2400 bit/s modem 14.4 kbps modem chip set Direct-broadcast satellite descrambler Servo and spindle motor controllers with 1.0 Amp motor interfaces High-resolution analog data acquisition Cellular baseband processor |
| BiCMOS Signal Processing | For high-performance, low noise, wideband signal acquisition and processing applications. Offers TTL and/or ECL logic interfaces with high current drive. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sub 1 nV/√Hz HDD R/W amplifiers AGC, pulse detection amplifiers High-speed data separators Wideband transceivers PLLs (phase locked loops) Optical signal processing Digital cellular, PCS IF circuits |
| Digital CMOS | For ASIC controllers, digital signal processors, sequencers and data path applications with on-board ROM, RAM, and PLA sub-systems. Offers standard TTL and/or CMOS logic interfaces. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Digital communications LAN devices Hard disk drive controllers SCSI interface controllers UARTs Digital signal processors for hard disk servo and telecommunications |

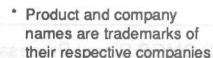
silicon systems

Providing total analog/digital systems

We've turned to CMOS to effectively implement low

We've gone the BiCMOS route to meet the high perfor-

Buy a matching third-party tool, and you're good to go.



Specifically, PEGASYS brings the following to each design:

- Fully integrated design environment
- Methodology for precision circuit design
- Integrated electrical and physical design
- Unique blend of full-custom and automated layout techniques
- Complete layout verification
- Full mixed-signal parasitic extraction

Our design automation staff integrates the third-party tools and optimizes their use on the Mentor platform. This framework can easily accommodate new tools when needed, and it enables us to support a combination of analog and digital design techniques in all CMOS, Bipolar and BiCMOS chip designs. By mixing design methodologies, we can achieve optimum systems performance, even when schedules are tight.

Electrical design

A single CAE (computer aided engineering) environment provides for schematic capture, synthesis, simulation, and fault grading. We support this software with extensive libraries of pre-designed cells and components. Highly specialized cells or components can be designed and enhanced where required. We simulate each circuit to meet precise performance specifications using:

- Analog circuit simulation
- Digital logic simulation
- VHDL simulation
- Mixed-mode simulation
- Switched-capacitor filter simulation
- Analog and mixed-mode behavioral simulation

Admittedly, simulation alone is not the key to perfecting performance. That's why we work aggressively to refine our understanding of models to make them work with simulation. Inside our progressive device modeling and characterization (DMC) laboratory, we develop accurate circuit simulation models and parameters. The DMC lab provides complete device model data for our processes using capabilities such as AC measurement, statistical analysis and worst-case modeling. Accurate models are a cornerstone of our design-for-quality approach.

To ensure high quality test vectors, production test vectors are derived from simulation vectors using the TSSI tools early in the design process. The industry-standard Zycad fault simulator is then used to determine fault coverage.

Physical design

Our PEGASYS layout system aids the mask designer through all physical design phases, ensuring consistency throughout the design cycle. This flexible, fully integrated environment supports a broad range of layout techniques, from full-custom to full-automation. Capabilities include:

- Chip floor planning
- Analog device generators
- Schematic driven layout
- On-line point-to-point routing
- Compaction
- Automatic place and route
- Support of custom cells, standard cells, and compiled blocks in any combination
- Design rule checking (drc)
- Layout-versus-schematic verification (lvs)
- Parasitic extraction/back annotation
- Output in industry standard GDS format

In the first generation Pegasys system, Silicon Systems pioneered a device-generator based approach to precision analog layout. In partnership with Mentor Graphics, we have enhanced this technique for our current system, based on Mentor Graphics V8 ICStation® tools. ICStation® provides tremendous flexibility, combined with ease of customization, to fully support analog and mixed-signal designs. A variety of layout styles and techniques are combined to meet each chip's specific requirements. Rigorous verification checks ensure the quality and accuracy of the layout, for both physical and electrical properties. Post-layout simulation uses true parasitic modeling to handle remaining problems before first silicon fabrication.

STATE OF THE ART CMOS DIGITAL AND ANALOG PROCESSES

Silicon Systems offers four proven CMOS process technologies for creating cost effective, highly integrated systems solutions. These processes combine small geometry digital circuit capability with high performance analog capability. Table 1 summarizes Silicon Systems' CMOS process capabilities.

Our newest CK process is designed to support high breakdown, high current power FETs, bipolar structure for specialized analog needs, poly capacitors and resistors, low noise differential amplifiers and high performance A/D and D/A converters. It also includes highly optimized and silicon area efficient digital cells including DSPs, microcontrollers, sequencers, memory managers and data paths.

The CJ process provides high performance analog and digital cells and includes the same analog and digital complex devices in our CK process.

Our CG process supports high-performance analog circuitry with precision poly-poly capacitors. Complex analog circuitry includes 1.25 Amp power FETs, 12-bit switched capacitor analog to digital converters and low distortion operational amplifiers and filters. Complex digital circuitry includes DSPs, microcontrollers, sequencers, memory managers and data paths.

The CH process also provides high quality, low voltage coefficient, precision poly-poly capacitors that support high performance switched-capacitor filtering and data conversion (A/D and D/A) circuits.

BIPOLAR & BICMOS PROCESS TECHNOLOGIES

Our bipolar MSICs take advantage of two high-performance Bipolar processes: BK (for 12V applications) and BN (for 5V applications). The BK analog/digital process achieves its higher voltage operation and improves lateral PNP transistor performance by using a lightly-doped epi layer.

In BK we provide deep N+ and P+ enhancement layers to reduce both collector series and base resistance. Our use of up-junction isolation gives us a major reduction in device area, when compared with that of typical junction isolated processes. Metal-poly capacitors with a nitride dielectric are used for improving capacitor reliability.

BN. Low-power/ 8 GHz Bipolar at 5 volts

A noteworthy feature of a minimum size BN process transistor is that it's only about 1/5th the size of a minimum size BK transistor. Because we employ full oxide isolation in BN, we can fabricate very fast, very small transistors and reduce sidewall capacitances. This supports not only high speed, but low power.

The BN process features high-performance NPN transistors to support mixing high-performance emitter coupled logic (ECL) with analog circuitry. To provide for strict TTL I/O compatibility, we use superior PtSi Schottky diodes.

The resulting speed and packing density allows you to effectively implement dense high-performance, low-power Bipolar analog/digital capability into your system designs.

For a feature-by-feature comparison of Silicon Systems' BK and BN Bipolar processes, see Table 3.

BiCMOS process technologies

Our BiCMOS process portfolio is expanding to support the evolving demands of the mixed-signal IC market. Now in production is our BCA process which combines 13 GHz NPNs with 1.0μ CMOS features to support the design of efficient, high performance, mixed-signal circuits. High bandwidth analog circuits can be combined with dense digital logic to support the development of 5V data channels with transfer rates into the 120+ Mbit/s range, while maintaining low power consumption. The BCA technology has also allowed our designers to develop 3V only circuits to address very low power applications.

Our second generation BiCMOS process, BCB, will provide the next step in performance with a parallel improvement in circuit density. BCB advances our BiCMOS with 0.8μ CMOS feature sizes and improved interconnect capability resulting in a significant performance step for CMOS logic. This will allow implementation of mixed-signal circuits that support data transfer rates well beyond 200 Mbit/s, while maintaining very low power dissipation. The dense digital advantages of BCB will also expand the possibilities for cost effective customization and programmability in both 5V and 3V environments.

For a summary of our BiCMOS processes see Table 2.

Our PECAVS layout system aids the mask designer through all physical design phases, ensuring consistency throughout the design cycle. This flexible, fully integrated environment supports a broad range of layout techniques, from full custom to full automation. Capabilities include:

- Analog and mixed-mode behavioral simulation
- Switched-capacitor filter simulation
- Mixed-mode simulation
- VLSI simulation
- Digital logic simulation
- Analog circuit simulation

Additionally, simulation alone is not the key to achieving performance. That's why we work aggressively to refine our understanding of models to make them work with simulation. Inside our progressive device modeling and characterization (DMC) laboratory, we develop accurate circuit simulation models and parameters. The DMC lab provides complete device model data for our processes using capabilities such as AC measurement, statistical analysis and worst-case modeling. Accurate models are a cornerstone of our design-for-duality approach.

In a more high-duality test vector, production test vectors are derived from simulation vectors using the TSVI tools early in the design process. The industry-standard SynTest fault simulator is then used to determine fault coverage.

Physical design

Our PECAVS layout system aids the mask designer through all physical design phases, ensuring consistency throughout the design cycle. This flexible, fully integrated environment supports a broad range of layout techniques, from full custom to full automation. Capabilities include:

| Process | Type | Application Voltage | BVDSS | Drawn Gate Length | Interconnect Pitches | | | Features |
|---------|---|---------------------|-------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------|-----------|---|
| | | | | | Poly 1 | Metal 1 | Metal 2 | |
| CH | Si-Gate, single metal, dual poly, PWell | 12V | 18V | 3.6 μ | 5.8 μ | 6.4 μ | n/a | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DDD S/D structure • Poly-poly capacitors • Low-voltage coefficient • High Ω / \square poly resistors • Epi substrate option • Buried well-ring |
| CG | Si-Gate, dual metal, dual poly, PWell | 5V | 7V | 1.5 μ | 3.0 μ | 4.5 μ | 6.0 μ | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DDD S/D structure • Poly-poly capacitors • Shrinkable to 1.2μ |
| CJ | Si-Gate, dual metal, dual poly, NWell | 5V | 7V | 1.0 μ | 2.0 μ | 3.0 μ | 3.3 μ | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ldd S/D structure • Poly-poly capacitors • Shrinkable to 0.8μ |
| CK | Si-Gate, dual metal, dual poly, NWell | 5V | 7V | 0.8 μ | 1.6 μ | 2.0 μ | 2.4 μ | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ldd S/D structure • Poly-poly capacitors • Shrinkable to 0.5μ |

TABLE 1: CMOS Process Chart

| Process | Appl. Voltage | BVDSS | Drawn Gate Length | Interconnect Pitches | | | | BV _{CEO} | NPN Ft | Emitter | Features |
|---------|---------------|-------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------------|--------|-----------|--|
| | | | | Poly | M0 | M1 | M2 | | | | |
| BCA: | 5V | 10V | 1.0 μ | 2.6 μ | 3.2 μ | 3.8 μ | 5.0 μ | 8V | 13 GHz | 1.0 μ | Bipolar: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High Performance NPNs • Polysilicon emitters • PtSi Schottky Diodes • Poly resistors • Gate Oxide Capacitors • Poly Capacitors • Sidewall Oxide Isolation • Fuses |
| BCB: | 5V | 8V | 0.8 μ | 1.6 μ | 2.0 μ | 2.0 μ | 2.4 μ | 8V | 15 GHz | 0.8 μ | CMOS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lightly Doped Drains |

TABLE 2: BiCMOS Process Chart

| Process | Type | BV _{CEO} | NPN Ft | Emitter Size | M1 Pitch | M2 Pitch | Features |
|---------|-------------------|-------------------|--------|--------------|-----------|------------|--|
| BK | Junction-isolated | 12V | 2 GHz | 2.5 μ | 9.0 μ | 14.0 μ | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Polysilicon emitters • Al Schottky diodes • Nitride capacitors • Ion implanted resistors • Up/down junction isolation • Collector/base plugs |
| BN | Oxide-isolated | 6V | 8 GHz | 2.0 μ | 4.5 μ | 8.0 μ | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High performance NPNs • PtSi Schottky diodes • Nitride capacitors • Ion implanted resistors • Sidewall oxide isolation • Collector/base plugs |

TABLE 3: Bipolar Process Chart

CUSTOM SOLUTIONS

A SUPERIOR FINISH FOR CMOS, BIPOLAR AND BICMOS

You might say this is the payoff window. The benefits of our process technologies, design tools and our unique custom approach all come together during wafer fabrication, test and assembly.

Our two manufacturing centers, located in Tustin and Santa Cruz, California, can offer specialized capabilities to match your particular fabrication requirements. Both facilities provide you with high resolution stepper photolithography technology, positive resist, dry plasma etch systems, high current ion implantation and automatic sputtering.

Fabrication sites in both Tustin and Santa Cruz accommodate 4- and 6-inch wafer fabrication and Bipolar, CMOS and BiCMOS processes.

The right package

Silicon Systems offers a wide range of packages to meet the small footprint requirements of advanced storage and communication products. We continue to be innovative in surface mount technology by providing PLCC, SO, VSOP, VTSOP, QFP, TQFP, VTQFP and UTQFP packages. At our ISO 9002-certified Singapore assembly & test facility we have the full capability to support high quality automated packaging while also maintaining rapid cycle times.

Promis. Quality through CAM

Process and Management Information System (PROMIS) underscores our commitment to computer-aided manufacturing (CAM). And to delivering you a superior quality product on time.

We use PROMIS to facilitate the data required in our manufacturing, monitoring and statistical process control (SPC) systems.

With PROMIS we more effectively manage our inventory, accurately track wafers in process, and closely monitor the clean room environment.

PROMIS also assists our SPC efforts, as does our commitment to fully train all of our manufacturing personnel in SPC basics.

We design for quality

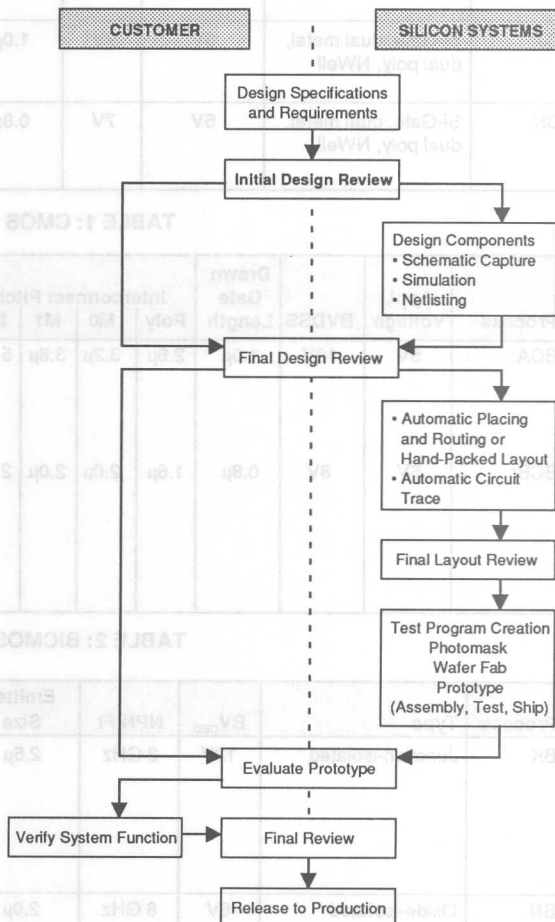
It's our view that quality is nothing less than absolute customer satisfaction. To achieve it, we begin far "upstream" in the product development process. Our design-for-quality approach scrutinizes the design itself with statistically based models, comprehensive simulation tools and vigorous design reviews.

The results of such an effort are IC products that boast lower defect rates, higher parametric performance and far fewer redesigns. Moreover, our persistence in improving quality keeps us focused on finding better and faster ways to satisfy future customer demands.

Quality that delivers

With effective systems such as PROMIS and our design-for-quality approach in place, Silicon Systems is prepared to deliver you finished products you can really depend on. On time. And within budget.

For details on how you can take best advantage of Silicon Systems' custom mixed-signal IC solutions, see your nearest Silicon Systems representative, or contact us. Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022. 714-573-6000. FAX: (714) 573-6914.

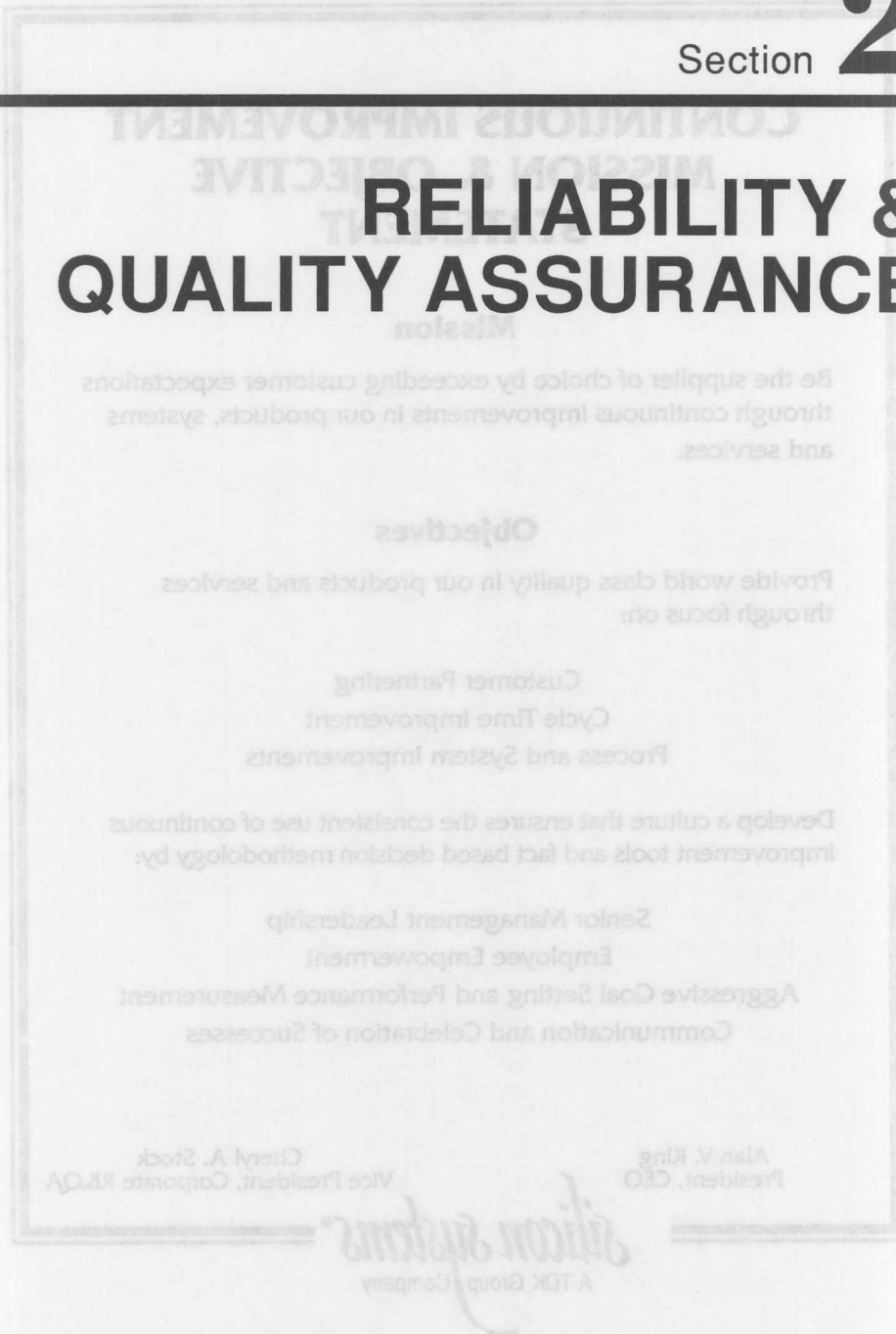


Customer Interface for Full-Custom and Cell-Based Designs

Section 2

RELIABILITY & QUALITY ASSURANCE

2



CONTINUOUS IMPROVEMENT MISSION & OBJECTIVE STATEMENT

Mission

Be the supplier of choice by exceeding customer expectations through continuous improvements in our products, systems and services.

Objectives

Provide world class quality in our products and services through focus on:

Customer Partnering
Cycle Time Improvement
Process and System Improvements

Develop a culture that ensures the consistent use of continuous improvement tools and fact based decision methodology by:

Senior Management Leadership
Employee Empowerment
Aggressive Goal Setting and Performance Measurement
Communication and Celebration of Successes

Alan V. King
President, CEO

Cheryl A. Stock
Vice President, Corporate R&QA

silicon systems[®]
A TDK Group Company

SECTION 1

1.1 INTRODUCTION

Silicon Systems is committed to the goal of customer satisfaction through the on-time delivery of defect free products that meet the customer's expectations and requirements. This section outlines Silicon Systems' ongoing activities for the control and continual improvement of quality in every aspect of our organization.

Silicon Systems is diligently working to maintain and improve its position as a world-class provider of mixed-signal integrated circuits (MSICs®).

We realize and practice the concept that quality and reliability must be designed and built into our products. In addition, Silicon Systems utilizes rigid inspections and data analysis to evaluate the acceptability and variation existing in incoming materials and performs stringent outgoing quality verification. The manufacturing process flow is encompassed by an effective system of test/inspection checks and in-line monitors which focus on the control and reduction of process variation. These gates and monitors ensure precise adherence to prescribed standards and procedures.

Silicon Systems also incorporates the use of statistical process control techniques into company operations. The control and reduction of the process variation by the use of statistical problem solving techniques, analytical controls and other quantitative methods ensures that Silicon Systems' products maintain the highest levels of quality and reliability.

Our Reliability and Quality Assurance organizations are committed to working closely with our customers to provide assistance and a continually improving level of product quality.

1.2 SILICON SYSTEMS' QUALITY MANDATE: CONTINUOUS IMPROVEMENT

Continuous improvement is Silicon System's strategic thrust for the 1990's. In order to ensure that all aspects of our business are encompassed by this mandate, Corporate Reliability & Quality Assurance has been chartered with the responsibility for developing, educating and overseeing the worldwide continuous improvement process. The continuous improvement initiative will lead to developing a new organizational culture, changing attitudes and stronger ownership and accountability for total customer satisfaction.

1.3 CHARACTERISTICS OF SILICON SYSTEMS' CONTINUOUS IMPROVEMENT PROCESS

- Executive Steering Committee leadership and direction - defines the right things to do and provides guidance - the right way to do them.
- Continuous improvement is measured everywhere and by everyone. Metrics that reflect pride in accomplishment are celebrated.
- Benchmarking is employed as a method to shorten learning curves and ensure successful ventures.
- Quality management and employee empowerment are encouraged at all levels.

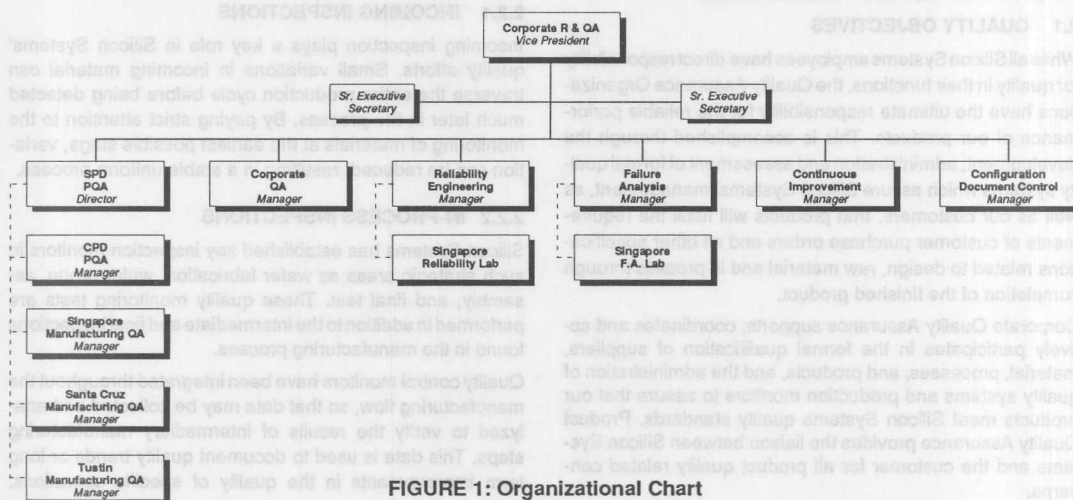


FIGURE 1: Organizational Chart

Reliability and Quality Assurance

- Supplier partnership is a critical element of our quality strategy.

This is the essence of Silicon Systems - a total quality involved company - forward looking and immersed in the goal of customer satisfaction and best-in-class business pursuits.

1.4 CORPORATE RELIABILITY AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

It is the objective of the Corporate Reliability and Quality Assurance organization to ensure that proactive quality systems are in place to ensure that Silicon Systems' products will meet or exceed customer requirements and expectations. In addition, the Reliability and Quality Assurance organization works to facilitate the timely implementation of solutions and monitors the effectiveness of corrective actions. These organizational strategies support the continuing enhancement of quality consciousness throughout Silicon Systems.

1.5 ISO 9000 CERTIFICATION

Silicon Systems has determined that ISO 9000 certification is an important strategy for achieving total customer satisfaction. Our Singapore assembly and test operations facility has been ISO 9002 certified through SISIR and our domestic facilities are currently in pursuit of this important industry standard. We believe strongly that ISO 9000 certification proves that Silicon Systems is doing the right things to do things right.

SECTION 2: QUALITY ASSURANCE

2.1 QUALITY OBJECTIVES

While all Silicon Systems employees have direct responsibility for quality in their functions, the Quality Assurance Organizations have the ultimate responsibility for the reliable performance of our products. This is accomplished through the development, administration and assessment of formal quality systems which assure Silicon Systems' management, as well as our customers, that products will fulfill the requirements of customer purchase orders and all other specifications related to design, raw material and in process through completion of the finished product.

Corporate Quality Assurance supports, coordinates and actively participates in the formal qualification of suppliers, material, processes, and products, and the administration of quality systems and production monitors to assure that our products meet Silicon Systems quality standards. Product Quality Assurance provides the liaison between Silicon Systems and the customer for all product quality related concerns.

It is the practice of Silicon Systems to have corporate quality and reliability objectives encompass all of its activities. This starts with a strong commitment of support from the corporate level and continues with exceptional customer support long after the product has been shipped.

Silicon Systems emphasizes the belief that quality and reliability must be built into all of its products by ensuring that all employees are educated in the quality philosophy of the company. Some of the features built into Silicon Systems quality culture include:

1. Structured training programs directed at wafer fabrication, test, process control personnel and supporting organizations.
 - Team-based problem solving methodologies.
 - Corporate-wide training of quality philosophy and statistical methods.
2. Stringent in-process inspection, gates, and monitors.
3. Rigorous evaluation of designs, materials, and processing procedures.
4. Stringent electrical testing (100% and QC AQL/Sample testing).
5. Ongoing reliability monitors and process verifications.
6. Real-time use of statistical process control methodology.
7. Corporate level audits of manufacturing, subcontractors, and suppliers.
8. Timely corrective action system.
9. Control of non-conforming material.

These focused quality methods result in products which deliver superior performance and reliability in the field.

2.2.1 INCOMING INSPECTIONS

Incoming inspection plays a key role in Silicon Systems' quality efforts. Small variations in incoming material can traverse the entire production cycle before being detected much later in the process. By paying strict attention to the monitoring of materials at the earliest possible stage, variation can be reduced, resulting in a stable uniform process.

2.2.2 IN-PROCESS INSPECTIONS

Silicon Systems has established key inspection monitors in such strategic areas as wafer fabrication, wafer probe, assembly, and final test. These quality monitoring tests are performed in addition to the intermediate and final inspections found in the manufacturing process.

Quality control monitors have been integrated throughout the manufacturing flow, so that data may be collected and analyzed to verify the results of intermediary manufacturing steps. This data is used to document quality trends or long term improvements in the quality of specific operations.

Reliability and Quality Assurance

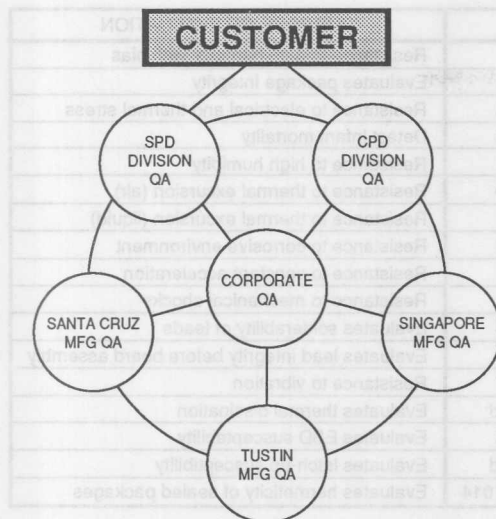


FIGURE 2
Quality Assurance Relationships
Quality Steering Committee

Abnormality control is being used to enhance the effectiveness of this process. In process monitors such as oxide integrity, electromigration immunity and other parameters monitor long term reliability as well as circuit performance.

2.3 QUALITY STEERING COMMITTEE

The Corporate, Product and Manufacturing Quality Assurance organizations work closely together to provide leadership in the development, integration and assessment of Silicon Systems' worldwide quality systems and procedures.

This team approach ensures that policies and procedures are standardized and facilitates rapid improvement in products, processes and services.

2.4 DESIGN FOR QUALITY

Since the foundation of a reliable product is rooted in the design process, the Reliability and Quality Assurance organizations actively participate in comprehensive cross-functional reviews of design stages prior to the product's transition to production status. These review stages assure a predictable and effective development cycle. Other important de-

sign-related functions include ensuring that process specification revisions are translated into updated design parameters and the translation of manufacturing process capability into design guidelines. This is accomplished through the identification and monitoring of critical process and device parameters. Wafer level test at the early stages of process development also plays a critical role. These elements, included in Silicon Systems design for quality effort, support the development of robust design rules which are as insensitive as possible to inherent manufacturing variation. The result is a product that delivers predictable and reliable long term performance.

2.5 PPM REDUCTION PROGRAM

The primary purpose of a PPM reduction program is to provide a formalized feedback system in which data from nonconforming products can be used to improve future product consistency and reliability. The action portion of this program is accomplished in three stages:

1. Identification of defects by failure mode.
2. Identification of defect causes and initiation of corrective action.
3. Measurement of results and setting of improved goals.

The data summarized from the established PPM program is compiled as a ratio of units rejected/tested. This ratio is then expressed in terms of defective parts per million (PPM). Founded on a statistically valid database of PPM data and an established five-year strategic plan identifying PPM improvement goals, Silicon Systems has consistently achieved excellent quality standards and will continue to progressively improve PPM standards.

2.6 COMPUTER AIDED MANUFACTURING CONTROL

Computer Aided Manufacturing (CAM) is used throughout Silicon Systems for the identification, control, collection and dissemination of timely information for logistics control. Silicon Systems also uses this type of computerized system for statistical process control and manufacturing monitoring. PROMIS, (PROcess Management and Information System), displays approved/controlled recipes, processes, and procedures; tracks work-in-process; reports accurate inventory information; allows continuous recording of facilities data; contains statistical analysis capabilities; and much more. PROMIS allows for a paperless facility, a major element in minimizing contamination of clean room areas.

Reliability and Quality Assurance

| TEST | CONDITIONS | PURPOSE OF EVALUATION |
|--|---------------------------|--|
| Biased temperature/humidity | 85°C/85% RH | Resistance to high humidity with bias |
| Highly accelerated stress test (HAST) | JDEC A110 | Evaluates package integrity |
| High temperature operating life (HTOL) | Mil 883D, Method 1005 | Resistance to electrical and thermal stress |
| Early Failure Rate | Mil 883D, Method 1005 | Detect infant mortality |
| Steam pressure | 121°C/15PSI | Resistance to high humidity |
| Temperature cycling | Mil 883D, Method 1010 | Resistance to thermal excursion (air) |
| Thermal shock | Mil 883D, Method 1011 | Resistance to thermal excursion (liquid) |
| Salt atmosphere | Mil 883D, Method 1009 | Resistance to corrosive environment |
| Constant acceleration | Mil 883D, Method 2001 | Resistance to constant acceleration |
| Mechanical shock | Mil 883D, Method 2002 | Resistance to mechanical shocks |
| Solderability | Mil 883D, Method 2003 | Evaluates solderability of leads |
| Lead integrity | Mil 883D, Method 2004 | Evaluates lead integrity before board assembly |
| Vibration, variable frequency | Mil 883D, Method 2007 | Resistance to vibration |
| Thermal resistance | Silicon Systems Method | Evaluates thermal dissipation |
| Electrostatic damage | Mil 883D, Method 3015 | Evaluates ESD susceptibility |
| Latch-up | Silicon Systems Method | Evaluates latch-up susceptibility |
| Seal fine and gross leak | Mil Std 883D, Method 1014 | Evaluates hermeticity of sealed packages |

TABLE 1: Reliability Stress Tests

SECTION 3: RELIABILITY

3.1 RELIABILITY PROGRAM

Silicon Systems has defined various programs that will characterize product reliability levels on a continuous basis. These programs can be categorically described by:

1. Qualifications
2. Production monitors
3. Evaluations
4. Failure analysis
5. Wafer level reliability
6. Data collection and presentation for improvement projects

3.2 QUALIFICATIONS

Extensive qualification testing and data collection ensures that all new product designs, processes, and packaging configurations meet the absolute maximum ratings of design and the worst case performance criteria for end users. A large database generated by means of accelerated stress testing results in a high degree of confidence in predicting final use performance. The qualification criteria used are periodically reviewed to be consistent with Silicon Systems' increasing quality and reliability goals in support of our customers.

3.3 PRODUCTION MONITORS

This program has been established to randomly select a statistically significant sample of production products for submission to maximum stress test levels in order to evaluate the useful life of the product in a field use environment.

Table 1 lists reliability test methods that are in use at Silicon Systems. This analysis of production monitor at Silicon Systems provides valuable information on possible design/process changes which assure continued improved reliability. The monitors are periodically reviewed for effectiveness and improvements.

3.4 EVALUATIONS

The evaluation program at Silicon Systems is an ongoing effort that will continue defining standards which address the reliability assessment of the circuit design, process parameters, and package of a new product. This program continuously analyzes updated performance characteristics of product as they undergo improvement efforts at Silicon Systems.

3.5 FAILURE ANALYSIS

The failure analysis function is an integral part of the Quality and Reliability department at Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems has assembled a highly technical and sophisticated failure analysis laboratory and staff. This laboratory provides visual analysis, electrical reject mode analysis, and both

destructive and non-destructive data to aid the engineers in developing corrective action for improvement. These test analyses may include metallurgical, optical, chemical, electrical, SEM with X-ray dispersive analysis, and E-Beam non-contact analysis as needed.

These conclusive in-house testing and analysis techniques, are complemented by outside support, such as scanning acoustic microscopy, focused ion beam, and complete surface and material analysis. This allows Silicon Systems to monitor all aspects of product manufacturing to ensure that the product of highest quality is shipped to our customers.

3.6 WAFER LEVEL RELIABILITY PROGRAM

A primary objective at Silicon Systems is to improve the reliability of our products through characterization of our manufacturing operations. The identification of specific failure mechanisms occurring in the wafer fabrication and assembly processes is a prerequisite to effective corrective action aimed at reducing defects and improving quality and reliability.

The primary advantage of wafer level reliability testing is the speed at which results can be derived, thereby providing additional response time and an early warning of process changes. This tool provides Silicon Systems with a very rapid analysis tool which allows for the early identification of possible problems and a determination of their origin.

The continuous improvement approach taken at Silicon Systems uses the wafer level reliability tests as tools to improve the process, identify potential problems, determine the sources of any process weakness and eliminate problems upstream in the process. This results in a focus on reliability improvement that goes well beyond merely determining the projected lifetime of a product to a detailed characterization, measurement and control of the specific parameters which actually determine product lifetime.

3.7 DATA COLLECTION AND PRESENTATION FOR IMPROVEMENT PROJECTS

Data collected from each element of the Reliability program is summarized for scope and impact and distributed among all engineering disciplines in the company. This data facilitates improvement and provides our customers an opportunity to review the performance of our product.

3.8 RELIABILITY METHODS

The Reliability Program utilizes a number of stress tests that are presently being used to define performance levels of our products. Many of these stress tests are per MIL-STD-883D as shown in Table 1.

3.9 RELIABILITY PREDICTION METHODOLOGY

At Silicon Systems, the Arrhenius model is used to relate a failure rate at an accelerated temperature test condition to a normal use temperature condition.

The model basically states $FR = A \exp(-E_a/KT)$

Where:

FR = Failure rate

A = Constant

E_a = Activation Energy (eV)

K = Boltzmann's constant 8.62×10^{-5} eV/degree K

T = Absolute temperature (degree K)

SECTION 4: ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE PROGRAM

4.1 ESD PREVENTION

Silicon Systems recognizes that the protection of Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) sensitive devices from damage by electrical transients and static electricity is vital. ESD safe procedures are incorporated throughout all operations which come in contact with these devices. Continuous improvement in the ESD protection levels is being accomplished through the incorporation of increasingly robust protection devices during the circuit design process as well as work area improvements.

Silicon Systems' quality activity incorporates several protection measures for the control of ESD. Some of the preventive measures include handling of parts at static safe-guarded workstations, the wearing of wrist straps during all handling operations, the use of conductive lab coats in all test areas and all areas which handle parts and the packaging of components in conductive or anti-static containers.

destructive and non-destructive data to aid the engineer in developing corrective action for improvement. These test analyses may include metallurgical, optical, chemical, electron, SEM with X-ray dispersive analysis, and E-Beam non-contact analysis as needed.

Thermocautive in-house testing and analysis techniques are complemented by outside support, such as scanning acoustic microscopy, focused ion beam, and complete surface and material analysis. This allows Silicon Systems to monitor all aspects of product manufacturing to assure that the product of highest quality is shipped to our customer.

3.8 WAFER LEVEL RELIABILITY PROGRAM

A primary objective at Silicon Systems is to improve the variability of our products through characterization of our manufacturing operations. The identification of specific failure mechanisms occurring in the wafer fabrication and assembly process is a prerequisite to effective corrective action aimed at reducing defects and improving quality and reliability.

The primary advantage of wafer level reliability testing is the speed at which results can be derived, thereby providing additional response time and an early warning of process changes. This tool provides Silicon Systems with a very rapid analysis tool which allows for the early identification of possible problems and a determination of their origin.

The continuous improvement approach taken at Silicon Systems uses the wafer level reliability tests as tools to improve the process, identify potential problems, determine the source of any process weaknesses and eliminate root-cause upstream in the process. This results in a focus on reliability improvement that goes well beyond merely determining the projected lifetime of a product to a detailed characterization, measurement and control of the specific parameters which actually determine product lifetime.

3.7 DATA COLLECTION AND PRESENTATION FOR IMPROVEMENT PROJECTS

Data collected from each element of the Reliability Program is summarized for scope and impact and distributed among all engineering disciplines in the company. This data facilitates improvement and provides our customers an opportunity to review the performance of our product.

3.6 RELIABILITY METHODS

The Reliability Program utilizes a number of stress tests that are presently being used to define performance levels of our products. Many of these stress tests are per MIL-STD-883D as shown in Table 1.

3.5 RELIABILITY PREDICTION METHODOLOGY

At Silicon Systems, the Arrhenius model is used to relate a failure rate at an accelerated temperature test condition to a normal use temperature condition.

The model basically states $FR = A \exp(-E_a/KT)$

Where:

- FR = Failure rate
- A = Constant
- E_a = Activation Energy (eV)
- K = Boltzmann's constant 8.62×10^{-5} eV/degree K
- T = Absolute temperature (degrees K)

SECTION 4: ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE PROGRAM

4.1 ESD PREVENTION

Silicon Systems recognizes that the protection of Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) sensitive devices from damage by electrical transients and static electricity is vital. ESD safe procedures are incorporated throughout all operations which come in contact with these devices. Continuous improvement in the ESD protection levels is being accomplished through the incorporation of increasingly robust protection devices during the circuit design process as well as work area improvements.

Silicon Systems' quality actively incorporates several protection measures for the control of ESD. Some of the preventive measures include handling of parts at static safe-guarded workstations, the wearing of wrist straps during all handling operations, the use of conductive lab coats in all test areas and all areas which handle parts and the packaging of components in conductive or anti-static containers.

Silicon Systems' K-Series Family of One-Chip Modems

Section

3

K-SERIES
MODEM FAMILY

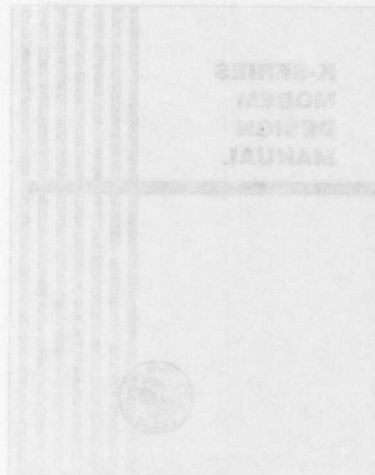
3

In addition, an innovative bus structure makes a separate signal path for the modem's internal logic. This feature allows optimal performance with single +5V supply operation and is unique to Silicon Systems' products.

Silicon Systems' single-chip modem IC family is the most effective solution for a wide range of communications standards and applications. The products provide a full range of communications standards and speeds up to 2400 bits. Moreover, features can be extended to include additional modes and higher operating speeds without impacting existing designs. Take advantage of these capabilities. Design for tomorrow's needs today by using Silicon Systems' K-Series modem IC family.

K-Series Modem Design Manual

The Silicon Systems K-Series Modem Design Manual contains a large body of application literature for the K-Series family of single-chip modem products. This manual is intended as a tutorial for those users who may be designing with modems for the first time, and also as a helpful guide for more experienced modem designers.



The K-Series Modem Design Manual is available through our worldwide network of representatives and distributors.

Silicon Systems' single-chip modem IC family offers the most extensive line of one-chip modem ICs available, with high-performance, cost-effective designs for a wide range of applications. The K-Series family of modems is a single-chip solution that can be easily integrated into any computer system. Using a K-Series family modem IC in your application eliminates product obsolescence, and minimizes development costs.

The Silicon Systems modem IC family consists of four basic products:

1. The SSI 73K322L, a multi-mode device which combines both Bell 212A103 and V.22/V.21 capabilities in one chip, with operating modes at 0 - 30, 600 and 1200 bits.
2. The SSI 73K322U which combines the functionality of the 73K322L with the industry standard 18C450 UART.
3. The SSI 73K324L, a major technological breakthrough which provides 2400 bits V.22bis operation in addition to V.22/V.21 and Bell 212A103 modes in a single IC.
4. The SSI 73K322L provides CCITT V.22/V.21 plus V.23 Videotex modes.

New additions to Silicon Systems' modem IC family extend the available operating modes and provide features which greatly simplify integral modem design. The SSI 73K324L offers V.22bis, V.22/V.21 and V.23 operating modes on one chip. These products dramatically reduce external circuitry required for dedicated integral modem designs.

Silicon Systems' one-chip modem IC products represent technical achievements unmatched in the industry. An advanced Digital Signal Processor resides on the same chip with sophisticated analog circuitry in the SSI 73K322L and SSI 73K324L products. "U" versions of the K-Series devices integrate an industry standard UART with full modem capability on a single chip. In

Introduction

Silicon Systems' K-Series Family of One-Chip Modems

Silicon Systems is a leader in the design and manufacturing of CMOS VLSI modems. Currently, Silicon Systems offers the most extensive line of one-chip modem ICs available, with high-performance, cost-effective designs suitable for a wide range of applications. Silicon Systems' fully compatible modem IC family has redefined the modem IC as a universal component which can be easily integrated into any system. Designs can be upgraded to meet different standards and speeds by simply substituting one K-Series IC for another. Using a K-Series family modem IC in your application eliminates product obsolescence, and minimizes development costs.

The Silicon Systems modem IC family consists of four basic products:

1. The SSI 73K222L, a multi-mode device which combines both Bell 212A/103 and V.22/V.21 capability in one chip, with operating modes at 0 - 30, 600 and 1200 bit/s.
2. The SSI 73K222U which combines the functionality of the 73K222L with the industry standard 16C450 UART.
3. The SSI 73K224L, a major technological breakthrough which provides 2400 bit/s V.22bis operation in addition to V.22/V.21 and Bell 212A/103 modes in a single IC.
4. The SSI 73K322L provides CCITT V.22/V.21 plus V.23 Videotex modes.

New additions to Silicon Systems' modem IC family extend the available operating modes and provide features which greatly simplify integral modem design. The SSI 73K324L offers V.22bis, V.22/V.21 and V.23 operating modes on one chip. These products dramatically reduce external circuitry required for dedicated integral modem designs.

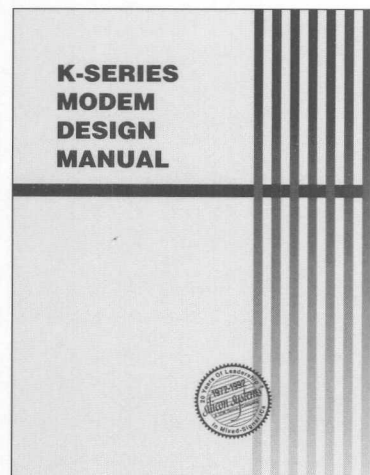
Silicon Systems' one-chip modem IC products represent technical achievements unmatched in the industry. An advanced Digital Signal Processor resides on the same chip with sophisticated analog circuitry in the SSI 73K224L and SSI 73K324L products. "U" versions of the K-Series devices integrate an industry standard UART with full modem capability on a single chip. In

addition, an innovative bus structure makes a separate controller unnecessary in dedicated integral designs. All K-Series devices are available in low-power versions. This feature allows optimal performance with single +5V supply operation and is unique to Silicon Systems' products.

Silicon Systems' single-chip modem IC family is designed to be the most effective solution for a wide variety of modem applications. The products provide for a full range of communications standards and speeds up to 2400 bit/s. Moreover, features can be extended to include additional modes and higher operating speeds without impacting existing designs. Take advantage of these capabilities. Design for tomorrow's needs today by using Silicon Systems' K-Series modem IC family.

K-Series Modem Design Manual

The Silicon Systems K-Series Modem Design Manual contains a large body of application literature for the K-Series family of single chip modem products. This manual is intended as a tutorial for those users who may be designing with modems for the first time, and also as a helpful guide for more experienced modem designers.



The K-Series Modem Design Manual is available through our worldwide network of representatives and distributors.

January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73K212L is a highly integrated single-chip modem IC which provides the functions needed to construct a typical Bell 212A full-duplex modem. Using an advanced CMOS process that integrates analog, digital and switched-capacitor filter functions on a single substrate, the SSI 73K212L offers excellent performance and a high level of functional integration in a single 28-Lead PLCC, 28-or 22-pin DIP configuration. The SSI 73K212L operates from a single +5V supply.

The SSI 73K212L includes the DPSK and FSK modulator/demodulator functions, call progress and hand-shake tone monitor test modes and a DTMF dialer. This device supports all Bell 212A modes of operation allowing both synchronous and asynchronous communications.

Test features such as analog loop, digital loop, and remote digital loopback are provided. Internal pattern generators are also included for self-testing. The SSI 73K212L is designed to appear to the systems designer as a microprocessor peripheral, and will easily interface with popular one-chip microprocessors

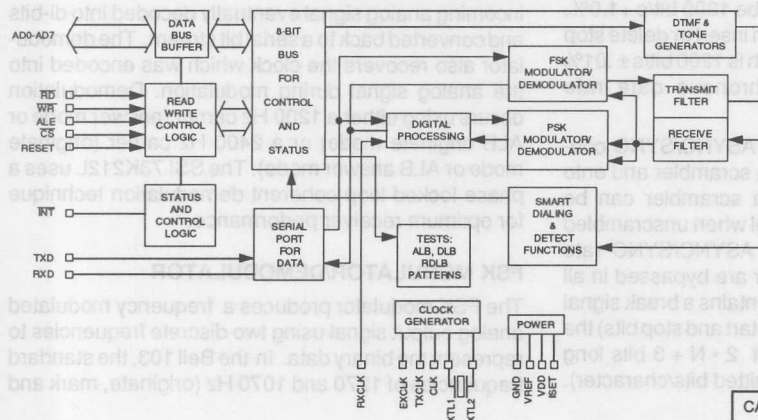
(Continued)

FEATURES

- One-chip Bell 212A and 103 standard compatible modem data pump
- Full-duplex operation at 0-300 bit/s (FSK) or 1200 bit/s (DPSK)
- Pin and software compatible with other SSI K-Series 1-chip modems
- Interfaces directly with standard microprocessors (8048, 80C51 typical)
- Serial or parallel microprocessor bus for control
- Serial port for data transfer
- Both synchronous and asynchronous modes of operation
- Call progress, carrier, precise answer tone and long loop detectors
- DTMF generators
- Test modes available: ALB, DL, RDL, Mark, Space, Alternating bit patterns
- Precise automatic gain control allows 45 dB dynamic range
- CMOS technology for low power consumption using 30 mW @ 5V
- Single +5V supply

3

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM

| | | | |
|------|----|----|-------|
| CLK | 1 | 28 | GND |
| XTL1 | 2 | 27 | RXA |
| XTL2 | 3 | 26 | VREF |
| AD0 | 4 | 25 | RESET |
| AD1 | 5 | 24 | ISCT |
| AD2 | 6 | 23 | RXCLK |
| AD3 | 7 | 22 | RXD |
| AD4 | 8 | 21 | TXD |
| AD5 | 9 | 20 | CS |
| AD6 | 10 | 19 | EXCLK |
| AD7 | 11 | 18 | TXCLK |
| ALE | 12 | 17 | INT |
| WR | 13 | 16 | TXA |
| RD | 14 | 15 | VDD |

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

DESCRIPTION (Continued)

(80C51 typical) for control of modem functions through its 8-bit multiplexed address/data bus or serial control bus. An ALE control line simplifies address demultiplexing. Data communications occurs through a separate serial port only.

The SSI 73K212L is ideal for use in either free standing or integral system modem products where full-duplex 1200 bit/s data communications over the 2-wire switched telephone network is desired. Its high functionality, low power consumption and efficient packaging simplify design requirements and increase system reliability. A complete modem requires only the addition of the phone line interface, a control microprocessor, and RS-232 level converter for a typical system. The SSI 73K212L is part of SSI's K-Series family of pin and function compatible single-chip modem products. These devices allow systems to be configured for higher speeds and Bell or CCITT operation with only a single component change.

OPERATION

ASYNCHRONOUS MODE

Data transmission for the DPSK mode requires that data ultimately be transmitted in a synchronous fashion. The SSI 73K212L includes ASYNC/SYNC and SYNC/ASYNC converters which delete or insert stop bits in order to transmit data within a 0.01% rate. In asynchronous mode the serial data comes from the TXD pin into the ASYNC/SYNC converter. The ASYNC/SYNC converter accepts the data provided on the TXD pin which normally must be 1200 bit/s $\pm 1.0\%$, -2.5% . The rate converter will then insert or delete stop bits in order to output a signal which is 1200 bit/s $\pm .01\%$ ($\pm .01\%$ is the required synchronous data rate accuracy).

The serial data stream from the ASYNC/SYNC converter is passed through the data scrambler and onto the analog modulator. The data scrambler can be bypassed under processor control when unscrambled data must be transmitted. The ASYNC/SYNC rate converter and the data scrambler are bypassed in all FSK modes. If serial input data contains a break signal through one character (including start and stop bits) the break will be extended to at least $2 \cdot N + 3$ bits long (where N is the number of transmitted bits/character).

Serial data from the demodulator is passed first through the data descrambler and then through the SYNC/ASYNC rate converter. The SYNC/ASYNC converter will reinsert any deleted stop bits and transmit output data at an intra-character rate (bit-to-bit timing) of no greater than 1219 bit/s. An incoming break signal (low through two characters) will be passed through without incorrectly inserting a stop bit.

SYNCHRONOUS MODE

The Bell 212A standard defines synchronous operation only at 1200 bit/s. Operation is similar to that of the asynchronous mode except that data must be synchronized to a provided clock and no variation in data transfer rate is allowable. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK.

TXCLK is an internally derived 1200 Hz signal in internal mode and is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in slave mode. Receive data at the RXD pin is clocked out on the falling edge of RXCLK. The ASYNCH/SYNCH converter is bypassed when synchronous mode is selected and data is transmitted out at the same rate as it is input.

DPSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The SSI 73K212L modulates a serial bit stream into dibit pairs that are represented by four possible phase shifts as prescribed by the Bell 212A standard. The baseband signal is then filtered to reduce intersymbol interference on the bandlimited 2-wire telephone line. Transmission occurs using either a 1200 Hz (originate mode) or 2400 Hz carrier (answer mode). Demodulation is the reverse of the modulation process, with the incoming analog signal eventually decoded into di-bits and converted back to a serial bit stream. The demodulator also recovers the clock which was encoded into the analog signal during modulation. Demodulation occurs using either a 1200 Hz carrier (answer mode or ALB originate mode) or a 2400 Hz carrier (originate mode or ALB answer mode). The SSI 73K212L uses a phase locked loop coherent demodulation technique for optimum receiver performance.

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator produces a frequency modulated analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. In the Bell 103, the standard frequencies of 1270 and 1070 Hz (originate, mark and

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

space) or 2225 and 2025 Hz (answer, mark and space) are used. V.21 mode uses 980 and 1180 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 1650 and 1850 Hz (answer, mark and space). Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value. The rate converter and scrambler/descrambler are bypassed in the 103 mode.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

High and low band filters are included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit and receive signals and provide compromise delay equalization and rejection of out-of-band signals in the receive channel. Amplitude and phase equalization are necessary to compensate for distortion of the transmission line and to reduce intersymbol interference in the bandlimited receive signal. The transmit signal filtering approximates a 75% square root of raised Cosine frequency response characteristic.

AGC

The automatic gain control maintains a signal level at the input to the demodulators which is constant to within 1 dB. It corrects quickly for increases in signal which would cause clipping and provides a total receiver dynamic range of >45 dB.

PARALLEL BUS INTERFACE

Four 8-bit registers are provided for control, option select and status monitoring. These registers are addressed with the AD0, AD1, and AD2 multiplexed address lines (latched by ALE) and appear to a control microprocessor as four consecutive memory locations. Two control registers and the tone register are read/write memory. The status detect register is read only and cannot be modified except by modem response to monitored parameters.

SERIAL COMMAND INTERFACE

The serial command mode allows access to the SSI 73K212L control and status registers via a serial command port (22-pin version only). In this mode the A0, A1 and A2 lines provide register addresses for data passed through the data pin under control of the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} lines. A read operation is initiated when the \overline{RD} line is taken low. The next eight cycles of EXCLK will then transfer out eight bits of the selected address location LSB first. A write takes place by shifting in eight bits of data LSB first for eight consecutive cycles of

EXCLK. \overline{WR} is then pulsed low and data transferred into the selected register occurs on the rising edge of \overline{WR} .

SPECIAL DETECT CIRCUITRY

The special detect circuitry monitors the received analog signal to determine status or presence of carrier, call-progress tones, answer tone and weak received signal, (long loop condition). An unscrambled mark request signal is also detected when the received data out of the DPSK demodulator before the descrambler has been high for $165.5 \text{ ms} \pm 6.5 \text{ ms}$ minimum. The appropriate detect register bit is set when one of these conditions changes and an interrupt is generated for all purposes except long loop. The interrupts are disabled (masked) when the enable interrupt bit is set to 0.

DTMF GENERATOR

The DTMF generator will output one of 16 standard tone pairs determined by a 4-bit binary value and TX DTMF mode bit previously loaded into the tone register. Tone generation is initiated when the DTMF mode is selected using the tone register and the transmit enable (CR0 bit D1) is changed from 0 to 1.

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION

POWER

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------|--------|--------|------|--|
| GND | 28 | 1 | I | System Ground. |
| VDD | 15 | 11 | I | Power supply input, $5V \pm 10\%$ (73K212L). Bypass with .1 and 22 μF capacitors to ground. |
| VREF | 26 | 21 | O | An internally generated reference voltage. Bypass with 0.1 μF capacitor to GND. |
| ISET | 24 | 19 | I | Chip current reference. Sets bias current for op-amps. The chip current is set by connecting this pin to VDD through a 2 M Ω resistor. ISET should be bypassed to GND with a 0.1 μF capacitor. |

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|------------------|------|----|-----|--|
| ALE | 12 | - | I | Address latch enable. The falling edge of ALE latches the address on AD0-AD7 and the chip select on \overline{CS} . |
| AD0-AD7 | 4-11 | - | I/O | Address/data bus. These bidirectional tri-state multiplexed lines carry information to and from the internal registers. |
| \overline{CS} | 20 | - | I | Chip select. A low during the falling edge of ALE on this pin allows a read cycle or a write cycle to occur. AD0-AD7 will not be driven and no registers will be written if \overline{CS} (latched) is not active. The state of \overline{CS} is latched on the falling edge of ALE. |
| CLK | 1 | 2 | O | Output clock. This pin is selectable under processor control to be either the crystal frequency (for use as a processor clock) or 16 x the data rate for use as a baud rate clock in DPSK modes only. The pin defaults to the crystal frequency on reset. |
| \overline{INT} | 17 | 13 | O | Interrupt. This open drain output signal is used to inform the processor that a detect flag has occurred. The processor must then read the detect register to determine which detect triggered the interrupt. \overline{INT} will stay low until the processor reads the detect register or does a full reset. |
| \overline{RD} | 14 | - | I | Read. A low requests a read of the SSI 73K212L internal registers. Data cannot be output unless both \overline{RD} and the latched \overline{CS} are active or low. |

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE (Continued)

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|--------|--------|------|--|
| RESET | 25 | 20 | I | Reset. An active high signal on this pin will put the chip into an inactive state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) will be reset. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. An internal pull down resistor permits power on reset using a capacitor to VDD. |
| \overline{WR} | 13 | - | I | Write. A low on this informs the SSI 73K212L that data is available on AD0-AD7 for writing into an internal register. Data is latched on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . No data is written unless both \overline{WR} and the latched \overline{CS} are low. |

SERIAL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|-----------------|---|-----|-----|--|
| A0-A2 | - | 5-7 | I | Register Address Selection. These lines carry register addresses and should be valid during any read or write operation. |
| DATA | - | 8 | I/O | Serial Control Data. Data for a read/write operation is clocked in or out on the falling edge of the EXCLK pin. The direction of data flow is controlled by the \overline{RD} pin. \overline{RD} low outputs data. \overline{RD} high inputs data. |
| \overline{RD} | - | 10 | I | Read. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K212L that data or status information is being read by the processor. The falling edge of the \overline{RD} signal will initiate a read from the addressed register. The \overline{RD} signal must continue for eight falling edges of EXCLK in order to read all eight bits of the referenced register. Read data is provided LSB first. Data will not be output unless the \overline{RD} signal is active. |
| \overline{WR} | - | 9 | I | Write. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K212L that data or status information has been shifted in through the DATA pin and is available for writing to an internal register. The normal procedure for a write is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive falling edges of EXCLK and then to pulse \overline{WR} low. Data is written on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . |

Note: In the serial, 22-pin version, the pins AD0-AD7, ALE and \overline{CS} are removed and replaced with the pins; A0, A1, A2, DATA, and an unconnected pin. Also, the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} controls are used differently. The Serial Control mode is provided in the parallel control versions by tying ALE high and \overline{CS} low. In this configuration AD7 becomes DATA and AD0, AD1 and AD2 become A0, A1 and A2, respectively.

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

DTE USER INTERFACE

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|--------|--------|------|--|
| EXCLK | 19 | 15 | I | External Clock. This signal is used in synchronous transmission when the external timing option has been selected. In the external timing mode the rising edge of EXCLK is used to strobe synchronous DPSK transmit data applied to the TXD pin. Also used for serial control interface. |
| RXCLK | 23 | 18 | O | Receive Clock. The falling edge of this clock output is coincident with the transitions in the serial received data output. The rising edge of RXCLK can be used to latch the valid output data. RXCLK will be valid as long as a carrier is present. |
| RXD | 22 | 17 | O | Received Data Output. Serial receive data is available on this pin. The data is always valid on the rising edge of RXCLK when in synchronous mode. RXD will output constant marks if no carrier is detected. |
| TXCLK | 18 | 14 | O | Transmit Clock. This signal is used in synchronous transmission to latch serial input data on the TXD pin. Data must be provided so that valid data is available on the rising edge of the TXCLK. The transmit clock is derived from different sources depending upon the synchronization mode selection. In Internal Mode the clock is generated internally. In External Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the EXCLK pin. In Slave Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the RXCLK pin. TXCLK is always active. |
| TXD | 21 | 16 | I | Transmit Data Input. Serial data for transmission is applied on this pin. In synchronous modes, the data must be valid on the rising edge of the TXCLK clock. In asynchronous modes (1200 bit/s or 300 baud) no clocking is necessary. DPSK data must be 1200 bit/s $\pm 1\%$, $\pm 2.5\%$. |

ANALOG INTERFACE AND OSCILLATOR

| | | | | |
|------|----|----|---|---|
| RXA | 27 | 22 | I | Received modulated analog signal input from the telephone line interface. |
| TXA | 16 | 12 | O | Transmit analog output to the telephone line interface. |
| XTL1 | 2 | 3 | I | These pins are for the internal crystal oscillator requiring a 11.0592 MHz parallel mode crystal and two load capacitors to Ground. Consult crystal manufacturer for proper values. XTL2 can also be driven from an external clock. |
| XTL2 | 3 | 4 | I | |

SSI 73K212L Bell 212A/103 Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER DESCRIPTIONS

Four 8-bit internal registers are accessible for control and status monitoring. The registers are accessed in read or write operations by addressing the A0, A1 and A2 address lines in serial mode, or the AD0, AD1 and AD2 lines in parallel mode. In parallel mode the address lines are latched by ALE. Register CR0 controls the method by which data is transferred over the phone

line. CR1 controls the interface between the microprocessor and the SSI 73K212L internal state. DR is a detect register which provides an indication of monitored modem status conditions. TR, the tone control register, controls the DTMF generator, answer and guard tones and RXD output gate used in the modem initial connect sequence. All registers are read/write except for DR which is read only. Register control and status bits are identified below:

REGISTER BIT SUMMARY

| | | ADDRESS | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----|-----------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|---|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| REGISTER | | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER ORIGINATE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARKS | CARRIER DETECT | ANSWER TONE | CALL PROGRESS | LONG LOOP |
| TONE CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2 | DTMF1 | DTMF0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | CR2 | 100 | | | | THESE REGISTER LOCATIONS ARE RESERVED FOR | | | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | | | | USE WITH OTHER K-SERIES FAMILY MEMBERS | | | | |
| ID REGISTER | ID | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

NOTE: When a register containing reserved control bits is written into, the reserved bits must be programmed as 0's.

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER ADDRESS TABLE

| ADDRESS | | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------|-----|--|--------------------|---|--------------------------------|--|---|--|-------------------------|
| REGISTER | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE ORIGINATE/ ANSWER | |
| | | | | | 0000=PWR DOWN 0001=INT SYNCH 0010=EXT SYNCH 0011=SLAVE SYNCH 0100=ASYNCH 8 BITS/CHAR 0101=ASYNCH 9 BITS/CHAR 0110=ASYNCH 10 BITS/CHAR 0111=ASYNCH 11 BITS/CHAR 1100=FSK | | | 0=DISABLE TXA OUTPUT 1=ENABLE TXA OUTPUT | | 0=ANSWER 1=ORIGINATE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| | | | 00=TX DATA 01=TX ALTERNATE 10=TX MARK 11=TX SPACE | | 0=DISABLE 1=ENABLE | 0=NORMAL 1=BYPASS SCRAMBLER | 0=XTAL 1=16 X DATA RATE OUTPUT AT CLK PIN IN DPSK MODE ONLY | 0=NORMAL 1=RESET | 00=NORMAL 01=ANALOG LOOPBACK 10=REMOTE DIGITAL LOOPBACK 11=LOCAL DIGITAL LOOPBACK | |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARKS | CARRIER DETECT | ANSWER TONE | CALL PROGRESS | LONG LOOP |
| | | | | | OUTPUTS RECEIVED DATA STREAM | | 0=CONDITION NOT DETECTED 1=CONDITION DETECTED | | | |
| TONE CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2 | DTMF1 | DTMF0 |
| | | | RXD PIN 0=NORMAL 1=TRI STATE | | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=DATA 1=TX DTMF | 4 BIT CODE FOR 1 OF 16 DUAL TONE COMBINATIONS. | | | |
| ID REGISTER | 10 | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

00XX=73K212L, 322L, 321L
 01XX=73K221L, 302L
 10XX=73K222L
 1100=73K224L
 1110=73K324L
 1101=73K312L

SSI 73K212L Bell 212A/103 Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------------------|----------------------|----|--------------------|--------------------|---|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D0 | Answer/ Originate | | 0 | | Selects answer mode (transmit in high band, receive in low band). | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Selects originate mode (transmit in low band, receive in high band). | | | |
| D1 | Transmit Enable | | 0 | | Disables transmit output at TXA. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Enables transmit output at TXA. | | | |
| | | | | | Note: Answer tone and DTMF TX control require TX enable. | | | |
| D5, D4, D3, D2 | Transmit Mode | | D5 D4 D3 D2 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 0 | | Selects power down mode. All functions disabled except digital interface. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 1 | | Internal synchronous mode. In this mode TXCLK is an internally derived 1200 Hz signal. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK. Receive data is clocked out of RXD on the falling edge of RXCLK. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 1 0 | | External synchronous mode. Operation is identical to internal synchronous, but TXCLK is connected internally to EXCLK pin, and a 1200 Hz clock must be supplied externally. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 1 1 | | Slave synchronous mode. Same operation as other synchronous modes. TXCLK is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in this mode. | | | |
| | | | 0 1 0 0 | | Selects DPSK asynchronous mode - 8 bits/character (1 start bit, 6 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 0 1 | | Selects DPSK asynchronous mode - 9 bits/character (1 start bit, 7 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 1 0 | | Selects DPSK asynchronous mode - 10 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 1 1 | | Selects DPSK asynchronous mode - 11 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, Parity and 1 stop or 2 stop bits). | | | |
| | | | 1 1 0 0 | | Selects FSK operation. | | | |
| D6 | | | 0 | | Not used, must be written as "0." | | | |

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 1

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|--|------------------|----------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| CR1 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTER. | BYPASS SCRAMB | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D1, D0 | Test Mode | D1 D0 | | | | | | |
| | | 0 0 | Selects normal operating mode. | | | | | |
| | | 0 1 | Analog loopback mode. Loops the transmitted analog signal back to the receiver, and causes the receiver to use the same center frequency as the transmitter. To squelch the TXA pin, transmit enable bit must be low. | | | | | |
| | | 1 0 | Selects remote digital loopback. Received data is looped back to transmit data internally, and RXD is forced to a mark. Data on TXD is ignored. | | | | | |
| | | 1 1 | Selects local digital loopback. Internally loops TXD back to RXD and continues to transmit data carrier at the TXA pin. | | | | | |
| D2 | Reset | 0 | Selects normal operation. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Resets modem to power down state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) are reset to zero. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency on reset. | | | | | |
| D3 | CLK Control (Clock Control) | 0 | Selects 11.0592 MHz crystal echo output at CLK pin. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Selects 16 X the data rate, output at CLK pin in DPSK modes only. | | | | | |
| D4 | Bypass Scrambler | 0 | Selects normal operation. DPSK transmit data is passed through scrambler. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Selects Scrambler Bypass. Bypass DPSK data is routed around scrambler in the transmit path. | | | | | |
| D5 | Enable Detect Interrupt | 0 | Disables interrupt at INT pin. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Enables $\overline{\text{INT}}$ output. An interrupts will be generated with a change in status of DR bits D1-D4. The answer tone and call progress detect interrupts are masked when the TX enable bit is set. Carrier detect is masked when TX DTMF is activated. All interrupts will be disabled if the device is in power down mode. | | | | | |

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 1 (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|---|----------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| CR1 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTER. | BYPASS SCRAMB | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D7, D6 | Transmit Pattern | | D7 D6 0 0 | Selects normal data transmission as controlled by the state of the TXD pin. | | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | Selects an alternating mark/space transmit pattern for modem testing. | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 | Selects a constant mark transmit pattern. | | | | |
| | | | 1 1 | Selects a constant space transmit pattern. | | | | |

DETECT REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-----------|----------------------------|----|-----------------|---|-----------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|
| DR 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK | CARR. DETECT | ANSWER TONE | CALL PROG. | LONG LOOP |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | LONG LOOP | | 0 | Indicates normal received signal. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates low received signal. | | | | |
| D1 | CALL PROGRESS DETECT | | 0 | No call progress tone detected. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates presence of call progress tones. The call progress detection circuitry is activated by energy in the 350 to 620 Hz call progress band. | | | | |
| D2 | ANSWER TONE DETECT | | 0 | No answer tone detected. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates detection of 2225 Hz answer tone. The device must be in originate mode for detection of answer tone. | | | | |
| D3 | CARRIER DETECT | | 0 | No carrier detected in the receive channel. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicated carrier has been detected in the received channel. | | | | |
| D4 | UNSCRAM- BLED MARK | | 0 | No unscrambled mark. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates detection of unscrambled marks in the received data. A valid indication requires that unscrambled marks be received for $> 165.5 \pm 6.5$ ms. | | | | |

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

DETECT REGISTER (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|--------------|----|--------------|--|--------------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| DR 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK | CARR. DETECT | ANSWER TONE | CALL PROG. | LONG LOOP |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D5 | RECEIVE DATA | | | Continuously outputs the received data stream. This data is the same as that output on the RXD pin, but it is not disabled when RXD is tri-stated. | | | | |
| D6, D7 | | | | Not used. | | | | |

TO NE REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|----------------|-------------------|--------------------|---|---------------|----------|--------|--------|--------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2 | DTMF 1 | DTMF 0 |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 | DTMF | D3 D2 D1 D0 | Programs 1 of 16 DTMF tone pairs that will be transmitted when TX DTMF and TX enable bit (CR0, bit D1) are set. Tone encoding is shown below: | | | | | |
| | | 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 | | | | | | |
| | | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | DTMF CODE | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| | | | | TONES | LOW HIGH | | | |
| | | | 1 | 0 0 0 1 | 697 | 1209 | | |
| | | | 2 | 0 0 1 0 | 697 | 1336 | | |
| | | | 3 | 0 0 1 1 | 697 | 1477 | | |
| | | | 4 | 0 1 0 0 | 770 | 1209 | | |
| | | | 5 | 0 1 0 1 | 770 | 1336 | | |
| | | | 6 | 0 1 1 0 | 770 | 1477 | | |
| | | | 7 | 0 1 1 1 | 852 | 1209 | | |
| | | | 8 | 1 0 0 0 | 852 | 1336 | | |
| | | | 9 | 1 0 0 1 | 852 | 1477 | | |
| | | | 0 | 1 0 1 0 | 941 | 1336 | | |
| | | | * | 1 0 1 1 | 941 | 1209 | | |
| | | | # | 1 1 0 0 | 941 | 1477 | | |
| | | | A | 1 1 0 1 | 697 | 1633 | | |
| | | | B | 1 1 1 0 | 770 | 1633 | | |
| | | | C | 1 1 1 1 | 852 | 1633 | | |
| | | | D | 0 0 0 0 | 941 | 1633 | | |

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER (Continued)

| TR 011 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|----------------------|------|--|---------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2 | DTMF 1 | DTMF 0 |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D4 | TRANSMIT DTMF | 0 | Disable DTMF. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Activates DTMF. The selected DTMF tones are transmitted continuously when this bit is high (with Transmit Enable, CR0-D1). TX DTMF overrides all other transmit functions. | | | | | |
| D5 | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | 0 | Disables answer tone generator. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Enables answer tone generator. A 2225 Hz answer tone will be transmitted continuously when the Transmit Enable bit is set in CR0. The device must be in answer mode. | | | | | |
| D7 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | 0 | Enables RXD pin. Receive data will be output on RXD. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Disables RXD pin. The RXD pin reverts to a high impedance with internal, weak pull-up resistor. | | | | | |

ID REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|----|-------------|----|--|----|----|----|
| ID 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D7, D6, D5 D4 | Device Identification Signature | | D7 D6 D5 D4 | | Indicates Device: | | | |
| | | | 0 0 X X | | SSI 73K212L, 73K321L or 73K322L or 73K321L | | | |
| | | | 0 1 X X | | SSI 73K221L or 73K302L | | | |
| | | | 1 0 X X | | SSI 73K222L | | | |
| | | | 1 1 0 0 | | SSI 73K224L | | | |
| | | | 1 1 1 0 | | SSI 73K324L | | | |
| | | | 1 1 0 1 | | SSI 73K312L | | | |

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|---------------------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 14 V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260°C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD + 0.3 V |
| Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected. | |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | | 4.5 | 5 | 5.5 | V |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temperature | | -40 | | +85 | °C |
| Clock Variation | (11.0592 MHz) Crystal or external clock | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| External Components (Refer to Application section for placement.) | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass capacitor | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| Bias setting resistor and ISET pins) | (Placed between VDD | 1.8 | 2 | 2.2 | MΩ |
| ISET Bypass capacitor | (ISET pin to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass capacitor 1 | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass capacitor 2 | (External to GND) | 22 | | | μF |
| XTL1 Load Capacitor | Depends on crystal characteristics; | | | 40 | pF |
| XTL2 Load Capacitor | from pin to GND | | | 20 | pF |

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| IDD, Supply Current | ISET Resistor = 2 MΩ | | | | |
| IDD, Active | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | 8 | 12 | mA |
| IDD1, Power-down | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | | 4 | mA |
| IDD2, Power-down | CLK = 19.200 kHz | | | 3 | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | | |
| Reset, XTL1, XTL2 | | 3.0 | | VDD | V |
| All other inputs | | 2.0 | | VDD | V |

SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (continued)
(TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|------|-----|-----|-------|
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | 0 | | 0.8 | V |
| IIH, Input High Current | VI = VIH Max | | | 100 | μA |
| IIL, Input Low Current | VI = VIL Min | -200 | | | μA |
| Reset Pull-down Current | Reset = VDD | 1 | | 50 | μA |
| Input Capacitance | All Digital Input Pins | | | 10 | pF |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | |
| VOH, Output High Voltage | IOH MIN = -0.4 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| VOL, Output Low Voltage | IO MAX=1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| VOL, CLK Output | IO = 3.6 mA | | | 0.6 | V |
| RXD Tri-State Pull-up Curr. | RXD = GND | -1 | | -50 | μA |
| CMAx, CLK Output | Maximum Capacitive Load | | | 15 | pF |

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING
(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|--|-------|-------|-----|-------|
| PSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Carrier Suppression | Measured at TXA | 55 | | | dB |
| Output Amplitude | TX scrambled marks | -11 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| FSK Mod/Demod | | | | | |
| Output Freq. Error | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | -0.35 | | +35 | % |
| Transmit Level | Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| Harmonic Distortion in 700-2900 Hz band | THD in the alternate band DPSK or FSK | | -60 | -50 | dB |
| Output Bias Distortion | Transmit Dotting Pattern In ALB @ RXD | | ±8 | | % |
| Total Output Jitter | Random Input in ALB @ RXD | -15 | | +15 | % |
| DTMF Generator | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | | -.25 | | +25 | % |
| Output Amplitude | Low-Band, DPSK Mode | -10 | -9 | -8 | dBm0 |
| Output Amplitude | High-Band, DPSK Mode | -8 | -7 | -6 | dBm0 |
| Twist | High-Band to Low-Band, DPSK mode | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | dB |
| Long Loop Detect | DPSK or FSK | -38 | | -28 | dBm0 |
| Dynamic Range | Refer to Performance Curves | | 45 | | dB |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)
DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--------------------------------|--|------|-----|------|------------------|
| Call Progress Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level | 2-Tones in 350-600 Hz band | -34 | | 0 | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | 2-Tones in 350-600 Hz band | | | -41 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 27 | | 80 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 27 | | 80 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Carrier Detect | | | | | |
| Threshold | DPSK or FSK receive data | -49 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 15 | | 45 | ms |
| Hysteresis | Single tone detected | 2 | 3 | | dB |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 10 | | 24 | ms |
| Answer Tone Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level | In FSK mode | -49 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 20 | | 45 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 10 | | 30 | ms |
| Detect Freq. Range | | -2.5 | | +2.5 | % |
| Output Smoothing Filter | | | | | |
| TXA pin Output Impedance | | | 200 | 300 | Ω |
| Output load | TXA pin; FSK Single Tone out for THD = -50 db in .3 to 3.4 KHz | 10 | | 50 | k Ω pF |
| Spurious Freq. Comp. | Frequency = 76.8 KHz | | | -39 | dBm0 |
| | Frequency = 153.6 KHz | | | -45 | dBm0 |
| Clock Noise | TXA pin; 76.8 KHz | | | 1.0 | mVrms |
| Carrier VCO | | | | | |
| Capture Range | Originate or Answer | -10 | | +10 | Hz |
| Capture Time | -10 Hz to +10 Hz Carrier Freq. Change Assum. | | 40 | 100 | ms |
| Recovered Clock | | | | | |
| Capture Range | % of frequency center frequency (center at 1200 Hz) | -625 | | +625 | ppm |
| Data Delay Time | Analog data in at RXA pin to receive data valid at RXD pin | | 30 | 50 | ms |

SSI 73K212L Bell 212A/103 Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|-----|-----|--------|-------|
| Timing (Refer to Timing Diagrams) | | | | | |
| TAL | $\overline{CS}/\text{Addr.}$ setup before ALE low | 30 | | | ns |
| TLA | $\overline{CS}/\text{Addr.}$ hold after ALE low | 20 | | | ns |
| TLC | ALE low to $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ low | 40 | | | ns |
| TCL | $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Control to ALE high | 10 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} low | 0 | | 160 | ns |
| TLL | ALE width | 60 | | | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after \overline{RD} high | 0 | | 80 | ns |
| TRW | \overline{RD} width | 200 | | 25000 | ns |
| TWW | \overline{WR} width | 140 | | 25000* | ns |
| TDW | Data setup before \overline{WR} high | 150 | | | ns |
| TWD | Data hold after \overline{WR} high | 20 | | | ns |
| TCKD | Data out after EXCLK low | | | 200 | ns |
| TCKW | \overline{WR} after EXCLK low | 150 | | | ns |
| TDCK | Data setup before EXCLK low | 150 | | | ns |
| TAC | Address setup before control** | 50 | | | ns |
| TCA | Address hold after control** | 50 | | | ns |
| TWH | Data Hold after EXCLK | 20 | | | ns |
| * Maximum time applies to parallel version only. | | | | | |
| ** Control for setup is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} . Control for hold is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or the rising edge of \overline{WR} . | | | | | |
| Note: Parameters expressed in dBm0 refer to the following definition: 5V Version 0 dB loss in the Transmit path to the line. 2 dB gain in the receive path from the line. Refer to the Basic Box Modem diagram in the Applications section for the DAA design. | | | | | |

3

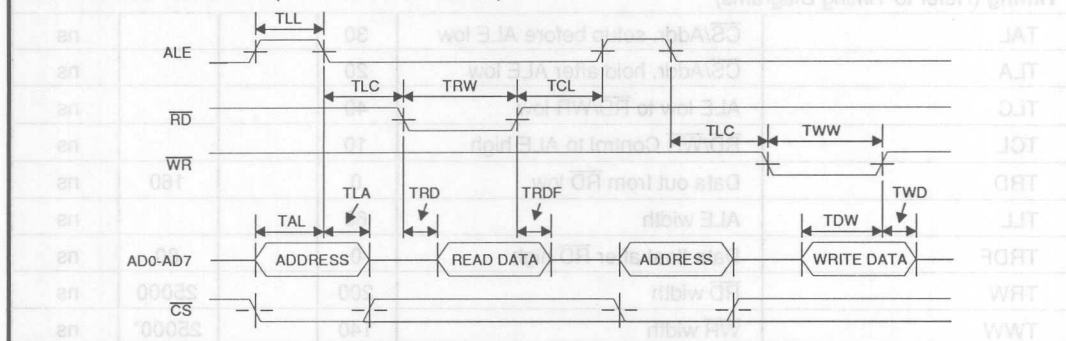
SSI 73K212L

Bell 212A/103

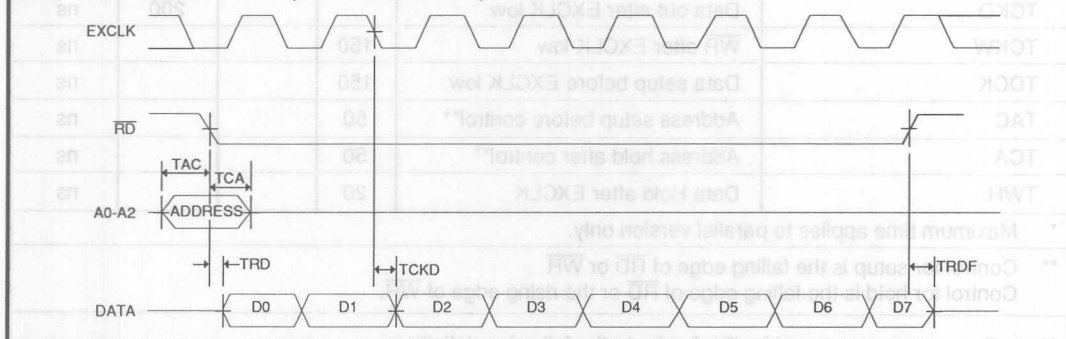
Single-Chip Modem

TIMING DIAGRAMS

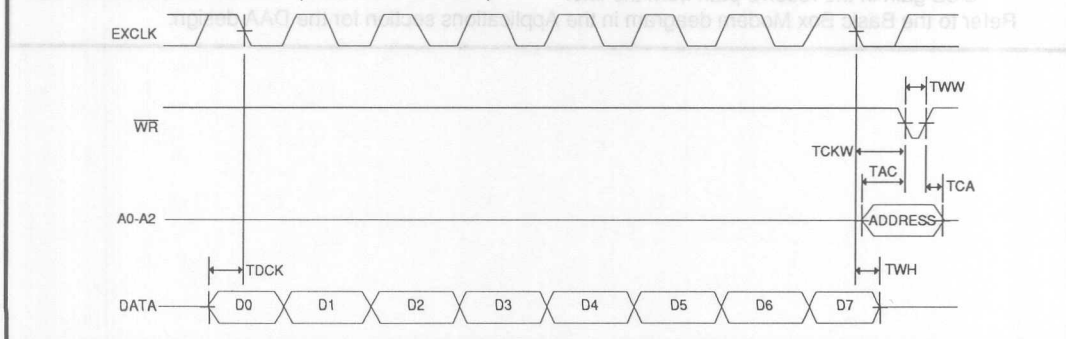
BUS TIMING DIAGRAM (PARALLEL VERSION)



READ TIMING DIAGRAM (SERIAL VERSION)



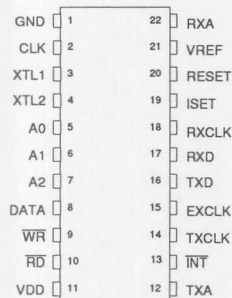
WRITE TIMING DIAGRAM (SERIAL VERSION)



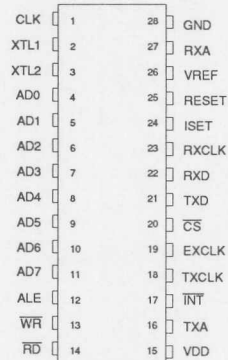
SSI 73K212L Bell 212A/103 Single-Chip Modem

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)

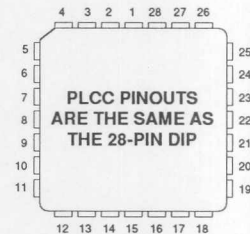
CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



**400-Mil
22-Pin DIP**



**600-Mil
28-Pin DIP**



**28-Pin
PLCC**

PLCC PINOUTS
ARE THE SAME AS
THE 28-PIN DIP

3

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-----------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 28-pin | | |
| Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K212L – IP | 73K212L – IP |
| Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | 73K212L – IH | 73K212L – IH |
| 22-pin | | |
| Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K212SL – IP | 73K212SL – IP |
| Ceramic Dual-In-Line | 73K212SL – IC | 73K212SL – IC |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

Single-Chip Modem Bell 212A/103 SSI 73K212L

Notes:

CAUTION: Use handling procedures for a static sensitive component.

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)



28-Pin
PLCC



800-MHz
28-Pin DIP



400-MHz
23-Pin DIP

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|--------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 28-pin Plastic Quad-In-Line | 73K212L - 1P | 73K212L - 1P |
| Plastic Leadless Chip Carrier | 73K212L - 1H | 73K212L - 1H |
| 23-pin Plastic Quad-In-Line | 73K212SL - 1P | 73K212SL - 1P |
| Ceramic Quad-In-Line | 73K212SL - 1C | 73K212SL - 1C |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14581 Midland Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 873-9000, FAX: (714) 873-6914

Protected by the following Patents: (4,881,172) (4,777,463)
©1993 Silicon Systems, Inc.

January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73K221L is a highly integrated single-chip modem IC which provides the functions needed to construct a CCITT V.22 and V.21 compatible modem, capable of 1200 or 0-300 bit/s full-duplex operation over dial-up lines. The SSI 73K221L is an enhancement of the SSI 73K212L single-chip modem with performance characteristics suitable for European and Asian telephone systems. The SSI 73K221L produces either 550 or 1800 Hz guard tone, recognizes and generates a 2100 Hz answer tone, and allows V.21 for 300 Hz FSK operation. The SSI 73K221L integrates analog, digital, and switched-capacitor array functions on a single substrate, offering excellent performance and a high level of functional integration in a single 28- or 22-pin DIP configuration. The SSI 73K221L, operates from a single +5 volt supply.

The SSI 73K221L includes the DPSK and FSK modulator/demodulator functions, call progress and handshake tone monitor test modes, and a tone generator capable of producing DTMF, answer and 550 or 1800 Hz guard tone. This device supports V.22 (Except mode v) and V.21 modes of operation,

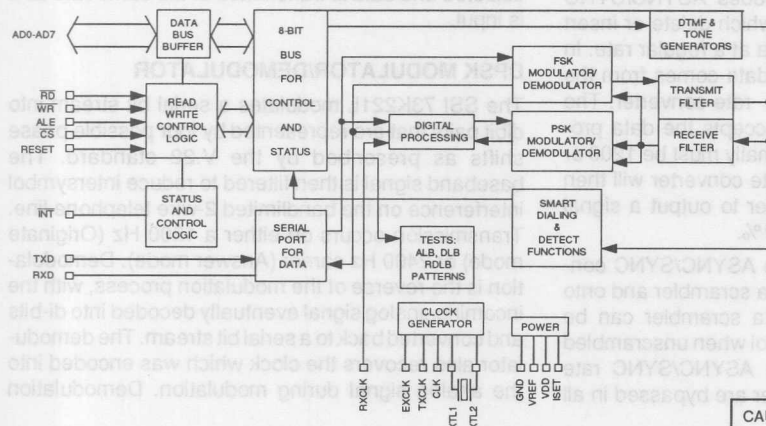
(Continued)

FEATURES

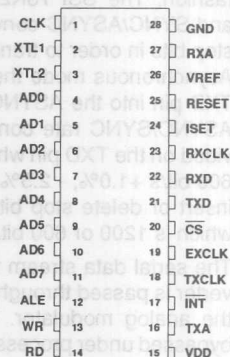
- One-chip CCITT V.22 and V.21 standard compatible modem data pump
- Full-duplex Operation at 0-300 bit/s (FSK) or 600 and 1200 bit/s (DPSK)
- Pin and software compatible with other SSI K-Series 1-chip modems
- Interfaces directly with standard microprocessors (8048, 80C51 typical)
- Serial (22-pin DIP) or parallel (28-pin DIP or PLCC) microprocessor bus for control
- Serial port for data transfer
- Both Synchronous and Asynchronous modes of operation
- Call progress, carrier, precise answer tone (2100 Hz), and long loop detectors
- DTMF, and 550 or 1800 Hz guard tone generators
- Test modes available: ALB, DL, RDL, Mark, Space, Alternating bit patterns
- Precise automatic gain control allows 45 dB dynamic range
- Space efficient 22- or 28-pin DIP or 28 Pin PLCC packages
- CMOS technology for low power consumption using 30 mW @ 5V
- Single +5 volt supply

3

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

DESCRIPTION (Continued)

allowing both synchronous and asynchronous communications. The SSI 73K221L is designed to appear to the systems designer as a microprocessor peripheral, and will easily interface with popular one-chip microprocessors (80C51 typical) for control of modem functions through its 8-bit multiplexed address/data bus or alternatively via the serial control bus. An ALE control line simplifies address demultiplexing. Data communications occurs through a separate serial port only.

The SSI 73K221L is ideal for use in either free standing or integral system modem products where full-duplex 1200 bit/s data communications over the 2-wire switched telephone network is desired. Its high functionality, low power consumption and efficient packaging simplify design requirements and increase system reliability. A complete modem requires only the addition of the phone line interface, a control microprocessor, and RS-232 level converter for a typical system. The SSI 73K221L is part of Silicon Systems' K-Series family of pin and function compatible single-chip modem products. These devices allow systems to be configured for higher speeds and Bell or CCITT operation with only a single component change.

OPERATION

ASYNCHRONOUS MODE

Data transmission for the DPSK mode requires that data ultimately be transmitted in a synchronous fashion. The SSI 73K221L includes ASYNC/SYNC and SYNC/ASYNC converters which delete or insert stop bits in order to transmit data at a regular rate. In Asynchronous mode the serial data comes from the TXD pin into the ASYNC/SYNC rate converter. The ASYNC/SYNC rate converter accepts the data provided on the TXD pin which normally must be 1200 or 600 bit/s $\pm 1.0\%$, -2.5% . The rate converter will then insert or delete stop bits in order to output a signal which is 1200 or 600 bit/s $\pm 0.01\%$.

The serial data stream from the ASYNC/SYNC converter is passed through the data scrambler and onto the analog modulator. The data scrambler can be bypassed under processor control when unscrambled data must be transmitted. The ASYNC/SYNC rate converter and the data scrambler are bypassed in all

FSK modes. If serial input data contains a break signal through one character (including start and stop bits) the break will be extended to at least $2 \cdot N + 3$ bits long (where N is the number of transmitted bits/character).

Serial data from the demodulator is passed first through the data descrambler and then through the SYNC/ASYNC rate converter. The SYNC/ASYNC converter will reinsert any deleted stop bits and transmit output data at an intra-character rate (bit-to-bit timing) of no greater than 1219 bit/s. An incoming break signal (low through two characters) will be passed through without incorrectly inserting a stop bit.

The SYNC/ASYNC converter also has an extended Overspeed mode which allows selection of an output range of either $+1\%$ or $+2.3\%$. In the extended Overspeed mode, stop bits are output at 7/8 the normal width.

SYNCHRONOUS MODE

The CCITT V.22 standard defines synchronous operation at 600 and 1200 bit/s. The Bell 212A standard defines synchronous operation only at 1200 bit/s. Operation is similar to that of the Asynchronous mode except that data must be synchronized to a provided clock and no variation in data transfer rate is allowable. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK.

TXCLK is an internally derived signal in Internal mode and is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in Slave mode. Receive data at the RXD pin is clocked out on the falling edge of RXCLK. The ASYNC/SYNC converter is bypassed when Synchronous mode is selected and data is transmitted at the same rate as it is input.

DPSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The SSI 73K221L modulates a serial bit stream into dibit pairs that are represented by four possible phase shifts as prescribed by the V.22 standard. The baseband signal is then filtered to reduce intersymbol interference on the bandlimited 2-wire telephone line. Transmission occurs on either a 1200 Hz (Originate mode) or 2400 Hz carrier (Answer mode). Demodulation is the reverse of the modulation process, with the incoming analog signal eventually decoded into di-bits and converted back to a serial bit stream. The demodulator also recovers the clock which was encoded into the analog signal during modulation. Demodulation

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

occurs using either a 1200 Hz carrier (Answer mode or ALB Originate mode) or a 2400 Hz carrier (Originate mode or ALB Answer mode). The SSI 73K221L uses a phase locked loop coherent demodulation technique for optimum performance.

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator produces a frequency modulated analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. V.21 mode uses 980 and 1180 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 1650 and 1850 Hz (answer, mark and space). Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value. The rate converter and scrambler/descrambler are bypassed in the V.21 mode.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

High and low band filters are included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit and receive signals and provide compromise delay equalization and rejection of out-of-band signals in the receive channel. Amplitude and phase equalization are necessary to compensate for distortion of the transmission line and to reduce intersymbol interference in the bandlimited receive signal. The transmit signal filtering approximates a 75% square root of raised Cosine frequency response characteristic.

AGC

The automatic gain control maintains a signal level at the input to the demodulators which is constant to within 1 dB. It corrects quickly for increases in signal which would cause clipping and provides a total dynamic range of >45 dB.

PARALLEL BUS INTERFACE

Four 8-bit registers are provided for control, optionselect and status monitoring. These registers are addressed with the AD0, AD1, and AD2 multiplexed address lines (latched by ALE) and appear to a control microprocessor as four consecutive memory locations. Two control registers and the tone register are read/write memory. The detect register is read only and cannot be modified except by modem response to monitored parameters.

SERIAL COMMAND INTERFACE

The serial Command mode allows access to the SSI 73K221L control and status registers via a serial command port (22-pin version only). In this mode the A0, A1 and A2 lines provide register addresses for data passed through the data pin under control of the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} lines. A read operation is initiated when the \overline{RD} line is taken low. The first bit is available after \overline{RD} is brought low and the next seven cycles of EXCLK will then transfer out the remaining seven bits of the selected address LSB first. A write takes place by shifting in eight bits of data LSB first for eight consecutive cycles of EXCLK. \overline{WR} is then pulsed low and data transferred into the addressed register on the rising edge of \overline{WR} .

SPECIAL DETECT CIRCUITRY

The special detect circuitry monitors the received analog signal to determine status or presence of carrier, call-progress tones, answer tone and weak received signal (long loop condition). An unscrambled mark signal is also detected when the received data out of the DPSK demodulator before the descrambler has been mark for $165.5 \text{ ms} \pm 6.5 \text{ ms}$ minimum. The appropriate detect register bit is set when one of these conditions changes and an interrupt is generated for all conditions except long loop. The interrupts are disabled (masked) when the enable interrupt bit is set to 0.

DTMF GENERATOR

The DTMF generator will output one of 16 standard tone pairs determined by a 4-bit binary value and TX DTMF mode bit previously loaded into the tone register. Tone generation is initiated when the DTMF mode is selected using the tone register and the transmit enable (CR0 bit D1) is changed from 0 to 1.

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION

POWER

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|--------|--------|------|---|
| GND | 28 | 1 | I | System Ground. |
| VDD | 15 | 11 | I | Power supply input, $5V \pm 10\%$. Bypass with 0.1 and 22 μF capacitors to ground. |
| VREF | 26 | 21 | O | An internally generated reference voltage. Bypass with 0.1 μF capacitor to GND. |
| ISSET | 24 | 19 | I | Chip current reference. Sets bias current for op-amps. The chip current is set by connecting this pin to VDD through a 2 M Ω resistor. ISSET should be bypassed to GND with a 0.1 μF capacitor. |

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|-----------------|------|----|-----|---|
| ALE | 12 | - | I | Address latch enable. The falling edge of ALE latches the address on AD0-AD7 and the chip select on \overline{CS} . |
| AD0-AD7 | 4-11 | - | I/O | Address/data bus. These bidirectional tri-state multiplexed lines carry information to and from the internal control registers. |
| \overline{CS} | 20 | - | I | Chip select. A low on this pin during the falling edge of ALE allows a read cycle or a write cycle to occur. AD0-AD7 will not be driven and no registers will be written if \overline{CS} (latched) is not active. The state \overline{CS} is a latched on the falling edge of ALE. |
| CLK | 1 | 2 | O | Output clock. This pin is selectable under processor control to be either the crystal frequency (for use as a processor clock) or 16 x the data rate for use as a baud rate clock in DPSK modes only. The pin defaults to the crystal frequency on reset. |
| INT | 17 | 13 | O | Interrupt. This open drain output signal is used to inform the processor that a detect flag has occurred. The processor must then read the detect register to determine which detect triggered the interrupt. INT will stay low until the processor reads the detect register or does a full reset. |
| \overline{RD} | 14 | - | I | Read. A low requests a read of the SSI 73K221L internal registers. Data cannot be output unless both \overline{RD} and the latched \overline{CS} are active or low. |
| RESET | 25 | 20 | I | Reset. An active high signal on this pin will put the chip into an inactive state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) will be reset. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. An internal pull down permits power on reset using a capacitor to VDD. |

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION (Continued)

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE (Continued)

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|--------|--------|------|---|
| \overline{WR} | 13 | - | I | Write. A low on this pin informs the SSI 73K221L that data is available on AD0-AD7 for writing into an internal register. Data is latched on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . No data is written unless both \overline{WR} and the latched \overline{CS} are low. |

SERIAL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|-----------------|---|-----|-----|--|
| A0-A2 | - | 5-7 | I | Register Address Selection. These lines carry register addresses and should be valid during any read or write operation. |
| DATA | - | 8 | I/O | Serial Control Data. Data for a read/write operation is clocked in or out on the falling edge of the EXCLK pin. The direction of data flow is controlled by the \overline{RD} pin. \overline{RD} low outputs data. \overline{RD} high inputs data. |
| \overline{RD} | - | 10 | I | Read. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K221L that data or status information is being read by the processor. The falling edge of the \overline{RD} signal will initiate a read from the addressed register. The \overline{RD} signal must continue for eight falling edges of EXCLK in order to read all eight bits of the referenced register. Read data is provided LSB first. Data will not be output unless the \overline{RD} signal is active. |
| \overline{WR} | - | 9 | I | Write. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K221L that data or status information has been shifted in through the DATA pin and is available for writing to an internal register. The normal procedure for a write is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive falling edges of EXCLK and then to pulse \overline{WR} low. Data is written on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . |

Note: In the serial, 22-pin version, the pins AD0-AD7, ALE and \overline{CS} are removed and replaced with the pins; A0, A1, A2, DATA, and an unconnected pin. Also, the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} controls are used differently.

The Serial Control mode is provided in the parallel control versions by tying ALE high and \overline{CS} low. In this configuration AD7 becomes DATA and AD0, AD1 and AD2 become A0, A1 and A2, respectively.

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION (Continued)

DTE USER INTERFACE

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|--------|--------|------|---|
| EXCLK | 19 | 15 | I | External Clock. This signal is used in synchronous transmission when the external timing option has been selected. In the External Timing mode the rising edge of EXCLK is used to strobe synchronous DPSK transmit data applied to the TXD pin. Alternately used for serial control interface. |
| RXCLK | 23 | 18 | O | Receive Clock. The falling edge of this clock output is coincident with the transitions in the serial received data output. The rising edge of RXCLK can be used to latch the valid output data at RXD. RXCLK will be valid as long as a carrier is present in DPSK synchronous modes. |
| RXD | 22 | 17 | O | Received Digital Data Output. Serial receive data is available on this pin. The data is always valid on the rising edge of RXCLK when in Synchronous mode. RXD will output constant marks if no carrier is detected. |
| TXCLK | 18 | 14 | O | Transmit Clock. This signal is used in DPSK synchronous transmission to latch serial input data on the TXD pin. Data must be provided so that valid data is available on the rising edge of the TXCLK. The transmit clock is derived from different sources depending upon the Synchronization mode selection. In Internal Mode the clock is generated internally. In External Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the EXCLK pin. In Slave Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the RXCLK pin. TXCLK is always active. |
| TXD | 21 | 16 | I | Transmit Data Input. Serial data for transmission is applied to this pin. In Synchronous modes, the data must be valid on the rising edge of the TXCLK. In Asynchronous modes (1200/600 bit/s or 300 baud) no clocking is necessary. DPSK data must be 1200/600 bit/s +1%, -2.5% or +2.3%, -2.5 % in extended Overspeed mode. |

ANALOG INTERFACE AND OSCILLATOR

| | | | | |
|------|----|----|---|--|
| RXA | 27 | 22 | I | Received modulated analog signal input from the telephone line interface. |
| TXA | 16 | 12 | O | Transmit analog output to the telephone line interface. |
| XTL1 | 2 | 3 | I | These pins are for the internal crystal oscillator requiring an 11.0592 MHz Parallel mode crystal. Load capacitors should be connected from XTL1 and XTL2 to Ground. XTL2 can also be driven from an external clock. |
| XTL2 | 3 | 4 | I | |

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER ADDRESS TABLE

| REGISTER | | ADDRESS | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----|-----------|--|----------------------|---|--------------------------------|--|---|--|---------------------------------|
| | | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ORIGINATE/ANSWER |
| | | | 0=1200 BIT/S DPSK 1=600 BIT/S DPSK | | 0000=PWR DOWN 0001=INT SYNCH 0010=EXT SYNCH 0011=SLAVE SYNCH 0100=ASYNCH 8 BITS/CHAR 0101=ASYNCH 9 BITS/CHAR 0110=ASYNCH 10 BITS/CHAR 0111=ASYNCH 11 BITS/CHAR 1100=FSK | | | 0=DISABLE TXA OUTPUT 1=ENABLE TXA OUTPUT | | 0=ANSWER 1=ORIGINATE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| | | | 00=TX DATA 01=TX ALTERNATE 10=TX MARK 11=TX SPACE | | 0=DISABLE 1=ENABLE | 0=NORMAL 1=BYPASS SCRAMBLER | 0=XTAL 1=16 X DATA RATE OUTPUT AT CLK PIN IN DPSK MODE ONLY | 0=NORMAL 1=RESET | 00=NORMAL 01=ANALOG LOOPBACK 10=REMOTE DIGITAL LOOPBACK 11=LOCAL DIGITAL LOOPBACK | |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARKS | CARRIER DETECT | ANSWER TONE | CALL PROGRESS | LONG LOOP |
| | | | | | OUTPUTS RECEIVED DATA STREAM | | 0=CONDITION NOT DETECTED 1=CONDITION DETECTED | | | |
| TONE CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD/ TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2 | DTMF1/ OVERSPEED | DTMF0/ GUARD/ TONE |
| | | | RXD PIN 0=NORMAL 1=TRI STATE | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=DATA 1=TX DTMF | 4 BIT CODE FOR 1 OF 16 DUAL TONE COMBINATIONS. | | | 0=1800 Hz G.T. 1=550 Hz G.T. |
| ID REGISTER | 10 | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

00XX=73K212L, 322L, 321L
01XX=73K221L, 302L
10XX=73K222L
1100=73K224L
1110=73K324L
1101=73K312L

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------------|------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---|--------------------|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | MODUL. OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | |
| D0 | | Answer/ Originate | | 0 | | Selects Answer mode (transmit in high band, receive in low band). | | |
| | | | | 1 | | Selects Originate mode (transmit in low band, receive in high band). | | |
| D1 | | Transmit Enable | | 0 | | Disables transmit output at TXA. | | |
| | | | | 1 | | Enables transmit output at TXA. Note: TX Enable must be set to 1 to allow Answer Tone and DTMF transmission. | | |
| D5, D4,D3, D2 | | Transmit Mode | | D5 D4 D3 D2 | | Selects Power Down mode. All functions disabled except digital interface. Internal Synchronous mode. In this mode TXCLK is an internally derived 1200 Hz signal. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK. Receive data is clocked out of RXD on the falling edge of RXCLK. External Synchronous mode. Operation is identical to internal synchronous, but TXCLK is connected internally to EXCLK pin, and a 1200 Hz ± 0.01% clock must be supplied externally. Slave Synchronous mode. Same operation as other Synchronous modes. TXCLK is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in this mode. Selects DPSK Asynchronous mode - 8 bits/character (1 start bit, 6 data bits, 1 stop bit). Selects DPSK Asynchronous mode - 9 bits/character (1 start bit, 7 data bits, 1 stop bit). Selects DPSK Asynchronous mode - 10 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit). Selects DPSK Asynchronous mode - 11 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, Parity and 1 stop bit). Selects FSK operation. | | |
| | | | | 0 0 0 0 | | | | |
| | | | | 0 0 0 1 | | | | |
| | | | | 0 0 1 0 | | | | |
| | | | | 0 0 1 1 | | | | |
| | | | | 0 1 0 0 | | | | |
| | | | | 0 1 0 1 | | | | |
| | | | | 0 1 1 0 | | | | |
| | | | | 0 1 1 1 | | | | |
| 1 1 0 0 | | | | | | | | |
| D6 | | | | 0 | | Not used; must be written as a "0." | | |

3

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0 (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|----------------------|----|--------------------|--------------------|---|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | MODUL. OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D7 | Modulation Option | | D7 D5 D4 | | Selects: | | | |
| | | | 0 0 X | | DPSK mode at 1200 bit/s. | | | |
| | | | 1 0 X | | DPSK mode at 600 bit/s. X = Don't care | | | |

CONTROL REGISTER 1

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|------------------|--|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| CR1 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTER. | BYPASS SCRAMB | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D1, D0 | Test Mode | | D1 D0 | | Selects normal Operating mode. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | | Analog Loopback mode. Loops the transmitted analog signal back to the receiver, and causes the receiver to use the same center frequency as the transmitter. To squelch the TXA pin, transmit enable must be forced low. | | | |
| | | | 1 0 | | Selects remote digital loopback. Received data is looped back to transmit data internally, and RXD is forced to a mark. Data on TXD is ignored. | | | |
| D2 | Reset | | 1 1 | | Selects local digital loopback. Internally loops TXD back to RXD and continues to transmit carrier from TXA pin. | | | |
| | | | 0 | | Selects normal operation. | | | |
| D3 | CLK Control (Clock Control) | | 1 | | Resets modem to power down state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) are reset to zero. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. | | | |
| | | | 0 | | Selects 11.0592 MHz crystal echo output at CLK pin. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Selects 16 X the data rate, output at CLK pin in DPSK modes only. | | | |

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 1 (Continued)

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-------------------------|-----------|--|
| D4 | Bypass Scrambler | 0 | Selects normal operation. DPSK data is passed through scrambler. |
| D5 | Enable Detect Interrupt | 1 | Selects Scrambler Bypass. Bypass DPSK data is routed around scrambler in the transmit path. |
| | | 0 | Disables interrupt at INT pin. |
| | | 1 | Enables INT output. An interrupts will be generated with a change in status of DR bits D1-D4. The answer tone and call progress detect interrupts are masked when the TX enable bit is set. Carrier detect is masked when TX DTMF is activated. All interrupts will be disabled if the device is in Power Down mode. |
| D7, D6 | Transmit Pattern | D7 D6 | Selects normal data transmission as determined by the state of the TXD pin. |
| | | 0 0 | |
| | | 0 1 | Selects an alternating mark/space transmit pattern for modem testing. |
| | | 1 0 | Selects a constant mark transmit pattern. |
| | | 1 1 | Selects a constant space transmit pattern. |

DETECT REGISTER

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|----------------------|-----------|--|
| D0 | Long Loop | 0 | Indicates normal received signal. |
| | | 1 | Indicates low received signal level. |
| D1 | Call Progress Detect | 0 | No call progress tone detected. |
| | | 1 | Indicates presence of call progress tones. The call progress detection circuitry is activated by energy in the 350 to 620 Hz call progress band. |

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DETECT REGISTER (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|--------------------|----|--------------|---|--------------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| DR 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK | CARR. DETECT | ANSWER TONE | CALL PROG. | LONG LOOP |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D2 | Answer Tone Detect | | 0 | No answer tone detected. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates detection of 2100 Hz answer tone. The device must be in Originate mode for detection of answer tone. | | | | |
| D3 | Carrier Detect | | 0 | No carrier detected in the receive channel. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates carrier has been detected in the received channel. | | | | |
| D4 | Unscrambled Mark | | 0 | No unscrambled mark. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates detection of unscrambled marks in the received data. This may be used in the V.22 connect sequence or for requesting a remote modem to configure itself for remote digital loopback. A valid indication means that unscrambled marks have been received for $> 165.5 \pm 6.5$ ms. | | | | |
| D5 | Receive Data | | | Continuously outputs the received data stream. This data is the same as that output on the RXD pin, but it is not disabled when RXD is tri-stated. | | | | |
| D6, D7 | | | | Not used. | | | | |

TONE REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|--|--------|--------|--------------------|---------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2 | DTMF 1/ OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ GUARD |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | DTMF 0/ Guard Tone | | D6 D4 D0 | D0 interacts with bits D6, D5, and D4 as shown. | | | | |
| | | | X 1 X | Transmit DTMF tones. | | | | |
| | | | X 0 0 | Transmits 1800 Hz guard tone. | | | | |
| | | | X 0 1 | Transmits 550 Hz guard tone. | | | | |
| D1 | DTMF 1/ | | D4 D1 | D1 interacts with D4 as shown. | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | Asynchronous DPSK 1200 or 600 bit/s +1.0% - 2.5% | | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | Asynchronous DPSK 1200 or 600 bit/s +2.3% -2.5%. | | | | |

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER (Continued)

| TR 011 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|--|----------------------|---------------|--|-----------|--------------------|---------------|----|-----|------|
| | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2 | DTMF 1/ OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ GUARD | | | |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 | DTMF 3, 2, 1, 0 | | D3 D2 D1 D0 | | Programs 1 of 16 DTMF tone pairs that will be transmitted when TX DTMF and TX enable bit (CR0, bit D1) is set. Tone encoding is shown below: | | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 0 - 1 1 1 1 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | DTMF CODE | | TONES | | | |
| | | | | | | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | LOW | HIGH |
| | | | | | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 697 | 1209 |
| | | | | | 2 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 697 | 1336 |
| | | | | | 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 697 | 1477 |
| | | | | | 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 770 | 1209 |
| | | | | | 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 770 | 1336 |
| | | | | | 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 770 | 1477 |
| | | | | | 7 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 852 | 1209 |
| | | | | | 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 852 | 1336 |
| | | | | | 9 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 852 | 1477 |
| | | | | | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 941 | 1336 |
| | | | D4 | Transmit DTMF | | 0 | | Disable DTMF. | | | |
| 1 | | Activates DTMF. The selected DTMF tones are transmitted continuously when this bit is high. TX DTMF overrides all other transmit functions. Modem must be in DPSK mode during DTMF transmission. | | | | | | | | | |
| D5 | Transmit Answer Tone | | 0 | | Disables answer tone generator. | | | | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Enables answer tone generator. A 2100 Hz answer tone will be transmitted continuously when the Transmit Enable bit is set in CR0. The device must be in Answer mode. | | | | | | |

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---|--------|--------|--------------------|---------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2 | DTMF 1/ OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ GUARD |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D6 | TX Guard (Transmit Guard Tone) | | 0 | Disables guard tone generator. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Enables guard tone generator (See D0 for selection of guard tones). | | | | |
| D7 | RXD Output Control | | 0 | Enables RXD pin. Receive data will be output on RXD. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Disables RXD pin. The RXD pin becomes a high impedance with internal weak pull-up resistor. | | | | |

ID REGISTER

| | | | | | | | | |
|------------|----------------|----|-------------|--|-------------|----|----|----|
| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| ID 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| | | | D7 D6 D5 D4 | Indicates Device: | | | | |
| D7, D6, D5 | Device | | 0 0 X X | SSI 73K212L, 73K321L or 73K322L or 73K321L | | | | |
| D4 | Identification | | 0 1 X X | SSI 73K221L or 73K302L | | | | |
| | Signature | | 1 0 X X | SSI 73K222L or 73K321L | | | | |
| | | | 1 1 0 0 | SSI 73K224L | | | | |
| | | | 1 1 1 0 | SSI 73K324L | | | | |
| | | | 1 1 0 1 | SSI 73K312L | | | | |

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING | UNIT |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 14 | V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150 | °C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260 | °C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD+0.3 | V |

Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|--|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| VDD Supply voltage | | 4.5 | 5 | 5.5 | V |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temperature | | -40 | | +85 | °C |
| Clock Variation | (11.0592 MHz) Crystal or external clock | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| External Components (Refer to Application section for placement.) | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass Capacitor | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| Bias setting resistor | (Placed between VDD and ISET pins) | 1.8 | 2 | 2.2 | MΩ |
| ISET Bypass Capacitor | (ISET pin to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 1 | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 2 | (External to GND) | 22 | | | μF |
| XTL1 Load Capacitor | Depends on crystal characteristics; from pin to GND | | | 40 | pF |
| XTL2 Load Capacitor | | | | 20 | |

3

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|------|-----|-----|-------|
| IDD, Supply Current | ISet Resistor = 2 MΩ | | | | |
| IDDA, Active | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | 8 | 12 | mA |
| IDD1, Power-down | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | | 4 | mA |
| IDD2, Power-down | CLK = 19.200 KHz | | | 3 | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | | |
| Reset, XTL1, XTL2 | | 3.0 | | VDD | V |
| All other inputs | | 2.0 | | VDD | V |
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | 0 | | 0.8 | V |
| IIH, Input High Current | VI = VIH Max | | | 100 | μA |
| IIL, Input Low Current | VI = VIL Min | -200 | | | μA |
| Reset Pull-down Current | Reset = VDD | 1 | | 50 | μA |
| Input Capacitance | All Digital Input Pins | | | 10 | pF |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | |
| VOH, Output High Voltage | IOH MIN = -0.4 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| VOL, Output Low Voltage | IO MAX = 1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| VOL, CLK Output | IO = 3.6 mA | | | 0.6 | V |
| RXD Tri-State Pull-up Curr. | RXD = GND | -1 | | -50 | μA |
| CMAX, CLK Output | Maximum Capacitive Load | | | 15 | pF |

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING

(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|--|--------|-----|--------|-------|
| PSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Carrier Suppression | Measured at TXA | 55 | | | dB |
| Output Amplitude | TX scrambled marks | -11 | -10 | -9 | dBm0 |
| FSK Mod/Demod | | | | | |
| Output Freq. Error | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | -0.35 | | + 0.35 | % |
| Transmit Level | Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11 | -10 | -9 | dBm0 |
| Harmonic Distortion in 700-2900 Hz band | THD in the alternate band DPSK or FSK | | -60 | -50 | dB |
| Output Bias Distortion | Transmit Dotting Pattern In ALB @ RXD | | ±8 | | % |
| Total Output Jitter | Random Input in ALB @ RXD | -15 | | +15 | % |
| DTMF Generator (Modem must be in DPSK mode to meet specifications) | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | | - 0.25 | | + 0.25 | % |
| Output Amplitude | Low Group, DPSK Mode | -10 | -9 | -8 | dBm0 |
| Output Amplitude | High Group, DPSK Mode | -8 | -7 | -6 | dBm0 |
| Twist | High-Group to Low-Group | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | dB |
| Long Loop Detect | DPSK or FSK | -38 | | -28 | dBm0 |
| Dynamic Range | Refer to Performance Curves | | 45 | | dB |
| Call Progress Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level | 2-Tones in 350-600 Hz band | -34 | | 0 | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | 2-Tones in 350-600 Hz band | | | -41 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 27 | | 80 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 27 | | 80 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |

Note: Parameters expressed in dBm0 refer to the following definition:

5V Version

0 dB loss in the Transmit path to the line.

2 dB gain in the Receive path from the line.

Refer to the Basic Box Modem diagram in the Applications section for the DAA design.

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--------------------------------|---|-------|-----|------|------------|
| Carrier Detect | | | | | |
| Threshold | DPSK or FSK receive data | -49 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 15 | | 45 | ms |
| Hysteresis | Single tone detected | 2 | 3.0 | | dB |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 10 | | 24 | ms |
| Answer Tone Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level | Not in V.21 mode | -49.5 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 20 | | 45 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 10 | | 30 | ms |
| Detect Freq. Range | | -2.5 | | +2.5 | % |
| Output Smoothing Filter | | | | | |
| Output load | TXA pin; FSK Single | 10 | | | k Ω |
| | Tone out for THD = -50 db in 0.3 to 3.4 KHz | | | 50 | pF |
| Spurious Freq. Comp. | Frequency = 76.8 kHz | | | -39 | dBm0 |
| | Frequency = 153.6 kHz | | | -45 | dBm0 |
| Output Impedance | TXA pin | | 200 | 300 | Ω |
| Clock Noise | TXA pin; 76.8 kHz | | | 1.0 | mVms |
| Carrier VCO | | | | | |
| Capture Range | Originate or Answer | -10 | | +10 | Hz |
| Capture Time | -10 Hz to +10 Hz Carrier Frequency Change | | 40 | 100 | ms |
| Recovered Clock | | | | | |
| Capture Range | | -625 | | +625 | ppm |
| Data Delay Time | Analog data in at RXA pin to receive data valid at RXD pin | | 30 | 50 | ms |

SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|------|------|--------|-------|
| Guard Tone Generator | | | | | |
| Tone Accuracy | 550 or 1800 Hz | -20 | | +20 | Hz |
| Tone Level | 550 Hz | -4.0 | -3.0 | -2.0 | dB |
| (Below DPSK Output) | 1800 Hz | -7.0 | -6.0 | -5.0 | dB |
| Harmonic Distortion | 550 Hz | | | -50 | dB |
| 700 to 2900 Hz | 1800 Hz | | | -60 | dB |
| Timing (Refer to Timing Diagrams) | | | | | |
| TAL | \overline{CS} /Addr. setup before ALE low | 30 | | | ns |
| TLA | \overline{CS} /Addr. hold after ALE low | 20 | | | ns |
| TLC | ALE low to $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ low | 40 | | | ns |
| TCL | $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Control to ALE high | 10 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} low | 0 | | 160 | ns |
| TLL | ALE width | 60 | | | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after \overline{RD} high | 0 | | 80 | ns |
| TRW | \overline{RD} width | 200 | | 25000 | ns |
| TWW | \overline{WR} width | 140 | | 25000* | ns |
| TDW | Data setup before \overline{WR} high | 150 | | | ns |
| TWD | Data hold after \overline{WR} high | 20 | | | ns |
| TCKD | Data out after EXCLK low | | | 200 | ns |
| TCKW | \overline{WR} after EXCLK low | 150 | | | ns |
| TDCK | Data setup before EXCLK low | 150 | | | ns |
| TAC | Address setup before control** | 50 | | | ns |
| TCA | Address hold after control** | 50 | | | ns |
| TWH | Data hold after EXCLK | 150 | | | ns |
| * Maximum time applies to parallel version only. | | | | | |
| ** Control for setup is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} . Control for hold is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or the rising edge of \overline{WR} . | | | | | |

3

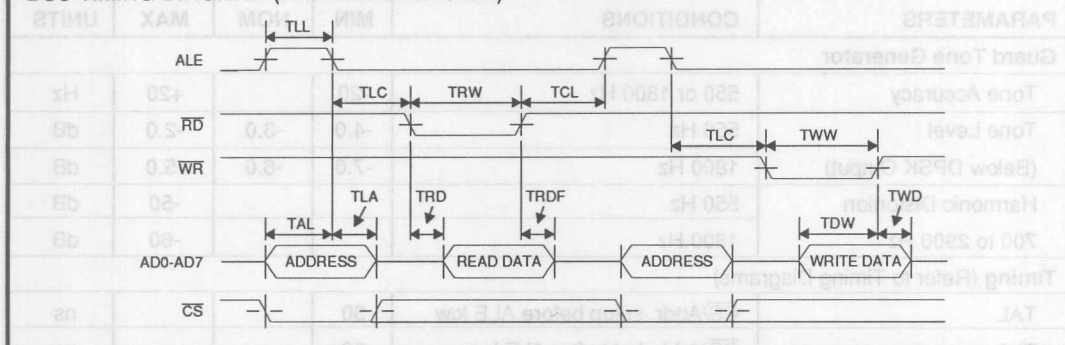
SSI 73K221L

CCITT V.22, V.21

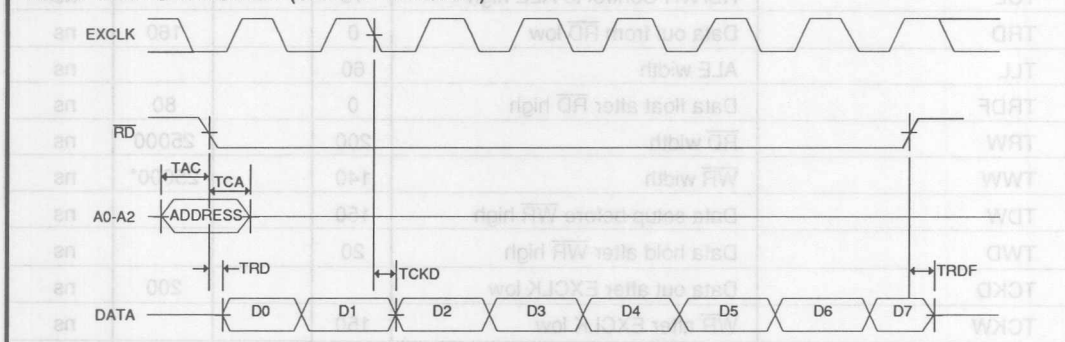
Single-Chip Modem

TIMING DIAGRAMS

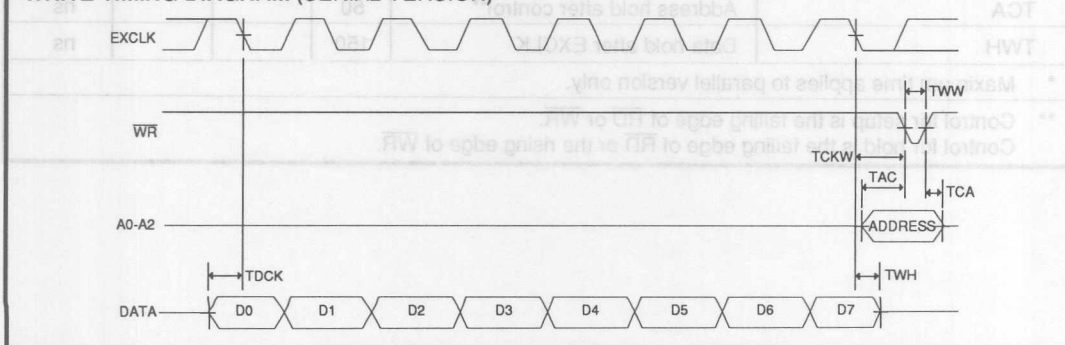
BUS TIMING DIAGRAM (PARALLEL VERSION)



READ TIMING DIAGRAM (SERIAL VERSION)



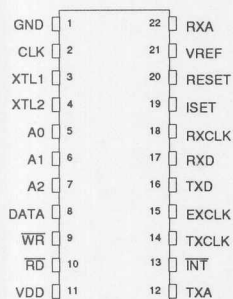
WRITE TIMING DIAGRAM (SERIAL VERSION)



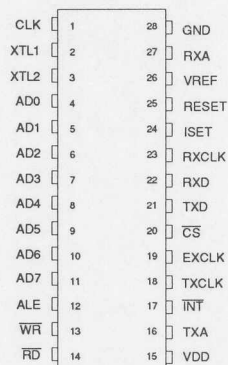
SSI 73K221L CCITT V.22, V.21 Single-Chip Modem

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)

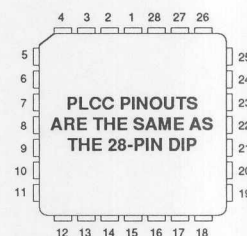
CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



**400-Mil
22-Pin DIP**



**600-Mil
28-Pin DIP**



**28-Pin
PLCC**

PLCC PINOUTS
ARE THE SAME AS
THE 28-PIN DIP

3

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|---|---------------|---------------|
| SSI 73K221L with Parallel Bus Interface | | |
| 28-Pin DIP | 73K221L - IP | 73K221L - IP |
| 28-Pin PLCC | 73K221L - IH | 73K221L - IH |
| SSI 73K221L with Serial Interface | | |
| 22-Pin DIP | 73K221SL - IP | 73K221SL - IP |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

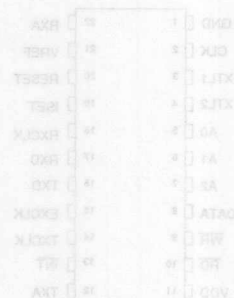
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

Single-Chip Modem CCITT V.22, V.23 SSI 73K221L

Notes:

CAUTION: Use handling procedures for a static sensitive component.

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)



28-Pin DIP
400-Mil



28-Pin DIP
600-Mil



28-Pin
PLCC

PLCC PINOUTS
ARE THE SAME AS
THE 28-PIN DIP

3

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|---|---------------|---------------|
| SSI 73K221L with Parallel Bus Interface | 73K221L - IP | 73K221L - IP |
| 28-Pin DIP | 73K221L - H | 73K221L - H |
| 28-Pin PLCC | 73K221SL - IP | 73K221SL - IP |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the user is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14851 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 873-8000, FAX: (714) 873-8914

Protected by the following Patents (4,691,175) (4,777,453)
©1983 Silicon Systems, Inc.

January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73K222L is a highly integrated single-chip modem IC which provides the functions needed to construct a CCITT V.22, V.21 and Bell 212A compatible modem, capable of 1200 bit/s full-duplex operation over dial-up lines. The SSI 73K222L is an enhancement of the SSI 73K212L single-chip modem which adds V.22 and V.21 modes to the Bell 212A and 103 operation of the SSI 73K212L. In Bell 212A mode, the SSI 73K222L provides the normal Bell 212A and 103 functions and employs a 2225 Hz answer tone. The SSI 73K222L in V.22 mode produces either 550 or 1800 Hz guard tone, recognizes and generates a 2100 Hz answer tone, and allows 600 bit/s V.22 or 0-300 bit/s V.21 operation. The SSI 73K222L integrates analog, digital, and switched-capacitor array functions on a single substrate, offering excellent performance and a high level of functional integration in a single 28- or 22-pin DIP configuration. The SSI 73K222L operates from a single +5V supply.

The SSI 73K222L includes the DPSK and FSK modulator/demodulator functions, call progress and handshake tone monitor and a tone generator capable of

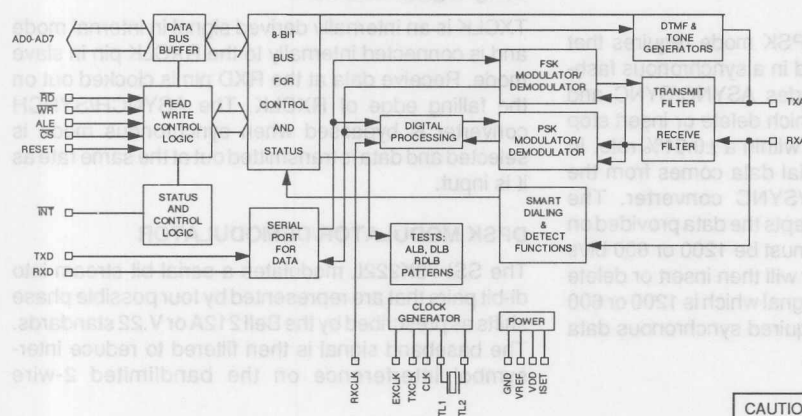
(Continued)

FEATURES

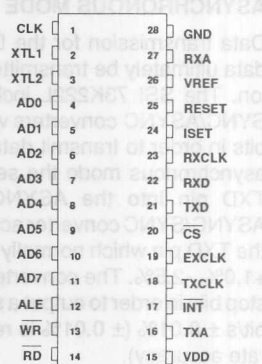
- One-chip CCITT V.22, V.21, Bell 212A and 103 standard compatible modem data pump
- Full-duplex operation at 0-300 bit/s (FSK) or 600 and 1200 bit/s (DPSK)
- Pin and software compatible with other SSI K-Series 1-chip modems
- Interfaces directly with standard microprocessors (8048, 80C51 typical)
- Serial or parallel microprocessor bus for control
- Serial port for data transfer
- Both synchronous and asynchronous modes of operation including V.22 extended overspeed
- Call progress, carrier, precise answer tone (2100 or 2225 Hz), and long loop detectors
- DTMF, and 550 or 1800 Hz guard tone generators
- Test modes available: ALB, DL, RDL, Mark, Space, Alternating bit patterns
- Precise automatic gain control allows 45 dB dynamic range
- CMOS technology for low power consumption using 30 mW @ 5V
- Single +5 volt supply

3

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

DESCRIPTION (Continued)

tone required for European applications. This device supports V.22 (except mode v) and V. 21 modes of operation, allowing both synchronous and asynchronous communications. Test features such as analog loop, digital loop, and remote digital loopback are supported. Internal pattern generators are also included for self-testing. The SSI 73K222L is designed to appear to the systems designer as a microprocessor peripheral, and will easily interface with popular one-chip microprocessors (80C51 typical) for control of modem functions through its 8-bit multiplexed address/data bus or serial control bus. An ALE control line simplifies address demultiplexing. Data communications occurs through a separate serial port only.

The SSI 73K222L is ideal for use in either free standing or integral system modem products where full-duplex 1200 bit/s data communications over the 2-wire switched telephone network is desired. Its high functionality, low power consumption and efficient packaging simplify design requirements and increase system reliability. A complete modem requires only the addition of the phone line interface, a control microprocessor, and RS-232 level converter for a typical system. The SSI 73K222L is part of Silicon Systems' K-Series family of pin and function compatible single-chip modem products. These devices allow systems to be configured for higher speeds and Bell or CCITT operation with only a single component change.

OPERATION

ASYNCHRONOUS MODE

Data transmission for the DPSK mode requires that data ultimately be transmitted in a synchronous fashion. The SSI 73K222L includes ASYNC/SYNC and SYNC/ASYNC converters which delete or insert stop bits in order to transmit data within a $\pm 0.01\%$ rate. In asynchronous mode the serial data comes from the TXD pin into the ASYNC/SYNC converter. The ASYNC/SYNC converter accepts the data provided on the TXD pin which normally must be 1200 or 600 bit/s $\pm 1.0\%$, -2.5% . The converter will then insert or delete stop bits in order to output a signal which is 1200 or 600 bit/s $\pm 0.01\%$ ($\pm 0.01\%$ is required synchronous data rate accuracy).

The serial data stream from the ASYNC/SYNC converter is passed through the data scrambler and onto the analog modulator. The data scrambler can be bypassed under processor control when unscrambled data must be transmitted. The ASYNC/SYNC converter and the data scrambler are bypassed in all FSK modes. If serial input data contains a break signal through one character (including start and stop bits) the break will be extended to at least $2 \cdot N + 3$ bits long (where N is the number of transmitted bits/character).

Serial data from the demodulator is passed first through the data descrambler and then through the SYNC/ASYNC converter. The SYNC/ASYNC converter will reinsert any deleted stop bits and transmit output data at an intra-character rate (bit-to-bit timing) of no greater than 1219 bit/s. An incoming break signal (low through two characters) will be passed through without incorrectly inserting a stop bit.

The SYNC/ASYNC converter also has an extended overspeed mode which allows selection of an overspeed range of either $+1\%$ or $+2.3\%$. In the extended overspeed mode, stop bits are output at 7/8 the normal width.

SYNCHRONOUS MODE

The CCITT V.22 standard defines synchronous operation at 600 and 1200 bit/s. The Bell 212A standard defines synchronous operation only at 1200 bit/s. Operation is similar to that of the asynchronous mode except that data must be synchronized to a provided clock and no variation in data transfer rate is allowable. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK.

TXCLK is an internally derived signal in internal mode and is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in slave mode. Receive data at the RXD pin is clocked out on the falling edge of RXCLK. The ASYNCH/SYNCH converter is bypassed when synchronous mode is selected and data is transmitted out at the same rate as it is input.

DPSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The SSI 73K222L modulates a serial bit stream into di-bit pairs that are represented by four possible phase shifts as prescribed by the Bell 212A or V.22 standards. The baseband signal is then filtered to reduce intersymbol interference on the bandlimited 2-wire

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

telephone line. Transmission occurs using either a 1200 Hz (originate mode) or 2400 Hz carrier (answer mode). Demodulation is the reverse of the modulation process, with the incoming analog signal eventually decoded into di-bits and converted back to a serial bit stream. The demodulator also recovers the clock which was encoded into the analog signal during modulation. Demodulation occurs using either a 1200 Hz carrier (answer mode or ALB originate mode) or a 2400 Hz carrier (originate mode or ALB answer mode). The SSI 73K222L uses a phase locked loop coherent demodulation technique for optimum receiver performance.

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator produces a frequency modulated analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. In Bell 103, the standard frequencies of 1270 and 1070 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 2225 and 2025 Hz (answer, mark and space) are used. V.21 mode uses 980 and 1180 Hz (originate, mark and space), or 1650 and 1850 Hz (answer, mark and space). Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value. The rate converter and scrambler/descrambler are bypassed in the 103 or V.21 modes.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

High and low band filters are included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit and receive signals and provide compromise delay equalization and rejection of out-of-band signals in the receive channel. Amplitude and phase equalization are necessary to compensate for distortion of the transmission line and to reduce intersymbol interference in the bandlimited receive signal. The transmit signal filtering approximates a 75% square root of raised Cosine frequency response characteristic.

AGC

The automatic gain control maintains a signal level at the input to the demodulators which is constant to within 1 dB. It corrects quickly for increases in signal which would cause clipping and provides a total receiver dynamic range of >45 dB.

PARALLEL BUS INTERFACE

Four 8-bit registers are provided for control, option select and status monitoring. These registers are addressed with the AD0, AD1, and AD2 multiplexed address lines (latched by ALE) and appear to a control microprocessor as four consecutive memory locations. Two control registers and the tone register are read/write memory. The detect register is read only and cannot be modified except by modem response to monitored parameters.

SERIAL COMMAND INTERFACE

The serial command interface allows access to the SSI 73K222L control and status registers via a serial command port (22-pin version only). In this mode the A0, A1 and A2 lines provide register addresses for data passed through the data pin under control of the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} lines. A read operation is initiated when the \overline{RD} line is taken low. The first bit is available after \overline{RD} is brought low and the next seven cycles of EXCLK will then transfer out seven bits of the selected address LSB first. A write takes place by shifting in eight bits of data LSB first for eight consecutive cycles of EXCLK. \overline{WR} is then pulsed low and data transferred into the addressed register occurs on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . This interface mode is also supported in the 28-pin packages. See serial control interface pin description.

SPECIAL DETECT CIRCUITRY

The special detect circuitry monitors the received analog signal to determine status or presence of carrier, call-progress tones, answer tone and weak received signal (long loop condition). An unscrambled mark request signal is also detected when the received data out of the DPSK demodulator before the descrambler has been high for $165.5 \text{ ms} \pm 6.5 \text{ ms}$ minimum. The appropriate detect register bit is set when one of these conditions changes and an interrupt is generated for all purposes except long loop. The interrupts are disabled (masked) when the enable interrupt bit is set to 0.

DTMF GENERATOR

The DTMF generator will output one of 16 standard tone pairs determined by a 4-bit binary value and TX DTMF mode bit previously loaded into the tone register. Tone generation is initiated when the DTMF mode is selected using the tone register and the transmit enable (CR0 bit D1) is changed from 0 to 1.

PIN DESCRIPTION

POWER

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------|--------|--------|------|---|
| GND | 28 | 1 | I | System Ground. |
| VDD | 15 | 11 | I | Power supply input, 5V \pm 10% (73K222L). Bypass with .1 and 22 μ F capacitors to GND. |
| VREF | 26 | 21 | O | An internally generated reference voltage. Bypass with .1 μ F capacitor to ground. |
| ISET | 24 | 19 | I | Chip current reference. Sets bias current for op-amps. The chip current is set by connecting this pin to VDD through a 2 M Ω resistor. ISET should be bypassed to GND with a .1 μ F capacitor. |

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|------------------|------|----|-----|--|
| ALE | 12 | - | I | Address latch enable. The falling edge of ALE latches the address on AD0-AD7 and the chip select on \overline{CS} . |
| AD0-AD7 | 4-11 | - | I/O | Address/data bus. These bidirectional tri-state multiplexed lines carry information to and from the internal registers. |
| \overline{CS} | 20 | - | I | Chip select. A low on this pin during the falling edge of ALE allows a read cycle or a write cycle to occur. AD0-AD7 will not be driven and no registers will be written if \overline{CS} (latched) is not active. The state of \overline{CS} is latched on the falling edge of ALE. |
| CLK | 1 | 2 | O | Output clock. This pin is selectable under processor control to be either the crystal frequency (for use as a processor clock) or 16 x the data rate for use as a baud rate clock in DPSK modes only. The pin defaults to the crystal frequency on reset. |
| \overline{INT} | 17 | 13 | O | Interrupt. This open drain output signal is used to inform the processor that a detect flag has occurred. The processor must then read the detect register to determine which detect triggered the interrupt. \overline{INT} will stay low until the processor reads the detect register or does a full reset. |
| \overline{RD} | 14 | - | I | Read. A low requests a read of the SSI 73K222L internal registers. Data cannot be output unless both \overline{RD} and the latched \overline{CS} are active or low. |
| RESET | 25 | 20 | I | Reset. An active high signal on this pin will put the chip into an inactive state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) will be reset. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. An internal pull down resistor permits power on reset using a capacitor to VDD. |

SSI 73K222L V.22, V.21, Bell 212A Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION (Continued)

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE (Continued)

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------|--------|--------|------|---|
| WR | 13 | - | I | Write. A low on this informs the SSI 73K222L that data is available on AD0-AD7 for writing into an internal register. Data is latched on the rising edge of WR. No data is written unless both WR and the latched CS are low. |

SERIAL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|-------|---|-----|-----|---|
| A0-A2 | - | 5-7 | I | Register Address Selection. These lines carry register addresses and should be valid during any read or write operation. |
| DATA | - | 8 | I/O | Serial Control Data. Data for a read/write operation is clocked in or out on the falling edge of the EXCLK pin. The direction of data flow is controlled by the RD pin. RD low outputs data. RD high inputs data. |
| RD | - | 10 | I | Read. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K222L that data or status information is being read by the processor. The falling edge of the RD signal will initiate a read from the addressed register. The RD signal must continue for eight falling edges of EXCLK in order to read all eight bits of the referenced register. Read data is provided LSB first. Data will not be output unless the RD signal is active. |
| WR | - | 9 | I | Write. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K222L that data or status information has been shifted in through the DATA pin and is available for writing to an internal register. The normal procedure for a write is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive falling edges of EXCLK and then to pulse WR low. Data is written on the rising edge of WR. |

Note: In the serial, 22-pin version, the pins AD0-AD7, ALE and CS are removed and replaced with the pins; A0, A1, A2, DATA, and an unconnected pin. Also, the RD and WR controls are used differently. The serial control mode is provided in the parallel control versions by tying ALE high and CS low. In this configuration AD7 becomes DATA and AD0, AD1 and AD2 become A0, A1 and A2, respectively.

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION (Continued)

DTE USER

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|--------|--------|------|--|
| EXCLK | 19 | 15 | I | External Clock. This signal is used in synchronous transmission when the external timing option has been selected. In the external timing mode the rising edge of EXCLK is used to strobe synchronous DPSK transmit data applied to on the TXD pin. Also used for serial control interface. |
| RXCLK | 23 | 18 | O | Receive Clock. The falling edge of this clock output is coincident with the transitions in the serial received data output. The rising edge of RXCLK can be used to latch the valid output data. RXCLK will be valid as long as a carrier is present. |
| RXD | 22 | 17 | O | Received Data Output. Serial receive data is available on this pin. The data is always valid on the rising edge of RXCLK when in synchronous mode. RXD will output constant marks if no carrier is detected. |
| TXCLK | 18 | 14 | O | Transmit Clock. This signal is used in synchronous transmission to latch serial input data on the TXD pin. Data must be provided so that valid data is available on the rising edge of the TXCLK. The transmit clock is derived from different sources depending upon the synchronization mode selection. In Internal Mode the clock is generated internally. In External Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the EXCLK pin. In Slave Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the RXCLK pin. TXCLK is always active. |
| TXD | 21 | 16 | I | Transmit Data Input. Serial data for transmission is applied on this pin. In synchronous modes, the data must be valid on the rising edge of the TXCLK clock. In asynchronous modes (1200/600 bit/s or 300 baud) no clocking is necessary. DPSK data must be 1200/600 bit/s +1%, -2.5% or +2.3%, -2.5 % in extended overspeed mode. |

ANALOG INTERFACE AND OSCILLATOR

| | | | | |
|------|----|----|---|---|
| RXA | 27 | 22 | I | Received modulated analog signal input from the telephone line interface. |
| TXA | 16 | 12 | O | Transmit analog output to the telephone line interface. |
| XTL1 | 2 | 3 | I | These pins are for the internal crystal oscillator requiring a 11.0592 MHz parallel mode crystal. Load capacitors should be connected from XTL1 and XTL2 to Ground. XTL2 can also be driven from an external clock. |
| XTL2 | 3 | 4 | I | |

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER DESCRIPTIONS

Four 8-bit internal registers are accessible for control and status monitoring. The registers are accessed in read or write operations by addressing the A0, A1 and A2 address lines in serial mode, or the AD0, AD1 and AD2 lines in parallel mode. In parallel mode the address lines are latched by ALE. Register CR0 controls the method by which data is transferred over the phone

line. CR1 controls the interface between the microprocessor and the SSI 73K222L internal state. DR is a detect register which provides an indication of monitored modem status conditions. TR, the tone control register, controls the DTMF generator, answer and guard tones and RXD output gate used in the modem initial connect sequence. All registers are read/write except for DR which is read only. Register control and status bits are identified below:

REGISTER BIT SUMMARY

| | | ADDRESS | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----|-----------|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|---|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------------|
| REGISTER | | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ORIGINATE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARKS | CARRIER DETECT | ANSWER TONE | CALL PROGRESS | LONG LOOP |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2 | DTMF1/ OVERSPEED | DTMF0/ GUARD/ ANS TONE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | CR2 | 100 | | | | THESE REGISTER LOCATIONS ARE RESERVED FOR | | | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | | | | USE WITH OTHER K-SERIES FAMILY MEMBERS | | | | |
| ID REGISTER | ID | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

NOTE: When a register containing reserved control bits is written into, the reserved bits must be programmed as 0's.

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER ADDRESS TABLE

| ADDRESS | | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|---|-----|-----------|--|----------------------|---|--------------------------------|--|---|--|---|
| REGISTER | | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ORIGINATE/ ANSWER |
| 0=1200 BIT/S DPSK 1=600 BIT/S DPSK 0=BELL 103 FSK 1=V.21 FSK | | | | | 0000=PWR DOWN 0001=INT SYNCH 0010=EXT SYNCH 0011=SLAVE SYNCH 0100=ASYNCH 8 BITS/CHAR 0101=ASYNCH 9 BITS/CHAR 0110=ASYNCH 10 BITS/CHAR 0111=ASYNCH 11 BITS/CHAR 1100=FSK | | | 0=DISABLE TXA OUTPUT 1=ENABLE TXA OUTPUT | | 0=ANSWER 1=ORIGINATE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| | | | 00=TX DATA 01=TX ALTERNATE 10=TX MARK 11=TX SPACE | | 0=DISABLE 1=ENABLE | 0=NORMAL 1=BYPASS SCRAMBLER | 0=XTAL 1=16 X DATA RATE OUTPUT AT CLK PIN IN DPSK MODE ONLY | 0=NORMAL 1=RESET | 00=NORMAL 01=ANALOG LOOPBACK 10=REMOTE DIGITAL LOOPBACK 11=LOCAL DIGITAL LOOPBACK | |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARKS | CARRIER DETECT | ANSWER TONE | CALL PROGRESS | LONG LOOP |
| | | | | | OUTPUTS RECEIVED DATA STREAM | | 0=CONDITION NOT DETECTED 1=CONDITION DETECTED | | | |
| TONE CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD/ TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2 | DTMF1/ OVERSPEED | DTMF0/ GUARD/ ANSWER/ TONE |
| | | | RXD PIN 0=NORMAL 1=TRI STATE | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=DATA 1=TX DTMF | 4 BIT CODE FOR 1 OF 16 DUAL TONE COMBINATIONS. | | | 0=2225 Hz A.T. 1800 Hz G.T. 1=2100 Hz A.T. 500 Hz G.T. |
| ID REGISTER | 10 | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

00XX=73K212L, 322L, 321L
01XX=73K221L, 302L
10XX=73K222L
1100=73K224L
1110=73K324L
1101=73K312L

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|----------------------|--|---|
| D0 | Answer/ Originate | 0 1 | Selects answer mode (transmit in high band, receive in low band). Selects originate mode (transmit in low band, receive in high band). |
| D1 | Transmit Enable | 0 1 | Disables transmit output at TXA. Enables transmit output at TXA. Note: TX Enable must be set to 1 to allow Answer Tone and DTMF Transmiission. |
| D5, D4, D3, D2 | Transmit Mode | D5 D4 D3 D2 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 | Selects power down mode. All functions disabled except digital interface. Internal synchronous mode. In this mode TXCLK is an internally derived 1200 Hz signal. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK. Receive data is clocked out of RXD on the falling edge of RXCLK. External synchronous mode. Operation is identical to internal synchronous, but TXCLK is connected internally to EXCLK pin, and a 1200 Hz \pm 0.01% clock must be supplied externally. Slave synchronous mode. Same operation as other synchronous modes. TXCLK is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in this mode. Selects PSK asynchronous mode - 8 bits/character (1 start bit, 6 data bits, 1 stop bit). Selects PSK asynchronous mode - 9 bits/character (1 start bit, 7 data bits, 1 stop bit). Selects PSK asynchronous mode - 10 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit). Selects PSK asynchronous mode - 11 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, Parity and 1 or 2 stop bits). Selects FSK operation. |
| D6 | | 0 | Not used; must be written as a "0." |

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0 (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|----------------------|----|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | MODUL. OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D7 | Modulation Option | | D7 D5 D4 | Selects: | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 X | DPSK mode at 1200 bit/s. | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 X | DPSK mode at 600 bit/s. | | | | |
| | | | 0 1 1 | FSK Bell 103 mode. | | | | |
| | | | 1 1 1 | FSK CCITT V.21 mode. | | | | |
| | | | | X = Don't care | | | | |

CONTROL REGISTER 1

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|--|----------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| CR1 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTER. | BYPASS SCRAMB | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D1, D0 | Test Mode | | D1 D0 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | Selects normal operating mode. | | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | Analog loopback mode. Loops the transmitted analog signal back to the receiver, and causes the receiver to use the same center frequency as the transmitter. To squelch the TXA pin, transmit enable must be forced low. | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 | Selects remote digital loopback. Received data is looped back to transmit data internally, and RXD is forced to a mark. Data on TXD is ignored. | | | | |
| D2 | Reset | | 1 1 | Selects local digital loopback. Internally loops TXD back to RXD and continues to transmit carrier from TXA pin. | | | | |
| | | | 0 | Selects normal operation. | | | | |
| D3 | CLK Control (Clock Control) | | 1 | Resets modem to power down state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) are reset to zero. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. | | | | |
| | | | 0 | Selects 11.0592 MHz crystal echo output at CLK pin. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Selects 16 X the data rate, output at CLK pin in DPSK modes only. | | | | |

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 1 (Continued)

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|------------------|-----------|--|
| D4 | Bypass Scrambler | 0 | Selects normal operation. DPSK data is passed through scrambler. |
| | | 1 | Selects Scrambler Bypass. Bypass DPSK data is routed around scrambler in the transmit path. |
| D5 | Enable Detect | 0 | Disables interrupt at $\overline{\text{INT}}$ pin. |
| | | 1 | Enables $\overline{\text{INT}}$ output. An interrupts will be generated with a change in status of DR bits D1-D4. The answer tone and call progress detect interrupts are masked when the TX enable bit is set. Carrier detect is masked when TX DTMF is activated. All interrupts will be disabled if the device is in power down mode. |
| D7, D6 | Transmit Pattern | 0 0 | Selects normal data transmission as controlled by the state of the TXD pin. |
| | | 0 1 | Selects an alternating mark/space transmit pattern for modem testing. |
| | | 1 0 | Selects a constant mark transmit pattern. |
| | | 1 1 | Selects a constant space transmit pattern. |

DETECT REGISTER

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|----------------------|-----------|--|
| D0 | Long Loop | 0 | Indicates normal received signal. |
| | | 1 | Indicates low received signal level. |
| D1 | Call Progress Detect | 0 | No call progress tone detected. |
| | | 1 | Indicates presence of call progress tones. The call progress detection circuitry is activated by energy in the 350 to 620 Hz call progress band. |

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

DETECT REGISTER (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|-------------------------|----|--------------|---|--------------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| DR 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK | CARR. DETECT | ANSWER TONE | CALL PROG. | LONG LOOP |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D2 | Answer Tone Detect | | 0 | No answer tone detected. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates detection of 2225 Hz answer tone in Bell mode or 2100 Hz in CCITT mode. The device must be in originate mode for detection of answer tone. For CCITT answer tone detection, bit D0 of the Tone Register must be set to a 1. | | | | |
| D3 | Carrier Detect | | 0 | No carrier detected in the receive channel. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates carrier has been detected in the receive channel. | | | | |
| D4 | Unscrambled Mark Detect | | 0 | No unscrambled mark. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates detection of unscrambled marks in the received data. A valid indication requires that unscrambled marks be received for $> 165.5 \pm 6.5$ ms. | | | | |
| D5 | Receive Data | | | Continuously outputs the received data stream. This data is the same as that output on the RXD pin, but it is not disabled when RXD is tri-stated. | | | | |
| D6, D7 | | | | Not used. | | | | |

TONE REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|----------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---|--------|--------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2 | DTMF 1/ OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ ANSWER/ GUARD |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | DTMF 0/ Answer/ Guard Tone | | D6 D5 D4 D0 | D0 interacts with bits D6, D5, and D4 as shown. | | | | |
| | | | X X 1 X | Transmit DTMF tones. | | | | |
| | | | X 0 0 0 | Detects 2225 Hz in originate mode. | | | | |
| | | | X 1 0 0 | Transmits 2225 Hz in answer mode (Bell). | | | | |
| | | | X 0 0 1 | Detects 2100 Hz in originate mode. | | | | |
| | | | X 1 0 1 | Transmits 2100 Hz in answer mode (CCITT). | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 0 0 | Select 1800 Hz guard tone. | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 0 1 | Select 550 Hz guard tone. | | | | |
| D1 | DTMF 1/ Overspeed | | D4 D1 | D1 interacts with D4 as shown. | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | Asynchronous DPSK +1.0% -2.5%. | | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | Asynchronous DPSK +2.3% -2.5%. | | | | |

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|----------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|--|---------------|--------|--------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2 | DTMF 1/ OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ ANSWER/ GUARD |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 | DTMF 3, 2, 1, 0 | D3 D2 D1 D0 0 0 0 0- 1 1 1 1 | Programs 1 of 16 DTMF tone pairs that will be transmitted when TX DTMF and TX enable bit (CR0, bit D1) are set. Tone encoding is shown below: | | | | | |
| | | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | DTMF CODE | | TONES | | |
| | | | | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | LOW HIGH |
| | | | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 697 1209 |
| | | | 2 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 697 1336 |
| | | | 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 697 1477 |
| | | | 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 770 1209 |
| | | | 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 770 1336 |
| | | | 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 770 1477 |
| | | | 7 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 852 1209 |
| | | | 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 852 1336 |
| | | | 9 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 852 1477 |
| | | | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 941 1336 |
| | | | * | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 941 1209 |
| | | | # | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 941 1477 |
| | | | A | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 697 1633 |
| | | | B | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 770 1633 |
| | | | C | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 852 1633 |
| | | | D | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 941 1633 |
| D4 | Transmit DTMF | 0 | Disable DTMF. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Activates DTMF. The selected DTMF tones are transmitted continuously when this bit is high. TX DTMF overrides all other transmit functions. | | | | | |
| D5 | Transmit Answer Tone | D5 D4 D0 | D5 interacts with bits D4 and D0 as shown. | | | | | |
| | | 0 0 X | Disables answer tone generator. | | | | | |
| | | 1 0 0 | Enables answer tone generator. A 2225 Hz answer tone will be transmitted continuously when the Transmit Enable bit is set in CR0. The device must be in answer mode. | | | | | |
| | | 1 0 1 | Likewise a 2100 Hz answer tone will be transmitted. | | | | | |

SSI 73K222L V.22, V.21, Bell 212A Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|----------|---------------------|---------------------|--|---------------|--------|--------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2 | DTMF 1/ OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ ANSWER/ GUARD |
| BITS NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D6 | Transmit Guard Tone | 0 | Disables guard tone generator. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Enables guard tone generator (See D0 for selection of guard tones). | | | | | |
| D7 | RXD Output Control | 0 | Enables RXD pin. Receive data will be output on RXD. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Disables RXD pin. The RXD pin reverts to a high impedance with internal weak pull-up resistor. | | | | | |

ID REGISTER

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| ID 110 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|---------------------------------------|-------------|--|
| D7, D6 | Device Identification Signature | D7 D6 D5 D4 | Indicates Device: |
| | | 0 0 X X | SSI 73K212(L), 73K321L or 73K322L or 73K321L |
| | | 0 1 X X | SSI 73K221(L) or 73K302L |
| | | 1 0 X X | SSI 73K222(L) |
| | | 1 1 0 0 | SSI 73K224L |
| | | 1 1 1 0 | SSI 73K324L |
| | | 1 1 0 1 | SSI 73K312L |

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|------------------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 14V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260°C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD+0.3V |
| Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected. | |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| VDD Supply voltage | | 4.5 | 5 | 5.5 | V |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temperature | | -40 | | +85 | °C |
| Clock Variation | (11.0592 MHz) Crystal or external clock | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| External Components (Refer to Application section for placement.) | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass Capacitor | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| Bias setting resistor | (Placed between VDD and ISET pins) | 1.8 | 2 | 2.2 | MΩ |
| ISET Bypass Capacitor | (ISET pin to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 1 | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 2 | (External to GND) | 22 | | | μF |
| XTL1 Load Capacitor | Depends on crystal characteristics; | | | 40 | pF |
| XTL2 Load Capacitor | from pin to GND | | | 20 | |

3

SSI 73K222L
V.22, V.21, Bell 212A
Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|------|-----|-----|-------|
| IDD, Supply Current | | | | | |
| | ISET Resistor = 2 MΩ | | | | |
| IDDA, Active | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | 8 | 12 | mA |
| IDD1, Power-down | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | | 4 | mA |
| IDD2, Power-down | CLK = 19.200 KHz | | | 3 | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | | |
| Reset, XTL1, XTL2 | | 3.0 | | VDD | V |
| All other inputs | | 2.0 | | VDD | V |
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | 0 | | 0.8 | V |
| IIH, Input High Current | VI = VIH Max | | | 100 | μA |
| IIL, Input Low Current | VI = VIL Min | -200 | | | μA |
| Reset Pull-down Current | Reset = VDD | 1 | | 50 | μA |
| Input Capacitance | All Digital Input Pins | | | 10 | pF |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | |
| VOH, Output High Voltage | IOH MIN = -0.4 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| VOL, Output Low Voltage | IO MAX = 1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| VOL, CLK Output | IO = 3.6 mA | | | 0.6 | V |
| RXD Tri-State Pull-up Curr. | RXD = GND | -1 | | -50 | μA |
| CMAX, CLK Output | Maximum Capacitive Load | | | 15 | pF |

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING

(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|--|-------|-------|-----|-------|
| PSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Carrier Suppression | Measured at TXA | 55 | | | dB |
| Output Amplitude | TX scrambled marks | -11 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| FSK Mod/Demod | | | | | |
| Output Freq. Error | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | -0.35 | | +35 | % |
| Transmit Level | Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| Harmonic Distortion in 700-2900 Hz band | THD in the alternate band DPSK or FSK | | -60 | -50 | dB |
| Output Bias Distortion | Transmit Dotting Pattern in ALB @ RXD | | ±8 | | % |
| Total Output Jitter | Random Input in ALB @ RXD | -15 | | +15 | % |
| DTMF Generator | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | | -25 | | +25 | % |
| Output Amplitude | Low Band, DPSK Mode | -10 | -9 | -8 | dBm0 |
| Output Amplitude | High Band, DPSK Mode | -8 | -7 | -6 | dBm0 |
| Twist | High-Band to Low-Band, DPSK Mode | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | dB |
| Long Loop Detect | DPSK or FSK | -38 | | -28 | dBm0 |
| Dynamic Range | Refer to Performance Curves | | 45 | | dB |
| Call Progress Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level | 2-Tones in 350-600 Hz band | -34 | | 0 | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | 2-Tones in 350-600 Hz band | | | -41 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 27 | | 80 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 27 | | 80 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Note: Parameters expressed in dBm0 refer to the following definition: | | | | | |
| 0 dB loss in the Transmit path to the line. | | | | | |
| 2 dB gain in the Receive path from the line. | | | | | |
| Refer to the Basic Box Modem diagram in the Applications section for the DAA design. | | | | | |

SSI 73K222L
V.22, V.21, Bell 212A
Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------------------|---|-------|-----|------|------------|
| Carrier Detect DPSK or FSK | | | | | |
| Threshold | receive data | -49 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 15 | | 45 | ms |
| Hysteresis | Single tone detected | 2 | 3.0 | | dB |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 10 | | 24 | ms |
| Answer Tone Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level | Not in V.21 mode | -49.5 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 20 | | 45 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 10 | | 30 | ms |
| Detect Freq. Range | | -2.5 | | +2.5 | % |
| Output Smoothing Filter | | | | | |
| Output load | TXA pin; FSK Single | 10 | | | k Ω |
| | Tone out for THD = -50 db in .3 to 3.4 KHz | | | 50 | pF |
| Spurious Freq. Comp. | Frequency = 76.8 kHz | | | -39 | dBm0 |
| | Frequency = 153.6 kHz | | | -45 | dBm0 |
| TXA pin Output Impedance | | | 200 | 300 | Ω |
| Clock Noise | TXA pin; 76.8 KHz | | | 1.0 | mVrms |
| Carrier VCO | | | | | |
| Capture Range | Originate or Answer | -10 | | +10 | Hz |
| Capture Time | -10 Hz to +10 Hz Carrier Freq. Change Assum. | | 40 | 100 | ms |
| Recovered Clock | | | | | |
| Capture Range | % of frequency center frequency (center at 1200 Hz) | -625 | | +625 | ppm |
| Data Delay Time | Analog data in at RXA pin to receive data valid at RXD pin | | 30 | 50 | ms |

SSI 73K222L

V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

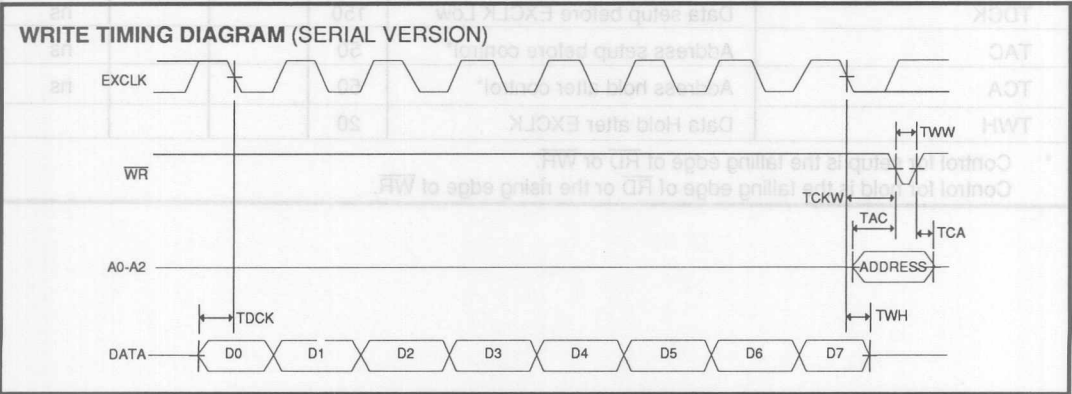
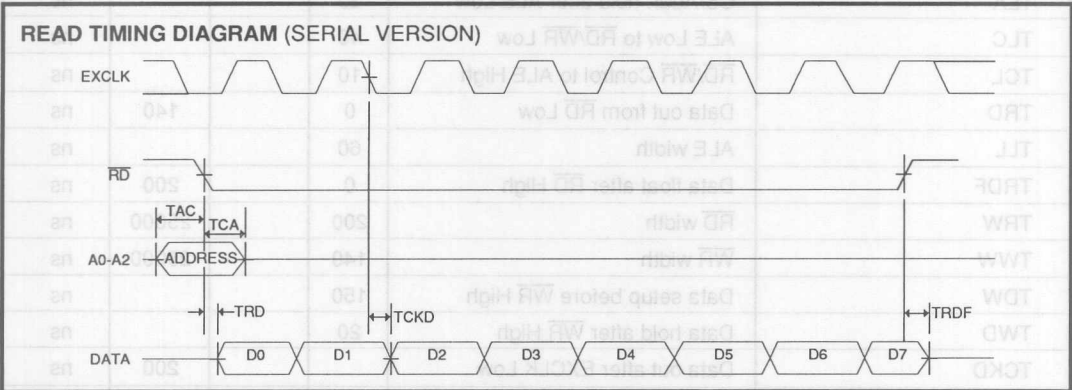
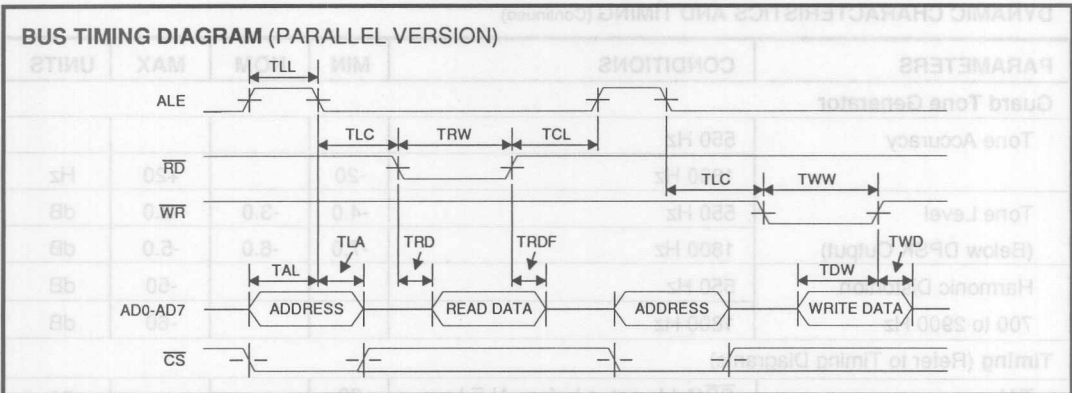
ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|------|------|-------|-------|
| Guard Tone Generator | | | | | |
| Tone Accuracy | 550 Hz | | | | |
| | 1800 Hz | -20 | | +20 | Hz |
| Tone Level (Below DPSK Output) | 550 Hz | -4.0 | -3.0 | -2.0 | dB |
| | 1800 Hz | -7.0 | -6.0 | -5.0 | dB |
| Harmonic Distortion 700 to 2900 Hz | 550 Hz | | | -50 | dB |
| | 1800 Hz | | | -60 | dB |
| Timing (Refer to Timing Diagrams) | | | | | |
| TAL | \overline{CS} /Addr. setup before ALE Low | 30 | | | ns |
| TLA | \overline{CS} /Addr. hold after ALE Low | 20 | | | ns |
| TLC | ALE Low to $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Low | 40 | | | ns |
| TCL | $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Control to ALE High | 10 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} Low | 0 | | 140 | ns |
| TLL | ALE width | 60 | | | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after \overline{RD} High | 0 | | 200 | ns |
| TRW | \overline{RD} width | 200 | | 25000 | ns |
| TWW | \overline{WR} width | 140 | | 25000 | ns |
| TDW | Data setup before \overline{WR} High | 150 | | | ns |
| TWD | Data hold after \overline{WR} High | 20 | | | ns |
| TCKD | Data out after EXCLK Low | | | 200 | ns |
| TCKW | \overline{WR} after EXCLK Low | 150 | | | ns |
| TDCK | Data setup before EXCLK Low | 150 | | | ns |
| TAC | Address setup before control* | 50 | | | ns |
| TCA | Address hold after control* | 50 | | | ns |
| TWH | Data Hold after EXCLK | 20 | | | |
| * Control for setup is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} . Control for hold is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or the rising edge of \overline{WR} . | | | | | |

SSI 73K222L
V.22, V.21, Bell 212A
Single-Chip Modem

TIMING DIAGRAMS



SSI 73K222L

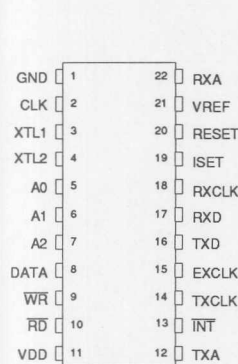
V.22, V.21, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

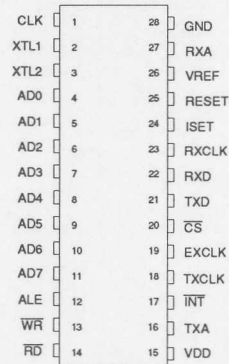
PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

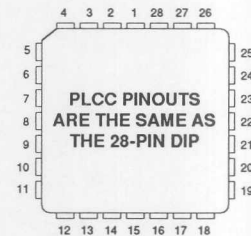
CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



**400-Mil
22-Pin DIP**



**600-Mil
28-Pin DIP**



**28-Pin
PLCC**

3

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|--|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| SSI 73K222L with Parallel Bus Interface 28-Pin Dip 28-Pin PLCC | 73K222L-IP 73K222L-IH | 73K222L-IP 73K222L-IH |
| SSI 73K222L with Serial Interface 22-Pin Sip | 73K222SL-IP 73K222SL-IC | 73K222SL-IP 73K222SL-IC |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

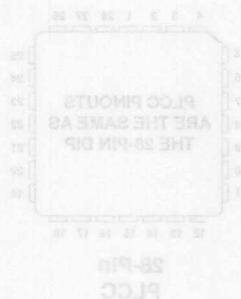
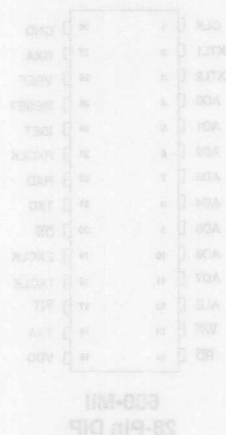
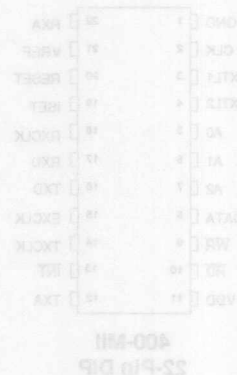
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

Single-Chip Modem V.22, V.21, Bell 212A SSI 73K222L

Notes:

CAUTION: Use handling procedures in accordance with the following instructions for a static sensitive component.

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)



3

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|---|------------|------------|
| SSI 73K222L with Parallel Bus Interface | 73K222L-IP | 73K222L-IP |
| 28-Pin DIP | 73K222L-IH | 73K222L-IH |
| 28-Pin PLCC | 73K222L-IP | 73K222L-IP |
| SSI 73K222L with Serial Interface | 73K222L-IC | 73K222L-IC |
| 22-Pin DIP | | |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product not for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14321 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-1022, (714) 873-9000, FAX: (714) 873-6874

Protected by the following Patents (4,694,175) (4,777,459)
©1988 Silicon Systems, Inc.

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

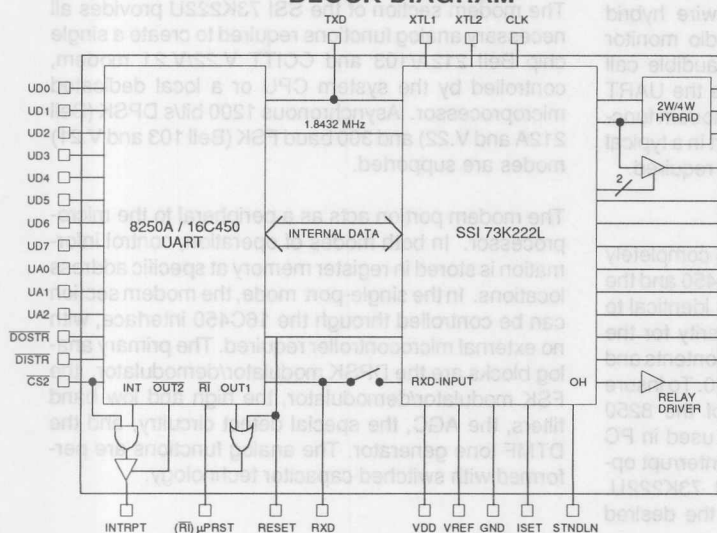
The SSI 73K222U is a compact, high-performance modem which includes a 8250A/16C450 compatible UART with the 1200 bit/s modem function on a single chip. Based on the SSI 73K222L 5V low power CMOS modem IC, the SSI 73K222U is the perfect modem/UART component for integral modem applications. It is ideal for applications such as portable terminals and laptop computers. The SSI 73K222U is the first fully featured modem IC which can function as an intelligent modem in integral applications without requiring a separate dedicated microcontroller. It provides for data communication at 1200, 600, and 300 bit/s in a multi-mode manner that allows operation compatible with both Bell 212A/103 and CCITT V.22/V.21 standards. The digital interface section contains a high speed version of the industrystandard 8250A/16C450 UART, commonly used in personal computer products. A unique feature of the SSI 73K222U is that the UART section can be used without the modem function, providing an additional asynchronous port at no added cost. The SSI 73K222U is designed in CMOS technology and operates from a single +5V supply. Available packaging includes 40-pin DIP or 44-pin PLCC for surface mount applications.

FEATURES

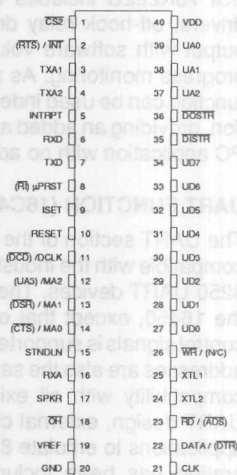
- Modem/UART combination optimized for integral bus applications
- Includes features of SSI 73K222L single-chip modem
- Fully compatible 16C450/8250 UART with 8250B or 8250A selectable interrupt emulation
- High speed UART will interface directly with high clock rate bus with no wait states
- Single-port mode allows full modem and UART control from CPU bus, with no dedicated microprocessor required
- Dual-port mode suits conventional designs using local microprocessor for transparent modem operation
- Complete modem functions for 1200 bit/s (Bell 212A, V.22) and 0-300 bit/s (Bell 103, V.21)
- Includes DTMF generator, carrier, call-progress and precise answer-tone detectors for intelligent dialing capability
- On chip 2-wire/4-wire hybrid driver and off-hook relay buffer
- Speaker output with four-level software driven volume control
- Low power CMOS (40 mW) with power down mode (15 mW)
- Operates from single +5V supply

3

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



Parentheses indicate single-port mode.

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem with UART

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73K222U integrates an industry standard 8250/16C450 UART function with the modem capability provided by the SSI 73K222L single chip modem IC. The SSI 73K222U is designed specifically for integral microprocessor bus intelligent modem products. These designs typically require the standard 8250 or higher speed 16450 UART to perform parallel-to-serial and serial-to-parallel conversion process necessary to interface a parallel bus with the inherently serial modem function. The SSI 73K222U provides a highly integrated design which can eliminate multiple components in any integral bus modem application, and is ideal for internal PC modem applications.

The SSI 73K222U includes two possible operating modes. In the dual-port mode, the device is suitable for conventional plug-in modem card designs which use a separate local microprocessor for command interpretation and control of the modem function. In this mode, a dedicated microcontroller communicates with the SSI 73K222U using a separate serial command port. In the single-port mode the main CPU can control both the UART and modem function using the parallel data bus. This allows very efficient modem design with no local microprocessor required for dedicated applications such as laptop PC's or specialized terminals.

To make designs more space efficient, the SSI 73K222U includes the 2-wire to 4-wire hybrid drivers, off-hook relay driver, and an audio monitor output with software volume control for audible call progress monitoring. As an added feature the UART function can be used independent of the modem function, providing an added asynchronous port in a typical PC application with no additional circuitry required.

UART FUNCTION (16C450)

The UART section of the SSI 73K222U is completely compatible with the industry standard 16C450 and the 8250 UART devices. The bus interface is identical to the 16450, except that only a single polarity for the control signals is supported. The register contents and addresses are also the same as the 16C450. To insure compatibility with all existing releases of the 8250 UART design, external circuitry normally used in PC applications to emulate 8250B or 8250A interrupt operation has been included on the SSI 73K222U. A select line is then provided to enable the desired

interrupt operation. The UART used in the SSI 73K222U can be used with faster bus read and write cycles than a conventional 16C450 UART. This allows it to interface directly with higher clock rate microprocessors with no need for external circuitry to generate wait states.

The primary function of the UART is to perform parallel-to-serial conversion on data received from the CPU and serial-to-parallel conversion on data received from the internal modem or an external device. The UART can program the number of bits per character, parity bit generation and checking, and the number of stop bits. The UART also provides break generation and detection, detection of error conditions, and reporting of status at any time. A prioritized maskable interrupt is also provided.

The UART block has a programmable baud rate generator which divides an internal 1.8432 MHz clock to generate a clock at 16 x the data rate. The data rate for the transmit and receive sections must be the same. For DPSK modulation, the data rate must be 1200 Hz or 600 Hz. For FSK modulation, the data rate must be 300 Hz or less. The baud generator can create a clock that supports digital transfer at up to 115.2 kHz. The output of the baud generator can be made available at the CLK pin under program control.

MODEM FUNCTION (SSI 73K222L)

The modem section of the SSI 73K222U provides all necessary analog functions required to create a single chip Bell 212A/103 and CCITT V.22/V.21 modem, controlled by the system CPU or a local dedicated microprocessor. Asynchronous 1200 bit/s DPSK (Bell 212A and V.22) and 300 baud FSK (Bell 103 and V.21) modes are supported.

The modem portion acts as a peripheral to the microprocessor. In both modes of operation, control information is stored in register memory at specific address locations. In the single-port mode, the modem section can be controlled through the 16C450 interface, with no external microcontroller required. The primary analog blocks are the DPSK modulator/demodulator, the FSK modulator/demodulator, the high and low band filters, the AGC, the special detect circuitry, and the DTMF tone generator. The analog functions are performed with switched capacitor technology.

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

3

PSK MODULATOR / DEMODULATOR

The SSI 73K222U modulates a serial bit stream into dibit pairs that are represented by four possible phase shifts as prescribed by the Bell 212A or V.22 standard. The baseband signal is then filtered to reduce inter-symbol interference on the band limited 2-wire PSTN line. Transmission occurs using either a 1200 Hz (originate mode) or 2400 Hz carrier (answer mode). Demodulation is the reverse of the modulation process, with the incoming analog signal eventually decoded into dibits and converted back to a serial bit stream. The demodulator also recovers the clock which was encoded into the analog signal during modulation. The demodulator decodes either a 1200 Hz carrier (originate carrier) or a 2400 Hz carrier (answer carrier). The SSI 73K222U uses a phase-locked-loop coherent demodulation technique that offers inherently better performance than typical DPSK demodulators used by other manufacturers.

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator frequency modulates the analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. In Bell 103, the standard frequencies of 1270 Hz and 1070 Hz (originate mark and space) and 2225 Hz and 2025 Hz (answer mark and space) are used. V.21 mode uses 980 Hz and 1180 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 1650 Hz and 1850 Hz (answer, mark and space). Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

A high and low band filter is included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit signal and provide compromise delay equalization and rejection of out-of-band signals in the receive channel. Amplitude and phase equalization is necessary to compensate for distortion of the transmission line and to reduce intersymbol interference in the band limited receive signal. The transmit signal filtering approximates a 75% square root of raised Cosine frequency response characteristic.

AGC

The automatic gain control maintains a signal level at the input to the demodulators which is constant to within 1 dB. It corrects quickly for increases in signal which would cause clipping, and provides a total dynamic range of >45 dB.

SPECIAL DETECT CIRCUITRY

The special detect circuitry monitors the received analog signal to determine status or presence of carrier, call-progress tones, answer tone, and weak received signal (long loop condition). An unscrambled mark signal is also detected when the received data out of the DPSK demodulator before the descrambler has been high for $165.5 \text{ mS} \pm 13.5 \text{ mS}$. The appropriate status bit is set when one of these conditions changes and an interrupt is generated for all monitored conditions except long loop. The interrupts are disabled (masked) when the enable interrupt bit is set to a 0.

DTMF GENERATOR

The DTMF generator will output one of 16 standard dual-tones determined by a 4-bit binary value and TX DTMF mode bit previously loaded into the tone register. Tone generation is initiated when the DTMF mode is selected and the transmit enable (CR0 bit D1) is changed from a 0 to a 1.

TEST FEATURES

Test features such as analog loopback (ALB), remote digital loopback, local digital loopback, and internal pattern generators are also included.

LINE INTERFACE

The line interface of the SSI 73K222U consists of a two-to-four wire hybrid, and an off-hook relay driver.

The two-to-four wire converter has a differential transmit output and requires only a line transformer and an external impedance matching resistor. Four-wire operation is also available by simply using either of the transmit output signals.

The relay driver output of the SSI 73K222U is an open drain signal capable of sinking 20 mA, which can control a line closure relay used to take the line off hook and to perform pulse dialing.

AUDIO MONITOR

An audio monitor output is provided which has a software programmable volume control. Its output is the received signal. The audio monitor output can directly drive a high impedance load, but an external power amplifier is necessary to drive a low-impedance

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

PIN DESCRIPTION

GENERAL

| NAME | DIP | PLCC | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|-----|------|------|--|
| VDD | 40 | 44 | I | +5V Supply $\pm 10\%$, bypass with a .1 and a 22 μ F capacitor to GND |
| GND | 20 | 22 | I | System Ground |
| VREF | 19 | 21 | O | VREF is an internally generated reference voltage which is externally bypassed by a 0.1 μ F capacitor to the system ground. |
| ISSET | 9 | 11 | I | The analog current is set by connecting this pin to VDD through a 2 M Ω resistor. ISET should be bypassed to GND. Alternatively, an internal bias can be selected by connecting ISET to GND, which will result in a larger worst-case supply current due to the tolerance of on-chip resistors. Bypass with .1 μ F capacitor if resistor is used. |
| XTL1 | 25 | 27 | I | These pins are connections for the internal crystal oscillator requiring an 11.0592 MHz crystal (9216Hz x 1200). XTL2 can also be TTL driven from an external clock. |
| XTL2 | 24 | 26 | I | |
| CLK | 21 | 23 | O | Output Clock. This pin is selectable under processor control to be either the crystal frequency (which might be used as a processor clock) or the output of the baud generator. |
| RESET | 10 | 12 | I | Reset. An active signal (high) on this pin will put the chip into an inactive state. The control register bits (except the Receiver Buffer, Transmitter Holding, and Divisor latches) will be reset. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. An internal pull-down resistor permits power-on reset using a 0.1 μ F capacitor connected to the 5V supply. |
| STNDLN | 15 | 17 | I | Single-port mode select (active high). In a single-port system there is no local microprocessor and all the modem control is done through the 16C450 parallel bus interface. The local microprocessor interface is replaced with UART control signals which allow the device to function as a digital UART as well as modem. |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

UART INTERFACE

| NAME | DIP | PLCC | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------|--------|---|
| UA0-UA2 UA3 | 37-39 12 | 41-43 14 | I I | UART Address. These pins determine which of the UART registers is being selected during a read or write on the UART data bus. The contents of the DLAB bit in the UART's Line Control Register also control which register is referenced. In single-port mode, UA0-UA3 are latched when \overline{ADS} goes high. In dual-port, only UA0-UA2 are used. |
| UDO-UD7 | 27-34 | 30-37 | I/O | (3 state) UART Data. Data or control information to the UART registers is carried over these lines. |
| \overline{DISTR} | 35 | 38 | I | Data Input Strobe. A low on this pin requests a read of the internal UART registers. Data is output on the D0-D7 lines if \overline{DISTR} and $\overline{CS2}$ are active. |
| \overline{DOSTR} | 36 | 39 | I | Data Output Strobe. A low on this pin requests a write of the internal UART registers. Data on the D0-D7 lines are latched on the rising edge of \overline{DOSTR} . Data is only written if both \overline{DOSTR} and $\overline{CS2}$ are active. |
| $\overline{CS2}$ | 1 | 2 | I | Chip Select. A low on this pin allows a read or write to the UART registers to occur. In single port mode, $\overline{CS2}$ is latched on \overline{ADS} . |
| INTRPT | 5 | 7 | O | (3 state) UART Interrupt. This signal indicates that an interrupt condition on the UART side has occurred. If the Enable 8250A interrupt bit in the interrupt Enable Register is 0 the interrupt is gated by the \overline{DISTR} signal to provide compatibility with the 8250B. The output can be put in a high impedance state with the OUT2 register bit in the Modem Control Register. In single-port mode, INTRPT also becomes valid when a modem interrupt signal is generated by the modem section's Detect Register. |
| RXD | 6 | 8 | I/O | Function is determined by STNDLN pin and bit 7, Tone Control Register: |
| | | | | STNDLN D7 |
| | | | | 0 0 RXD outputs data received by modem. |
| | | | | 1 0 RXD is electrically an input but signal is ignored. |
| | | | | X 1 RXD is a serial input to UART. |

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

UART INTERFACE (continued)

| TXD | 7 | 9 | O | Function is determined by STNDLN pin and bit 7, Tone Control Register: |
|-----|---|---|---|--|
| | | | | STNDLN D7 |
| | | | 0 | 0 TXD is a serial output of UART. |
| | | | 1 | 0 TXD is forced to a mark. |
| | | | X | 1 TXD is a serial output of UART. |

ANALOG / LINE INTERFACE

| NAME | DIP | PLCC | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|--------|--------|--------|---|
| TXA1 TXA2 | 3 4 | 4 5 | O O | (differential) Transmitted Analog. These pins provide the analog output signals to be transmitted to the phone line. The drivers will differentially drive the impedance of the line transformer and the line matching resistor. An external hybrid can also be built using TXA1 as a single ended transmit signal. |
| RXA | 16 | 18 | I | Received Analog. This pin inputs analog information that is being received by the two-to-four wire hybrid. This input can also be taken directly from an external hybrid. |
| SPKR | 17 | 19 | O | Speaker Output. This pin outputs the received signal through a programmable attenuator stage, which can be used for volume control and disabling the speaker. |
| $\overline{\text{OH}}$ | 18 | 20 | O | Off-hook relay driver. This signal is an open drain output capable of sinking 20mA and is used for controlling a relay. The output is the complement of the $\overline{\text{OH}}$ register bit in CR3. |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

UART CONTROL INTERFACE (STNDLN = 1)
(See Figure 1: Single-port mode)

| NAME | DIP | PLCC | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|-----|------|------|---|
| \overline{ADS} | 23 | 25 | I | Address Strobe. \overline{ADS} is used to latch address and chip select to simplify interfacing to a multiplexed Address/Data Bus. UA0-UA3 and $\overline{CS2}$ are latched when the \overline{ADS} signal goes high. |
| UA3 | 12 | 14 | I | UART Address Bit 3. UA3 is used in single-port mode to address the modem registers from the 16C450 interface. If UA3 is 0, the normal 16C450 registers are addressed by UA0-UA2 and if UA3 is 1, the modem registers are addressed. UA3 is latched when \overline{ADS} goes high. |
| \overline{CTS} | 14 | 16 | I | Clear to Send. This pin is the complement of CTS bit in the Modem Status Register. The signal is used in modem handshake control to signify that communications have been established and that data can be transmitted. |
| \overline{DSR} | 13 | 15 | I | Data Set Ready. This pin is the complement of DSR bit in the Modem Status Register. The signal is used in modem handshake to signify that the modem is ready to establish communications. |
| \overline{DCD} | 11 | 13 | I | Data Carrier Detect. This pin is the complement of DCD bit in the Modem Status Register. The signal is used in modem control handshake to signify that the modem is receiving a carrier. |
| \overline{DTR} | 22 | 24 | O | Data Terminal Ready. The \overline{DTR} output is programmed through a bit in the Modem Control Register. The signal is used in modem handshake to signify that the 16C450 is available to communicate. |
| \overline{RTS} | 2 | 3 | O | Request to Send. The \overline{RTS} output is programmed through a bit in the Modem Control Register. The signal is used in modem handshake to signify that the 16C450 has data to transmit. |
| \overline{RI} | 8 | 10 | I | Ring Indicator. This Indicates that a telephone ringing signal is being received. This pin is the complement of the RI bit in the Modem Status Register. |

3

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE (STNDLN = 0)

(See Figure 2: Dual-port mode)

| NAME | DIP | PLCC | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-------|-------|------|---|
| MA0-MA2 | 12-14 | 14-16 | I | Modem Address Control. These lines carry register addresses for the modem registers and should be valid throughout any read or write operation. |
| DATA | 22 | 24 | I/O | Serial Control Data. Serial control data to be read/written is clocked in/out on the falling edge of the DCLK pin. The direction of data transfer is controlled by the state of the RD pin. If the RD pin is active (low) the DATA line is an output. Conversely, if the RD pin is inactive (high) the DATA line is an input. |
| RD | 23 | 25 | I | Read. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K222U that control data or status information is being read by the processor from a modem register. |
| WR | 26 | 28 | I | Write. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K222U that control data or status information is available for writing into a modem register. The procedure for writing is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive cycles of DCLK and then to pulse WR low. Data is written on the rising edge of WR. |
| DCLK | 11 | 13 | I | Data Clock. The falling edge of this clock is used to strobe control data for the modem registers in or out on the DATA pin. The normal procedure for a write is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive cycles of DCLK and then to pulse WR low. Data is written on the rising edge of WR. The falling edge of the RD signal must continue for eight cycles of DCLK in order to read all eight bits of the reference register. Read data is provided LSB first. Data will not be output unless the RD signal is active. |
| INT | 2 | 3 | O | (with weak pull-up) Modem Interrupt. This output signal is used to inform the modem processor that a change in a modem detect flag has occurred. The processor must then read the Modem Detect Register to determine which detect triggered the interrupt. INT will stay active until the processor reads the Modem Detect Register or does a full reset. |
| μPRST* | 8 | 10 | O | Microprocessor Reset. This output signal is used to provide a hardware reset to the microprocessor. This signal is high if the RESET pin is high or the MCR bit D3 (OUT1) bit is set. |

* NOTE: The μPRST pin is an upgraded function which was not included in the initial definition of the SSI 73K222U.

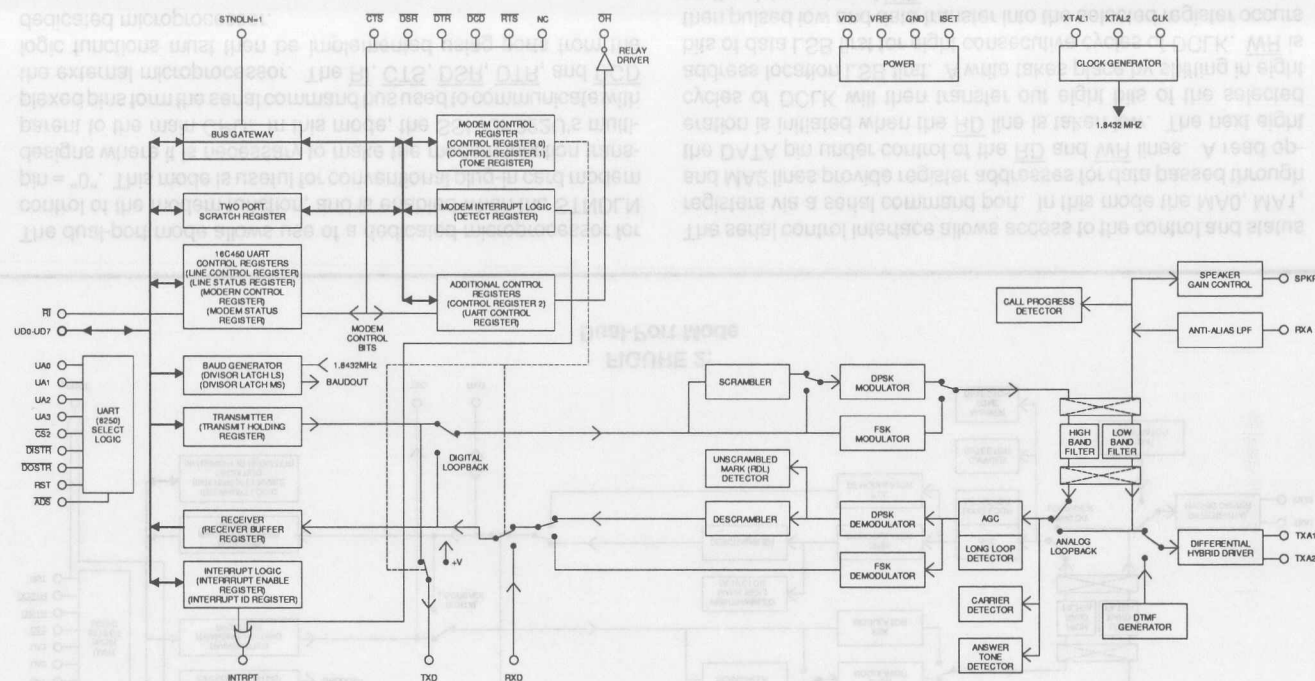


FIGURE 1:
Single-Port Mode

In the single-port mode, the SSI 73K222U is designed to be accessed only by the main CPU using the same parallel bus utilized for data transfer. This mode is enabled when the STNDLN pin is at a logic "1". In the single port mode, internal registers are accessed by the main CPU to configure both the UART section and the

modem function, eliminating the need for a separate microcontroller. In this mode, multiplexed pins provide the CTS, DSR, DTR, DED and RI signals normally associated with the UART function. A separate pin, ADS, is used for bus control.

3-74

The serial control interface allows access to the control and status registers via a serial command port. In this mode the MA0, MA1, and MA2 lines provide register addresses for data passed through the DATA pin under control of the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} lines. A read operation is initiated when the \overline{RD} line is taken low. The next eight cycles of DCLK will then transfer out eight bits of the selected address location LSB first. A write takes place by shifting in eight bits of data LSB first for eight consecutive cycles of DCLK. \overline{WR} is then pulsed low and data transfer into the selected register occurs on the rising edge of \overline{WR} .

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

UART CONTROL REGISTER OVERVIEW

| | | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|--|-----|--------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| REGISTER | | UART ADDRESS UA3-UA0* | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| RECEIVER BUFFER REGISTER (READ ONLY) | RBR | 0000 DLAB = 0 | BIT 7 (MSB) | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 (LSB) |
| TRANSMIT HOLDING REGISTER (WRITE ONLY) | THR | 0000 DLAB = 0 | BIT 7 (MSB) | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 (LSB) |
| INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER | IER | 0001 DLAB = 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | ENABLE 8250A/16C450 INTERRUPT | ENABLE MODEM STATUS INTERRUPT | ENABLE REC. LINE STATUS INTERRUPT | ENABLE THR EMPTY INTERRUPT | ENABLE REC. DATA AVAILABLE INTERRUPT |
| INTERRUPT ID REGISTER (READ ONLY) | IIR | 0010 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | INTERRUPT ID BIT 1 | INTERRUPT ID BIT 0 | *0* IF INTERRUPT PENDING |
| LINE CONTROL REGISTER | LCR | 0011 | DIVISOR LATCH ACCESS (DLAB) | SET BREAK | STICK PARITY | EVEN PARITY SELECT (EPS) | PARITY ENABLE (PEN) | NUMBER OF STOP BITS (STB) | WORD LENGTH SELECT 1 (WLS1) | WORD LENGTH SELECT 0 (WLS0) |
| MODEM CONTROL REGISTER | MCR | 0100 | 0 | 0 | 0 | LOOP | ENABLE INTERRUPT (OUT2 IN 16C450) | μPRST (OUT1 IN 16C450) | REQUEST TO SEND (RTS) | DATA TERMINAL READY (DTR) |
| LINE STATUS REGISTER | LSR | 0101 | 0 | TRANSMIT SHIFT REG. EMPTY (TSRE) | TRANSMIT HOLDING REGISTER EMPTY (THRE) | BREAK INTERRUPT (BI) | FRAMING ERROR (FE) | PARITY ERROR (PE) | OVERRUN ERROR (OE) | DATA READY (DR) |
| MODEM STATUS REGISTER (READ ONLY) | MSR | 0110 | DATA CARRIER DETECT (DCD) | RING INDICATOR (RI) | DATA SET READY (DSR) | CLEAR TO SEND (CTS) | DELTA DATA CARR. DETECT (DDCD) | TRAILING EDGE RING INDICATOR (TERI) | DELTA DATA SET READY (DDSR) | DELTA CLEAR TO SEND (DCTS) |
| SCRATCH REGISTER | SCR | 0111 | BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
| DIVISOR LATCH (LS) | DLL | 0000 DLAB = 1 | BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
| DIVISOR LATCH (MS) | DLM | 0001 DLAB = 1 | BIT 15 | BIT 14 | BIT 13 | BIT 12 | BIT 11 | BIT 10 | BIT 9 | BIT 8 |

* In single-port mode (STNDLN pin = 1), all four address lines UA3-UA0 are used to address the UART Control Registers.

* In dual-port mode (STNDLN pin = 0), only three address lines UA2-UA0 are used to address the UART Control Registers; the UA3 pin becomes the MA2 pin in this mode.

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

MODEM CONTROL REGISTER OVERVIEW

| REGISTER | | ADDRESS | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|------|-------------|-------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| | | STNDLN | | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| | | MA2- MA0 | UA3- UA0 | | | | | | | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | 1000 | MODULATION OPTION | 0 | MODULATION MODE | POWER ON | CHARACTER SIZE 1 (READ ONLY) | CHARACTER SIZE 0 (READ ONLY) | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ORIGINATE/ANSWER |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | 1001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | 1010 | DEVICE SIGNATURE 1 | DEVICE SIGNATURE 0 | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK DETECT | CARRIER DETECT | ANSWER TONE DETECT | CALL PROGRESS DETECT | LONG LOOP DETECT |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TONE | 011 | 1011 | RXD/TXD CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2 | DTMF 1 | DTMF 0 GUARD/ANS. TONE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | CR2 | 100 | 1100 | RESERVED FOR FUTURE USE | | | | | | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | 1101 | SPEAKER VOLUME 1 | SPEAKER VOLUME 0 | OFF-HOOK | X | X | X | X | X |
| SCRATCH REGISTER | SCR | 110 | 1110 | BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
| UART CONTROL REGISTER | UCR | 111 | 1111 | TXCLK (READ ONLY) | X | REQUEST TO SEND (RTS) (READ ONLY) | DATA TERM. READY (DTR) (READ ONLY) | RING INDICATOR (RI) | DATA CARRIER DETECT (DCD) | DATA SET READY (DSR) | CLEAR TO SEND (CTS) |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

UART REGISTER BIT DESCRIPTIONS

UART SECTION

RECEIVER BUFFER REGISTER (RBR) (READ ONLY)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 000, DLAB = 0 UA3 - UA0 = 0000, DLAB = 0

This read only register contains the parallel received data with start, stop, and parity bits (if any) removed. The high order bits for less than 8 data bits/character will be set to 0.

TRANSMIT HOLDING REGISTER (THR) (WRITE ONLY)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 000, DLAB = 0 UA3 - UA0 = 0000, DLAB = 0

This write only register contains the parallel data to be transmitted. The data is sent LSB first with start, stop, and parity bits (if any) added to the serial bit stream as the data is transferred.

INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER (IER)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 001, DLAB = 0 UA3 - UA0 = 0001, DLAB = 0

This 8-bit register enables the four types of interrupts of the UART to separately activate the chip Interrupt (INTRPT) output signal. It is possible to totally disable the interrupt system by resetting bits 0 through 3 of the Interrupt Enable Register. Similarly, by setting the appropriate bits of this register to a logic 1, selected interrupts can be enabled. Disabling the interrupt system inhibits the Interrupt Identification Register and the active (high) INTRPT output from the chip. All other system functions operate in their normal manner, including the setting of the Line Status and Modem Status Registers.

| BITS NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|------------------------------------|-----------|---|
| D0 | Received Data | 1 | This bit enables the Received Data Available Interrupt when set to logic 1. |
| D1 | Transmitter Holding Register Empty | 1 | This bit enables the Transmitter Holding Register Empty Interrupt, when set to logic 1. |
| D2 | Receiver Line Status Interrupt | 1 | This bit enables the Receiver Line Status Interrupt, when set to logic 1. |
| D3 | Modem Status | 1 | This bit enables the Modem Status Register Interrupt when set to interrupt logic 1. |
| D4 | 8250A/16450 | 1/0 | Set for compatibility with 8250A/16C450 UARTS. Reset this bit to disable the gating of the INTRPT interrupt line with the DISTR signal which is needed for 8250B compatibility. |
| D5 - D7 | Not Used | 0 | These three bits are always logic 0. |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

INTERRUPT ID REGISTER (IIR) (READ ONLY)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 010 UA3 - UA0 = 0010

UART SECTION

The IIR register gives prioritized information as to the status of interrupt conditions. When accessed, the IIR freezes the highest priority interrupt pending and no other interrupts are acknowledged until the particular interrupt is serviced by the CPU.

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|------------------------|-------------|--|
| D0 | Interrupt Pending | 0 | This bit can be used in either a hardwired prioritized or polled environment to indicate whether an interrupt is pending. When bit 0 is a logic 0, an interrupt is pending and the IIR contents may be used as a pointer to the appropriate interrupt service routine. |
| | | 1 | When bit 0 is a logic 1, no interrupt is pending. |
| D1, D2 | Interrupt ID bits 0, 1 | Table below | These two bits of the IIR are used to identify the highest priority interrupt pending as indicated in the following table. |
| D3 - D7 | Not Used | 0 | These five bits of the IIR are always logic 0. |

INTERRUPT PRIORITY TABLE

| D2 | D1 | D0 | PRIORITY | TYPE | SOURCE | RESET |
|----|----|----|----------|---------------------------------|--|---|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | - | None | None | - |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | Highest | Receiver Line Status | Overrun Error, Parity Error, Framing Error or Break Interrupt | Reading the Line Status Register |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | Second | Receive Data Available | Receive Data Available | Reading the Rcvr. Buffer Register |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | Third | Transmit Holding Register Empty | Transmit Holding Register Empty | Reading IIR Register (if source of interrupt) or Writing to Transmit Holding Register |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | Fourth | Modem Status | Clear to Send or Data Set Ready or Ring Indicator or Data Carrier Det. | Reading the Modem Status Register |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

LINE CONTROL REGISTER (LCR)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 011 UA3 - UA0 = 0011

UART SECTION

The user specifies the format of the asynchronous data communications exchange via the Line Control Register. In addition to controlling the format, the user may retrieve the contents of the Line Control Register for inspection. This feature simplifies system programming and eliminates the need for separate storage in system memory of the line characteristics.

| BITS NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|----------------------|-----------|--|
| D0 | Word Length Select 0 | | Bits D0 and D1 select the number of data bits per character as shown: |
| D1 | Word Length Select 1 | D1 D0 | Word Length |
| | | 0 0 | 5 bits |
| | | 0 1 | 6 bits |
| | | 1 0 | 7 bits |
| | | 1 1 | 8 bits |
| D2 | Number of Stop Bits | 0 or 1 | This bit specifies the number of stop bits in each transmitted character. If bit 2 is a logic 0, one stop bit is generated in the transmitted data. If bit 2 is a logic 1 when a 5-bit word length is selected via bits 0 and 1, one-and-a-half stop bits are generated. If bit 2 is a logic 1 when either a 6, 7, or 8-bit word length is selected, two stop bits are generated. The receiver checks the first stop bit only, regardless of the number of stop bits selected. |
| D3 | Parity Enable | 1 | This bit is the Parity Enable bit. When bit 3 is a logic 1, a parity bit is generated (transmit data) or checked (receive data) between the last data word bit and stop bit of the serial data. (The parity bit is used to produce an even or odd number of 1's when the data word bits and the parity bit are summed). |
| D4 | Even Parity Select | 1 or 0 | This bit is the Even Parity Select bit. When bit 3 is a logic 1 and bit 4 is a logic 0, an odd number of logic 1's are transmitted or checked in the data word bits and parity bit. When bit 3 is a logic 1 and bit 4 is a logic 1, an even number of logic 1's are transmitted or checked. |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

LINE CONTROL REGISTER (LCR) (Continued)

UART SECTION

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---------------------------------|-----------|---|
| D5 | Stick Parity | 1 or 0 | This bit is the Stick Parity bit. When bit 3 is a logic 1 and bit 5 is a logic 1, the parity bit is transmitted and checked by the receiver as a logic 0 if bit 4 is a logic 1 or as a logic 1 if bit 4 is a logic 0. |
| | | D5 D4 | Parity |
| | | 0 0 | ODD Parity |
| | | 0 1 | EVEN Parity |
| | | 1 0 | MARK Parity |
| | | 1 1 | SPACE Parity |
| D6 | Set Break | 1 | Output of modem is set to a spacing state. When the modem is transmitting DPSK data if the Set Break bit is held for one full character (start, data, parity, stop) the break will be extended to $2N + 3$ space bits (where $N = \# \text{ data bits} + \text{parity bit} + 1 \text{ start} + 1 \text{ stop}$). Any data bits generated during this time will be ignored. See note below. |
| D7 | Divisor Latch Access Bit (DLAB) | 1 | This bit is the Divisor Latch Access Bit (DLAB). It must be set high (logic 1) to access the Divisor Latches of the baud generator during a Read or Write operation. It must be set low (logic 0) to access the Receiver Buffer, the Transmitter Holding Register, or the Interrupt Enable Register. |
| <p>NOTE: This feature enables the CPU to alert a terminal in a computer communications system. If the following sequence is followed, no erroneous or extraneous characters will be transmitted because of the break.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Load an all 0's pad character in response to THRE. 2. Set break in response to the next THRE. 3. Wait for the Transmitter to be idle. (TSRE = 1), and clear break when normal transmission has to be restored. <p>During the break, the Transmitter can be used as a character timer to accurately establish the break duration.</p> | | | |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

MODEM CONTROL REGISTER (MCR)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 100 UA3 - UA0 = 0100

UART SECTION

The MCR register controls the interface with the modem. Bits D1 and D0 are also available as read only bits in the UART Control Register in the Modem Registers. In single-port mode, bits D1 and D0 are available inverted at the RTS and DTR pins.

| BITS NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|--|-----------|--|
| D0 | DTR | 1 | This bit controls the Data Terminal Ready ($\overline{\text{DTR}}$) output. When bit 0 is set to a logic 1, the $\overline{\text{DTR}}$ output is forced to a logic 0. When bit 0 is reset to a logic 0, the $\overline{\text{DTR}}$ output is forced to a logic 1. |
| D1 | RTS | 1 | This bit controls the Request to Send ($\overline{\text{RTS}}$) output. When bit 1 is set to a logic 1, the $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ output is forced to a logic 0. When bit 1 is reset to a logic 0, the $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ output is forced to a logic 1. |
| D2 | μPRST^* (OUT1 in 16C450) | 1 | In single-port mode inactive unless loop = 1, then functions as below (D4). In dual-port mode the μPRST pin is the logical OR of this bit and the RESET pin. |
| D3 | Enable Interrupt (OUT2 in 16C450) | 0 | Sets INTRPT pin to high impedance if STNDLN = 1. |
| | | 1 | INTRPT output enabled. |
| D4 | LOOP | 1 | This bit provides a local loopback feature for diagnostic testing of the UART portion of the SSI 73K222U. When bit D4 is set to logic 1, the following occurs: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. TXD is forced to mark, RXD is ignored. 2. The output of the Transmitter is looped to the Receiver. 3. The four modem control inputs to the UART (CTS, DSR, DCD, and RI) are ignored and the UART signals RTS, DTR, Enable Interrupt, and μPRST are forced inactive. 4. The UART signals RTS, DTR, Enable Interrupt, and μPRST are internally connected to the four control signals CTS, DSR, DCD and RI respectively. Note that the Modem Status Register Interrupts are now controlled by the lower four bits of the Modem Control Register. The interrupts are still controlled by the Interrupt Enable Register. |
| D5 - D7 | | 0 | These bits are permanently set to logic 0. |

* Note: The μPRST bit has an upgraded function which was not included in the initial definition of the SSI 73K222U.

LINE STATUS REGISTER (LSR)

STNDLN: 0

ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 101

1

UA3 - UA0 = 0101

UART SECTION

This register provides status information to the CPU concerning the data transfer.

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|------|-----------|---|
| D0 | DR | 1 | The Data Ready (DR) bit is set to a 1 whenever a complete incoming character has been received and transferred into the Receiver Buffer Register. Data Ready is reset to 0 by reading the data in the Receiver Buffer Register or by writing a 0 into it from the processor. |
| D1 | OE | 1 | The Overrun Error (OE) bit indicates that the data in the Receiver Buffer Register was not read by the CPU before the next character was transferred into the Receiver Buffer Register, thereby destroying the previous character. The OE indicator is reset whenever the CPU reads the contents of the Line Status Register. |
| D2 | PE | 1 | The Parity Error (PE) bit indicates that the received character did not have the correct parity. The bit is reset to 0 whenever the CPU reads the Line Status Register. |
| D3 | FE | 1 | The Framing Error (FE) bit indicates that the received character did not have a valid stop bit. The FE indicator is reset whenever the CPU reads the contents of the Line Status Register. A framing error will not occur in DPSK receive from the modem due to the fact that missing stop bits are reinserted. |
| D4 | BI | 1 | The Break Interrupt (BI) bit indicates that a break has been received. A break occurs whenever the received data is held to 0 for a full data word (start + data + stop) or for two full data words when receiving in DPSK mode from the modem. The BI bit is reset to 0 whenever the CPU reads the Line Status Register. |
| D5 | THRE | 1 | The Transmit Holding Register Empty (THRE) indicates that the Transmitter is ready to accept a new character for transmission. The THRE bit is reset when the CPU loads a character into the Transmit Holding Register. |
| D6 | TSRE | 1 | The Transmit Shift Empty (TSRE) indicates that both the Transmit Holding Register and the Transmit Shift Registers are empty. |
| D7 | - | 0 | Always zero. |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

MODEM STATUS REGISTER (MSR) (READ ONLY)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 110 UA3 - UA0 = 0110

UART SECTION

This register provides the current state of the control signals from the modem. In addition, four bits provide change information. The CTS, DSR, DCD, and RI signals come from the UART Control Register if STNDLN = 0 and from the CTS, DSR, DCD and RI pins (inverted) if STNDLN = 1. This register is READ ONLY. The delta bits indicate whether the inputs have changed since the last time the Modem Status Register has been read. In Loop Mode CTS, DSR, RI and DCD are taken from RTS, DTR, μ PRST, and Enable Interrupt in the Modem Control Register respectively.

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|------|-----------|---|
| D0 | DCTS | 1 | This bit is the Delta Clear to Send (DCTS) indicator. Bit 0 indicates that the CTS input to the chip has changed state since the last time it was read by the CPU. |
| D1 | DDSR | 1 | This bit is the Delta Data Set Ready (DDSR) indicator. Bit 1 indicates that the DSR input to the chip has changed state since the last time it was read by the CPU. |
| D2 | TERI | 1 | This bit is the Trailing Edge of the Ring Indicator (TERI) detector. Bit 2 indicates that the RI input to the chip has changed state. |
| D3 | DDCD | 1 | This bit is the Delta Data Carrier Detect (DDCD) indicator. Bit 3 indicates that the DCD input to the chip has changed state. |
| D4 | CTS | 1 | This bit is the complement of the Clear To Send ($\overline{\text{CTS}}$) input. If STNDLN = 0, this reflects the status of the UART Control Register bit. If bit 4 (loop) of the MCR is set to a 1, this bit is equivalent to RTS in the MCR. |
| D5 | DSR | 1 | This bit is the complement of the Data Set Ready ($\overline{\text{DSR}}$) input. If STNDLN = 0, this reflects the status of the UART Control Register bit. If bit 4 of the MCR is set to a 1, this bit is the equivalent of DTR in the MCR. |
| D6 | RI | 1 | This bit is the complement of the Ring Indicator ($\overline{\text{RI}}$) input. If STNDLN = 0, this reflects the status of the UART Control Register bit. If bit 4 of the MCR is set to a 1, this bit is equivalent to μ PRST in the MCR. |
| D7 | DCD | 1 | This bit is the complement of the Data Carrier Detect ($\overline{\text{DCD}}$) If STNDLN = 0, this reflects the status of the UART Control Register bit. If bit 4 of the MCR is set to a 1, this bit is equivalent to Enable Interrupt in the MCR. |

3

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

SCRATCH REGISTER (SCR)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 111 UA3 - UA0 = 0111

UART SECTION

The Scratch Register is a dual port register which can be simultaneously accessed through both the UART bus and the modem bus. This provides the possibility for the modem controller to communicate directly with the central CPU. Note that if both processors write the Scratch Register, the data stored will be from whichever processor last wrote the register.

DIVISOR LATCH (Least significant byte) (DLL)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 000, DLAB = 1 UA3 - UA0 = 0000, DLAB = 1

DIVISOR LATCH (Most significant byte) (DLM)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: UA2 - UA0 = 001, DLAB = 1 UA3 - UA0 = 0001, DLAB = 1

DIVISOR LATCH VALUE VS. DATA RATE

The Divisor Latch is two 8-bit write only registers which control the rate of the programmable baud generator. The programmable baud generator generates an output clock by dividing an internal 1.8432 MHz clock by the value stored in the divisor latch. This output clock has a value of 16X the data rate at which the modem will operate. This output clock is available at pin 21 under the control of bit 3 (D3) of the Modem Control Register 1. Upon loading either of the Divisor Latches the 16-bit device counter is immediately loaded, preventing long counts on initial load. The following table shows divisor values for common data rates.

| DESIRED DATA RATE | DIVISOR USED FOR 16 x DATA RATE CLOCK | % ERROR GENERATED | DESIRED DATA RATE | DIVISOR USED FOR 16 x DATA RATE CLOCK | % ERROR GENERATED |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|--|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 50 ¹ | 2304 | | 4800 | 24 | |
| 75 ¹ | 1536 | | 7200 | 16 | |
| 110 ¹ | 1047 | | 9600 | 12 | |
| 134.5 ¹ | 857 | 0.058 | 19200 | 6 | |
| 159 ¹ | 768 | | 38400 | 3 | |
| 300 ¹ | 384 | | 56000 | 2 | 2.86 |
| 600 ² | 192 | | 1. Data Rate valid for FSK transmission. 2. Data Rate valid for halfspeed DPSK transmission. 3. Data Rate valid for normal 1200 BIT/S DPSK transmission. | | |
| 1200 ³ | 96 | | | | |
| 1800 | 64 | | | | |
| 2000 | 58 | 0.69 | | | |
| 2400 | 48 | | | | |
| 3600 | 32 | | | | |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

MODEM REGISTER BIT DESCRIPTIONS

MODEM SECTION

CONTROL REGISTER (CR0)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: MA2 - MA0 = 000 UA3 - UA0 = 1000

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|---------------------|-----------|----|---|
| D0 | Answer/Originate | 0 | | Selects Answer Mode (transmit in high band, receive in low band). |
| | | 1 | | Selects Originate Mode (transmit in low band, receive in high band). |
| D1 | Transmit Enable | 0 | | Disables transmit output at TXA. |
| | | 1 | | Enables transmit output at TXA. NOTE: Answer tone and DTMF TX control require Transmit Enable. If Transmit Enable is on, call progress and answer tone detector interrupts are masked. |
| D2, D3 | Character Size 0, 1 | | | These bits are read only. These bits represent the character size. The character size is determined by the UART Line Control Register and includes data, parity (if used), one start bit, and one stop bit. |
| | | D3 | D2 | Character length |
| | | 0 | 0 | 8-bit character |
| | | 0 | 1 | 9-bit character |
| | | 1 | 0 | 10-bit character |
| | | 1 | 1 | 11-bit character |
| D4 | Power ON | | | This bit controls the power down mode of the SSI 73K222U, the analog, and most digital portions of the chip. The digital interface is active during power down. |
| | | 0 | | Power down mode. |
| | | 1 | | Normal operation. |
| D5 | Modulation Mode | 0 | | DPSK |
| | | 1 | | FSK |
| D6 | Reserved | 0 | | Must be written as zero. |
| D7 | Modulation Option | 0 | | DPSK: 1200 bit/s |
| | | 1 | | 600 bit/s |
| | | 0 | | FSK: 103 mode |
| | | 1 | | V.21 mode |

3

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

CONTROL REGISTER (CR1)

STNDLN: 0

ADDRESS: MA2 - MA0 = 001 UA3 - UA0 = 1001

MODEM SECTION

| BITS NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|--------------------------------|-----------|--|
| D0, D1 | Test Mode | D1 D0 | |
| | | 0 0 | Selects normal operating mode. |
| | | 0 1 | Analog Loopback Mode. Loops the transmitted analog signal back to the receiver, and causes the receiver to use the same center frequency as the Transmitter. To squelch the TXA pin, transmit enable bit must be forced low. |
| | | 1 0 | Selects remote digital loopback. Received data is looped back to transmit data internally, and RXD is forced to a mark. Data in TXD is ignored. |
| D2 | Reset | 0 | Selects normal operation. |
| | | 1 | Resets modem to power down state. All Control Register bits (CR0, CR1, TONE) are reset to zero. The output of the clock pin will be set to the crystal frequency. |
| D3 | CLK Control (Clock Control) | 0 | CLK pin output is selected to be an 11.0592 MHz crystal echo output. |
| | | 1 | CLK pin output is selected to be 16 x the Data Rate set by the UART divisor latch. |
| D4 | Bypass Scrambler | 0 | Selects normal operation. DPSK data is passed through scrambler. |
| | | 1 | Selects Scrambler Bypass. DPSK data is routed around scrambler in the transmit path. |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

CONTROL REGISTER (CR1) (Continued)

MODEM SECTION

| BITS NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|-------------------------|-----------|---|
| D5 | Enable Detect Interrupt | 0 | Disables interrupts generated by Detect Register bits D1 - D4 at INT pin in dual-port mode, or at INTRPT pin in single-port mode. All interrupts normally disabled in power down modes. |
| | | 1 | Enables interrupts generated by Detect Register bits D1 - D4 at INT pin in dual-port mode, or at INTRPT pin in single-port mode. An interrupt will be generated with a change in status of DR bits D1 - D4. The answer tone and call progress detect interrupts are masked when the TX enable bit is set. Carrier detect is masked when TX DTMF is activated. All interrupts will be disabled if the device is in power down mode. The interrupt is reset when the DR register is read. |
| D6, D7 | Transmit Pattern | D7 D6 | |
| | | 0 0 | Selects normal data transmission as controlled by the state of the TXD pin. |
| | | 0 1 | Selects an alternating mark/space transmit pattern for modem testing. |
| | | 1 0 | Selects a constant mark transmit pattern. |
| | | 1 1 | Selects a constant space transmit pattern. |

3

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

DETECT REGISTER (DR)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: MA2 - MA0 = 010 UA3 - UA0 = 1010

MODEM SECTION

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-----------------------|-----------|----|---|
| D0 | Long Loop | 0 | | Indicates normal received signal. |
| | | 1 | | Indicates low received signal level (< -38 dBm). |
| D1 | Call Progress Detect | 0 | | No call progress tone detected. |
| | | 1 | | Indicates presence of call progress tones. The call progress detection circuitry is activated by energy in the normal 350 to 620 Hz call progress bandwidth. |
| D2 | Answer Tone Received | 0 | | No answer tone detected. |
| | | 1 | | Indicates detection of 2225 Hz answer tone in Bell mode or 2100 Hz in CCITT mode. The device must be in Originate Mode for detection of answer tone for normal operation. For CCITT answer tone detection, bit D0 of the Tone Register must be set. |
| D3 | Carrier Detect | 0 | | No carrier detected in the receive channel. |
| | | 1 | | Carrier has been detected in the receive channel. |
| D4 | Unscrambled Marks | 0 | | No unscrambled mark detected. |
| | | 1 | | Indicates detection of unscrambled marks in the received data. A valid indication requires that unscrambled marks be received for > 165.5 ± 13.5 ms. |
| D5 | Receive Data | | | Continuously outputs the received data stream. This data is the same as that output on the RXD pin, but it is not disabled when RXD is tri-stated. |
| D6, D7 | Device Signature 0, 1 | D7 | D6 | Product Identified |
| | | 0 | 0 | SSI 73K212U (special order only) |
| | | 0 | 1 | SSI 73K221U (special order only) |
| | | 1 | 0 | SSI 73K222U |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

TONE CONTROL REGISTER (TONE)

STNDLN: 0 1
 ADDRESS: MA2 - MA0 = 011 UA3 - UA0 = 1011

MODEM SECTION

The Tone Control Register contains information on the tones that are transmitted. Tones are transmitted only if the Transmit Enable bit is set. The priority of the transmit tones are: 1) DTMF, 2) Answer, 3) FSK, 4) Guard.

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | | | | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|-------------|----|----|----|--|---|--------------------------|---|-------------------|-----|------|
| D0 | DTMF 0 / Answer/ Guard Tone | D6 | D5 | D4 | D0 | D0 interacts with bits D6, D5, and D4 as shown: | | | | | | |
| | | X | X | 1 | X | Transmit DTMF tones. | | | | | | |
| | | X | 1 | 0 | 0 | Select 2225 Hz answer tone (Bell). | | | | | | |
| | | X | 1 | 0 | 1 | Select 2100 Hz answer tone (CCITT). | | | | | | |
| | | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Select 1800 Hz guard tone. | | | | | | |
| | | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | Select 550 Hz guard tone. | | | | | | |
| D0, D1, D2, D3 | DTMF | Table below | | | | Programs 1 of 16 DTMF tone pairs that will be transmitted when TX DTMF and TX enable bit (CR0, bit D1) is set. Tone encoding is shown below. | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | | DTMF CODE D3 D2 D1 D0 | | TONES LOW HIGH | | |
| | | | | | | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 697 | 1209 |
| | | | | | | 2 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 697 | 1336 |
| | | | | | | 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 697 | 1477 |
| | | | | | | 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 770 | 1209 |
| | | | | | | 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 770 | 1336 |
| | | | | | | 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 770 | 1477 |
| | | | | | | 7 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 852 | 1209 |
| | | | | | | 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 852 | 1336 |
| | | | | | | 9 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 852 | 1477 |
| | | | | | | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 941 | 1336 |
| | | | | | | * | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 941 | 1209 |
| | | | | | | # | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 941 | 1477 |
| | | | | | | A | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 697 | 1633 |
| | | | | | | B | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 770 | 1633 |
| | | | | | | C | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 852 | 1633 |
| | | | | | | D | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 941 | 1633 |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

TONE CONTROL REGISTER (TONE) (Continued)

MODEM SECTION

| | | | | |
|----|-----------------------------------|--------|----|---|
| D4 | TX DTMF (Transmit DTMF) | 0 | | Disable DTMF. |
| | | 1 | | Activates DTMF. The selected DTMF tones are transmitted continuously when this bit is high. TX DTMF overrides all other transmit functions. |
| D5 | TX ANS (Transmit Answer Tone) | D5 | D0 | D5 interacts with bit D0 as shown. |
| | | 0 | X | Disables answer tone generator. |
| | | 1 | 0 | Enables answer tone generator. A 2225 Hz answer tone will be transmitted continuously when the transmit enable bit is set. The device must be in answer mode. |
| | | 1 | 1 | Enables a 2100Hz answer tone generator, with operation same as above. |
| D6 | TX Guard (Transmit Guard Tone) | 0 | | Disables guard tone generator. |
| | | 1 | | Enables guard tone generator. (See D0 for selection of guard tones). |
| D7 | RXD/TXD Control | STNDLN | D7 | Function is dependant on status of STNDLN pin. |
| | | 0 | 0 | RXD is output data received by modem, TXD is serial output of UART. |
| | | 1 | 0 | RXD is electrically an input, but the signal is ignored, TXD is forced to a mark. |
| | | X | 1 | RXD is serial input to UART, TXD is serial output of UART. |

CONTROL REGISTER (CR3)

STNDLN: 0 1
ADDRESS: MA2 - MA0 = 101 UA3 - UA0 = 1101

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|---------------------|-----------|----|--------------------------------|
| D0 - D4 | Not Used | | | Not presently used. |
| D5 | Off Hook | 0 | | Relay driver open. |
| | | 1 | | Open drain driver pulling low. |
| D6, D7 | Speaker Volume 0, 1 | D7 | D6 | Speaker volume control status. |
| | | 0 | 0 | Speaker off |
| | | 0 | 1 | -24 dB |
| | | 1 | 0 | -12 dB |
| | | 1 | 1 | 0 dB |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

SCRATCH REGISTER (SCR)

STNDLN: 0 1
ADDRESS: MA2 - MA0 = 110 UA3 - UA0 = 1110

The Scratch Register is a dual-port register which can be accessed either through the UART bus or the modem bus. It can be used for a communication path outside the data stream.

UART CONTROL REGISTER (UCR)

STNDLN: 0 1
ADDRESS: MA2 - MA0 = 111 UA3 - UA0 = 1111

The UART Control Register contains the handshaking signals necessary for the microprocessor to communicate with the central CPU through the UART.

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|----------|-----------|--|
| D0 | CTS | 1 | In dual-port mode, CTS, DSR, DCD and RI are writeable locations which can be read through the 16C450 port in the Modem Status Register. |
| D1 | DSR | 1 | In the single-port mode, D0 - D3 are ignored and the information for the Modem Status Register comes directly from the external pins. |
| D2 | DCD | 1 | |
| D3 | RI | 1 | |
| D4 | DTR | 1 | DTR and RTS are read only versions of the same register bits in the Modem Control Register. |
| D5 | RTS | 1 | |
| D6 | Not Used | | |
| D7 | TXCLK | Clock | TXCLK is the clock that the UART puts out with TXD. The falling edge of TXCLK is coincident with the transitions of data on TXD. TXCLK can also be used for the microprocessor to send synchronous data independent of the UART by forcing data patterns using CR1 bits 6 and 7 before the rising edge of TXCLK. |

NOTE: Control Register 2 (CR2) is reserved for future products and is disabled.

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = 5V ± 10%, unless otherwise noted.

| PARAMETER | RATING | UNIT |
|---|------------------|------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 7 | V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150 | °C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260 | °C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD +0.3 | V |
| NOTE: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected. | | |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------------------------------|-------|-------|-------|------|
| VDD, Supply Voltage | | 4.5 | 5 | 5.5 | V |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temperature | | -40 | | 85 | °C |
| External Component (Refer to application drawing for placement.) | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass Capacitor ² | (VREF to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| Bias Setting Resistor ¹ | (Placed between VDD and ISET pins) | 1.8 | 2 | 2.2 | MΩ |
| ISET Bypass Capacitor ² | ISET pin to GND | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor ² | (VDD to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| XTL1 Load Capacitor | From pin to GND | | | 40 | pF |
| XTL2 Load Capacitor | From pin to GND | | | 20 | pF |
| Input Clock Variation | (11.0592 MHz) | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| Hybrid Loading | | | | | |
| R1 | See Figure 3 | | 600 | | Ω |
| R2 | | | 600 | | Ω |
| C | TXA Hybrid Loading | | 0.033 | | μF |
| 1. Optional for minimum worst case current consumption. | | | | | |
| 2. Minimum for optimized system layout; may require higher values for noisy environments. | | | | | |

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

TA = -40°C to +85 °C, VDD = 5V ± 10%, unless otherwise noted.

| PARAMETERS | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-----------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|------|-----|-----|------|
| IDD, Supply Current | | | | | | |
| IDD1, Active | | ISET Resistor = 2MΩ | | 8 | 12 | mA |
| IDD2, Active | | ISET = GND | | 8 | 15 | mA |
| IDD1, Power-Down | | CLK = 11.0592MHz | | 3 | 4 | mA |
| IDD2, Power-Down | | CLK = 19.200KHz | | 2 | 3 | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | | |
| Input High Current | IIH | VI = VDD | | | 100 | μA |
| Input Low Current | IIL | VI = 0 | -200 | | | μA |
| Input Low Voltage | VIL | | | | 0.8 | V |
| Input High Voltage | VIH | Except RESET & XTL1 | 2.0 | | | V |
| Input High Voltage | VIH | RESET & XTL1 | 3.0 | | | V |
| Pull Down Current | RESET PIN | | 5 | | 30 | μA |
| Input Capacitance | | | | | 10 | pF |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | | |
| Output High Voltage | VOH | IOUT = - 1 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| VOL UD0-UD7 and INTRPT | | IOUT = 3.2 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| VOL other outputs | | IOUT = 1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| CLK Output | VOL | IOUT = 3.2 mA | | | 0.6 | V |
| OH Output | VOL | IOUT = 20 mA | | | 1.0 | V |
| OH Output | VOL | IOUT = 10 mA | | | 0.5 | V |
| Offstate Current INTRPT pin | | VO = 0V | -20 | | 20 | μA |
| Capacitance | | | | | | |
| Inputs | | Input Capacitance | | | 10 | pF |
| CLK | | Maximum capacitive load to pin | | | 15 | pF |
| Analog Pins | | | | | | |
| RXA Input Resistance | | | | 200 | | kΩ |
| RXA Input Capacitance | | | | | 25 | pF |

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING

TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = 5V ± 10%, unless otherwise noted.

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------|-------|------|------|
| DPSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Carrier Suppression | Measured at TXA | 55 | | | dB |
| Output Amplitude | ANS TONE 2225 or 2100 Hz | -11 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| | DPSK TX Scrambled Marks | -11 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| | FSK Dotting Pattern | -11 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| FSK Tone Error | Bell 103 or V.21 | | | ±5 | Hz |
| DTMF Generator | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | | -.25 | | .25 | % |
| Output Amplitude | Low Band, not in V.21 mode | -10 | -9 | -8 | dBm0 |
| Output Amplitude | High Band, not in V.21 mode | -8 | -7 | -6 | dBm0 |
| Long Loop Detect | DPSK or FSK | -40 | | -32 | dBm0 |
| Demodulator | | | | | |
| Dynamic Range | DPSK or FSK | | 45 | | dB |
| Call Progress Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level | 2-Tones in 350-600 Hz Band | -39 | | 0 | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | 2-Tones in 350-600 Hz Band | | | -46 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70dBm0 to -30 dBm0 Step | 27 | | 80 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30dBm0 to -70 dBm0 Step | 27 | | 80 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Carrier Detect | DPSK or FSK Receive | | | | |
| Threshold | Data | -49 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 Step | 15 | | 45 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | 3.0 | | dB |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 Step | 10 | | 24 | ms |
| Answer Tone Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level Threshold | In FSK mode | -49.5 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 20 | | 45 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 10 | | 30 | ms |
| Detect Frequency Range | | -2.5 | | +2.5 | % |

1. All units in dBm0 are measured at the line input to the transformer. The interface circuit inserts an 8 dB loss in the transmit path (TXA1 - TXA2 to line), and a 3dB loss in the receive path (line to RXA).

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-----------------------------|--|------|------|------|------|
| Speaker Output | | | | | |
| Gain Error | | -1 | | +1 | dB |
| Output Swing SPKR | 10K 50 pF LOAD 5% THD | 2.75 | | | VP |
| Carrier VCO | | | | | |
| Capture Range | Originate or Answer | -10 | | 10 | Hz |
| Capture Time | -10 Hz to +10 Hz Carrier Frequency change assumed | | 40 | 100 | ms |
| Recovered Clock | | | | | |
| Capture Range | % of Center Frequency | -625 | | +625 | ppm |
| Data Delay Time | Analog data in at RXA pin to receive data valid at RXD pin. | | 30 | 50 | ms |
| Guard Tone Generator | | | | | |
| Tone Accuracy | 550 or 1800 Hz | -20 | | +20 | Hz |
| Tone Level | 550 HZ | -4.0 | -3.0 | -2.0 | dB |
| (Below DPSK Output) | 1800 HZ | -7.0 | -6.0 | -5.0 | dB |
| Harmonic Distortion | 700 to 2900 HZ | | | -60 | dB |

SERIAL BUS INTERFACE (See Figure 4)

The following times are for CL = 100 pF.

| PARAMETER | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|-----|-----|-------|------|
| TRD Data out from Read | 0 | | 140 | ns |
| TCKD Data out after Clock | | | 200 | ns |
| TRDF Data Float after Read | 0 | | 200 | ns |
| TRCK Clock High after Read | 200 | | | ns |
| TWW Write Width | 140 | | 10000 | ns |
| TDCK Data Setup Before Clock | 150 | | | ns |
| TCKH Data Hold after Clock | 20 | | | ns |
| TCKW Write after Clock | 150 | | | ns |
| TACR Address setup before Control ¹ | 50 | | | ns |
| TCAR Address Hold after Control ¹ | 50 | | | ns |
| TACW Address setup before Write | 50 | | | ns |
| TCAW Address Hold after Write | 50 | | | ns |

1. Control is later of falling edge of RD or DCLK.

SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

PARALLEL BUS INTERFACE (See Figure 5) The following times are for CI = 100 pF.

| PARAMETER | | MIN | MAX | MIN | MAX | UNIT |
|--|---------------------------------|----------------|-----|------------------|-----|------|
| | | Dual-Port Mode | | Single-Port Mode | | |
| RC | Read Cycle = TAD + TRC | 240 | | 340 | | ns |
| TDIW | DISTR Width | 80 | | 80 | | ns |
| TDDD | Delay DISTR to Data (read time) | | 80 | | 80 | ns |
| THZ** | DISTR to Floating Data Delay | 0 | 50 | 0 | 50 | ns |
| TRA | Address Hold after DISTR | 20 | | 20 | | ns |
| TRCS | Chip select hold after DISTR | 20 | | 20 | | ns |
| TAR* | DISTR Delay after Address | 20 | | 20 | | ns |
| TCSR | DISTR Delay after Chip Select | 20 | | 20 | | ns |
| WC | Write Cycle = TAW + TDOW + TWC | 140 | | 140 | | ns |
| TDOW | DOSTR Width | 80 | | 80 | | ns |
| TDS | Data Setup | 30 | | 50 | | ns |
| TDH** | Data Hold | | | 20 | | ns |
| TWA | Address Hold after DOSTR | 20 | | 20 | | ns |
| TWCS | Chip select hold after DOSTR | 20 | | 20 | | ns |
| TAW* | DOSTR delay after Address | 20 | | 20 | | ns |
| TCSW | DOSTR delay after Chip Select | 20 | | 20 | | ns |
| TADS | Address Strobe Width | | | 40 | | ns |
| TAS | Address Setup Time | | | 30 | | ns |
| TAH | Address Hold Time | | | 0 | | ns |
| TCS | Chip Select Setup Time | | | 30 | | ns |
| TCH | Chip Select Hold Time | | | 0 | | ns |
| TRC | Read Cycle Delay | 40 | | 40 | | ns |
| TWC | Write Cycle Delay | 40 | | 40 | | ns |
| TAD | Address to Read Data | 200 | | 300 | | ns |
| * TAR and TAW are referenced from the falling edge of either $\overline{CS2}$ or \overline{DISTR} or \overline{DOSTR} , which ever is later. | | | | | | |
| ** THZ and TDH are referenced from the rising edge of $\overline{CS2}$ or \overline{DISTR} or \overline{DOSTR} , which ever is earlier. | | | | | | |

3



SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

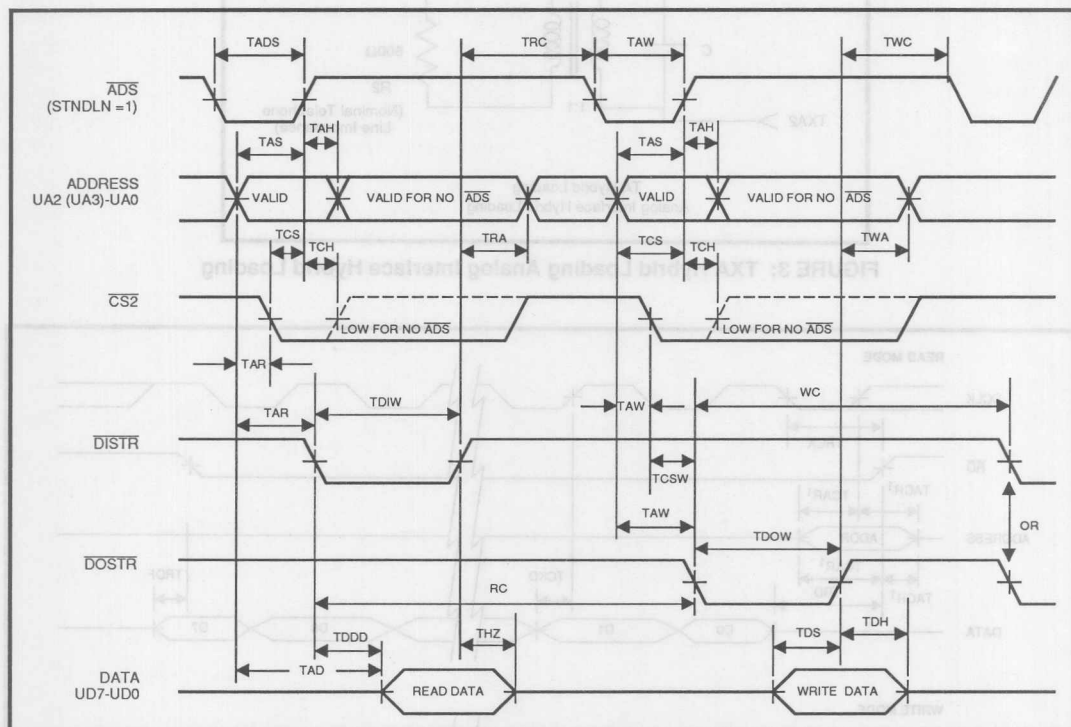


FIGURE 5: UART Bus Timing

SSI 73K222U Single-Chip Modem with UART

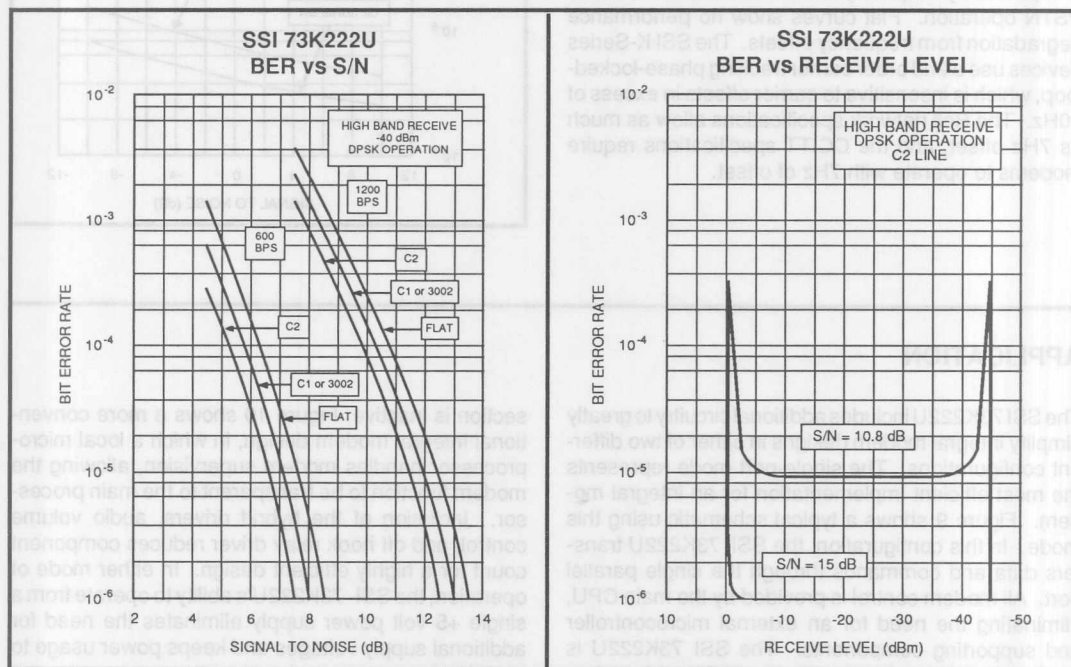
TYPICAL PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

The SSI 73K222U was designed using an integrated analog/digital architecture that offers optimum performance over a wide range of line conditions. The SSI 73K222U utilizes the circuit design proven in SSI's 73K222L one-chip modem, with added enhancements which extend low signal level performance and increase immunity to spurious noise typically encountered in integral bus applications. The SSI 73K222U provides excellent immunity to the types of disturbances present with usage of the dial-up telephone network. The following curves show representative Bit Error Rate performance under various line conditions.

BER vs. S/N

This test measures the ability of the modem to function with minimum errors when operating over noisy lines. Since some noise is generated by even the best dial-up lines, the modem must operate with as low a S/N ratio as possible. Optimum performance is shown by curves that are closest to the zero axis. A narrow spread between curves for the four line conditions indicates minimal variation in performance when operating over a range of line qualities and is typical of high performance adaptive equalization receivers. High band receive data is typically better than low band due to the inherent design of PSK modems.

3



SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

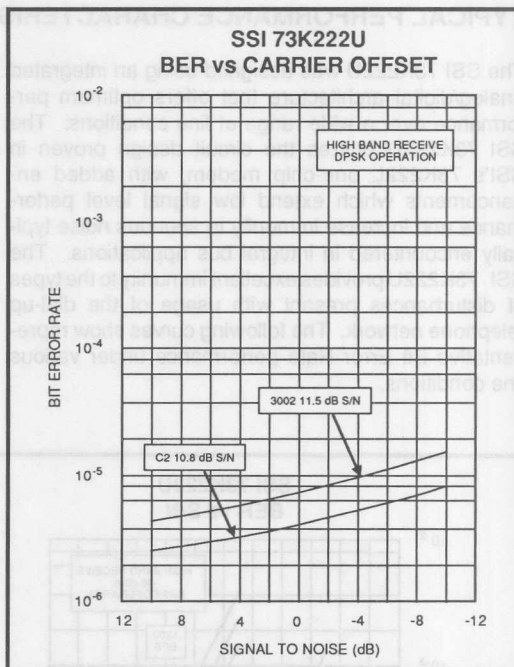
with UART

BER vs. Receive Level

This measures the dynamic range of the modem. As signal levels vary widely over dial-up lines, the widest dynamic range possible is desirable. The minimum Bell specification calls for 36dB of dynamic range. S/N ratios were held constant at the indicated values while receive level was lowered from very high to very low signal levels. The "width of the bowl" of these curves taken at the 10⁻⁴ BER point is a measure of the dynamic range.

BER vs. Carrier Offset

This parameter indicates how the modem performance is impacted by frequency shifts encountered in normal PSTN operation. Flat curves show no performance degradation from frequency offsets. The SSI K-Series devices use a 2nd order carrier tracking phase-locked-loop, which is insensitive to carrier offsets in excess of 10Hz. The Bell network specifications allow as much as 7Hz offset, and the CCITT specifications require modems to operate with 7Hz of offset.



APPLICATION

The SSI 73K222U includes additional circuitry to greatly simplify integral modem designs in either of two different configurations. The single-port mode represents the most efficient implementation for an integral modem. Figure 9 shows a typical schematic using this mode. In this configuration, the SSI 73K222U transfers data and commands through the single parallel port. All modem control is provided by the main CPU, eliminating the need for an external microcontroller and supporting components. The SSI 73K222U is unique in that access to both the UART and modem sections is possible through the UART port. Also shown is a separate serial port, which can be used independent of the modem function when the modem

section is inactive. Figure 10 shows a more conventional integral modem design, in which a local microprocessor handles modem supervision, allowing the modem function to be transparent to the main processor. Inclusion of the hybrid drivers, audio volume control, and off hook relay driver reduces component count for a highly efficient design. In either mode of operation, the SSI 73K222U's ability to operate from a single +5 volt power supply eliminates the need for additional supply voltages and keeps power usage to a minimum.

(See Figure 9 & 10: Typical Integral Applications Single and Dual-Port Modes.)

SSI 73K222U Single-Chip Modem with UART

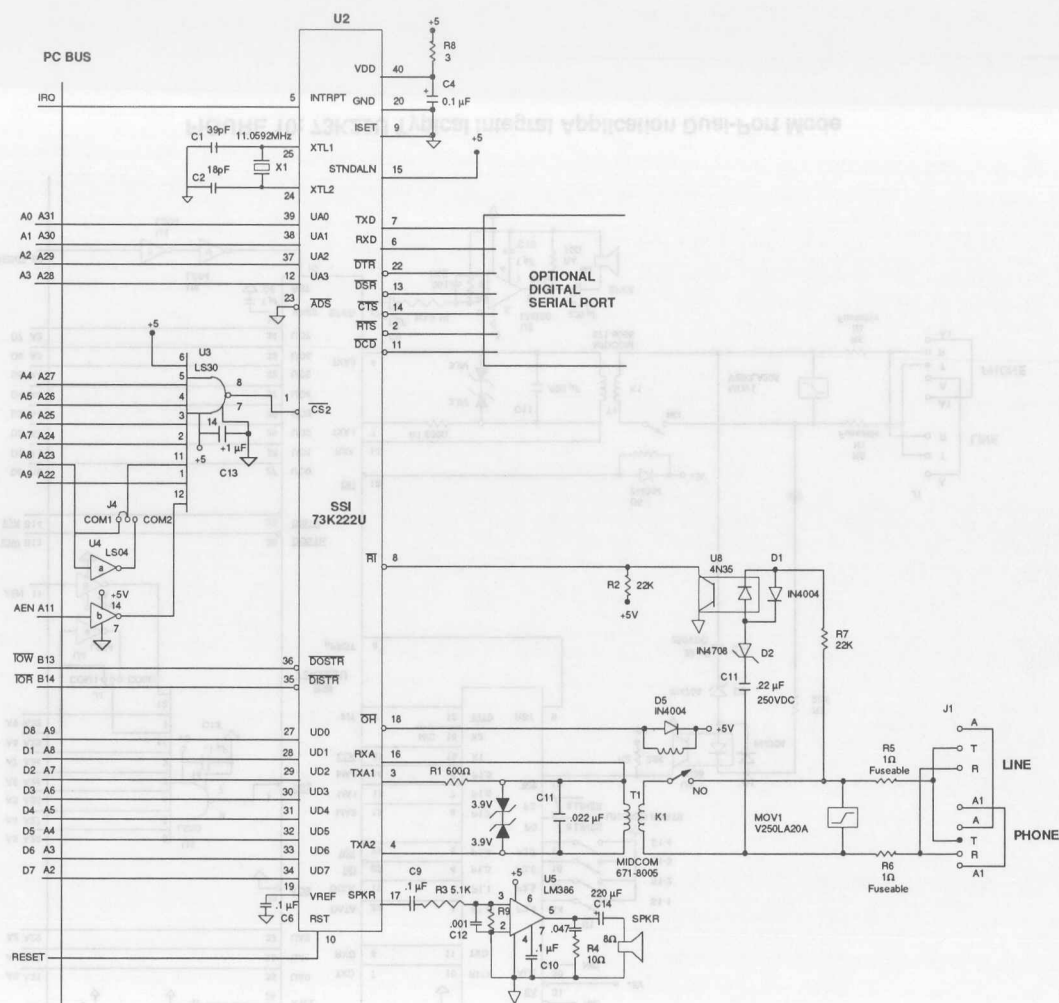


FIGURE 9: 73K22U Typical Integral Application Single-Port Mode

SSI 73K222U Single-Chip Modem with UART

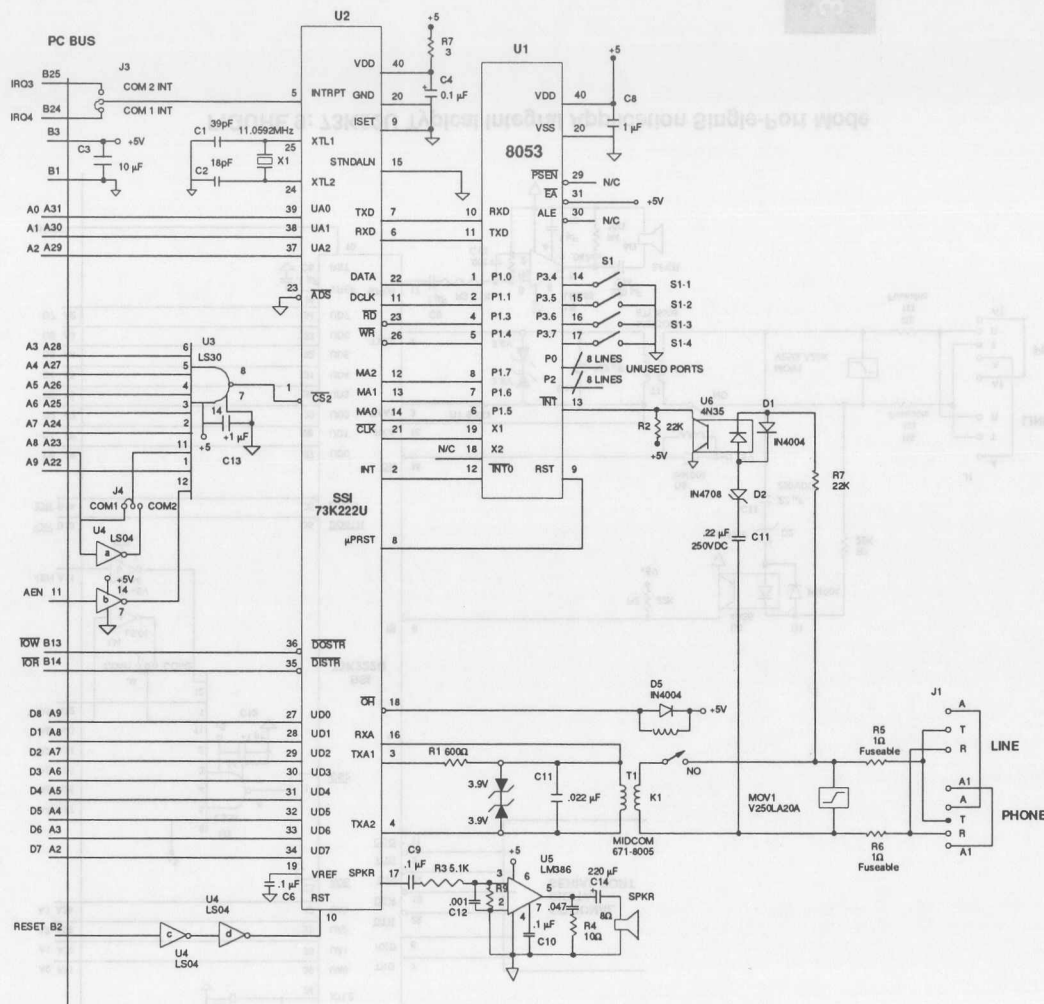


FIGURE 10: 73K22U Typical Integral Application Dual-Port Mode

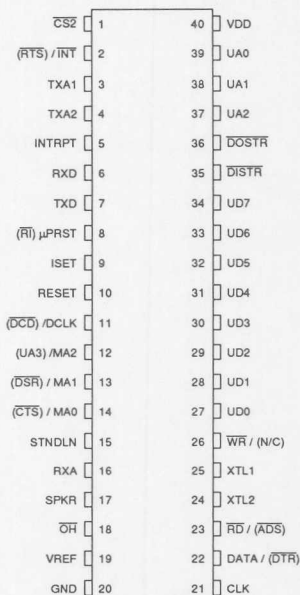
SSI 73K222U

Single-Chip Modem

with UART

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

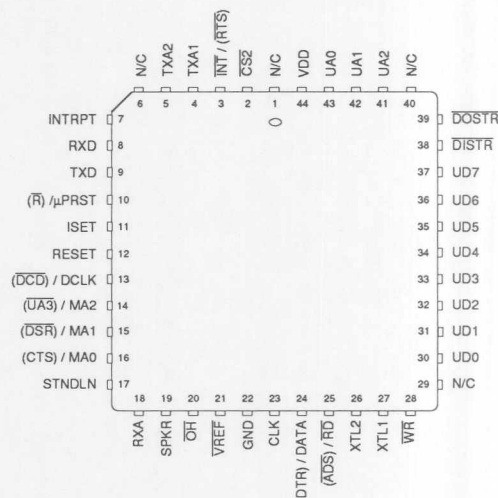
(Top View)



600-Mil
40-Pin DIP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

Parentheses indicate single-port mode.



44-Pin
PLCC

3

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|------------------------------------|------------|------------|
| SSI 73K222U | | |
| 40-Pin Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K222U-IP | 73K222U-IP |
| 44-Pin Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | 73K222U-IH | 73K222U-IH |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

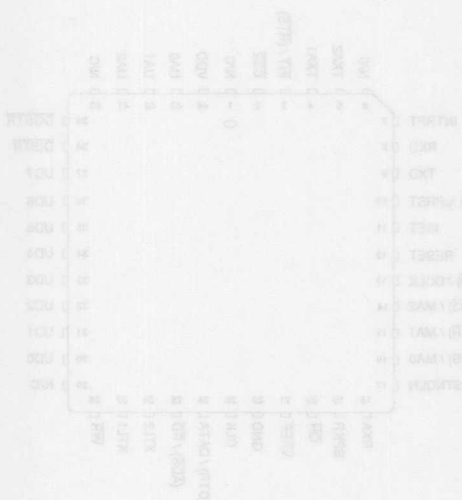
Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

821 73K22U Single-Chip Modem with UART

Notes:

CAUTION: This is a single-chip device. It is not a complete system.

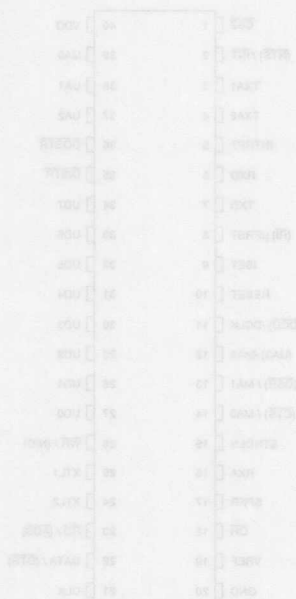
Pin numbers indicate single-pin mode.



44-Pin
PLCC

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



40-Pin DIP
600-MHz

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| 821 73K22U | 73K22U-IP | 73K22U-IP |
| 40-Pin Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K22U-IH | 73K22U-IH |
| 44-Pin Plastic Leadless Chip Carrier | | |

This responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product for any reassignment of pins and packages or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, copyrights or trademarks of Silicon Systems, Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14501 Wilford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-1025, (714) 873-6000, FAX (714) 873-6974

January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73K224L is a highly integrated single-chip modem IC which provides the functions needed to construct a V.22bis compatible modem, capable of 2400 bit/s full-duplex operation over dial-up lines. The SSI 73K224L offers excellent performance and a high level of functional integration in a single 28-pin DIP. This device supports V.22bis, V.22, V.21, Bell 212A and Bell 103 modes of operation, allowing both synchronous and asynchronous communication. The SSI 73K224L is designed to appear to the systems designer as a microprocessor peripheral, and will easily interface with popular single-chip microprocessors (80C51 typical) for control of modem functions through its 8-bit multiplexed address/data bus or via an optional serial control bus. An ALE control line simplifies address demultiplexing. Data communications normally occur through a separate serial port. The SSI 73K224L is pin and software compatible with the SSI 73K212L and SSI 73K222L single-chip modem ICs, allowing system upgrades with a single component change.

The SSI 73K224L operates from a single +5 V supply for low power consumption.

The SSI 73K224L is ideal for use in either free-standing or integral system modem products where full-duplex

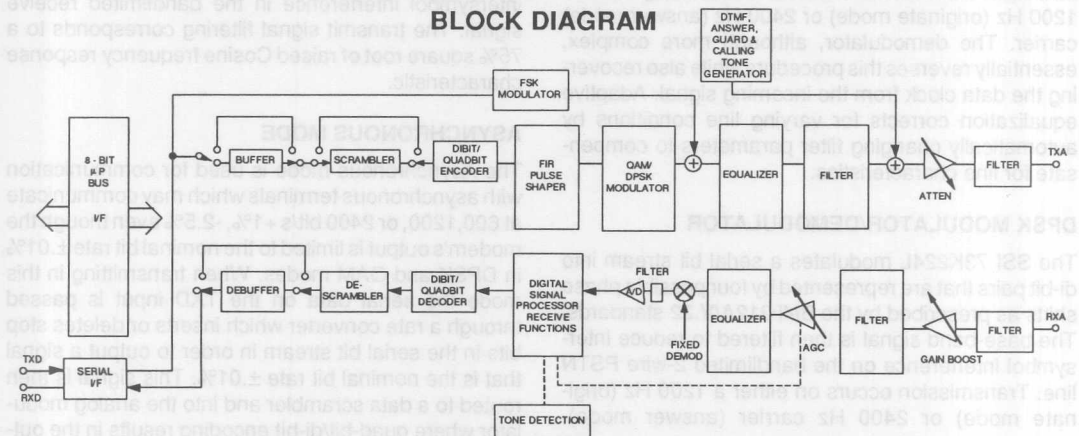
(Continued)

FEATURES

- One-chip multi-mode V.22bis/V.22/V.21 and Bell 212A/103 compatible modem data pump
- FSK (300 bit/s), DPSK (600, 1200 bit/s), or QAM (2400 bit/s) encoding
- Pin and software compatible with other SSI K-Series 1-chip modems
- Interfaces directly with standard microprocessors (8048, 80C51 typical)
- Parallel microprocessor bus for control with a wide range of package options
- Selectable asynch/synch with internal buffer/debuffer and scrambler/descrambler functions
- All synchronous and asynchronous operating modes (internal, external, slave)
- Adaptive equalization for optimum performance over all lines
- Programmable transmit attenuation (16 dB, 1 dB steps), selectable receive boost (+18 dB)
- Call progress, carrier, answer tone, unscrambled mark, S1, and signal quality monitors
- DTMF, answer and guard tone generators
- Test modes available: ALB, DL, RDL, Mark, Space, Alternating bit, S1 pattern
- CMOS technology for low power consumption (typically 100 mW @ 5V) with power-down mode (15 mW @ 5V)
- TTL and CMOS compatible inputs and outputs

3

BLOCK DIAGRAM



DESCRIPTION (Continued)

2400 bit/s data communications over the 2-wire switched telephone network is desired. Its high functionality, low power consumption, and efficient packaging simplify design requirements and increase system reliability.

The SSI 73K224L is designed to be a complete V.22bis compatible modem on a chip. The complete modem requires only the addition of the phone line interface, a control microprocessor, and RS-232 level converter for a typical system. Many functions were included to simplify implementation of typical modem designs. In addition to the basic 2400 bit/s QAM, 600/1200 bit/s DPSK and 300 bit/s FSK modulator/demodulator sections, the device also includes SYNCH/ASYNCH converters, scrambler/descrambler, call progress tone detect, DTMF tone generator capabilities and hand-shake pattern detectors. V.22bis, V.22, V.21 and Bell 212A/103 modes are supported (synchronous and asynchronous) and test modes are provided for diagnostics. Most functions are selectable as options and logical defaults are provided.

OPERATION

QAM MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The SSI 73K224L encodes incoming data into quad-bits represented by 16 possible signal points with specific phase and amplitude levels. The baseband signal is then filtered to reduce intersymbol interference on the bandlimited telephone network. The modulator transmits this encoded data using either a 1200 Hz (originate mode) or 2400 Hz (answer mode) carrier. The demodulator, although more complex, essentially reverses this procedure while also recovering the data clock from the incoming signal. Adaptive equalization corrects for varying line conditions by automatically changing filter parameters to compensate for line characteristics.

DPSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The SSI 73K224L modulates a serial bit stream into di-bit pairs that are represented by four possible phase shifts as prescribed by the Bell 212A/V.22 standards. The base-band signal is then filtered to reduce intersymbol interference on the bandlimited 2-wire PSTN line. Transmission occurs on either a 1200 Hz (originate mode) or 2400 Hz carrier (answer mode).

Demodulation is the reverse of the modulation process, with the incoming analog signal eventually decoded into di-bits and converted back to a serial bit stream. The demodulator also recovers the clock which was encoded into the analog signal during modulation. Demodulation occurs using either a 1200 Hz carrier (answer mode or ALB originate mode) or a 2400 Hz carrier (originate mode or ALB answer mode). Adaptive equalization is also used in DPSK modes for optimum operation with varying line conditions.

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator produces a frequency modulated analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. The Bell 103 standard frequencies of 1270 and 1070 Hz (originate mark and space) and 2225 and 2025 Hz (answer mark and space) are used when this mode is selected. V.21 mode uses 980 and 1180 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 1650 and 1850 Hz (answer, mark and space). Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value. The rate converter and scrambler/descrambler are automatically bypassed in the FSK modes.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

High and low band filters are included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit and receive signals and provide compromise delay equalization and rejection of out-of-band signals. Amplitude and phase equalization are necessary to compensate for distortion of the transmission line and to reduce intersymbol interference in the bandlimited receive signal. The transmit signal filtering corresponds to a 75% square root of raised Cosine frequency response characteristic.

ASYNCHRONOUS MODE

The Asynchronous mode is used for communication with asynchronous terminals which may communicate at 600, 1200, or 2400 bit/s $\pm 1\%$, $\pm 2.5\%$ even though the modem's output is limited to the nominal bit rate $\pm 0.01\%$ in DPSK and QAM modes. When transmitting in this mode the serial data on the TXD input is passed through a rate converter which inserts or deletes stop bits in the serial bit stream in order to output a signal that is the nominal bit rate $\pm 0.01\%$. This signal is then routed to a data scrambler and into the analog modulator where quad-bit/di-bit encoding results in the out-

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

put signal. Both the rate converter and scrambler can be bypassed for handshaking, and synchronous operation as selected. Received data is processed in a similar fashion except that the rate converter now acts to reinsert any deleted stop bits and output data to the terminal at no greater than the bit rate plus 1%. An incoming break signal (low through two characters) will be passed through without incorrectly inserting a stop bit.

The SYNC/ASYNCH converter also has an extended Overspeed mode which allows selection of an output overspeed range of either +1% or +2.3%. In the extended Overspeed mode, stop bits are output at 7/8 the normal width.

Both the SYNC/ASYNCH rate converter and the data descrambler are automatically bypassed in the FSK modes.

SYNCHRONOUS MODE

Synchronous operation is possible only in the QAM or DPSK modes. Operation is similar to that of the Asynchronous mode except that data must be synchronized to a provided clock and no variation in data transfer rate is allowable. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK.

TXCLK is an internally derived 1200 or 2400 Hz signal in Internal mode and is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in Slave mode. Receive data at the RXD pin is clocked out on the falling edge of RXCLK. The asynch/synch converter is bypassed when Synchronous mode is selected and data is transmitted at the same rate as it is input.

PARALLEL BUS INTERFACE

Eight 8-bit registers are provided for control, option select, and status monitoring. These registers are addressed with the AD0, AD1, and AD2 multiplexed address lines (latched by ALE) and appear to a control microprocessor as seven consecutive memory locations. Six control registers are read/write memory. The detect and ID registers are read only and cannot be modified except by modem response to monitored parameters.

SERIAL CONTROL INTERFACE

The serial Command mode allows access to the SSI 73K324 control and status registers via a serial control port. In this mode the A0, A1, and A2 lines provide register addresses for data passed through the DATA pin under control of the RD and WR lines. A read operation is initiated when the RD line is taken low. The next eight cycles of EXCLK will then transfer out eight bits of the selected address location LSB first. A write takes place by shifting in eight bits of data LSB first for eight consecutive cycles of EXCLK. WR is then pulsed low and data transfer into the selected register occurs on the rising edge of WR.

DTMF GENERATOR

The DTMF generator controls the sending of the sixteen standard DTMF tone pairs. The tone pair sent is determined by selecting TRANSMIT DTMF (bit D4) and the 4 DTMF bits (D0-D3) of the TONE register. Transmission of DTMF tones from TXA is gated by the TRANSMIT ENABLE bit of CR0 (bit D1) as with all other analog signals.

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION

POWER

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------|------|--|
| GND | I | System Ground. |
| VDD | I | Power supply input, 5V -5% +10%. Bypass with .22 μ F and 22 μ F capacitors to GND. |
| VREF | O | An internally generated reference voltage. Bypass with .22 μ F capacitor to GND. |
| ISET | I | Chip current reference. Sets bias current for op-amps. The chip current is set by connecting this pin to VDD through a 2 M Ω resistor. Iset should be bypassed to GND with a .22 μ F capacitor. |

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | |
|------------------|----------------|--|
| ALE | I | Address latch enable. The falling edge of ALE latches the address on AD0-AD7 and the chip select on \overline{CS} . |
| AD0-AD7 | I/O / Tristate | Address/data bus. These bidirectional tri-state multi-plexed lines carry information to and from the internal registers. |
| \overline{CS} | I | Chip select. A low on this pin allows a read cycle or a write cycle to occur. AD0-AD7 will not be driven and no registers will be written if \overline{CS} (latched) is not active. \overline{CS} is latched on the falling edge of ALE. |
| CLK | O | Output clock. This pin is selectable under processor control to be either the crystal frequency (for use as a processor clock) or 16 x the data rate for use as a baud rate clock in QAM/DPSK modes only. The pin defaults to the crystal frequency on reset. |
| \overline{INT} | O | Interrupt. This open drain weak pullup, output signal is used to inform the processor that a detect flag has occurred. The processor must then read the detect register to determine which detect triggered the interrupt. \overline{INT} will stay active until the processor reads the detect register or does a full reset. |
| \overline{RD} | I | Read. A low requests a read of the SSI 73K224L internal registers. Data cannot be output unless both \overline{RD} and the latched \overline{CS} are active or low. |
| RESET | I | Reset. An active high signal on this pin will put the chip into an inactive state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, CR2, CR3, Tone) will be reset. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. An internal pull down resistor permits power on reset using a capacitor to VDD. |
| \overline{WR} | I | Write. A low on this informs the SSI 73K224L that data is available on AD0-AD7 for writing into an internal register. Data is latched on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . No data is written unless both \overline{WR} and the latched \overline{CS} are active (low). |

Note: The serial control mode is provided in the parallel versions by tying ALE high and \overline{CS} low. In this configuration AD7 becomes DATA and AD0, AD1 and AD2 become A0, A1 and A2, respectively.

SSI 73K224L
V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103
Single-Chip Modem

DTE USER INTERFACE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|------------|---|
| EXCLK | I | External Clock. This signal is used in synchronous transmission when the external timing option has been selected. In the external timing mode the rising edge of EXCLK is used to strobe synchronous transmit data available on the TXD pin. Also used for serial control interface. |
| RXCLK | O/Tristate | Receive Clock. Tri-stateable. The falling edge of this clock output is coincident with the transitions in the serial received data output. The rising edge of RXCLK can be used to latch QAM or DPSK valid output data. RXCLK will be active as long as a carrier is present. |
| RXD | O | Received Digital Data Output. Serial receive data is available on this pin. The data is always valid on the rising edge of RXCLK when in synchronous mode. RXD will output constant marks if no carrier is detected. |
| TXCLK | O/Tristate | Transmit Clock. Tri-stateable. This signal is used in synchronous transmission to latch serial input data on the TXD pin. Data must be provided so that valid data is available on the rising edge of the TXCLK. The transmit clock is derived from different sources depending upon the synchronization mode selection. In Internal Mode the clock is generated internally. In External Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the EXCLK pin. In Slave Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the RXCLK pin. TXCLK is always active. |
| TXD | I | Transmit Digital Data Input. Serial data for transmission is input on this pin. In synchronous modes, the data must be valid on the rising edge of the TXCLK clock. In asynchronous modes (2400/1200/600 bit/s or 300 baud) no clocking is necessary. DPSK data must be +1%, -2.5% or +2.3%, -2.5 % in extended overspeed mode. |

ANALOG INTERFACE AND OSCILLATOR

| | | |
|------|-----|--|
| RXA | I | Received modulated analog signal input from the phone line. |
| TXA | O | Transmit analog output to the phone line. |
| XTL1 | I | These pins are for the internal crystal oscillator requiring a 11.0592 MHz parallel mode crystal. Two capacitors from these pins to ground are also required for proper crystal operation. Consult crystal manufacturer for proper values. XTL2 can also be driven from an external clock. |
| XTL2 | I/O | |

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

SERIAL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|------|--|
| A0-A2 | I | Register Address Selection. These lines carry register addresses and should be valid during any read or write operation. |
| DATA | I/O | Serial Control Data. Data for a read/write operation is clocked in or out on the falling edge of the EXCLK pin. The direction of data flow is controlled by the \overline{RD} pin. \overline{RD} low outputs data. \overline{RD} high inputs data. |
| \overline{RD} | I | Read. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K322L that data or status information is being read by the processor. The falling edge of the \overline{RD} signal will initiate a read from the addresses register. The \overline{RD} signal must continue for eight falling edges of EXCLK in order to read all eight bits of the referenced register. Read data is provided LSB first. Data will not be output unless the \overline{RD} signal is active. |
| \overline{WR} | I | Write. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K322L that data or status information has been shifted in through the DATA pin and is available for writing to an internal register. The normal procedure for a write is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive falling edges of EXCLK and then to pulse \overline{WR} low. Data is written on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . |

Note: In the serial, 22-pin version, the pins AD0-AD7, ALE and \overline{CS} are removed and replaced with the pins; A0, A1, A2, DATA, and an unconnected pin. Also, the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} controls are used differently.

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER DESCRIPTIONS

Eight 8-bit internal registers are accessible for control and status monitoring. The registers are accessed in read or write operations by addressing the A0, A1 and A2 address lines in serial mode, or the AD0, AD1 and AD2 lines in parallel mode. The address lines are latched by ALE. Register CR0 controls the method by which data is transferred over the phone line. CR1 controls the interface between the microprocessor and

the SSI 73K224L internal state. DR is a detect register which provides an indication of monitored modem status conditions. TR, the tone control register, controls the DTMF generator, answer and guard tones and RXD output gate used in the modem initial connect sequence. CR2 is the primary DSP control interface and CR3 controls transmit attenuation and receive gain adjustments. All registers are read/write except for DR and ID which are read only. Register control and status bits are identified below:

REGISTER BIT SUMMARY

| | | ADDRESS | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----|---------|--------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| REGISTER | | AD - A0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | MODULATION TYPE 1 | MODULATION TYPE 0 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINAT |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | RECEIVE LEVEL | PATTERN S1 DET | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK DETECT | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE DETECT | CALL PROGRESS DETECT | SIGNAL QUALITY |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2 | DTMF1/ EXTENDED OVERSPEED | DTMF0/GUARD ANSWER |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | CR2 | 100 | | SPECIAL REGISTER ACCESS | CALL INITIALIZE | TRANSMIT S1 | 16 WAY | RESET DSP | TRAIN INHIBIT | EQUALIZER ENABLE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | TXDALT | TRISTATE TX/RXCLK | | RECEIVE GAIN BOOST | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 3 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 2 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 1 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 0 |
| SPECIAL REGISTER | SR | 101 | | TX BAUD CLOCK | RX UNSCR. DATA | | TXD SOURCE | SQ SELECT 1 | SQ SELECT 0 | |
| ID REGISTER | ID | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | USER DEFINABLE PERSONALITY | | | |

NOTE: When a register containing reserved control bits is written into, the reserved bits must be programmed as 0's.

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER ADDRESS TABLE

| | | ADDRESS | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----|-----------|---|---|--|--------------------------------|--|--|---|--|--|
| REGISTER | | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | MODULATION TYPE 1 | MODULATION TYPE 0 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ORIGINATE | |
| | | | OAM: 0=2400 BIT/S DPSK: 0=1200 BIT/S FSK: 0=600 BIT/S 0=103 MODE 1=V.21 | 10=OAM 00=DPSK 01=FSK | 0000=PWDR DOWN 0001=INT SYNCH 0010=EXT SYNCH 0011=SLAVE SYNCH 0100=ASYCH 8 BITS/CHAR 0101=ASYCH 9 BITS/CHAR 0110=ASYCH 10 BITS/CHAR 0111=ASYCH 11 BITS/CHAR 1X00=FSK | | | 0=DISABLE TXA OUTPUT 1=ENABLE TXA OUTPUT | 0=ANSWER 1=ORIGINATE | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 | |
| | | | 00=TX DATA 01=TX ALTERNATE 10=TX MARK 11=TX SPACE | | 0=DISABLE 1=ENABLE | 0=NORMAL 1=BYPASS SCRAMBLER | 0=XTAL 1=16 X DATA RATE OUTPUT AT CLK PIN IN QAM/DPSK MODE ONLY | 0=NORMAL 1=RESET | 00=NORMAL 01=ANALOG LOOPBACK 10=REMOTE DIGITAL LOOPBACK 11=LOCAL DIGITAL LOOPBACK | | |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | RECEIVE LEVEL INDICATOR | S1 PATTERN DETECT | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARKS DETECT | CARRIER DETECT | ANSWER TONE DETECT | CP TONE DETECT | SIGNAL QUALITY INDICATOR | |
| | | | 0= SIGNAL BELOW THRESHOLD 1= ABOVE THRESHOLD | 0=NOT PRESENT 1=PATTERN FOUND | OUTPUTS RECEIVED DATA STREAM | | 0=CONDITION NOT DETECTED 1=CONDITION DETECTED | | | 0=GOOD 1=BAD | |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD/ CALLING TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2 | DTMF1/ EXTENDED OVERSPEED | DTMF0/ GUARD/ ANSWER | |
| | | | RXD PIN 0=NORMAL 1=OPEN | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=DATA 1=TX DTMF | 4 BIT CODE FOR 1 OF 16 DUAL TONE COMBINATIONS | | 0=1800 Hz G.T. 2225 Hz ANS TONE GENERATED 1=550 Hz G.T. 2100 Hz ANS TONE GENERATED & DETECTED (V.21, V.22) | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | CR2 | 100 | 0 | SPECIAL REGISTER ACCESS | CALL INITIALIZE | TRANSMIT S1 | 16 WAY | RESET DSP | TRAIN INHIBIT | EQUALIZER ENABLE | |
| | | | | 0=ACCESS CR3 1=ACCESS SPECIAL REGISTER | 0=DSP IN DEMOD MODE 1=DSP IN CALL PROGRESS MODE | 0=NORMAL 1=DOTTING 1=S1 | 0=RX=TX 1=RX=16 WAY | 0=DSP INACTIVE 1=DSP ACTIVE | 0=ADAPT EQ ACTIVE 1=ADAPT EQ FROZEN | 0=ADAPT EQ IN INIT 1=ADAPT EQ OK TO ADAPT | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | TXDALT | TRISTATE TX/RXCLK | 0 | RECEIVE GAIN BOOST | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 3 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 2 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 1 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 0 | |
| | | | ALTERNATE TRANSMIT DATA SOURCE | 0=NORMAL 1=TRISTATE | | 0=NO BOOST 1=18 dB BOOST | 0000-1111, SETS TRANSMIT ATTENUATOR 16 dB RANGE DEFAULT=0100 = -10 dBm0 | | | | |
| SPECIAL REGISTER | SR | 101 | | TX BAUD CLOCK | RX UNSCR. DATA | | TXD SOURCE | SQ SELECT1 | SQ SELECT0 | | |
| | | | | OUTPUTS TXBAUD CLOCK | OUTPUTS UNSCR. DATA | | 0=TXD PIN 1=TXALT BIT | 00=10 ⁻⁵ BER 01=10 ⁻⁶ BER 10=10 ⁻⁴ BER 11=10 ⁻³ BER | | | |
| ID REGISTER | 10 | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | | |

00XX=73K212L, 322L, 321L
01XX=73K221L, 302L
10XX=73K222L
1100=73K224L
1110=73K324L
1101=73K312L

SSI 73K224L
V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103
Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|------------------|--------------------|---|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | MODUL. OPTION | MODUL. TYPE 1 | MODUL. TYPE 0 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D0 | Answer/ Originate | | 0 | | Selects answer mode (transmit in high band, receive in low band). | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Selects originate mode (transmit in low band, receive in high band). | | | |
| D1 | Transmit Enable | | 0 | | Disables transmit output at TXA. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Enables transmit output at TXA. | | | |
| | | | | | Note: Transmit Enable must be set to 1 to allow activation of Answer Tone or DTMF. | | | |
| D5, D4, D3, D2 | Transmit Mode | | D5 D4 D3 D2 | | Selects power down mode. All functions disabled except digital interface. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 0 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 1 | | Internal synchronous mode. In this mode TXCLK is an internally derived 600,1200 or 2400 Hz signal. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK. Receive data is clocked out of RXD on the falling edge of RXCLK. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 1 0 | | External synchronous mode. Operation is identical to internal synchronous, but TXCLK is connected internally to EXCLK pin, and a 600, 1200 or 2400 Hz clock must be supplied externally. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 1 1 | | Slave synchronous mode. Same operation as other synchronous modes. TXCLK is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in this mode. | | | |
| | | | 0 1 0 0 | | Selects asynchronous mode - 8 bits/character (1 start bit, 6 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 0 1 | | Selects asynchronous mode - 9 bits/character (1 start bit, 7 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 1 0 | | Selects asynchronous mode - 10 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| D6,D5 | Modulation Type | | 0 1 1 1 | | Selects asynchronous mode - 11 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, Parity and/or 1 or 2 stop bits). | | | |
| | | | 1 X 0 0 | | Selects FSK operation. | | | |
| | | | D6 D5 | | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 | | QAM | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | | DPSK | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | | FSK | | | |

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0 (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|----------------------|------------------|------------------|---|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | MODUL. OPTION | MODUL. TYPE 1 | MODUL. TYPE 0 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D7 | Modulation Option | | 0 | QAM selects 2400 bit/s. DPSK selects 1200 bit/s. FSK selects 103 mode. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | DPSK selects 600 bit/s. FSK selects V.21 mode. | | | | |

CONTROL REGISTER 1

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|---|----------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| CR1 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INT. | BYPASS SCRAMB | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D1, D0 | Test Mode | | D1 D0 0 0 | Selects normal operating mode. | | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | Analog loopback mode. Loops the transmitted analog signal back to the receiver, and causes the receiver to use the same carrier frequency as the transmitter. To squelch the TXA pin, TRANSMIT ENABLE bit as well as Tone Reg bit D2 must be low. | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 | Selects remote digital loopback. Received data is looped back to transmit data internally, and RXD is forced to a mark. Data on TXD is ignored. | | | | |
| | | | 1 1 | Selects local digital loopback. Internally loops TXD back to RXD and continues to transmit data carrier at TXA pin. | | | | |
| D2 | Reset | | 0 | Selects normal operation. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Resets modem to power down state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, CR2, CR3 and Tone) are reset to zero except CR3 bit D2. The output of the clock pin will be set to the crystal frequency. | | | | |
| D3 | Clock Control | | 0 | Selects 11.0592 MHz crystal echo output at CLK pin. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Selects 16 X the data rate, output at CLK pin in DPSK/ QAM modes only. | | | | |

SSI 73K224L
V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103
Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 1 (Continued)

| | | | | | | | | |
|------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|--|------------------|----------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| CR1 001 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INT. | BYPASS SCRAMB | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D4 | Bypass Scrambler | 0 | Selects normal operation. DPSK and QAM data is passed through scrambler. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Selects Scrambler Bypass. Bypass DPSK and QAM data is routed around scrambler in the transmit path. | | | | | |
| D5 | Enable Detect Interrupt | 0 | Disables interrupt at $\overline{\text{INT}}$ pin. All interrupts are normally disabled in power down mode. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Enables $\overline{\text{INT}}$ output. An interrupt will be generated with a change in status of DR bits D1-D4 and D6. The answer tone and call progress detect interrupts are masked when the TX enable bit is set. Carrier detect is masked when TX DTMF is activated. All interrupts will be disabled if the device is in power down mode. | | | | | |
| D7, D6 | Transmit Pattern | D7 D6 | | | | | | |
| | | 0 0 | Selects normal data transmission as controlled by the state of the TXD pin. | | | | | |
| | | 0 1 | Selects an alternating mark/space transmit pattern for modem testing and handshaking. Also used for S1 pattern generation. See CR2 bit D4. | | | | | |
| | | 1 0 | Selects a constant mark transmit pattern. | | | | | |
| | | 1 1 | Selects a constant space transmit pattern. | | | | | |

DETECT REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|--------------------------|-------------------|--|--------------------|--------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| DR 010 | RECEIVE LEVEL INDICATOR | S1 PATTERN DETECT | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK DETECT | CARR. DETECT | ANSWER TONE DETECT | CALL PROG. DETECT | SIGNAL QUALITY INDICATOR |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D0 | Signal Quality Indicator | 0 | Indicates normal received signal. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicates low received signal quality (above average error rate). Interacts with special register bits D2, D1 | | | | | |
| D1 | Call Progress Detect | 0 | No call progress tone detected. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicates presence of call progress tones. The call progress detection circuitry is activated by energy in the normal 350 to 620 Hz call progress bandwidth. | | | | | |

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

DETECT REGISTER (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|-------------------------|-------------------|--|--------------------|--------------|--------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| DR 010 | RECEIVE LEVEL INDICATOR | S1 PATTERN DETECT | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK DETECT | CARR. DETECT | ANSWER TONE DETECT | CALL PROG. | SIGNAL QUALITY INDICATOR |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D2 | Answer Tone Received | 0 | No answer tone detected. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | In Call Init mode, indicates detection of 2225 Hz answer tone in Bell mode (TR bit D0=0) or 2100 Hz if in CCITT mode (TR bit D0=1). The device must be in originate mode for detection of answer tone. Both answer tones are detected in demod mode. | | | | | |
| D3 | Carrier Detect | 0 | No carrier detected in the receive channel. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicated carrier has been detected in the received channel. | | | | | |
| D4 | Unscrambled Mark Detect | 0 | No unscrambled mark. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicates detection of unscrambled marks in the received data. Should be time qualified by software. | | | | | |
| D5 | Receive Data | | Continuously outputs the received data stream. This data is the same as that output on the RXD pin, but it is not disabled when RXD is tri-stated. | | | | | |
| D6 | S1 Pattern Detect | 0 | No S1 pattern being received. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | S1 pattern detected. Should be time qualified by software. S1 pattern is defined as a double di-bit (001100..) unscrambled 1200 bit/s DPSK signal. Pattern must be aligned with baud clock to be detected. | | | | | |
| D7 | Receive Level Indicator | 0 | Received signal level below threshold, (typical ≈ -25 dBm0); can use receive gain boost (+18 dB). | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Received signal above threshold. | | | | | |

tone REGISTER

| | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|----------------------------|---------------------|--|---------------|--------|--------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| TR 011 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2 | DTMF 1/ EXTENDED OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ ANSWER/ GUARD |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | DTMF 0/ Answer/ Guard Tone | D6 D5 D4 D0 | D0 interacts with bits D6, D5, and D4 as shown. | | | | | |
| | | X X 1 X | Transmit DTMF tones. | | | | | |
| | | X 1 0 0 | Select Bell mode answer tone. Interacts with DR bit D2 and TR bit D5. | | | | | |
| | | X 1 0 1 | Select CCITT mode answer tone. Interacts with DR bit D2 and TR bit D5. | | | | | |
| (Continued) | | | | | | | | |

SSI 73K224L
V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103
Single-Chip Modem

TR 011 **TONE REGISTER** (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|----------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|--|--------|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2/ 4 WIRE FDX | DTMF 1/ EXTENDED OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ ANSWER/ GUARD |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | DTMF 0/ Answer/ Guard Tone | | D6 D5 D4 D0 | D0 interacts with bits D6, D5, and D4 as shown. | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 0 0 | Select 1800 Hz guard tone. | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 0 1 | Select 550 Hz guard tone. | | | | |
| D1 | DTMF 1/ Extended Overspeed | | D4 D1 | D1 interacts with D4 as shown. | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | Asynchronous QAM or DPSK +1.0% -2.5%. (normal) | | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | Asynchronous QAM or DPSK +2.3% -2.5%. (extended overspeed) | | | | |
| D2 | DTMF 2/ 4 WIRE FDX | | D4 D2 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | Selects 2 wire duplex or half duplex | | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | D2 selects 4 wire full duplex in the modulation mode selected. The receive path corresponds to the ANS/ ORIG bit CR0 D0 in terms of high or low band selection. The transmitter is in the same band as the receiver, but does not have magnitude filtering or equalization on its signal as in the receive path. | | | | |

3

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|----------------|-------------------------|----------------------|--|---------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2/ 4 WIRE FDX | DTMF 1/ EXTENDED OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ ANSWER/ GUARD |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 | DTMF 3, 2, 1, 0 | D3 D2 D1 D0 | Programs 1 of 16 DTMF tone pairs that will be transmitted when TX DTMF and TX enable bit (CR0, bit D1) is set. Tone encoding is shown below: | | | | | |
| | | 0 0 0 0 - 1 1 1 1 | | | | | | |
| | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | DTMF CODE D3 D2 D1 D0 | | TONES LOW HIGH | | | |
| | | 1 | 0 0 0 1 | | 697 1209 | | | |
| | | 2 | 0 0 1 0 | | 697 1336 | | | |
| | | 3 | 0 0 1 1 | | 697 1477 | | | |
| | | 4 | 0 1 0 0 | | 770 1209 | | | |
| | | 5 | 0 1 0 1 | | 770 1336 | | | |
| | | 6 | 0 1 1 0 | | 770 1477 | | | |
| | | 7 | 0 1 1 1 | | 852 1209 | | | |
| | | 8 | 1 0 0 0 | | 852 1336 | | | |
| | | 9 | 1 0 0 1 | | 852 1477 | | | |
| | | 0 | 1 0 1 0 | | 941 1336 | | | |
| | | * | 1 0 1 1 | | 941 1209 | | | |
| | | # | 1 1 0 0 | | 941 1477 | | | |
| | | A | 1 1 0 1 | | 697 1633 | | | |
| | | B | 1 1 1 0 | | 770 1633 | | | |
| C | 1 1 1 1 | | 852 1633 | | | | | |
| D | 0 0 0 0 | | 941 1633 | | | | | |
| D4 | TX DTMF (Transmit DTMF) | 0 | Disable DTMF. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Activate DTMF. The selected DTMF tones are transmitted continuously when this bit is high. TX DTMF overrides all other transmit functions. | | | | | |

Note: DTMF0 - DTMF2 should be set to an appropriate state after DTMF dialing to avoid unintended operation.

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER (Continued)

| D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
|---------|----------------------|---------------------|--|---------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2/ 4 WIRE FDX | DTMF 1/ EXTENDED OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ ANSWER/ GUARD |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D5 | Transmit Answer Tone | D5 D4 D0 | D5 interacts with bits D4 and D0 as shown. Also interacts with DR bit D2 in originate mode. See Detect Register description. | | | | | |
| | | 0 0 X | Disables answer tone generator. | | | | | |
| | | 1 0 0 | In answer mode, a Bell 2225 Hz tone is transmitted continuously when the Transmit Enable bit is set. | | | | | |
| D6 | Transmit Guard Tone | 1 0 1 | Likewise, a CCITT 2100 Hz answer tone is transmitted. | | | | | |
| | | 0 | Disables guard tone generator. | | | | | |
| D7 | RXD Output Control | 1 | Enables guard tone generator. (See D0 for selection of guard tones.) Bit D4 must be zero. | | | | | |
| | | 0 | Enables RXD pin. Receive data will be output on RXD. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Disables RXD pin. The RXD pin reverts to a high impedance with internal weak pull-up resistor. | | | | | |

CONTROL REGISTER 2

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|--------|-----------|---------------|------------------|
| CR2 100 | 0 | SPEC REG ACCESS | CALL INIT | TRANSMIT S1 | 16 WAY | RESET DSP | TRAIN INHIBIT | EQUALIZER ENABLE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D0 | Equalizer Enable | 0 | The adaptive equalizer is in its initialized state. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | The adaptive equalizer is enabled. This bit is used in handshakes to control when the equalizer should calculate its coefficients. | | | | | |
| D1 | Train Inhibit | 0 | The adaptive equalizer is active. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | The adaptive equalizer coefficients are frozen. | | | | | |
| D2 | RESET DSP | 0 | The DSP is inactive and all variables are initialized. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | The DSP is running based on the mode set by other control bits | | | | | |
| D3 | 16 Way | 0 | The receiver and transmitter are using the same decision plane (based on the Modulator Control Mode). | | | | | |
| | | 1 | The receiver, independent of the transmitter, is forced into a 16 point decision plane. Used for QAM handshaking. | | | | | |

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 2 (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|---|-------|--------------|------------------|---------------------|
| CR2 100 | 0 | SPEC REG ACCESS | CALL INIT | TRANSMIT S1 | 16WAY | RESET DSP | TRAIN INHIBIT | EQUALIZER ENABLE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D4 | Transmit S1 | | 0 | The transmitter when placed in alternating mark/space mode transmits 0101..... scrambled or not dependent on the bypass scrambler bit. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | When this bit is 1 and only when the transmitter is placed in alternating mark/space mode by CR1 bits D7, D6, and in DPSK or QAM, an unscrambled repetitive double dibit pattern of 00 and 11 at 1200 bit/s (S1) is sent. | | | | |
| D5 | Call Init | | 0 | The DSP is setup to do demodulation and pattern detection based on the various mode bits. Both answer tones are detected in demod mode concurrently; TR-D0 is ignored. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | The DSP decodes unscrambled mark, answer tone and call progress tones. | | | | |
| D6 | Special Register Access | | 0 | Normal CR3 access. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Setting this bit and addressing CR3 allows access to the SPECIAL REGISTER. See the SPECIAL REGISTER for details. | | | | |
| D7 | Not used at this time | | 0 | Only write zero to this bit. | | | | |

CONTROL REGISTER 3

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| CR3 101 | TXDALT | TRISTATE TX/RXCLK | | RECEIVE BOOST ENABLE | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 3 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 2 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 1 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 0 |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D3, D2, D1,D0 | Transmit Attenuator | | D3 D2 D1 D0 | Sets the attenuation level of the transmitted signal in 1dB steps. The default (D3-D0=0100) is for a transmit level of -10 dBm0 on the line with the recommended hybrid transmit gain. The total range is 16 dB. | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 0 - 1 1 1 1 | | | | | |
| D4 | Receive Gain Boost | | 0 | 18 dB receive front end boost is not used. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Boost is in the path. This boost does not change reference levels. It is used to extend dynamic range by compensating for internally generated noise when receiving weak signals. The receive level detect signal and knowledge of the hybrid and transmit attenuator setting will determine when boost should be enabled. | | | | |
| D5 | Not used at this time | | 0 | Only write zero to this bit. | | | | |
| D6 | TRISTATE TXCLK/RXCLK | | 0 | TXCLK and RXCLK are driven. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | TXCLK and RXCLK are tristated. | | | | |
| D7 | TXDALT | | Spec. Reg. Bit D3=1 | Alternate TX data source. See Special Register. | | | | |

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

SPECIAL REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|-----------------------------|--------------|---|----|---------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|----|
| SR 101 | | TXBAUD CLOCK | RXUN-DSCR DATA | | TXD SOURCE | SIGNAL QUALITY LEVEL SELECT1 | SIGNAL QUALITY LEVEL SELECT0 | |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D7, D4, D0 | | | NOT USED AT THIS TIME. Only write ZEROs to these bits. | | | | | |
| D6 | TXBAUD CLK | | TXBAUD clock is the transmit baud-synchronous clock that can be used to synchronize the input of arbitrary quad/di-bit patterns. The rising edge of TXBAUD signals the latching of a baud-worth of data internally. Synchronous data to be entered via the TXDALT bit, CR3 bit D7, should have data transitions that start 1/2 bit period delayed from the TXBAUD clock edges. | | | | | |
| D5 | RXUNDSCR DATA | | This bit outputs the data received before going to the descrambler. This is useful for sending special unscrambled patterns that can be used for signaling. | | | | | |
| D3 | TXD SOURCE | | This bit selects the transmit data source; either the TXD pin if ZERO or the TXDALT if this bit is a ONE. The TRANSMIT PATTERN bits D7 and D6 in CR1 override either of these sources. | | | | | |
| D2, D1 | SIGNAL QUALITY LEVEL SELECT | | The signal quality indicator is a logical ZERO when the signal received is acceptable for low error rate reception. It is determined by the value of the Mean Squared Error (MSE) calculated in the decisioning process when compared to a given threshold. This threshold can be set to four levels of error rate. The SQI bit will be low for good or average connections. As the error rate crosses the threshold setting, the SQI bit will toggle at a 1.66 ms rate. Toggling will continue until the error rate indicates that the data pump has lost convergence and a retrain is required. At that point the SQI bit will be a ONE constantly. The SQI bit and threshold selection are valid for QAM and DPSK only and indicates typical error rate. | | | | | |
| | D2 | D1 | THRESHOLD VALUE | | UNITS | | | |
| | 0 | 0 | 10 ⁻⁵ | | BER (default) | | | |
| | 0 | 1 | 10 ⁻⁶ | | BER | | | |
| | 1 | 0 | 10 ⁻⁴ | | BER | | | |
| | 1 | 1 | 10 ⁻³ | | BER | | | |

NOTE: This register is "mapped" and is accessed by setting CR2 bit D6 to a ONE and addressing CR3. This register provides functions to the 73K224L user that are not necessary in normal communications. Bits D7-D4 are read only, while D3-D0 are read/write. To return to normal CR3 access, CR2 bit D6 must be returned to a ZERO.

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

ID REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------|-------------|------|---------------------------------|----|----|----|
| ID 110 | ID 3 | ID 2 | ID 1 | ID 0 | USER DEFINABLE PERSONALITY | | | |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| | | | D7 D6 D5 D4 | | Indicates Device: | | | |
| D7, D6, D5, D4 | Device Identification Signature | | 0 0 X X | | SSI 73K212L, 73K321L or 73K322L | | | |
| | | | 0 1 X X | | SSI 73K221L or 73K302L | | | |
| | | | 1 0 X X | | SSI 73K222L | | | |
| | | | 1 1 0 1 | | SSI 73K312L | | | |
| | | | 1 1 0 0 | | SSI 73K224L | | | |
| | | | 1 1 1 0 | | SSI 73K324L | | | |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|------------------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 7V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260°C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD+0.3V |
| Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected. | |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| VDD Supply voltage | | 4.5 | 5 | 5.5 | V |
| External Components (Refer to Application section for placement.) | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass capacitor | (VREF to GND) | 0.22 | | | μF |
| Bias setting resistor | (Placed between VDD and ISET pins) | 1.8 | 2 | 2.2 | MΩ |
| ISET Bypass capacitor | (ISET pin to GND) | 0.22 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass capacitor 1 | (VDD to GND) | 0.22 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass capacitor 2 | (VDD to GND) | 22 | | | μF |
| XTL1 Load Capacitance | Depends on crystal requirements | | 18 | 39 | pF |
| XTL2 Load Capacitance | Depends on crystal requirements | | 18 | 27 | pF |
| Clock Variation | (11.0592 MHz) Crystal or external clock | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temperature | | -40 | | 85 | °C |

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------|-----|-----|-------|
| IDD, Supply Current | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | | | |
| | ISET Resistor = 2 MΩ | | | | |
| IDD1, Active | Operating with crystal oscillator, | | 18 | 25 | mA |
| IDD2, Idle | < 5 pF capacitive load on CLK pin | | 3 | 5 | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | |
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | | | 0.8 | V |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | | |
| All Inputs except Reset XTL1, XTL2 | | 2.0 | | VDD | V |
| Reset, XTL1, XTL2 | | 3.0 | | VDD | V |
| IIH, Input High Current | VI = VDD | | | 100 | μA |
| IIL, Input Low Current | VI = 0V | -200 | | | μA |
| Reset Pull-down Current | Reset = VDD | 2 | | 50 | μA |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | |
| VOH, Output High Voltage | IO = IOH Min IOUT = -0.4 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| VOL, Output Low Voltage | IO = IOUT = 1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| RXD Tri-State Pull-up Curr. | RXD = GND | -2 | | -50 | μA |
| Capacitance | | | | | |
| Maximum Capacitive Load | | | | | |
| CLK | Maximum permitted load | | | 25 | pF |
| Input Capacitance | All Digital Inputs | | | 10 | pF |

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING

(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| QAM/DPSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Carrier Suppression | Measured at TXA | 35 | | | dB |
| Output Amplitude | TX scrambled marks ATT=0100 (default) | -11.5 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| FSK Modulator/Demodulator | | | | | |
| Output Freq. Error | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | -.31 | | +20 | % |
| Transmit Level | ATT = 0100 (Default) Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11.5 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| TXA Output Distortion | All products through BPF | | | -45 | dB |
| Output Bias Distortion at RXD | Dotting Pattern measured at RXD Receive Level -20 dBm, SNR 20 dB | -10 | | +10 | % |
| Output Jitter at RXD | Integrated for 5 seconds | -15 | | +15 | % |
| Sum of Bias Distortion and Output Jitter | Integrated for 5 seconds | -17 | | +17 | % |
| Answer Tone Generator (2100 or 2225 Hz) | | | | | |
| Output Amplitude | ATT = 0100 (Default Level) Not in V.21 | -11.5 | -10 | -9 | dBm0 |
| Output Distortion | Distortion products in receive band | | | -40 | dB |
| DTMF Generator Not in V.21 | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | | -0.03 | | +0.25 | % |
| Output Amplitude | Low Band, ATT = 0100, DPSK Mode | -10 | | -8 | dBm0 |
| Output Amplitude | High Band, ATT = 0100, DPSK Mode | -8 | | -6 | dBm0 |
| Twist | High-Band to Low-Band, DPSK Mode | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | dB |
| Receiver Dynamic Range | Refer to Performance Curves | -43 | | -3.0 | dBm0 |
| Call Progress Detector In Call Init mode | | | | | |
| Detect Level | 460 Hz test signal | -34 | | 0 | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | | | | -40 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | | | 25 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | | | 25 | ms |

NOTE: Parameters expressed in dBm0 refer to the following definition:

0 dB loss in the Transmit path to the line.

2 dB gain in the Receive path from the line.

Refer to the Basic Box Modem diagram in the Applications section for the DAA design.

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|----------------------------|------|--|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| Carrier Detect | | Receive Gain = On for lower input level measurements | | | | |
| Threshold | | All Modes | -48 | | -43 | dBm0 |
| Hysteresis | | All Modes | | 2 | | |
| Delay Time | FSK | 70 dBm0 to -6 dBm0 | 25 | | 37 | ms |
| | | 70 dBm0 to -40 dBm0 | 25 | | 37 | ms |
| | DPSK | -70 dBm0 to -6 dBm0 | 7 | | 17 | ms |
| | | -70 dBm0 to -40 dBm0 | 7 | | 17 | ms |
| | QAM | -70 dBm0 to -6 dBm0 | 25 | | 37 | ms |
| | | -70 dBm0 to -40 dBm0 | 25 | | 37 | ms |
| Hold Time | FSK | -6 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 25 | | 37 | ms |
| | | -40 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 15 | | 30 | ms |
| | DPSK | -6 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 20 | | 29 | ms |
| | | -40 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 14 | | 21 | ms |
| | QAM | -6 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 25 | | 32 | ms |
| | | -40 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 18 | | 28 | ms |
| Answer Tone Detectors | | DPSK Mode | | | | |
| Detect Level | | | -48 | | -43 | dBm0 |
| Detect Time | | Call Init Mode, 2100 or 2225 Hz | 6 | | 50 | ms |
| Hold Time | | | 6 | | 50 | ms |
| Pattern Detectors | | DPSK Mode | | | | |
| S1 Pattern | | | | | | |
| Delay Time | | For signals from -6 to -40 dBm0, | 10 | | 55 | ms |
| Hold Time | | -6 to -40 dBm0, Demod Mode | 10 | | 45 | ms |
| Unscrambled Mark | | | | | | |
| Delay Time | | For signals from -6 to -40 | 10 | | 45 | ms |
| Hold Time | | call Init Mode | 10 | | 45 | ms |
| Receive Level Indicator | | | | | | |
| Detect On | | | -22 | | -28 | dBm0 |
| Valid after Carrier Detect | | DPSK Mode | 1 | 4 | 7 | ms |
| Output Smoothing Filter | | | | | | |
| Output Impedance | | TXA pin | | 200 | 300 | Ω |
| Output load | | TXA pin; FSK Single | 10 | | | KΩ |
| | | Tone out for THD = -50 dB in .3 to 3.4 kHz range | | | 50 | pF |
| Maximum Transmitted Energy | | 4 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -35 | dBm0 |
| | | 10 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -55 | dBm0 |
| | | 12 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -65 | dBm0 |

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

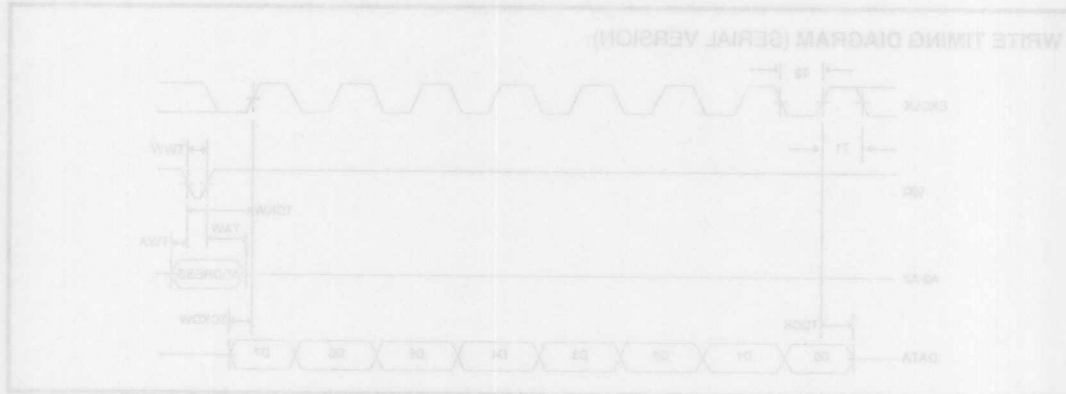
| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|-------|---------|---------|----------|
| Anti Alias Low Pass Filter | | | | | |
| Out of Band Signal Energy (Defines Hybrid Trans-Hybrid loss requirements) | Level at RXA pin with receive Boost Enabled | | | | |
| | Scrambled data at 2400 bit/s in opposite band | | -14 | | dBm |
| | Sinusoids out of band | | -9 | | dBm |
| Transmit Attenuator | | | | | |
| Range of Transmit Level | Default ATT=0100 (-10 dBm0) 1111-0000 | -21 | | -6 | dBm0 |
| Step Accuracy | | -0.15 | | +0.15 | dB |
| Output Impedance | | | 200 | 300 | Ω |
| Clock Noise | | | | | |
| | TXA pin; 153.6 kHz | | | 1.5 | mVrms |
| Carrier Offset | | | | | |
| Capture Range | Originate or Answer | | ± 5 | ± 7 | Hz |
| Recovered Clock | | | | | |
| Capture Range | % of frequency (originate or answer) | -0.02 | | +0.02 | % |
| Guard Tone Generator | | | | | |
| Tone Accuracy | 550 Hz | | +1.2 | | % |
| | 1800 Hz | | -0.8 | | % |
| Tone Level (Below QAM/DPSK Output) | 550 Hz | -4.5 | -3.0 | -1.5 | dB |
| | 1800 Hz | -7.5 | -6.1 | -4.5 | dB |
| Harmonic Distortion (700 to 2900 Hz) | 550 Hz | | | -50 | dB |
| | 1800 Hz | | | -50 | dB |
| Timing (Refer to Timing Diagrams) | | | | | |
| Parallel Mode | | | | | |
| TAL | \overline{CS} /Addr. setup before ALE Low | 30 | | | ns |
| TLA | \overline{CS} /Addr. hold after ALE Low | 6 | | | ns |
| TLC | ALE Low to $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Low | 40 | | | ns |
| TCL | $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Control to ALE High | 10 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} Low | | | 90 | ns |
| TLL | ALE width | 25 | | | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after \overline{RD} High | | | 40 | ns |
| TRW | \overline{RD} width | 70 | | | ns |

SSI 73K224L
V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103
Single-Chip Modem

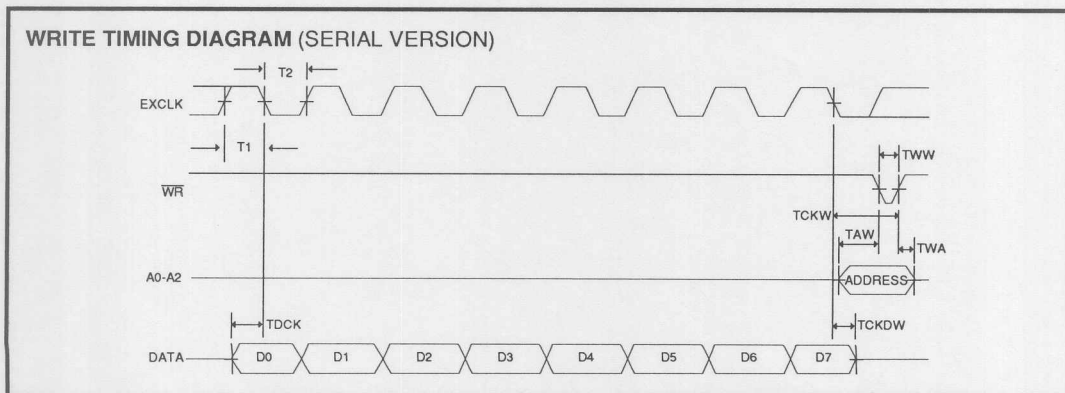
DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|----------------------------------|---|-----|-----|---------|-------|
| Parallel Mode (Continued) | | | | | |
| TWW | \overline{WR} width | 70 | | | ns |
| TDW | Data setup before \overline{WR} High | 70 | | | ns |
| TWD | Data hold after \overline{WR} High | 20 | | | ns |
| Serial Mode | | | | | |
| TRCK | Clock High after \overline{RD} Low | 250 | | T1 | ns |
| TAR | Address setup before \overline{RD} Low | 0 | | | ns |
| TRA | Address hold after \overline{RD} Low | 350 | | | ns |
| TRD | \overline{RD} to Data valid | | | 300 | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after \overline{RD} High | | | 40 | ns |
| TCKDR | Read Data out after Falling Edge of EXCLK | | | 300 | ns |
| TWW | \overline{WR} width | 350 | | | ns |
| TAW | Address setup before \overline{WR} Low | 50 | | | ns |
| TWA | Address hold after Rising Edge of \overline{WR} | 50 | | | ns |
| TCKDW | Write Data hold after Falling Edge of EXCLK | 200 | | | ns |
| TCKW | \overline{WR} High after Falling Edge of EXCLK | 330 | | T1 + T2 | ns |
| TDCK | Data setup before Falling Edge of EXCLK | 50 | | | ns |
| T1, T2 | Minimum Period | 500 | | | ns |

NOTE: T1 and T2 are the low/high periods, respectively, of EXCLK in serial mode.

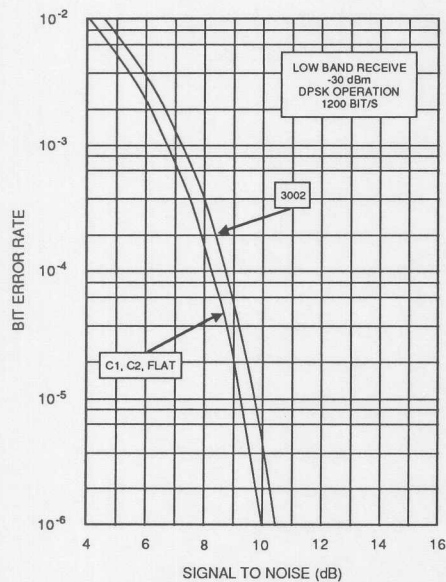


TIMING DIAGRAMS

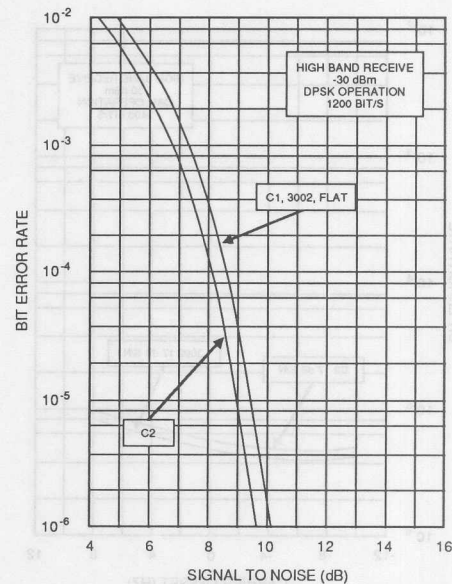


SSI 73K224L V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103 Single-Chip Modem

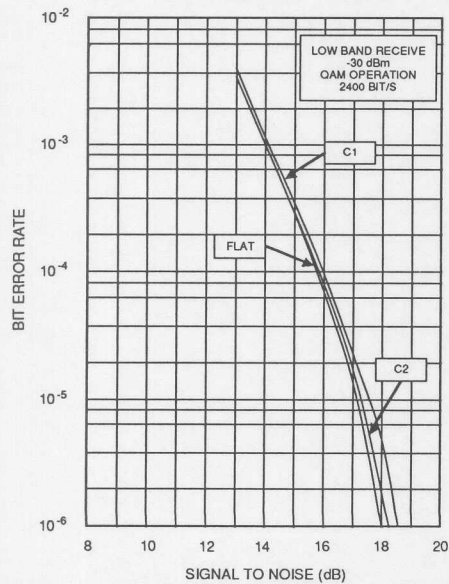
SSI 73K224L BER vs S/N-DPSK LOW BAND



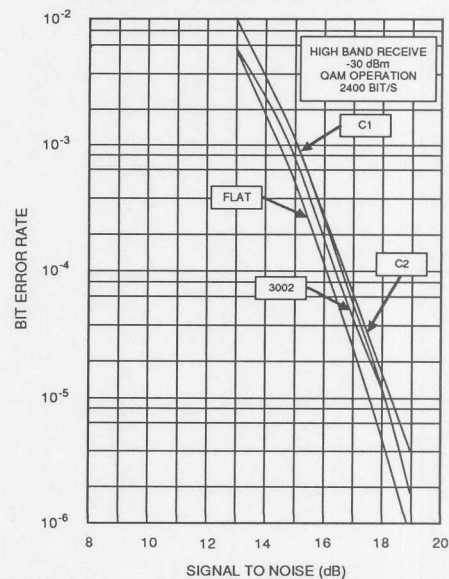
SSI 73K224L BER vs S/N-DPSK HIGH BAND

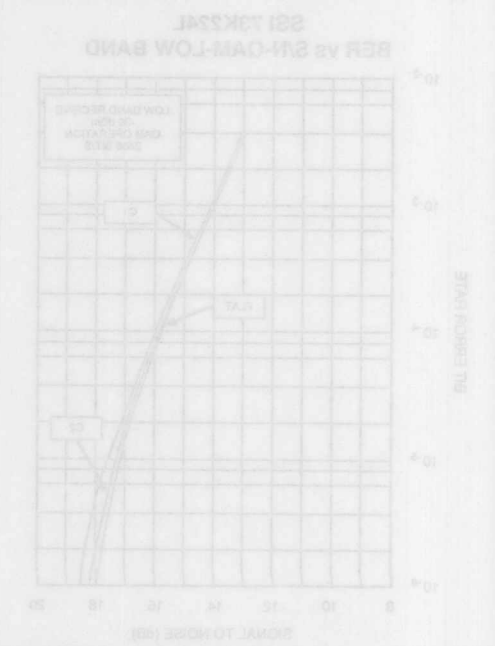
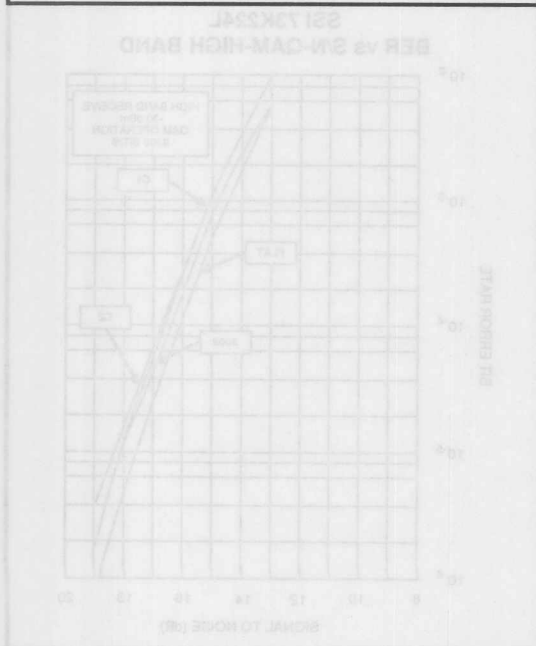
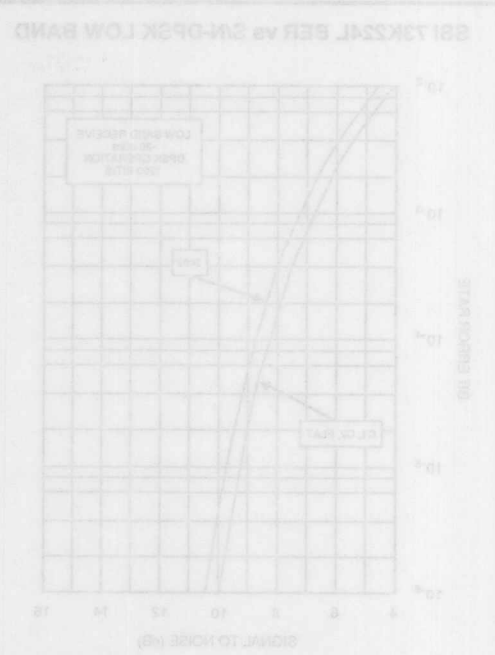
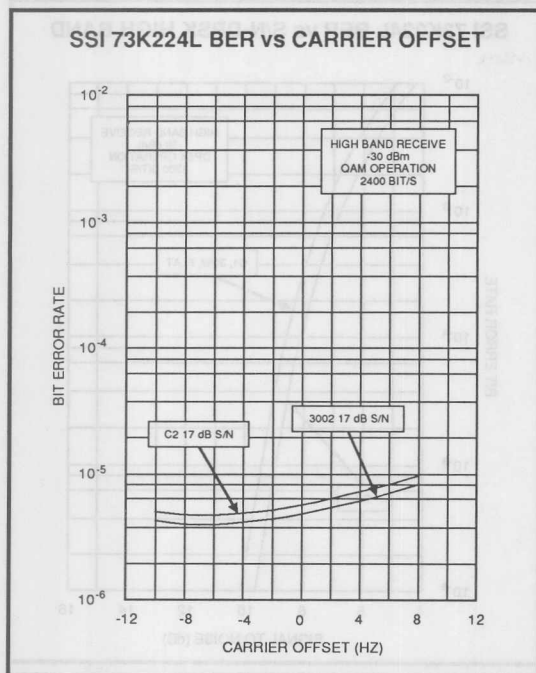


SSI 73K224L
BER vs S/N-QAM-LOW BAND



SSI 73K224L
BER vs S/N-QAM-HIGH BAND



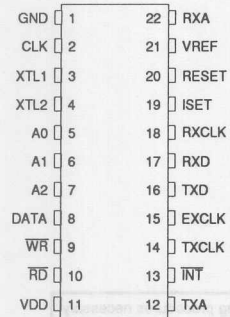


SSI 73K224L

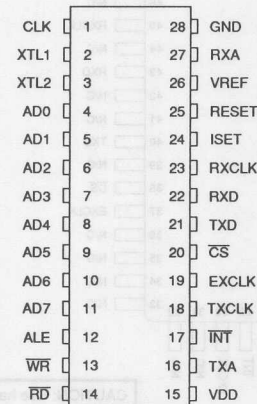
V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem

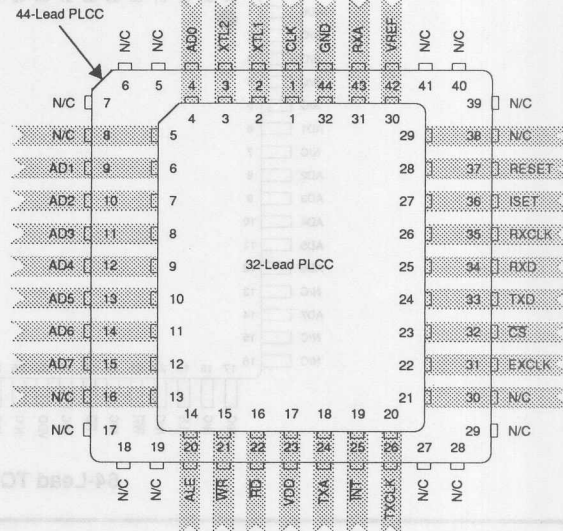
PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)



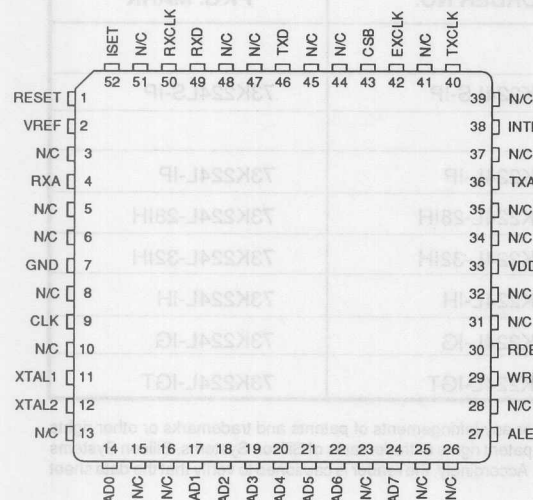
400-Mil
22-Pin DIP



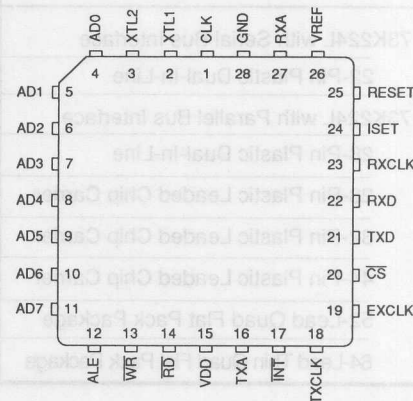
600-Mil
28-Pin DIP



32, 44-Pin PLCC



52-Lead QFP



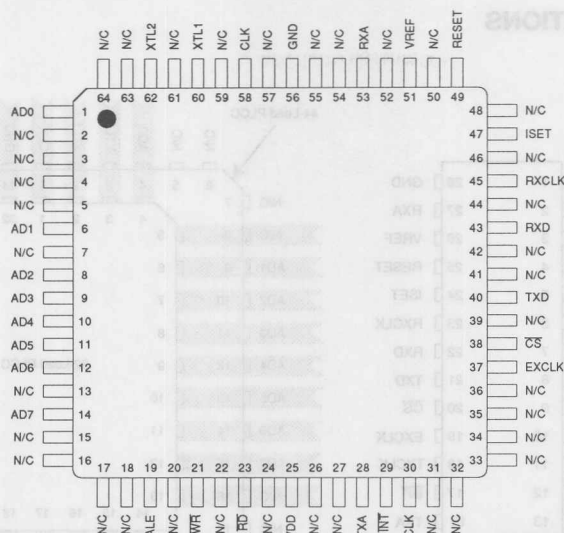
28-Pin PLCC

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73K224L

V.22bis/V.22/V.21, Bell 212A/103

Single-Chip Modem



64-Lead TQFP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|---|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 73K224L with Serial Bus Interface | | |
| 22-Pin Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K224LS-IP | 73K224LS-IP |
| SSI 73K224L with Parallel Bus Interface | | |
| 28-Pin Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K224L-IP | 73K224L-IP |
| 28-Pin Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | 73K224L-28IH | 73K224L-28IH |
| 32-Pin Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | 73K224L-32IH | 73K224L-32IH |
| 44-Pin Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | 73K224L-IH | 73K224L-IH |
| 52-Lead Quad Flat Pack Package | 73K224L-IG | 73K224L-IG |
| 64-Lead Thin Quad Flat Pack Package | 73K224L-IGT | 73K224L-IGT |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73K302L is a highly integrated single-chip modem IC which provides the functions needed to construct a Bell 202, 212A and 103 compatible modem. The SSI 73K302L is an enhancement of the SSI 73K212L single-chip modem with Bell 202 mode features added. The 73K302L is capable of 1200 or 0-300 bit/s full-duplex operation over dial-up lines. 4-wire full-duplex capability and a low speed back channel are also provided in Bell 202 mode. The SSI 73K302L recognizes and generates a 900 Hz soft carrier turn-off tone, and allows 103 for 300 bit/s FSK operation. The SSI 73K302L integrates analog, digital, and switched-capacitor array functions on a single substrate, offering excellent performance and a high level of functional integration in a single 28 or 22-pin DIP configuration. The SSI 73K302L operates from a single +5V supply with very low power consumption.

The SSI 73K302L includes the DPSK and FSK modulator/demodulator functions, call progress and hand-shake tone monitors, test modes, and a tone generator capable of producing DTMF, answer, and 900 Hz soft carrier turn-off tone. This device supports Bell 202, 212A and 103 modes of operation, allowing both

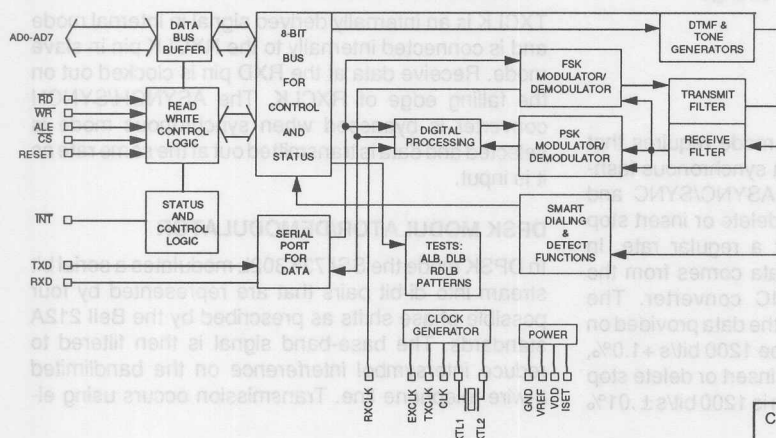
(Continued)

FEATURES

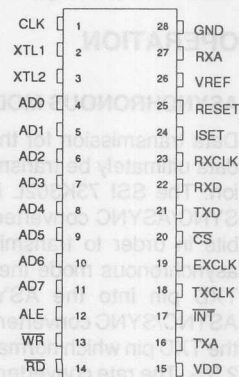
- One-chip Bell 212A, 103 and 202S/T standard compatible modem data pump
- Full-duplex operation at 0-300 bit/s (FSK), 1200 bit/s (DPSK) or 0-1200 bit/s (FSK) forward channel with or without 0-150 bit/s back channel
- Full-duplex 4-wire operation in Bell 202 mode
- Pin and software compatible with other SSI K-Series 1-chip modems
- Interfaces directly with standard microprocessors (8048, 80C51 typical)
- Serial (22-pin DIP) or parallel microprocessor bus for control
- Serial port for data transfer
- Both synchronous and asynchronous modes of operation
- Call progress, carrier, precise answer tone (2225 Hz), soft carrier turn-off (SCT), and FSK mark detectors
- DTMF, answer, and SCT tone generators
- Test modes available: ALB, DL, RDL, Mark, Space, Alternating bit patterns
- CMOS technology for low power consumption using 35 mW @ 5V from a single power supply

3

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103, 202

Single-Chip Modem

DESCRIPTION (Continued)

synchronous and asynchronous communications. The SSI 73K302L is designed to appear to the systems designer as a microprocessor peripheral, and will easily interface with popular one-chip microprocessors (80C51 typical) for control of modem functions through its 8-bit multiplexed address/data bus or via an optional serial command bus. An ALE control line simplifies address demultiplexing. Data communications occurs through a separate serial port only.

The SSI 73K302L is ideal for use in either free standing or integral system modem products where multi-standard data communications is desired. Its high functionality, low power consumption and efficient packaging simplify design requirements and increase system reliability. A complete modem requires only the addition of the phone line interface, a modem controller, and RS232 level converter for a typical system.

Tri-mode capability in one-chip allows full-duplex Bell 212 and 103 operation or asymmetrical Bell 202S operation over the 2-wire switched telephone network. 202T mode full-duplex operation at 1200 bit/s is also possible when operating on 4-wire leased lines.

A soft carrier turn-off feature facilitates fast line turn around when using the 202S mode for half-duplex applications.

The SSI 73K302L is part of Silicon Systems K-Series family of pin and function compatible single-chip modem products. These devices allow systems to be configured for higher speeds and Bell or CCITT operation with only a single component change.

OPERATION

ASYNCHRONOUS MODE

Data transmission for the DPSK mode requires that data ultimately be transmitted in a synchronous fashion. The SSI 73K302L includes ASYNC/SYNC and SYNC/ASYNC converters which delete or insert stop bits in order to transmit data at a regular rate. In asynchronous mode the serial data comes from the TXD pin into the ASYNC/SYNC converter. The ASYNC/SYNC converter accepts the data provided on the TXD pin which normally must be 1200 bit/s $\pm 1.0\%$, 2.5%. The rate converter will then insert or delete stop bits in order to output a signal which is 1200 bit/s $\pm .01\%$

($\pm .01\%$ is the required synchronous data rate accuracy).

The SYNC/ASYNC converter also has an extended overspeed mode which allows selection of an output overspeed range of either +1% or +2.3%. In the extended overspeed mode, stop bits are output at 7/8 the normal width.

The serial data stream from the transmit buffer or the rate converter is passed through the data scrambler and onto the analog modulator. The data scrambler can be bypassed under processor control when unscrambled data must be transmitted. If serial input data contains a break signal through one character (including start and stop bits) the break will be extended to at least $2 \cdot N + 3$ bits long (where N is the number of transmitted bits/character).

Serial data from the demodulator is passed first through the data descrambler and then through the SYNC/ASYNC converter. The ASYNC/ASYNC converter will reinsert any deleted stop bits and output data at an intra-character rate (bit-to-bit timing) of no greater than 1219 bit/s. An incoming break signal (low through two characters) will be passed through without incorrectly inserting a stop bit.

SYNCHRONOUS MODE

The Bell 212A standard defines synchronous operation at 1200 bit/s. Operation is similar to that of the asynchronous mode except that data must be synchronized to a provided clock and no variation in data transfer rate is allowable. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK.

TXCLK is an internally derived signal in internal mode and is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in slave mode. Receive data at the RXD pin is clocked out on the falling edge of RXCLK. The ASYNCH/SYNCH converter is bypassed when synchronous mode is selected and data is transmitted out at the same rate as it is input.

DPSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

In DPSK mode the SSI 73K302L modulates a serial bit stream into di-bit pairs that are represented by four possible phase shifts as prescribed by the Bell 212A standards. The base-band signal is then filtered to reduce intersymbol interference on the bandlimited 2-wire telephone line. Transmission occurs using ei-

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103,202

Single-Chip Modem

ther a 1200 Hz (originate mode) or 2400 Hz (answer mode) carrier. Demodulation is the reverse of the modulation process, with the incoming analog signal eventually decoded into di-bits and converted back to a serial bit stream. The demodulator also recovers the clock which was encoded into the analog signal during modulation. Demodulation occurs using either a 1200 Hz carrier (answer mode or ALB originate mode) or a 2400 Hz carrier (originate mode or ALB answer mode). The SSI 73K302L uses a phase locked loop coherent demodulation technique for optimum receiver performance.

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator produces a frequency modulated analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. Bell 103 mode uses 1270 and 1070 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 2225 and 2025 Hz (answer, mark and space). Bell 202 mode uses 1200 and 2200 Hz for the main channel and 387 and 487 Hz for the back channel. The modulation rate of the back channel is up to 150 baud. Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value. The rate converter and scrambler/descrambler are automatically bypassed in the 103 or 202 modes.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

High and low band filters are included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit and receive signals and provide compromise delay equalization and rejection of out-of-band signals in the receive channel. Amplitude and phase equalization are necessary to compensate for distortion of the transmission line and to reduce intersymbol interference in the bandlimited receive signal. The transmit signal filtering approximates a 75% square root of raised Cosine frequency response characteristic.

AGC

The automatic gain control maintains a signal level at the input to the demodulators which is constant to within 1 dB. It corrects quickly for increases in signal which would cause clipping and provides a total receiver dynamic range of >45 dB.

PARALLEL BUS INTERFACE

Four 8-bit registers are provided for control, option select and status monitoring. These registers are ad-

dressed with the AD0, AD1, and AD2 multiplexed address lines (latched by ALE) and appear to a control microprocessor as four consecutive memory locations. Two control registers and the tone register are read/write memory. The detect register is read only and cannot be modified except by modem response to monitored parameters. The parallel bus interface is not available in the 22-pin package.

SERIAL COMMAND INTERFACE

The serial command interface allows access to the SSI 73K302L control and status registers via a serial command port. In this mode the A0, A1 and A2 lines provide register addresses for data passed through the data pin under control of the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} lines. A read operation is initiated when the \overline{RD} line is taken low. The first bit is available after \overline{RD} is brought low and the next seven cycles of EXCLK will then transfer out seven bits of the selected address location LSB first. A write takes place by shifting in eight bits of data LSB first for eight consecutive cycles of EXCLK. \overline{WR} is then pulsed low and data transfer into the selected register occurs on the rising edge of \overline{WR} .

SPECIAL DETECT CIRCUITRY

The special detect circuitry monitors the received analog signal to determine status or presence of carrier, answer tone and weak received signal (long loop condition), special tones such as FSK marking and the 900 Hz soft carrier turn-off tone are also detected. A highly frequency selective call progress detector provides adequate discrimination to accurately detect lower quality call progress signals.

DTMF GENERATOR

The DTMF generator will output one of 16 standard tone pairs determined by a 4-bit binary value and TX DTMF mode bit previously loaded into the tone register. Tone generation is initiated when the DTMF mode is selected using the tone register and the transmit enable (CR0 bit D1) is changed from 0 to 1.

SOFT CARRIER TURN-OFF TONE GENERATOR

The soft carrier turn-off tone generator will output a 900 Hz tone. When activated in Bell 202 main channel transmit mode, the output signal will shift to 900 Hz, maintaining phase continuity during the transition.

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103, 202

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION

POWER

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------|--------|--------|------|---|
| GND | 28 | 1 | I | System Ground. |
| VDD | 15 | 11 | I | Power supply input, 5V \pm 10%. Bypass with .1 and 22 μ F capacitors to GND. |
| VREF | 26 | 21 | O | An internally generated reference voltage. Bypass with .1 μ F capacitor to GND. |
| ISET | 24 | 19 | I | Chip current reference. Sets bias current for op-amps. The chip current is set by connecting this pin to VDD through a 2 M Ω resistor. ISET should be bypassed to GND with a .1 μ F capacitor. |

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|------------------|------|----|-----|--|
| ALE | 12 | - | I | Address latch enable. The falling edge of ALE latches the address on AD0-AD7 and the chip select on \overline{CS} . |
| AD0-AD7 | 4-11 | - | I/O | Address/data bus. These bidirectional tri-state multiplexed lines carry information to and from the internal registers. |
| \overline{CS} | 20 | - | I | Chip select. A low on this pin during the falling edge of ALE allows a read cycle or a write cycle to occur. AD0-AD7 will not be driven and no registers will be written if \overline{CS} (latched) is not active. The state of \overline{CS} is latched on the falling edge of ALE. |
| CLK | 1 | 2 | O | Output clock. This pin is selectable under processor control to be either the crystal frequency (for use as a processor clock) or 16 x the data rate for use as a baud rate clock in DPSK mode only. The pin defaults to the crystal frequency on reset. |
| \overline{INT} | 17 | 13 | O | Interrupt. This open drain output signal is used to inform the processor that a detect flag has occurred. The processor must then read the detect register to determine which detect triggered the interrupt. \overline{INT} will stay low until the processor reads the detect register or does a full reset. |
| \overline{RD} | 14 | - | I | Read. A low requests a read of the SSI 73K302L internal registers. Data cannot be output unless both \overline{RD} and the latched \overline{CS} are active or low. |
| RESET | 25 | 20 | I | Reset. An active high signal on this pin will put the chip into an inactive state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) will be reset. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. An internal pull down resistor permits power on reset using a capacitor to VDD. |

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103,202

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION (Continued)

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE (Continued)

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|--------|--------|------|--|
| \overline{WR} | 13 | - | I | Write. A low on this informs the SSI 73K302L that data is available on AD0-AD7 for writing into an internal register. Data is latched on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . No data is written unless both \overline{WR} and the latched \overline{CS} are active low. |

SERIAL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|-----------------|---|-----|-----|--|
| A0-A2 | - | 5-7 | I | Register Address Selection. These lines carry register addresses and should be valid during any read or write operation. |
| DATA | - | 8 | I/O | Serial Control Data. Data for a read/write operation is clocked in or out on the falling edge of the EXCLK pin. The direction of data flow is controlled by the \overline{RD} pin. \overline{RD} low outputs data. \overline{RD} high inputs data. |
| \overline{RD} | - | 10 | I | Read. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K302L that data or status information is being read by the processor. The falling edge of the \overline{RD} signal will initiate a read from the addressed register. The \overline{RD} signal must continue for eight falling edges of EXCLK in order to read all eight bits of the referenced register. Read data is provided LSB first. Data will not be output unless the \overline{RD} signal is active. |
| \overline{WR} | - | 9 | I | Write. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K302L that data or status information has been shifted in through the DATA pin and is available for writing to an internal register. The normal procedure for a write is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive falling edges of EXCLK and then to pulse \overline{WR} low. Data is written on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . |

Note: In the serial, 22-pin version, the pins AD0-AD7, ALE and \overline{CS} are removed and replaced with the pins; A0, A1, A2, DATA, and an unconnected pin. Also, the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} controls are used differently. The serial control mode is provided in the parallel control versions by tying ALE high and \overline{CS} low. In this configuration AD7 becomes DATA and AD0, AD1 and AD2 become A0, A1 and A2, respectively.

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103, 202

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION (Continued)

DTE USER INTERFACE

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|--------|--------|------|--|
| EXCLK | 19 | 15 | I | External Clock. This signal is used only in synchronous DPSK transmission when the external timing option has been selected. In the external timing mode the rising edge of EXCLK is used to strobe synchronous DPSK transmit data available on the TXD pin. Also used for serial control interface. |
| RXCLK | 23 | 18 | O | Receive Clock. The falling edge of this clock output is coincident with the transitions in the serial received DPSK data output. The rising edge of RXCLK can be used to latch the valid output data. RXCLK will be valid as long as a carrier is present. In Bell 202 mode a clock which is 16 x 1200 or 16 x 150 baud data rate is output. |
| RXD | 22 | 17 | O | Received Data Output. Serial receive data is available on this pin. The data is always valid on the rising edge of RXCLK when in synchronous mode. RXD will output constant marks if no carrier is detected. |
| TXCLK | 18 | 14 | O | Transmit Clock. This signal is used only in synchronous DPSK transmission to latch serial input data on the TXD pin. Data must be provided so that valid data is available on the rising edge of the TXCLK. The transmit clock is derived from different sources depending upon the synchronization mode selection. In Internal Mode the clock is 1200 Hz generated internally. In External Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the EXCLK pin. In Slave Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the RXCLK pin. TXCLK is always active. In Bell 202 mode the output is a 16 x 1200 baud clock or 16 x 150 baud to drive a UART. |
| TXD | 21 | 16 | I | Transmit Data Input. Serial data for transmission is applied on this pin. In synchronous modes, the data must be valid on the rising edge of the TXCLK clock. In asynchronous modes (1200 or 300 baud) no clocking is necessary. DPSK must be 1200 bit/s +1%, -2.5% or +2.3%, -2.5 % in extended overspeed mode. |

ANALOG INTERFACE AND OSCILLATOR

| | | | | |
|------|----|----|---|---|
| RXA | 27 | 22 | I | Received modulated analog signal input from the telephone line interface. |
| TXA | 16 | 12 | O | Transmit analog output to the telephone line interface. |
| XTL1 | 2 | 3 | I | These pins are for the internal crystal oscillator requiring a 11.0592 MHz parallel mode crystal and two load capacitors to Ground. XTL2 can also be driven from an external clock. |
| XTL2 | 3 | 4 | I | |

SSI 73K302L
Bell 212A, 103,202
Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER DESCRIPTIONS

Four 8-bit internal registers are accessible for control and status monitoring. The registers are accessed in read or write operations by addressing the A0 and A1 address lines in serial mode, or the AD0 and AD1 lines in parallel mode. The AD0 and AD1 lines are latched by ALE. Register CR0 controls the method by which data is transferred over the phone line. CR1 controls the

interface between the microprocessor and the SSI 73K302L internal state. DR is a detect register which provides an indication of monitored modem status conditions. TR, the tone control register, controls the DTMF generator, answer and guard tones and RXD output gate used in the modem initial connect sequence. All registers are read/write except for DR which is read only. Register control and status bits are identified below:

REGISTER BIT SUMMARY

| | | ADDRESS | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----|-----------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|---|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| REGISTER | | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ORIGINATE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER/ADD PH. EQ. 202 | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARKS | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROGRESS | LONG LOOP |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT SCT TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF/202T FDX | DTMF1/OVER SPEED | DTMF0/SPEC. TONE/ANSWER TONE SELECT |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | CR2 | 100 | | | | THESE REGISTER LOCATIONS ARE RESERVED FOR | | | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | | | | USE WITH OTHER K-SERIES FAMILY MEMBERS | | | | |
| ID REGISTER | ID | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

NOTE: When a register containing reserved control bits is written into, the reserved bits must be programmed as 0's.

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103, 202

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER ADDRESS TABLE

| REGISTER | ADDRESS | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-----------------------|---------|------------------------|--|---|--|---|--|--|---|
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ORIGINATE/ANSWER |
| | | 0=103 FSK 1=202 FSK | | 0000=PWR DOWN 1100=FSK 0010=EXT SYNCH 0011=SLAVE SYNCH 0100=ASYNCH 8 BITS/CHAR 0101=ASYNCH 9 BITS/CHAR 0110=ASYNCH 10 BITS/CHAR 0111=ASYNCH 11 BITS/CHAR 1100=FSK BELL 103 OR 202 | | | | 0=DISABLE 1=ENABLE TXA OUTPUT | IN 212, 103 MODES: 0=ANSWER 1=ORIGINATE TXA OUTPUT IN 202 MODE: 0=RECEIVE @ 1200 BIT/S, TRANSMIT @ 150 BIT/S 1=RECEIVE @ 150 BIT/S, TRANSMIT @ 1200 BIT/S |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER/ADD PH. EQ. | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 |
| | | | 00=TX DATA 01=TX ALTERNATE 10=TX MARK 11=TX SPACE | 0=ENABLE 1=DISABLE | 0=NORMAL 1=BYPASS SCRAMBLER 1=ADD EXTRA PHASE EQ. IN 202 ONLY | 0=XTAL 1=16 X DATA RATE OUTPUT AT CLK PIN IN DPSK MODE ONLY | 0=NORMAL 1=RESET | 00=NORMAL 01=ANALOG LOOPBACK 10=REMOTE DIGITAL LOOPBACK 11=LOCAL DIGITAL LOOPBACK | TEST MODE 0 |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARKS | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROGRESS |
| | | | | | OUTPUTS RECEIVED DATA STREAM | | 0=CONDITION NOT DETECTED 1=CONDITION DETECTED | | |
| TONE CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT SCT TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2/202T FDX | DTMF1/OVERSPEED |
| | | | RXD PIN 0=NORMAL 1=TRI STATE | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=DATA 1=TX DTMF | 4 BIT CODE FOR 1 OF 16 DUAL TONE COMBINATIONS. 0=NORMAL OPERATION 1=FULL DUPLEX IN 202 MODE | 0=1% 1=2.5% | 0=900 HZ SCT TONE IF IN ANSWER MODE ~2225 HZ ANSWER TONE IN 103 OR 212 ORIGINATE MODES 1=FSK MARK |
| ID REGISTER | 10 | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | |

00XX=73K212L, 322L, 321L
01XX=73K221L, 302L
10XX=73K222L
1100=73K224L
1110=73K324L
1101=73K312L

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103,202

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------------|----------------------|----|--------------------|--------------------|---|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | MODUL. OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D0 | Answer/ Originate | | 0 | | Selects answer mode in 103 and 212A modes (transmit in high band, receive in low band) or in Bell 202 mode, receive at 1200 bit/s and transmit at 150 bit/s. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Selects originate mode in 103 and 212A modes (transmit in low band, receive in high band) or in Bell 202 mode, receive at 150 bit/s and transmit at 1200 bit/s. | | | |
| | | | | | Note: This bit works with TR bit D0 to program special tones detected in Tone Register. See detect and tone registers. | | | |
| D1 | Transmit Enable | | 0 | | Disables transmit output at TXA. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Enables transmit output at TXA. | | | |
| | | | | | Note: Answer tone and DTMF TX control require TX enable. | | | |
| D5, D4,D3, D2 | Transmit Mode | | D5 D4 D3 D2 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 0 | | Selects power down mode. All functions disabled except digital interface. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 1 | | Internal synchronous mode. In this mode TXCLK is an internally derived 1200 Hz signal. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK. Receive data is clocked out of RXD on the falling edge of RXCLK. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 1 0 | | External synchronous mode. Operation is identical to internal synchronous, but TXCLK is connected internally to EXCLK pin, and a 1200 Hz \pm 0.01% clock must be supplied externally. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 1 1 | | Slave synchronous mode. Same operation as other synchronous modes. TXCLK is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in this mode. | | | |
| | | | 0 1 0 0 | | Selects DPSK asynchronous mode - 8 bits/character (1 start bit, 6 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 0 1 | | Selects DPSK asynchronous mode - 9 bits/character (1 start bit, 7 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 1 0 | | Selects DPSK asynchronous mode - 10 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 1 1 | | Selects DPSK asynchronous mode - 11 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, Parity and 1 or 2 stop bits). | | | |
| | | | 1 1 0 0 | | Selects 103 or 202 FSK operation. | | | |

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103, 202

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0 (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|----------------------|----|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | MODUL. OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D6 | | | 0 | | Not used; must be written as a "0." | | | |
| D7 | Modulation Option | | D7 D5 D4 | | Selects: | | | |
| | | | X 0 X | | DPSK asynchronous mode at 1200 bit/s. | | | |
| | | | 0 1 1 | | FSK Bell 103 mode. | | | |
| | | | 1 1 1 | | FSK Bell 202 mode. | | | |

CONTROL REGISTER 1

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| CR1 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTER. | BYPASS SCRAMB/ ADD PH. EQ. | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D1, D0 | Test Mode | | D1 D0 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | | Selects normal operating mode. | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | | Analog loopback mode. Loops the transmitted analog signal back to the receiver, and causes the receiver to use the same center frequency as the transmitter. To squelch the TXA pin, transmit enable must be forced low. Not supported in FDX202 mode. | | | |
| | | | 1 0 | | Selects remote digital loopback. Received data is looped back to transmit data internally, and RXD is forced to a mark. Data on TXD is ignored. | | | |
| D2 | Reset | | 1 1 | | Selects local digital loopback. Internally loops TXD back to RXD and continues to transmit carrier from TXA pin. | | | |
| | | | 0 | | Selects normal operation. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Resets modem to power down state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) are reset to zero. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. | | | |

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103,202

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 1 (Continued)

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|---|----------------------------|--|----------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| CR1 001 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTER. | BYPASS SCRAMB/ ADD PH. EQ. | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D3 | | CLK Control | 0 | Selects 11.0592 MHz crystal echo output at CLK pin. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Selects 16 X the data rate, output at CLK pin in DPSK modes only. | | | | |
| D4* | | Bypass Scrambler/ Add Phase Equalization | 0 | Selects normal operation. DPSK data is passed through scrambler. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Selects Scrambler Bypass. DPSK data is routed around scrambler in the transmit path. In Bell 202 mode, additional phase equalization is added to the main channel filters when D4 is set to 1. | | | | |
| D5 | | Enable Detect Interrupt | 0 | Disables interrupt at $\overline{\text{INT}}$ pin. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Enables $\overline{\text{INT}}$ output. An interrupt will be generated with a change in status of DR bits D1-D4. The special tone and call progress detect interrupts are masked when the TX enable bit is set. Carrier detect is masked when TX DTMF is activated. All interrupts will be disabled if the device is in power down mode. | | | | |
| D7, D6 | | Transmit Pattern | D7 D6 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | Selects normal data transmission as controlled by the state of the TXD pin. | | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | Selects an alternating mark/space transmit pattern for modem testing. | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 | Selects a constant mark transmit pattern. | | | | |
| | | | 1 1 | Selects a constant space transmit pattern. | | | | |
| * D4 should always be set to 1 when receiving 1200 bit/s data and to 0 when transmitting 1200 bit/s data in 202 mode. | | | | | | | | |

SSI 73K302L
Bell 212A, 103, 202
Single-Chip Modem

DETECT REGISTER

| DR 010 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|-------------------------|----|--------------|---|--------------|--------------|------------|-----------|
| | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK | CARR. DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROG. | LONG LOOP |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | Long Loop | | 0 | Indicates normal received signal. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates low received signal level. | | | | |
| D1 | Call Progress Detect | | 0 | No call progress tone detected. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicates presence of call progress tones. The call progress detection circuitry is activated by energy in the normal 350 to 620 Hz call progress band. | | | | |
| D2 | Special Tone Detect | | 0 | No special tone detected as programmed by CR0 bit D0 and Tone Register bit D0. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Special tone detected. The detected tone is: | | | | |
| | | | | (1) 2225 Hz answer tone if D0 of TR=0 and the device is in Bell 103 or 212A originate mode. | | | | |
| | | | | (2) Soft carrier turn-off tone if D0 of TR=0 and the device is in Bell 202 answer mode. | | | | |
| D3 | Carrier Detect | | 0 | No carrier detected in the receive channel. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Indicated carrier has been detected in the received channel. | | | | |
| | | | | Tolerance on special tones is $\pm 3\%$. | | | | |
| D4 | Unscrambled Mark Detect | | 0 | No unscrambled mark. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | (DPSK only) Indicates detection of unscrambled marks in the received data. A valid indication requires that unscrambled marks be received for $> 165.5 \pm 6.5$ ms. | | | | |
| D5 | Receive Data | | | Continuously outputs the received data stream. This data is the same as that output on the RXD pin, but it is not disabled when RXD is tri-stated. | | | | |
| D6, D7 | | | | Not used. | | | | |

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103,202

Single-Chip Modem

3 TONE REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|----------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT SOFT CARRIER TURN-OFF TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2/ 202 FDX | DTMF 1/ OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ SPECIAL TONE SEL |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D0 | DTMF 0/ Special Tone Detect/Select | D5 D4 D0 | D0 interacts with bits D6, D4, and CR0 as shown. | | | | | |
| | | 0 1 X | Transmit DTMF tones. | | | | | |
| | | 0 0 0 | 2225 Hz answer tone will be detected in D2 of DR if originate mode is selected in CR0. | | | | | |
| | | | 900 Hz SCT tone will be detected in D2 of DR if Bell 202 answer mode is selected in CR0. | | | | | |
| | | X 0 1 | Mark of an FSK mode selected in CR0 is to be detected in D2 of DR. | | | | | |
| | | 1 0 0 | 2225 Hz answer tone will be generated when in answer mode and transmit enable is selected in CR0. | | | | | |
| | | 1 0 1 | 2100 Hz answer tone will be generated when in answer mode and transmit enable is selected in CR0. | | | | | |
| D1 | DTMF 1/ Overspeed | D4 D1 | D1 interacts with D4 as shown: | | | | | |
| | | 0 0 | Asynchronous DPSK 1200 bit/s +1.0% -2.5%. | | | | | |
| | | 0 1 | Asynchronous DPSK 1200 bit/s +2.3% -2.5%. | | | | | |
| D2 | DTMF2/202T | 0 | Enables 202 half-duplex operation if D4=0 | | | | | |
| | FDX | 1 | Enables 202 full-duplex operation if D4=0 | | | | | |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 | DTMF 3, 2, 1, 0 | D3 D2 D1 D0 | Programs 1 of 16 DTMF tone pairs that will be transmitted when TX DTMF and TX enable bit (CR0, bit D1) are set. Tone encoding is shown below: | | | | | |
| | | 0 0 0 0 - | | | | | | |
| | | 1 1 1 1 | | | | | | |
| | | | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | DTMF CODE D3 D2 D1 D0 | TONES LOW HIGH | | |
| | | | | 1 | 0 0 0 1 | 697 | 1209 | |
| | | | | 2 | 0 0 1 0 | 697 | 1336 | |
| | | | | 3 | 0 0 1 1 | 697 | 1477 | |
| | | | | 4 | 0 1 0 0 | 770 | 1209 | |
| | | | | 5 | 0 1 0 1 | 770 | 1336 | |
| | | | | 6 | 0 1 1 0 | 770 | 1477 | |
| | | | | 7 | 0 1 1 1 | 852 | 1209 | |
| | | | | 8 | 1 0 0 0 | 852 | 1336 | |
| | | | | 9 | 1 0 0 1 | 852 | 1477 | |
| | | | | 0 | 1 0 1 0 | 941 | 1336 | |

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103, 202

Single-Chip Modem

TR 011 TONE REGISTER (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------------------|-------------------------------------|---|---------------------|-----------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|----------|---|---------|----------|---|---------|----------|---|---------|----------|---|---------|----------|---|---------|----------|---|---------|----------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT SOFT CARRIER TURN-OFF TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2/ 202T FDX | DTMF 1/ OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ SPECIAL TONE SEL | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 (cont.) | | | <table><tr><th>KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT</th><th>DTMF CODE</th><th>TONES</th></tr><tr><td></td><td>D3 D2 D1 D0</td><td>LOW HIGH</td></tr><tr><td>*</td><td>1 0 1 1</td><td>941 1209</td></tr><tr><td>#</td><td>1 1 0 0</td><td>941 1477</td></tr><tr><td>A</td><td>1 1 0 1</td><td>697 1633</td></tr><tr><td>B</td><td>1 1 1 0</td><td>770 1633</td></tr><tr><td>C</td><td>1 1 1 1</td><td>852 1633</td></tr><tr><td>D</td><td>0 0 0 0</td><td>941 1633</td></tr></table> | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | DTMF CODE | TONES | | D3 D2 D1 D0 | LOW HIGH | * | 1 0 1 1 | 941 1209 | # | 1 1 0 0 | 941 1477 | A | 1 1 0 1 | 697 1633 | B | 1 1 1 0 | 770 1633 | C | 1 1 1 1 | 852 1633 | D | 0 0 0 0 | 941 1633 |
| KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | DTMF CODE | TONES | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | D3 D2 D1 D0 | LOW HIGH | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| * | 1 0 1 1 | 941 1209 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| # | 1 1 0 0 | 941 1477 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A | 1 1 0 1 | 697 1633 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| B | 1 1 1 0 | 770 1633 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C | 1 1 1 1 | 852 1633 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| D | 0 0 0 0 | 941 1633 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| D4 | Transmit DTMF | 0 | Disable DTMF. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Activate DTMF. The selected DTMF tones are transmitted continuously when this bit is high. TX DTMF overrides all other transmit functions. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| D5 | Transmit Answer Tone | 0 | Disables answer tone generator. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Enables answer tone generator. A 2225 Hz answer tone will be transmitted continuously when the transmit enable bit is set. To transmit answer tone, the device must be in answer mode. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| D6 | Transmit SCT Tone | 0 | Disables SCT tone generator. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Transmit SCT tone in Bell 202 mode. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| D7 | RXD Output Control | 0 | Enables RXD pin. Receive data will be output on RXD. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Disables RXD pin. The RXD pin reverts to a high impedance with internal weak pull-up resistor. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Notes for Tone Register use: | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1. To detect SCT tone, 202 answer mode must be selected. To transmit SCT tone, 202 originate mode must be selected. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2. For answer tone detection, 103 or 212 originate mode must be active. To transmit answer tone, the 73K302 must be in 103 or 212 answer mode. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3. After completion of DTMF dialing, bit D2 should be reset unless 202 full-duplex mode is selected. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103,202

Single-Chip Modem

ID REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|---------------------------------|----|-----------|----|-------------|----|--|----|
| ID | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |
| 110 | | | | | | | | |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D7, D6 | Device Identification Signature | | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | Indicates Device: | |
| | | | 0 | 0 | X | X | SSI 73K212L, 73K321L or 73K322L or 73K321L | |
| | | | 0 | 1 | X | X | SSI 73K221L or 73K302L | |
| | | | 1 | 0 | X | X | SSI 73K222L | |
| | | | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | SSI 73K224L | |
| | | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | SSI 73K324L | |
| | | | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | SSI 73K312L | |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|------------------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 14V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260°C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD+0.3V |
| Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected. | |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| VDD Supply voltage | | 4.5 | 5 | 5.5 | V |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temp. | | -40 | | +85 | °C |
| Clock Variation | (11.0592 MHz) Crystal or external clock | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| External Components (Refer to Application section for placement.) | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass Capacitor | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| Bias setting resistor | (Placed between VDD and ISET pins) | 1.8 | 2 | 2.2 | MΩ |
| ISET Bypass Capacitor | (ISET pin to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 1 | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 2 | (External to GND) | 22 | | | μF |
| XTL1 Load Capacitor | Depends on crystal characteristics; | | | 40 | pF |
| XTL2 Load Capacitor | from pin to GND | | | 20 | |

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103, 202

Single-Chip Modem

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|------|-----|-----|---------|
| IDD, Supply Current | ISET Resistor = 2 M Ω | | | | |
| IDDA, Active | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | 8 | 12 | mA |
| IDD1, Power-down | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | | 4 | mA |
| IDD2, Power-down | CLK = 19.200 kHz | | | 3 | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | | |
| Reset, XTL1, XTL2 | | 3.0 | | VDD | V |
| All other inputs | | 2.0 | | VDD | V |
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | 0 | | 0.8 | V |
| IIH, Input High Current | VI = VIH Max | | | 100 | μ A |
| IIL, Input Low Current | VI = VIL Min | -200 | | | μ A |
| Reset Pull-down Current | Reset = VDD | 1 | | 50 | μ A |
| Input Capacitance | All Digital Input Pins | | | 10 | pF |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | |
| VOH, Output High Voltage | IOH MIN = -0.4 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| VOL, Output Low Voltage | IO MAX = 1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| VOL, CLK Output | IO = 3.6 mA | | | 0.6 | V |
| RXD Tri-State Pull-up Curr. | RXD = GND | -1 | | -50 | μ A |
| CMAX, CLK Output | Maximum Capacitive Load | | | 15 | pF |
| Capacitance | | | | | |
| Inputs | Capacitance, all Digital Input pins | | | 10 | pF |
| XTL1, 2 Load Capacitors | Depends on crystal | 15 | | 60 | pF |
| CLK | Maximum Capacitive Load | | | 15 | pF |

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103,202

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING

(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = Recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DPSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Carrier Suppression | Measured at TXA | 45 | | | dB |
| Output Amplitude | TX scrambled marks | -11 | -10 | -9 | dBm0 |
| FSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Output Freq. Error | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | -0.35 | | +0.35 | % |
| Transmit Level | Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11 | -10 | -9 | dBm0 |
| Soft Carrier Turnoff Tone | | -11.9 | -10.9 | -9.9 | dBm0 |
| Harmonic Distortion in 700-2900 Hz band | THD in the alternate band DPSK or FSK | | -60 | -50 | dB |
| Output Bias Distortion | Transmit Dotting Pattern In ALB @ RXD | | ±3 | | % |
| Total Output Jitter | Random Input in ALB @ RXD | -10 | | +10 | % |
| DTMF Generator | | | | | |
| Must not be in 202 mode | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | | -0.25 | | +0.25 | % |
| Output Amplitude, Low group | DPSK mode | -10 | -9 | -8 | dBm0 |
| Output Amplitude, High group | DPSK mode | -8 | -7 | -6 | dBm0 |
| Twist | High-Band to Low-Band | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | dB |
| Long Loop Detect | With Sinusoid | -38 | | -28 | dBm0 |
| Dynamic Range | Refer to Performance Curves | | 45 | | dB |
| Note: Parameters expressed in dBm0 refer to the following definition: | | | | | |
| 5V Version: | | | | | |
| 0 dB loss in the Transmit path to the line. | | | | | |
| 2 dB gain in the Receive path from the line. | | | | | |
| Refer to the Basic Box Modem diagram in the Applications section for the DAA design. | | | | | |

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103, 202

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| Call Progress Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level | -3 dB points in 285 and 675 Hz | -38 | | | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | Test signal is a 460 Hz sinusoid | | | -45 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | 20 | | 40 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | 20 | | 40 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Carrier Detect | | | | | |
| Threshold | DPSK or FSK receive data | -49 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | | | | | |
| Bell 103 | | 8 | | 20 | ms |
| Bell 212A | | 15 | | 32 | ms |
| Bell 202 Forward Channel | | 6 | | 12 | ms |
| Bell 202 Back Channel | | 25 | | 40 | ms |
| Hold Time | | | | | |
| Bell 103 | | 6 | | 20 | ms |
| Bell 212A | | 10 | | 24 | ms |
| Bell 202 Forward Channel | | 3 | | 8 | ms |
| Bell 202 Back Channel | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Special Tone Detectors | | | | | |
| Detect Level | See definitions for TR bit D0 mode | -49 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | | | | | |
| Answer tone | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 900 Hz SCT tone | Preceded by valid carrier* | 4 | | 10 | ms |
| 202 Main Channel Mark | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 202 Back Channel Mark | | 20 | | 65 | ms |
| 1270 or 2225 Hz marks | | 10 | | 25 | ms |

* If SCT duration >4ms, it is guaranteed to detect.

SSI 73K302L
Bell 212A, 103,202
Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|------|-----|------|------------|
| Special Tone Detectors (Continued) | | | | | |
| Hold Time | | | | | |
| Answer tone | | 4 | | 15 | ms |
| 900 Hz SCT tone | | 1 | | 10 | ms |
| 202 Main Channel Mark | | 3 | | 10 | ms |
| 202 Back Channel Mark | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 1270 or 2225 Hz marks | | 5 | | 15 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Detect Freq. Range | Any Special Tone | -3 | | +3 | % |
| Output Smoothing Filter | | | | | |
| Output load | TXA pin; FSK Single Tone out for THD = -50 dB in 0.3 to 3.4 kHz | 10 | | | k Ω |
| | | | | 50 | pF |
| Out of Band Energy | Frequency >12 kHz in all modes See Transmit Energy Spectrum | | | -60 | dBm0 |
| Output Impedance | TXA pin | | 20 | 50 | Ω |
| Clock Noise | TXA pin; 76.8 kHz or 122.88 kHz in 202 main channel | | 0.1 | 0.4 | mVrms |
| Carrier VCO | | | | | |
| Capture Range | Originate or Answer | -10 | | +10 | Hz |
| Capture Time | -10 Hz to +10 Hz Carrier Frequency Change | | 40 | 100 | ms |
| DPSK Recovered Clock | | | | | |
| Capture Range | % of data rate (center at 1200 Hz) | -625 | | +625 | ppm |
| Data Delay Time | Analog data in at RXA pin to receive data valid at RXD pin | | 30 | 50 | ms |
| Tone Generator | | | | | |
| Tone Accuracy | DTMF or FSK tones | -5 | | +5 | Hz |
| Tone Level | For DTMF, must not be in 202 mode | -1 | | +1 | dB |

SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103, 202

Single-Chip Modem

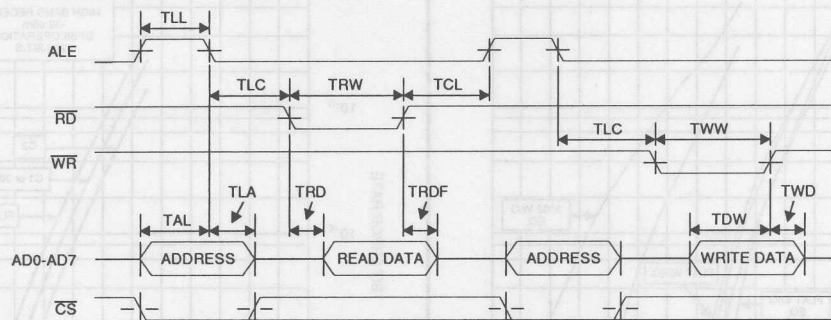
DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|-----|-----|-------|-------|
| Timing (Refer to Timing Diagrams) | | | | | |
| TAL | \overline{CS} /Addr. setup before ALE Low | 25 | | | ns |
| TLA | \overline{CS} /Addr. hold after ALE Low | 20 | | | ns |
| TLC | ALE Low to $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Low | 30 | | | ns |
| TCL | $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Control to ALE High | -5 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} Low | 0 | | 140 | ns |
| TLL | ALE width | 30 | | | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after \overline{RD} High | 0 | | 5 | ns |
| TRW | \overline{RD} width | 200 | | 25000 | ns |
| TWW | \overline{WR} width | 140 | | 25000 | ns |
| TDW | Data setup before \overline{WR} High | 40 | | | ns |
| TWD | Data hold after \overline{WR} High | 10 | | | ns |
| TCKD | Data out after EXCLK Low | | | 200 | ns |
| TCKW | \overline{WR} after EXCLK Low | 150 | | | ns |
| TDCK | Data setup before EXCLK Low | 150 | | | ns |
| TAC | Address setup before control* | 50 | | | ns |
| TCA | Address hold after control* | 50 | | | ns |
| TWH | Data Hold after EXCLK | 20 | | | ns |
| * Control for setup is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} . Control for hold is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or the rising edge of \overline{WR} . | | | | | |

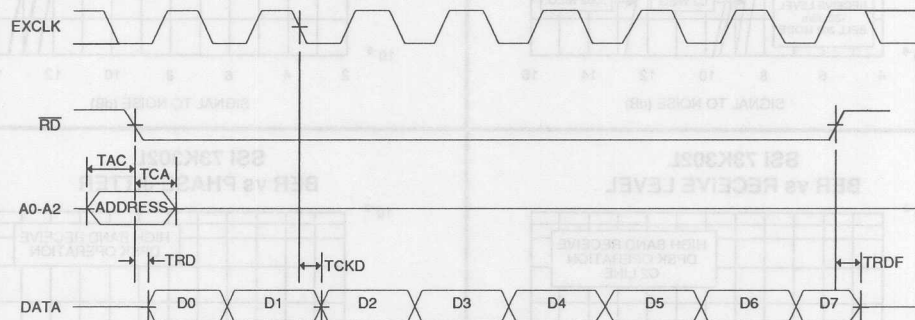
SSI 73K302L
Bell 212A, 103,202
Single-Chip Modem

TIMING DIAGRAMS

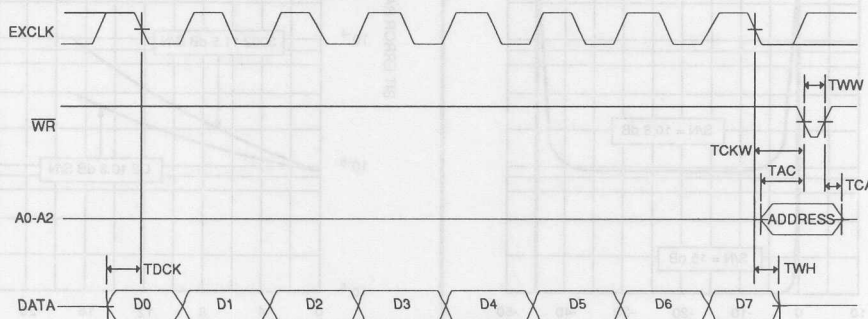
BUS TIMING DIAGRAM (PARALLEL VERSION)



READ TIMING DIAGRAM (SERIAL VERSION)



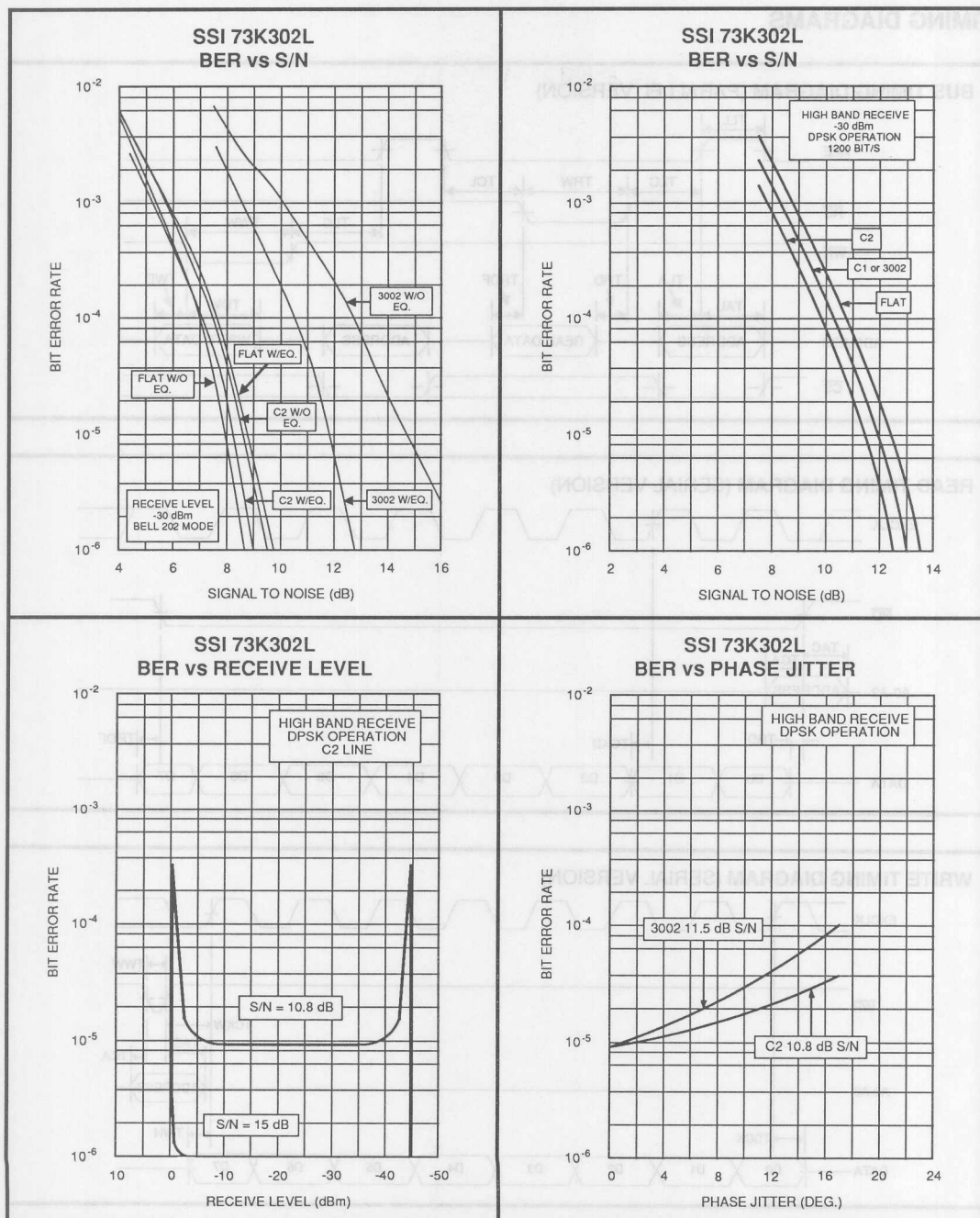
WRITE TIMING DIAGRAM (SERIAL VERSION)



SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103, 202

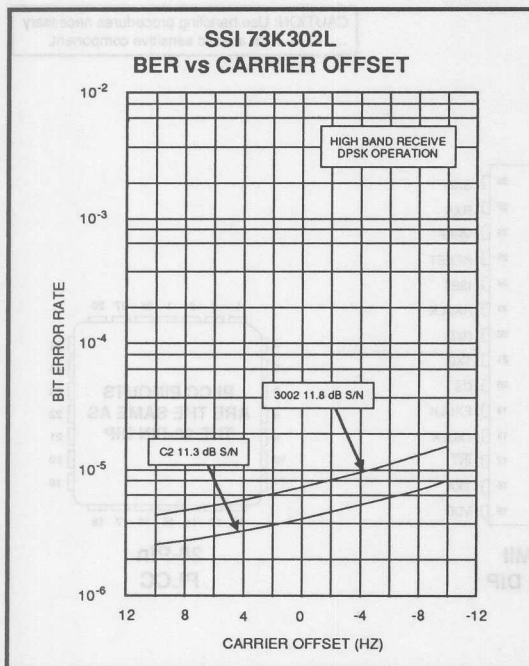
Single-Chip Modem



SSI 73K302L

Bell 212A, 103,202

Single-Chip Modem



3

SSI 73K302L

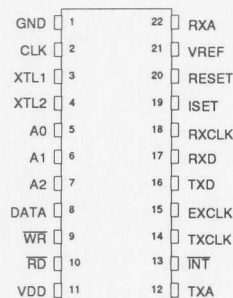
Bell 212A, 103, 202

Single-Chip Modem

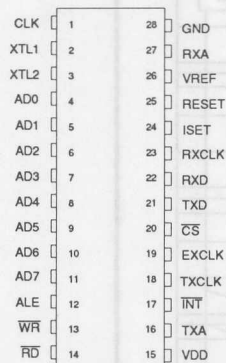
PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

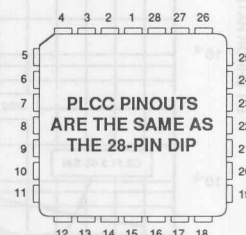
CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



400-Mil
22-Pin DIP



600-Mil
28-Pin DIP



28-Pin
PLCC

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|---|-------------|-------------|
| SSI 73K302L with Parallel Bus Interface | | |
| 28-Pin Dip | 73K302L-IP | 73K302L-IP |
| 28-Lead PLCC | 73K302L-IH | 73K302L-IH |
| SSI 73K302L with Serial Interface | | |
| 22-pin Dip | 73K302SL-IP | 73K302SL-IP |

Preliminary Data: Indicates a product not completely released to production. The specifications are based on preliminary evaluations and are not guaranteed. Small quantities are available, and Silicon Systems should be consulted for current information.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

Protected by the following Patents (4,691,172) (4,777,453)

January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73K312L is a highly integrated single-chip modem IC which provides the functions needed to construct a CCITT V.23, V.21, Bell 202, 103 FSK modem. The 73K312L supports asynchronous 1200 bit/s (600 bit/s at V.23 half speed mode) with or without 75/150 bit/s back channel (75 for V.23 and 150 for Bell 202) and 300 bit/s FSK (V.21 or Bell 103). The SSI 73K312L can also both detect and generate the CCITT and Bell answer tones needed for call initiation. The SSI 73K312L integrates analog, digital, and switched-capacitor array functions on a single substrate, offering excellent performance and a high level of functional integration in a single 28- or 22-pin DIP or 28 pin PLCC configuration. The SSI 73K312L operates from a single +5 V supply with very low power consumption.

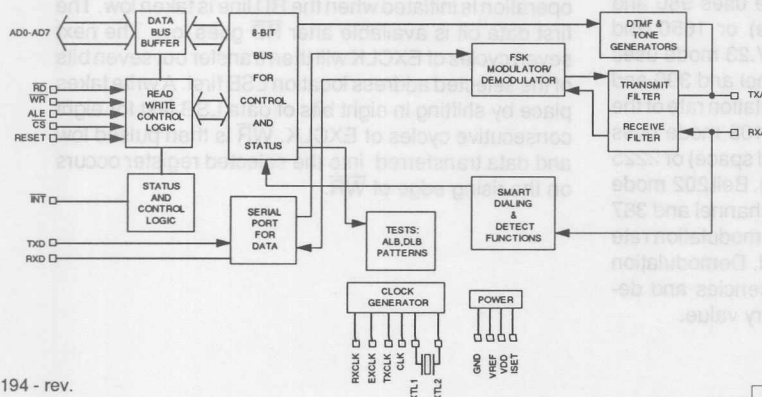
The SSI 73K312L includes the FSK modulator/demodulator functions, call progress and handshake tone monitor test modes, and a tone generator capable of producing DTMF, answer, calling and 900 Hz soft carrier turn-off tones. The SSI 73K312L is designed to appear to the systems designer as a microprocessor peripheral, and will easily interface with popular one-chip microprocessors (80C51 typical) for control of modem functions through its 8-bit multiplexed address/data bus or via an optional serial command bus. An ALE control line simplifies address demultiplexing. Data communications occur through a separate serial port only.

FEATURES

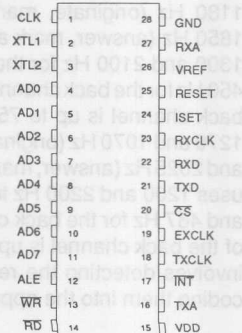
- Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21 single-chip modem
- Full-duplex operation at 0-300 bit/s (V.21 and Bell 103)
- V.23 modes 1, 2, (i.e., 0-600 bit/s and 0-1200 bit/s) forward channel with or without 0-75 bit/s back channel
- Bell 202 0-1200 bit/s forward channel with or without 0-150 bit/s back channel
- Full Duplex 4-wire mode operation in V.23 and Bell 202 modes
- Pin and software compatible with other SSI K-Series 1-chip modems
- Interfaces directly with standard microprocessors (8048, 80C51 typical)
- Serial or parallel microprocessor bus for control
- Serial port for data transfer
- Call progress, carrier, precise answer tone (2100 or 2225 Hz), and precise mark detectors
- Precise calling tone and soft carrier turnoff generators/detectors (1300 Hz, 900 Hz)
- DTMF generator
- Test modes available: ALB, DL, Mark, Space, Alternating bit patterns
- Adjustable transmit level
- Precise automatic gain control allows 45 dB dynamic range
- CMOS technology for low power consumption using 30 mW @ 5V from a single power supply

3

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



0194 - rev.

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

OPERATION

The SSI 73K312L is ideal for either free standing or integral system modem applications where multi-standard data communications is desired. Typical uses include videotex terminals, low-cost integral modems and built-in diagnostics for office automation or industrial control systems. The 73K312L's high functionality, low power consumption and efficient packaging simplify design requirements and increase system reliability in these applications. A complete modem requires only the addition of the phone line interface, a control microprocessor, and RS-232 level converter for a typical system.

Quad-mode capability in one-chip allows full-duplex V.21 and Bell 103 operation or asymmetrical V.23 and Bell 202 operation over the 2-wire switched telephone network. V.23 and 202 mode full-duplex operation at 1200 bit/s is also possible when operating on 4-wire leased lines.

A soft carrier turn-off feature facilitates fast line turn around when using the 202 or V.23 modes for half-duplex applications.

The SSI 73K312L is part of Silicon Systems K-Series family of pin and function compatible single-chip modem products. These devices allow systems to be configured for higher speeds and Bell or CCITT operation with only a single component change.

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator produces a frequency modulated analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. V.21 mode uses 980 and 1180 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 1650 and 1850 Hz (answer, mark and space). V.23 mode uses 1300 and 2100 Hz for the main channel and 390 and 450 Hz for the back channel. The modulation rate of the back channel is up to 75 baud. Bell 103 mode uses 1270 and 1070 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 2225 and 2025 Hz (answer, mark and space). Bell 202 mode uses 1200 and 2200 Hz for the main channel and 387 and 487 Hz for the back channel. The modulation rate of the back channel is up to 150 baud. Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

A high and low band filter is included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit and receive signals and provide compromise delay equalization and rejection of out-of-band signals in the receive channel. Amplitude and phase equalization are necessary to compensate for distortion of the transmission line.

AGC

The automatic gain control maintains a signal level at the input to the demodulators which is constant to within 1 dB. It corrects quickly for increases in signal which would cause clipping and provides a total dynamic range of >45 dB.

PARALLEL BUS INTERFACE

Six 8-bit registers are provided for control, option select and status monitoring. These registers are addressed with the AD0, AD1, and AD2 multiplexed address lines (latched by ALE) and appear to a control microprocessor as memory locations. Three control registers and the tone register are read/write memory. The status detect register is read only and cannot be modified except by modem response to monitored parameters. The parallel bus interface is not available with the 22-pin package.

SERIAL COMMAND INTERFACE MODE

The serial command mode allows access to the SSI 73K312L control and status registers via a serial command port. In this mode the A0, A1 and A2 lines provide register addresses for data passed through the data pin under control of the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} lines. A read operation is initiated when the \overline{RD} line is taken low. The first data bit is available after \overline{RD} goes low. The next seven cycles of EXCLK will then transfer out seven bits of the selected address location LSB first. A write takes place by shifting in eight bits of data LSB first for eight consecutive cycles of EXCLK. \overline{WR} is then pulsed low and data transferred into the selected register occurs on the rising edge of \overline{WR} .

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

SPECIAL DETECT CIRCUITRY

The special detect circuitry monitors the received analog signal to determine status or presence of carrier, answer tone and weak received signal (long loop condition), special tones such as FSK marking tones, calling tones and the 900 Hz soft carrier turn-off tone are also detected. A highly frequency selective call progress detector provides adequate discrimination to accurately detect European call progress signals.

DTMF GENERATOR

The DTMF generator will output one of 16 standard

dual-tones determined by a 4-bit binary value and TX DTMF mode bit previously loaded into the tone register. Tone generation is initiated when the DTMF mode is selected and the transmit enable (CR0 bit D1) is changed from 0 to 1.

SOFT CARRIER TURN-OFF TONE GENERATOR

The soft carrier turn-off tone generator will output a 900 Hz tone. When activated in Bell 202 main channel transmit mode, the output signal will shift to 900 Hz, maintaining phase continuity during the transition.

PIN DESCRIPTION

POWER

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|------|--|
| GND | I | System Ground. |
| VDD | I | Power supply input, $5V \pm 10\%$. Bypass with 0.1 and $22\mu F$ capacitors to ground. |
| VREF | O | An internally generated reference voltage. Bypass with $0.1\mu F$ capacitor to ground. |
| ISSET | I | Chip current reference. Sets bias current for op-amps. The chip current is set by connecting this pin to VDD through a $2M\Omega$ resistor. ISSET should be bypassed to GND with a $0.1\mu F$ capacitor. |

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | |
|-----------------|-----|--|
| ALE | I | Address latch enable. The falling edge of ALE latches the address on AD0-AD2 and the chip select on \overline{CS} . |
| AD0-AD7 | I/O | Address/data bus. These bidirectional tri-state multi-plexed lines carry information to and from the internal registers. |
| \overline{CS} | I | Chip select. A low on this pin allows a read cycle or a write cycle to occur. AD0-AD7 will not be driven and no registers will be written if \overline{CS} (latched) is not active. The state of \overline{CS} is latched on the falling edge of ALE. |
| CLK | O | Output clock. This pin is selectable under processor control to be either the crystal frequency (for use as a processor clock) or clock depending on the mode: 19.2 kHz (Bell103), 15.36 kHz (V.21, V.23, Bell 202). The pin defaults to the crystal frequency on reset. |

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION (Continued)

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE (Continued)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|------|---|
| $\overline{\text{INT}}$ | O | Interrupt. This open drain output signal is used to inform the processor that a detect flag has occurred. The processor must then read the detect register to determine which detect triggered the interrupt. $\overline{\text{INT}}$ will stay low until the processor reads the detect register or does a full reset. |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | I | Read. A low requests a read of the SSI 73K312L internal registers. Data cannot be output unless both $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and the latched $\overline{\text{CS}}$ are active (low). |
| RESET | I | Reset. An active high signal on this pin will put the chip into an inactive state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, CR3) will be reset except for the D2 bit of CR3 which will be set to one to allow nominal transmit power. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. An internal pull down resistor permits power on reset using a 1 μF capacitor to VDD. |
| $\overline{\text{WR}}$ | I | Write. A low on this informs the SSI 73K312L that data is available on AD0-AD7 for writing into an internal register. Data is latched on the rising edge of $\overline{\text{WR}}$. No data is written unless both $\overline{\text{WR}}$ and the latched $\overline{\text{CS}}$ are active (low). |

SERIAL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE MODE (See Serial Interface Timing Diagram)

| | | |
|------------------------|-----|---|
| AD0-AD2 | I | Register Address Selection. These lines carry register addresses and should be valid during any read or write operation. |
| AD7 | I/O | Serial Control Data. Data for a read/write operation is clocked in or out on the falling edge of the EXCLK pin. The direction of data flow is controlled by the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ pin. $\overline{\text{RD}}$ low outputs data. $\overline{\text{RD}}$ high inputs data. |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | I | Read. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K312L that data or status information is being read by the processor. The falling edge of the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signal will initiate a read from the addressed register. The $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signal must continue for seven falling edges of EXCLK in order to read all eight bits of the referenced register. Read data is provided LSB first. Data will not be output unless the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signal is active. |
| $\overline{\text{WR}}$ | I | Write. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K312L that data or status information has been shifted in through the DATA pin and is available for writing to an internal register. The normal procedure for a write is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive falling edges of EXCLK and then to pulse $\overline{\text{WR}}$ low. Data is written on the rising edge of $\overline{\text{WR}}$. |
| EXCLK | I | External Clock. Used for serial control interface to clock control data in or out of the 73K312L. |

Note: The Serial Control mode is provided by floating ALE and $\overline{\text{CS}}$ or EXCLK tying ALE high and $\overline{\text{CS}}$ low. This is identical to the serial interface or other K series devices. But the 22-Pin package is not available with the 73K312L.

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

RS-232 INTERFACE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|------|--|
| RXCLK | O | Receive Clock. In V.23 2-wire mode RXCLK equals 16 x 1200 if answering and 16 x 75 if originating. In Bell 202 2-wire mode RXCLK equals 16 x 1200 if answering and 16 x 150 if originating. In V.21 or Bell 103 mode it equals 16 x 300. |
| RXD | O | Received Digital Data Output. Serial receive data is available on this pin. RXD will output constant marks if no carrier is detected. |
| TXCLK | O | Transmit Clock. If 1200 bit/s mode is selected, TXCLK equals 16 x 1200 if originating and 16 x 75 (V.23) or 16 x 150 (Bell 202) if answering. In V.21 or Bell 103 mode it equals 16 x 300. |
| TXD | I | Transmit Digital Data Input. Serial data for transmission is input on this pin. |

ANALOG INTERFACE AND OSCILLATOR

| | | |
|------|---|---|
| RXA | I | Received modulated analog signal input from the phone line. |
| TXA | O | Transmit analog output to the phone line. |
| XTL1 | I | These pins are for the internal crystal oscillator requiring a 11.0592 MHz parallel mode crystal and two load capacitors to Ground. XTL1 can also be driven from an external clock. |
| XTL2 | I | |

3

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER DESCRIPTIONS

Four 8-bit internal registers are accessible for control and status monitoring. The registers are accessed in read or write operations by addressing the A0, A1 and A2 address lines in serial mode, or the AD0, AD1 and AD2 lines in parallel mode. The AD0, AD1 and AD2 lines are latched by ALE. Register CR0 controls the method by which data is transferred over the phone line. CR1 controls the interface between the micropro-

cessor and the SSI 73K312L internal state. CR3 controls the attenuation of the transmitted signal and enables receive gain boost. DR is a detect register which provides an indication of monitored modem status conditions. TR, the tone control register, controls the DTMF generator, answer and RX output gate used in the modem initial connect sequence. All registers are read/write except for DR which is read only. Register control and status bits are identified below:

REGISTER BIT SUMMARY

| | | ADDRESS | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----|-----------|--------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---|-------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| REGISTER | | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | SPEED SELECT | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER ORIGINATE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | ADD PH. EQ. | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROGRESS | LONG LOOP |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT SPECIAL TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2/ V.23 FDX 202 FDX | DTMF1 | DTMF0/ TONE SELECT |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | CR2 | 100 | | | | THIS REGISTER LOCATION IS RESERVED FOR USE WITH OTHER K-SERIES FAMILY MEMBERS | | | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | | | | RECEIVE ENABLE BOOST | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 3 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 2 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 1 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 0 |
| ID REGISTER | ID | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

NOTE: When a register containing reserved control bits is written into, the reserved bits must be programmed as 0's.

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER ADDRESS TABLE

| ADDRESS | | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------|-----|--|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| REGISTER | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | SPEED SELECT | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ORIGINATE/ ANSWER |
| | | | 0=V.23 or BELL 103 1=V.21 or BELL 202 | | 0000=PWR DOWN 1000=BELL 103 or 202 1100=CCITT V.23 or V.21 1110=CCITT V.23 MC HALF SPEED | | | 0=SQUELCH ANALOG 1=ENABLE ANALOG | | V.21 AND BELL 103: 0=ANSWER 1=ORIGINATE V.23 AND BELL 202: 0=RECEIVE @ 1200/600 BIT/S TRANSMIT @ 75/150 BIT/S 1=RECEIVE @ 75/150 BIT/S TRANSMIT @ 1200/600 BIT/S |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | ADD PH. EQ. | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| | | | 00=TX DATA 01=TX ALTERNATE 10=TX MARK 11=TX SPACE | | IN V.23 or BELL 202 MODE 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=NORMAL EQ. 1=ADD EXTRA PHASE EQ. IN SERIES WITH MAIN CHANNEL | 0=XTAL 1=19.2 kHz or 15.36 kHz | 0=NORMAL 1=RESET | 00=NORMAL 01=ANALOG LOOPBACK 11=LOCAL DIGITAL LOOPBACK | |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROGRESS | LONG LOOP |
| | | | | | OUTPUTS RECEIVED DATA STREAM | | 0=CONDITION NOT DETECTED 1=CONDITION DETECTED | | | |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT SPECIAL TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2/ V.23 FDX 202 FDX | DTMF1 | DTMF0/ TONE SELECT |
| | | | RXD PIN 0=NORMAL 1=TRI STATE | 0=OFF 1=TRANSMITS CALLING TONE IF ORIGINATING IN CCITT MODE. TRANSMITS SCT TONE IF ORIGINATING IN BELL MODE. | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=DATA 1=TX DTMF | 4 BIT CODE FOR 1 OF 16 DUAL TONE COMBINATIONS. IF TRANSMIT DTMF BIT IS SET DTMF = 1 | | 0=NORMAL 1=ALLOWS V.23 or BELL 202 FULL DUPLEX OPERATION | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | | | | RECEIVE ENABLE BOOST | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 3 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 2 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 1 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 0 |
| | | | | | | 0=NO BOOST 1=12 dB BOOST | 0000-1111 SETS TRANSMIT ATTENUATOR 16 dB RANGE DEFAULT=0100=-10dBm | | | |
| ID REGISTER | 10 | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

00XX=73K212L, 322L, 321L
01XX=73K221L, 302L
10XX=73K222L
1100=73K224L
1110=73K324L
1101=73K312L

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0

| CR0 000 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------------|--------------------|--|--------------------|---|--------------------|----------------------|
| | SPEED SELECT | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | |
| D0 | | Answer/ Originate | | 0 | | Selects answer mode in V.21 or Bell 103 (transmit in high band, receive in low band), or in V.23/Bell 202 modes, receive at 1200/600 bit/s and transmit at 75/150 bit/s. | | |
| | | | | 1 | | Selects originate mode in V.21 or Bell 103 (transmit in low band, receive in high band), or in V.23/Bell 202 modes, receive at 75/150 bit/s and transmit at 1200/600 bit/s. If in V.23/ Bell 202 and D2 of TR=1, selects full duplex operation in 4-wire configuration in main channel. | | |
| | | | | Note: This bit works with TR bit D0 to program special tones detected in Tone Register. See detect and tone registers. | | | | |
| D1 | | Transmit Enable | | 0 | | Disables transmit output at TXA. | | |
| | | | | 1 | | Enables transmit output at TXA. | | |
| | | | | Note: Answer tone and DTMF transmit control require transmit enable. | | | | |
| D5, D4,D3, D2 | | Transmit Mode | | D5 D4 D3 D2 | | Selects power down mode. All functions disabled except digital interface. | | |
| | | | | 0 0 0 0 | | | | |
| | | | | 1 0 0 0 | | | | |
| | | | | 1 1 0 0 | | | | |
| | | | | 1 1 1 0 | | | | |
| D6 | | Unused | | 0 | | Not used; must be written as a "0." | | |
| D7 | | Modulation Option | | 0 | | CCITT V.23 or Bell 103. | | |
| | | | | 1 | | CCITT V.21 or Bell 202. | | |

SSI 73K312L
Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21
Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 1

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-----------------------------|-----------|--|
| D1, D0 | Test Mode | D1 D0 | |
| | | 0 0 | Selects normal operating mode. |
| | | 0 1 | Analog loopback mode. Loops the transmitted analog signal back to the receiver, and causes the receiver to use the same center frequency as the transmitter. To squelch the TXA pin, transmit enable must be forced low. |
| | | 1 1 | Selects local digital loopback. Internally loops TXD back to RXD and continues to transmit data from TXA pin. |
| D2 | Reset | 0 | Selects normal operation. |
| | | 1 | Resets modem to power down state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, CR3 except for D2 bit, Tone) are reset to zero. CR3 bit D2 is set to one. The output of the clock pin will be set to the crystal frequency. |
| D3 | CLK Control (Clock Control) | 0 | Selects 11.0592 MHz crystal echo output at CLK pin. |
| | | 1 | Selects 19.2 kHz (Bell 103) or 15.36 kHz (V.21, V.23, Bell 202). |
| D4 | Add Ph. Eq. | 0 | Selects normal equalization. |
| | | 1 | In V.23 or Bell 202 mode, additional phase equalization is added in series with the main channel filters. |
| D5 | Enable Detect Interrupt | 0 | Disables interrupt at $\overline{\text{INT}}$ pin. All interrupts are normally disabled in power down modes. |
| | | 1 | Enables $\overline{\text{INT}}$ output. An interrupt will be generated with a change in status of DR bits D1-D3. The special tone and call progress detect interrupts are masked when the TX enable bit is set. Carrier detect is masked when TX DTMF is activated. All interrupts will be disabled if the device is in power down mode. |
| D7, D6 | Transmit Pattern | D7 D6 | |
| | | 0 0 | Selects normal data transmission as controlled by the state of the TXD pin. |
| | | 0 1 | Selects an alternating mark/space transmit pattern for modem testing. |
| | | 1 0 | Selects a constant mark transmit pattern. |
| | | 1 1 | Selects a constant space transmit pattern. |

DETECT REGISTER

| D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|----------------------|--------------|---|--------------|--------------|------------|--------------|
| DR 010 | | RECEIVE DATA | | CARR. DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROG. | LONG LOOP |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | Long Loop | 0 | Indicates normal received signal. | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicates low received signal level. | | | | |
| D1 | Call Progress Detect | 0 | No call progress tone detected. | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicates presence of call progress tones. The call progress detection circuitry is activated by energy in the normal 350 to 620 Hz call progress band. | | | | |
| D2 | Special Tone Detect | 0 | No special tone detected as programmed by CR0 bit D0 and Tone Register bit D0. | | | | |
| | | 1 | The tone is selected by bits in CR0 and TR. | | | | |
| | | | Frequency (Hz) | D0 of TR | D4 of CR0 | D0 of CR0 | Mode |
| | | | 980 | 0 | 1 | 0 | V.21 |
| | | | 1650 | 0 | 1 | 1 | V.21 |
| | | | 390 | 0 | 1 | 1 | V.23 |
| | | | 1300 | 0 | 1 | 0 | V.23 |
| | | | 1300 | 1 | 1 | 0 | V.21 or V.23 |
| | | | 2100 | 1 | 1 | 1 | V.21 |
| | | | 1270 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 103 |
| | | | 2225 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 103 |
| | | | 387 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 202 |
| | | | 1200 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 202 |
| | | | 900 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 202 |
| | | | 2225 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 103 |
| D3 | Carrier Detect | 0 | No carrier detected in the receive channel. | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicated carrier has been detected in the received channel. | | | | |
| D4 | - | - | Not used. | | | | |
| D5 | Receive Data | - | Continuously outputs the received data stream. This data is the same as that output on the RXD pin, but it is not disabled when RXD is tri-stated. | | | | |
| D6, D7 | - | - | Not used. | | | | |

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

tone register

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|--|--------------------------|--------|---------------------|------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT CALLING TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2/ V.23 FDX 202 FDX | DTMF 1 | DTMF 0/ TONE SELECT | |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | | Tone Select | | | In CCITT mode, the Tone detected in D2 bit of TR is Mark of FSK selected if this bit is 0. 2100 Hz if this bit is 1 and originating, 1300 Hz if this bit is 1 and answering. In Bell mode, the Tone detected in D2 bit of TR is 2225 Hz if this bit is 0 and originating 900 Hz (SCT) if this bit is 0 and answering Mark of FSK selected if this bit is 1. | | | | |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 | | DTMF 3, 2, 1, 0 | D3 D2 D1 D0 0 0 0 0 - 1 1 1 1 | | Programs 1 of 16 DTMF tone pairs that will be transmitted when TX DTMF and TX enable bit (CR0, bit D1) is set. Tone encoding is shown below: | | | | |
| | | | | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | DTMF CODE D3 D2 D1 D0 | | TONES LOW HIGH | |
| | | | | | 1 | 0 0 0 1 | | 697 | 1209 |
| | | | | | 2 | 0 0 1 0 | | 697 | 1336 |
| | | | | | 3 | 0 0 1 1 | | 697 | 1477 |
| | | | | | 4 | 0 1 0 0 | | 770 | 1209 |
| | | | | | 5 | 0 1 0 1 | | 770 | 1336 |
| | | | | | 6 | 0 1 1 0 | | 770 | 1477 |
| | | | | | 7 | 0 1 1 1 | | 852 | 1209 |
| | | | | | 8 | 1 0 0 0 | | 852 | 1336 |
| | | | | | 9 | 1 0 0 1 | | 852 | 1477 |
| | | | | | 0 | 1 0 1 0 | | 941 | 1336 |
| | | | | | * | 1 0 1 1 | | 941 | 1209 |
| | | | | | # | 1 1 0 0 | | 941 | 1477 |
| | | | | | A | 1 1 0 1 | | 697 | 1633 |
| | | | | | B | 1 1 1 0 | | 770 | 1633 |
| | | | | | C | 1 1 1 1 | | 852 | 1633 |
| | | | | | D | 0 0 0 0 | | 941 | 1633 |

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

tone REGISTER (Continued)

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|---|-----------|--|
| D2 | V.23/ Bell 202 FDX | 0 | Normal Operation |
| | | 1 | Enables V.23 or Bell 202 full-duplex operation if D4=0. A 4-wire configuration is required in this mode. |
| D4 | TX DTMF Transmit DTMF | 0 | Disabled DTMF. |
| | | 1 | Activates DTMF. The selected DTMF tones are transmitted continuously when this bit is high. TX DTMF overrides all other transmit functions. |
| D5 | TX ANS (Transmit Answer tone) | 0 | Disables answer tone generator. |
| | | 1 | Enables answer tone generator. A 2100 Hz or 2225 Hz answer tone will be transmitted continuously when the transmit enable bit is set. If TR: D0 = 0, a 2225 Hz tone will be generated. If TR: D0 = 1, a 2100 Hz tone will be generated. The device must be in answer mode. |
| D6 | TX Calling Tone/ SCT (Soft Carrier Turn-Off) Tone | 0 | Disables calling or SCT tone generator. |
| | | 1 | Transmit calling tone if originating in CCITT mode. Transmit SCT tone if originating in Bell mode. Transmits neither if answering. |
| D7 | RXD Output Control | 0 | Enables RXD pin. Receive data will be output on RXD. |
| | | 1 | Disables RXD pin. The RXD pin reverts to a high impedance with internal weak pull-up resistor. |

CONTROL REGISTER 3

| | | | | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------------|------------|------------------------|---|----------------------------|--|-------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| CR3 101 | | | | RECEIVE ENABLE BOOST | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 3 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 2 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 1 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 0 |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | |
| | | | | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| D3, D2 D1, D0 | | Transmit Attenuator | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0- | Sets the attenuation level of the transmitted signal in 1 dB steps. The default (D3-D0= 0100) is for a transmit level of -10 dBm0 at the line with the recommended hybrid transmit gain. The total range is 16 dB. |
| | | | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | |
| D4 | Receive | | 0 | | 12 dB receive front end boost is not used. | | | |
| | Gain Boost | | 1 | | Boost is in the path. This boost does not change reference levels. It is used to extend dynamic range by compensating for internally generated noise when receiving weak signals. The receive level detect signal and knowledge of the hybrid and transmit attenuator setting will determine when boost should be enabled. | | | |

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

ID REGISTER

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-----------------------|-------------|----------------------------------|
| D7, D6 | Device Identification | D7 D6 D5 D4 | Indicates Device: |
| | Signature | | |
| | | 0 0 X X | SSI 73K212L or 73K322L or 73K321 |
| | | 0 1 X X | SSI 73K221L or 73K302L |
| | | 1 0 X X | SSI 73K222L |
| | | 1 1 0 0 | SSI 73K224L |
| | | 1 1 0 1 | SSI 73K312L |
| | | 1 1 1 0 | SSI 73K324L |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above absolute maximum ratings may permanently damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|--------------------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 7V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260°C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD + 0.3V |
| Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected. | |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|------------------------------------|------------|------|-----|-----|-------|
| VDD Supply voltage | | 4.5 | | 5.5 | V |
| Digital Pins | | | | | |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | | |
| Reset, XTL1, XTL2 | | 3.0 | | VDD | V |
| All other inputs | | 2.0 | | VDD | V |
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | 0 | | 0.8 | V |
| IOH, Output High Current | | -0.4 | | | mA |
| IOL, Output Low Current | | | | 1.6 | mA |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temperature | | -40 | | +85 | °C |

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS (Continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|------------------|
| External Components* | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass Capacitor | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| Bias setting resistor | (Placed between VDD and ISET pins) | 1.8 | | 2.2 | $\text{M}\Omega$ |
| ISET Bypass Capacitor | (ISET pin to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| *Refer to Application section for placement. | | | | | |

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------|-----|-----|---------------|
| IDD, Supply Current | | | | | |
| IDD, Active | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | | 10 | mA |
| IDD1, Power-down | CLK = 11.0592 MHz, ISET = GND | | | 3 | mA |
| IDD2, Power-down | CLK = 19.200 KHz, ISET = GND | | | 2 | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | |
| I _{IH} , Input High Current | V _I = V _{IH} Max | | | 100 | μA |
| I _{IL} , Input Low Current | V _I = V _{IL} Min | -200 | | | μA |
| Reset Pull-down Current | Reset = VDD | 1 | | 50 | μA |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | |
| V _{OH} , Output High Voltage | I _O = -0.4 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| V _{OL} , Output Low Voltage | I _O = 1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| Capacitance | | | | | |
| Inputs | Capitance, all Digital Input pins | | | 10 | pF |
| XTL1 Load Capacitor | Depends on crystal | | 39 | | pF |
| XTL2 Load Capacitor | Depends on crystal | | 15 | | pF |
| CLK | Maximum Capacitive Load | | | 15 | pF |

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING

(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = Recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

NOTE: The following parameters expressed in dBm0 refer to the following definition:

0 dB loss in the Transmit path to the line.

2 dB gain in the Receive path from the line.

Refer to the Basic Box Modem diagram in the Applications section for the DAA design.

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|--|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| FSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Output Freq. Error | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | -0.38 | | +0.38 | % |
| Transmit Level | Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11 | | -9 | dBm0* |
| Harmonic Distortion in 700-2900 Hz band | THD in the alternate band FSK | | -60 | -50 | dB |
| Output Bias Distortion | Transmit Dotting Pattern in ALB @ RXD | | ±5 | | % |
| Total Output Jitter | Random Input in ALB @ RXD | -15 | | +15 | % |
| DTMF Generator TR bit D4=1, CRO bit D1 = 1 | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | | -0.25 | | +0.25 | % |
| Output Amplitude | Low Band | -10 | | -8 | dBm0* |
| | High Band | -8 | | -6 | dBm0* |
| Twist | High-Band to Low-Band, as above | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | dB |
| Long Loop Detect | Not valid for Bell 202 V.23 back channel | -38 | | -28 | dBm0 |
| Dynamic Range | | | 45 | | dB |
| Call Progress Detector Test signal is a 460 Hz sinusoid | | | | | |
| Detect Level | | -39 | | 0 | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | | | | -45 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | | | | 35 | ms |
| Hold Time | | | | 35 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Carrier Detect For a sinusoid at freq. = (Mark + Space)/2 | | | | | |
| Threshold | | -48 | | -43 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | | | | | |
| V.21 | | 10 | 15 | 20 | ms |
| 103 | | 8 | 15 | 20 | ms |
| V.23 Main Channel RCV | | 6 | 10 | 12 | ms |
| 202 Main Channel RCV | | 6 | 8 | 12 | ms |
| 202, V.23 Back Channel | | 25 | 30 | 40 | ms |
| Hold Time | | | | | |
| V.21 | | 6 | 10 | 20 | ms |
| 103 | | 6 | 12 | 20 | ms |
| 202, V.23 Main Channel | | 3 | 6 | 8 | ms |
| 202, V.23 Back Channel | | 10 | 15 | 25 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |

*All transmit levels are at the default value of the transmit attenuator in CR3: 03-D0 = 0100. Transmit range is -6 dBm0 to -22 dBm0 nom.

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|------------------------------------|--|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| Special Tone Detectors | | | | | |
| Detect Level | See definitions for TR bit D0 mode | -49 | | -42 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 step | | | | |
| 2100 Hz V.21 CCITT Answer Tone | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 1300 Hz V.23 Mark | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 390 Hz V.23 Back Channel Mark | | 20 | | 65 | ms |
| 980 or 1650 Hz V.21 Marks | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 2225 Hz Bell Answer Tone | | 10 | | 35 | ms |
| 900 Hz SCT tone | Assumes that SCT follows data in a phase continuous manner | 4 | | 10 | ms |
| 1200 Hz Bell 202 Main Channel Mark | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 387 Hz Bell 202 Back Channel Mark | | 20 | | 65 | ms |
| 1270 or 2225 Hz Bell 103 Marks | | 10 | | 30 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 step | | | | |
| 2100 Hz V.21 CCITT Answer Tone | | 4 | | 15 | ms |
| 1300 Hz V.23 Mark | | 3 | | 10 | ms |
| 390 Hz V.23 Back Channel Mark | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 980 or 1650 Hz V.21 Marks | | 5 | | 15 | ms |
| 2225 Hz Bell Answer Tone | | 4 | | 15 | ms |
| 900 Hz SCT tone | | 1 | | 10 | ms |
| 1200 Hz Bell 202 Main Channel Mark | | 3 | | 10 | ms |
| 387 Hz Bell 202 Back Channel Mark | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 1270 or 2225 Hz Bell 103 Marks | | 4 | | 15 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Detect Freq. Range | Any Special Tone | -3 | | +3 | % |

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|-----|-----|-------|------------|
| Output Smoothing Filter | | | | | |
| Output load | TXA pin; FSK Single Tone out for THD = -50 dB in .3 to 3.4 kHz | 10 | | | k Ω |
| Out of Band Energy | Frequency >12 kHz in all modes | | | -60 | dBm0 |
| Output Impedance | TXA pin | | 200 | 300 | Ω |
| Clock Noise | TXA pin: V.21 @ 61.44 kHz 103 @ 76.8 kHz V.23 or 202 MC @ 122.88 kHz V.23 or 202B @ 15.36 kHz | | 0.2 | 0.4 | mVrms |
| Timing (Refer to Timing Diagrams) | | | | | |
| Parallel Mode | | | | | |
| TAL | \overline{CS} /Addr. setup before ALE | 25 | | | ns |
| TLA | \overline{CS} /Addr. hold after latch | 20 | | | ns |
| TLC | Latch to $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ control | 30 | | | ns |
| TCL | $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Control to latch | -5 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} | 0 | | 140 | ns |
| TLL | ALE width | 30 | | | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after READ | 0 | | 5 | ns |
| TRW | READ width | 200 | | 25000 | ns |
| TWW | WRITE width | 140 | | 25000 | ns |
| TDW | Data setup before WRITE | 40 | | | ns |
| TWD | Data hold after WRITE | 10 | | | ns |
| Serial Mode | | | | | |
| TCKDR | Data out after CLK | | | 300 | ns |
| TCKW | WRITE after CLK | 200 | | | ns |
| TDCK | Data setup before CLK | 150 | | | ns |
| TAW | Address setup before control ¹ | 50 | | | ns |
| TWA | Address hold after control ¹ | 50 | | | ns |
| TWW | Write width | 200 | | | ns |
| TCKDW | Data hold after write | 250 | | | ns |
| TAR | Address setup before control ² | 0 | | | ns |
| TRA | Address hold after control ² | 400 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} | | | 350 | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after READ | 0 | | 100 | ns |

¹ Control for setup is the falling edge of \overline{WR} .

Control for hold is the falling edge of \overline{WR} .

² Control for setup is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or EXCLK.

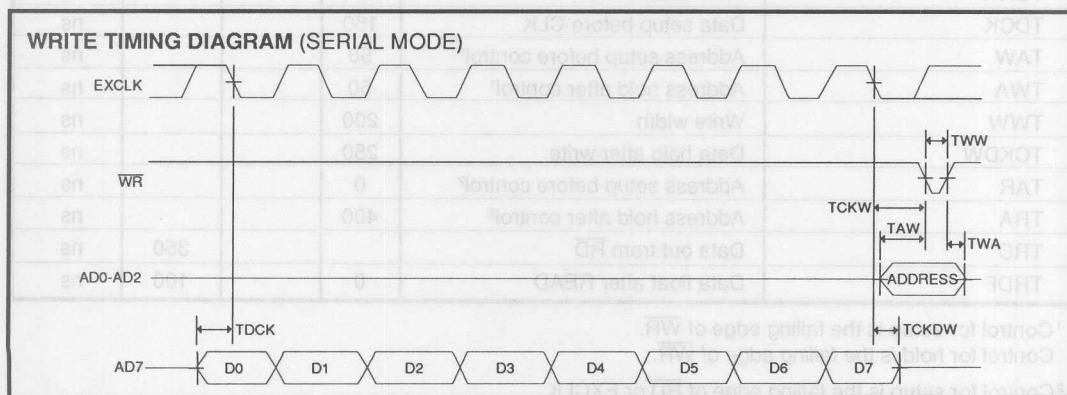
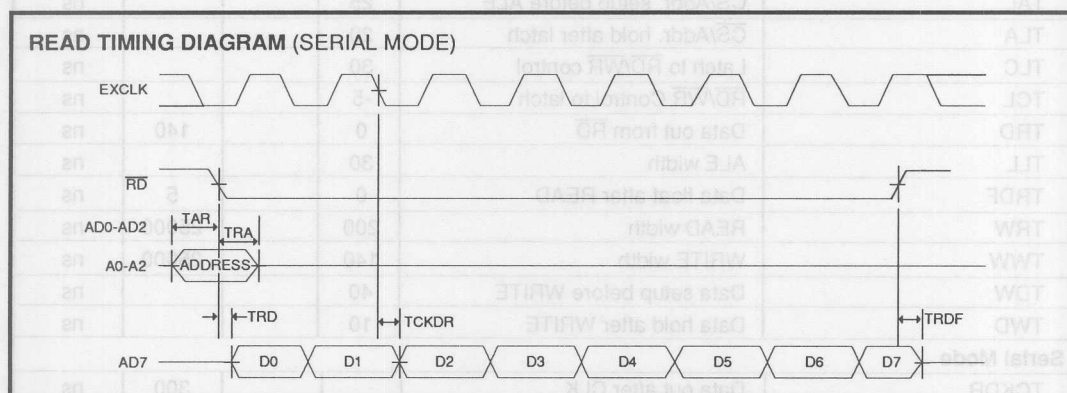
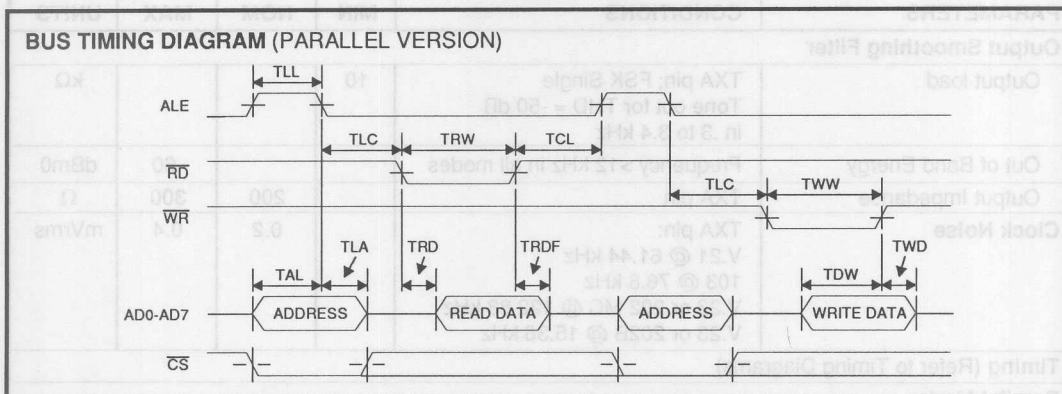
Control for hold is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or EXCLK.

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

TIMING DIAGRAMS



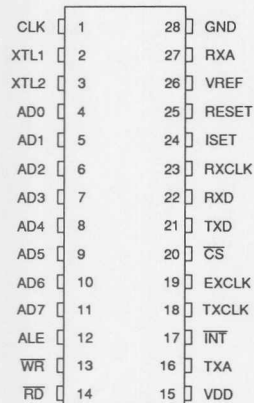
SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

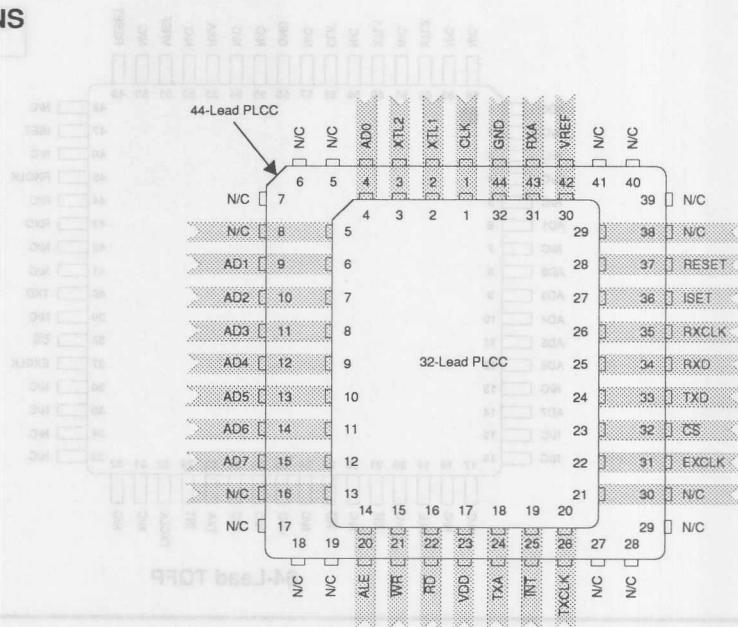
Single-Chip Modem

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

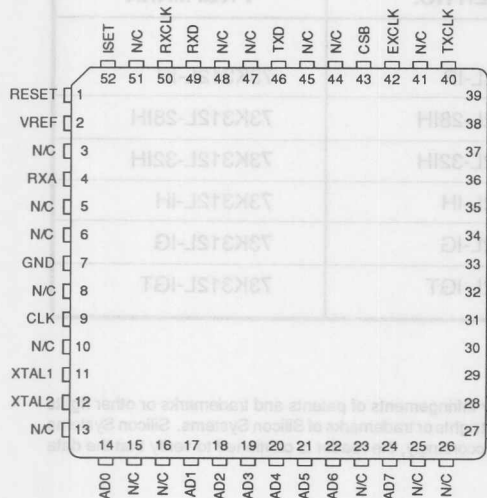
(Top View)



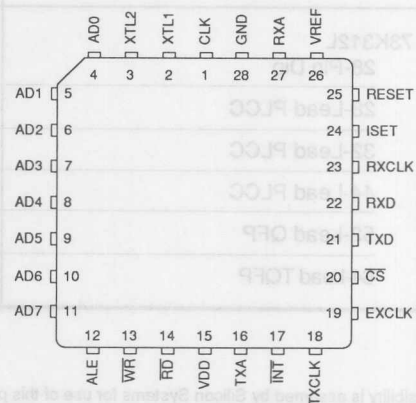
600-Mil
28-Pin DIP



32, 44-Pin PLCC



52-Lead QFP



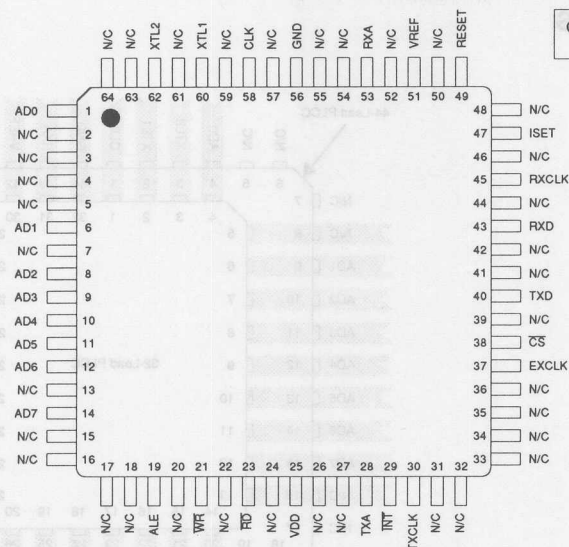
28-Pin PLCC

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73K312L

Bell 202, 103 and CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

64-Lead TQFP

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 73K312L | | |
| 28-Pin Dip | 73K312L-IP | 73K312L-IP |
| 28-Lead PLCC | 73K312L-28IH | 73K312L-28IH |
| 32-Lead PLCC | 73K312L-32IH | 73K312L-32IH |
| 44-Lead PLCC | 73K312L-IH | 73K312L-IH |
| 52-Lead QFP | 73K312L-IG | 73K312L-IG |
| 64-Lead TQFP | 73K312L-IGT | 73K312L-IGT |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73K321L is a highly integrated single-chip modem IC which provides the functions needed to construct a CCITT V.23 and V.21 compatible modem, capable of 0-300 bit/s full-duplex or 0-1200 bit/s half-duplex operation over dial-up telephone lines. The 73K321L provides 1200 bit/s operation in V.23 mode and 300 bit/s in V.21 mode. The SSI 73K321L also can both detect and generate the 2100 Hz answer tone needed for call initiation. The SSI 73K321L integrates analog, digital, and switched-capacitor array functions on a single substrate, offering excellent performance and a high level of functional integration in a single 28- or 22-pin DIP configuration. The SSI 73K321L operates from a single +5V supply with very low power consumption.

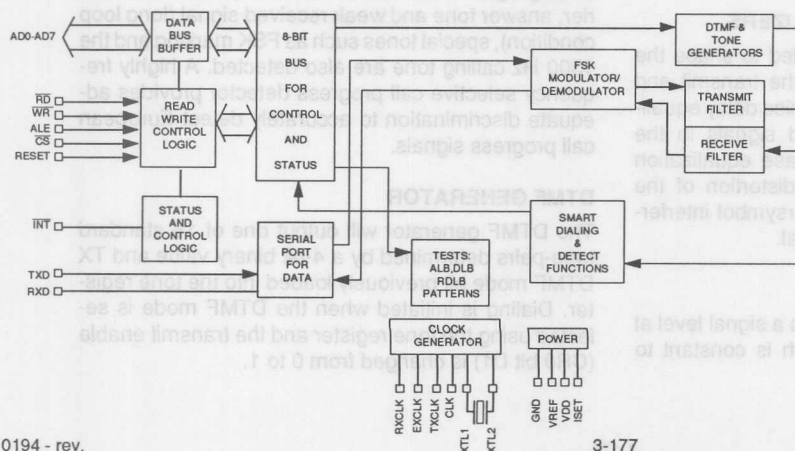
The SSI 73K321L includes the FSK modulator/demodulator functions, call progress and handshake tone monitor test modes, and a tone generator capable of producing DTMF, answer, calling tones. The SSI 73K321L is designed to appear to the systems designer as a microprocessor peripheral, and will easily interface with popular one-chip microprocessors (80C51 typical) for control of modem functions through its 8-bit multiplexed address/data bus or via an optional serial control bus. An ALE control line simplifies address demultiplexing. Data communications occurs through a separate serial port only. (Continued)

FEATURES

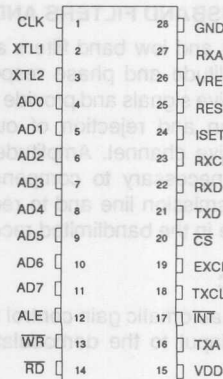
- One-chip CCITT V.23 and V.21 standard compatible modem data pump
- Full-duplex operation at 0-300 bit/s (V.21) or 0-1200 bit/s (V.23) forward channel with or without 0-75 bits/s back channel
- Full Duplex 0-1200 bit/s (V.23) in 4-wire mode
- Pin and software compatible with other SSI K-Series 1-chip modems
- Interfaces directly with standard microprocessors (8048, 80C51 typical)
- Serial or parallel microprocessor bus for control
- Serial port for data transfer
- Call progress, carrier, precise answer tone (2100 Hz), calling tone (1300 Hz) and FSK mark detectors
- DTMF generator
- Test modes available: ALB, DL, RDL, Mark, Space, Alternating bit patterns
- Precise automatic gain control allows 45 dB dynamic range
- Space efficient 28-pin PLCC package available
- CMOS technology for low power consumption using 30 mW @ 5V from a single power supply

3

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

DESCRIPTION (Continued)

The SSI 73K321L is ideal for either free standing or integral system modem applications where multi-standard data communications over the 2-wire switched telephone network is desired. Typical uses include videotex terminals, low-cost integral modems and built-in diagnostics for office automation or industrial control systems. The 73K321L's high functionality, low power consumption and efficient packaging simplify design requirements and increase system reliability in these applications. A complete modem requires only the addition of the phone line interface, a control microprocessor, and RS-232 level converter for a typical system. The SSI 73K321L is part of Silicon Systems K-Series family of pin and function compatible single-chip modem products. These devices allow systems to be configured for higher speeds and Bell or CCITT operation with only a single component change.

OPERATION

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator produces a frequency modulated analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. V.21 mode uses 980 and 1180 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 1650 and 1850 Hz (answer, mark and space). V.23 mode uses 1300 and 2100 Hz for the main channel and 390 and 450 Hz for the back channel. The modulation rate of the back channel is up to 75 baud. Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

High and low band filters are included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit and receive signals and provide compromise delay equalization and rejection of out-of-band signals in the receive channel. Amplitude and phase equalization are necessary to compensate for distortion of the transmission line and to reduce intersymbol interference in the bandlimited receive signal.

AGC

The automatic gain control maintains a signal level at the input to the demodulators which is constant to

within 1 dB. It corrects quickly for increases in signal which would cause clipping and provides a total receiver dynamic range of >45 dB.

PARALLEL BUS INTERFACE

Four 8-bit registers are provided for control, option select and status monitoring. These registers are addressed with the AD0, AD1, and AD2 multiplexed address lines (latched by ALE) and appear to a control microprocessor as four consecutive memory locations. Two control registers and the tone register are read/write memory. The detect register is read only and cannot be modified except by modem response to monitored parameters. The parallel bus interface is not available with the 22-pin package.

SERIAL COMMAND INTERFACE

The Serial Command mode allows access to the SSI 73K321L control and status registers via a serial command port. In this mode the A0, A1 and A2 lines provide register addresses for data passed through the data pin under control of the RD and WR lines. A read operation is initiated when the RD line is taken low. The first bit is available after RD is brought low and the next seven cycles of EXCLK will then transfer out seven bits of the selected address location LSB first. A write takes place by shifting in eight bits of data LSB first for eight consecutive cycles of EXCLK. WR is then pulsed low and data transferred into the selected register occurs on the rising edge of WR.

SPECIAL DETECT CIRCUITRY

The special detect circuitry monitors the received analog signal to determine status or presence of carrier, answer tone and weak received signal (long loop condition), special tones such as FSK marking and the 1300 Hz calling tone are also detected. A highly frequency selective call progress detector provides adequate discrimination to accurately detect European call progress signals.

DTMF GENERATOR

The DTMF generator will output one of 16 standard tone-pairs determined by a 4-bit binary value and TX DTMF mode bit previously loaded into the tone register. Dialing is initiated when the DTMF mode is selected using the tone register and the transmit enable (CR0 bit D1) is changed from 0 to 1.

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION

POWER

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------|--------|--------|------|--|
| GND | 28 | 1 | I | System Ground. |
| VDD | 15 | 11 | I | Power supply input, $5V \pm 10\%$. Bypass with 0.1 and 22 μF capacitors to GND. |
| VREF | 26 | 21 | O | An internally generated reference voltage. Bypass with 0.1 μF capacitor to GND. |
| ISET | 24 | 19 | I | Chip current reference. Sets bias current for op-amps. The chip current is set by connecting this pin to VDD through a 2 M Ω resistor. ISET should be bypassed to GND with a 0.1 μF capacitor. |

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|------------------|------|----|-----|--|
| ALE | 12 | - | I | Address latch enable. The falling edge of ALE latches the address on AD0-AD2 and the chip select on \overline{CS} . |
| AD0-AD7 | 4-11 | - | I/O | Address/data bus. These bidirectional tri-state multiplexed lines carry information to and from the internal registers. |
| \overline{CS} | 20 | - | I | Chip select. A low during the falling edge of ALE on this pin allows a read cycle or a write cycle to occur. AD0-AD7 will not be driven and no registers will be written if \overline{CS} (latched) is not active. The state of \overline{CS} is latched on the falling edge of ALE. |
| CLK | 1 | 2 | O | Output clock. This pin is the output of the crystal oscillator frequency only in the SSI 73K321. |
| \overline{INT} | 17 | 13 | O | Interrupt. This open drain output signal is used to inform the processor that a detect flag has occurred. The processor must then read the detect register to determine which detect triggered the interrupt. \overline{INT} will stay low until the processor reads the detect register or does a full reset. |
| \overline{RD} | 14 | - | I | Read. A low requests a read of the SSI 73K321L internal registers. Data cannot be output unless both \overline{RD} and the latched \overline{CS} are active or low. |
| RESET | 25 | 20 | I | Reset. An active high signal high on this pin will put the chip into an inactive state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) will be reset. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. An internal pull down resistor permits power on reset using a capacitor to VDD. |

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION (Continued)

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE (Continued)

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|--------|--------|------|---|
| \overline{WR} | 13 | - | I | Write. A low on this informs the SSI 73K321L that data is available on AD0-AD7 for writing into an internal register. Data is latched on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . No data is written unless both \overline{WR} and the latched \overline{CS} are low. |

SERIAL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|-----------------|---|-----|-----|--|
| A0-A2 | - | 5-7 | I | Register Address Selection. These lines carry register addresses and should be valid during any read or write operation. |
| DATA | - | 8 | I/O | Serial Control Data. Data for a read/write operation is clocked in or out on the falling edge of the EXCLK pin. The direction of data flow is controlled by the \overline{RD} pin. \overline{RD} low outputs data. \overline{RD} high inputs data. |
| \overline{RD} | - | 10 | I | Read. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K321L that data or status information is being read by the processor. The falling edge of the \overline{RD} signal will initiate a read from the addressed register. The \overline{RD} signal must continue for eight falling edges of EXCLK in order to read all eight bits of the referenced register. Read data is provided LSB first. Data will not be output unless the \overline{RD} signal is active. |
| \overline{WR} | - | 9 | I | Write. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K321L that data or status information has been shifted in through the DATA pin and is available for writing to an internal register. The normal procedure for a write is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive falling edges of EXCLK and then to pulse \overline{WR} low. Data is written on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . |

Note: In the serial, 22-pin version, the pins AD0-AD7, ALE and \overline{CS} are removed and replaced with the pins; A0, A1, A2, DATA, and an unconnected pin. Also, the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} controls are used differently.

The Serial Control mode is provided in the 28-pin version by tying ALE high and \overline{CS} low. In this configuration AD7 becomes DATA and AD0, AD1 and AD2 become A0, A1 and A2, respectively.

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DTE USER INTERFACE

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|--------|--------|------|--|
| EXCLK | 19 | 15 | I | External Clock. Used for serial control interface to clock control data in or out of the 73K321L. |
| RXCLK | 23 | 18 | O | Receive Clock. A clock which is 16 x 1200, or 16 x 75 in V.23 mode, or 16 x 300 baud data rate is output in V.21. |
| RXD | 22 | 17 | O | Received Digital Data Output. Serial receive data is available on this pin. The data is always valid on the rising edge of RXCLK when in Synchronous mode. RXD will output constant marks if no carrier is detected. |
| TXCLK | 18 | 14 | O | Transmit Clock. TXCLK is always active. In V.23 mode the output is either a 16 x 1200 baud clock or 16 x 75 baud, in V.21 mode the clock is 16 x 300 baud. |
| TXD | 21 | 16 | I | Transmit Digital Data Input. Serial data for transmission is input on this pin. In Asynchronous modes (1200 or 300 baud) no clocking is necessary. |

ANALOG INTERFACE AND OSCILLATOR

| | | | | |
|------|----|----|---|---|
| RXA | 27 | 22 | I | Received modulated analog signal input from the phone line. |
| TXA | 16 | 12 | O | Transmit analog output to the phone line. |
| XTL1 | 2 | 3 | I | These pins are for the internal crystal oscillator requiring a 11.0592 MHz Parallel mode crystal and two load capacitors to Ground. XTL2 can also be driven from an external clock. |
| XTL2 | 3 | 4 | I | |

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER DESCRIPTIONS

Four 8-bit internal registers are accessible for control and status monitoring. The registers are accessed in read or write operations by addressing the A0 and A1 address lines in Serial mode, or the AD0 and AD1 lines in Parallel mode. The AD0 and AD1 lines are latched by ALE. Register CR0 controls the method by which data is transferred over the phone line. CR1 controls the

interface between the microprocessor and the SSI 73K321L internal state. DR is a detect register which provides an indication of Monitored modem status conditions. TR, the tone control register, controls the DTMF generator, answer and guard tones and RXD output gate used in the modem initial connect sequence. All registers are read/write except for DR which is read only. Register control and status bits are identified below:

REGISTER BIT SUMMARY

| | | ADDRESS | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----|-----------|--------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| REGISTER | | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ORIGINATE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | ADD PH. EQ. (V.23) | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROGRESS | LONG LOOP |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT CALLING TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2/V.23 FDX | DTMF1 | DTMF0/ANSWER/SPEC. TONE SELECT |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | CR2 | 100 | | | | THESE REGISTER LOCATIONS ARE RESERVED FOR | | | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | | | | USE WITH OTHER K-SERIES FAMILY MEMBERS | | | | |
| ID REGISTER | ID | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

NOTE: When a register containing reserved control bits is written into, the reserved bits must be programmed as 0's.

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER ADDRESS TABLE

| ADDRESS | | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | |
|--|-----------|-----|--------------------|--|---|--|---|--|--|
| REGISTER | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE ORIGINATE/ ANSWER |
| 0=V.23 FSK 1=V.21 FSK | | | | 0000=PWR DOWN 1100=FSK 0001=TRANSMIT DTMF, CALL PROGRESS DETECTION | | | | 0=DISABLE TXA OUTPUT 1=ENABLE TXA OUTPUT | IN V.21 MODE: 0=ANSWER 1=ORIGINATE IN V.23 MODE: 0=RECEIVE @ 1200 BIT/S, TRANSMIT @ 75 BIT/S 1=RECEIVE @ 75 BIT/S, TRANSMIT @ 1200 BIT/S |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | ADD PH. EQ. | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 TEST MODE 0 |
| 00=TX DATA 01=TX ALTERNATE 10=TX MARK 11=TX SPACE | | | | 0=DISABLED 1=ENABLED | 0=NORMAL EQ. 1=ADD EXTRA PHASE EQ. IN V.23 | 0=XTAL 1=NOT SUPPORTED IN THIS DEVICE | 0=NORMAL 1=RESET | 00=NORMAL 01=ANALOG LOOPBACK 10=REMOTE DIGITAL LOOPBACK 11=LOCAL DIGITAL LOOPBACK | |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROGRESS LONG LOOP |
| | | | | OUTPUTS RECEIVED DATA STREAM | | | | 0=CONDITION NOT DETECTED 1=CONDITION DETECTED | |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD/ CALLING TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2/ V.23 FDX | DTMF1 DTMF0/ SPECIAL TONE |
| RXD PIN 0=NORMAL 1=TRI STATE | | | | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=DATA 1=TX DTMF | 4 BIT CODE FOR 1 OF 16 DUAL TONE COMBINATIONS. OVERIDES OTHER TRANSMIT MODES 0=HALF DUPLEX V.23 1=ALLOWS V.23 FULL DUPLEX OPERATION | | 0=ANSWER TONE FREQ.=2225 Hz FSK MARK WILL BE INDICATED BY SPECIAL TONE BIT IN DR 1=ANSWER TONE FREQ.=2100 Hz EITHER 2100 Hz (IN ORIG.) OR 1300 Hz (IN ANS.) WILL BE INDICATED BY SPECIAL TONE BIT IN DR |
| ID REGISTER | 10 | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | |

00XX=73K212L, 322L, 321L
01XX=73K221L, 302L
10XX=73K222L
1100=73K224L
1110=73K324L
1101=73K312L

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0

| CR0 000 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------------|----------------------|--|--------------------|---|----|-------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| | MODUL. OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | | TX DTMF | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | |
| D0 | Answer/ Originate | 0 | | Selects Answer mode in V.21 (transmit in high band, receive in low band) or in V.23 mode, receive at 1200 bit/s and transmit at 75 bit/s. | | | | |
| | | 1 | | Selects Originate mode in V.21 (transmit in low band, receive in high band) or in V.23 mode, receive at 75 bit/s and transmit at 1200 bit/s. If in V.23 and D2 of TR=1, selects V.23 full duplex operation in 4-wire configuration. | | | | |
| | | Note: This bit works with TR bit D0 to program special tones detected in Tone Register. See detect and tone registers. | | | | | | |
| D1 | Transmit Enable | 0 | | Disables transmit output at TXA. | | | | |
| | | 1 | | Enables transmit output at TXA. | | | | |
| | | Note: Answer tone and DTMF TX control require TX enable. | | | | | | |
| D5, D4,D3, D2 | Transmit Mode | D5 D4 D3 D2 | | | | | | |
| D2 | | 0 0 0 1 | | Transmit DTMF | | | | |
| D2 | | 0 0 0 0 | | Selects Power Down mode. All functions disabled except digital interface. | | | | |
| | | 1 1 0 0 | | Selects FSK operation. | | | | |
| D6 | Unused | 0 | | Not used; must be written as a "0." | | | | |
| D7 | Modulation Option | D7 D5 D4 | | Selects: | | | | |
| | | 0 1 1 | | FSK CCITT V.23 mode. | | | | |
| | | 1 1 1 | | FSK CCITT V.21 mode. | | | | |

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 1

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| D1, D0 | Test Mode | D1 D0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 | Selects Normal Operating mode. Analog Loopback mode. Loops the transmitted analog signal back to the receiver, and causes the receiver to use the same center frequency as the transmitter. To squelch the TXA pin, transmit enable must be forced low. Selects remote digital loopback. Received data is looped back to transmit data internally, and RXD is forced to a mark. Data on TXD is ignored. Selects local digital loopback. Internally loops TXD back to RXD and continues to transmit data from TXA pin. |
| D2 | Reset | 0 1 | Selects normal operation. Resets modem to power down state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) are reset to zero. The output of the clock pin will be set to the crystal frequency. |
| D3 | CLK Control (Clock Control) | Program as 0 | Not supported in the SSI 73K321. See the TXCLK and RXCLK pin descriptions for 16x the data rate clocks. |
| D4 | Add Ph. Eq. | 0 1 | Selects normal equalization. In V.23 mode, additional phase equalization is added to the main channel filters when D4 is set to 1. |
| D5 | Enable Detect Interrupt | 0 1 | Disables interrupt at \overline{INT} pin. All interrupts are normally disabled in Power Down modes. Enables \overline{INT} output. An interrupt will be generated with a change in status of DR bits D1-D3. The special tone and call progress detect interrupts are masked when the TX enable bit is set. Carrier detect is masked when TX DTMF is activated. All interrupts will be disabled if the device is in Power Down mode. |
| D7, D6 | Transmit Pattern | D7 D6 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 | Selects normal data transmission as controlled by the state of the TXD pin. Selects an alternating mark/space transmit pattern for modem testing. Selects a constant mark transmit pattern. Selects a constant space transmit pattern. |

3

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DETECT REGISTER

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|----------------------|-----------|--|
| D0 | Long Loop | 0 | Indicates normal received signal. |
| | | 1 | Indicates low received signal level. |
| D1 | Call Progress Detect | 0 | No call progress tone detected. |
| | | 1 | Indicates presence of call progress tones. The call progress detection circuitry is activated by energy in the normal 350 to 620 Hz call progress band when CR0 D2 = 1. |
| D2 | Special Tone Detect | 0 | No special tone detected as programmed by CR0 bit D0 and Tone Register bit D0. |
| | | 1 | Special tone detected. The detected tone is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) 2100 Hz answer tone if D0 of TR=1 and the device is in V.21 Originate mode. (2) 1300 Hz calling tone if D0 of TR=1 and the device is in V.21 or V.23 Answer mode. (3) an FSK mark for the mode the device is set to receive in if D0 of TR = 0. NOTE: Tolerance on special tones is $\pm 3\%$. |
| D3 | Carrier Detect | 0 | No carrier detected in the receive channel. |
| | | 1 | Indicated carrier has been detected in the received channel. |
| D4 | Unused | | Not used in the 73K321L. |
| D5 | Receive Data | | Continuously outputs the received data stream. This data is the same as that output on the RXD pin, but it is not disabled when RXD is tri-stated. |
| D6, D7 | | | Not used. |

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER

| TR 011 | D7 RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | D6 TRANSMIT CALLING TONE | D5 TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | D4 TRANSMIT DTMF | D3 DTMF 3 | D2 DTMF 2 | D1 DTMF 1 | D0 DTMF 0/ ANS. TONE/ SPECIAL TONE/ SEL |
|-------------------|---|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|--------------|--------------|--|---|
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | | | | DESCRIPTION | | |
| D0 | DTMF 0/ Answer Tone/ Special Tone/ Detect/Select | D6 D5 D4 D0 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D0 | D0 interacts with bits D6, D5, D4, and CR0 as shown. | |
| | | X X 1 X | X | X | 1 | X | Transmit DTMF tones. | |
| | Special Tone/ Detect/Select | X X 0 0 | X | X | 0 | 0 | Mark of an FSK mode selected in CR0 is to be detected in D2 of DR. | |
| | | X X 0 1 | X | X | 0 | 1 | 2100 Hz answer tone will be detected in D2 of DR if V.21 Originate mode is selected in CR0. | |
| | | X 1 0 0 | X | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1300 Hz calling tone will be detected in D2 of DR if V.21 or V.23 Answer mode is selected in CR0. | |
| | | X 1 0 1 | X | 1 | 0 | 1 | Transmit 2225 Hz answer tone in Answer mode. | |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 | DTMF 3, 2, 1, 0 | D3 D2 D1 D0 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | Transmit 2100 Hz answer tone in Answer mode. | |
| | | 0 0 0 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Programs 1 of 16 DTMF tone pairs that will be transmitted when TX DTMF and TX enable bit (CR0, bit D1) is set. Tone encoding is shown below: | |
| | | 1 1 1 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | | |
| | | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | | | | DTMF CODE | |
| | | | | | | | D3 D2 D1 D0 | |
| | | | | | | | TONES | |
| | | | | | | | LOW HIGH | |
| | | | 1 | | | | 0 0 0 1 | |
| | | | 2 | | | | 0 0 1 0 | |
| | | | 3 | | | | 0 0 1 1 | |
| | | | 4 | | | | 0 1 0 0 | |
| | | | 5 | | | | 0 1 0 1 | |
| | | | 6 | | | | 0 1 1 0 | |
| | | | 7 | | | | 0 1 1 1 | |
| | | | 8 | | | | 1 0 0 0 | |
| | | | 9 | | | | 1 0 0 1 | |
| | | | 0 | | | | 1 0 1 0 | |

3

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER (Continued)

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DTMF CODE | | | | TONES | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|---|----|----|----|-------|----------|
| | | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | LOW HIGH |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 (Cont.) | | | * | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 941 1209 |
| | | | # | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 941 1477 |
| | | | A | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 697 1633 |
| | | | B | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 770 1633 |
| | | | C | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 852 1633 |
| | | | D | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 941 1633 |
| D4 | Transmit DTMF | 0 | Disabled DTMF. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Activates DTMF. The selected DTMF tones are transmitted continuously when this bit is high. TX DTMF overrides all other transmit functions. | | | | | |
| D5 | Transmit Answer Tone | 0 | Disables answer tone generator. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Enables answer tone generator. A 2100 Hz answer tone will be transmitted continuously when the transmit enable bit is set. The device must be in Answer mode. | | | | | |
| D6 | Transmit Calling Tone | 0 | Disables calling tone generator. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Transmit calling tone in either mode. | | | | | |
| D7 | RXD Output Control | 0 | Enables RXD pin. Receive data will be output on RXD. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Disables RXD pin. The RXD pin reverts to a high impedance with internal weak pull-up resistor. | | | | | |

ID REGISTER

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
|----------------|---------------------------------|-----------|-------------|-------|----|---------------------------------|----|----|
| | | | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 |
| D7, D6, D5, D4 | Device Identification Signature | D7 D6 | | D5 D4 | | Indicates Device: | | |
| | | 0 0 | | X X | | SSI 73K212L, 73K321L or 73K322L | | |
| | | 0 1 | | X X | | SSI 73K221L or 73K302L | | |
| | | 1 0 | | X X | | SSI 73K222L | | |
| | | 1 1 | | 0 0 | | SSI 73K224L | | |
| | | 1 1 | | 1 0 | | SSI 73K324L | | |
| | | 1 1 | | 0 1 | | SSI 73K312L | | |

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|------------------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 14V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260°C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD+0.3V |
| Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected. | |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| VDD Supply voltage | | 4.5 | 5 | 5.5 | V |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temperature | | -40 | | +85 | °C |
| Clock Variation | (11.0592 MHz) Crystal or external clock | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| External Components (Refer to Application section for placement.) | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass Capacitor | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| Bias setting resistor | (Placed between VDD and ISET pins) | 1.8 | 2 | 2.2 | MΩ |
| ISET Bypass Capacitor | (ISET pin to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 1 | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 2 | (External to GND) | 22 | | | μF |
| XTL1 Load Capacitor | Depends on crystal characteristics; | | | 40 | pF |
| XTL2 Load Capacitor | from pin to GND | | | 20 | |

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|------|-----|-----|---------|
| IDD, Supply Current | ISET Resistor = 2 M Ω | | | | |
| IDDA, Active | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | 8 | 12 | mA |
| IDD1, Power-down | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | | 4 | mA |
| IDD2, Power-down | CLK = 19.200 kHz | | | 3 | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | | |
| Reset, XTL1, XTL2 | | 3.0 | | VDD | V |
| All other inputs | | 2.0 | | VDD | V |
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | 0 | | 0.8 | V |
| IIH, Input High Current | VI = VIH Max | | | 100 | μ A |
| IIL, Input Low Current | VI = VIL Min | -200 | | | μ A |
| Reset Pull-down Current | Reset = VDD | 1 | | 50 | μ A |
| Input Capacitance | All Digital Input Pins | | | 10 | pF |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | |
| VOH, Output High Voltage | IOH MIN = -0.4 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| VOL, Output Low Voltage | IO MAX = 1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| VOL, CLK Output | IO = 3.6 mA | | | 0.6 | V |
| RXD Tri-State Pull-up Curr. | RXD = GND | -1 | | -50 | μ A |
| CMAX, CLK Output | Maximum Capacitive Load | | | 15 | pF |
| Capacitors | | | | | |
| XTL1 Load Capacitor | Depends on crystal characteristics | | | | |
| XTL2 Load Capacitor | from pin to GND | | | | |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 1 | (External to GND) | | | | |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 2 | (External to GND) | | | | |

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING

(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = Recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| FSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Output Freq. Error | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | -0.35 | | +0.35 | % |
| Transmit Level | Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11 | -10 | -9 | dBm0 |
| Harmonic Distortion in 700-2900 Hz band | THD in the alternate band FSK | | -60 | -50 | dB |
| Output Bias Distortion | Transmit Dotting Pattern in ALB @ RXD | | ±3 | | % |
| Total Output Jitter | Random Input in ALB @ RXD | -10 | | +10 | % |
| NOTE: Parameters expressed in dBm0 refer to the following definition: | | | | | |
| 0 dB loss in the Transmit path to the line. | | | | | |
| 2 dB gain in the Receive path from the line. | | | | | |
| Refer to the Basic Box Modem diagram in the Applications section for the DAA design. | | | | | |
| DTMF Generator | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | | -0.25 | | +0.25 | % |
| Output Amplitude | Low Band, CR0 bit D2=1 | -10 | -9 | -8 | dBm0 |
| Output Amplitude | High Band, CR0 bit D2=1 | -8 | -7 | -6 | dBm0 |
| Twist | High-Band to Low-Band, as above | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | dB |
| Long Loop Detect | Not valid for V.23 back channel | -38 | | -28 | dBm0 |
| Dynamic Range | Refer to Performance Curves | | 43 | | dB |
| Call Progress Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level | -3 dB points in 285 and 675 Hz | -38 | | | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | Test signal is a 460 Hz sinusoid | | | -45 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | | | 40 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | | | 40 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Carrier Detect | | | | | |
| Threshold | Single Tone | -48 | | -43 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | | | | | |
| V.21 | | 10 | | 20 | ms |
| V.23 Forward Channel | | 6 | | 12 | ms |
| V.23 Back Channel | | 25 | | 40 | ms |
| Hold Time | | | | | |
| V.21 | | 6 | | 20 | ms |
| V.23 Forward Channel | | 3 | | 8 | ms |
| V.23 Back Channel | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|----------------------------------|--|-----|-----|-----|----------|
| Special Tone Detectors | | | | | |
| Detect Level | See definitions for TR bit D0 mode | -48 | | -43 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 Step | | | | |
| 2100 Hz answer tone | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 1300 Hz calling tone | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 390 Hz V.23 back channel mark | | 20 | | 65 | ms |
| 980 or 1650 Hz V.21 marks | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 Step | | | | |
| 2100 Hz answer tone | | 4 | | 15 | ms |
| 1300 Hz calling tone | | 3 | | 10 | ms |
| 390 Hz V.23 back channel mark | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 980 or 1650 Hz V.21 marks | | 5 | | 15 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Detect Freq. Range | Any Special Tone | -3 | | +3 | % |
| Output Smoothing Filter | | | | | |
| Output load | TXA pin; FSK Single Tone out for THD = -50 dB in .3 to 3.4 kHz | 10 | | 50 | kΩ pF |
| Out of Band Energy | Frequency >12 kHz in all modes | | | -60 | dBm0 |
| Output Impedance | TXA pin, TXA Enabled | | 20 | 50 | Ω |
| Clock Noise | TXA pin; 76.8 kHz or 122.88 kHz in V.23 main channel | | 0.1 | 0.4 | mVrms |

SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------------------|---|-----|-----|-------|-------|
| Timing (Refer to Timing Diagrams) | | | | | |
| TAL | \overline{CS} /Addr. setup before ALE Low | 25 | | | ns |
| TLA | \overline{CS} /Addr. hold after ALE Low | 20 | | | ns |
| TLC | ALE Low to $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Low | 30 | | | ns |
| TCL | $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Control to ALE High | -5 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} Low | 0 | | 140 | ns |
| TLL | ALE width | 30 | | | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after \overline{RD} High | 0 | | 5 | ns |
| TRW | \overline{RD} width | 200 | | 25000 | ns |
| TWW | \overline{WR} width | 140 | | 25000 | ns |
| TDW | Data setup before \overline{WR} High | 40 | | | ns |
| TWD | Data hold after \overline{WR} High | 10 | | | ns |
| TCKD | Data out after EXCLK Low | | | 200 | ns |
| TCKW | \overline{WR} after EXCLK Low | 150 | | | ns |
| TDCK | Data setup before EXCLK Low | 150 | | | ns |
| TAC | Address setup before control* | 50 | | | ns |
| TCA | Address hold after control* | 50 | | | ns |
| TWH | Data Hold after EXCLK | 20 | | | ns |

* Control for setup is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} .
Control for hold is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or the rising edge of \overline{WR} .

3

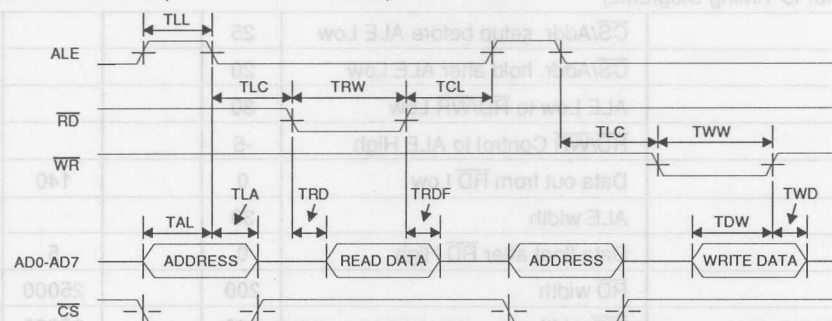
SSI 73K321L

CCITT V.23, V.21

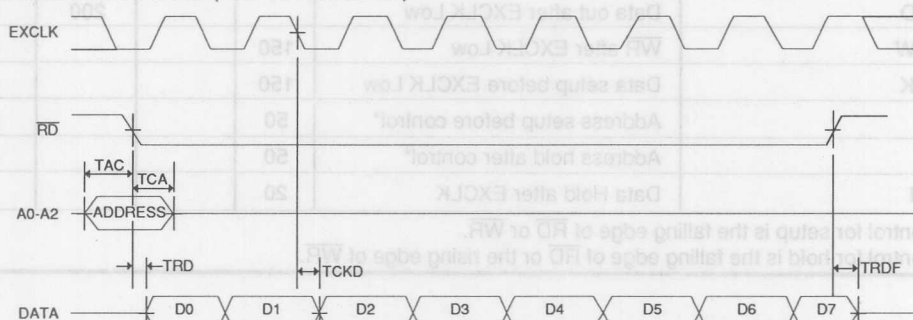
Single-Chip Modem

TIMING DIAGRAMS

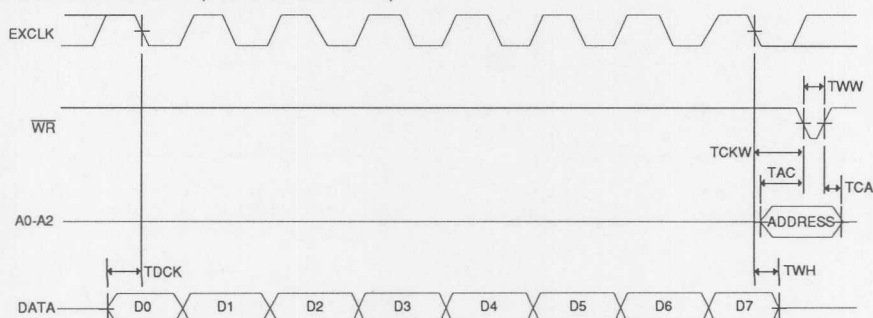
BUS TIMING DIAGRAM (PARALLEL VERSION)



READ TIMING DIAGRAM (SERIAL VERSION)



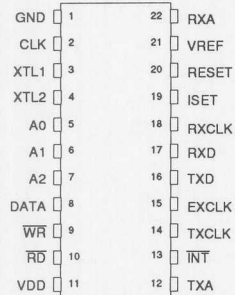
WRITE TIMING DIAGRAM (SERIAL VERSION)



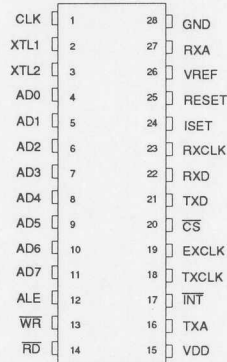
SSI 73K321L CCITT V.23, V.21 Single-Chip Modem

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (TOP VIEW)

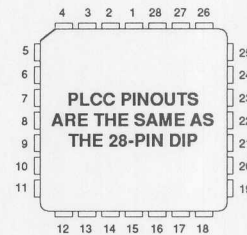
CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.



**400-Mil
22-Pin DIP**



**600-Mil
28-Pin DIP**



**28-Pin
PLCC**

PLCC PINOUTS
ARE THE SAME AS
THE 28-PIN DIP

3

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|---|-------------|-------------|
| SSI 73K321L with Parallel Bus Interface 28-Pin 5V Supply | | |
| Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K321L-IP | 73K321L-IP |
| Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | 73K321L-IH | 73K321L-IH |
| SSI 73K321L with Serial Interface 22-Pin 5V Supply | | |
| Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K321SL-IP | 73K321SL-IP |

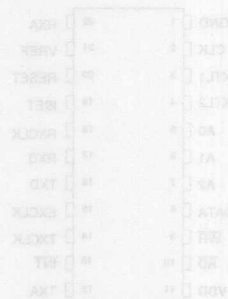
No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

Single-Chip Modem SCITT V.23, V.24 SSI 73K321L

Notes: CAUTION: Use handling procedures for a static sensitive component.

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (TOP VIEW)



400-MII
28-Pin DIP



600-MII
28-Pin DIP



28-Pin
PLCC

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 73K321L with Parallel Bus Interface 28-Pin 5V Supply Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K321-LP | 73K321-LP |
| SSI 73K321L with Serial Interface 28-Pin 5V Supply Plastic Leadless Chip Carrier | 73K321-LH | 73K321-LH |
| SSI 73K321L with Serial Interface 28-Pin 5V Supply Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K321-SL-LP | 73K321-SL-LP |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product not for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14551 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7025, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6014

Protected by the following patents: (4,691,773) (4,777,453)
©1989 Silicon Systems, Inc.

January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73K322L is a highly integrated single-chip modem IC which provides the functions needed to construct a CCITT V.23, V.22 and V.21 compatible modem, capable of 1200 or 0-300 bit/s full-duplex operation or 0-1200 bit/s half-duplex operation with or without the back channel over dial-up lines. The SSI 73K322L is an enhancement of the SSI 73K221L single-chip modem with performance characteristics suitable for European and Asian telephone systems. The SSI 73K322L produces either 550 or 1800 Hz guard tone, recognizes and generates a 2100 Hz answer tone, and supports V.21 for 300 Hz FSK operation. It also operates in V.23, 1200 bit/s FSK mode. The SSI 73K322L integrates analog, digital, and switched-capacitor array functions on a single substrate, offering excellent performance and a high level of functional integration in a single 28- or 22-pin DIP configuration. The SSI 73K322L operates from a single +5V supply with very low power consumption.

The SSI 73K322L includes the DPSK and FSK modulator/demodulator functions, call progress and handshake tone monitor test modes, and a tone generator capable of producing DTMF, answer, calling and 550 or 1800 Hz guard tone. This device supports V.23, V.22 (except mode v) and V.21 modes of operation, allowing both synchronous and

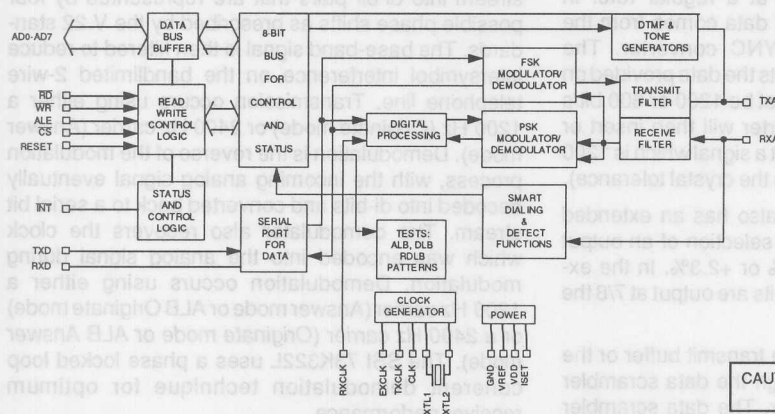
(Continued)

FEATURES

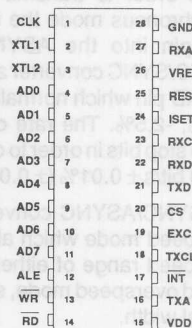
- One-chip CCITT V.23, V.22 and V.21 standard compatible modem data pump
- Full-duplex operation at 0-300 bit/s (FSK) or 600 and 1200 bit/s (DPSK) or 0-1200 bit/s (FSK) forward channel with or without 0-75 bit/s back channel
- Interfaces directly with standard microprocessors (8048, 80C51 typical)
- Serial or parallel microprocessor bus for control
- Serial port for data transfer
- Both synchronous and asynchronous modes of operation
- Call progress, carrier, precise answer tone (2100 Hz), calling tone (1300 Hz) and FSK mark detectors
- DTMF and 550 or 1800 Hz guard tone generators
- Test modes available: ALB, DL, RDL, Mark, Space, Alternating bit patterns
- Precise automatic gain control allows 45 dB dynamic range
- CMOS technology for low power consumption using 30 mW @ 5V from a single power supply
- Surface mount PLCC package available

3

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DESCRIPTION (continued)

asynchronous communications. The SSI 73K322L is designed to appear to the systems designer as a microprocessor peripheral, and will easily interface with popular one-chip microprocessors (80C51 typical) for control of modem functions through its 8-bit multiplexed address/data bus or via an optional serial control bus. An ALE control line simplifies address demultiplexing. Data communications occurs through a separate serial port only.

The SSI 73K322L is ideal for use in either free standing or integral system modem products where multi-standard data communications over the 2-wire switched telephone network is desired. Its high functionality, low power consumption and efficient packaging simplify design requirements and increase system reliability. A complete modem requires only the addition of the phone line interface, a control microprocessor, and RS-232 level converter for a typical system. The SSI 73K322L is part of Silicon Systems K-Series family of pin and function compatible single-chip modem products. These devices allow systems to be configured for higher speeds and Bell or CCITT operation with only a single component change.

OPERATION

ASYNCHRONOUS MODE

Data transmission for the DPSK mode requires that data ultimately be transmitted in a synchronous fashion. The SSI 73K322L includes ASYNC/SYNC and SYNC/ASYNC converters which delete or insert stop bits in order to transmit data at a regular rate. In Asynchronous mode the serial data comes from the TXD pin into the ASYNC/SYNC converter. The ASYNC/SYNC converter accepts the data provided on the TXD pin which normally must be 1200 or 600 bit/s $\pm 1.0\%$, -2.5% . The rate converter will then insert or delete stop bits in order to output a signal which is 1200 or 600 bit/s $\pm 0.01\%$ ($\pm 0.01\%$ is the crystal tolerance).

The SYNC/ASYNC converter also has an extended overspeed mode which allows selection of an output overspeed range of either $+1\%$ or $+2.3\%$. In the extended overspeed mode, stop bits are output at 7/8 the normal width.

The serial data stream from the transmit buffer or the rate converter is passed through the data scrambler and onto the analog modulator. The data scrambler

can be bypassed under processor control when unscrambled data must be transmitted. If serial input data contains a break signal through one character (including start and stop bits) the break will be extended to at least $2 \cdot N + 3$ bits long (where N is the number of transmitted bits/character).

Serial data from the demodulator is passed first through the data descrambler and then through the SYNC/ASYNC converter. The ASYNC/ASYNC converter will reinsert any deleted stop bits and output data at an intra-character rate (bit-to-bit timing) of no greater than 1219 bit/s. An incoming break signal (low through two characters) will be passed through without incorrectly inserting a stop bit.

SYNCHRONOUS MODE

The CCITT V.22 standard defines synchronous operation at 600 and 1200 bit/s. Operation is similar to that of the Asynchronous mode except that data must be synchronized to a provided clock and no variation in data transfer rate is allowable. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK.

TXCLK is an internally derived signal in Internal mode and is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in Slave mode. Receive data at the RXD pin is clocked out on the falling edge of RXCLK. The ASYNCH/SYNCH converter is bypassed when Synchronous mode is selected and data is transmitted out at the same rate as it is input.

DPSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

In DPSK mode the SSI 73K322L modulates a serial bit stream into di-bit pairs that are represented by four possible phase shifts as prescribed by the V.22 standards. The base-band signal is then filtered to reduce intersymbol interference on the bandlimited 2-wire telephone line. Transmission occurs using either a 1200 Hz (Originate mode) or 2400 Hz carrier (Answer mode). Demodulation is the reverse of the modulation process, with the incoming analog signal eventually decoded into di-bits and converted back to a serial bit stream. The demodulator also recovers the clock which was encoded into the analog signal during modulation. Demodulation occurs using either a 1200 Hz carrier (Answer mode or ALB Originate mode) or a 2400 Hz carrier (Originate mode or ALB Answer mode). The SSI 73K322L uses a phase locked loop coherent demodulation technique for optimum receiver performance.

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator produces a frequency modulated analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. V.21 mode uses 980 and 1180 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 1650 and 1850 Hz (answer, mark and space). V.23 mode uses 1300 and 2100 Hz for the main channel and 390 and 450 Hz for the back channel. The modulation rate of the back channel is up to 75 baud. Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value. The rate converter and scrambler/descrambler are automatically bypassed in the V.21 or V.23 modes.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

High and low band filters are included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit and receive signals and provide compromise delay equalization and rejection of out-of-band signals in the receive channel. Amplitude and phase equalization are necessary to compensate for distortion of the transmission line and to reduce intersymbol interference in the bandlimited receive signal. The transmit signal filtering approximates a 75% square root of raised Cosine frequency response characteristic.

AGC

The automatic gain control maintains a signal level at the input to the demodulators which is constant to within 1 dB. It corrects quickly for increases in signal which would cause clipping and provides a total receiver dynamic range of >45 dB.

PARALLEL BUS INTERFACE

Four 8-bit registers are provided for control, option select and status monitoring. These registers are addressed with the AD0, AD1, and AD2 multiplexed address lines (latched by ALE) and appear to a control microprocessor as four consecutive memory locations. Two control registers and the tone register are read/write memory. The detect register is read only and cannot be modified except by modem response to monitored parameters.

SERIAL COMMAND INTERFACE

The serial command interface allows access to the SSI 73K322L control and status registers via a serial command port (22-pin version only). In this mode the A0, A1 and A2 lines provide register addresses for data

passed through the data pin under control of the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} lines. A read operation is initiated when the \overline{RD} line is taken low. The first bit is available after \overline{RD} is brought low and the next seven cycles of EXCLK will then transfer out seven bits of the selected address location LSB first. A write takes place by shifting in eight bits of data LSB first for eight consecutive cycles of EXCLK. \overline{WR} is then pulsed low and data transferred into the selected register occurs on the rising edge of \overline{WR} .

SPECIAL DETECT CIRCUITRY

The special detect circuitry monitors the received analog signal to determine status or presence of carrier, answer tone and weak received signal (long loop condition), special tones such as FSK marking and the 1300 Hz calling tone are also detected. A highly frequency selective call progress detector provides adequate discrimination to accurately detect European call progress signals.

DTMF GENERATOR

The DTMF generator will output one of 16 standard tone pairs determined by a 4-bit binary value and TX DTMF mode bit previously loaded into the tone register. Tone generation is initiated when the DTMF mode is selected using the tone register and the transmit enable (CR0 bit D1) is changed from 0 to 1.

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION

POWER

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|--------|--------|------|--|
| GND | 28 | 1 | I | System Ground. |
| VDD | 15 | 11 | I | Power supply input, $5V \pm 10\%$. Bypass with 0.1 and 22 μF capacitors to GND. |
| VREF | 26 | 21 | O | An internally generated reference voltage. Bypass with 0.1 μF capacitor to GND. |
| ISSET | 24 | 19 | I | Chip current reference. Sets bias current for op-amps. The chip current is set by connecting this pin to VDD through a 2 M Ω resistor. ISET should be bypassed to GND with a 0.1 μF capacitor. |

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|------------------|------|----|-----|--|
| ALE | 12 | - | I | Address latch enable. The falling edge of ALE latches the address on AD0-AD2 and the chip select on \overline{CS} . |
| AD0-AD7 | 4-11 | - | I/O | Address/data bus. These bidirectional tri-state multiplexed lines carry information to and from the internal registers. |
| \overline{CS} | 20 | - | I | Chip select. A low on this pin during the falling edge of ALE allows a read cycle or a write cycle to occur. AD0-AD7 will not be driven and no registers will be written if \overline{CS} (latched) is not active. The state of \overline{CS} is latched on the falling edge of ALE. |
| CLK | 1 | 2 | O | Output clock. This pin is selectable under processor control to be either the crystal frequency (for use as a processor clock) or 16 x the data rate for use as a baud rate clock in DPSK modes only. The pin defaults to the crystal frequency on reset. |
| \overline{INT} | 17 | 13 | O | Interrupt. This open drain output signal is used to inform the processor that a detect flag has occurred. The processor must then read the detect register to determine which detect triggered the interrupt. \overline{INT} will stay low until the processor reads the detect register or does a full reset. |
| \overline{RD} | 14 | - | I | Read. A low requests a read of the SSI 73K322L internal registers. Data cannot be output unless both \overline{RD} and the latched \overline{CS} are active or low. |
| RESET | 25 | 20 | I | Reset. An active high signal on this pin will put the chip into an inactive state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) will be reset. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. An internal pull down resistor permits power on reset using a capacitor to VDD. |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE (Continued)

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|--------|--------|------|---|
| \overline{WR} | 13 | - | I | Write. A low on this informs the SSI 73K322L that data is available on AD0-AD7 for writing into an internal register. Data is latched on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . No data is written unless both \overline{WR} and the latched \overline{CS} are low. |

SERIAL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|-----------------|---|-----|-----|--|
| A0-A2 | - | 5-7 | I | Register Address Selection. These lines carry register addresses and should be valid during any read or write operation. |
| DATA | - | 8 | I/O | Serial Control Data. Data for a read/write operation is clocked in or out on the falling edge of the EXCLK pin. The direction of data flow is controlled by the \overline{RD} pin. \overline{RD} low outputs data. \overline{RD} high inputs data. |
| \overline{RD} | - | 10 | I | Read. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K322L that data or status information is being read by the processor. The falling edge of the \overline{RD} signal will initiate a read from the addressed register. The \overline{RD} signal must continue for eight falling edges of EXCLK in order to read all eight bits of the referenced register. Read data is provided LSB first. Data will not be output unless the \overline{RD} signal is active. |
| \overline{WR} | - | 9 | I | Write. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K322L that data or status information has been shifted in through the DATA pin and is available for writing to an internal register. The normal procedure for a write is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive falling edges of EXCLK and then to pulse \overline{WR} low. Data is written on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . |

Note: In the serial, 22-pin version, the pins AD0-AD7, ALE and \overline{CS} are removed and replaced with the pins; A0, A1, A2, DATA, and an unconnected pin. Also, the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} controls are used differently.

The Serial Control mode is provided in the parallel control versions by tying ALE high and \overline{CS} low. In this configuration AD7 becomes DATA and AD0, AD1 and AD2 become A0, A1 and A2, respectively.

DTE USER INTERFACE

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|--------|--------|------|--|
| EXCLK | 19 | 15 | I | External Clock. This signal is used only in synchronous DPSK transmission when the external timing option has been selected. In the External Timing mode the rising edge of EXCLK is used to strobe synchronous DPSK transmit data available on the TXD pin. Also used for serial control interface. |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

RS-232 INTERFACE (Continued)

| NAME | 28-PIN | 22-PIN | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|--------|--------|------|--|
| RXCLK | 23 | 18 | O | Receive Clock. The falling edge of this clock output is coincident with the transitions in the serial received DPSK data output. The rising edge of RXCLK can be used to latch the valid output data. RXCLK will be valid as long as a carrier is present. In V.23 or V.21 mode a clock which is 16 x 1200 (or 16 x 75) or 16 x 300 Hz baud data rate is output, respectively, for driving a UART. |
| RXD | 22 | 17 | O | Received Data Output. Serial receive data is available on this pin. The data is always valid on the rising edge of RXCLK when in Synchronous mode. RXD will output constant marks if no carrier is detected. |
| TXCLK | 18 | 14 | O | Transmit Clock. This signal is used only in synchronous DPSK transmission to latch serial input data on the TXD pin. Data must be provided so that valid data is available on the rising edge of the TXCLK. The transmit clock is derived from different sources depending upon the Synchronization mode selection. In Internal Mode the clock is 1200 Hz generated internally. In External Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the EXCLK pin. In Slave Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the RXCLK pin. TXCLK is always active. In V.23 or V.21 mode the output is a 16 x 1200 (or 16 x 75) or 16 x 300 Hz baud clock, respectively for driving a UART. |
| TXD | 21 | 16 | I | Transmit Data Input. Serial data for transmission is applied on this pin. In Synchronous modes, the data must be valid on the rising edge of the TXCLK clock. In Asynchronous modes (1200 or 300 baud) no clocking is necessary. DPSK must be 1200/600 bit/s +1%, -2.5% or +2.3%, -2.5 % in Extended Overspeed mode. |

ANALOG INTERFACE AND OSCILLATOR

| | | | | |
|------|----|----|---|---|
| RXA | 27 | 22 | I | Received modulated analog signal input from the telephone line interface. |
| TXA | 16 | 12 | O | Transmit analog output to the telephone line interface. |
| XTL1 | 2 | 3 | I | These pins are for the internal crystal oscillator requiring a 11.0592 MHz Parallel mode crystal and two load capacitors to Ground. XTL2 can also be driven from an external clock. |
| XTL2 | 3 | 4 | I | |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER DESCRIPTIONS

Four 8-bit internal registers are accessible for control and status monitoring. The registers are accessed in read or write operations by addressing the A0 and A1 address lines in Serial mode, or the AD0 and AD1 lines in Parallel mode. The AD0 and AD1 lines are latched by ALE. Register CR0 controls the method by which data is transferred over the phone line. CR1 controls the

interface between the microprocessor and the SSI 73K322L internal state. DR is a detect register which provides an indication of monitored modem status conditions. TR, the tone control register, controls the DTMF generator, answer and guard tones and RXD output gate used in the modem initial connect sequence. All registers are read/write except for DR which is read only. Register control and status bits are identified below:

REGISTER BIT SUMMARY

| | | ADDRESS | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----|-----------|--------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
| REGISTER | | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ORIGINATE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER/ADD PH. EQ. (V.23) | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARKS | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROGRESS | LONG LOOP |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD/CALLING TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2/V.23 FDX | DTMF1/OVERSPEED | DTMF0/GUARD/ANSWER/SPEC. TONE SELECT |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | CR2 | 100 | | | | THESE REGISTER LOCATIONS ARE RESERVED FOR | | | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | | | | USE WITH OTHER K-SERIES FAMILY MEMBERS | | | | |
| ID REGISTER | ID | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |

NOTE: When a register containing reserved control bits is written into, the reserved bits must be programmed as 0's.

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER ADDRESS TABLE

| | | ADDRESS | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----|-----------|---|------------------------------|---|---|---|--|--|
| REGISTER | | AD2 - AD0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE ORIGINATE/ ANSWER |
| | | | 0=1200 BIT/S DPSK 1=600 BIT/S DPSK 0=V.23 FSK 1=V.21 FSK | | 0000=PWR DOWN 0001=INT SYNCH 0010=EXT SYNCH 0011=SLAVE SYNCH 0100=ASYNCH 8 BITS/CHAR 0101=ASYNCH 9 BITS/CHAR 0110=ASYNCH 10 BITS/CHAR 0111=ASYNCH 11 BITS/CHAR 1100=FSK | | | 0=DISABLE TXA OUTPUT 1=ENABLE TXA OUTPUT | IN V.21 OR V.22 MODE: 0=ANSWER 1=ORIGINATE IN V.23 MODE: 0=RECEIVE @ 1200 BIT/S, TRANSMIT @ 75 BIT/S 1=RECEIVE @ 75 BIT/S, TRANSMIT @ 1200 BIT/S |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER/ ADD PH. EQ. | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 TEST MODE 0 |
| | | | 00=TX DATA 01=TX ALTERNATE 10=TX MARK 11=TX SPACE | | 0=DISABLE 1=ENABLE | 0=NORMAL 1=BYPASS SCRAMBLER 1=ADD EXTRA PHASE EQ. IN V.23 ONLY | 0=XTAL 1=16 X DATA RATE OUTPUT AT CLK PIN IN DPSK MODE ONLY | 0=NORMAL 1=RESET | 00=NORMAL 01=ANALOG LOOPBACK 10=REMOTE DIGITAL LOOPBACK 11=LOCAL DIGITAL LOOPBACK |
| DETECT REGISTER DR | | 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK DETECT | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROGRESS LONG LOOP |
| | | | | | OUTPUTS RECEIVED DATA STREAM | | | 0=CONDITION NOT DETECTED 1=CONDITION DETECTED | |
| TONE CONTROL REGISTER TR | | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD/ CALLING TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2 V.23 FDX | DTMF1/ OVERSPEED DTMF0/GUARD/ ANSWER/ SPECIAL TONE |
| | | | RXD PIN 0=NORMAL 1=TRI STATE | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=DATA 1=TX DTMF | 4 BIT CODE FOR 1 OF 16 DUAL TONE COMBINATIONS. 0=NORMAL 1=ALLOWS V.23 FULL DUPLEX OPERATION | | 0=1800 Hz G.T. (V.22) 2225 Hz ANS TONE GENERATED, FSK MARK DETECT SELECTED 1=550 Hz G.T. (V.22) 2100 Hz ANS TONE GENERATED & DETECTED (V.21, V.22) 1300 Hz DETECTED (V.23) |
| ID REGISTER 10 | | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | |

00XX=73K212L, 322L, 321L
01XX=73K221L, 302L
10XX=73K222L
1100=73K224L
1110=73K324L
1101=73K312L

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------------------|--------------------|----|--------------------|--------------------|---|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | MODUL. OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D0 high | Answer/ | | 0 | | Selects Answer mode in V.21 and V.22 (transmit in band), receive in low band or in V.23 HDX mode, receive at 1200 bit/s and transmit at 75 bit/s. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Selects Originate mode in V.21 and V.22 (transmit in low band), receive in high band or in V.23 HDX mode, receive at 75 bit/s and transmit at 1200 bit/s. | | | |
| | | | | | Note: This bit works with TR bit D0 to program special tones detected in Tone Register. See detect and tone registers. | | | |
| D1 | Transmit Enable | | 0 | | Disables transmit output at TXA. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Enables transmit output at TXA. | | | |
| | | | | | Note: Answer tone and DTMF TX control require TX enable. | | | |
| D5, D4, D3, D2 | Transmit Mode | | D5 D4 D3 D2 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 0 | | Selects Power Down mode. All functions disabled except digital interface. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 1 | | Internal Synchronous mode. In this mode TXCLK is an internally derived 1200 Hz signal. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK. Receive data is clocked out of RXD on the falling edge of RXCLK. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 1 0 | | External Synchronous mode. Operation is identical to internal synchronous, but TXCLK is connected internally to EXCLK pin, and a 1200 Hz \pm 0.01% clock must be supplied externally. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 1 1 | | Slave Synchronous mode. Same operation as other Synchronous modes. TXCLK is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in this mode. | | | |
| | | | 0 1 0 0 | | Selects DPSK Asynchronous mode - 8 bits/character (1 start bit, 6 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 0 1 | | Selects DPSK Asynchronous mode - 9 bits/character (1 start bit, 7 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 1 0 | | Selects DPSK Asynchronous mode - 10 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 1 1 | | Selects DPSK Asynchronous mode - 11 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, Parity and 1 or 2 stop bits). | | | |
| | | | 1 1 0 0 | | Selects FSK operation. | | | |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0 (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|----------------------|----|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | MODUL. OPTION | | TRANSMIT MODE 3 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D6 | | | 0 | | Not used; must be written as a "0." | | | |
| D7 | Modulation Option | | D7 D5 D4 | | Selects: | | | |
| | | | 0 0 X | | PSK Asynchronous mode at 1200 bit/s. | | | |
| | | | 1 0 X | | PSK Asynchronous mode at 600 bit/s. | | | |
| | | | 0 1 1 | | FSK CCITT V.23 mode. | | | |
| | | | 1 1 1 | | FSK CCITT V.21 mode. | | | |

CONTROL REGISTER 1

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| CR1 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTER. | BYPASS SCRAMB/ ADD PH. EQ. | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D1, D0 | Test Mode | | D1 D0 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | | Selects normal operating mode. | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | | Analog Loopback mode. Loops the transmitted analog signal back to the receiver, and causes the receiver to use the same center frequency as the transmitter. To squelch the TXA pin, transmit enable must be forced low. | | | |
| | | | 1 0 | | Selects remote digital loopback. Received data is looped back to transmit data internally, and RXD is forced to a mark. Data on TXD is ignored. | | | |
| | | | 1 1 | | Selects local digital loopback. Internally loops TXD back to RXD and continues to transmit carrier from TXA pin. | | | |
| D2 | Reset | | 0 | | Selects normal operation. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Resets modem to power down state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, Tone) are reset to zero. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. | | | |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 1 (Continued)

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|--|-----------|---|
| D3 | CLK Control | 0 | Selects 11.0592 MHz crystal echo output at CLK pin. |
| | | 1 | Selects 16 X the data rate, output at CLK pin in DPSK modes only. |
| D4 | Bypass Scrambler/ Add Phase Equalization | 0 | Selects normal operation. DPSK data is passed through scrambler. |
| | | 1 | Selects Scrambler Bypass. DPSK data is routed around scrambler in the transmit path. In V.23 mode, additional phase equalization is added to the main channel filters when D4 is set to 1. |
| D5 | Enable Detect | 0 | Disables interrupt at $\overline{\text{INT}}$ pin. |
| | | 1 | Enables $\overline{\text{INT}}$ output. An interrupts will be generated with a change in status of DR bits D1-D4. The special tone and call progress detect interrupts are masked when the TX enable bit is set. Carrier detect is masked when TX DTMF is activated. All interrupts will be disabled if the device is in power down mode. |
| D7, D6 | Transmit Pattern | D7 D6 | |
| | | 0 0 | Selects normal data transmission as controlled by the state of the TXD pin. |
| | | 0 1 | Selects an alternating mark/space transmit pattern for modem testing. |
| | | 1 0 | Selects a constant mark transmit pattern. |
| | | 1 1 | Selects a constant space transmit pattern. |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DETECT REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|----------------------|---|---|-------------|--------------|--------------|------------|-----------|
| DR 010 | | | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK | CARR. DETECT | SPECIAL TONE | CALL PROG. | LONG LOOP |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | Long Loop | 0 | Indicates normal received signal. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicates low received signal level. | | | | | |
| D1 | Call Progress Detect | 0 | No call progress tone detected. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicates presence of call progress tones. The call progress detection circuitry is activated by energy in the normal 350 to 620 Hz call progress band. | | | | | |
| D2 | Special Tone Detect | 0 | No special tone detected as programmed by CR0 bit D0 and Tone Register bit D0. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Special tone detected. The detected tone is: | | | | | |
| | | (1) 2100 Hz answer tone if D0 of TR=1 and the device is in V.21 or V.22 originate mode. | | | | | | |
| | | (2) 1300 Hz calling tone if D0 of TR=1 and the device is in V.21, or V.22 answer mode. | | | | | | |
| D3 | Carrier Detect | 0 | No carrier detected in the receive channel. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicated carrier has been detected in the received channel. | | | | | |
| D4 | Unscrambled Mark | 0 | No unscrambled mark. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Indicates detection of unscrambled marks in the received data. A valid indication requires that unscrambled marks be received for > 165.5 ± 6.5 ms. | | | | | |
| D5 | Receive Data | | Continuously outputs the received data stream. This data is the same as that output on the RXD pin, but it is not disabled when RXD is tri-stated. | | | | | |
| D6, D7 | | | Not used. | | | | | |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|----------------|-------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD/ CALLING TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2/ V.23 FDX | DTMF 1/ OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ G.T./ANSW./ SP. TONE/ SELECT |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D0 | DTMF 0 | Guard Tone/ Answer Tone | D6 D5 D4 D0 | | D0 interacts with bits D6, D4, and CR0 as shown. | | | |
| | | | X X 1 X | | Transmit DTMF tones. | | | |
| | | | 1 X 0 0 | | Select 1800 Hz guard tone if in V.22 and Answer mode in CR0. | | | |
| | | | 1 X 0 1 | | Select 550 Hz guard tone if in V.22 and Answer mode in CR0. | | | |
| | | | X X 0 0 | | Mark of an FSK mode selected in CR0 is to be detected in D2 of DR. | | | |
| | | | X X 0 1 | | 2100 Hz answer tone will be detected in D2 of DR if V.21 or V.22 Originate mode is selected in CR0. | | | |
| | | | | | 1300 Hz calling tone will be detected in D2 of DR if V.21, or V.22 Answer mode is selected in CR0. | | | |
| | | | | | X 1 0 0 | | Transmit 2225 Hz Answer Tone | |
| | | X 1 0 1 | | Transmit 2100 Hz Answer Tone | | | | |
| D1 | DTMF 1/ Overspeed | D4 D1 | | D1 interacts with D4 as shown. | | | | |
| | | 0 0 | | Asynchronous DPSK 1200 or 600 bit/s +1.0% -2.5%. | | | | |
| | | 0 1 | | Asynchronous DPSK 1200 or 600 bit/s +2.3% -2.5%. | | | | |
| D2 | DTMF 2/ V.23 FDX | 0 | | Half-duplex asymmetric operation in V.23 mode. | | | | |
| | | 1 | | Full-duplex (4-wire) operation in V.23 mode. | | | | |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 | DTMF 3, 2, 1, 0 | D3 D2 D1 D0 | | Programs 1 of 16 DTMF tone pairs that will be transmitted when TX DTMF and TX enable bit (CR0, bit D1) are set. Tone encoding is shown below: | | | | |
| | | 0 0 0 0 | | | | | | |
| | | 1 1 1 1 | | | | | | |
| | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | DTMF CODE D3 D2 D1 D0 | | | TONES LOW HIGH | | |
| | | 1 | 0 0 0 1 | | | 697 1209 | | |
| | | 2 | 0 0 1 0 | | | 697 1336 | | |
| | | 3 | 0 0 1 1 | | | 697 1477 | | |
| | | 4 | 0 1 0 0 | | | 770 1209 | | |
| 5 | 0 1 0 1 | | | 770 1336 | | | | |
| 6 | 0 1 1 0 | | | 770 1477 | | | | |
| 7 | 0 1 1 1 | | | 852 1209 | | | | |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

TR 011 TONE REGISTER (Continued)

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|--|---------------|---------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD/CALLING TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2/V.23 FDX | DTMF 1/OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/GUARD/SPECIAL TONE SEL |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | NAME | BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
| D3, D2, D1, D0 | | | KEYBOARD EQUIVALENT | DTMF CODE | | TONES | | |
| (Cont.) | | | 8 | 1 0 0 0 | 852 | 1336 | | |
| | | | 9 | 1 0 0 1 | 852 | 1477 | | |
| | | | 0 | 1 0 1 0 | 941 | 1336 | | |
| | | | * | 1 0 1 1 | 941 | 1209 | | |
| | | | # | 1 1 0 0 | 941 | 1477 | | |
| | | | A | 1 1 0 1 | 697 | 1633 | | |
| | | | B | 1 1 1 0 | 770 | 1633 | | |
| | | | C | 1 1 1 1 | 852 | 1633 | | |
| | | | D | 0 0 0 0 | 941 | 1633 | | |
| D4 | Transmit DTMF | 0 | Disable DTMF. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Activate DTMF. The selected DTMF tones are transmitted continuously when this bit is high. TX DTMF overrides all other transmit functions. | | | | | |
| D5 | Transmit Answer Tone | 0 | Disables answer tone generator. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Enables answer tone generator. A 2100 Hz answer tone will be transmitted continuously when the transmit enable bit is set. The device must be in Answer mode. To transmit answer tone, the device must be in DPSK Answer mode. | | | | | |
| D6 | TX Guard or Calling Tone | 0 | Disables guard/calling tone generator. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Transmit guard tone if in V.22 and answering; otherwise transmit calling tone, in any other mode including V.23 mode. | | | | | |
| D7 | RXD Output Control | 0 | Enables RXD pin. Receive data will be output on RXD. | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Disables RXD pin. The RXD pin reverts to a high impedance with internal weak pull-up resistor. | | | | | |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

ID REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------------|----|---------------------------------------|----|-------------|----|--|----|----|
| ID 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| BIT NO. | | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | |
| D7, D6, D5 D4 | | Device Identification Signature | | D7 D6 D5 D4 | | Indicates Device: | | |
| | | | | 0 0 X X | | SSI 73K212L, 73K321L or 73K322L or 73K321L | | |
| | | | | 0 1 X X | | SSI 73K221L or 73K302L | | |
| | | | | 1 0 X X | | SSI 73K222L | | |
| | | | | 1 1 0 0 | | SSI 73K224L | | |
| | | | | 1 1 1 0 | | SSI 73K324L | | |
| | | | | 1 1 0 1 | | SSI 73K312L | | |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING | UNIT |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 14 | V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150 | °C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260 | °C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD+0.3 | V |

Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| VDD Supply voltage | | 4.5 | 5 | 5.5 | V |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temp. | | -40 | | +85 | °C |
| Clock Variation | (11.0592 MHz) Crystal or external clock | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| External Components (Refer to Application section for placement.) | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass Capacitor | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| Bias setting resistor | (Placed between VDD and ISET pins) | 1.8 | 2 | 2.2 | MΩ |
| ISET Bypass Capacitor | (ISET pin to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 1 | (External to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor 2 | (External to GND) | 22 | | | μF |
| XTL1 Load Capacitor | Depends on crystal characteristics; | | | 40 | pF |
| XTL2 Load Capacitor | from pin to GND | | | 20 | |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|------|-----|-----|---------|
| IDD, Supply Current | ISet Resistor = 2 M Ω | | | | |
| IDDA, Active | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | 8 | 12 | mA |
| IDD1, Power-down | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | | 4 | mA |
| IDD2, Power-down | CLK = 19.200 KHz | | | 3 | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | | |
| Reset, XTL1, XTL2 | | 3.0 | | VDD | V |
| All other inputs | | 2.0 | | VDD | V |
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | 0 | | 0.8 | V |
| IIH, Input High Current | VI = VIH Max | | | 100 | μ A |
| IIL, Input Low Current | VI = VIL Min | -200 | | | μ A |
| Reset Pull-down Current | Reset = VDD | 1 | | 50 | μ A |
| Input Capacitance | All Digital Input Pins | | | 10 | pF |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | |
| VOH, Output High Voltage | IOH MIN = -0.4 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| VOL, Output Low Voltage | IO MAX = 1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| VOL, CLK Output | IO = 3.6 mA | | | 0.6 | V |
| RXD Tri-State Pull-up Curr. | RXD = GND | -1 | | -50 | μ A |
| CMAX, CLK Output | Maximum Capacitive Load | | | 15 | pF |
| Capacitance | | | | | |
| Inputs | Capacitance, all Digital Input pins | | | 10 | pF |
| XTAL1, 2 Load Capacitors | Depends on crystal characteristics | 15 | | 60 | pF |
| CLK | Maximum Capacitive Load | | | 15 | pF |

SSI 73K322L
CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21
Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)
(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = Recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|--|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| DPSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Carrier Suppression | Measured at TXA | 45 | | | dB |
| Output Amplitude | TX scrambled marks | -11 | -10 | -9 | dBm0 |
| FSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Output Freq. Error | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | -0.35 | | +0.35 | % |
| Transmit Level | Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11 | -10 | -9 | dBm0 |
| Harmonic Distortion in 700-2900 Hz band | THD in the alternate band DPSK or FSK | | -60 | -50 | dB |
| Output Bias Distortion | Transmit Dotting Pattern In ALB @ RXD | | ±3 | | % |
| Total Output Jitter | Random Input in ALB @ RXD | -10 | | +10 | % |
| DTMF Generator | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | Must be in V.22 mode | -.25 | | +.25 | % |
| Output Amplitude | Low Band, V.22 mode | -10 | -9 | -8 | dBm0 |
| Output Amplitude | High Band, V.22 mode | -8 | -7 | -6 | dBm0 |
| Twist | High-Band to Low-Band, V.22 mode | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | dB |
| Long Loop Detect | With Sinusoid | -38 | | -28 | dBm0 |
| Dynamic Range | Refer to Performance Curves | | 45 | | dB |
| Note: Parameters expressed in dBm0 refer to the following definition: | | | | | |
| 0 dB loss in the Transmit path to the line. | | | | | |
| 2 dB gain in the Receive path from the line. | | | | | |
| Refer to the Basic Box Modem diagram in the Applications section for the DAA design. | | | | | |

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| Call Progress Detector | | | | | |
| Detect Level | -3 dB points in 285 and 675 Hz | -38 | | | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | Test signal is a 460 Hz sinusoid | | | -45 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | | | 40 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | | | 40 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Carrier Detect | | | | | |
| Threshold | DPSK or FSK receive data | -48 | | -43 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | | | | | |
| V.21 | | 10 | | 20 | ms |
| V.22 | | 15 | | 32 | ms |
| V.23 Forward Channel | | 6 | | 12 | ms |
| V.23 Back Channel | | 25 | | 40 | ms |
| Hold Time | | | | | |
| V.21 | | 6 | | 20 | ms |
| V.22 | | 10 | | 24 | ms |
| V.23 Forward Channel | | 3 | | 8 | ms |
| V.23 Back Channel | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Special Tone Detectors | | | | | |
| Detect Level | See definitions for TR bit D0 mode | -48 | | -43 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | | | | | |
| 2100 Hz answer tone | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 1300 Hz calling tone | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 390 Hz V.23 back channel mark | | 20 | | 65 | ms |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|------|-----|------|------------------|
| Special Tone Detectors (Continued) | | | | | |
| 980 or 1650 Hz V.21 marks | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| Hold Time | | | | | |
| 2100 Hz answer tone | | 4 | | 15 | ms |
| 1300 Hz calling tone | | 3 | | 10 | ms |
| 390 Hz V.23 back channel mark | | 10 | | 25 | ms |
| 980 or 1650 Hz V.21 marks | | 5 | | 15 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | 2 | | | dB |
| Detect Freq. Range | Any Special Tone | -3 | | +3 | % |
| Output Smoothing Filter | | | | | |
| Output load | TXA pin; FSK Single Tone out for THD = -50 dB in 0.3 to 3.4 kHz | 10 | | 50 | k Ω pF |
| Out of Band Energy | Frequency > 12 kHz in all modes | | | -60 | dBm0 |
| Output Impedance | TXA pin, TXA enabled | | 20 | 50 | Ω |
| Clock Noise | TXA pin; 76.8 kHz or 122.88 kHz in V.23 main channel | | 0.1 | 0.4 | mVrms |
| Carrier VCO | | | | | |
| Capture Range | Originate or Answer | -10 | | +10 | Hz |
| Capture Time | -10 Hz to +10 Hz Carrier Freq. Change Assum. | | 40 | 100 | ms |
| Recovered Clock | | | | | |
| Capture Range | % of frequency center frequency (center at 1200 Hz) | -625 | | +625 | ppm |
| Data Delay Time | Analog data in at RXA pin to receive data valid at RXD pin | | 30 | 50 | ms |

3

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

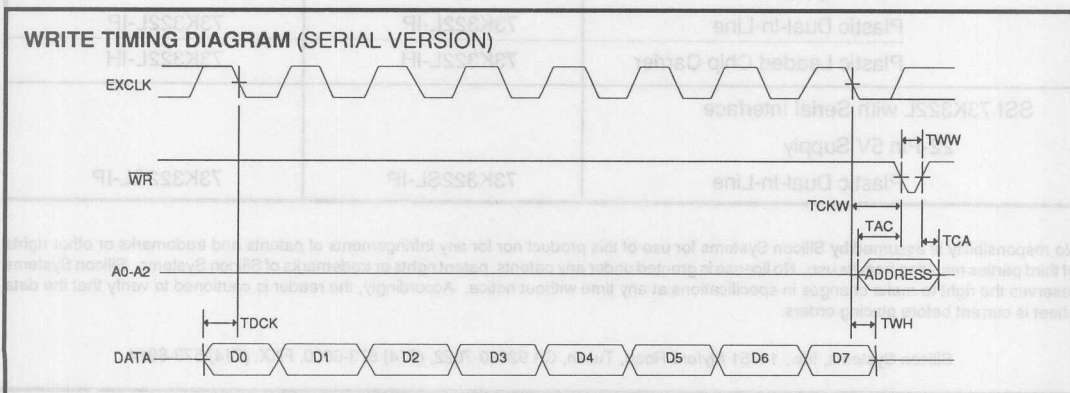
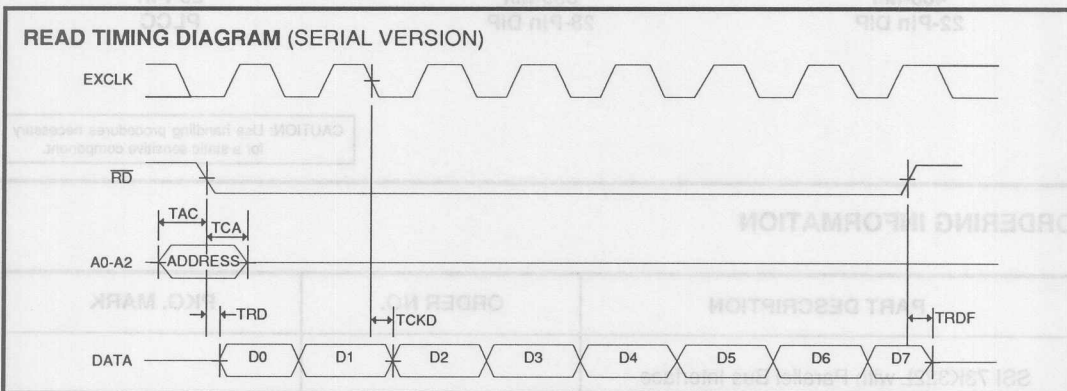
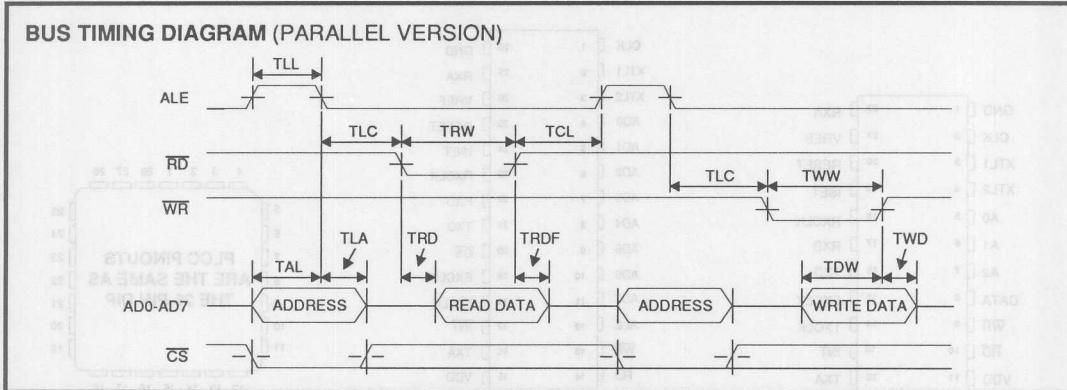
| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|------|------|-------|-------|
| Guard Tone Generator | | | | | |
| Tone Accuracy | 550 or 1800 Hz | -20 | | +20 | Hz |
| Tone Level | 550 Hz | -4.0 | -3.0 | -2.0 | dB |
| (Below DPSK Output) | 1800 Hz | -7.0 | -6.0 | -5.0 | dB |
| Harmonic Distortion | 550 Hz | | | -50 | dB |
| 700 to 2900 Hz | | | | | |
| Timing (Refer to Timing Diagrams) | | | | | |
| TAL | $\overline{CS}/\text{Addr.}$ setup before ALE Low | 25 | | | ns |
| TLA | $\overline{CS}/\text{Addr.}$ hold after ALE Low | 20 | | | ns |
| TLC | ALE Low to $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Low | 30 | | | ns |
| TCL | $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Control to ALE High | -5 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} Low | 0 | | 140 | ns |
| TLL | ALE width | 30 | | | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after \overline{RD} High | 0 | | 5 | ns |
| TRW | \overline{RD} width | 200 | | 25000 | ns |
| TWW | \overline{WR} width | 140 | | 25000 | ns |
| TDW | Data setup before \overline{WR} High | 40 | | | ns |
| TWD | Data hold after \overline{WR} High | 10 | | | ns |
| TCKD | Data out after EXCLK Low | | | 200 | ns |
| TCKW | \overline{WR} after EXCLK Low | 150 | | | ns |
| TDCK | Data setup before EXCLK Low | 150 | | | ns |
| TAC | Address setup before control* | 50 | | | ns |
| TCA | Address hold after control* | 50 | | | ns |
| TWH | Data Hold after EXCLK | 20 | | | ns |
| * Control for setup is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} . Control for hold is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or the rising edge of \overline{WR} . | | | | | |

SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

TIMING DIAGRAMS



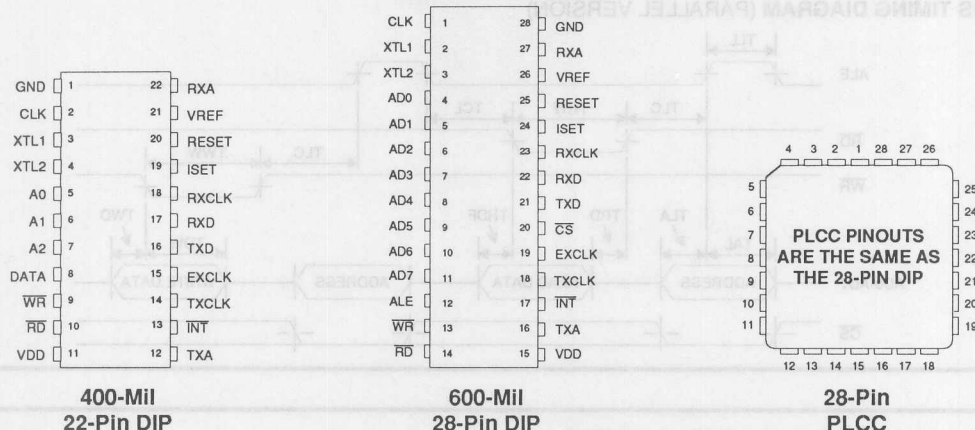
SSI 73K322L

CCITT V.23, V.22, V.21

Single-Chip Modem

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|---|-------------|-------------|
| SSI 73K322L with Parallel Bus Interface | | |
| 28-Pin 5V Supply | | |
| Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K322L-IP | 73K322L-IP |
| Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | 73K322L-IH | 73K322L-IH |
| SSI 73K322L with Serial Interface | | |
| 22-Pin 5V Supply | | |
| Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K322SL-IP | 73K322SL-IP |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

Protected by the following Patents (4,691,172) (4,777,453)
©1989 Silicon Systems, Inc.

January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73K324L is a highly integrated single-chip modem IC which provides the functions needed to design a Quad-mode CCITT and Bell 212A compatible modem capable of operation over dial-up lines. The SSI 73K324L adds V.23 capability to the CCITT modes of Silicon Systems' 73K224 one-chip modem, allowing a one-chip implementation in designs intended for European markets which require this added Modulation mode. The SSI 73K324L offers excellent performance and a high level of functional integration in a single IC. The device supports V.22bis, V.22, Bell 212A, V.21, and V.23 operating modes, allowing both synchronous and asynchronous operation as defined by the appropriate standard.

The SSI 73K324L is designed to appear to the Systems Engineer as a microprocessor peripheral, and will easily interface with popular one-chip microcontrollers (80C51 typical) for control of modem functions through its 8-bit multiplexed address/data bus. A serial control bus is available for applications not requiring a parallel interface. An optional package with only the serial control bus is also available. Data communications occurs through a separate serial port.

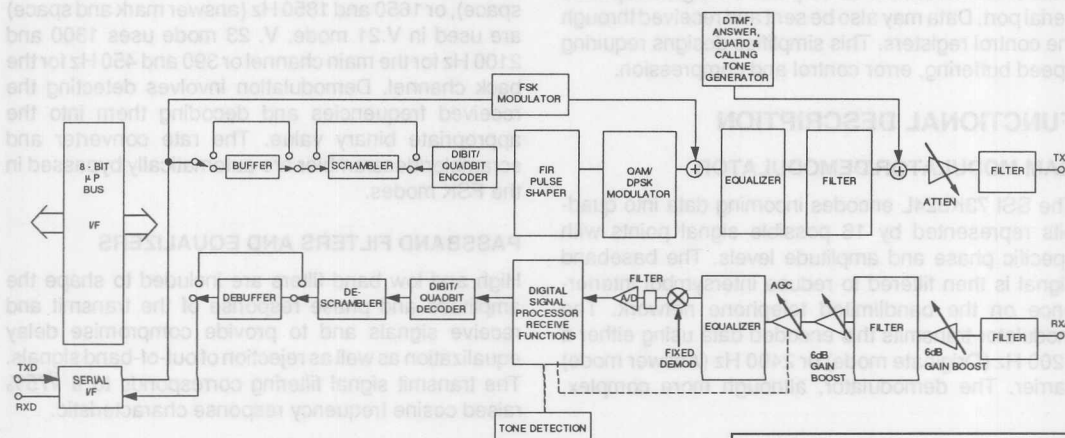
(Continued)

FEATURES

- One chip Multi-mode CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23 and Bell 212A compatible modem data pump
- FSK (75, 300, 1200 bit/s), DPSK (600, 1200 bit/s), or QAM (2400 bit/s) encoding
- Pin and software compatible with other SSI K-Series family one-chip modems
- Interfaces directly with standard microprocessors (8048, 80C51 typical)
- Serial and parallel microprocessor bus for control
- Selectable asynch/synch with internal buffer/debuffer and scrambler/descrambler functions
- All synchronous (internal, external, slave) and Asynchronous Operating modes
- Adaptive equalization for optimum performance over all lines
- Programmable transmit attenuation (16 dB, 1 dB steps), and selectable receive boost (+18 dB)
- Call progress, carrier, answer tone, unscrambled mark, S1, SCT (900 Hz) calling tone (1300 Hz) and signal quality monitors
- DTMF, answer, calling, SCT and guard tone generators
- Test modes available: ALB, DL, RDL; Mark, Space and Alternating bit pattern generators
- CMOS technology for low power consumption
- 4-wire full duplex operation in all modes

3

BLOCK DIAGRAM



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

DESCRIPTION (Continued)

The SSI 73K324L offers full hardware and software compatibility with other products in Silicon Systems' K-Series family of single-chip modems, allowing system upgrades with a single component change. The SSI 73K324L is ideal for use in free-standing or integral system modem products where full-duplex 2400 bit/s operation with Alternate mode capability is required. Its high functionality, low power consumption, and efficient packaging simplify design requirements and increase system reliability. A complete modem requires only the addition of the phone line interface, a control microprocessor, and RS-232 level converters for a typical system.

The SSI 73K324L is designed to provide a complete V.22bis, V.22, Bell 212A, V.21, and V.23 compatible modem on a chip. Many functions were included to simplify implementation in typical modem designs. In addition to the basic 2400 bit/s QAM, 1200/600 bit/s DPSK and 1200/300/75 bit/s FSK modulator/demodulator sections, the device also includes synch/asynch buffering, DTMF, answer, soft carrier, guard, and calling tone generator capabilities. Handshake pattern detectors simplify control of connect sequences, and precise tone detectors allow accurate detection of call progress, answer, calling, and soft carrier turn off tones. All Operating modes defined by the incorporated standards are included, and Test modes are provided. Most functions are selectable as options, and logical defaults are provided. The device can be directly interfaced to a microprocessor via its 8-bit multiplexed address/data bus for control and status monitoring. Data communications takes place through a separate serial port. Data may also be sent and received through the control registers. This simplifies designs requiring speed buffering, error control and compression.

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

QAM MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The SSI 73K324L encodes incoming data into quadrants represented by 16 possible signal points with specific phase and amplitude levels. The baseband signal is then filtered to reduce intersymbol interference on the bandlimited telephone network. The modulator transmits this encoded data using either a 1200 Hz (Originate mode) or 2400 Hz (Answer mode) carrier. The demodulator, although more complex,

essentially reverses this procedure while also recovering the data clock from the incoming signal. Adaptive equalization corrects for varying line conditions by automatically changing filter parameters to compensate for line characteristics.

DPSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The SSI 73K324L modulates a serial bit stream into di-bit pairs that are represented by four possible phase shifts as prescribed by the Bell 212A/V.22 standards. The baseband signal is then filtered to reduce intersymbol interference on the bandlimited 2-wire PSTN line. Transmission occurs on either a 1200 Hz (Originate mode) or 2400 Hz carrier (Answer mode). Demodulation is the reverse of the modulation process, with the incoming analog signal eventually decoded into di-bits and converted back to a serial bit stream. The demodulator also recovers the clock which was encoded into the analog signal during modulation. Demodulation occurs using either a 1200 Hz carrier (Answer mode or ALB Originate mode) or a 2400 Hz carrier (Originate mode or ALB Answer mode). The SSI 73K324L use a phase locked loop coherent demodulation technique that offers excellent performance. Adaptive equalization is also used in DPSK modes for optimum operation with varying lines.

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator/demodulator produces a frequency modulated analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. V.21 frequencies of 980 and 1180 Hz (originate mark and space), or 1650 and 1850 Hz (answer mark and space) are used in V.21 mode. V. 23 mode uses 1300 and 2100 Hz for the main channel or 390 and 450 Hz for the back channel. Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value. The rate converter and scrambler/descrambler are automatically bypassed in the FSK modes.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

High and low band filters are included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit and receive signals and to provide compromise delay equalization as well as rejection of out-of-band signals. The transmit signal filtering corresponds to a $\sqrt{75\%}$ raised cosine frequency response characteristic.

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

ASYNCHRONOUS MODE

The Asynchronous mode is used for communication with asynchronous terminals which may transfer data at 600, 1200, or 2400 bit/s $\pm 1\%$, -2.5% even though the modem's output is limited to the nominal bit rate $\pm 0.1\%$ in DPSK and QAM modes. When transmitting in this mode the serial data on the TxD input is passed through a rate converter which inserts or deletes stop bits in the serial bit stream in order to output a signal that is the nominal bit rate $\pm 0.1\%$. This signal is then routed to a data scrambler and into the analog modulator where di-bit or quad-bit encoding results in the output signal. Both the rate converter and scrambler can be bypassed for handshaking and synchronous operation as selected. Received data is processed in a similar fashion except that the rate converter now acts to reinsert any deleted stop bits and output data to the terminal at no greater than the bit rate plus 1%. An incoming break signal (low through two characters) will be recognized and passed through without incorrectly inserting a stop bit.

The SYNC/ASYN converter has an extended Overspeed mode which allows selection of an output speed range of either $+1\%$ or $+2.3\%$. In the extended Overspeed mode, some stop bits are output at $7/8$ the normal width.

Both the SYNC/ASYN rate converter and the data descrambler are automatically bypassed in the FSK modes.

SYNCHRONOUS MODE

Synchronous operation is possible only in the QAM or DPSK modes. Operation is similar to that of the Asynchronous mode except that data must be synchronized to a clock and no variation in data transfer rate is allowable. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK.

TXCLK is an internally derived 1200 or 2400 Hz signal in Internal mode and is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in Slave mode. Receive data at the RXD pin is clocked out on the falling edge of RXCLK. The asynch/synch converter is bypassed when Synchronous mode is selected and data is transmitted out at essentially the same rate as it is input.

PARALLEL CONTROL INTERFACE

Eight 8-bit registers are provided for control, option select, and status monitoring. These registers are addressed with the AD0, AD1, and AD2 multiplexed address lines (latched by ALE) and appear to a control microprocessor as seven consecutive memory locations. Six control registers are read/write. The detect and ID registers are read only and cannot be modified except by modem response to monitored parameters.

SERIAL CONTROL INTERFACE

The Serial Command mode allows access to the SSI 73K324L control and status registers via a serial control port. In this mode the A0, A1, and A2 lines provide register addresses for data passed through the DATA pin under control of the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} lines. A read operation is initiated when the \overline{RD} line is taken low. The next eight cycles of EXCLK will then transfer out eight bits of the selected address location LSB first. A write takes place by shifting in eight bits of data LSB first for eight consecutive cycles of EXCLK. \overline{WR} is then pulsed low and data transfer into the selected register occurs on the rising edge of \overline{WR} .

TONE GENERATOR

The DTMF generator controls the sending of the sixteen standard DTMF tone pairs. The tone pair sent is determined by selecting TRANSMIT DTMF (bit D4) and the 4 DTMF bits (D0-D3) of the TONE register. Transmission of DTMF tones from TXA is gated by the TRANSMIT ENABLE bit of CR0 (bit D1) as with all other analog signals.

FULL DUPLEX OPERATION

Four-wire full duplex operation is allowed in all modes. This feature allows transmission and reception in the same band for four wire applications only.

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION

POWER

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|------|---|
| GND | I | System Ground. |
| VDD | I | Power supply input, 5V -5% +10%. Bypass with 0.22 μ F and 22 μ F capacitors to GND. |
| VREF | O | An internally generated reference voltage. Bypass with 0.22 μ F capacitor to GND. |
| ISSET | I | Chip current reference. Sets bias current for op-amps. The chip current is set by connecting this pin to VDD through a 2 M Ω resistor. Iset should be bypassed to GND with a 0.22 μ F capacitor. |

PARALLEL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE

| | | |
|------------------|----------------|--|
| ALE | I | Address latch enable. The falling edge of ALE latches the address on AD0-AD7 and the chip select on \overline{CS} . |
| AD0-AD7 | I/O / Tristate | Address/data bus. These bidirectional tri-state multi-plexed lines carry information to and from the internal registers. |
| \overline{CS} | I | Chip select. A low on this pin allows a read cycle or a write cycle to occur. AD0-AD7 will not be driven and no registers will be written if \overline{CS} (latched) is not active. \overline{CS} is latched on the falling edge of ALE. |
| CLK | O | Output clock. This pin is selectable under processor control to be either the crystal frequency (for use as a processor clock) or 16 x the data rate for use as a baud rate clock in QAM/DPSK modes only. The pin defaults to the crystal frequency on reset. |
| \overline{INT} | O | Interrupt. This open drain weak pullup, output signal is used to inform the processor that a detect flag has occurred. The processor must then read the detect register to determine which detect triggered the interrupt. \overline{INT} will stay active until the processor reads the detect register or does a full reset. |
| \overline{RD} | I | Read. A low requests a read of the SSI 73K324L internal registers. Data cannot be output unless both \overline{RD} and the latched \overline{CS} are active or low. |
| RESET | I | Reset. An active high signal on this pin will put the chip into an inactive state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, CR2, CR3, Tone) will be reset. The output of the CLK pin will be set to the crystal frequency. An internal pull down resistor permits power on reset using a capacitor to VDD. |
| \overline{WR} | I | Write. A low on this informs the SSI 73K324L that data is available on AD0-AD7 for writing into an internal register. Data is latched on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . No data is written unless both \overline{WR} and the latched \overline{CS} are low. |

Note: The Serial Control mode is provided in the parallel versions by tying ALE high and \overline{CS} low. In this configuration AD7 becomes DATA and AD0, AD1 and AD2 become A0, A1 and A2, respectively.

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

RS-232 INTERFACE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|------------|--|
| EXCLK | I | External Clock. This signal is used in synchronous transmission when the external timing option has been selected. In the External Timing mode the rising edge of EXCLK is used to strobe synchronous transmit data available on the TXD pin. Also used for serial control interface. |
| RXCLK | O/Tristate | Receive Clock Tri-statable. The falling edge of this clock output is coincident with the transitions in the serial received DPSK/QAM data output. The rising edge of RXCLK can be used to latch the valid output data. RXCLK will be valid as long as a carrier is present. In V.23 or V.21 mode a clock which is 16 x 1200/75 or 16 x 300 Hz data rate is output, respectively. |
| RXD | O | Received Data Output. Serial receive data is available on this pin. The data is always valid on the rising edge of RXCLK when in Synchronous mode. RXD will output constant marks if no carrier is detected. |
| TXCLK | O/Tristate | Transmit Clock Tri-statable. This signal is used in synchronous DPSK/QAM transmission to latch serial input data on the TXD pin. Data must be provided so that valid data is available on the rising edge of the TXCLK. The transmit clock is derived from different sources depending upon the Synchronization mode selection. In Internal Mode the clock is generated internally (2400 Hz for QAM, 1200 Hz for DPSK or 600 Hz for half-speed DPSK). In External Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the EXCLK pin. In Slave Mode TXCLK is phase locked to the RXCLK pin. TXCLK is always active. In V.23 or V.21 mode the output is a 16 x 1200/75 or 16 x 300 Hz clock, respectively. |
| TXD | I | Transmit Data Input. Serial data for transmission is input on this pin. In Synchronous modes, the data must be valid on the rising edge of the TXCLK clock. In Asynchronous modes (2400/1200/600 bit/s, or 75/300 baud) no clocking is necessary. DPSK/QAM data must be +1%, -2.5% or +2.3%, -2.5 % in Extended Overspeed mode. |

ANALOG INTERFACE

| | | |
|------|-----|--|
| RXA | I | Received modulated analog signal input from the phone line. |
| TXA | O | Transmit analog output to the phone line. |
| XTL1 | I | These pins are for the internal crystal oscillator requiring a 11.0592 MHz Parallel mode crystal. Two capacitors from these pins to ground are also required for proper crystal operation. Consult crystal manufacturer for proper values. XTL2 can also be driven from an external clock. |
| XTL2 | I/O | |

SSI 73K324L
CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A
Single-Chip Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

| SERIAL MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACE | | |
|---------------------------------|------|--|
| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
| A0-A2 | I | Register Address Selection. These lines carry register addresses and should be valid during any read or write operation. |
| DATA | I/O | Serial Control Data. Data for a read/write operation is clocked in or out on the falling edge of the EXCLK pin. The direction of data flow is controlled by the \overline{RD} pin. \overline{RD} low outputs data. \overline{RD} high inputs data. |
| \overline{RD} | I | Read. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K324L that data or status information is being read by the processor. The falling edge of the \overline{RD} signal will initiate a read from the addressed register. The \overline{RD} signal must continue for eight falling edges of EXCLK in order to read all eight bits of the referenced register. Read data is provided LSB first. Data will not be output unless the \overline{RD} signal is active. |
| \overline{WR} | I | Write. A low on this input informs the SSI 73K324L that data or status information has been shifted in through the DATA pin and is available for writing to an internal register. The normal procedure for a write is to shift in data LSB first on the DATA pin for eight consecutive falling edges of EXCLK and then to pulse \overline{WR} low. Data is written on the rising edge of \overline{WR} . |

Note: In the serial, 22-pin version, the pins AD0-AD7, ALE and \overline{CS} are removed and replaced with the pins; A0, A1, A2, DATA, and EXCLK. Also, the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} controls are used differently.

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER DESCRIPTIONS

Eight 8-bit internal registers are accessible for control and status monitoring. The registers are accessed in read or write operations by addressing the A0, A1 and A2 address lines in Serial mode, or the AD0, AD1 and AD2 lines in Parallel mode. The address lines are latched by ALE. Register CR0 controls the method by which data is transferred over the phone line. CR1 controls the interface between the microprocessor and

the SSI 73K324L internal state. DR is a detect register which provides an indication of monitored modem status conditions. TR, the tone control register, controls the DTMF generator, answer, guard tones, SCT, calling tone, and RXD output gate used in the modem initial connect sequence. CR2 is the primary DSP control interface and CR3 controls transmit attenuation and receive gain adjustments. All registers are read/write except for DR and ID which are read only. Register control and status bits are identified below:

REGISTER BIT SUMMARY

| | | ADDRESS | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----|---------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| REGISTER | | AD - A0 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | MODULATION TYPE 1 | MODULATION TYPE 0 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ORIGINATE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER/ADD PH. EQ. (V.23) | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 |
| DETECT REGISTER | DR | 010 | RECEIVE LEVEL | PATTERN S1 DET | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK DETECT | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE DETECT | CALL PROGRESS DETECT | SIGNAL QUALITY |
| tone CONTROL REGISTER | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD TONE/SCT/CALLING TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2/4 WIRE FDX | DTMF1/OVERSPEED | DTMF0/GUARD/ANSWER/CALLING/SCT |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | CR2 | 100 | 0 | SPECIAL REGISTER ACCESS | CALL INITIALIZE | TRANSMIT S1 | 16 WAY | RESET DSP | TRAIN INHIBIT | EQUALIZER ENABLE |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | CR3 | 101 | TXDALY | TRISTATE TX/RXCLK | 0 | RECEIVE GAIN BOOST | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 3 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 2 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 1 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 0 |
| SPECIAL REGISTER | SR | 101 | | TX BAUD CLOCK | RX UNSCR. DATA | | TXD SOURCE | SQ SELECT 1 | SQ SELECT 0 | |
| ID REGISTER | ID | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | USER DEFINABLE PERSONALITY | | | |

NOTE: When a register containing reserved control bits is written into, the reserved bits must be programmed as 0's.

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

REGISTER ADDRESS TABLE

| | | ADDRESS | | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|--|-----------|-----|--|---|--|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|---|--|
| REGISTER | | AD2 - AD0 | | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 0 | | CR0 | 000 | MODULATION OPTION | MODULATION TYPE 1 | MODULATION TYPE 0 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ORIGINATE | |
| | | | | QAM: 0=2400 BITS/S DPSK: 0=1200 BITS/S 1=600 BITS/S FSK: 0=V.23 1=V.21 | 10=QAM 00=DPSK 01=FSK | 0000=POWER DOWN 0001=INT SYNC 0010=EXT SYNC 0011=SLAVE SYNC 0100=ASYCH 8 BITS/CHAR 0101=ASYCH 9 BITS/CHAR 0110=ASYCH 10 BITS/CHAR 0111=ASYCH 11 BITS/CHAR 1000=FSK | | | 0=DISABLE TXA OUTPUT 1=ENABLE TXA OUTPUT | 0=ANSWER 1=ORIGINATE in V.23 0=BC xmit 1=MC xmit | | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 1 | | CR1 | 001 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 1 | TRANSMIT PATTERN 0 | ENABLE DETECT INTERRUPT | BYPASS SCRAMBLER/ADD PH. EQ. (V.23) | CLK CONTROL | RESET | TEST MODE 1 | TEST MODE 0 | |
| | | | | 00=TX DATA 01=TX ALTERNATE 10=TX MARK 11=TX SPACE | | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=NORMAL 1=BYPASS SCRAMBLER | 0=XTAL 1=16 X DATA RATE OUTPUT AT CLK PIN IN QAM/DPSK MODE ONLY | 0=NORMAL 1=RESET | 00=NORMAL 01=ANALOG LOOPBACK 10=REMOTE DIGITAL LOOPBACK 11=LOCAL DIGITAL LOOPBACK | | |
| DETECT REGISTER | | DR | 010 | RECEIVE LEVEL INDICATOR | S1 PATTERN DETECT | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARKS DETECT | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE DETECT | CP TONE DETECT | SIGNAL QUALITY INDICATOR | |
| | | | | 0= SIGNAL BELOW THRESHOLD 1= ABOVE THRESHOLD | 0=NOT PRESENT 1=PATTERN FOUND | OUTPUTS RECEIVED DATA STREAM | | 0=CONDITION NOT DETECTED 1=CONDITION DETECTED | | | 0=GOOD 1=BAD | |
| TONE CONTROL REGISTER | | TR | 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTROL | TRANSMIT GUARD/ CALLING/ SCT TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF3 | DTMF2/ V.23 FDX | DTMF1/ OVERSPEED | DTMF0/ GUARD/ ANSWER/ CALLING/SCT | |
| | | | | RXD PIN 0=NORMAL 1=TRI-STATE | 0=OFF 1=ON | 0=OFF 1=ON | 1=TX DTMF | 4 BIT CODE FOR 1 OF 16 DUAL TONE COMBINATIONS 0=NORMAL OPERATION 1=ALLOWS V.23 FULL DUPLEX OPERATION | | | GUARD: 0 - 1800 HZ 1 - 550 HZ ANSWER: 0 - 2225 HZ 1 - 2100 HZ CALLING: 0 - 1300 HZ SCT: 1 - 900 HZ | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 2 | | CR2 | 100 | MUST BE 0 | SPECIAL REGISTER ACCESS | CALL INITIALIZE | TRANSMIT S1 | 16 WAY | RESET DSP | TRAIN INHIBIT | EQUALIZER ENABLE | |
| | | | | | 0=ACCESS CR3 1=ACCESS SPECIAL REGISTER | 0=DSP IN DEMO MODE 1=DSP IN CALL PROGRESS MODE | 0=NORMAL DOTTING 1=S1 | 0=RX=TX 1=RX=16 WAY | 0=DSP INACTIVE 1=DSP ACTIVE | 0=ADAPT EQ IN INIT 1=ADAPT EQ FROZEN | 0=ADAPT EQ OK TO ADAPT 1=ADAPT EQ OK TO ADAPT | |
| CONTROL REGISTER 3 | | CR3 | 101 | TXDALT | TRISTATE TX/RCLK | 0 | RECEIVE GAIN BOOST | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 3 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 2 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 1 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 0 | |
| | | | | ALTERNATE TRANSMIT DATA SOURCE | 0=CLOCK DRIVEN 1=CLOCK TRISTATE | | 0=NO BOOST 1=18 dB BOOST | 0000-1111, SETS TRANSMIT ATTENUATOR 16 dB RANGE DEFAULT=0100 = -10 dBm0 | | | | |
| SPECIAL REGISTER | | SR | 101 | | TX BAUD CLOCK | RX UNSCR. DATA | | TXD SOURCE | SQ SELECT1 | SQ SELECT0 | | |
| | | | | | OUTPUTS TXBAUD CLOCK | OUTPUTS UNSCR. DATA | | 0=TXD PIN 1=TX DATA CR3-D7 | 00=10 ⁻⁵ BER 01=10 ⁻⁶ BER 10=10 ⁻⁴ BER 11=10 ⁻³ BER | | | |
| ID REGISTER | | 10 | 110 | ID | ID | ID | ID | USER DEFINABLE PERSONALITY | | | | |

00XX=73K212L, 322L, 321L
01XX=73K221L, 302L
10XX=73K222L
1100=73K224L
1110=73K324L
1101=73K312L

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|------------------|--------------------|---|--------------------|--|----------------------|
| CR0 000 | MODUL. OPTION | MODUL. TYPE 1 | MODUL. TYPE 0 | TRANSMIT MODE 2 | TRANSMIT MODE 1 | TRANSMIT MODE 0 | TRANSMIT ENABLE | ANSWER/ ORIGINATE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D0 | Answer/ Originate | | 0 | | Selects Answer mode (transmit in high band, receive in low band) or in V.23 HDX mode, receive at 1200 bit/s and transmit at 75 bit/s. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Selects Originate mode (transmit in low band, receive in high band) or in V.23 HDX mode, receive at 75 bit/s and transmit at 1200 bit/s. | | | |
| | | | | | Note: This bit works with Tone Register bits D0 and D6 to program special tones detected in the Detect Register. See Detect and Tone Registers. | | | |
| D1 | Transmit Enable | | 0 | | Disables transmit output at TXA. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Enables transmit output at TXA. | | | |
| | | | | | Note: Transmit Enable must be set to 1 to allow activation of Answer Tone, DTMF, or Carrier. | | | |
| D5, D4, D3, D2 | Transmit Mode | | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | | |
| | | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | | | | | | Selects Power Down mode. All functions disabled except digital interface. | |
| | | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | | |
| | | | | | | | Internal Synchronous mode. In this mode TXCLK is an internally derived 600, 1200 or 2400 Hz signal. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK. Receive data is clocked out of RXD on the falling edge of RXCLK. | |
| | | | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | | | | | | | External Synchronous mode. Operation is identical to internal synchronous, but TXCLK is connected internally to EXCLK pin, and a 600, 1200 or 2400 Hz clock must be supplied externally. | |
| | | | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | | |
| | | | | | | | Slave Synchronous mode. Same operation as other Synchronous modes. TXCLK is connected internally to the RXCLK pin in this mode. | |
| | | | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | | | | | | Selects Asynchronous mode - 8 bits/character (1 start bit, 6 data bits, 1 stop bit). | |
| | | | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | | |
| | | | | | | | Selects Asynchronous mode - 9 bits/character (1 start bit, 7 data bits, 1 stop bit). | |
| | | | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | | | | | | | Selects Asynchronous mode - 10 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit). | |
| | | | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | | |
| | | | | | | | Selects Asynchronous mode - 11 bits/character (1 start bit, 8 data bits, Parity and/or 1 or 2 stop bits). | |
| | | | 1 | X | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | | | | | | Selects FSK operation. | |

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 0 (Continued)

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-------------------|--------------|---|
| D6,D5 | Modulation Type | D6 D5 1 0 | QAM |
| | | 0 0 | DPSK |
| | | 0 1 | FSK |
| D7 | Modulation Option | 0 | QAM selects 2400 bit/s. DPSK selects 1200 bit/s. FSK selects V.23 mode. |
| | | 1 | DPSK selects 600 bit/s. FSK selects V.21 mode. |

CONTROL REGISTER 1

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-----------------------------|--------------|---|
| D1, D0 | Test Mode | D1 D0 0 0 | Selects Normal Operating mode. |
| | | 0 1 | Analog Loopback mode. Loops the transmitted analog signal back to the receiver, and causes the receiver to use the same carrier frequency as the transmitter. To squelch the TXA pin, transmit enable bit must be low. Tone Register bit D2 must be zero. |
| | | 1 0 | Selects remote digital loopback. Received data is looped back to transmit data internally, and RXD is forced to a mark. Data on TXD is ignored. |
| | | 1 1 | Selects local digital loopback. Internally loops TXD back to RXD and continues to transmit data carrier at TXA pin. |
| D2 | Reset | 0 | Selects normal operation. |
| | | 1 | Resets modem to power down state. All control register bits (CR0, CR1, CR2, CR3 and Tone) are reset to zero except CR3 bit D2. The output of the clock pin will be set to the crystal frequency. |
| D3 | CLK Control (Clock Control) | 0 | Selects 11.0592 MHz crystal echo output at CLK pin. |
| | | 1 | Selects 16 X the data rate output at CLK pin in QAM and DPSK only. |

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 1 (Continued)

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-------------------------------|-----------|--|
| D4 | Bypass Scrambler/ Add Ph. Eq. | 0 | Selects normal operation. DPSK and QAM data is passed through scrambler. |
| | | 1 | Selects Scrambler Bypass. DPSK and QAM data is routed around scrambler in the transmit path. In the V.23 mode, additional phase equalization is added to the main channel filters when D4 is set to 1. |
| D5 | Enable Detect Interrupt | 0 | Disables interrupt at $\overline{\text{INT}}$ pin. All interrupts are normally disabled in Power Down mode. |
| | | 1 | Enables $\overline{\text{INT}}$ output. An interrupt will be generated with a change in status of DR bits D1-D4 and D6. The answer tone and call progress detect interrupts are masked when the TX enable bit is set. Carrier detect is masked when TX DTMF is activated. All interrupts will be disabled if the device is in Power Down mode. |
| D7, D6 | Transmit Pattern | D7 D6 | |
| | | 0 0 | Selects normal data transmission as controlled by the state of the TXD pin. |
| | | 0 1 | Selects an alternating mark/space transmit pattern for modem testing and handshaking. Also used for S1 pattern generation. See CR2 bit D4. |
| | | 1 0 | Selects a constant mark transmit pattern. |
| | | 1 1 | Selects a constant space transmit pattern. |

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

DETECT REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|---------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------|---|--|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| DR 010 | RECEIVE LEVEL INDICATOR | S1 PATTERN DETECT | RECEIVE DATA | UNSCR. MARK DETECT | CARRIER DETECT | SPECIAL TONE DETECT | CALL PROG. DETECT | SIGNAL QUALITY INDICATOR |
| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | Signal Quality Indicator | 0 | | Indicates normal received signal. | | | | |
| | | 1 | | Indicates low received signal quality (above average error rate). Interacts with Special Register SQ bits D2, D1. | | | | |
| D1 | Call Progress Detect | 0 | | No call progress tone detected. | | | | |
| | | 1 | | Indicates presence of call progress tones. The call progress detection circuitry is activated by energy in the normal 350 to 620 Hz call progress band. | | | | |
| D2 | Special Tone Detect | 0 | | Condition not detected | | | | |
| | | 1 | | Condition detected | | | | |
| | | CR0 D0 | TR D0 | CR2 D5 | | | | |
| | | 1 | 0 | 1 | 2225 Hz \pm 10 Hz answer tone detected in V.22bis, V.22, V.21 modes. | | | |
| | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2100 Hz \pm 21 Hz answer tone detected in V.22bis, V.22, V.21 modes. | | | |
| | | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1300 Hz calling tone detected in V.22 bis, V.22, V.21, V.23 modes. | | | |
| | | 0 | X | 0 | 900 Hz SCT tone detected in V.23 mode. | | | |
| D3 | Carrier Detect | 0 | | No carrier detected in the receive channel. | | | | |
| | | 1 | | Indicated carrier has been detected in the received channel. Should be time qualified by software. | | | | |
| D4 | Unscr. Mark Detect | 0 | | No unscrambled mark being received. | | | | |
| | | 1 | | Indicates detection of unscrambled marks in the received data. Should be time qualified by software. | | | | |
| D5 | Receive Data | | | Continuously outputs the received data stream. This data is the same as that output on the RXD pin, but it is not disabled when RXD is tri-stated. | | | | |
| D6 | S1 Pattern Detect | 0 | | No S1 pattern being received. | | | | |
| | | 1 | | S1 pattern detected. Should be time qualified by software. S1 is an unscrambled double dibit (11001100...) sent in DPSK 1200 bit/s mode. Generated pattern must be properly aligned to transmitter baud clock to be detected. | | | | |
| D7 | Receive Level Indicator | 0 | | Received signal level below threshold, (\approx -25 dBm0);can use receive gain boost (+18 dB.) | | | | |
| | | 1 | | Received signal above threshold. | | | | |

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

TONE REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|----------------|--|----------------------------------|---|---------------|--|------------------|--------------------|--|
| TR 011 | RXD OUTPUT CONTR. | TRANSMIT GUARD/ CALLING/SCT TONE | TRANSMIT ANSWER TONE | TRANSMIT DTMF | DTMF 3 | DTMF 2/ WIRE FDX | DTMF 1/ OVER-SPEED | DTMF 0/ G.T./ANSW./ CALLING/SCT TONE/SEL |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D0, D4, D5, D6 | DTMF 0/ Guard Tone/ Answer Tone/ Calling/SCT Tone/ Transmit Select | | D6 D5 D4 D0 | | D0 interacts with bits D6, D5, D4, and CR0 as shown. | | | |
| | | | X X 1 X | | Transmit DTMF tones (overrides all other functions). | | | |
| | | | 1 0 0 0 | | Select 1800 Hz guard tone if in V.22bis or V.22 and Answer mode in CR0. | | | |
| | | | 1 0 0 1 | | Select 550 Hz guard tone if in V.22bis or V.22 and Answer mode in CR0. | | | |
| | | | Note: Bit D0 also selects the answer tone detected in Originate mode, see Detect Register Special Tone Detect (bit D2) for details. | | | | | |
| | | | 1 0 0 0 | | 1300 Hz calling tone will be transmitted if V.21, V.22, V.22bis or V.23 Originate mode is selected in CR0. | | | |
| | | | X 1 0 0 | | Transmit 2225 Hz Answer Tone. Must be in DPSK Answer mode. | | | |
| | | | X 1 0 1 | | Transmit 2100 Hz Answer Tone. Must be in DPSK Answer mode. | | | |
| D1 | DTMF 1/ Overspeed | | D4 D1 | | D1 interacts with D4 as shown. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | | Asynchronous QAM/DPSK +1% -2.5%. (Normal). | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | | Asynchronous QAM/DPSK, 2400, 1200 or 600 bit/s +2.3% -2.5%. (Extended overspeed). | | | |
| D2 | DTMF 2/ 4 WIRE FDX | | D4 D2 | | | | | |
| | | | 0 0 | | Selects 2-wire full-duplex or half-duplex. | | | |
| | | | 0 1 | | D2 selects 4 wire full duplex in the Modulation mode selected. The receive path corresponds to the ANS/ ORIG bit CR0 D0 in terms of high or low band selection. The transmitter is in the same band as the receiver, but does not have magnitude filtering or equalization on its signal as in the receive path. | | | |

Note: DTMF0 - DTMF2 should be set to an appropriate state after DTMF dialing to avoid unintended operation.

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

TR 011

3

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

66

67

68

69

70

71

72

73

74

75

76

77

78

79

80

81

82

83

84

85

86

87

88

89

90

91

92

93

94

95

96

97

98

99

100

101

102

103

104

105

106

107

108

109

110

111

112

113

114

115

116

117

118

119

120

121

122

123

124

125

126

127

128

129

130

131

132

133

134

135

136

137

138

139

140

141

142

143

144

145

146

147

148

149

150

151

152

153

154

155

156

157

158

159

160

161

162

163

164

165

166

167

168

169

170

171

172

173

174

175

176

177

178

179

180

181

182

183

184

185

186

187

188

189

190

191

192

193

194

195

196

197

198

199

200

201

202

203

204

205

206

207

208

209

210

211

212

213

214

215

216

217

218

219

220

221

222

223

224

225

226

227

228

229

230

231

232

233

234

235

236

237

238

239

240

241

242

243

244

245

246

247

248

249

250

251

252

253

254

255

256

257

258

259

260

261

262

263

264

265

266

267

268

269

270

271

272

273

274

275

276

277

278

279

280

281

282

283

284

285

286

287

288

289

290

291

292

293

294

295

296

297

298

299

300

301

302

303

304

305

306

307

308

309

310

311

312

313

314

315

316

317

318

319

320

321

322

323

324

325

326

327

328

329

330

331

332

333

334

335

336

337

338

339

340

341

342

343

344

345

346

347

348

349

350

351

352

353

354

355

356

357

358

359

360

361

362

363

364

365

366

367

368

369

370

371

372

373

374

375

376

377

378

379

380

381

382

383

384

385

386

387

388

389

390

391

392

393

394

395

396

397

398

399

400

401

402

403

404

405

406

407

408

409

410

411

412

413

414

415

416

417

418

419

420

421

422

423

424

425

426

427

428

429

430

431

432

433

434

435

436

437

438

439

440

441

442

443

444

445

446

447

448

449

450

451

452

453

454

455

456

457

458

459

460

461

462

463

464

465

466

467

468

469

470

471

472

473

474

475

476

477

478

479

480

481

482

483

484

485

486

487

488

489

490

491

492

493

494

495

496

497

498

499

500

501

502

503

504

505

506

507

508

509

510

511

512

513

514

515

516

517

518

519

520

521

522

523

524

525

526

527

528

529

530

531

532

533

534

535

536

537

538

539

540

541

542

543

544

545

546

547

548

549

550

551

552

553

554

555

556

557

558

559

560

561

562

563

564

565

566

567

568

569

570

571

572

573

574

575

576

577

578

579

580

581

582

583

584

585

586

587

588

589

590

591

592

593

594

595

596

597

598

599

600

601

602

603

604

605

606

607

608

609

610

611

612

613

614

615

616

617

618

619

620

621

622

623

624

625

626

627

628

629

630

631

632

633

634

635

636

637

638

639

640

641

642

643

644

645

646

647

648

649

650

651

652

653

654

655

656

657

658

659

660

661

662

663

664

665

666

667

668

669

670

671

672

673

674

675

676

677

678

679

680

681

682

683

684

685

686

687

688

689

690

691

692

693

694

695

696

697

698

699

700

701

702

703

704

705

706

707

708

709

710

711

712

713

714

715

716

717

718

719

720

721

722

723

724

725

726

727

728

729

730

731

732

733

734

735

736

737

738

739

740

741

742

743

744

745

746

747

748

749

750

751

752

753

754

755

756

757

758

759

760

761

762

763

764

765

766

767

768

769

770

771

772

773

774

775

776

777

778

779

780

781

782

783

784

785

786

787

788

789

790

791

792

793

794

795

796

797

798

799

800

801

802

803

804

805

806

807

808

809

810

811

812

813

814

815

816

817

818

819

820

821

822

823

824

825

826

827

828

829

830

831

832

833

834

835

836

837

838

839

840

841

842

843

844

845

846

847

848

849

850

851

852

853

854

855

856

857

858

859

860

861

862

863

864

865

866

867

868

869

870

871

872

873

874

875

876

877

878

879

880

881

882

883

884

885

886

887

888

889

890

891

892

893

894

895

896

897

898

899

900

901

902

903

904

905

906

907

908

909

910

911

912

913

914

915

916

917

918

919

920

921

922

923

924

925

926

927

928

929

930

931

932

933

934

935

936

937

938

939

940

941

942

943

944

945

946

947

948

949

950

951

952

953

954

955

956

957

958

959

960

961

962

963

964

965

966

967

968

969

970

971

972

973

974

975

976

977

978

979

980

981

982

983

984

985

986

987

988

989

990

991

992

993

994

995

996

997

998

999

1000

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 2

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|---|--------|--------------|------------------|---------------------|
| CR2 100 | 0 | SPEC REG ACCESS | CALL INIT | TRANSMIT S1 | 16 WAY | RESET DSP | TRAIN INHIBIT | EQUALIZER ENABLE |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION | | | | |
| D0 | Equalizer Enable | | 0 | The adaptive equalizer is in its initialized state. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | The adaptive equalizer is enabled. This bit is used in handshakes to control when the equalizer should calculate its coefficients. | | | | |
| D1 | Train Inhibit | | 0 | The adaptive equalizer is active. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | The adaptive equalizer coefficients are frozen. | | | | |
| D2 | RESET DSP | | 0 | The DSP is inactive and all variables are initialized. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | The DSP is running based on the mode set by other control bits | | | | |
| D3 | 16 Way | | 0 | The receiver and transmitter are using the same decision plane (based on the Modulator Control Mode). | | | | |
| | | | 1 | The receiver, independent of the transmitter, is forced into a 16 point decision plane. Used for QAM handshaking. | | | | |
| D4 | Transmit S1 | | 0 | The transmitter when placed in alternating Mark/Space mode transmits 0101 scrambled or not dependent on the bypass scrambler bit and Modulation mode. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | When this bit is 1 and only when the transmitter is placed in alternating Mark/Space mode by CR1 bits D7, D6, an unscrambled repetitive double dibit pattern of 00 and 11 at 1200 bit/s (S1) is sent. | | | | |
| D5 | Call Init | | 0 | The DSP is setup to do demodulation and pattern detection based on the Various mode bits. Both answer tones are detected in Demod Mode concurrently; TR D0 is ignored. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | The DSP decodes call progress, calling tones, unscrambled mark, and 2100 Hz and 2225 Hz answer tones. | | | | |
| D6 | Special Register Access | | 0 | Normal CR3 access. | | | | |
| | | | 1 | Setting this bit and addressing CR3 allows access to the SPECIAL REGISTER. See the SPECIAL REGISTER for details. | | | | |
| D7 | N/A | | 0 | Must be 0 for normal operation. | | | | |

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

CONTROL REGISTER 3

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|--|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| CR3 101 | TXDALT | TRISTATE TX/RXCLK | 0 | RECEIVE ENABLE BOOST | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 3 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 2 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 1 | TRANSMIT ATTEN. 0 |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | CONDITION | | DESCRIPTION | | | |
| D3, D2, D1,D0 | Transmit Attenuator | | D3 D2 D1 D0 | | Sets the attenuation level of the transmitted signal in 1dB steps. The default (D3-D0=0100) is for a transmit level of -10 dBm0. The total range is 16 dB. | | | |
| | | | 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 | - | | | | |
| D4 | Receive Gain Boost (18 dB) | | 0 | | 18 dB receive front end boost is not used. | | | |
| | | | 1 | | Boost is in the path. This boost does not change reference levels. It is used to extend dynamic range by compensating for internally generated noise when receiving weak signals. The receive level detect signal and knowledge of the hybrid and transmit attenuator setting will determine when boost should be enabled. | | | |
| D5 | Not Used | | 0 | | Not used. Only write zeros this location. | | | |
| D6 | Tristate TXCLK/RXCLK | | 0 | | TXCLK, RXCLK outputs driven | | | |
| | | | 1 | | TXCLK, RXCLK outputs in Tristate mode | | | |
| D7 | TXDALT | | Spec. Reg. bit D3=1 | | Alternate TX data source. See Special Register. | | | |

ID REGISTER

SPECIAL REGISTER

| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|------------|------------------|-----------------|--|----|---------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----|
| SR 101 | | TXBAUD CLOCK | RXUN- DSCR DATA | | TXD SOURCE | SIGNAL QUALITY LEVEL SELECT1 | SIGNAL QUALITY LEVEL SELECT0 | |
| BIT NO. | NAME | | DESCRIPTION | | | | | |
| D7, D4, D0 | | | NOT USED AT THIS TIME. Only write ZEROs to these bits. | | | | | |
| D6 | TXBAUD CLK | | TXBAUD clock is the transmit baud-synchronous clock that can be used to synchronize the input of arbitrary quad/di-bit patterns. The rising edge of TXBAUD signals the latching of a baud-worth of data internally. Synchronous data to be entered via the TXDALT bit, CR3 bit D7, should have data transitions that start 1/2 bit period delayed from the TXBAUD clock edges. | | | | | |
| D5 | RXUNDSCR DATA | | This bit outputs the data received before going to the descrambler. This is useful for sending special unscrambled patterns that can be used for signaling. | | | | | |

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

SPECIAL REGISTER (Continued)

| BIT NO. | NAME | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-----------------------------|--|
| D3 | TXD SOURCE | This bit selects the transmit data source; either the TXD pin if ZERO or the TXDALT if this bit is a ONE. The TRANSMIT PATTERN bits D7 and D6 in CR1 override either of these sources. |
| D2, D1 | SIGNAL QUALITY LEVEL SELECT | The signal quality indicator is a logical zero when the signal received is acceptable for low error rate reception. It is determined by the value of the Mean Squared Error (MSE) calculated in the decisioning process when compared to a given threshold. This threshold can be set to four levels of error rate. The SQI bit will be low for good or average connections. As the error rate crosses the threshold setting, the SQI bit will toggle at a 1.66 ms rate. Toggling will continue until the error rate indicates that the data pump has lost convergence and a retrain is required. At that point the SQI bit will be a ONE constantly. The SQI bit and threshold selection are valid for QAM and DPSK only. |
| | D2 D1 | TYPICAL THRESHOLD VALUE |
| | 0 0 | 10 ⁻⁵ |
| | 0 1 | 10 ⁻⁶ |
| | 1 0 | 10 ⁻⁴ |
| | 1 1 | 10 ⁻³ |

NOTE: This register is "mapped" and is accessed by setting CR2 bit D6 to a ONE and addressing CR3. This register provides functions to the 73K324L user that are not necessary in normal communications. Bits D7-D4 are read only, while D3-D0 are read/write. To return to normal CR3 access, CR2 bit D6 must be returned to a ZERO.

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|----|----|----|----|----------------------------|----|----|----|
| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| ID | ID | ID | ID | ID | USER DEFINABLE PERSONALITY | | | |
| 110 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | | | |

| BIT NO. | NAME | CONDITION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| D7, D6, D5, D4 | Device Identification Signature | D7 D6 D5 D4 | Indicates Device: |
| | | 0 0 X X | SSI 73K212L or 73K322L or 73K321L |
| | | 0 1 X X | SSI 73K221L or 73K302L |
| | | 1 0 X X | SSI 73K222L |
| | | 1 1 0 0 | SSI 73K224L |
| | | 1 1 1 0 | SSI 73K324L |
| | | 1 1 0 1 | SSI 73K312L |

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|------------------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 7V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260°C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD+0.3V |
| Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected. | |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| VDD Supply voltage | | 4.5 | 5 | 5.5 | V |
| External Components (Refer to Application section for placement.) | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass capacitor | (VREF to GND) | 0.22 | 0 | 0 | μF |
| Bias setting resistor | (Placed between VDD and ISET pins) | 1.8 | 2 | 2.2 | MΩ |
| ISET Bypass capacitor | (ISET pin to GND) | 0.22 | 1 | 1 | μF |
| VDD Bypass capacitor 1 | (VDD to GND) | 0.22 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass capacitor 2 | (VDD to GND) | 22 | | | μF |
| XTL1 Load Capacitance | Depends on crystal requirements | | 18 | 39 | pF |
| XTL2 Load Capacitance | Depends on crystal requirements | | 18 | 27 | pF |
| Clock Variation | (11.0592 MHz) Crystal or external clock | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temperature | | -40 | | 85 | °C |

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------|-----|-----|-------|
| IDD, Supply Current | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | | | |
| | ISET Resistor = 2 MΩ | | | | |
| IDD1, Active | Operating with crystal oscillator. | | 18 | 25 | mA |
| IDD2, Idle | < 5 pF capacitive load on CLK pin. | | | 5 | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | |
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | | | 0.8 | V |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | VDD | V |
| All Inputs except Reset XTL1, XTL2 | | 2.0 | | VDD | V |
| Reset, XTL1, XTL2 | | 3.0 | | VDD | V |
| IIH, Input High Current | VI = VDD | | | 100 | μA |
| IIL, Input Low Current | VI = 0V | -200 | | | μA |
| Reset Pull-down Current | Reset = VDD | -2 | -30 | -70 | μA |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | |
| VOH, Output High Voltage | IO = IOH Min IOUT = -0.4 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| VOL, Output Low Voltage | IO = IOUT = 1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| RXD Tri-State Pull-up Curr. | RXD = GND | -2 | | -50 | μA |
| Capacitance | | | | | |
| Maximum Capacitive Load | | | | | |
| CLK | | | | 25 | pF |
| Input Capacitance | All Digital Inputs | | | 10 | pF |

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING

(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| QAM/DPSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Carrier Suppression | Measured at TXA | -35 | | | dB |
| Output Amplitude | TX scrambled marks ATT=0100 (default) | -11.5 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| FSK Modulator/Demodulator | | | | | |
| Output Freq. Error | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | -.31 | | +0.20 | % |
| Transmit Level | ATT = 0100 (Default) Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11.5 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| TXA Output Distortion | All products through BPF | | | -45 | dB |
| Output Bias Distortion at RXD | Dotting Pattern measured at RXD Receive Level -20 dBm, SNR 20 dB | -10 | | +10 | % |
| Output Jitter at RXD | Integrated for 5 seconds | -15 | | +15 | % |
| Sum of Bias Distortion and Output Jitter at RXD | Integrated for 5 seconds | -15 | | +15 | % |
| 2100 Hz Answer Tone Generator | | | | | |
| Output Amplitude | ATT = 0100 (Default Level) Not in V.21 or V.23 Mode | -11.5 | -10 | -9 | dBm0 |
| Output Distortion | Distortion products in receive band | | | -40 | dB |
| DTMF Generator Not in V.21 or V.23 mode | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | | -0.03 | | +0.25 | % |
| Output Amplitude | Low Band, ATT = 0100 | -10 | | -8 | dBm0 |
| Output Amplitude | High Band, ATT = 0100 | -8 | | -6 | dBm0 |
| Twist | High-Band to Low-Band | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | dB |
| Receiver Dynamic Range | Refer to Performance Curves | -43 | | -3.0 | dBm0 |
| Call Progress Detector In Call Init mode | | | | | |
| Detect Level | 460 Hz input signal | -34 | | 0 | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | | | | -40 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | | | 25 | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | | | 25 | ms |
| Hysteresis | @ 460 Hz input signal | 2 | | | dB |

NOTE: Parameters expressed in dBm0 refer to the following definition:

0 dB loss in the Transmit path to the line.

2 dB gain in the Receive path from the line.

Refer to the Basic Box Modem diagram in the Applications section for the DAA design.

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (continued)

| PARAMETERS | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|------|--|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| Carrier Detect Receive Gain Boost “On” for Lower Input Level Measurements | | | | | | |
| Threshold | | QAM/DPSK or FSK receive data | -48 | | -43 | dBm0 |
| Hysteresis | | All Modes | 2 | | | dB |
| Delay Time | FSK | 70 dBm0 to -6 dBm0 | 25 | | 37 | ms |
| | | 70 dBm0 to -40 dBm0 | 25 | | 37 | ms |
| | DPSK | -70 dBm0 to -6 dBm0 | 7 | | 17 | ms |
| | | -70 dBm0 to -40 dBm0 | 7 | | 17 | ms |
| | QAM | -70 dBm0 to -6 dBm0 | 25 | | 37 | ms |
| | | -70 dBm0 to -40 dBm0 | 25 | | 37 | ms |
| Hold Time | FSK | -6 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 25 | | 37 | ms |
| | | -40 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 15 | | 30 | ms |
| | DPSK | -6 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 20 | | 29 | ms |
| | | -40 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 14 | | 21 | ms |
| | QAM | -6 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 25 | | 32 | ms |
| | | -40 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 8 | | 28 | ms |
| Special Tone Detectors | | | | | | |
| Detect Level | | See definitions for D0 of Tone Register | -48 | | -43 | dBm0 |
| Delay and Hold Time | | | | | | |
| 2225 or 2100 Hz answer tone | | Call INIT mode 2225 ± 10 Hz 2100 ± 21 Hz | 6 | | 50 | ms |
| 1300 Hz calling tone | | Tone Accuracy +3, -5% | 10 | | 45 | ms |
| 900 Hz SCT Receive V.23 main channel | | Tone Accuracy ±9 Hz | 10 | | 45 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | | 2 | | | dB |
| Pattern Detectors DPSK Mode | | | | | | |
| S1 Pattern | | | | | | |
| Delay Time | | For signals from -6 to -40 dBm0, | 10 | | 55 | ms |
| Hold Time | | Demod Mode | 10 | | 45 | ms |
| Unscrambled Mark | | | | | | |
| Delay Time | | For signals from -6 to -40 | 10 | | 45 | ms |
| Hold Time | | Demod or call Init Mode | 10 | | 45 | ms |
| Receive Level Indicator | | | | | | |
| Detect On | | | -22 | | -28 | dBm0 |
| Valid after Carrier Detect | | DPSK Mode | 1 | 4 | 7 | ms |

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|--|-------|---------|-------|------------|
| Output Smoothing Filter | | | | | |
| Output Impedance | TXA pin | | 200 | 300 | Ω |
| Output Load | TXA pin; FSK Single | 10 | | | k Ω |
| | Tone out for THD = -50 dB in 0.3 to 3.4 kHz range | | | 50 | pF |
| Maximum Transmitted Energy | 4 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -35 | dBm0 |
| | 10 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -55 | dBm0 |
| | 12 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -65 | dBm0 |
| Anti Alias Low Pass Filter | | | | | |
| Maximum allowed Out-of-Band Signal Energy (Defines Hybrid Trans- Hybrid loss requirements) | Scrambled data at 2400 bit/s in opposite band | | -14 | | dBm |
| | Sinusoids out of band | | -9 | | dBm |
| Transmit Attenuator | | | | | |
| Range of Transmit Level | Default ATT = 0100 (-10 dBm0) 1111-0000 | -21 | | -6 | dBm0 |
| Step Accuracy | | -0.15 | | +0.15 | dB |
| Clock Noise | TXA pin; 153.6 kHz | | 1.5 | | mV rms |
| Carrier Offset | | | | | |
| Capture Range | Originate or Answer | -7 | ± 5 | +7 | Hz |
| Recovered Clock | | | | | |
| Capture Range | % of data rate originate or answer | -0.02 | | +0.02 | % |
| Guard Tone Generator | | | | | |
| Tone Accuracy | 550 Hz | | +1.2 | | % |
| | 1800 Hz | | -0.8 | | % |
| Tone Level | 550 Hz | -4.5 | -3.0 | -1.5 | dB |
| (Below QAM/DPSK Output) | 1800 Hz | -7.5 | -6.1 | -4.5 | dB |
| Harmonic Distortion (700 to 2900 Hz) | 550 or 1800 Hz | | | -50 | dB |

SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (Continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|-----|-----|---------|-------|
| Timing (Refer to Timing Diagrams) | | | | | |
| Parallel Mode: | | | | | |
| TAL | $\overline{CS}/\text{Addr.}$ setup before ALE Low | 30 | | | ns |
| TLA | $\overline{CS}/\text{Addr.}$ hold after ALE Low | 6 | | | ns |
| TLC | ALE Low to $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Low | 40 | | | ns |
| TCL | $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Control to ALE High | 10 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} Low | | | 90 | ns |
| TLL | ALE width | 25 | | | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after \overline{RD} High | | | 40 | ns |
| TRW | \overline{RD} width | 70 | | | ns |
| TWW | \overline{WR} width | 70 | | | ns |
| TDW | Data setup before \overline{WR} High | 70 | | | ns |
| TWD | Data hold after \overline{WR} High | 20 | | | ns |
| Serial Mode: | | | | | |
| TRCK | Clock high after \overline{RD} | 250 | | T1 | ns |
| TAR | Address setup before \overline{RD} low | 0 | | | ns |
| TRA | Address hold after \overline{RD} low | 350 | | | ns |
| TRD | \overline{RD} to data valid | | | 110 | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after \overline{RD} high | | | 50 | ns |
| TCKDR | Read data out after falling edge of EXCLK | | | 300 | ns |
| TWW | \overline{WR} width | 350 | | | ns |
| TAW | Address setup before \overline{WR} | 50 | | | ns |
| TWA | Address hold after rising edge of \overline{WR} | 50 | | | ns |
| TCKDW | Write data hold after falling edge of EXCLK | 200 | | | ns |
| TCKW | \overline{WR} high after falling edge of EXCLK | 330 | | T1 & T2 | ns |
| TDCK | Data setup before falling edge of EXCLK | 50 | | | ns |
| T1, T2 | Minimum period | 500 | | | ns |
| Note: T1 and T2 are the low/high periods, respectively, of EXCLK in Serial mode. | | | | | |

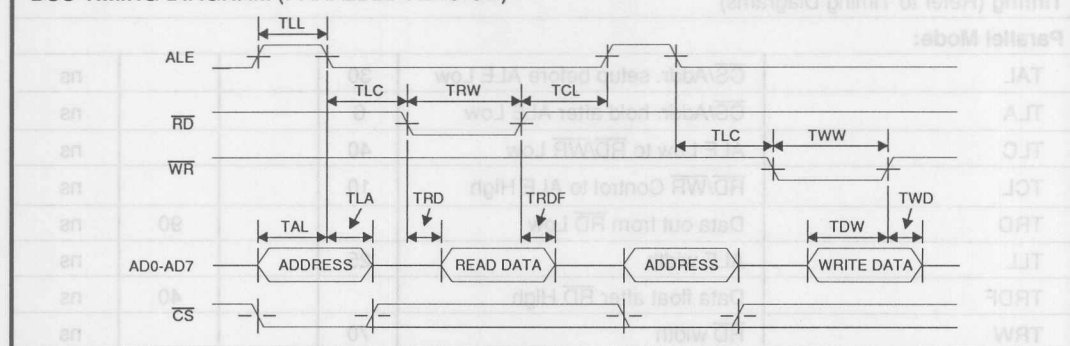
SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

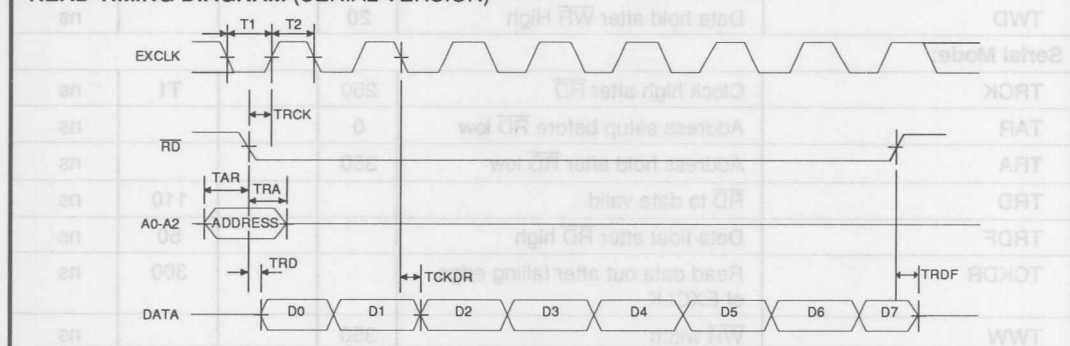
Single-Chip Modem

TIMING DIAGRAMS

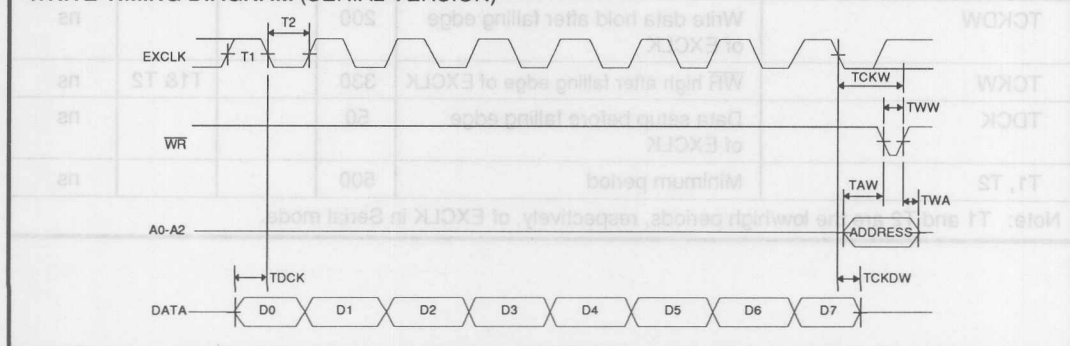
BUS TIMING DIAGRAM (PARALLEL VERSION)



READ TIMING DIAGRAM (SERIAL VERSION)

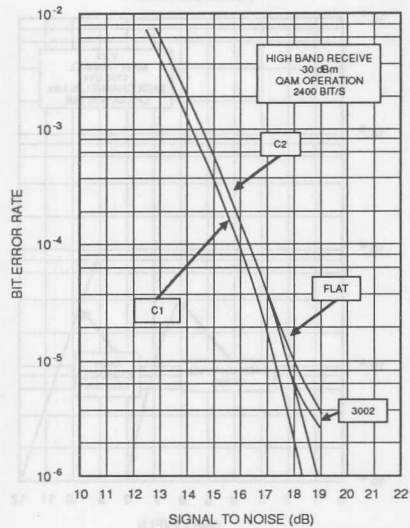


WRITE TIMING DIAGRAM (SERIAL VERSION)

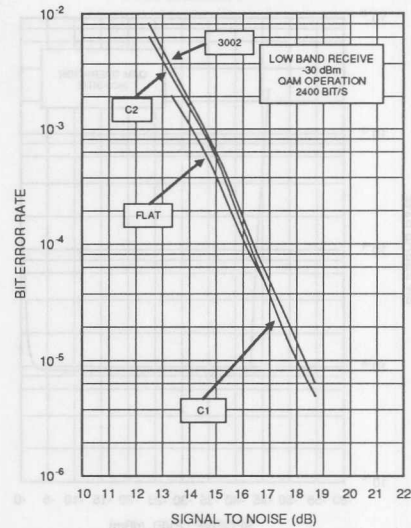


SSI 73K324L CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A Single-Chip Modem

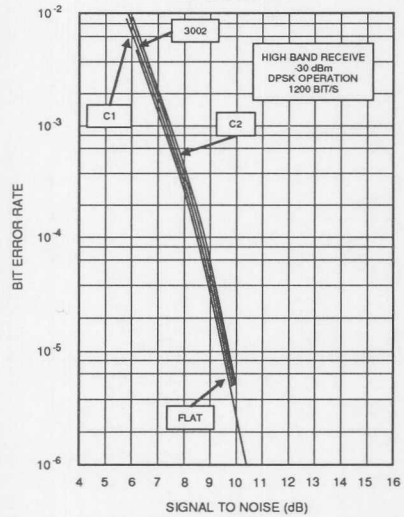
SSI 73K324L BER vs S/N
PRELIMINARY



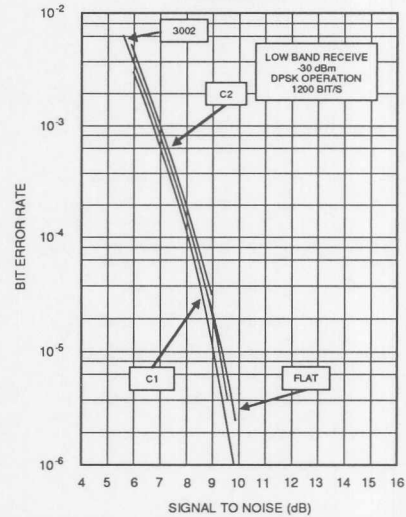
SSI 73K324L BER vs S/N
PRELIMINARY



SSI 73K324L BER vs S/N
PRELIMINARY



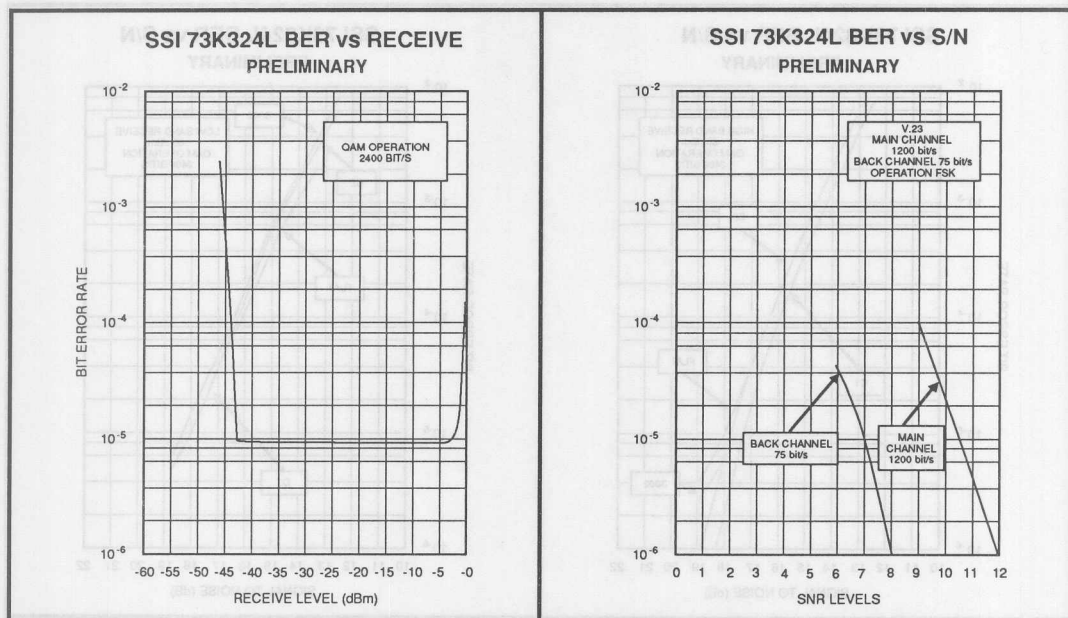
SSI 73K324L BER vs S/N
PRELIMINARY



SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

Single-Chip Modem



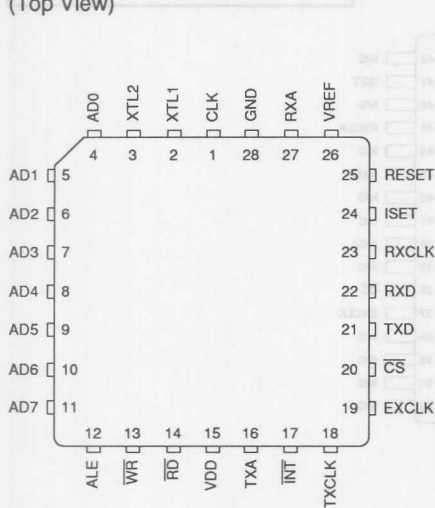
SSI 73K324L

CCITT V.22bis, V.22, V.21, V.23, Bell 212A

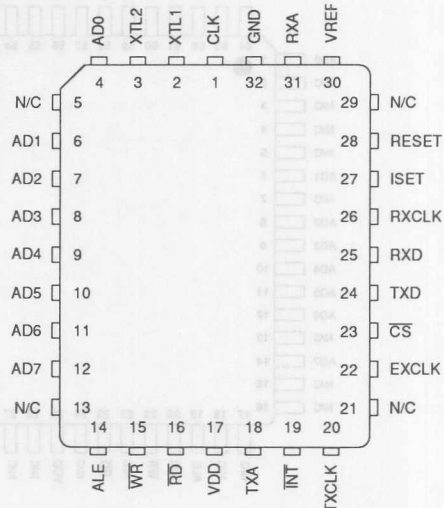
Single-Chip Modem

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

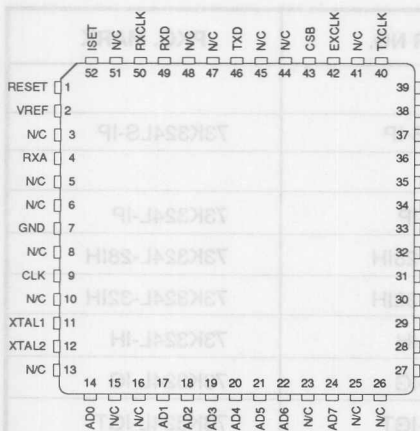
(Top View)



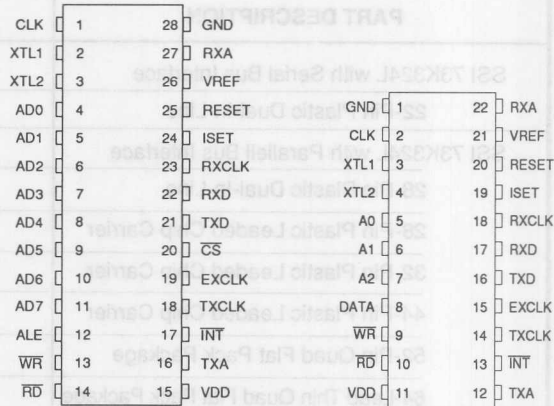
28-Pin PLCC



32-Pin PLCC



52-Lead QFP

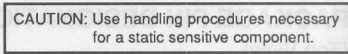


28-Pin DIP

400-Mil
22-Pin DIP



Single-Chip Modem



64-Lead TQFP

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 73K324L with Serial Bus Interface | | |
| 22-Pin Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K324LS-IP | 73K324LS-IP |
| SSI 73K324L with Parallell Bus Interface | | |
| 28-Pin Plastic Dual-In-Line | 73K324L-IP | 73K324L-IP |
| 28-Pin Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | 73K324L-28IH | 73K324L-28IH |
| 32-Pin Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | 73K324L-32IH | 73K324L-32IH |
| 44-Pin Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | 73K324L-IH | 73K324L-IH |
| 52-Pin Quad Flat Pack Package | 73K324L-IG | 73K324L-IG |
| 64-Lead Thin Quad Flat Pack Package | 73K324L-IGT | 73K324L-IGT |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

Section **4**

MODEM PROTOCOL & BUS INTERFACE

4

4

Section

MODEM PROTOCOL & BUS INTERFACE

Advance Information

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The Silicon Systems 73D246 high performance microcontroller is based on the industry standard 8-bit 8052 implemented in Silicon Systems' advanced submicron CMOS process. The processor has the same attributes of the 8052 including Instruction cycle time, UART, timers, interrupts, 256 bytes of on-chip RAM and programmable I/O. The architecture has been optimized for low power portable modem or communication applications by integrating unique features with the core CPU.

The main feature is a user friendly HDLC packetizer, accessed through the special function registers. It has a serial I/O, hardware support for 16- and 32-bit CRC, zero insert/delete control, a dedicated interrupt and a clear channel mode for by-passing the packetizer.

Other features include additional user programmable I/O with programmable bank select and chip select logic, designed to eliminate board level glue logic.

For devices that require non-multiplexed address and data buses, eight latched outputs for the low byte of the address are available.

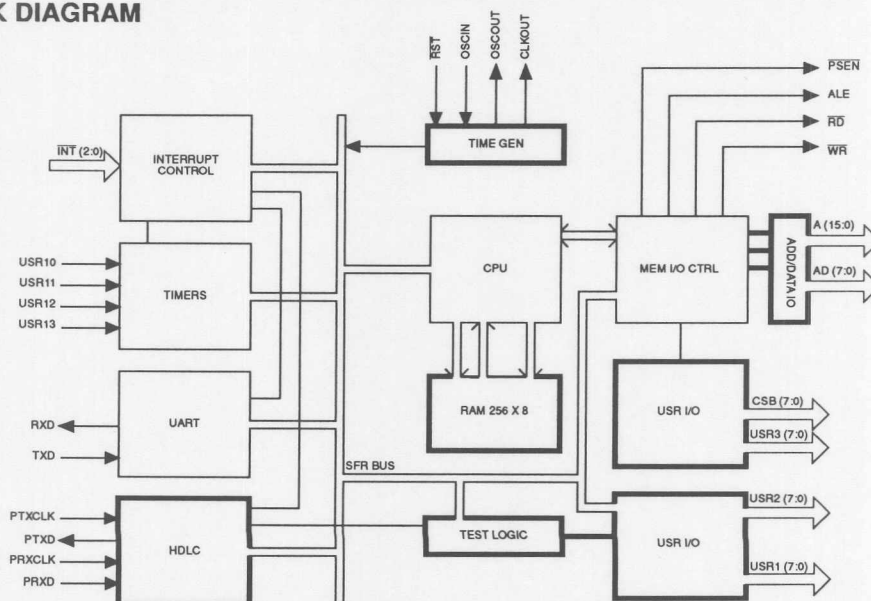
(continued)

FEATURES

- 8052 Compatible Instruction set
- 22 MHz Operation
- HDLC Support logic (Packetizer, 16 and 32 CRC, zero ID)
- 24 pins for user programmable I/O ports
- 8 pins programmable chip select logic for memory mapped peripheral eliminating glue logic
- 3 external interrupt sources (programmable polarity)
- 16 dedicated latched address pins
- Multiplexed data/address bus
- Instruction cycle time identical to 8052
- Buffered oscillator (or OSC/2) output pin
- Bank select circuitry to support up to 128K of external program memory
- 100-Lead TQFP package available for PCMCIA applications
- Also available in 100-Lead QFP package

4

BLOCK DIAGRAM



SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

DESCRIPTION (continued)

The 73D246 has two extra interrupt sources, an external interrupt and a HDLC interrupt. The HDLC interrupt has two registers associated with it: the HDLC Interrupt Register which is used to determine the source of the interrupt, and the HDLC Interrupt Enable Register that enables the source of the interrupt.

The interrupt pins INT0 and INT1 can be either negative edge, positive edge or level triggered. INT2 pin is always edge triggered.

A buffered clock output has been added to support peripheral functions such as UARTs, modems and other clocked devices.

Additional internal special function registers are used for firmware control over the HDLC Packetizer, and the programmable I/O ports.

For low power applications the 73D246 supports two power conservation modes: Idle and Power-down. In the Power-down state the total current consumption is less than 1 μ A at room temperature.

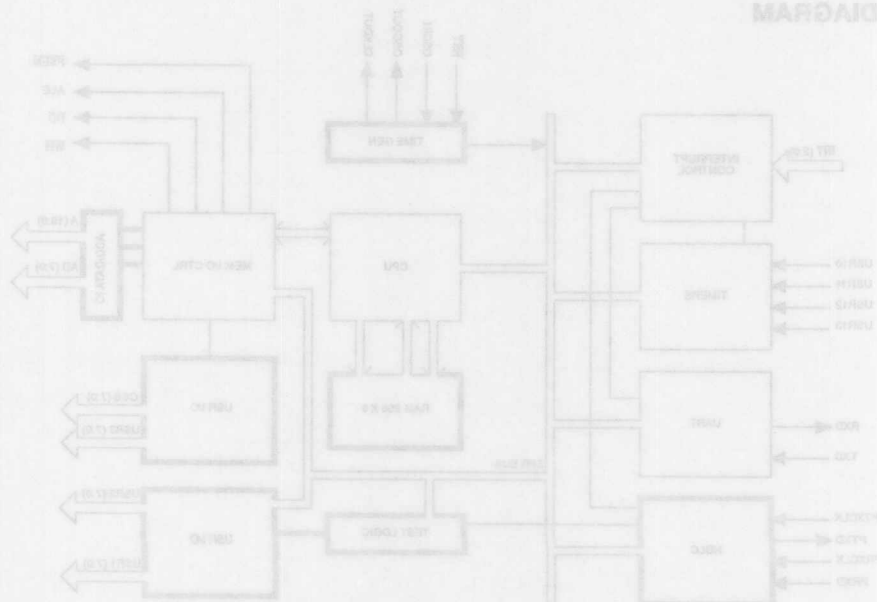
This device is offered in small form factor 100-lead TQFP packages for PCMCIA applications and 100-lead QFP packages.

DEVELOPER'S NOTE:

The 73D246 is also available in a 100-pin PGA package for system developers. The PGA package is more convenient and reliable for development emulation systems than the other package styles. Emulation systems for the 73D246 are available through Signum Systems, 171 E. Thousand Oaks Blvd., # 202, Thousand Oaks, CA 91360 (805) 371-4608.

8052 REFERENCE

This Document will describe the features unique to the 73D246. Please refer to an 8052 Programmer's Guide, Architectural Overview and Hardware Description for details on the instruction set, timers, UART, interrupt control, and memory structure.



REGISTER DESCRIPTION

INTERRUPTS

The core chip provides 8 sources of interrupt; 3 external interrupts, 3 timer interrupts, a serial port interrupt, and an HDLC interrupt. An external interrupt and an HDLC interrupt are unique to the 73D246. They do not exist in a normal 8052 product. Previously unused bits in the IE and IP registers are now serving functions for these additional interrupt sources. The interrupt vector addresses are as follows:

| SOURCE | VECTOR ADDRESS |
|--|----------------|
| $\overline{\text{INT0}}$ (IE0) | 003H |
| TF0 | 00BH |
| $\overline{\text{INT1}}$ (IE1) | 013H |
| TF1 | 01BH |
| RI + TI | 023H |
| TF2 + EXF2 | 02BH |
| $\overline{\text{INT2}}$ - ADDED INTERRUPT | 033H |
| HDLC - ADDED INTERRUPT | 03BH |

The external interrupt sources, $\overline{\text{INT}}(2:0)$, come from dedicated input pins. The apparent polarity of these pins is individually controlled by bits in a special interrupt direction register, IDIR (address A9). The interrupt pins $\overline{\text{INT1}}$ and $\overline{\text{INT0}}$ can be either edge or level generated interrupts as indicated by bits 1 and 3 in the TCON register (address 88). Pin $\overline{\text{INT2}}$ is always an edge generated interrupt. A flag is set when a falling transition (rising if IDIR bit 2 is set) on this pin is detected. This flag is automatically cleared when the interrupt is processed.

INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER (IE) SFR ADDRESS A8

Bit Addressable

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| EA | EX2 | ET2 | ES | ET1 | EX1 | ET0 | EX0 |

Note: BIT 6 differs from the 8052. This is a reserved bit in the 8052 and is used as a mask bit for external interrupt 2 in the core implementation. When BIT 6 is set to a 0, external interrupt 2 is disabled.

The mask bit for the HDLC interrupt source is BIT 0 of the HDLC control register.

INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER (IP) SFR ADDRESS B8

Bit Addressable

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PHDLC | PX2 | PT2 | PS | PT1 | PX1 | PT0 | PX0 |

Note: BIT 6 and BIT 7 differ from the 8052. These are reserved bits in the 8052 and are used to determine the priority of external interrupt 2 and the HDLC in the core implementation. When BIT 6 is set to a 1, the interrupt is set to the higher priority level.

SSI 73D246

Microcontroller

REGISTER DESCRIPTION (continued)

EXTERNAL INTERRUPT DIRECTION REGISTER (IDIR) SFR ADDRESS 92

Byte Addressable

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | INTD2 | INTD1 | INTD0 |

These bits determine the polarity of the corresponding external signals INT(2:0) which will result in an interrupt.

BITS(2:0) Interrupt Polarity Control

If the bit is set to a 0, a falling edge will trigger the interrupt. If the bit is set to a 1, a rising edge will trigger the interrupt. Also, if the bit is set to a 1, level generated interrupts will occur when the corresponding pin is high and the internal pin signal to the timer controls will be inverted.

Bits 6 and 7 will always be read as 0's.

POWER SAVING MODES

Low Power Modes

The SSI 73D246 supports two power conservation modes, which are controlled by the PCON.1 and PCON.0 control bits of the PCON register.

If PCON.0 is set, the SSI 73D246 will go into a power saving mode where the oscillator is running, clocks are supplied to the UART, timers, HDLC, and interrupt blocks, but no clocks are supplied to the CPU. Instruction processing and activity on the address and data ports is halted. Normal operation is resumed when an unmasked interrupt is requested or when a reset occurs.

If PCON.1 is set, the SSI 73D246 goes into its lowest power mode where the oscillator is halted. The total current consumption in this state should be less than 1 μ A. The SSI 73D246 will start its oscillator and begin to return to normal operation when either a reset occurs, when a falling (rising if corresponding direction bit is set) edge of an unmasked external interrupt from pins INT(2:0) is detected. Edges used in wakeup modes are not filtered in the SSI 73D246 so the user must be cautious of noise or small glitches inadvertently waking up the chip. From the time the edge that results in the wake up occurs, to the point at which an instruction is executed, depends on the oscillator start-up time. Three good oscillator pulses must be detected before the main internal clocks are generated.

USER PROGRAMMABLE I/O

Port Control USR1, USR2, USR3, USR4

The core chip provides 32 user I/O pins. Each pin is programmed separately as either an input or as an output by a bit in a direction register. If the bit in the direction register is set to a 1, the I/O control will treat the corresponding pin as an input. If it is a 0, the pin will be treated as an output whose value is determined by the port data register. The USR1 and USR2 port registers are accessed through the internal SFR bus. The USR3 and USR4 ports are accessed through the external memory bus by a MOVX instruction. The USR4 port provides the user with an automatic chip select function if selected by the user. If the user does not require some (or any) of the chip select pin options, he may program the USR4 port pins to operate in the same way as USR3 port pins.

SSI 73D246

Microcontroller

The USR DATA register contents determine pin values if chosen as an output. When reading from the DATA register's SFR address, the pin logic values are returned as data except when the port address is the destination address for a read-modify-write instruction. In this case, the latched register values are returned as data. When reading data from a DATA register that is mapped in the external memory space, the pin values are always returned as data.

USER 1 PORT

USR1 DATA SFR Address 90

Bit Addressable

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| USR1 7 | USR1 6 | USR1 5 | USR1 4 | USR1 3 | USR1 2 | USR1 1 | USR1 0 |

Bits in this register will be asserted on the USR1(7:0) pins if the corresponding direction register bit is a 0. Reading this SFR's address will return data reflecting the values of pins USR1(7:0) except when address 90h is the destination address for a read-modify-write instruction. In this case, the latched register values are returned as data.

USR1 port signals are also used as timer controls. In applications where the external signals are required for timer count modes, the corresponding port pin should be configured as an input.

USR1 BIT0 = TIMER 0 T0 PIN
 USR1 BIT1 = TIMER 1 T1 PIN
 USR1 BIT2 = TIMER 2 T2EX PIN
 USR1 BIT3 = TIMER 2 T2 PIN

USR1 Port Direction (DIR1) SFR Address 91

Byte Addressable

Reset State FFh

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| DIR1 7 | DIR1 6 | DIR1 5 | DIR1 4 | DIR1 3 | DIR1 2 | DIR1 1 | DIR1 0 |

This register is used to designate the USR1 pins as either inputs or outputs. If the register bit is reset to a 0, the corresponding USR1 pin is programmed as an output that will be driven by the corresponding USR1 DATA register bit. If the register bit is a 1, the corresponding pin will be treated as an input.

After a reset, the USR1 pins will present a high impedance output state and the input values will not be driven from the pin, but will be driven to a 0 internally. The pins will assume normal I/O operation once the processor has written the port direction register. This feature will ensure the core chip is in a low current state at reset (you don't want to drive out against external inputs, and you don't want floating inputs).

SSI 73D246

Microcontroller

REGISTER DESCRIPTION (continued)

USER2 PORT

USR2 Port Data SFR Address D8

Bit Addressable

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| USR2 7 | USR2 6 | USR2 5 | USR2 4 | USR2 3 | USR2 2 | USR2 1 | USR2 0 |

Bits in this register will be asserted on the USR2(7:0) pins if the corresponding direction register bit is a 0. Reading this SFR's address will return data reflecting the values of pins USR2(7:0) except when address D8h is the destination address for a read-modify-write instruction. In this case, the latched register values are returned as data.

USR2 Port Direction (DIR2) SFR Address D9

Byte Addressable

Reset State FFh

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| DIR2 7 | DIR2 6 | DIR2 5 | DIR2 4 | DIR2 3 | DIR2 2 | DIR2 1 | DIR2 0 |

This register is used to designate the USR2 pins as either inputs or outputs. If the register bit is reset to a 0, the corresponding USR2 pin is programmed as an output that will be driven by the corresponding USR2 I/O DATA register bit. If the register bit is a 1, the corresponding pin will be treated as an input.

After a reset, the USR2 pins will present a high impedance output state and the input values will not be driven from the pin, but will be driven to a 0 internally. The pins will assume normal I/O operation once the processor has written the port direction register. This feature will ensure the core chip is in a low current state at reset (you don't want to drive out against external inputs, and you don't want floating inputs).

USR3 Port Data External address 0000

Byte Addressable

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| USR3 7 | USR3 6 | USR3 5 | USR3 4 | USR3 3 | USR3 2 | USR3 1 | USR3 0 |

Bits in this register will be asserted on the USR3(7:0) pins if the corresponding direction register bit is a 0. Reading this SFR's address will return data reflecting the values of pins USR3(7:0).

If the bank select feature is chosen, USR3 PIN7 acts as address bit 17 and USR3 data bit 7 is ignored.

USR3 I/O Port Direction (DIR3) External Address 0001

Byte Addressable

Reset State FFh

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| DIR3 7 | DIR3 6 | DIR3 5 | DIR3 4 | DIR3 3 | DIR3 2 | DIR3 1 | DIR3 0 |

This register is used to designate the USR3 pins as either inputs or outputs. If the register bit is reset to a 0, the corresponding USR3 pin is programmed as an output that will be driven by the corresponding USR3 DATA register bit. If the register bit is a 1, the corresponding pin will be treated as an input.

After a reset, the USR3 pins will present a high impedance output state and the input values will not be driven from the pin, but will be driven to a 0 internally. The pins will assume normal I/O operation once the processor has written the port direction register. This feature will ensure the core chip is in a low current state at reset (you don't want to drive out against external inputs, and you don't want floating inputs).

If the bank select feature is chosen, USR3 PIN7 is forced to be an output.

Bank Select (BNKSEL) External Address 0002

Byte Addressable

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| B7 | B6 | B5 | B4 | B3 | BSEN | BS1 | BS0 |

This register is used to accommodate systems where more than 64 Kbytes (up to 128 Kbytes) of program memory are required. USR3 PIN 7 acts as an address pin, A16, if BSEN is set to a 1 and if the processor is fetching an instruction and not data memory. If BSEN is set to a 1, A15 is also modified during instruction fetches as shown. If BSEN is a 0, no alterations to address bit A15 are made, and USR3 PIN 7 is a function of USR3 bit 7 and DIR3 bit 7.

Bits (7-3) are general purpose read/write register bits.

A15 is the value of the 16th address bit as it appears at pin A15.

A15' is the address from port 2 internal logic, the value that will appear as the most significant address bit if no bank select feature is chosen.

A16 is the value of the 17th and MSB of the instruction address seen at the USR3 7 port pin, if the bank select feature is selected. If the bank select feature is not selected, USR3 7 acts as a normal USR3 I/O port pin.

| BSEN | BS1 | BS0 | A15' | A15 | A16 | ADDRESS |
|------|-----|-----|------|-----|-------|------------|
| 0 | * | * | 0 | 0 | USR37 | 0K - 32K |
| 0 | * | * | 1 | 1 | USR37 | 32K - 64K |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0K - 32K |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 32K - 64K |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0K - 32K |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 64K - 96K |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0K - 32K |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 96K - 128K |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0K - 32K |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 64K - 96K |

* = Don't care.

SSI 73D246

Microcontroller

REGISTER DESCRIPTION (continued)

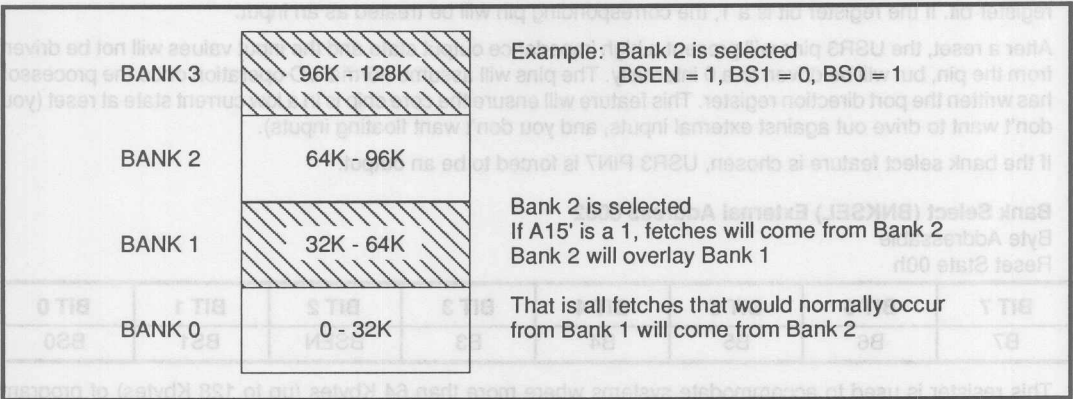


FIGURE 8: Bank Select

USER4 PORT

USR4 Port Data External Address 0003

Byte Addressable

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| USR4 7 | USR4 6 | USR4 5 | USR4 4 | USR4 3 | USR4 2 | USR4 1 | USR4 0 |

Bits in this register will be asserted on the USR4(7:0) pins if the corresponding direction register bit is a 0 and if the corresponding bit in the chip select enable register, 0005, is set to a 0. Reading this register will return data reflecting the values of pins USR4(7:0).

USR4 I/O Port Direction (DIR4) External Address 0004

Byte Addressable

Reset State FFh

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------|
| DIR4 7 | DIR4 6 | DIR4 5 | DIR4 4 | DIR4 3 | DIR4 2 | DIR4 1 | 1 DIR4 0 |

This register is used to designate the USR4 pins as either inputs or outputs. If the register bit is reset to a 0, the corresponding USR4 pin is programmed as an output that will be driven by the corresponding USR4 I/O DATA register bit if the corresponding bit in the chip select enable register, 0005, is set to a 0. If the register bit is a 1, the corresponding pin will be treated as an input only if the corresponding bit in register 0005 is set to a 0.

After a reset, the USR4 pins will act as chip select outputs.

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

USR4 Port Chip Select Enable (CSEN) External Address 0005

Byte Addressable

Reset State FFh

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| CSEN 7 | CSEN 6 | CSEN 5 | CSEN 4 | CSEN 3 | CSEN 2 | CSEN 1 | CSEN 0 |

This register is used to designate the USR4 pins as either user programmable I/Os or as chip select (CS0B - CS7B) functions on a pin by pin basis. This feature is designed to help reduce external glue logic for peripheral memory mapped devices. The chip select function is programmed by setting the appropriate bits in the CSEN register. When a chip select pin is enabled by setting the corresponding CSEN bit to a 1, all data and direction information from registers 0003 and 0004 for this bit are ignored and the selected port becomes an output. If the bit is reset to a 0, the pin will be treated as a normal programmable user I/O pin as defined by registers 0003 and 0004.

The chip select pins have a defined memory map. The intent is that the outputs can be wire ORed together for a flexible selection of peripheral chip selects. All chip selects will be disabled (forced to a logic 1. It is assumed that all chip selects are active low) after the read or write is completed, and the appropriate chip select will be enabled as the next new external addresses is asserted. After a reset, the CSB pull-up devices are all enabled, that is, all chip select outputs are high. Users must account for this if these pins are intended to be general purpose I/Os.

The chip selects partition a 64K memory space as follows:

| CHIP SELECT PIN | ADDRESS | # BYTES |
|---------------------------|---------------|---------|
| RESERVED FOR INTERNAL USE | 0000H - 00FFH | 256 |
| CS0 (USR4.0) | 0100H - 01FFH | 256 |
| CS1 (USR4.1) | 0200H - 03FFH | 512 |
| CS2 (USR 4.2) | 0400H - 07FFH | 1K |
| CS3 (USR 4.3) | 0800H - 0FFFH | 2K |
| CS4 (USR 4.4) | 1000H - 1FFFH | 4K |
| CS5 (USR 4.5) | 2000H - 3FFFH | 8K |
| CS6 (USR 4.6) | 4000H - 7FFFH | 16K |
| CS7 (USR 4.7) | 8000H - FFFFH | 32K |

Note: You can't read from external addresses 0000H-00FFH. These are reserved for SSI 73D246 internally defined registers

SSI 73D246

Microcontroller

REGISTER DESCRIPTION (continued)

HDLC CONTROL REGISTER 0

HDLC Control Register 0 (HDLC0) SFR Address C0

Bit Addressable Reset State 00XX 0000 b

Bits 5 and 4 are read only bits

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|-------|-------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| WRXD | WPTXD | TXD R | PRXD R | RXD CTRL1 | RXD CTRL0 | PTX CTRL1 | PTX CTRL0 |

This register controls the basic set-up of the DTE and modem pins RXD, TXD, PRXD, and PTXD.

BIT 7 WRXD

BIT 7 allows the processor to write directly to the SSI 73D246 RXD output pin. The value of BIT 7 will appear at the PTXD pin only if BIT 1 is a 1 and BIT 0 is a 0.

BIT 6 WPTXD

BIT 6 allows the processor to write directly to the SSI 73D246 PTXD output pin. The value of BIT 6 will appear at the PTXD pin only if BIT 1 is a 1 and BIT 0 is a 0.

BIT 5 TXD

BIT 5 is a read only bit that reflects the value at the SSI 73D246 TXD input pin.

BIT 4 PRXD

BIT 4 is a read only bit that reflects the value at the SSI 73D246 PRXD input pin.

BIT 3 BIT 2 RXD Control

BIT 3 and BIT2 control the source of the SSI 73D246 RXD output pin. This output goes to the DTE's RS232 interface. The source of this signal can be the core's UART TXD output, the PRXD output from a modem peripheral (clear channel), the DTE's TXD(echo), or the value written into bit 7 of this register.

| BIT 3 | BIT 2 | RXD OUTPUT |
|-------|-------|-------------------------------|
| 0 | 0 | UART TXD OUTPUT |
| 0 | 1 | PRXD BUFFERED (CLEAR CHANNEL) |
| 1 | 0 | TXD BUFFERED (ECHO) |
| 1 | 1 | WRXD (BIT 7) |

BIT 1 BIT 0 PTXD Control

BIT 1 and BIT0 control the source of the SSI 73D246 PTXD output pin. This output goes to the modem's TX data input. The source of this signal can be the core's HDLC TX output, the DTE's TXD output (clear channel), or the value written into bit 6 of this register.

| BIT 1 | BIT 0 | PTXD Output |
|-------|-------|------------------------------|
| 0 | 0 | HDLC TX Output |
| 0 | 1 | TXD Buffered (Clear Channel) |
| 1 | 0 | WPTXD (BIT 6) |
| 1 | 1 | 0 |

HDLC CONTROL REGISTER 1

HDLC Control Register 1 (HDLC1) SFR Address C1

Byte Addressable

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|-------------|----------|-----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| HDLC RST | CLK CRTL | CLK EN | RXCRC 32 | RXCRC 16 | TXCRC 32 | ZERO ID | HDLC EN |

4

This register controls the basic set-up of the HDLC block. This register will be written during initialization and not during normal message processing.

BIT 7 HDLC Software Set

When BIT 7 is a 1, the HDLC circuit is reset and held in a low power state and no interrupts from the HDLC circuitry will be generated. When a 0 is written to this bit, the HDLC circuit will behave according to its control bits. BIT 7 and the power on reset signal are OR'ed together to form a reset signal for the HDLC block.

BIT 7 is cleared to a 0 upon a power up reset.

BIT 6 CLK CRTL Clock Out Control

Bit 6 controls the frequency of the clock output pin. The clock output is either the oscillator's output signal divided by two or a buffered oscillator output signal.

| BIT 6 | CLOCK OUT |
|-------|-----------|
| 0 | OSC |
| 1 | OSC/2 |

BIT 6 is cleared to a 0 upon a reset.

BIT 5 CLK Clock Out Enable

BIT 5 enables the clock at the clock output pin if it is set to a 1. The clock pin output can be held to a 0, without halting the oscillator, by writing this bit to zero. This will reduce system power if the clock pin is not used or if a power reduction mode is required.

BIT 5 is cleared to a 0 upon a reset.

SSI 73D246

Microcontroller

HDLC CONTROL REGISTER 1 (continued)

BIT 4 BIT 3 RX CRC Control

BIT 4 and BIT 3 determine the type of CRC remainder that will be checked at the end of a received frame. There is a 16-bit CRC, and a 32-bit CRC that the HDLC block can support. If both BIT 4 and BIT 3 are reset, bits 7 and 6 of the HDLC STATUS register will be held to a 0. If both BIT 4 and BIT 3 are 1s, a special CRC search mode is enabled where both bits 7 and 6 of the HDLC status register are enabled. This mode is used during a connection to determine which CRC is used by the initiating modem. If the 16-bit CRC remainder is not matched at the end of the received frame, then BIT 6 of the HDLC STATUS register is set. If the 32-bit CRC remainder is not matched at the end of the received frame, then BIT 7 of the HDLCSTATUS register is set. Once the correct CRC type is established during a connection, either BIT 4 or BIT 3 should be set to a 1 enabling the appropriate INVALID CRC status bit.

| BIT 4 | BIT 3 | CRC TYPE |
|-------|-------|--------------------------------------|
| 0 | 0 | NO CRC Check |
| 0 | 1 | Enable CRC16 Status |
| 1 | 0 | Enable CRC32 Status |
| 1 | 1 | Enable CRC16 Status and CRC32 Status |

BIT 2 TXCRC Control

BIT 2 controls the CRC type to be transmitted. If BIT 2 is reset to a 0, a 16-bit CRC will be transmitted with the SEND CRC command. If BIT 2 is set to a 1, a 32 bit CRC will be transmitted.

BIT 1 Zero Insert/Delete Control

When BIT 1 is set to a 1, a 0 will be transmitted if either the SEND DATA or SENDCRC bits of the HDLCTX CONTROL are set after five consecutive 1s have been transmitted. Also, when this bit is set, a 0 will be removed from the received data stream if it immediately follows a pattern of a 0 followed by five consecutive ones. If BIT 1 is reset to a 0, no 0s will be inserted during transmission, and no 0s will be deleted during reception.

BIT 1 is cleared to a 0 upon a reset.

BIT 0 HDLC Interrupt Enable

When BIT 0 is reset to a 0, the HDLC will be prevented from generating an interrupt. The status bits that indicate the source of the interrupt can still be set allowing the HDLC block to be serviced in a polled mode.

BIT 0 is cleared to a 0 upon reset.

HDLC TX Control Resister (HTXC) SFR Address C2

Byte Addressable

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|--------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | DIV16 CLK | SEND ABORT | SEND CRC | SEND DATA | SEND FLAG |

This register is used to control the source of data that appears on the PTXD pin. Bits are shifted out on every rising edge of the PTXCLK pin input. If no control bits are set, or more than 1 TX CONTROLbit is set, the PTXD pin will go to a binary 1.

BIT 7 - BIT 5 Always 0

BIT 4 16X Clock Select

Under normal synchronous operation, the PTXCLK and PRXCLK are used to receive and transmit data PRXD and PTXD. The clock rate is equal to the data rate. In asynchronous modes, a clock 16 times the bit rate is provided at PTXCLK and PRXCLK.

When BIT 4 is set to a 1 for asynchronous operation, the clocks at the PTXCLK and PRXCLK pins are divided by 16 to provide transmit and receive shift clocks. An internal clock for sampling incoming PRXD data is synchronized by detecting any falling edge on the PRXD data pin. The rising edge of this internal clock, which is used to sample incoming data, is delayed from the falling data edge by 8 PRXCLK periods and will continue at this phase and at a PRXCLK/16 frequency until another falling PRXD edge is detected.

If BIT 4 is reset to a 0, the rising edge of PTXCLK is used to sample the data at PRXD, and the falling edge of PTXCLK is used to shift new data onto PTXD.

BIT 3 is cleared to a 1 upon a reset.

BIT 3 Abort

When BIT 3 is set to a 1, a series of consecutive 1s will immediately be transmitted through the PTXD pin on every falling edge of PTXCLK. The message will have been aborted after 2 TX ready interrupts are received. No 0s will be inserted during the abort transmission.

BIT 3 is cleared to a 1 upon a reset.

BIT 2 Send CRC

When BIT 2 is set, the bytes in the TXCRC generator will be inverted and serially transmitted to the PTXD output on the falling edge on PTXCLK as soon as the present data byte transmission is completed. If BIT 1 of the HDLC control register is a 0, a 0 will be inserted into the CRC data stream after five consecutive 1s are transmitted. As soon as the last bit of the CRC is sent, a series of Flags will be automatically sent until another TX control bit is set. No TX Ready interrupts will be generated during the transmission of the CRC bytes. A TX Ready interrupt will be generated as the first bit of each Flag byte is transmitted indicating that the CRC transmission has been completed. This should be cleared by a dummy write to the TX DATA register.

BIT 2 will be cleared to a 0 upon a reset.

BIT 1 Send Data

When BIT 1 is set, the data in the TX data register will be serially transmitted through the PTXD pin on every falling edge of PTXCLK, LSB first. If BIT 1 of the HDLC control register is a 0, a 0 will be inserted into the data stream after five consecutive 1s are transmitted. After all eight data register bits have been sent, the HDLC will continue to send data by loading the parallel serial transmit register with new transmit register data, unless either a TX underrun is detected or one of the other TX control bits has been set. This bit will be cleared by the HDLC circuitry as soon as a TX underrun is detected. A TXRDY interrupt will be generated at as the first data of each data byte is transmitted. BIT 1 will be cleared to a 0 upon a reset.

BIT 0 Send Flag

When BIT 0 is set, a pattern of 7E will be transmitted to the PTXD output as soon as either the next data byte or CRC has completed transmission. No 0s will be inserted during the flag transmission. When BIT 0 is reset back to a 0, the HDLC circuitry will complete the flag byte in progress and then transmit according to bits in the TX CONTROL register. TX Ready interrupts will be generated as each byte of flag transmission is initiated.

BIT 0 will be cleared to a 0 upon a reset.

REGISTER DESCRIPTION (continued)**HDLC STATUS REGISTER****HDLC Status Register (HSTAT) SFR Address C3**

Byte Addressable

Reset state 00h

Read only register

If any of the HDLC status bits are set, BIT 1 of the HDLC INTERRUPT register (NEW STATUS) will be set if the corresponding bit in the HDLC INTERRUPT ENABLE register is set.

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|----------------|----------------|-------------|------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| INVAL CRC32 | INVAL CRC16 | TX UNDRN | RX OVRN | INVAL FLAG | ABORT DET | IDLE DET | FLAG DET |

BIT 7 Invalid CRC32

BIT 7 will be set if the CRC search mode or the 32-bit CRC is enabled by the HDLC control register and an incorrect remainder for the 32-bit CRC is detected at the last received byte prior to receiving a flag.

BIT 7 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by a read of the HDLCSTAT register.

BIT 6 Invalid CRC16

BIT 6 will be set if the CRC search mode or the 16-bit CRC is enabled by the HDLC CONTROL register and an incorrect remainder for the 16-bit CRC is detected at the last received byte prior to receiving a flag.

BIT 6 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by a read of the HDLC STAT register.

BIT 5 TX Underrun

When BIT 5 is set, a transmit underrun condition has been detected. This is a condition where the HDLC has finished transmitting a message byte, but no new data has been loaded into the TX DATA register, and no other transmit control bit has been set. This bit will be set only if the SEND DATA bit, BIT 1 of the TXCONTROL register is set. The transmit data is double buffered since the TX data register is downloaded into a TX serial register when the HDLC begins to transmit a new data byte. At the time of loading the TX serial register, a TX READY interrupt is generated. This interrupt must be serviced by either loading a new data byte (the next data byte to be transmitted) into the TX data register, or by setting another TX control bit, before the current data byte has completed transmission (at which point another TX READY interrupt would be generated). If a TX UNDERRUN is detected, the HDLC will abort the current transmission by sending continuous 1s and will reset the SEND DATA control bit in the TX CONTROL register.

BIT 5 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by a read of the HDLCSTAT register.

BIT 4 RX Overrun

When BIT 4 is set, a receive overrun condition has been detected. This is a condition where the HDLC has received a new byte, but the last received data byte has not yet been read from the RX data register. As soon as a new data byte has been received in an eight bit serial register, it is loaded into the RX data register and a NEW RX DATA interrupt is generated. If this interrupt is not serviced by reading the RX data register during the time another new data byte is received, the RX OVERRUN status bit will be set. The new received data will not overwrite the older unread data.

BIT 4 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by a read of the HDLCSTAT register.

BIT 3 Invalid Flag

When BIT 3 is set, an invalid flag has been detected. This is a condition where a 7E pattern with no inserted 0s is detected, and this pattern did not originate on a byte boundary. Note, two consecutive flags may share a 0, so that the second (or subsequent) flag may not appear to be on a byte boundary. This condition does not result in an invalid flag indication. Instead, the bit counter is reset to 0.

BIT 3 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by a read of the HDLC STAT register.

BIT 2 Abort Detect

When BIT 2 is set, an abort condition has been detected. This is a condition where seven consecutive 1s, with no inserted 0s, are received after an active state. BIT 2 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by a read of the HDLC STAT register.

BIT 1 Idle Detect

When BIT 1 is set, the first indication of an idle state is detected. An idle state is declared when 15 consecutive 1s, with no inserted 0s, are received after an active state.

BIT 1 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by a read of the HDLC STAT register.

BIT 0 Flag Detect

When BIT 0 is set, the HDLC has received a 7E pattern with no inserted 0's. BIT 0 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by a read of the HDLCSTAT register.

HDLC INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER

HDLC Interrupt Enable Register (HIE) SFR Address C4

Byte Addressable

Reset state 00h

If the bit is set, the corresponding interrupt source is enabled.

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| TX RDY IE | RX RDY IE | TX RDY EN | RX RDY EN | INVAL FLG IE | ABORT IE | IDLE IE | FLAG IE |

BIT 7 Transmitter Ready Interrupt Enable

When BIT 7 is set, an HDLC interrupt will be generated if BIT 0 (TX RDY) of the HDLC INTERRUPT register is also set. If BIT 7 is reset to a 0, no HDLC interrupt indication will be given as TX RDY is set. This interrupt enable allows the TX RDY to be a polled bit. Note that BIT 5 of this register is a pre-mask to the TX RDY bit, that is, it will prevent the TX RDY bit from ever being set.

BIT 7 will be cleared upon a reset.

BIT 6 Receiver Ready Interrupt Enable

When BIT 6 is set, an HDLC interrupt will be generated if BIT 1 (RX RDY) of the HDLC INTERRUPT register is also set. If BIT 6 is reset to a 0, no HDLC interrupt indication will be given as RX RDY is set. This interrupt enable allows the RX RDY to be a polled bit. Note that BIT 4 of this register is a pre-mask to the RX RDY bit, that is, it will prevent the RX RDY bit from ever being set.

BIT 6 will be cleared upon a reset.

SSI 73D246

Microcontroller

HDLC INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER (continued)

BIT 5 Transmit Ready Enable

BIT 5 is used to enable the TX RDY and TX UNDERRUN interrupt sources. When BIT 5 is set, the transmitter ready indication will set BIT 0 of the HDLC interrupt register. The TX RDY indication will go active as the first bit of a message byte is being transmitted, except during CRC transmission. Also, if this bit is set, the TX underrun condition will result in a NEW STATUS interrupt. If IT5 is reset to a 0, BIT 0 of the HDLC INTERRUPT register will not be set, and no corresponding HDLC interrupt will be generated. Also, a Tx underrun condition, as indicated by BIT 5 of the HDLC STATUS register, will not result in an HDLC interrupt or in setting the NEW STATUS interrupt bit.

BIT 5 will be cleared upon a reset.

BIT 4 Receiver Ready Enable

BIT 4 is used to enable the RX RDY and RX OVERRUN interrupt sources. When BIT 4 is set, the receiver ready indication will set BIT 1 of the HDLC INTERRUPT register. The RX RDY indication will go active when a data byte (a byte that is not a flag, idle, or an abort pattern) is loaded into the RX DATA register. Also, if this bit is set, the RX overrun condition will result in a NEW STATUS interrupt. If BIT 4 is reset to a 0, BIT 1 of the HDLC INTERRUPT register will not be set, and no corresponding HDLC interrupt will be generated. Also, a Rx overrun condition, as indicated by BIT 4 of the HDLC STATUS register, will not result in a HDLC interrupt or in setting the NEW STATUS interrupt bit.

BIT 4 will be cleared upon a reset.

BIT 3 Invalid Flag Interrupt Enable

When BIT 3 is set, a HDLC interrupt will be generated if BIT 3 (INVALID FLAG) of the HDLC STATUS register is also set. If BIT 3 is reset to a 0, BIT 2 (NEW STATUS) of the HDLC INTERRUPT register will not be set as a result of an invalid flag boundary detection and no HDLC interrupt will be generated.

BIT 3 will be cleared upon a reset.

BIT 2 Abort Detect Interrupt Enable

When BIT 2 is set, a HDLC interrupt will be generated if BIT 2 (ABORT DETECT) of the HDLC STATUS register is also set. If BIT 2 is reset to a 0, BIT 2 (NEW STATUS) of the HDLC INTERRUPT register will not be set as a result of an abort pattern detection and no HDLC interrupt will be generated.

BIT 2 will be cleared upon a reset.

BIT 1 Idle Detect Interrupt Enable

When BIT 1 is set, an HDLC interrupt will be generated if BIT 1 (IDLE DETECT) of the HDLC STATUS register is also set. If BIT 1 is reset to a 0, BIT 2 (NEW STATUS) of the HDLC INTERRUPT register will not be set as a result of an idle pattern detection and no HDLC interrupt will be generated.

BIT 1 will be cleared upon a reset.

BIT 0 Flag Detect Interrupt Enable

When BIT 0 is set, a HDLC interrupt will be generated if BIT 0 (FLAG DETECT) of the HDLC STATUS register is also set. If BIT 0 is reset to a 0, BIT 2 (NEW STATUS) of the HDLC INTERRUPT register will not be set as a result of a flag pattern detection and no HDLC interrupt will be generated.

BIT 0 will be cleared upon a reset.

HDLC INTERRUPT REGISTER

HDLC Interrupt Register (HINT) SFR Address C5

Byte Addressable

Read Only register

Reset State 00h

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | NEW STAT | DATA RDY | TX RDY |

This register is used to determine the source of HDLC interrupts. If one or more of these register bits are set, the HDLC interrupt will go active if BIT 0 of the HDLC CONTROL register is set to a 1.

BIT 2 New Status

When BIT 2 is set, an unmasked HDLC status bit from the HDLC STATUS register is set.

BIT 2 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by a read of the HDLC STATUS register.

BIT 1 Data Ready

When BIT 1 is set, a new received byte has been loaded into the RX DATA register. Note, received bits that are flag, abort, or idle patterns are not considered data, and will not be loaded into the RX DATA register. All inserted 0s have been removed from this byte. The RX DATA register must be read prior to the completed reception of the next data byte.

BIT 1 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by a read of the RX DATA register.

BIT 0 TX READY

BIT 0 is set if any TX control bit is set as the first bit of data, flag or an idle byte is being transmitted. While transmitting the current byte, the HDLC state machines are ready for commands pertaining to the next byte to be transmitted. A new data byte must be loaded into the TX DATA register to clear the TX READY status bit.

BIT 0 will be cleared upon a reset and is cleared by writing to the TX DATA register.

RX DATA REGISTER

RX Data Register (RXD) SFR Address C6

Byte Addressable

Reset state XXh

Read Only

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|
| RX DAT7 | RX DAT6 | RX DAT5 | RX DAT4 | RX DAT3 | RX DAT2 | RX DAT | RX DAT0 |

BIT 7 - BIT 0 Received Data Byte

BIT 7 through BIT 0 is the received data byte (LSB is received first) with all inserted 0s removed. A DATA READY interrupt will be generated when a new data byte is received. Reading this register will clear the DATA READY interrupt.

SSI 73D246
Microcontroller

REGISTER DESCRIPTION (continued)

TX DATA REGISTER

TX Data Register (TXD) SFR Address C7

Byte Addressable

Reset state XXh

Write Only

| BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| TX DAT7 | TX DAT6 | TX DAT5 | TX DAT4 | TX DAT3 | TX DAT2 | TX DAT1 | TX DAT0 |

BIT 7 - BIT 0 Transmit Data Byte

BIT 7 through BIT 0 will be transmitted at the next byte boundary (LSB first) if the TX CONTROL SEND DATA bit is set. The HDLC will insert all necessary 0s. A TX READY interrupt will be generated when a new data byte can be loaded into the TX DATA register. Writing this register will clear the TX READY interrupt.

| REGISTER | ADDRESS | BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
|-----------------|---------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| HDLC CONTROL 0 | C0 | WRXD | WPTXD | TXD | PRXD | RXD CTRL1 | RXD CTRL0 | PTXD CTRL1 | PTX CTRL0 |
| HDLC CONTROL1 | C1 | RESET | CLK CTRL | CLK EN | RXCRC32 | RXCRC16 | TXCRC32 | ZERO ID | HDLC EN |
| TX CONTROL | C2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | DIV16 CLK | SEND ABORT | SEND CRC | SEND DATA | SEND FLAG |
| HDLC STATUS | C3 | INVAL CRC32 | INVAL CRC16 | TX UNDERRUN | RX UNDERRUN | INVAL FLAG | ABORT DETECT | IDLE DETECT | FLAG DETECT |
| HDLC INT ENABLE | C4 | TX RDY IE | RX RDY IE | TX RDY EN | RX RDY EN | INVAL FLAG IE | ABORT IE | IDLE IE | FLAG IE |
| HDLC INT SOURCE | C5 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | NEW STATUS | RX READY | TX READY |
| RX DATA | C6 | RXDAT7 | RXDAT6 | RXDAT5 | RXDAT4 | RXDAT3 | RXDAT2 | RXDAT1 | RXDAT0 |
| TX DATA | C7 | TXDAT7 | TXDAT6 | TXDAT5 | TXDAT4 | TXDAT3 | TXDAT2 | TXDAT1 | TXDAT0 |

FIGURE 9: HDLC SFR Registers

| BIT 0 | BIT 1 | BIT 2 | BIT 3 | BIT 4 | BIT 5 | BIT 6 | BIT 7 |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| RX DAT0 | RX DAT1 | RX DAT2 | RX DAT3 | RX DAT4 | RX DAT5 | RX DAT6 | RX DAT7 |

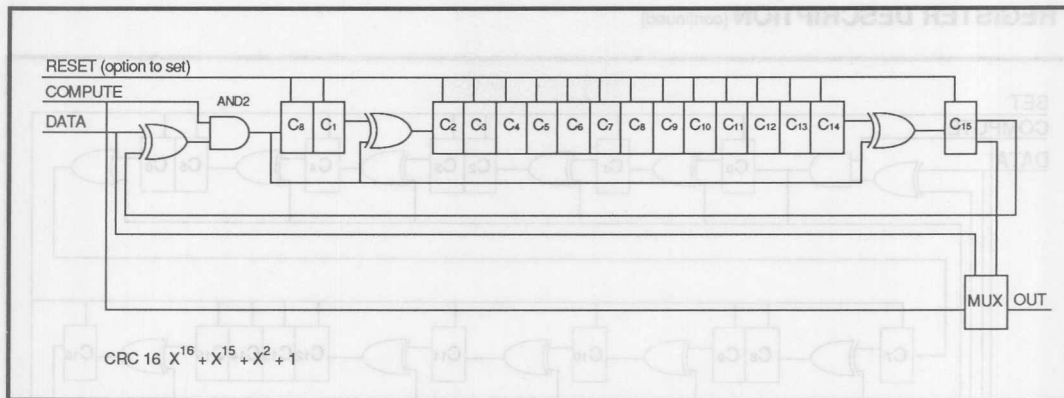


FIGURE 11: CRC 16

The CRC check field is generated by the transmitter. The computation starts with the first transmitted bit after the opening flag and stops at the last data bit prior to the frame check sequence bytes, and excludes inserted 0s. The CRC generating logic is initialized to all 0s. The bits are shifted in and operated on by the generating polynomial, $X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$. During CRC transmission, the bytes in the CRC generating logic are transmitted, high order bit first.

The receiver also initializes its CRC computation logic to all ones after the beginning flag. Its polynomial generator (also $X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$) should see the same value as the transmitter's polynomial generator as the last data bit is received. Note the receiver's polynomial generator does not process inserted 0s. After the bytes are received in the frame check sequence, a remainder of 1111 0000 1011 1000 should be detected in the receiver's polynomial generator. If this is not the case, it is assumed that the preceding frame was in error and an invalid CRC is declared.

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

REGISTER DESCRIPTION (continued)

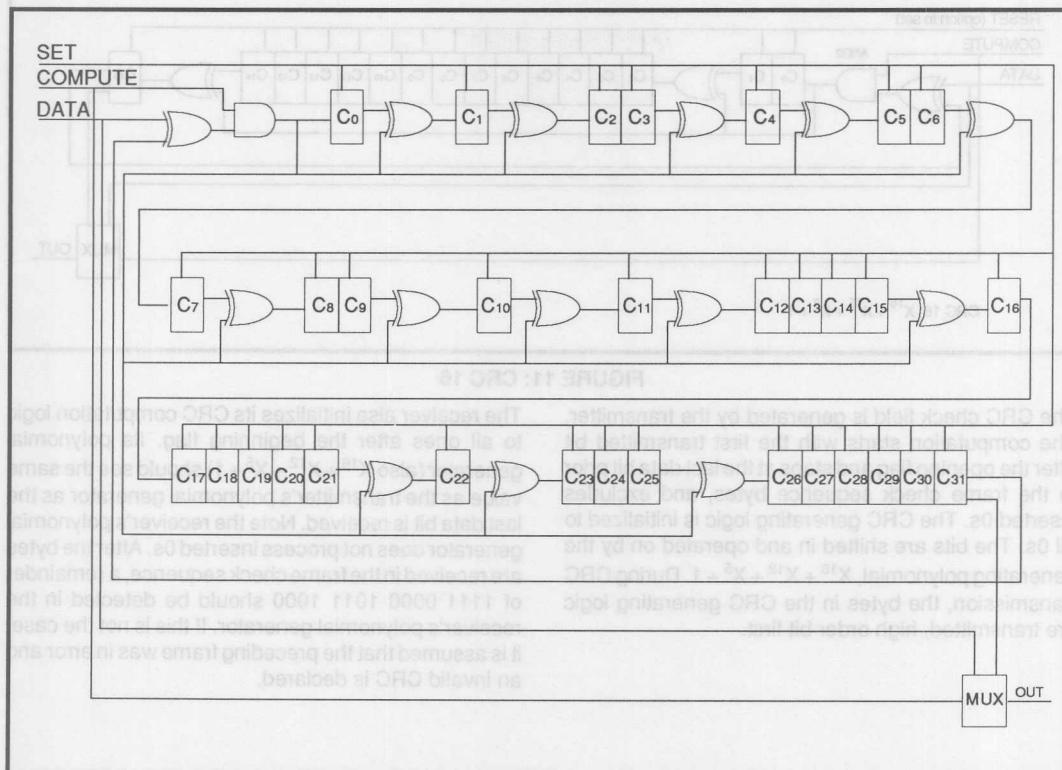


FIGURE 12: 32 Bit CRC

The CRC check field is generated by the transmitter. The computation starts with the first transmitted bit after the opening flag and stops at the last data bit prior to the frame check sequence bytes, and excludes inserted 0s. The CRC generating logic is initialized to all ones. The bits are shifted in and operated on by the generating polynomial, $X^{32} + X^{26} + X^{23} + X^{22} + X^{16} + X^{12} + X^{11} + X^{10} + X^8 + X^7 + X^5 + X^4 + X^2 + X + 1$. During CRC transmission, the bytes in the CRC generating logic are inverted and transmitted, high order bit first. The receiver also initializes its CRC computation logic to all

ones after the beginning flag. Its polynomial generator should see the same value as the transmitter's polynomial generator as the last data bit is received. Note the receiver's polynomial generator does not process inserted 0s. After the bytes are received in the frame check sequence, a remainder of 1101 1110 1011 1011 0010 0000 1110 0011 (X^0 through X^{32} , respectively) should be detected in the receiver's polynomial generator. If this is not the case, it is assumed that the preceding frame was in error and an invalid CRC is declared.

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|---|------|---|
| $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ | O | Program store enable. This output occurs only during a fetch to external program memory. (Active low) |
| RESET | I | Input which is used to initialize the processor. (Active high) |
| VND | GND | Negative digital voltage. (Digital Ground) |
| OSCIN | I | Crystal input for internal oscillator, also input for external source. |
| OSCOUT | O | Crystal oscillator output. |
| VPD | I | Positive digital voltage (+5V Digital Supply) |
| CLKOUT | O | Clock output programmable either OSC/2, OSC/1 or logic 0. |
| TXD | I | Serial input port to 73D246 from DTE same as RXD UART input. |
| RXD | O | Serial output port of 73D246 UART to DTE. |
| PTXCLK | I | Input clock used to transmit data PTXD. |
| PTXD | O | HDLC Packetizer TX output. This pin can also be programmed to the DTE's TXD output (clear channel) or the value written into bit 6 of the HDLC control register. Connects to modem device TXD. |
| PRXCLK | I | Input clock used to receive data PRXD. |
| PRXD | I | Serial input port (from modem device). |
| $\overline{\text{INT}}(0) - \overline{\text{INT}}(2)$ | I | External interrupt 0, 1 and 2. |
| USR1(0) -USR1(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port. |
| USR2(0) -USR2(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port. |
| USR3(0) -USR3(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port. If the bank select feature is chosen, USR (7) acts as address bit 17 and USR3 data bit 7 is ignored. Register BNKSEL bit 2 (BSEN) enables bank select, bit 1 (BS1) and bit 0 (BS0) select the appropriate bank. |
| USR4(0) -USR4(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port also Chip select enable. |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | O | Output strobe activated during a bus read. Can be used to enable data onto the bus from an external device. Used as a read strobe to external data memory. (Active low) |
| $\overline{\text{WR}}$ | O | Output strobe during a bus write. Used as a write strobe to external data memory. (Active low) |
| ALE | O | Address Latch Enable output pulse for latching the low byte of the address during accesses to external memory. |
| AD(0)-AD(7) | I/O | Data bus lines-I/O for devices that require multiplexed address and data bus. |
| A(0)-A(15) | O | Address bus lines-output latched address for devices that require separate data and address bus. |
| NO CONNECTS | | No connections, leave open. |

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

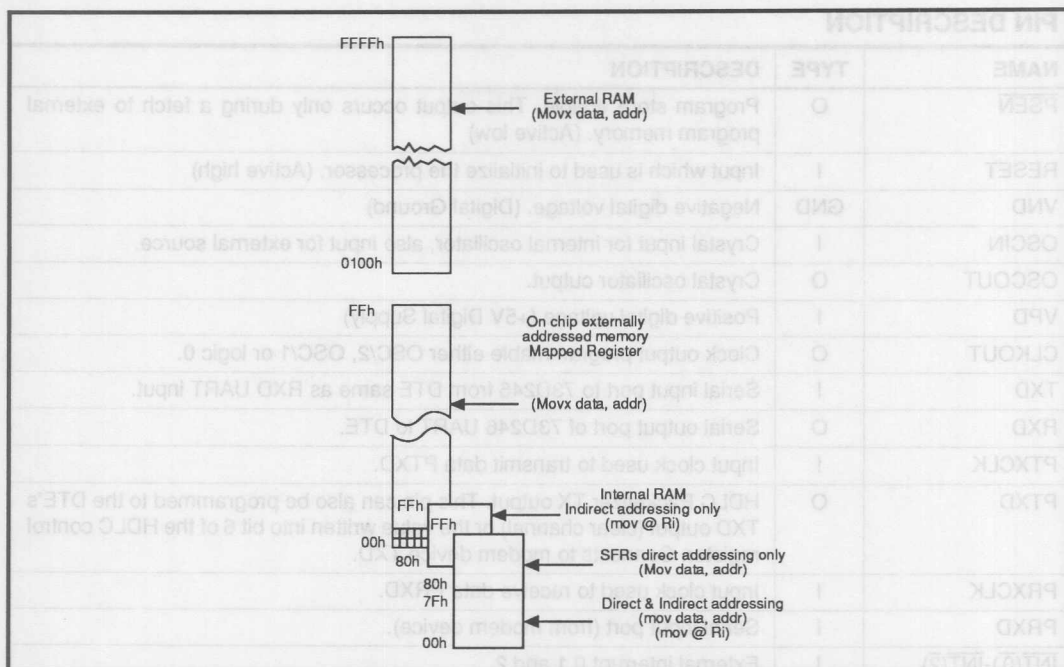


FIGURE 1: Memory Map

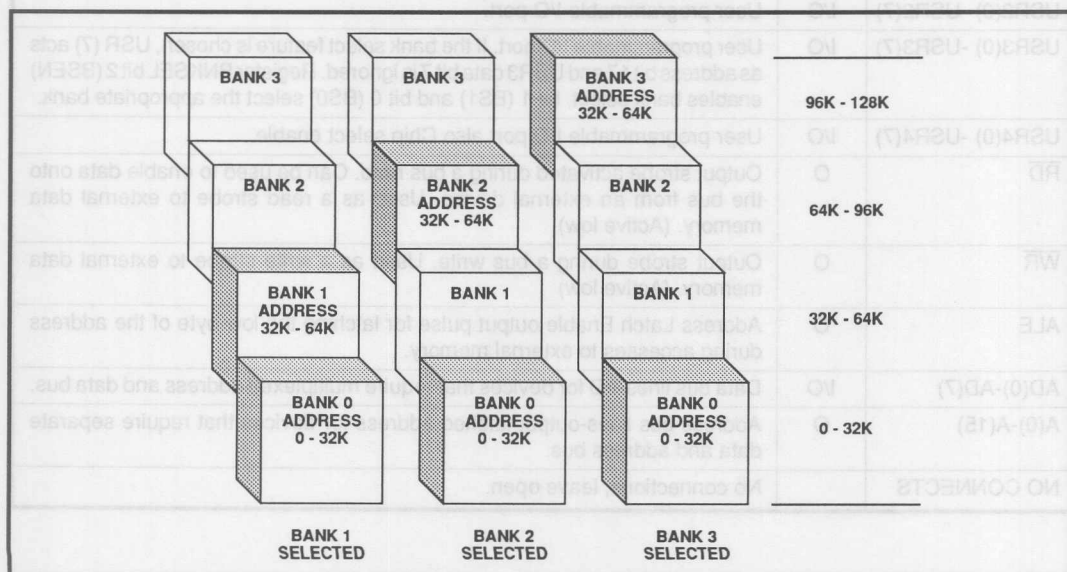


FIGURE 2: 128K of Bank-Selected Program Memory

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

| | | | | | | | |
|---|-------|------|--------|-------|------|------|------|
| Address locations 0008 - 00FF are reserved for future use | | | | | | | |
| 0008 | MAX | MIN | MIN | | | | 000F |
| 0000 | USER3 | DIR3 | BNKSEL | USER4 | DIR4 | CSEN | 0007 |

4

FIGURE 3: Memory Mapped Registers

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--------|--------|--------|--------|------|-------|-------|----|
| F8 | | | | | | | | FF |
| F0 | B | | | | | | | F7 |
| E8 | | | | | | | | EF |
| E0 | ACC | | | | | | | E7 |
| D8 | *USER2 | *DIR2 | | | | | | DF |
| D0 | PSW | | | | | | | D7 |
| C8 | T2CON | | RCAP2L | RCAP2H | TL2 | TH2 | | CF |
| C0 | *HDLC0 | *HDLC1 | *TXC | *HSTAT | *HIE | *HINT | *HRXD | C7 |
| B8 | IP | | | | | | | BF |
| B0 | P3 | | | | | | | B7 |
| A8 | IE | | | | | | | AF |
| A0 | P2 | | | | | | | A7 |
| 98 | SCON | SBUF | | | | | | 9F |
| 90 | *USER1 | *DIR1 | *IDIR | | | | | 97 |
| 88 | TCON | TMOD | TL0 | TL1 | TH0 | TH1 | | 8F |
| 80 | P0 | SP | DPL | DPH | | | PCON | 87 |

↑
BIT ADDRESSABLE

* Unique to the SSI 73D246. There may not be an equivalent function on an 8052.

FIGURE 4: 73D246 SFR Map

SSI 73D246

Microcontroller

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation outside these rating limits may cause permanent damage to this device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| Supply Voltage | -0.5 to +7.0V |
| Pin Input Voltage | -0.5 to $V_{CC} + 0.5V$ |
| Storage Temperature | -55 to +150°C |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| | |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Supply Voltage | 4.5 to 5.5V |
| Oscillator Frequency | DC to 22 MHz |
| Operating Temperature | -40 to +85°C |

DC CHARACTERISTICS

| PARAMETER | | CONDITION | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|--------|----------------------------|--------------------|-----|--------------------|---------|
| Input Low Voltage (Except OSCIN, RESET, TEST) | VIL | | -0.5 | | $0.2 V_{CC} - 0.1$ | V |
| Input Low Voltage OSCIN, RESET, TEST | VIL | | -0.5 | | $0.2 V_{CC}$ | V |
| Input High Voltage (Except OSCIN, RESET, TEST) | VIH | | $0.2 V_{CC} + 0.9$ | | $V_{CC} + 0.5$ | V |
| Input High Voltage OSCIN, RESET, TEST | VIH | | $0.7 V_{CC}$ | | $V_{CC} + 0.5$ | V |
| Output Low Voltage (Except OSCOUT) | VOL | $I_{OL} = 3.2 \text{ mA}$ | | | 0.45 | V |
| Output Low Voltage OSCOUT | VOLOSC | $I_{OL} = 2.0 \text{ mA}$ | | | 0.45 | V |
| Output High Voltage (Except OSCOUT) | VOH | $I_{OH} = 3.2 \text{ mA}$ | $V_{CC} - 0.45$ | | | V |
| Output High Voltage OSCOUT | VOHOSC | $I_{OH} = 2.0 \text{ mA}$ | $V_{CC} - 0.45$ | | | V |
| Input Leakage Current (Except OSCIN) | IIL | $V_{SS} < V_{in} < V_{CC}$ | | | ± 1 | μA |
| Input Leakage Current OSCIN | IIL | $V_{SS} < V_{in} < V_{CC}$ | ± 1 | | 60 | μA |
| Maximum Power Supply Normal Operation | IDD1 | 22 MHz 30 pF/pin | | | 40 | mA |
| Maximum Power Supply Idle Mode | IDD2 | 22 MHz | | | 6 | mA |
| Maximum Power Supply Power Down Mode | IDD3 | | | | 10 | μA |
| Pin Capacitance | CIO | @1 MHz | | | 10 | pF |

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

AC TIMING

| PARAMETER | CONDITION | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|-----------|------------|-----|------------|------|
| Oscillator Frequency | FOSC | 0 | | 22.2 | MHz |
| Oscillator Period | TOSC | 45 | | | ns |
| ALE Pulse Width | TLHLL | 2TOSC - 10 | | | ns |
| Address Valid To ALE low | TAVLL | TOSC | | | ns |
| Address Valid to ALE low | TLLAX | TOSC - 10 | | | ns |
| ALE low to $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ low | TLLPL | TOSC - 10 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ Pulse width low | TPLPH | 3TOSC - 20 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ Low to Valid Inst In | TPLIV | | | 3TOSC - 50 | ns |
| Address to Valid Inst In | TAVIV | | | 5TOSC - 50 | ns |
| Input Instr Hold- $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ Hi | TPXIX | 0 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ Instr Float- $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ Hi | TPXIZ | | | 20+ | ns |
| $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ Low to Address HIZ | TPLAZ | | | 10 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$ Pulse Width | TRLRH | 6TOSC - 20 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{WR}}$ Pulse Width | TWLWH | 6TOSC - 20 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$ Low to Valid Data In | TRLDV | | | 5TOSC - 50 | ns |
| Data Hold After $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | TRHDX | 0 | | | ns |
| Data Float After $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | TRHDZ | | | 20+ | ns |
| ALE Low to Valid Data In | TLLDV | | | 8TOSC - 50 | ns |
| ALE low to $\overline{\text{RD}}$ or $\overline{\text{WR}}$ low | TLLWL | 3TOSC - 20 | | 3TOSC + 20 | ns |
| Data Valid to $\overline{\text{WR}}$ low | TQVWX | TOSC | | | ns |
| Data Hold After $\overline{\text{WR}}$ Hi | TWHQX | TOSC - 10 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$ low to Address Float | TRLAZ | | | 10 | ns |

The SSI 73D246 timing is very similar to the 8051 except in AD(7:0), the multiplexed address data port known as port 0 in the 8051. Its timing has been altered somewhat to allow more address setup time for peripheral program ROM and memory mapped peripherals. This is important at 22 MHz operation. The 8052 has a "dead" cycle of one oscillator period between the time $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ goes high, indicating that the instruction ROM will release the AD(7:0) bus, to the time the processor will assert address on the AD(7:0) bus. This dead time of one whole oscillator cycle has been shortened to approximately 15 ns after the $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ (or $\overline{\text{RD}}$) signal is sensed to be high.

The timing specification for TPXIZ and TRHDZ of a maximum of 15 ns can be violated at the expense of increased operating current. The SSI 73D246 will begin asserting the AD(7:0) bus approximately 20 ns after $\overline{\text{PSEN}}$ or $\overline{\text{RD}}$ go high. This should be ample time for the control signals in the peripheral device to turn off their pad drivers. If the peripheral device does not release the bus promptly, there will be a short time where there is contention on the AD(7:0) bus between the processor and peripheral. This should not prevent proper operation, but it will increase operating current slightly.

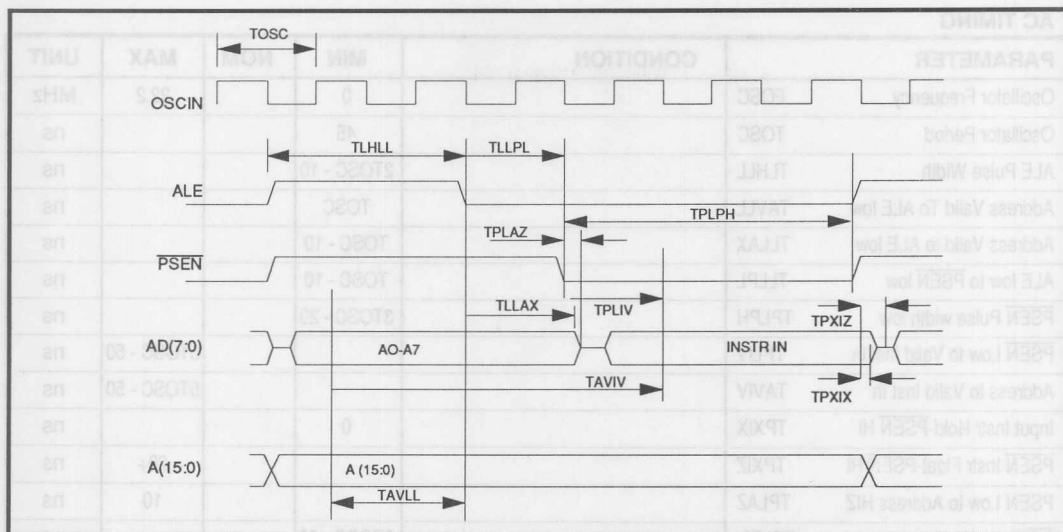


FIGURE 5: External Program Memory Read Cycle

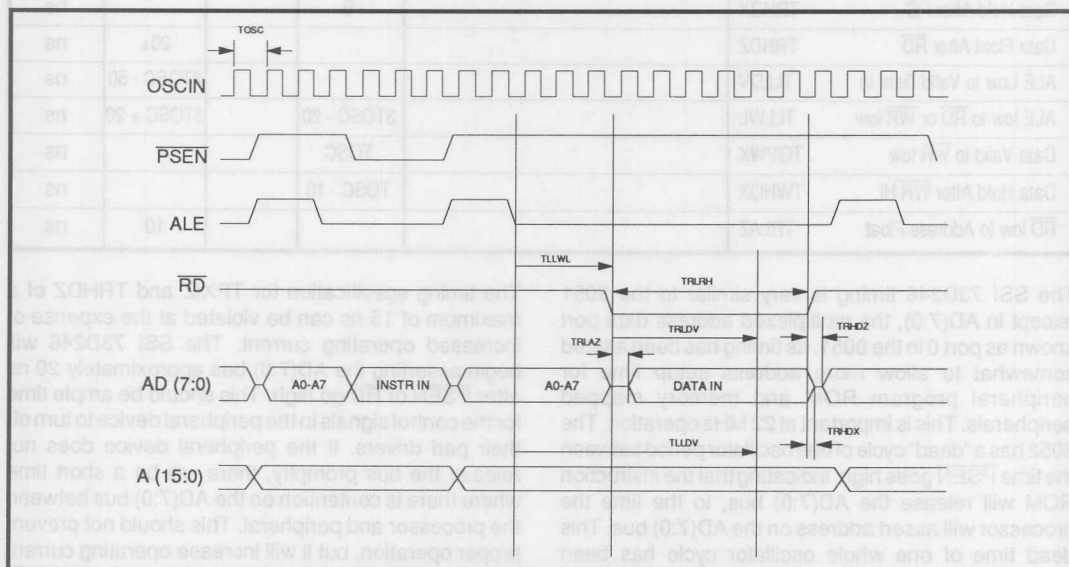


FIGURE 6: External Data Memory Read Cycle

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

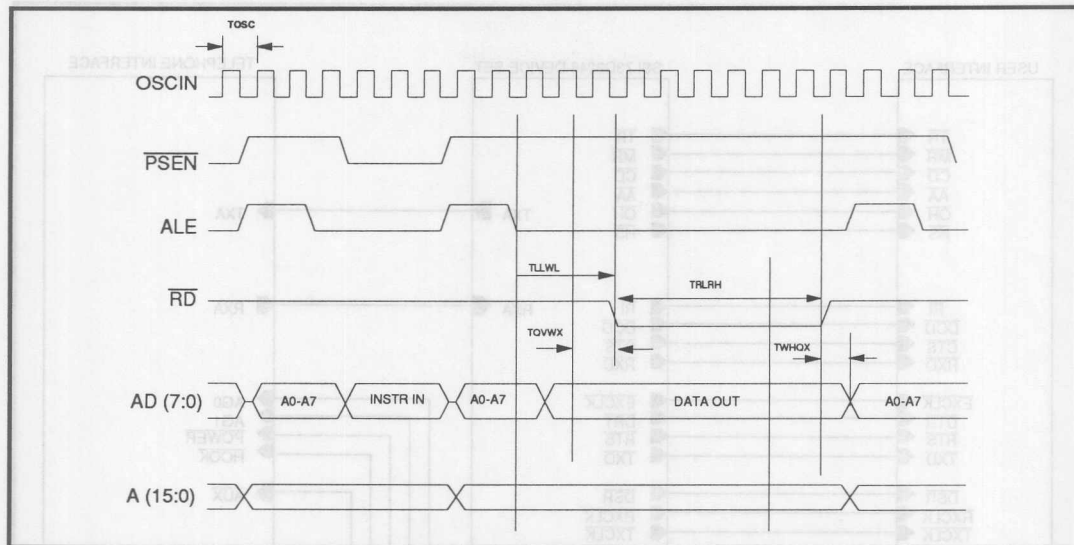


FIGURE 7: External Data Memory Write Cycle

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

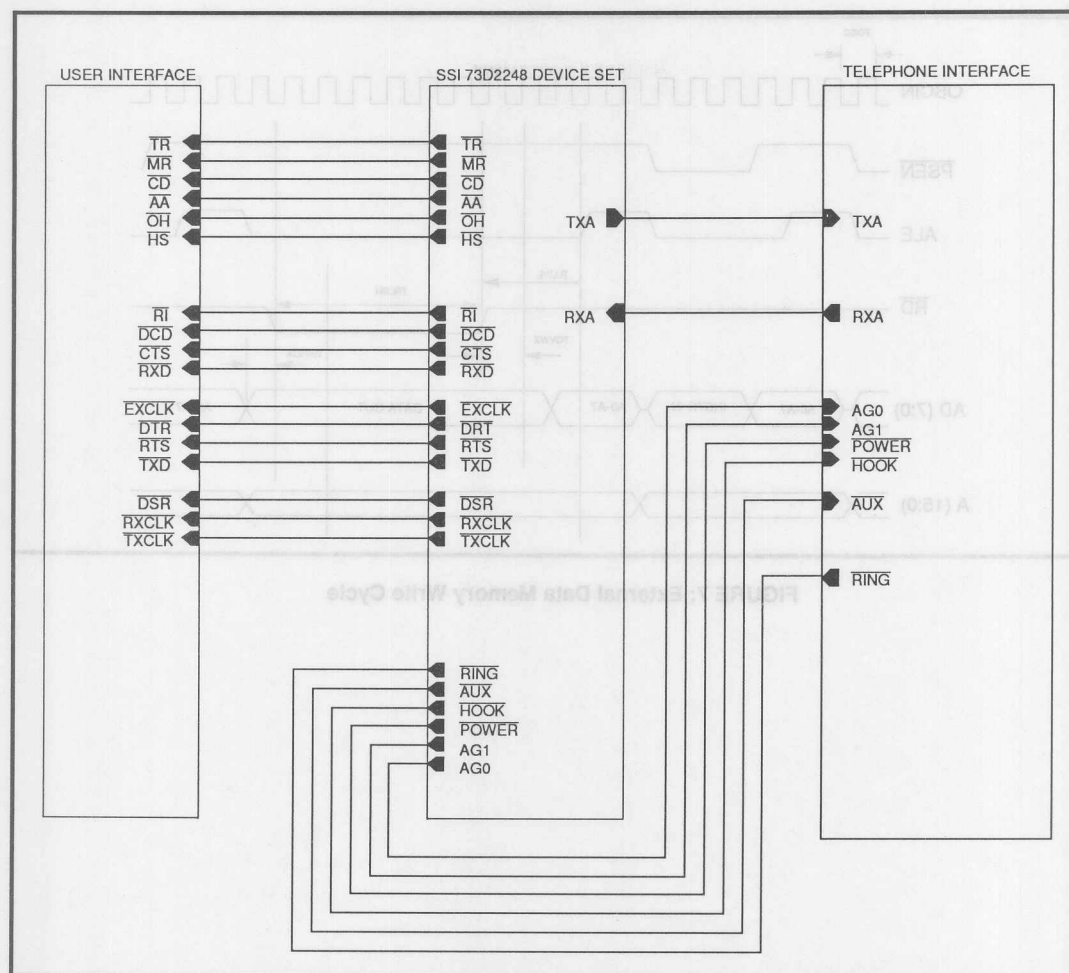


FIGURE 13: Modem Block Diagram

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

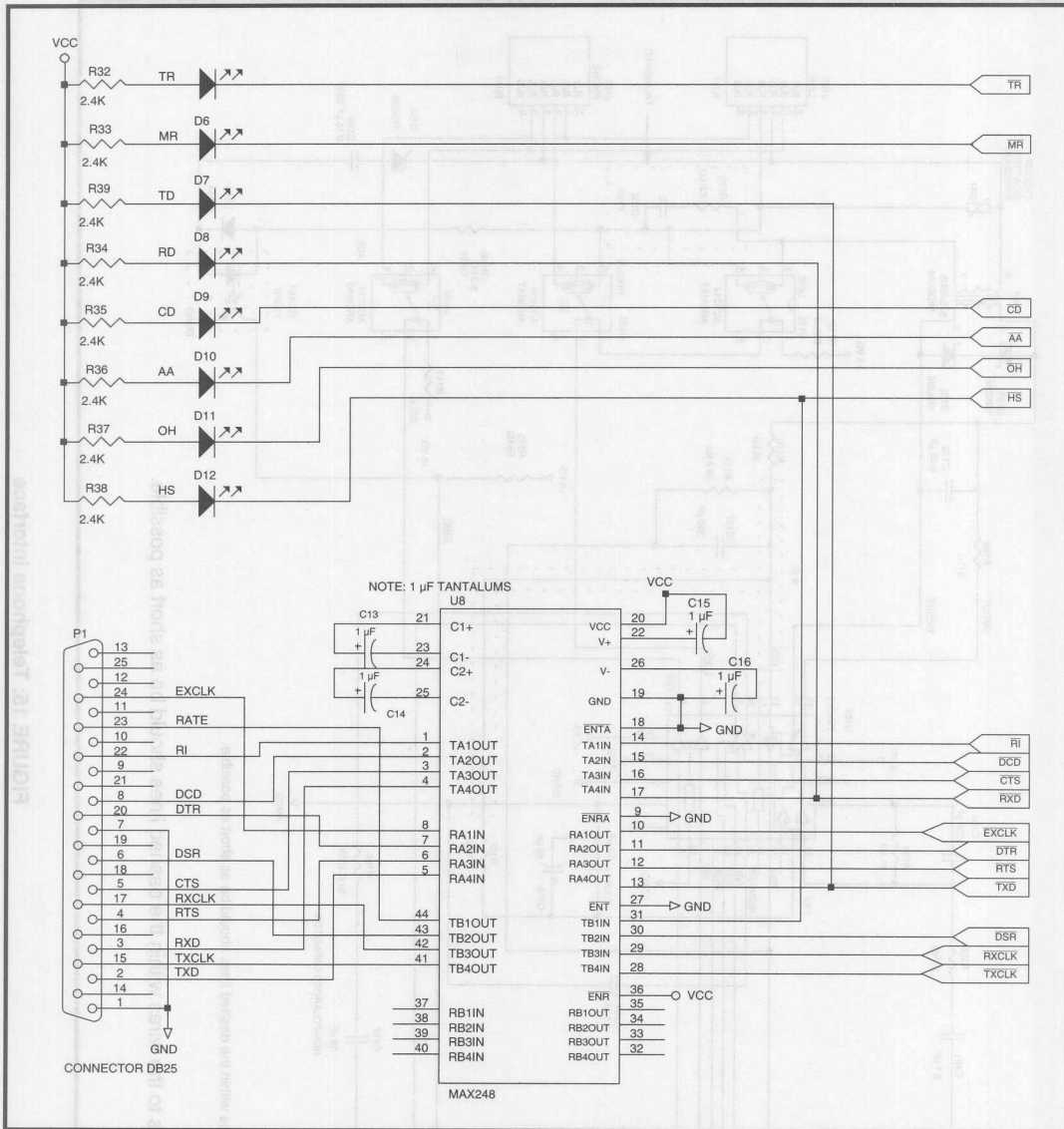


FIGURE 14: Display and User Interface



** The tracks to the wires within the dashed lines should be as short as possible.

FIGURE 15: Telephone Interface

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

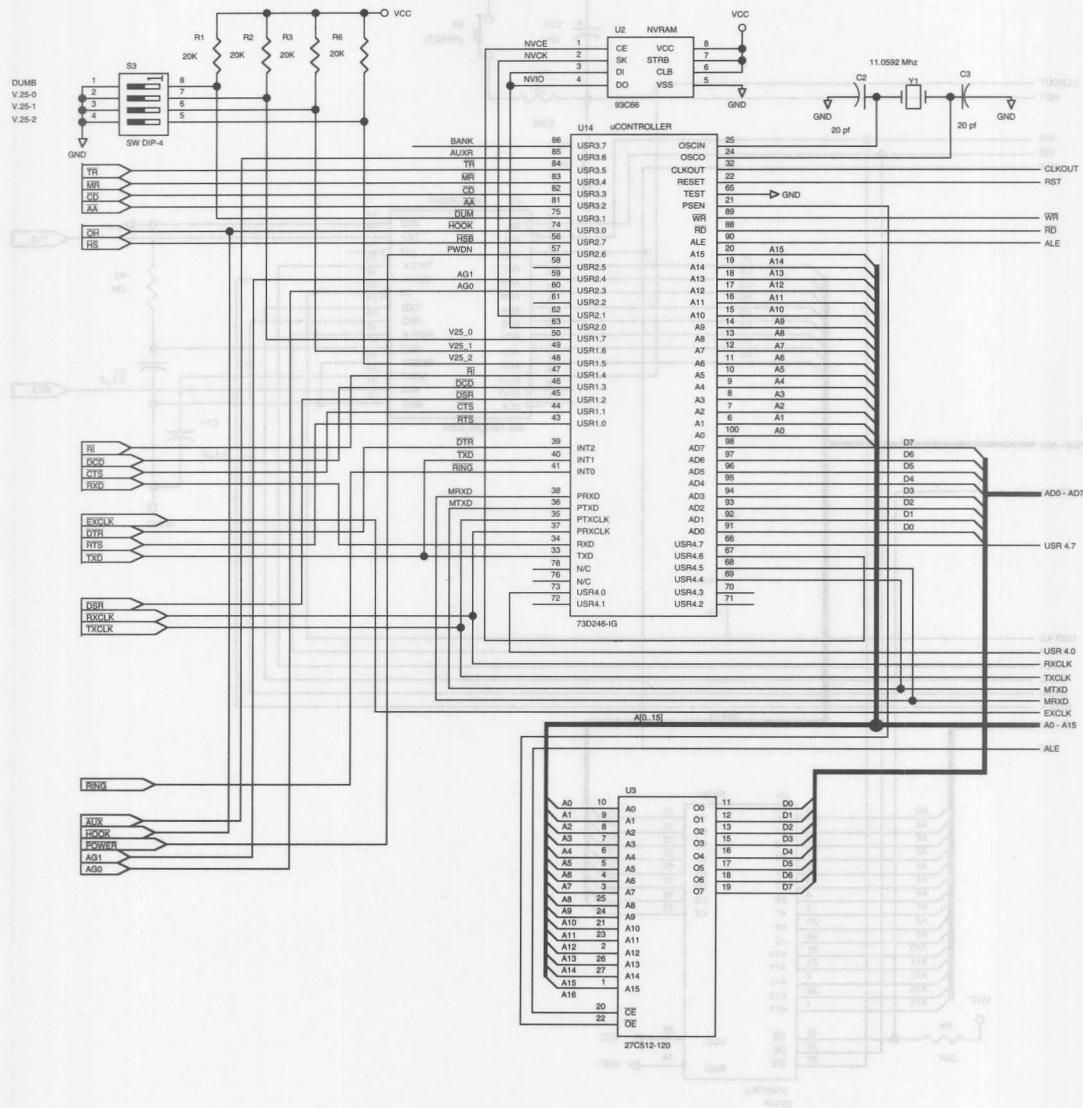
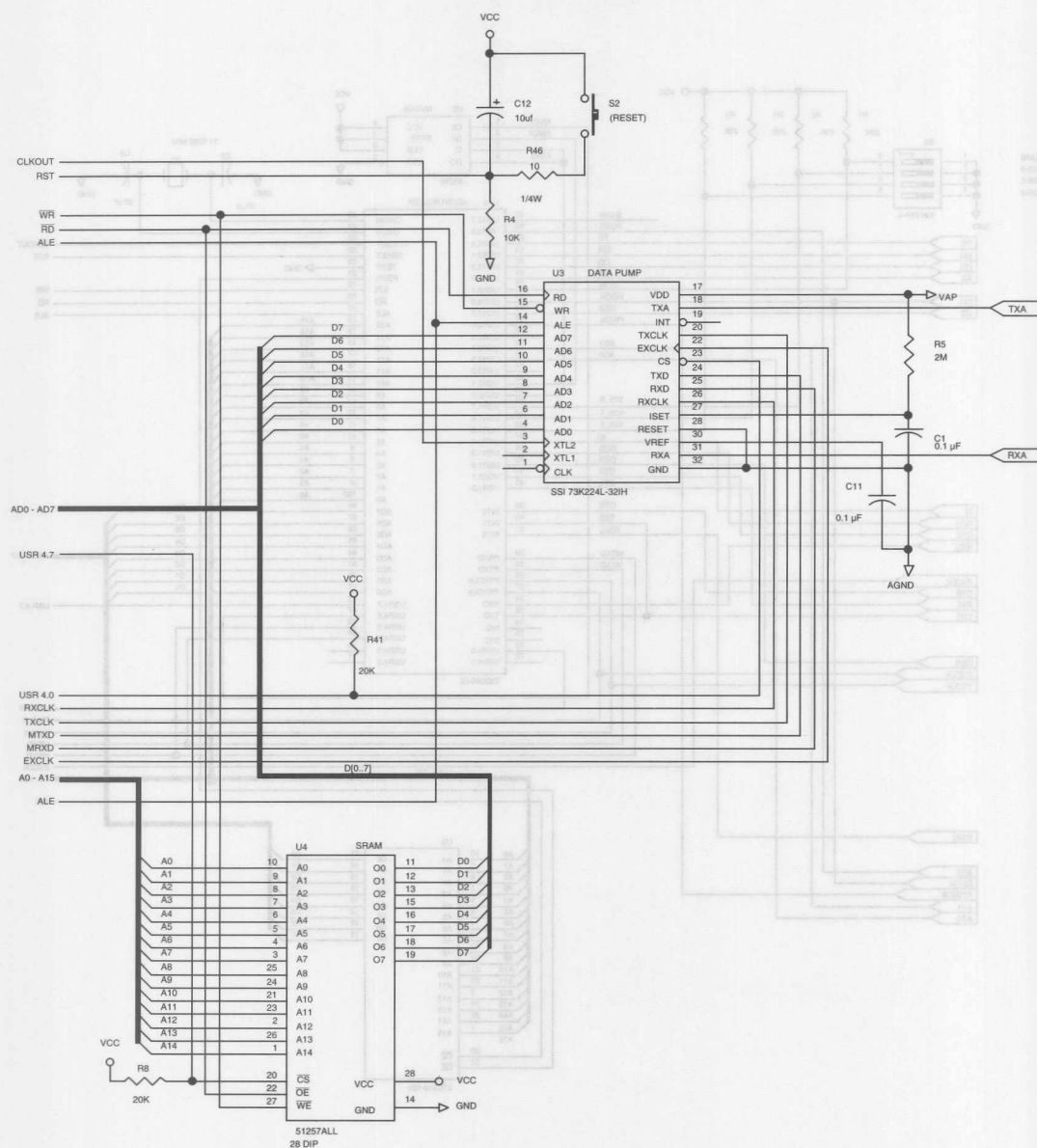


FIGURE 16A: 2248 Modem System Interconnect - Front End

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller



SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

100-Pin PGA (For development purposes only; not a production package.)

| BOND PRD | PIN # | SIGNAL NAME | BOND PRD | PIN # | SIGNAL NAME |
|----------|-------|-------------|----------|-------|-------------|
| 1 | B2 | NO CONNECT | 37 | M7 | WR |
| 2 | B1 | NO CONNECT | 38 | L7 | ALE |
| 3 | C2 | USR27 | 39 | N7 | D0 |
| 4 | C1 | USR26 | 40 | N8 | D1 |
| 5 | D2 | USR25 | 41 | M8 | D2 |
| 6 | D1 | USR24 | 42 | L8 | D3 |
| 7 | E2 | USR23 | 43 | N9 | D4 |
| 8 | E1 | USR22 | 44 | M9 | D5 |
| 9 | F3 | USR21 | 45 | N10 | D6 |
| 10 | F2 | USR20 | 46 | M10 | D7 |
| 11 | F1 | VPD | 47 | N11 | VPD |
| 12 | G2 | GND | 48 | N12 | A0 |
| 13 | G3 | USR47 | 49 | M11 | NO CONNECT |
| 14 | G1 | USR46 | 50 | N13 | NO CONNECT |
| 15 | H1 | USR45 | 51 | M12 | NO CONNECT |
| 16 | H2 | USR44 | 52 | M13 | NO CONNECT |
| 17 | H3 | USR43 | 53 | L12 | NO CONNECT |
| 18 | J1 | USR42 | 54 | L13 | A1 |
| 19 | J2 | USR41 | 55 | K12 | A2 |
| 20 | K1 | USR40 | 56 | K13 | A3 |
| 21 | K2 | USR30 | 57 | J12 | A4 |
| 22 | L1 | USR31 | 58 | J13 | A5 |
| 23 | M1 | NO CONNECT | 59 | H11 | A6 |
| 24 | L2 | NO CONNECT | 60 | H12 | A7 |
| 25 | N1 | NO CONNECT | 61 | H13 | A8 |
| 26 | M2 | NO CONNECT | 62 | G12 | A9 |
| 27 | N2 | NO CONNECT | 63 | G11 | A10 |
| 28 | M3 | NO CONNECT | 64 | G13 | A11 |
| 29 | N3 | USR32 | 65 | F13 | A12 |
| 30 | M4 | USR33 | 66 | F12 | A13 |
| 31 | N4 | USR34 | 67 | F11 | A14 |
| 32 | M5 | USR35 | 68 | E13 | A15 |
| 33 | N5 | USR36 | 69 | E12 | PSEN |
| 34 | L6 | USR37 | 70 | D13 | RESET |
| 35 | M6 | GND | 71 | D12 | GND |
| 36 | N6 | RD | 72 | C13 | OSCOU |

Microcontroller

100-Pin PGA (continued)

| BOND PRD | PIN # | SIGNAL NAME |
|----------|-------|-------------|
| 73 | B13 | OSCIN |
| 74 | C12 | NO CONNECT |
| 75 | A13 | NO CONNECT |
| 76 | B12 | NO CONNECT |
| 77 | A12 | NO CONNECT |
| 78 | B11 | VPD |
| 79 | A11 | CLKOUT |
| 80 | B10 | TXD |
| 81 | A10 | RXD |
| 82 | B9 | PTXCLK |
| 83 | A9 | PTXD |
| 84 | C8 | PRXCLK |
| 85 | B8 | PRXD |
| 86 | A8 | INT2 |

| BOND PRD | PIN # | SIGNAL NAME |
|----------|-------|-------------|
| 87 | B7 | INT1 |
| 88 | C7 | INT0 |
| 89 | A7 | GND |
| 90 | A6 | USR10 |
| 91 | B6 | USR11 |
| 92 | C6 | USR12 |
| 93 | A5 | USR13 |
| 94 | B5 | USR14 |
| 95 | A4 | USR15 |
| 96 | B4 | USR16 |
| 97 | A3 | USR17 |
| 98 | A2 | NO CONNECT |
| 99 | B3 | NO CONNECT |
| 100 | A1 | NO CONNECT |

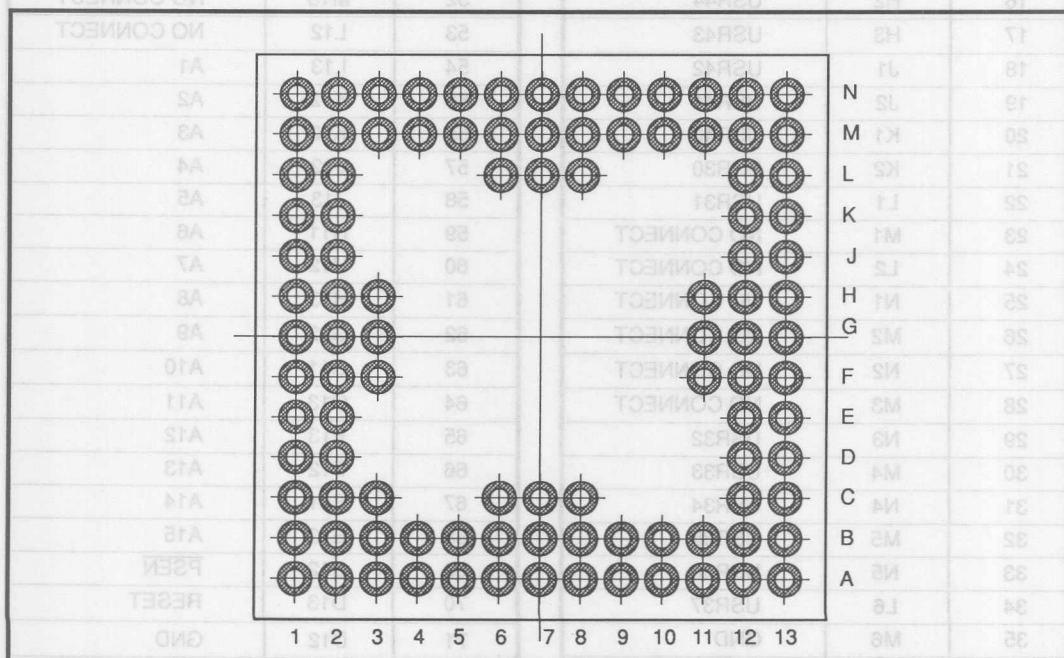
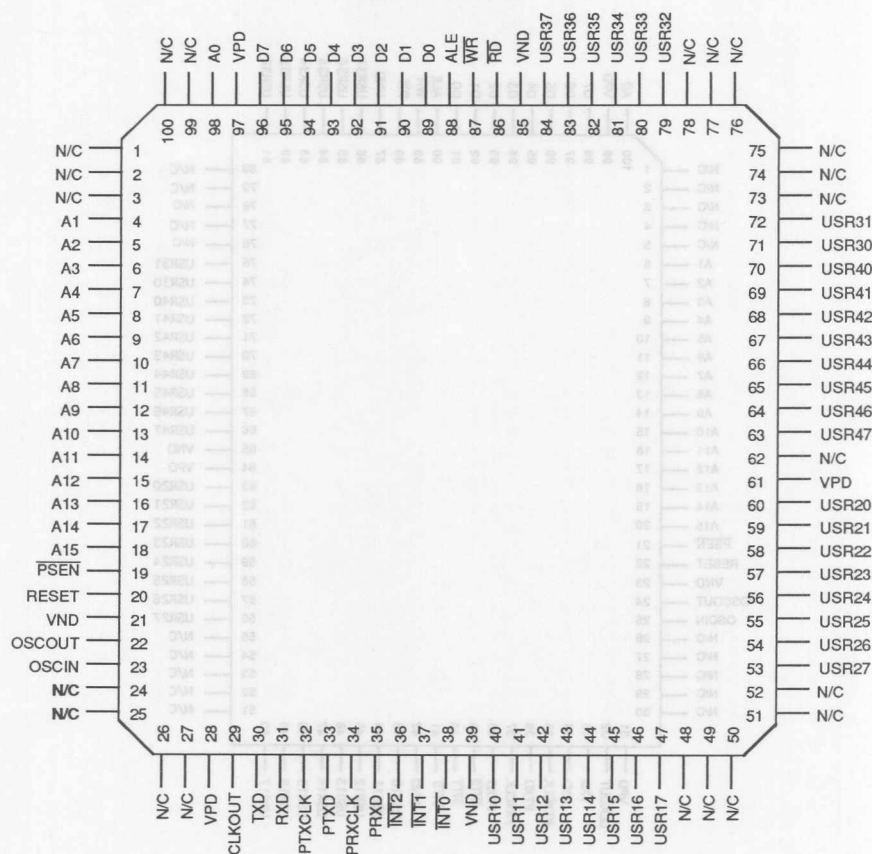


FIGURE 17: 100-Pin Plug-In Package

SSI 73D246 Microcontroller

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



100-Lead TQFP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

Advanced Information: Indicates a product that is in the design phase, and any specifications are preliminary. This information is subject to change without notice. No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of the product not for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, trademarks or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the user is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

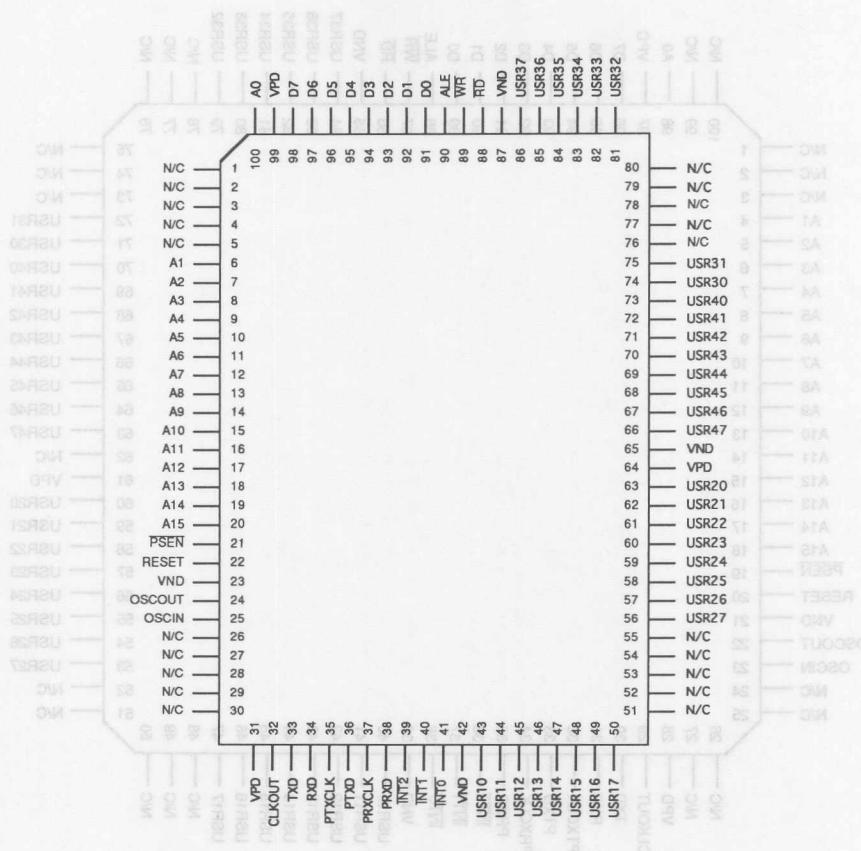
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14521 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-1055 (714) 873-0000, FAX (714) 873-0914

SSI 73D246

Microcontroller

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



100-Lead QFP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

Advance Information: Indicates a product still in the design cycle, and any specifications are based on design goals only. Do not use for final design.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

December 1992

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73D2240 is a set of two ICs that provide the data pump functions needed to design a high-performance, low-power 2400 bit/s intelligent modem for use in dial-up telephone network applications. The SSI 73D2240 consists of the SSI 73K224L 1-chip multi-mode modem along with the SSI 73D600, a companion supervisory controller that provides a complete "AT" command and feature set compatible with industry standard products.

The SSI 73D2240 includes operating modes compatible with CCITT V.22bis, V.22, and V.21, as well as Bell 212A and 103 data communications standards. Using advanced CMOS processes that integrate analog, digital signal processing and switched capacitor filter functions on the same chip, the SSI 73D2240 offers excellent performance, full modem features and the lowest power consumption available in a compact 2-chip set.

(continued)

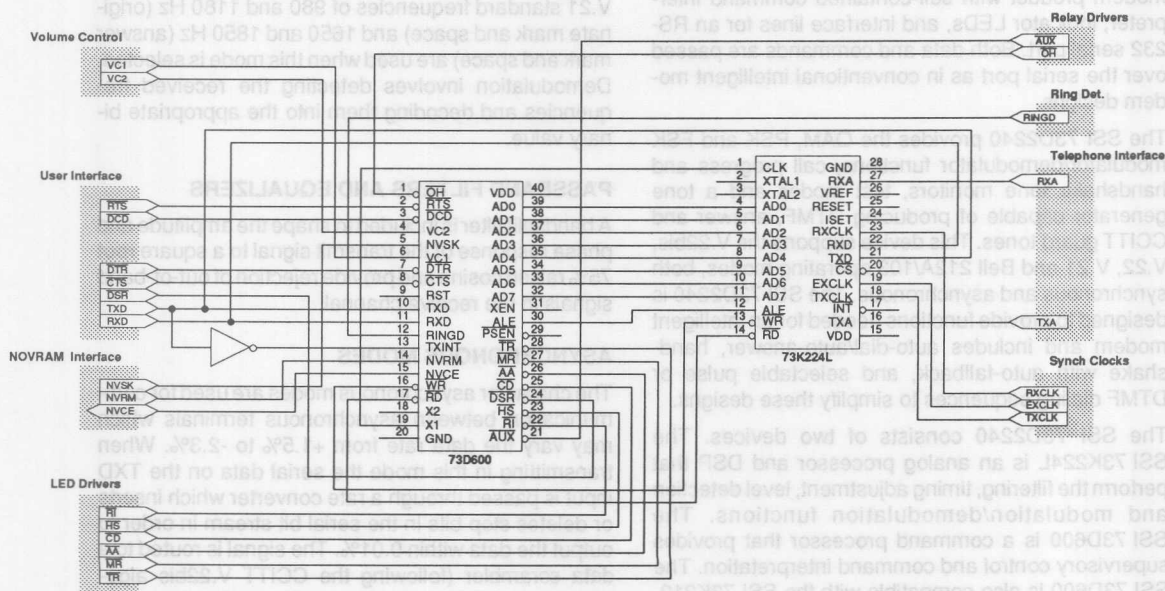
FEATURES

- Multi-mode V.22bis/V.22/V.21 & Bell 212A/103 compatible device set for intelligent modem designs
- Full duplex operation at 0-300, 1200 and 2400 bit/s with all synch & asynch operating modes
- Includes high-level "AT" command interpreter compatible with 2400 bit/s industry standard products
- SSI 73K600 Controller Compatible with other K-series products
- Complete complement of "AT" modem features
- Selectable automatic speed detect, handshake and autobaud functions
- Supports external non-volatile memory to store user configurations
- Adaptive equalization for optimum performance over all lines
- Dynamic range from -3 to -45 dBm

(continued)

4

BLOCK DIAGRAM



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

DESCRIPTION (continued)

The SSI 73D2240 can be used in free-standing and integral modem designs where full-duplex 2400 bit/s operation is required. Single 5V supply operation with extremely low power draw make it ideal for battery powered terminals, lap-top PCs and other power sensitive applications.

FEATURES (continued)

- Call progress, carrier and answer tone detectors provide intelligent dialing functions
- DTMF and CCITT guard tone generators
- Test modes available - ALB, DL, RDL for complete test capability
- All CMOS technology for low power consumption (< 600mW using $\pm 5V$)

OPERATION

The SSI 73D2240 is a complete V.22bis intelligent modem contained in two CMOS ICs. The device set forms the basis for a high performance stand-alone modem product with self-contained command interpreter, indicator LEDs, and interface lines for an RS-232 serial port. Both data and commands are passed over the serial port as in conventional intelligent modem designs.

The SSI 73D2240 provides the QAM, PSK and FSK modulator/demodulator functions, call progress and handshake tone monitors, test modes and a tone generator capable of producing DTMF, answer and CCITT guard tones. This device supports the V.22bis, V.22, V.21 and Bell 212A/103 operating modes, both synchronous and asynchronous. The SSI 73D2240 is designed to provide functions needed for an intelligent modem and includes auto-dial/auto-answer, handshake with auto-fallback, and selectable pulse or DTMF dialing sequences to simplify these designs.

The SSI 73D2240 consists of two devices. The SSI 73K224L is an analog processor and DSP that perform the filtering, timing adjustment, level detection and modulation/demodulation functions. The SSI 73D600 is a command processor that provides supervisory control and command interpretation. The SSI 73D600 is also compatible with the SSI 73K212, 221 and 222 K-series modem ICs.

QAM MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The SSI 73D2240 scrambles and encodes the 2400 bit/s incoming data into quad bits represented by 16 possible signal points as specified by CCITT recommendation V.22 bis. The modulator transmits this encoded data using either a 1200 Hz (originate mode) or 2400 Hz (answer mode) carrier. The demodulator reverses this procedure and recovers a data clock from the incoming signal. Adaptive equalization corrects for different line conditions by automatically changing filter parameters to compensate for line characteristics.

DPSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

In DPSK mode the SSI 73D2240 modulates the 1200 bit/s incoming data using a subset of the QAM signal points as specified by CCITT recommendation V.22bis, V.22 and Bell 212A. The DPSK demodulator is similar to the QAM demodulator.

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK transmitter frequency modulates the analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. The Bell 103 standard frequencies of 1270 and 1070 Hz (originate mark and space) and 2225 and 2025 Hz (answer mark and space) or the V.21 standard frequencies of 980 and 1180 Hz (originate mark and space) and 1650 and 1850 Hz (answer mark and space) are used when this mode is selected. Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

A bandsplit filter is included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit signal to a square root 75% raised cosine and provide rejection of out-of-band signals in the receive channel.

ASYNCHRONOUS MODES

The character asynchronous modes are used for communication between asynchronous terminals which may vary the data rate from +1.5% to -2.3%. When transmitting in this mode the serial data on the TXD input is passed through a rate converter which inserts or deletes stop bits in the serial bit stream in order to output the data within 0.01%. The signal is routed to a data scrambler (following the CCITT V.22bis algorithm) and into the modulator. The 73D2240 recognizes a break signal and handles it in accordance with

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

specifications. Received data is processed in a similar fashion except that the rate converter now acts to reinsert any deleted stop bits. An incoming break signal will be passed through without incorrectly inserting a stop bit.

SYNCHRONOUS MODES

Synchronous operation is possible only with the QAM or DPSK modes. Operation is similar to that of the asynchronous mode except that data must be synchronized to a provided clock and no variation in data transfer rate is allowable. External synchronous mode is provided for a user supplied clock accurate to $\pm 0.01\%$. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK. Receive data at the RXD output is clocked out on the rising edge of RXCLK. The async/synch converter is bypassed when synchronous mode is selected and data is transmitted out at the same rate as is input. The RXCLK, TXCLK and EXCLK are for synchronous modes only.

AUTOMATIC HANDSHAKE

The SSI 73D2240 will automatically perform a complete handshake as defined by the V.22bis, V.22 and Bell 212A/103 standards to connect with a remote modem. The SSI 73D2240 automatically determines the speed and operating mode and adjusts its operation to correspond to that of an answering modem when originating a call.

TEST MODES

The SSI 73D2240 allows use of Analog Loopback, Digital Loopback and Remote Digital Loopback test modes. Full test mode capability allows testing of the modem and interface functions from the local terminal using the appropriate control commands, or remotely using the RDL function.

ADAPTIVE EQUALIZATION WITH AUTO-RETRAIN

The SSI 73D2240 uses adaptive equalization which automatically compensates for varying line characteristics by adjusting taps on a multi-tap FIR filter. Optimum performance is obtained with this technique over a wide range of line conditions. When the line quality deteriorates to a specified level the SSI 73D2240 can automatically initiate a retrain of the equalizer to re-establish data communications without the need to go through a complete handshake sequence.

"AT" COMMAND INTERPRETER

The SSI 73D2240 includes an AT command interpreter which is compatible with the Hayes 2400 Smartmodem™ command set. Functions and features included with intelligent modems are provided by the SSI 73D2240 command interpreter. The SSI 73D600 controller may also be used with the SSI 73K212, K221, and K222. It will function with these parts in the modes supported by the device. It will still support the Hayes Smartmodem™ 2400 commands even though operation at 2400 bit/s will not be permitted. The controller reads the device signature of the modem IC installed to determine which modes should be allowed.

NON-VOLATILE MEMORY

The SSI 73D2240 supports connection to an external non-volatile memory (National 9346 or equivalent) to store dial strings and the current AT command configuration. If NOVRAM is not present, the factory default configuration is automatically used, but dial string storage is not permitted.

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

SPEED/PROTOCOL COMPATIBILITY GUIDE

| | | 73D2240 originating as: | | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|------|-------|------|------|--|
| | | Bell | | CCITT | | | |
| Calling a: | | 300 | 1200 | 300 | 1200 | 2400 | |
| Bell | 300 (103) | 300 | 300 | - | - | 300 | |
| | 1200 (212) | 300 | 1200 | - | 1200 | 1200 | |
| | 2400 ¹ (224) | 300 | 1200 | - | 1200 | 2400 | |
| CCITT | 300 (V.21) | - | - | 300 | - | - | |
| | 1200 (V.22) | 300 | 1200 | - | 1200 | 1200 | |
| | 2400 (V.22bis) | 300 | 1200 | - | 1200 | 2400 | |
| | | 73D2240 answering as: | | | | | |
| | | Bell | | CCITT | | | |
| Called from a: | | 300 | 1200 | 300 | 1200 | 2400 | |
| Bell | 300 (103) | 300 | 300 | - | - | 300 | |
| | 1200 (212) | 300 | 1200 | - | 1200 | 1200 | |
| | 2400 (224) | 300 | 1200 | - | 1200 | 2400 | |
| CCITT | 300 (V.21) | - | - | 300 | - | - | |
| | 1200 (V.22) | 300 | 1200 | - | 1200 | 1200 | |
| | 2400 (V.22bis) | 300 | 1200 | - | 1200 | 2400 | |

¹ A Bell 2400 is a V.22bis using a 2225 Hz answer tone without unscrambled marks.

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

"AT" COMMANDS SUPPORTED

(Note: s=string; n=decimal, 0-255; x=Boolean, 0/1=false/true)

| COMMAND | OPTIONS | DEFAULT |
|---------|---|---------|
| A/ | Repeats last command line | N/A |
| A | Answer | N/A |
| Bx | BELL/CCITT = 1/0 answer tone @1200 (N/A @2400) | 1 |
| DS = n | Dial string specified by n, n = 0-3 | n = 0 |
| Ex | Command echo, 0/1 = off/on | 1 |
| Hn | Hook status, 0/1 = on/off | N/A |
| In | ID code, 0/1/2 (see Table 8) | N/A |
| Ln | Speaker volume, (0)1/2/3 = lo/med/hi | 2 |
| Mn | Speaker, 0/1/2/3 = control (see Table 3) | 1 |
| On | Online, 0/1/2/3 = online/retrain/no retrain (see Table 4) | N/A |
| P | Pulse dial | Pulse |
| Qx | Quiet result, 0/1 = 1-quiet | 0 |
| R | Reverse originate | N/A |
| Sn=n | Set S register (see Table 2) | N/A |
| Sn? | Return value in register n (see Table 2) | N/A |
| T | Touch tone dial | Pulse |
| Vx | Verbose result, 0/1 = off/on | 1 |
| Xn | Result code, 0/1/2/3/4 (see Table 1) | 4 |
| Yx | Enable long space disconnect, 1 = enable | 0 |
| Zx | Restore from Non-Volatile Memory, x = 0 or 1 | N/A |
| &Cx | Carrier detect override, 0/1 = on/normal | 0 |
| &Dn | DTR mode, 0/1/2/3 (see Table 5) | 0 |
| &F | Restore to factory configuration | N/A |
| &Gn | CCITT guard tone, 0/1/2 = off/1800/550 | 0 |
| &Jx | Auxiliary relay control | 0 |
| &Mn | Async/Sync mode, 0/1/2/3 (see Table 6) | 0 |

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

"AT" COMMANDS SUPPORTED (continued)

| COMMAND | OPTIONS | DEFAULT |
|---------|---|---------|
| &Px | Pulse dial mode, 0/1=U.S./U.K. | 0 |
| &Qx | Same as &M | N/A |
| &Rx | Enable RTS/CTS | 0 |
| &Sx | DSR override, 0/1=U.S./U.K. | 0 |
| &Tn | Test mode (see Table 7) | N/A |
| &V | View active configuration and user profiles | N/A |
| &Wx | Write current configuration to NVRAM x = 0 or 1 | 0 |
| &Xn | Sync Tx clock mode, 0/1/2=int/ext/slave | 0 |
| &Yx | Designate default user profile Z0 or Z1 | N/A |
| &Zn = s | Store a telephone number n = 0-3 | N/A |

Factory configuration¹:

B1 E1 F1 L2 M1 P Q0 V1 X4 Y0 &C0 &D0 &G0 &J0 &M0 &P0 &R0 &S0 &T4 &X0

Dial string arguments:

, = delay

@ = silent answer

! = flash

; = return to command

s = dial stored number

W = wait for tone

R=reverse mode

TABLE 1: Result Codes

| Xn | VOCAL/NUMERIC RESULT CODE |
|----|---|
| X0 | OK/0, CONNECT/1, RING/2, NO CARRIER/3, ERROR/4 |
| X1 | All functions of X0 + CONNECT (RATE)/1 = 300, 5 = 1200, 10 = 2400 |
| X2 | All functions of X1 + NO DIAL TONE/6 |
| X3 | All functions of X1 + BUSY/7 |
| X4 | All functions of X3 + NO DIAL TONE/6 |

TABLE 2: S Registers Supported

| Sn | FUNCTION | UNITS | DEFAULT |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------|---------|
| S0 ² | Answer on ring | No. of rings | 000 |
| S1 | Ring counter | No. of rings up to 8 | 000 |
| S2 | Escape code | ASCII CHR\$() | 043 |
| S3 | Carriage return | ASCII CHR\$() | 013 |

¹ If the NOVRAM has not been initialized it may be necessary to Power down/Power up and type AT&F&W<cr> to properly initialize modem state.

² Stored in NVRAM with &W command

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

TABLE 2: S Registers Supported (continued)

| NUMBER | FUNCTION | UNITS | DEFAULT |
|-------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------|
| S4 | Line feed | ASCII CHR\$() | 010 |
| S5 | Back space | ASCII CHR\$() | 008 |
| S6 | Wait for dial tone | Seconds | 002 |
| S7 | Wait for carrier | Seconds | 030 |
| S8 | Pause time | Seconds | 002 |
| S9 | Carrier valid | 100 milliseconds | 006 |
| S10 | Carrier drop out | 100 milliseconds | 014 |
| S11 | DTMF tone duration | 1 millisecond | 070 |
| S12 | Escape guard time | 20 milliseconds | 050 |
| S13 | Unused | | N/A |
| *S14 ² | Bit mapped register | Decimal 0-255 | 170 |
| S15 | Unused | | N/A |
| S16 | Test register | Decimal # | 000 |
| S18 | Test timer | Decimal 0-255 | 000 |
| S19 | Unused | | N/A |
| S20 | Unused | | N/A |
| *S21 ² | Bit mapped register | Decimal 0-255 | 000 |
| *S22 ² | Bit mapped register | Decimal 0-255 | 118 |
| *S23 ² | Bit mapped register | Decimal 0-255 | 007 |
| S24 | Unused | | N/A |
| S25 ² | DTR delay | 10 milliseconds | 005 |
| S26 ² | CTS delay | 10 milliseconds | 001 |
| *S27 ² | Bit mapped register | Decimal 0-255 | 064 |

* The bit mapped register functions are equivalent to normal "AT" command modem registers. They are not needed for evaluation of the 73D2240 capabilities.

Asynchronous character formats supported:

[Number of data bits, parity (even/odd/none), number of stop bits]

1200/2400 bit/s: 7N2, 7E1, 7O1, 8N1

300 bit/s: 7N2, 7E1, 7O1, 8N1

² Stored in NVRAM with &W command

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

TABLE 3: Speaker Modes

| Mn | SPEAKER MODE |
|----|---------------------------------|
| M0 | Speaker off |
| M1 | Speaker on during connect only |
| M2 | Speaker on always |
| M3 | Speaker on during call progress |

TABLE 4: O Modes

| On | ONLINE/RETRAIN MODE |
|----|------------------------------------|
| O0 | Return online |
| O1 | Return online with retrain |
| O2 | Enable automatic retrain (default) |
| O3 | Disable automatic retrain |

TABLE 5: DTR Modes

| &Dn | DTR MODE |
|-----|---|
| &D0 | Ignore DTR |
| &D1 | Go to command state if ON to OFF detected |
| &D2 | Go to command state and disable auto-answer if ON to OFF detected |
| &D3 | Initialize modem with NVRAM if ON to OFF detected |

TABLE 6: Synchronous Modes

| &Mn | SYNCHRONOUS MODE |
|-----|---|
| &M0 | Asynchronous |
| &M1 | Sync mode entered upon completion of connect sequence |
| &M2 | Dial stored number on OFF to ON transition of DTR and go online |
| &M3 | Manual dial using DTR as talk data switch |

TABLE 7: Test Modes

| &Tn | TEST MODE |
|-----|--|
| &T0 | End/Abort test |
| &T1 | Initiate local analog loopback (L3) |
| &T3 | Initiate local digital loopback |
| &T4 | Permit remote digital loopback (L2) |
| &T5 | Prohibit remote digital loopback |
| &T6 | Initiate remote digital loopback (L2) |
| &T7 | Initiate RDL with self-test and error detector |
| &T8 | Initiate ALB with self-test and error detector |

TABLE 8: ID Codes

| In | CODE |
|-----|--------------------|
| I 0 | Product code (249) |
| I 1 | ROM checksum |
| I 2 | Checksum test |
| I 3 | Product revision |
| I 4 | Software copyright |

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

HARDWARE INTERFACE

POWER SUPPLIES AND CLOCKS

| LABEL | I/O | PIN CONNECTION | | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|-----|----------------|--------|---------------------------|
| | | 73K224L | 73D600 | |
| VDD | I | 15 | 40 | Positive supply (+5V) |
| GND | I | 28 | | System ground |
| GND | I | 28 | | Digital ground |
| X1 | I | | 19 | Clock input 11.0592 MHz |
| CLK | O | 1 | | Clock output 11.0592 MHz |
| RST | I | 25 | 9 | Reset (10 μ F & 8.2k) |

DAA INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|------------------------|---|----|----|-------------------------|
| RxA | I | 27 | | Receive analog from DAA |
| TxA | O | 16 | | Transmit analog to DAA |
| VC1 | O | | 6 | Audio volume control |
| VC2 | O | | 4 | Audio volume control |
| RINGD | I | | 12 | From ring indicator |
| $\overline{\text{OH}}$ | O | | 1 | Off hook relay control |
| AUX | O | | 21 | Auxiliary relay control |

RS-232/V.24 INTERFACE

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|---|----|----|------------------------------|
| RI | O | | 22 | Ring indicator output |
| HS | O | | 23 | Indicates high speed |
| TXD | I | 21 | 10 | Digital data from terminal |
| RXD | O | 22 | 11 | Digital receive data |
| DCD | O | | 3 | Data carrier detect |
| DSR | O | | 24 | Data set ready |
| EXCLK | I | 19 | | External Tx sync clock input |
| RXCLK | O | 23 | | Receive clock output |
| TXCLK | O | 18 | | Transmit clock output |
| $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ | O | | 8 | Clear to send |
| $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ | I | | 2 | Request to send |
| $\overline{\text{DTR}}$ | I | | 7 | Indicates DTE available |

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

HARDWARE INTERFACE (continued)

LED DISPLAY SIGNAL SOURCE

| LABEL | I/O | PIN CONNECTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|-----|----------------|---|
| | | 73D600 | |
| TR | LED | 28 | Data terminal ready (Active Low) |
| SD | LED | 11 | Transmit data (Mark = High) |
| RD | LED | 10 | Receive data (Mark = High) |
| CD | LED | 25 | Data carrier detect (Active Low) |
| HS | LED | 23 | High speed indicator (Active Low) |
| MR | LED | 27 | Modem ready/test in progress (Active Low) |
| AA | LED | 26 | Auto answer indicator (Active Low) |
| OH | LED | 1 | Off hook indicator (Active Low) |

NVRAM INTERFACE 73D600

| | | | |
|------|-----|----|------|
| NVCE | O | 15 | NVCE |
| NVRM | I/O | 14 | NVRM |
| NVSK | O | 5 | NVSK |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | | RATING | UNIT |
|---------------------------------|---------|-----------------|------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 73K224L | 7 | V |
| | 73D600 | 7 | V |
| Storage Temperature | | -65 to 150 | °C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | | 260 | °C |
| Applied Voltage | | -0.3 to VDD+0.3 | V |

Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| External Components (Refer to Application section for placement.) | | | | | |
| VREF Bypass capacitor | (VREF to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| Bias setting resistor | (Placed between VDD and ISET pins) | 1.8 | 2 | 2.2 | MΩ |
| ISET Bypass capacitor | (ISET pin to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass capacitor 1 | (VDD to GND) | 0.1 | | | μF |
| VDD Bypass capacitor 2 | (VDD to GND) | 22 | | | μF |

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| External Components - 73D600 | | | | | |
| VDD Bypass Capacitor | VDD to GND | 1 | | | μF |
| XTL1, 2 Load Capacitors | Typical, depends on crystal | 15 | | 40 | pF |
| Clock Variation | (11.0592 MHz) Crystal or external clock | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temperature | | 0 | | 55 | °C |

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| | | | | | |
|--|---|------|----|-----|----|
| VDD Supply Voltage | | | | | |
| 73D600, 73K224L | | 4.75 | 5 | 5.5 | V |
| IDD, Supply Current CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | | | | |
| 73K224L | ISET Resistor = 2 MΩ | | | | |
| IDD1, Active | | | 25 | 30 | mA |
| IDD2, Idle | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | | 3 | 5 | mA |
| 73D600 | | | | | |
| IDD1, Active | | | | 16 | mA |
| IDD2, Idle | | | | 3.7 | mA |
| Digital Inputs 73K224L | | | | | |
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | | | 0.8 | V |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | | |
| All Inputs except Reset XTL1, XTL2 | | 2.0 | | VDD | V |
| Reset, XTL1, XTL2 | | 3.0 | | VDD | V |
| IIH, Input High Current | VI = VIH MAX | | | 100 | μA |
| IIL, Input Low Current | VI = VIL MIN | -200 | | | μA |
| Reset Pull-down Current | Reset = VDD | 5 | | 50 | μA |
| Digital Outputs 73K224L | | | | | |
| VOH, Output High Voltage | IO = IOH Min IOUT = -0.4 mA | 2.4 | | VDD | V |
| VOL, Output Low Voltage | IO = IOUT = 1.6 mA | | | 0.4 | V |
| VOL, CLK Output | IOUT = 3.6 mA | | | 0.6 | V |
| RXD Tri-State Pull-up Curr. | RXD = GND | -5 | | -50 | μA |
| Capacitance 73K224L | | | | | |
| Inputs | Input capacitance, all Digital Input pins | | | 10 | pF |
| CLK | Maximum Capacitive Load | | | 15 | pF |

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---------------|---------------|-----|----------|-------|
| Digital Inputs 73D600 | | | | | |
| VIL, Input Low Voltage | | 0 | | .2VDD-.1 | V |
| VIH, Input High Voltage | | | | | |
| Reset, X1 | | .7 VDD | | VDD | V |
| All Other Pins | | .2 VDD +.9 | | VDD | V |
| IIL, Low Input Current | Vin = 0.45 V | | | -50 | μA |
| ITL, Logic 1 to 0 Transition Current | Vin = 2.0V | | | -500 | μA |
| Digital Outputs 73D600 | | | | | |
| VOH Output High Voltage | | | | | |
| All Ports Except ALE, AD0-7 | IOH = -80 μA | 2.4 | | | V |
| AD0-7, ALE | IOH = -400 μA | 2.4 | | | |
| VOL Output Low Voltage | | | | | |
| All Ports Except ALE, AD0-7 | IOL = 1.6 mA | | | 0.45 | V |
| AD0-7, ALE | IOL = 3.2 mA | | | 0.45 | V |
| Reset Pull Down Resistor | | 40 | | 125 | kΩ |

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING

(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted.)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|-------|-------|-----|-------|
| QAM/DPSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Carrier Suppression | Measured at TXA | 35 | | | dB |
| Output Amplitude | TX scrambled marks | -11.5 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| FSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Output Freq. Error | CLK = 11.0592 MHz | -0.31 | | +20 | % |
| Transmit Level | Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11.5 | -10.0 | -9 | dBm0 |
| Output Distortion | All products through BPF | | | -45 | dB |
| Sum of Output Bias Distortion and Output Jitter | Transmit Dotting Pattern in ALB @ RXD Bell 103 Originate | -20 | | +20 | % |
| 2100 Hz Answer Tone Generator | | | | | |
| Output Amplitude | | -11.5 | -10 | -9 | dBm0 |
| Output Distortion | All products though BPF | | | -40 | dB |

NOTE: Parameters expressed in dBm0 refer to the following definition:

0 dB loss in the Transmit path to the line.

2 dB gain in the Receive path from the line.

Refer to the Basic Box Modem diagram in the Applications section for the DAA design.

SSI 73D2240
V.22bis 2400 Bit/s
Modem Device Set

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (continued)

| PARAMETERS | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|------------------------|------|---------------------------------|------|-----|-------|-------|
| DTMF Generator | | | | | | |
| Freq. Accuracy | | | 0.03 | | +0.25 | % |
| Output Amplitude | | | -10 | | -8 | dBm0 |
| Output Amplitude | | | -8 | | -6 | dBm0 |
| Twist | | High-Band to Low-Band | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | dB |
| Receiver Dynamic Range | | Refer to Performance Curves | -43 | | -3 | dBm0 |
| Call Progress Detector | | In Call Init mode | | | | |
| Detect Level | | 460 Hz test signal | -34 | | 0 | dBm0 |
| Reject Level | | | | | -50 | dBm0 |
| Delay Time | | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | | | 25 | ms |
| Hold Time | | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | | | 25 | ms |
| Hysteresis | | | 2 | | | dB |
| Carrier Detect | | | | | | |
| Threshold | | FSK receive data | -51 | | -40 | dBm0 |
| Threshold | | QAM/DPSK receive data | -49 | | -43 | dBm0 |
| Hysteresis | | All Modes | 2 | | | dB |
| Delay Time | DPSK | -70 dBm0 to -6 dBm0 | 15 | 20 | 25 | ms |
| | | -70 dBm0 to -40 dBm0 | 15 | 20 | 25 | ms |
| | QAM | -70 dBm0 to -60 dBm0 | 25 | 30 | 35 | ms |
| | | -70 dBm0 to -40 dBm0 | 25 | 33 | 41 | ms |
| Hold Time | DPSK | -6 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 15 | 22 | 28 | ms |
| | | -40 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 10 | 15 | 20 | ms |
| | QAM | -6 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 44 | 60 | 66 | ms |
| | | -40 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 | 21 | 26 | 31 | ms |
| Answer Tone Detectors | | Call Init Mode | | | | |
| Detect Level | | | -56 | | -45 | dBm0 |
| Detect Time | | For signals from | 7 | | 40 | ms |
| Hold Time | | -6 to -40 dBm0, 2100 or 2225 Hz | 10 | | 50 | ms |
| Detect Time | | Demod Mode for signals from | 4 | | 26 | ms |
| Hold Time | | -6 to -40 dBm0, 2100 or 2225 Hz | 11 | | 43 | ms |

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|--------------------|---------|----------|------------|
| Pattern Detectors | | DPSK Mode | | | |
| S1 Pattern | | | | | |
| Delay Time | For signals from -6 to -40 dBm0, | 5 | | 65 | ms |
| Hold Time | Demod Mode | 4 | | 45 | ms |
| Unscrambled Mark | | | | | |
| Delay Time | For signals from -6 to -40 dBm0, | 5 | | 45 | ms |
| Hold Time | Demod or call Init Mode | 5 | | 45 | ms |
| Receive Level Indicator | | | | | |
| Detect On | | | | -21 | dBm0 |
| Valid after Carrier Detect | | 10 | | | ms |
| Output Smoothing Filter | | | | | |
| Output Impedance | TXA pin | | 200 | 300 | Ω |
| Output load | TXA pin; FSK Single | 10 | | | k Ω |
| | Tone out for THD = -50 dB in 0.3 to 3.4 kHz range | | | 50 | pF |
| Maximum Transmitted Energy | 4 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -35 | dBm0 |
| | 10 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -55 | dBm0 |
| | 12 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -65 | dBm0 |
| Anti Alias Low Pass Filter | | (Frequency kHz) | | | |
| Out of Band Signal Energy (Defines Hybrid Trans-Hybrid loss requirements) | Level at RXA pin with receive Boost Enabled | | | | |
| | Scrambled data at 2400 bit/s in opposite band | | | -14 | dBm |
| | Sinusoids out of band | | | -9 | dBm |
| Clock Noise | | TXA pin; 153.6 kHz | | | |
| 73K224L | | | | 1.5 | mVrms |
| Carrier Offset | | | | | |
| Capture Range | Originate or Answer | | ± 7 | ± 10 | Hz |

SSI 73D2240

V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (continued)

| PARAMETERS | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|--|------|------|-------|-------|
| Recovered Clock | | | | | |
| Capture Range | % of frequency originate or answer | -0.2 | | +0.2 | % |
| Guard Tone Generator | | | | | |
| Tone Accuracy | 550 Hz | | | +1.18 | % |
| | 1800 Hz | -0.7 | | | |
| Tone Level (Below QAM/DPSK Output) | 550 Hz | -5.0 | -3.0 | -2.0 | dB |
| | 1800 Hz | -8.0 | -6.0 | -5.0 | dB |
| Harmonic Distortion (700 to 2900 Hz) | 550 Hz | | | -60 | dB |
| | 1800 Hz | | | -60 | dB |
| Timing (Refer to Timing Diagrams) | | | | | |
| TAL | $\overline{CS}/\text{Addr.}$ setup before ALE | 30 | | | ns |
| TLA | $\overline{CS}/\text{Addr.}$ Hold after latch | 20 | | | ns |
| TLC | Latch to $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ control | 40 | | | ns |
| TCL | $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ Control to Latch | 0 | | | ns |
| TRD | Data out from \overline{RD} | 0 | | 160 | ns |
| TLL | ALE width | 50 | | | ns |
| TRDF | Data float after READ | 0 | | 5 | ns |
| TRW | READ width | 171 | | 25000 | ns |
| TWW | WRITE width | 140 | | 25000 | ns |
| TDW | Data setup before WRITE | 150 | | | ns |
| TWD | Data hold after WRITE | 20 | | | ns |

1: Control for setup is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} .
Control for hold is the falling edge of \overline{RD} or the rising edge of \overline{WR} .

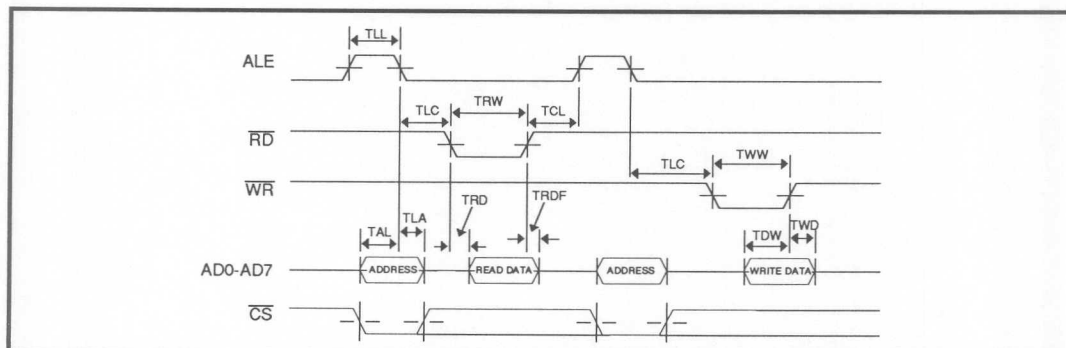


FIGURE 1: Bus Timing Diagram (Parallel Version)

SSI 73D2240 V.22bis 2400 Bit/s Modem Device Set

PERFORMANCE DATA

(This performance data was taken using an AEA tester and the 73D2402 MEU board.)

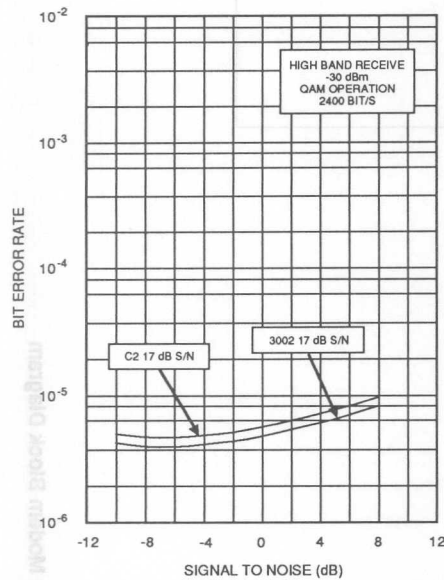
| PARAMETER - RECEIVE BAND C-WEIGHTED | | MINIMUM SNR REQUIRED |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| 2400 bit/s | Originate | 17 dB SNR |
| 2400 bit/s | Answer | 18.5 dB SNR |
| 1200 bit/s | Originate | 8.0 dB SNR |
| 1200 bit/s | Answer | 8.5 dB SNR |
| 0-300 bit/s | Originate | 8.0 dB SNR |
| 0-300 bit/s | Answer | 8.0 dB SNR |

SSI 73D2240

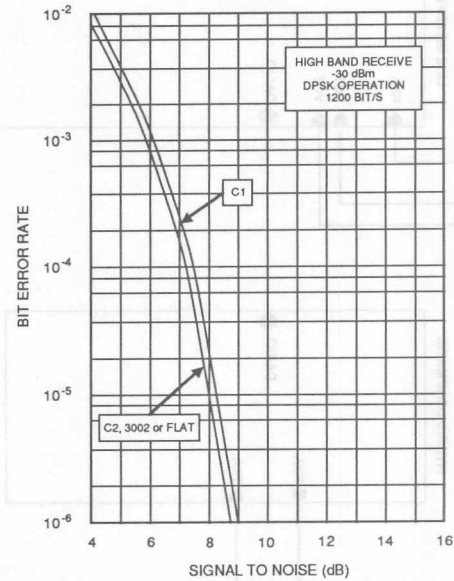
V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

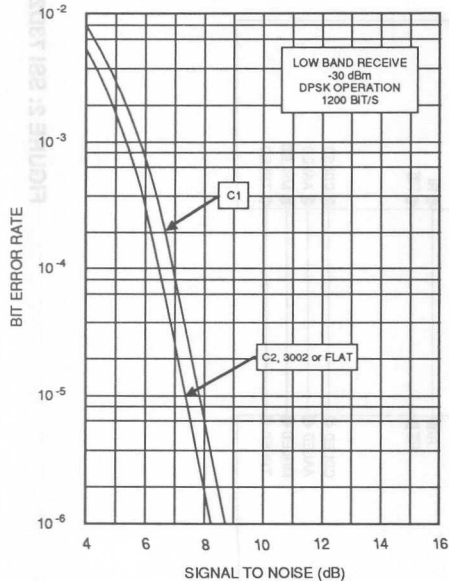
SSI 73K224L BER vs CARRIER OFFSET
PRELIMINARY



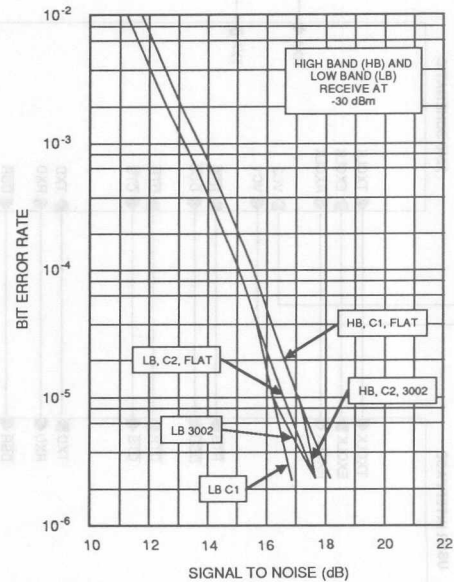
SSI 73K224L BER vs S/N
PRELIMINARY



SSI 73K224L BER vs S/N
PRELIMINARY



SSI 73K224L BER vs QAM



SSI 73D2240 **V.22bis 2400 Bit/s** **Modem Device Set**

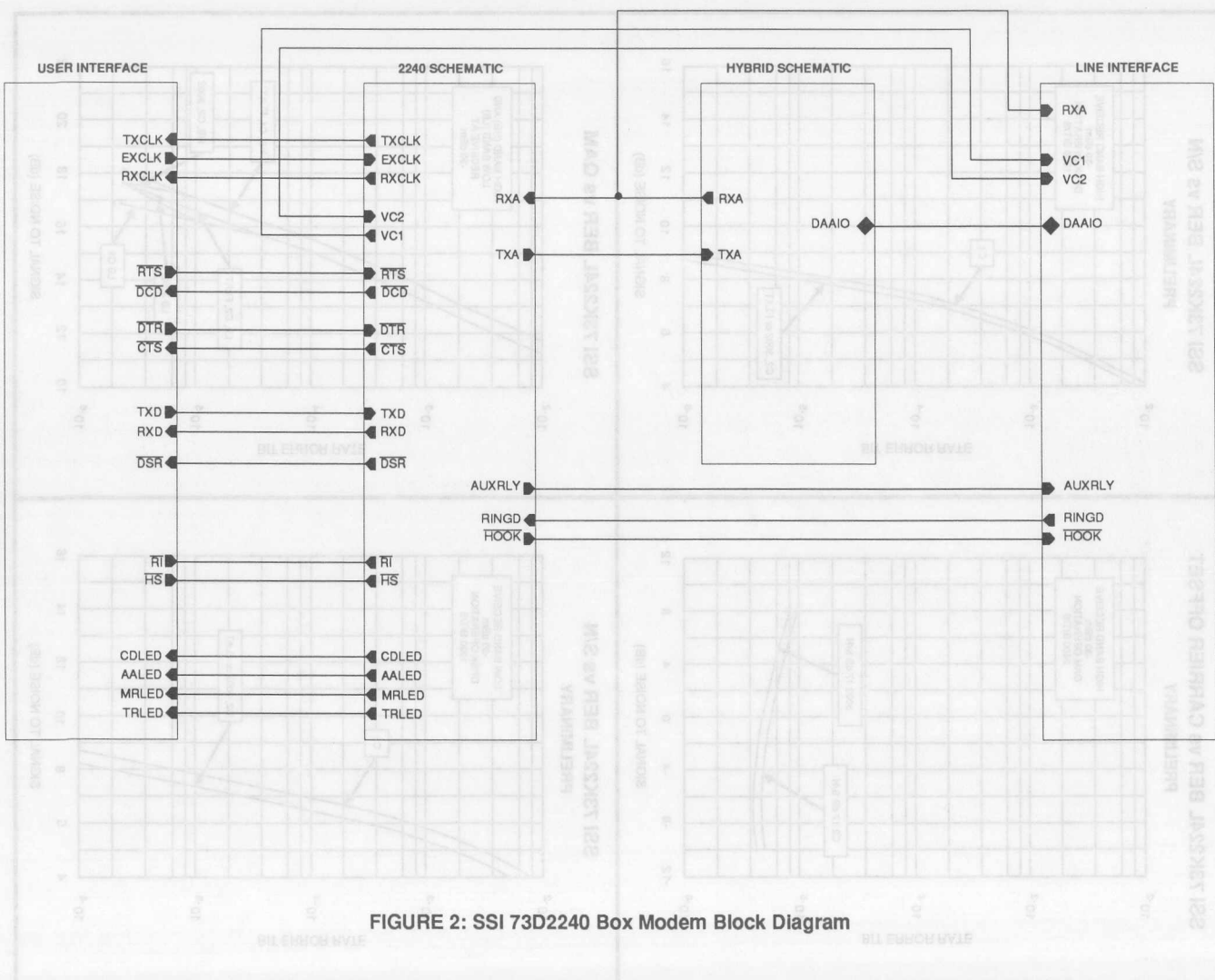
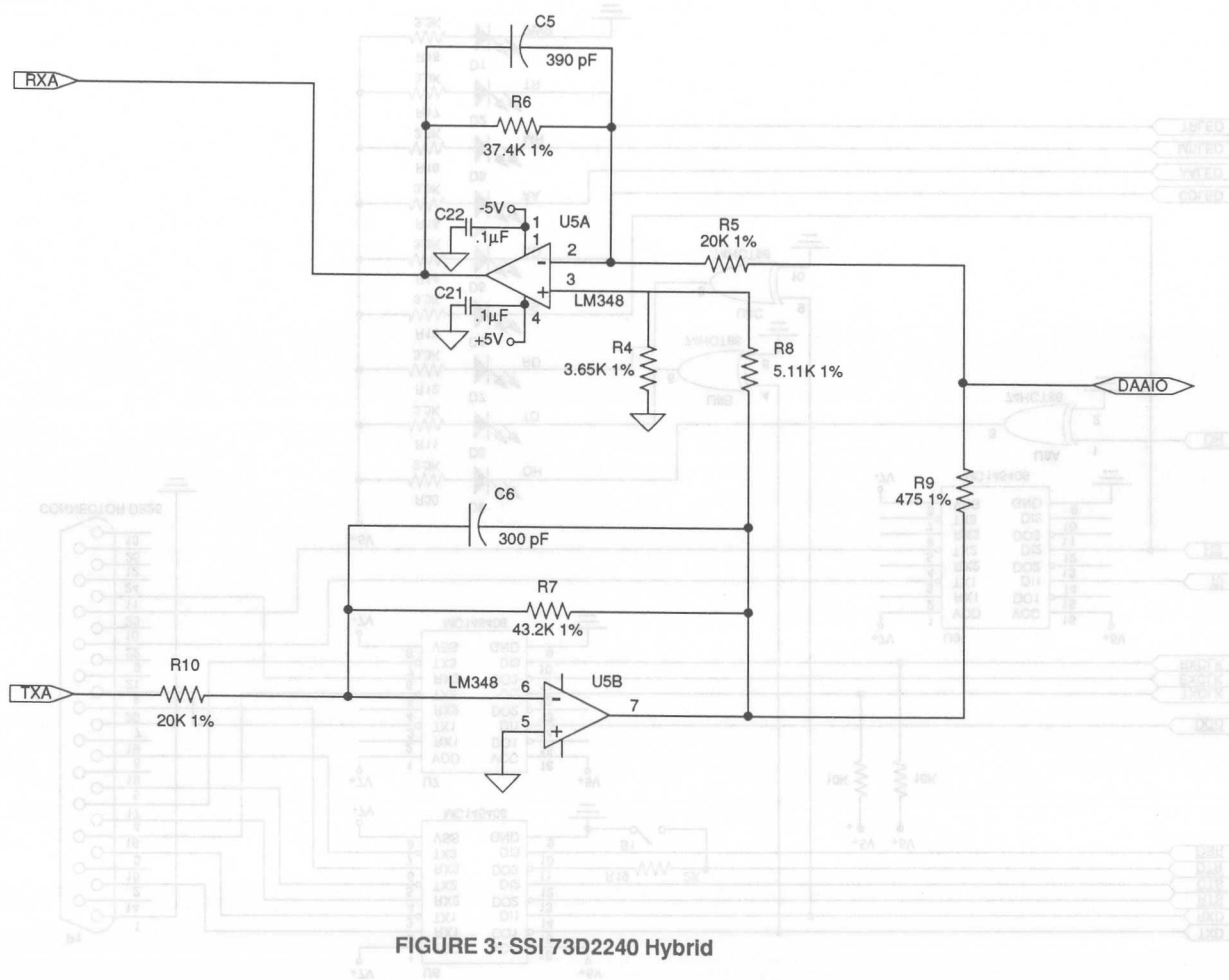


FIGURE 2: SSI 73D2240 Box Modem Block Diagram

SSI 73D2240
V.22bis 2400 Bit/s
Modem Device Set



SSI 73D2240 V.22bis 2400 Bit/s Modem Device Set

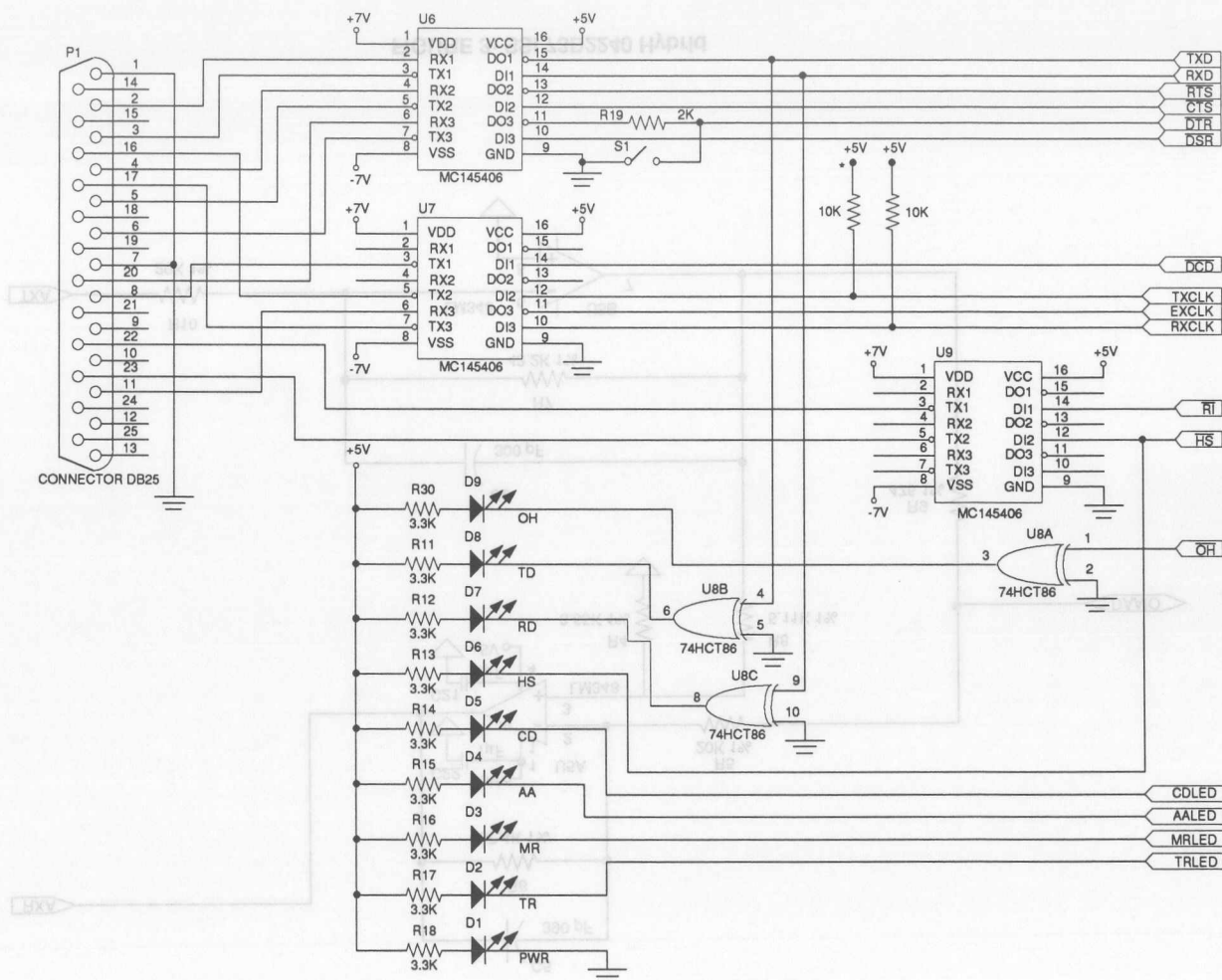


FIGURE 4: 73D2240 User Interface



4

SSI 73D2240 V.22bis 2400 Bit/s Modem Device Set

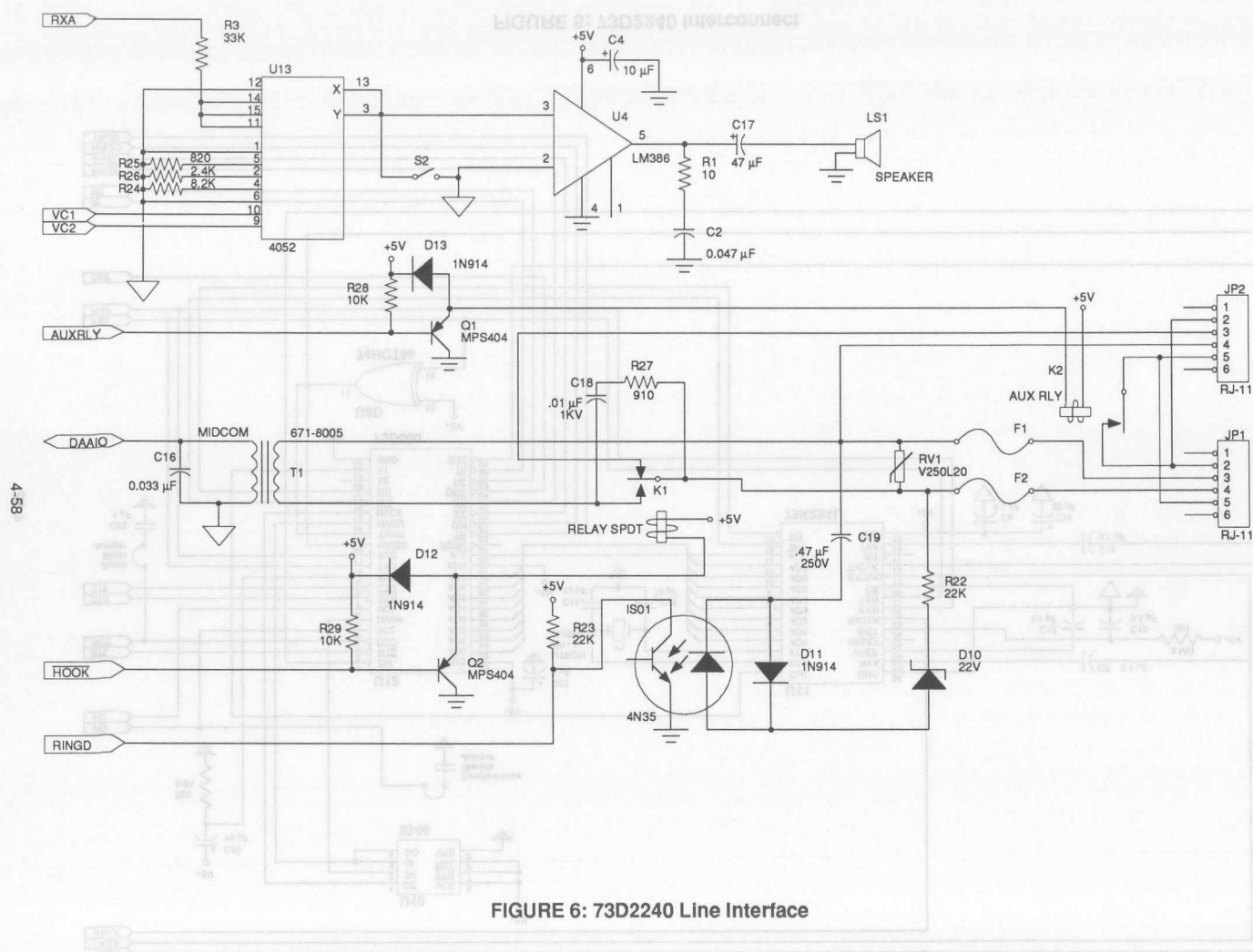


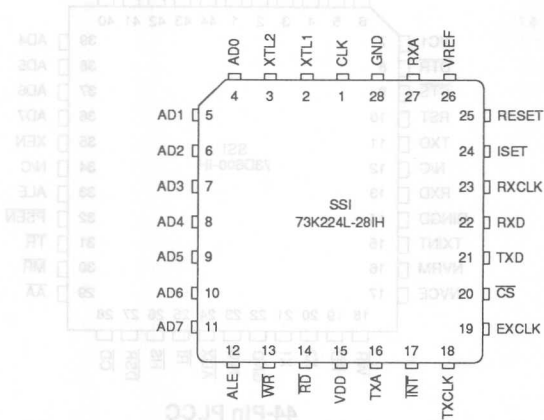
FIGURE 6: 73D2240 Line Interface

SSI 73D2240

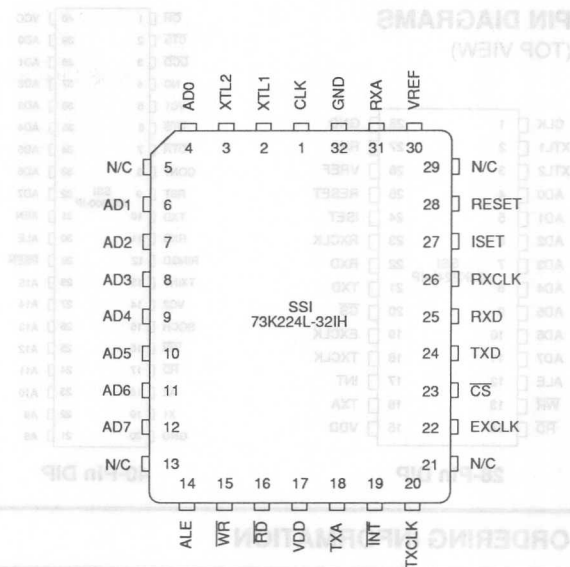
V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

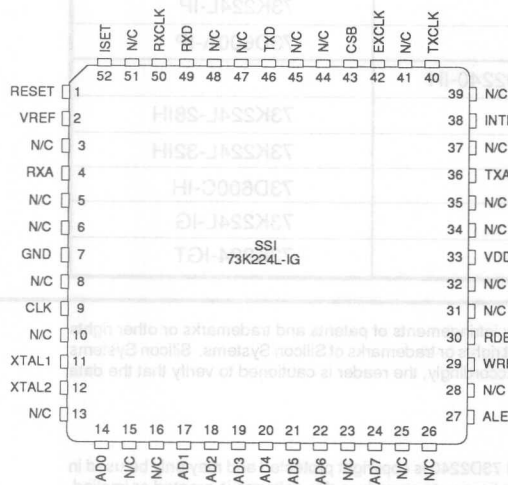
PIN DIAGRAMS (TOP VIEW)



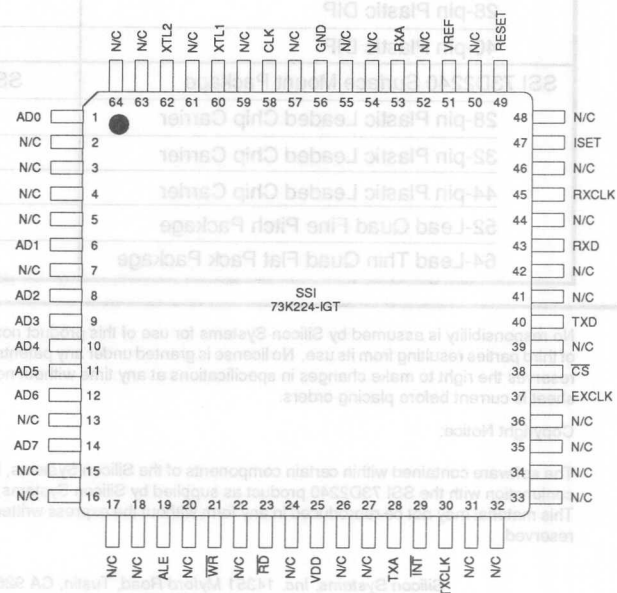
28-Pin PLCC



32-Pin PLCC



52-Lead PLCC



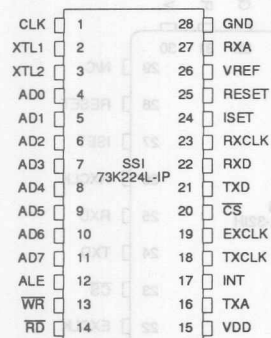
64-Lead TQFP

SSI 73D2240

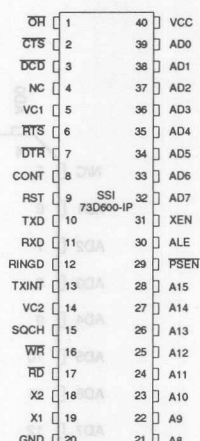
V.22bis 2400 Bit/s

Modem Device Set

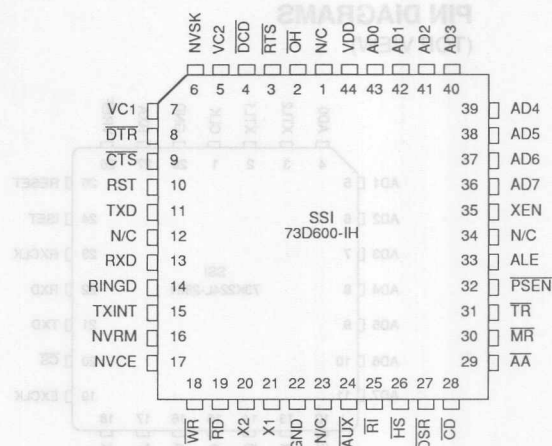
PIN DIAGRAMS (TOP VIEW)



28-Pin DIP



40-Pin DIP



44-Pin PLCC

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|--------------|
| SSI 73D2240 Dual In-Line Package | SSI 73D2240-IP | |
| 28-pin Plastic DIP | | 73K224L-IP |
| 40-pin Plastic DIP | | 73D600A-IP |
| SSI 73D2240 Surface Mount Package | SSI 73D2240-IH | |
| 28-pin Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | | 73K224L-28IH |
| 32-pin Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | | 73K224L-32IH |
| 44-pin Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier | | 73D600C-IH |
| 52-Lead Quad Fine Pitch Package | | 73K224L-IG |
| 64-Lead Thin Quad Flat Pack Package | | 73K224-IGT |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Copyright Notice:

The software contained within certain components of the Silicon Systems, Inc. SSI 73D2240 is copyright protected and may only be used in conjunction with the SSI 73D2240 product as supplied by Silicon Systems, Inc. No license to reproduce this software is granted or implied. This material may not be reproduced in any form without the express written permission of Silicon Systems, Inc. © Copyright 1989. All rights reserved.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

Protected by the following patents:
(4,777,453) (4,789,995) (4,870,370) (4,847,868) (4,866,739)
©1990 Silicon Systems, Inc.

January 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73D2248/2348 Chip Sets consists of two CMOS integrated circuits which provide the data pump and protocol functions required to implement a high performance 2400 bit/s modem with error control and data compression. The 73D2248 basic modem function is provided by the SSI 73K224L modem chip and is compatible with CCITT V.21, V.22, V.22bis and Bell 103 and 212A protocols. The error control functions are provided by modular software running in the SSI 73D246 controller. Modules are available for MNP4, and V.42. Compression software modules can be added to the controller; MNP5 and V.42bis are available. Provisions for customization of the Command Set are provided, forming the basis for an International Modem.

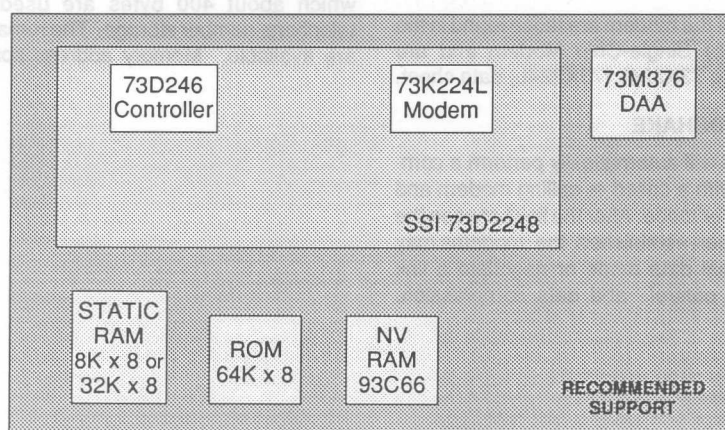
The 73D2348 differs from the 73D2248 in that it uses the 73K324L instead of the 73K224L for the data pump. The 73K324L replaces the Bell 103 300 baud FSK mode of operation with the CCITT V.23 1200 baud FSK mode. The software is also modified to support V.23. The two products are otherwise identical.

FEATURES

- **Combines Modem and Protocol Controller**
- **Supports 0 - 300, 1200 and 2400 bit/s with both Sync and Async Modes**
- **Modular Software Design Allows Customization**
- **Modem Protocols:**
Bell 103, 212A
CCITT V.22, V.22bis
- **Error Control/Compression Protocols**
Available: MNP4, MNP5, CCITT V.42, V.42bis
- **Supports Non-volatile Memory to Store User Configurations and Phone Numbers**
- **CMOS Design for Low Power Consumption**
- **TQFP packages available for PCMCIA applications**

4

MNP5, V.42bis Datacom Modem Device Set



FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73D2248/2348 chip set forms the basis for an international modem design incorporating the most advanced error control and compression algorithms. The set consists of two chips, the SSI 73K224L (73K324L) modem and the 73D246 controller. Customization of the controller is one of the features of this chip set; software modules allow the modem vendor to provide a range of features from a standard hardware platform.

The 73K224L (73K324L) provides the QAM, PSK and FSK modulator and demodulator functions, call progress and handshake tone monitors, test modes and a tone generator capable of producing DTMF, answer and CCITT guardtones. This single-chip modem supports the V.22bis, V.22, V.21 and Bell 103/CCITT V.23/212A operating protocols in both sync and async modes. Low level functions of the controller provide for automatic detection of DTE speed, auto-dial, auto-answer, handshake with fallback and call progress detection.

The 73D246 controller handles both the low level modem functions as well as protocol negotiation and protocol operation. Software modules can be chosen to provide the desired protocols for product customization and differentiation. In addition, the "AT" command set source code will be available for those desiring to provide unique or country dependent features.

Basic capabilities of the modem are those found in the 73K224L (73K324L) Single-Chip Modem and are listed in the separate 73K224L (73K324L) data sheet.

AUTOMATIC HANDSHAKE

The 73D2248/2348 will automatically perform a complete handshake with a called or calling modem and enter the data transfer mode. After the link between the two modems has been established, the modems may remain in the normal data mode or negotiate a link which has error control and data compression.

Commands are provided to inform the modem which action is appropriate.

TEST MODES

The 73D2248/2348 chip set has provisions for three test modes: analog loopback, digital loopback and remote digital loopback. Analog loopback allows data to be sent into the local modem, have it modulated and then demodulated and returned to the local terminal. Digital loopback requires the cooperation of the user at the remote end and allows data to be sent to the remote modem, demodulated, then remodulated and returned to the local end. Remote digital loopback allows the same capability, without the need for a remote operator; signals are sent to the remote modem which perform the switching task that a remote operator would have done.

AT COMMAND INTERPRETER

The SSI 73D2248/2348 includes an AT Command Interpreter which is a superset of the Hayes 2400 Smartmodem™ command set. Common application software will be able to control the modem through this interpreter. Additional commands have been added to provide for control of the MNP and CCITT V.42 modes.

NON-VOLATILE MEMORY

A serial NVRAM provides 256 bytes of storage for configuration information and telephone numbers. Current hardware provides for a 2K bit memory of which about 400 bytes are used for setup and telephone number storage. The remaining 1600 bytes are available. Memory address space allocated to

non-volatile RAM is 8K, so an expansion factor of 4 is available. Alternatively, the address space could be decoded for more hardware functionality.

PROTOCOLS

Microcom Networking Protocol (MNP)

MNP4 is a protocol offering error control while MNP5 offers data compression. Data to be transmitted is broken into blocks of varying sizes, depending on line conditions, and sent to the remote modem along with a 16-bit Cyclic Redundancy Check word. If the algorithm used to derive the CRC word at the transmitter does not produce an identical word when exercised on the received data, a line error is assumed, and the block is repeated. Data compression is obtained by transmitting a short set of characters for a longer redundant set. At the receiver, the short string is replaced with the longer string that it represented, and the data stream is returned to its original state.

CCITT V.42 and V.42bis

The CCITT has ratified a set of protocols which operate in a manner similar to MNP. MNP4 corresponds to V.42 while MNP5 corresponds with V.42bis. Greater efficiency is offered, but the tradeoff is a larger memory space requirement. MNP5 requires an 8K buffer, while V.42bis requires 32K. Data files which show compression ratios approaching 2:1 with MNP5 may show ratios of nearly 4:1 with V.42bis.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

The Silicon Systems Protocol Design Manual defines the AT commands. Please contact your local Silicon Systems sales office or Silicon Systems headquarters in Tustin for a copy of the SSI Protocol Design Manual.

SSI 73D2248/2348

MNP5, V.42bis Datacom

Modem Device Set

AT COMMAND SUMMARY

| Command | Description | Command | Description |
|-----------|--|----------------|---|
| AT | command prefix – precedes command line | X4 | enable features represented by result codes 0-7, 10-12 |
| <CR> | carriage return character – terminates command line | Y0 | disable long space disconnect |
| A | go into answer mode; attempt to go to on-line state | Y1 | enable long space disconnect |
| A/ | re-execute previous command line; not preceded by AT nor followed by <CR> | Z0 | reset modem |
| B0 | select CCITT V.22 standard for 1200 bit/s communication | &C0 | assume data carrier always present |
| B1 | select Bell 212A standard for 1200 bit/s communication | &C1 | track presence of data carrier |
| D | dial number that follows; attempt to go to on-line state, originate mode | &D0 | ignore DTR signal |
| DS=n | dial stored number in location "n" (0-3) | &D1 | assume command state when an on-to-off transition of DTR occurs |
| E0 | Disable character echo in command state | &D2 | hang up and assume command state when an on-to-off transition of DTR occurs |
| E1 | Enable character echo in command state | &D3 | reset when an on-to-off transition of DTR occurs |
| H0 | go on hook (hang up) | &F | recall factory settings as active configuration |
| H1 | go off hook; operate auxiliary relay | &G0 | no guard tone |
| I0 | request product identification code | &G1 | 550 Hz guard tone |
| I1 | perform checksum on firmware ROM; return checksum | &G2 | 1800 Hz guard tone |
| I2 | perform checksum on firmware ROM; returns OK or ERROR result codes | &K | flow control method |
| L0 or L1 | low speaker volume | &M0 | asynchronous mode |
| L2 | medium speaker volume | &M1 | synchronous mode 1 |
| L3 | high speaker volume | &M2 | synchronous mode 2 |
| M0 | speaker off | &M3 | synchronous mode 3 |
| M1 | speaker on until carrier detected | &Q5 | error control mode |
| M2 | speaker always on | &Q6 | automatic speed buffering (ASB) |
| M3 | speaker on until carrier detected, except during dialing | &T0 | terminate test in progress |
| O0 | go to on-line state | &T1 | initiate local analog loopback |
| O1 | go to on-line state and initiate equalizer retrain at 2400 bit/s | &T3 | initiate local digital loopback |
| Q0 | modem returns result codes | &T4 | grant request from remote modem for RDL |
| Q1 | modem does not return result codes | &T5 | deny request from remote modem for RDL |
| Sr | set pointer to register "r" | &T6 | initiate remote digital loopback |
| Sr=n | set register "r" to value "n" | &T7 | initiate remote digital loopback with self test |
| Sr? | display value stored in register "r" | &T8 | initiate local analog loopback with self test |
| V0 | display result codes in numeric form | &V | view active configuration, user profiles, and stored numbers |
| V1 | display result codes in verbose form (as words) | &W0 | save storable parameters of active configuration |
| W0 | negotiation progress result codes not returned | &X0 | modem provides transmit clock signal |
| W1 | negotiation progress result codes returned | &X1 | data terminal provides transmit clock signal |
| X0 | enable features represented by result codes 0-4 | &X2 | receive carrier provides transmit clock signal |
| X1 | enable features represented by result codes 0-5, 10-12 | &Zn=x | store phone number "x" in location "n" (0-3) |
| X2 | enable features represented by result codes 0-6, 10-12 | | |
| X3 | enable features represented by result codes 0-5, 7, 10-12 | | |

SSI 73D2248/2348

MNP5, V.42bis Datacom

Modem Device Set

Dial string arguments:

, = delay @ = silent answer != flash
; = return to command s = dial stored number W = wait for tone R=reverse mode

If the NovRAM has not been initialized it may be necessary to Power down/Power up and type *AT&F&W<cr>* to properly initialize modem state.

TABLE 1: Result Codes

| Xn | VERBOSE/TERSE RESULT CODES |
|----|---|
| X0 | OK/0, CONNECT/1, RING/2, NO CARRIER/3, ERROR/4 |
| X1 | All functions of X0 + CONNECT (RATE)/1 = 300, 5 = 1200, 10 = 2400 |
| X2 | All functions of X1 + NO DIAL TONE/6 |
| X3 | All functions of X1 + BUSY/7 |
| X4 | All functions of X3 + NO DIAL TONE/6, NO ANSWER/8 |

TABLE 2: S Registers Supported

| Sn | FUNCTION | UNITS | DEFAULT |
|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|
| S0 ¹ | Answer on ring | No. of rings on which to answer | 000 ² |
| S1 | Ring counter | No. of rings accumulated | 000 |
| S2 | Escape code | ASCII CHR Decimal 0-127 | 043 |
| S3 | Carriage return | ASCII CHR Decimal 0-127 | 013 |
| S4 | Line feed | ASCII CHR Decimal 0-127 | 010 |
| S5 | Back space | ASCII CHR | 008 |
| S6 | Wait for dial tone | Seconds | 002 |
| S7 | Wait for carrier | Seconds | 030 |
| S8 | Pause time | Seconds | 002 |
| S9 | Carrier valid | 100 milliseconds (0.1 sec) | 006 |
| S10 | Carrier drop out | 100 milliseconds (0.1 sec) | 014 |
| S11 | DTMF tone duration | 1 millisecond (0.001 sec) | 070 |
| S12 | Escape guard time | 20 milliseconds (0.05 sec) | 050 |
| S13 | Unused | | N/A |
| *S14 ¹ | Bit mapped register | Decimal 0-255 | 170 |

¹ Stored in NVRAM with &W command.

² Modem will not answer until value is changed to 1 or greater.

SSI 73D2248/2348

MNP5, V.42bis Datacom

Modem Device Set

TABLE 2: S Registers Supported (Continued)

| NUMBER | FUNCTION | UNITS | DEFAULT |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|---------|
| S15 | Unused | | N/A |
| S16 | Test register | Decimal # | 000 |
| S17 | SSI Special test register | Decimal 0-255 | 096 |
| S18 | Test timer | Decimal 0-255 | 000 |
| S19 | Unused | | N/A |
| S20 | Unused | | N/A |
| *S21 ¹ | Bitmapped register | Decimal 0-255 | 000 |
| *S22 ¹ | Bitmapped register | Decimal 0-255 | 118 |
| *S23 ¹ | Bitmapped register | Decimal 0-255 | 007 |
| S24 | Unused | | N/A |
| S25 ¹ | DTR delay | 10 milliseconds (0.01 sec) | 005 |
| S26 ¹ | CTS delay | 10 milliseconds (0.01 sec) | 001 |
| *S27 ¹ | Bitmapped register | Decimal 0-255 | 064 |
| S36 | Negotiation failure treatment | | 5 |
| S37 | Desired modem line speed | Decimal 0-9 | 000 |
| S38 | Hang-up timeout | | 20 |
| S39 | Current flow control setting | | 3 |
| S43 | Current DCE speed | | 0 |
| S46 | Protocol/Compression selection | | 2 |
| S48 | Feature negotiation action | | 7 |
| S49 | ASB Buffer low limit | 1-249 | 8 |
| S50 | ASB Buffer high limit | 2-250 | 16 |
| S82 | Break select register | | 128 |
| S95 | Extended result code bit map | | 0 |

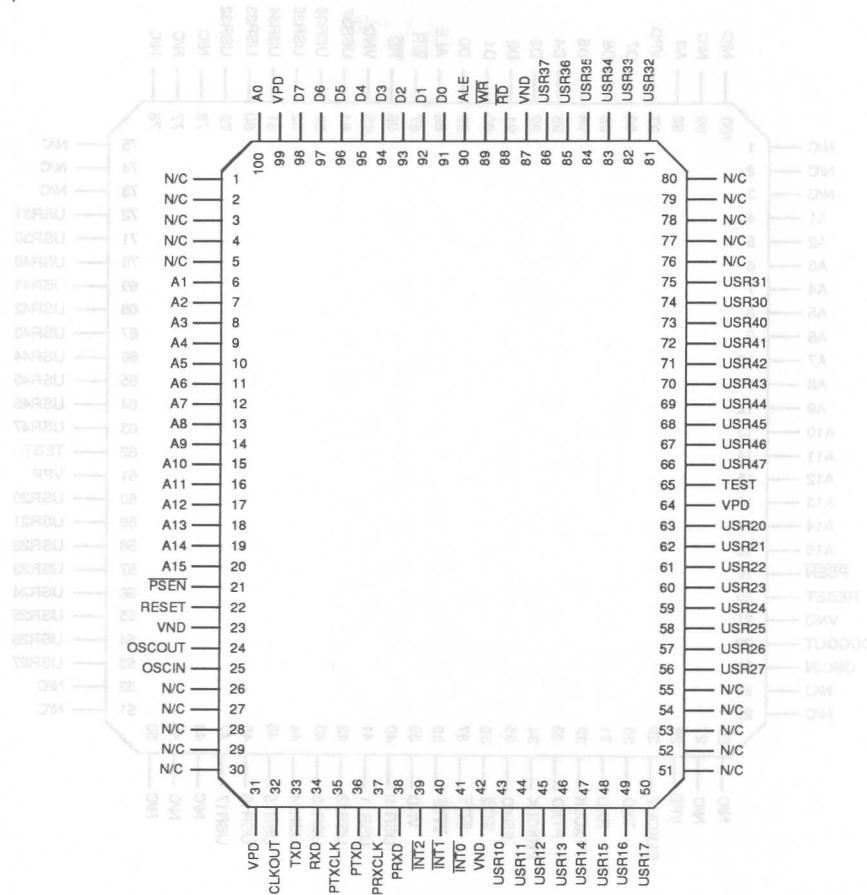
* The bitmapped register functions are equivalent to normal "AT" command modem registers.

¹ Stored in NVRAM with &W command

SSI 73D2248/2348 MNP5, V.42bis Datacom Modem Device Set

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



SSI 73D246
Controller
100-Lead QFP

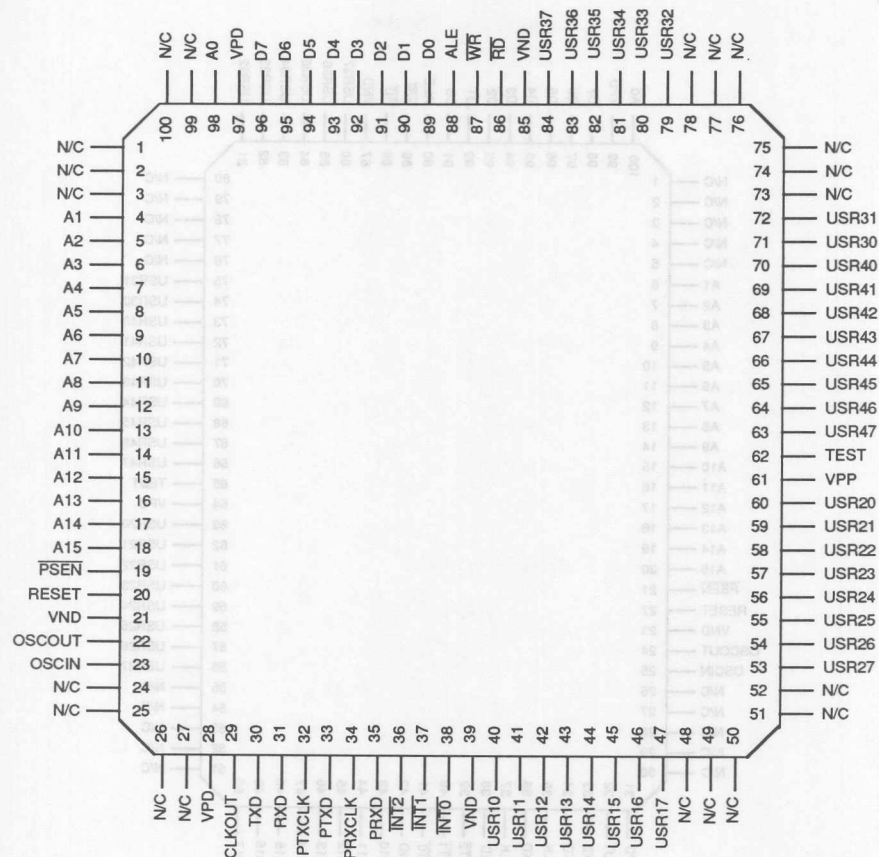
SSI 73D2248/2348

MNP5, V.42bis Datacom

Modem Device Set

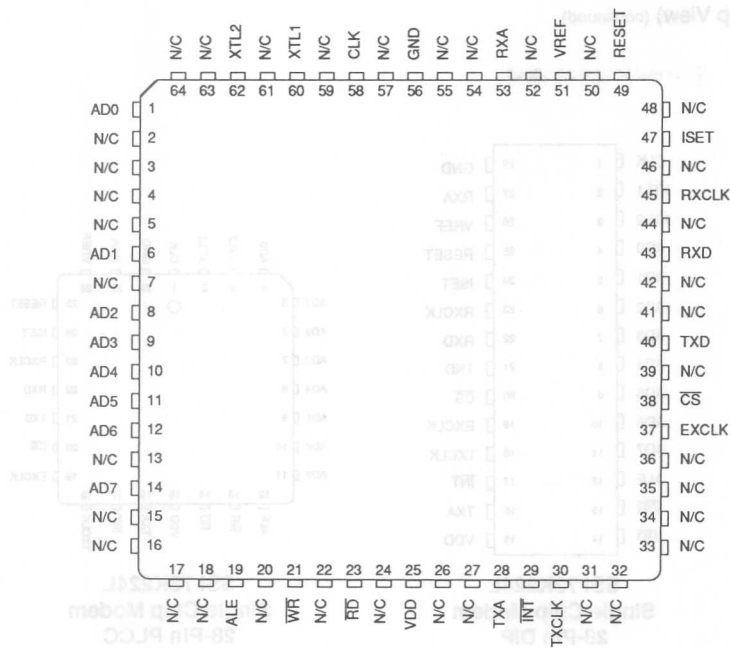
PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

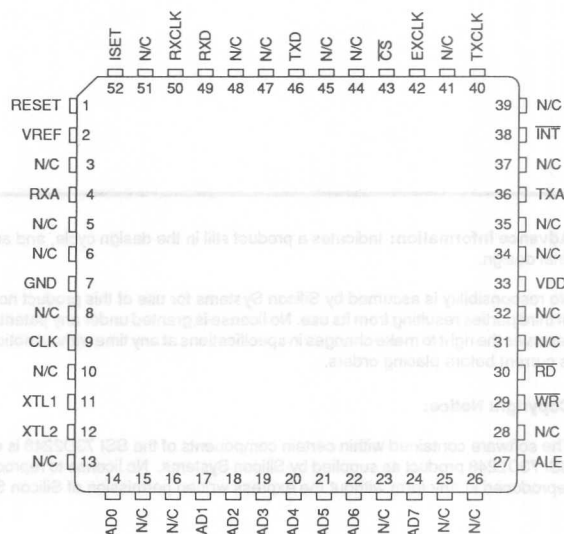


SSI 73D246
Controller
100-Lead TQFP

SSI 73D2248/2348 MNP5, V.42bis Datacom Modem Device Set



**SSI 73K224L
Single Chip Modem
64-Lead TQFP**



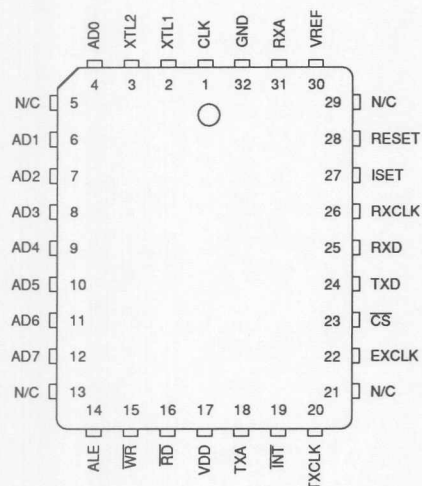
**SSI 73K224L
Single Chip Modem
52-Lead QFP**

SSI 73D2248/2348

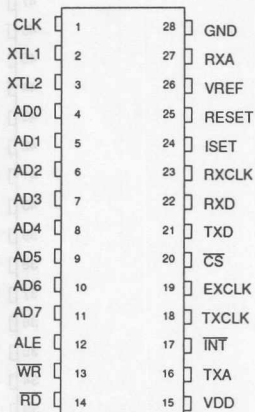
MNP5, V.42bis Datacom

Modem Device Set

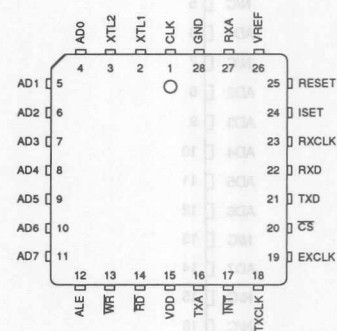
PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View) (continued)



SSI 73K224L
Single Chip Modem
32-Pin PLCC



SSI 73K224L
Single Chip Modem
28-Pin DIP



SSI 73K224L
Single Chip Modem
28-Pin PLCC

Advance Information: Indicates a product still in the design cycle, and any specifications are based on design goals only. Do not use for final design.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Copyright Notice:

The software contained within certain components of the SSI 73D2248 is copyright protected and may only be used in conjunction with the SSI 73D2248 product as supplied by Silicon Systems. No license to reproduce this software is granted or implied. This material may not be reproduced in any form without the express written permission of Silicon Systems, Inc. © Copyright 1992. All rights reserved.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

Advance Information

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The Silicon Systems 73D2910 high performance microcontroller is based on the industry standard 8-bit 8052 implemented in Silicon Systems' advanced submicron CMOS process. The processor has the same attributes of the 8052 including Instruction cycle time, UART, timers, interrupts, 256 bytes of on-chip RAM and programmable I/O. The architecture has been optimized for low power portable modem or communication applications by integrating unique features with the core CPU.

The main feature is a user friendly HDLC packetizer, accessed through the special function registers. It has a serial I/O, hardware support for 16- and 32-bit CRC, zero insert/delete control, a dedicated interrupt and a clear channel mode for by-passing the packetizer.

Other features include additional user programmable I/O with programmable bank select and chip select logic, designed to eliminate board level glue logic. It also includes two general purpose input ports with programmable wakeup capability.

For devices that require non-multiplexed address and data buses, eight latched outputs for the low byte of the address are available.

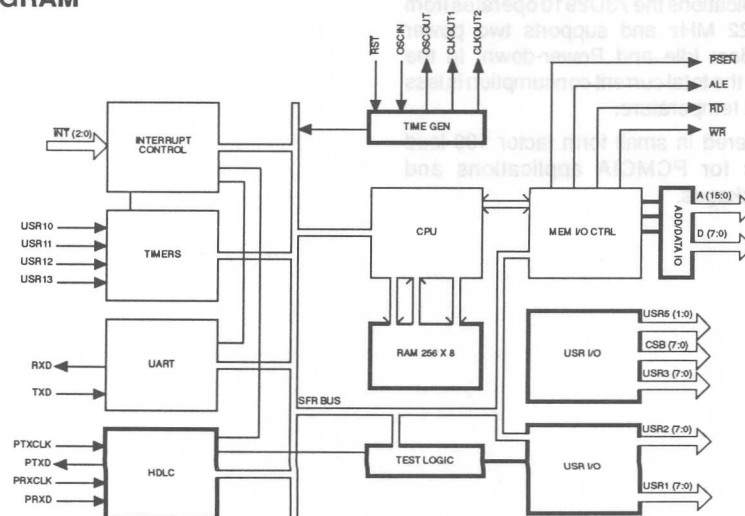
(continued)

FEATURES

- 8052 Compatible Instruction set
- 22 MHz Operation
- Operates at 3.3V and 5V
- HDLC Support logic (Packetizer, 16 and 32 CRC, zero ID)
- 24 pins for user programmable I/O ports
- 8 pins programmable chip select logic for memory mapped peripheral eliminating glue logic
- 3 external interrupt sources (programmable polarity)
- 16 dedicated latched address pins
- Multiplexed data/address bus
- Instruction cycle time identical to 8052
- Buffered oscillator (or OSC/2) output pin
- 1.8432 MHz UART clock available
- Bank select circuitry to support up to 128K of external program memory
- 100-Lead TQFP package available for PCMCIA applications
- Also available in 100-Lead QFP package

4

BLOCK DIAGRAM



SSI 73D2910

Microcontroller

DESCRIPTION (continued)

The 73D2910 has two extra interrupt sources, an external interrupt and a HDLC interrupt. The HDLC interrupt has two registers associated with it: the HDLC Interrupt Register which is used to determine the source of the interrupt, and the HDLC Interrupt Enable Register that enables the source of the interrupt.

The state of the external interrupts can be read through a register allowing the interrupt pins to be used as inputs. The interrupt pins INT0 and INT1 can be either negative edge, positive edge or level triggered. INT2 pin is always edge triggered.

Two buffered clock outputs have been added to support peripheral functions such as UARTs, modems and other clocked devices. The main internal processor clock frequency can be divided by 2 for power conservation in functional modes that only require half the clock speed.

Additional internal special function registers are used for firmware control over the HDLC Packetizer, the clocks and the programmable I/O ports.

To accommodate processor peripherals when operating at 22 MHz the processor's timing has been altered somewhat to allow more address setup time for slower peripheral program ROM and memory mapped peripherals. This can offer the system designers an advantage when using higher (22 MHz) oscillator frequency.

For low power applications the 73D2910 operates from 3 to 5 volts at 22 MHz and supports two power conservation modes: Idle and Power-down. In the Power-down state the total current consumption is less than 1 μ A at room temperature.

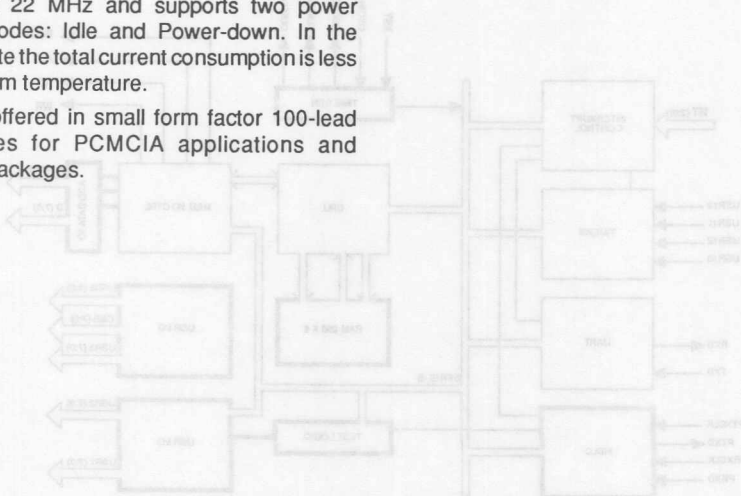
This device is offered in small form factor 100-lead TQFP packages for PCMCIA applications and 100-lead QFP packages.

DEVELOPER'S NOTE:

The 73D2910 is also available in a 100-pin PGA package for system developers. The PGA package is more convenient and reliable for development emulation systems than the other package styles. Emulation systems for the 73D2910 are available through Signum Systems, 171 E. Thousand Oaks Blvd., #202, Thousand Oaks, CA 91360 (805) 371-4608.

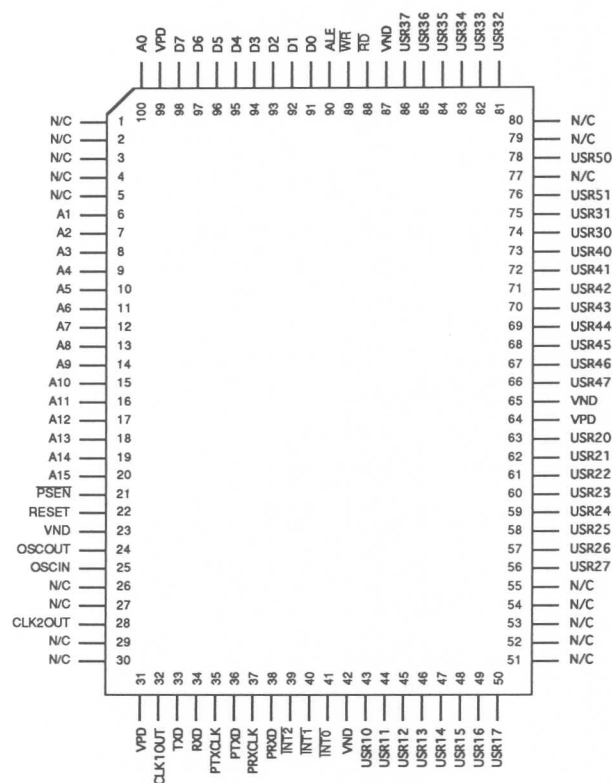
8052 REFERENCE

This Document will describe the features unique to the 73D2910. Please refer to an 8052 Programmer's Guide, Architectural Overview and Hardware Description for details on the instruction set, timers, UART, interrupt control, and memory structure.



SSI 73D2910 Microcontroller

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)



100-Lead QFP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

Advance Information: Indicates a product still in the design cycle, and any specifications are based on design goals only. Do not use for final design.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

Notes:

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS
(Top View)



150-Pin QFP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures appropriate for a static sensitive component.

Advanced Information: Indicates a product still in the design cycle, and only specifications are based on design goals only. Do not use for final design.
No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 15011 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 873-6000, FAX (714) 873-6814

Advance Information

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73D2950 modem chip set is capable of both data and facsimile transmission and reception. It is a high performance, low voltage, low power, and small form factor design intended for embedded applications and battery operation. It may be implemented directly on the motherboard of a portable computer.

The SSI 73D2950 chip set consists of three CMOS integrated circuits which provide all the "Control," "Pump" and "Hybrid" functions required to implement an intelligent V.22bis data & V.29 facsimile modem. The three chips are the SSI 73D2910 Controller (2910), SSI 73D2920 Digital Signal Processor (2920) and the SSI 73D2930 Analog Front End Line Interface Chip (AFELIC) (2930).

FEATURES

Facsimile Speeds

- V.29 - 9600, 7200 bit/s, (send & receive)
- V.27ter - 4800, 2400 bit/s, (send & receive)
- V.21 ch2 - 300 bit/s, (send & receive)

Facsimile Protocols

- EIA-578 Class 1
- Industry Class 2

Data Speeds

- V.22bis - 2400 bit/s
- V.22, Bell 212 - 1200 bit/s,
V.22 half speed - 600 bit/s
- V.21, Bell 103 - 300 bit/s
- V.23, 1200 bit/s, 75 bit/s

Data Protocols

- V.42 / MNP2-4 error control
- V.42bis / MNP-5 data compression

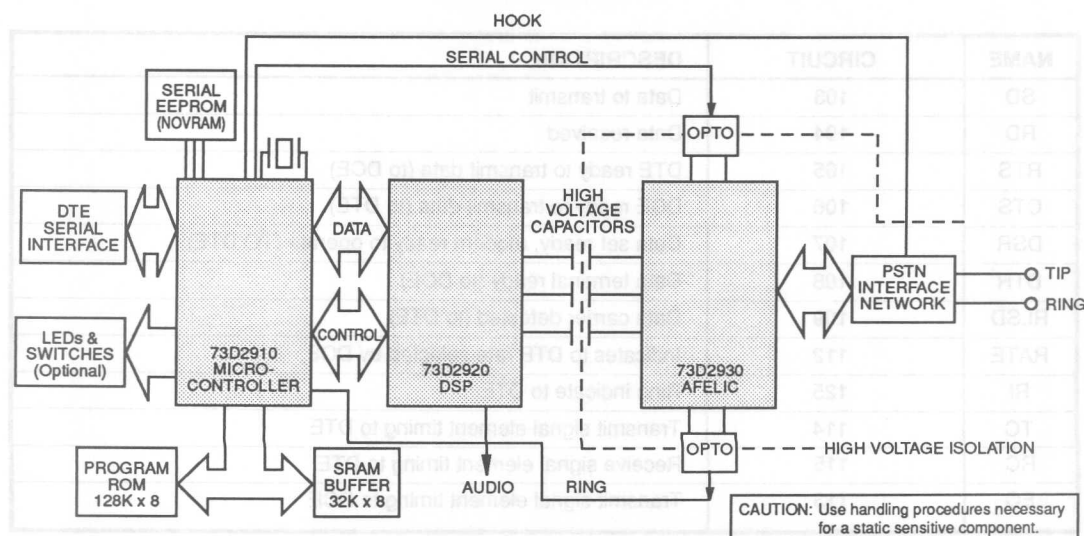
73D2950T

- Truespeech™ voice compression
- High compression/High Audio quality
- Scalable sampling rates
- Low computation power

(continued)

4

BLOCK DIAGRAM



SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

FEATURES (continued)

Other

- Low chip count, 3 ICs + ROM / RAM
- High quality transformerless DAA
- Partially line powered
- Low power, less than 150 mW from host
- Automatic power down when not active
- Serial EEPROM support for configuration and telephone number storage
- Designed for 3.3 or 5-Volt systems

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The 73D2950 consists of three CMOS integrated circuits which provide all the "Control," "Pump" and "Hybrid" functions required to implement an intelligent V.22bis data & V.29 facsimile. The three chips are the SSI 73D2910 microcontroller (2910), SSI 73D2920 Digital Signal Processor (2920) and the SSI 73D2930 Line Interface Chip (2930).

The 73D2950 is designed for a single +3.3V or 5V $\pm 10\%$ supply and for minimum power consumption (< 150 mW @ 3.3V 2910 + ROM / RAM and 2920). The 73D2950 supports automatic power down (Idle) mode via an internal watchdog timer. The 73D2950 chip set will also accept a request to power down (< 10 μ A) from the DTE via hardware control.

To complete the 73D2950 chip set core, a 32Kx8 SRAM, 1Mbit ROM and (optionally) a serial E2PROM are added.

The 73D2950 chip set supports the following:

- A serial EEPROM (4k bit x 1) for configuration and phone number storage.
- Software drivers for LED support in the 73D2910 for both Fax and Data modes.
- "Dumb" mode with an optional hardware switch. If enabled, Facsimile mode is disabled.

The 73D2920 provides a CMOS pulse width modulated signal to be used for monitoring the analog transmission and reception (speaker output). This output may be used directly to drive a high impedance speaker or low pass filtered for input to a separate speaker driver.

The 73D2950 is designed to be used as a stand alone or "box" modem communicating via a serial interface. The DCE to DTE I/O is a CMOS level inverted EIA-232/V.24 compatible interface. The user may add an EIA-232/V.24 level driver, a UART or PCMCIA interface.

The following EIA-232 signals are supported:

The 73D2950 supports a DTE interface with "Autobaud" capability from 300 to 19.2K bits per second. The DTE/DCE interface rate must be equal to or greater than the desired modulation rate. All data and Facsimile modes supports a RAM data buffer. The serial interface supports in-band (XON/XOFF) or out-of-band (CTS/RTS) flow control.

| NAME | CIRCUIT | DESCRIPTION |
|------|---------|---|
| SD | 103 | Data to transmit |
| RD | 104 | Data received |
| RTS | 105 | DTE ready to transmit data (to DCE) |
| CTS | 106 | DCE ready to transmit data (to DTE) |
| DSR | 107 | Data set ready, modem ready to operate (TO DTE) |
| DTR | 108 | Data terminal ready (to DCE) |
| RLSD | 109 | Data carrier detected (to DTE) |
| RATE | 112 | Indicates to DTE rate selected by DCE |
| RI | 125 | Ring indicate to DTE |
| TC | 114 | Transmit signal element timing to DTE |
| RC | 115 | Receive signal element timing to DTE |
| EC | 113 | Transmit signal element timing to DCE |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

LINE/HYBRID INTERFACE

The SSI 73D2930 AFELIC derives its power from the DC voltage supplied by the PSTN. It contains the hybrid, receive ADC, and transmit DAC and interfaces to the DSP and PSTN network. Among the functions performed by this circuit are ring detect and the AC and DC impedance characteristics.

The 73D2930 AFELIC requires a few external components. See the 73D2950 Design Manual for detailed information.

QAM MODULATOR /DEMODULATOR

The 73D2950 encodes incoming data into quad bits represented by 16 possible signal points with specific phase and amplitude levels. The base band signal is then filtered to reduce inter-symbol interference on the band limited telephone network. The modulator transmits this encoded data using either a 1200 Hz (Originate mode) or 2400 Hz (Answer mode) carrier. The demodulator, although more complex, essentially reverses this procedure while also recovering the data timing from the incoming signal. Adaptive equalization corrects for varying line conditions by automatically changing filter parameters to compensate for line characteristics.

DPSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The 73D2950 modulates a serial bit stream into di-bit pairs that are represented by four possible phase shifts as prescribed by the Bell 212A/V.22 standards. The base-band signal is then filtered to reduce inter-symbol interference on the band limited 2-wire PSTN line. Transmission occurs on either a 1200 Hz (Originate mode) or 2400 Hz carrier (Answer mode). Demodulation is the reverse of the modulation process, with the incoming analog signal eventually decoded into di-bits and converted back to a serial bit stream. The demodulator also recovers the data timing which was encoded into the analog signal during modulation. Adaptive equalization is also used in DPSK modes for optimum operation with varying line conditions.

FSK MODULATOR/DEMODULATOR

The FSK modulator produces a frequency modulated analog output signal using two discrete frequencies to represent the binary data. The Bell 103 standard frequencies of 1270 and 1070 Hz (originate mark and space) and 2225 and 2025 Hz (answer mark and space) are used when this mode is selected. V.21

mode uses 980 and 1180 Hz (originate, mark and space) or 1650 and 1850 Hz (answer, mark and space). V.23 mode uses 1300 & 2100 for the main channel mark/space tones & 390/450 Hz for the back channel. Demodulation involves detecting the received frequencies and decoding them into the appropriate binary value. The rate converter and scrambler/descrambler are automatically bypassed in the FSK modes.

PASSBAND FILTERS AND EQUALIZERS

High and low band filter functions are performed in the 73D2920 and are included to shape the amplitude and phase response of the transmit and receive signals and provide compromise delay equalization and rejection of out-of-band signals. Amplitude and phase equalization are necessary to compensate for distortion of the transmission line and to reduce inter-symbol interference in the band limited receive signal. The transmit signal filtering corresponds to the appropriate CCITT defined frequency response characteristic for the mode being used.

ASYNCHRONOUS DPSK/QAM MODES

The asynchronous mode is used for communication with asynchronous terminals which may communicate at 600,1200, or 2400 bit/s $\pm 1\%$, $\pm 2.5\%$ while the 73D2920's output is limited to the CCITT and Bell specified modulation bit rate of $\pm 0.1\%$ in DPSK and QAM modes. When connected to asynchronous modes the serial data on the TXD input is passed through a rate converter which inserts or deletes stop bits in the serial bit stream in order to output a signal to the modulator that is the nominal bit rate $\pm 0.1\%$. This signal is then routed to a data scrambler and into the modulator where quad-bit/di-bit encoding results in the output signal. Both the rate converter and scrambler can be bypassed for synchronous operation or handshaking as required. Received data is processed in a similar fashion except that the rate converter now acts to reinsert any deleted stop bits and output data to the terminal.

An incoming break signal (low through two characters) will be passed through without incorrectly inserting a stop bit.

Both the SYNC/ASYNCR rate converter and the data descrambler are automatically bypassed in the FSK modes.

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION (continued)

SYNCHRONOUS MODE

Synchronous operation is available in the phase encoded modes. Operation is similar to that of the asynchronous mode except that data is synchronized to a provided clock and no variation in the nominal data transfer rate is allowable. Serial input data appearing at TXD must be valid on the rising edge of TXCLK. (In FSK mode the clock runs at 16 times the data rate.)

TXCLK is an internally generated bit rate clock in **internal synchronous mode**. In **slave synchronous mode**, the transmit timing is locked to the receive clock. A pin is also provided to allow synchronization to an externally provided clock in **external synchronous mode**.

Receive data at the RXD pin is clocked out on the falling edge of RXCLK. The async/sync converter is bypassed when synchronous mode is selected.

FSK DATA RATES

In FSK modes bits are transmitted and received as they arrive from the DTE and analog interfaces. No rate conversion or synchronization is performed. Nominally Bell 103 & V.21 modulation are 300 bit/s. For V.23 the main channel is 1200 bit/s and the back channel is 75 bit/s.

SCRAMBLER/DESCRAMBLER

The modem incorporates a self-synchronizing scrambler/descrambler in accordance with CCITT V.22/V.22bis, Bell 212, V.29 or V.27 recommendations, depending on the selected configuration.

RECEIVE LEVEL

The receiver satisfies V.21, V.22/V.22bis, V.29 and V.27 performance requirements for received line signal levels from -9 dBm to -43 dBm. The received line signal level is measured between TIP and RING at the telephone network interface.

CARRIER RECOVERY

The carrier recovery circuit can track a ± 7 Hz frequency offset in the received carrier with less than a 0.2 dBm degradation in bit error rate (BER).

RECEIVER TIMING

The timing recovery circuit can adjust to a ± 0.02 % frequency offset from the local timing source.

DTMF GENERATION

DTMF tones are generated by using Hayes AT dialing commands. Register S11 controls the duration of the DTMF tones and spacing between tones. Smart dialing functions are controlled by the Xn command and modifiers.

CLASS 1 AND CLASS 2 FAX MODES

The SSI 73D2950 is capable of synchronous 9600 and 7200 (V.29), and 4800 and 2400 (V.27ter) bit/s half duplex operation with error detection.

The modem satisfies the telecommunications requirements specified in CCITT recommendations V.29, V.27 ter, V.21 Channel 2, T.3, and T.4, and the binary signaling requirements of T.30. The 73D2950 can operate at speeds of 9600, 7200, 4800, 2400, and 300 bit/s. The 73D2950 also performs HDLC framing/deframing according to T.30 at speeds of 9600, 7200, 4800, 2400, and 300 bit/s.

The 73D2950 is intended for use in Group 3 and Group 2 facsimile applications. Both Class 1 and Class 2 operation are supported by using the +FCLASS=n (n=1 or 2) command.

V.24/EIA-232 INTERFACE

Seven pins provide timing, data, and control signals for implementing a CCITT recommendation V.24 compatible serial interface. These signals are TTL compatible but for driving longer cables, these signals can be easily converted to EIA/RS-232-C voltage levels. The control signals are active low (inverted) from those found on EIA/RS-232-C allowing standard inverting buffers to be used. RXD and TXD are active high and also inverted from those on EIA/RS-232-C interfaces.

Transmit Data (SD)

The modem obtains serial data to be sent from the local DTE on the Send Data (SD) input.

Received Data (RD)

The modem presents received serial data to the local DTE on the Received Data (RXD) output. Received Data (RXD) is clamped to a constant mark whenever the Received Line Signal Detector (RLSD) is off.

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

Request To Send (RTS)

Request to Send (RTS) the modem to transmit data on TXD when CTS becomes active.

Clear To Send (CTS)

Clear to Send (CTS) indicates to the local DTE that the modem will transmit any data present on TXD.

Received Line Signal Detector (RLSD)

For V.29 and V.27, Received Line Signal Detector (RLSD) goes active at the end of the training sequence.

FIRMWARE DESCRIPTION

Command and configuration of the modem is provided by a Hayes™ compatible "AT" command interpreter. The command section is divided into four parts: 1) commands valid independent of the value of "FCLASS"; 2) commands valid in Data mode (FCLASS=0); 3) commands valid in Class 1 Facsimile mode (FCLASS=1); 4) commands valid in Class 2 Facsimile mode (FCLASS=2).

REQUIREMENTS

The modem **always** powers up in Data mode (+FCLASS=0). General purpose commands, such as those listed in sections <TBD> are enabled in both Data and Fax modes. Their respective values are consistent independent of the state of "+FCLASS." The Data modem code fits in a 64K x 8 ROM. Facsimile, V.25bis and user command extensions require a 128K x 8 ROM.

GENERAL "AT" COMMANDS

The following commands are supported by the modem in all modes (FCLASS=0,1,2):

| | |
|----|-------------------------|
| A | Answer call |
| D | Dial (originate) |
| E | Echo |
| H | Hook control |
| I | ID |
| L | Speaker volume |
| M | Speaker control |
| Q | Result code display |
| Sn | SFR control, see below |
| V | Verbose mode |
| X | Result code/CPD control |
| Zn | Recall stored profile n |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

GENERAL "AT" COMMANDS (continued)

Dial Modifiers

| | |
|-----|------------------------|
| ! | Hook flash |
| , | Pause |
| @ | Silent answer |
| ; | Return to command mode |
| P | Pulse dial |
| R | Reverse dial |
| S=n | Dial stored number n |
| T | Tone dial |
| W | Wait for dial tone |

Extended "AT" Commands

| | |
|-----|--------------------------------|
| &F | Load factory defaults |
| &J | Aux relay options |
| &V | View profile |
| &Wn | Store configuration in EEPROM |
| &Yn | Power on configuration control |
| &Zn | Store phone number in EEPROM |

Special Function Registers

| Register | Description |
|----------|----------------------|
| 0 | Ring to answer on |
| 1 | Ring counter |
| 2 | <CR> Character |
| 4 | <LF> Character |
| 5 | <BS> Character |
| 6 | Blind dial wait time |
| 8 | "," wait time |
| 11 | DTMF dialing speed |
| 14 | Bit mapped options |
| 15 | Command timeout |
| 21 | Bit mapped options |
| 22 | Bit mapped options |
| 23 | Bit mapped options |
| 27 | Bit mapped options |
| 30 | Activity timer |

Data Modem

The following commands are unique to the Data modem (FCLASS=0)

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| B | Communications standard |
| C | Carrier control |
| N | Modem handshake speed |
| O | Go online |
| W | Negotiation progress message control |
| Y | Long space disconnect |

EXTENDED "AT" COMMANDS

| | |
|-----|--------------------------------|
| &C | DCD options |
| &D | DTR options |
| &G | Guard tone |
| &K | Flow control enable |
| &L | Leased line control |
| &M | Sync/async options |
| &Q | Communications mode |
| &R | RTS/CTS options |
| &S | Data set ready options |
| &Tn | Test mode options |
| &Xn | Select sync clock source |
| &Yn | Power on configuration control |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

Result Codes

The Data modem supports the following result codes.

| Result Codes | Verbose Result |
|--------------|----------------------|
| 0 | OK |
| 1 | CONNECT |
| 2 | RING |
| 3 | NO CARRIER |
| 4 | ERROR |
| 5 | CONNECT 1200 |
| 6 | NO DIALTONE |
| 7 | BUSY |
| 8 | NO ANSWER |
| 9 | CONNECT 0600 |
| 10 | CONNECT 2400 |
| 11 | CONNECT 4800 |
| 12 | CONNECT 9600 |
| 14 | CONNECT 19200 |
| 40 | CARRIER 300 |
| 46 | CARRIER 120 0 |
| 47 | CARRIER 2400 |
| 66 | COMPRESSION: CLASS 5 |
| 67 | COMPRESSION: V.42bis |
| 69 | COMPRESSION: NONE |
| 70 | PROTOCOL: NONE |
| 77 | PROTOCOL: LAP-M |
| 80 | PROTOCOL: ALT |

DATA MODEM SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

| Register | Description |
|----------|-------------------------------|
| 2 | Escape character |
| 7 | Carrier wait time |
| 9 | Carrier recovery time |
| 10 | Carrier loss time |
| 12 | Guard time |
| 16 | Test options |
| 18 | Test timer |
| 20 | HDLC address |
| 25 | DTR timer |
| 26 | RTS/CTS delay |
| 36 | Negotiation fallback control |
| 37 | DCE line speed control |
| 39 | Current flow control method |
| 43 | Current DCE speed |
| 46 | Feature negotiation action |
| 47 | Current compression status |
| 48 | Feature negotiation status |
| 70 | Max number of retransmissions |
| 82 | Break signaling method |
| 86 | Connect failure cause code |
| 95 | Extended result code bit map |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

V.25Bis COMMANDS (OPTIONAL)

Seven (7) V.25bis commands are supported in the 73D2950. Future revisions will allow for protocol, speed buffering and blacklisting. Commands are enabled via a switch connected to one of the 73D2910 user port pins which is read on power up. The following is a list of the basic V.25bis commands supported in the 73D2950 firmware:

SET Auto baud to current DTE line speed. Same as AT command.

CIC Connect Incoming Call. Same as ATA command. Answers the phone regardless of the ring count set by the CNA command.

CRN Call Request with Number. Parameters: 0-9 * # T P = &: /

The V.25bis dial string is supplied with this command. This command functions the same as the ATD command. Valid dial string parameters are shown in Table 1.

CRS Call Request with Stored number. Parameters: 1-20

This command dials using one of the stored phone numbers stored with the PRN command. If there is no number stored in the slot then the modem will respond with a CFINS indication.

DIC Disregard Incoming Call. Parameters: None

This command can be issued anytime during ringing but prior to the modem answering the call. This command only affects the current call. This condition may be canceled by the CIC command.

PRN Store / Delete Number. Parameters: 1-20

This command stores the ID number in one of 20 slots.

RLN Request List of Stored Numbers. Parameters: 1-20

This command requests either a single phone number if a parameter is specified or all 20 phone numbers stored with the PRN command if no number specified.

TABLE 1: Valid Dial String Parameters

| 0-9*# | Dial Digits | These are the digits to be dialed. |
|-------|--------------------|---|
| T | DTMF Dialing | When this command is encountered in a dial string the subsequent digits will be dialed in DTMF mode. |
| P | PULSE Dialing | When this command is encountered in a dial string the subsequent digits will be dialed in Pulse mode. |
| < | Short Pause | When this command is encountered in a dial string the firmware delays further action by the time specified in S8 (Default of 2 seconds). |
| = | Long Pause | When this command is encountered in a dial string the firmware delays further action by double the time specified in S8. NOTE: See < modifier. |
| : | Wait for dial tone | When this command is encountered in a dial string the mode will wait for the detection of dialtone. The modem will wait for the duration of the time specified by S7. |
| / | Comment. | All characters in a dial string after this command will be ignored. |
| & | Flash | This is the same as the Hayes ! flash character. |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

FACSIMILE MODEM

"AT" Commands Supported:

Additional Dial Modifiers:

| | |
|-----|------------------------|
| ! | Hook flash |
| , | Pause |
| @ | Silent answer |
| ; | Return to Command mode |
| P | Pulse dial |
| S=n | Dial stored number n |
| T | Tone dial |
| W | Wait for dial tone |

Extended "AT" commands

| | |
|----|-----------------------|
| &C | DCD options |
| &F | Load factory defaults |
| &J | Aux relay options |
| &V | View profile |

FAX Service Class Identification

| | |
|-----------|--|
| +FCLASS=0 | Data modem |
| +FCLASS=1 | Class 1 facsimile service enabled |
| +FCLASS=2 | Class 2 facsimile service enabled |
| +FCLASS=? | Report service class range (0,1,2) |
| +FCLASS? | Report current service class ? = Command query |

Result Codes:

The Fax modem supports the following result codes.

| | Result Codes |
|---|----------------|
| | Verbose Result |
| 0 | OK |
| 1 | CONNECT |
| 2 | RING |
| 3 | NO CARRIER |
| 4 | ERROR |
| 6 | NO DIALTONE |
| 7 | BUSY |
| 8 | NO ANSWER |

TIA-578 Class 1 Facsimile commands

Modulator commands:

All of the following commands except +FTS and +FRS must be the last command on the line.

| | |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| +FTS=<TIME> | Stop transmission and wait. |
| +FRS=<TIME> | Detect silence on line |
| <TIME>= | 10 ms intervals (0-255) |
| +FTM=<MOD> | Transmit (Normal) using <MOD> rate |
| +FRM=<MOD> | Receive (Normal) using <MOD> rate |
| +FTH=<MOD> | Transmit HDLC using <MOD> rate |
| +FRH=<MOD> | Receive HDLC using <MOD> rate |

The <MOD> Modulation Rate is defined by the following table:

| Value | Modulation | Speed | Requirements |
|-------|------------|-------|--------------------------|
| 3 | V.21ch2 | 300 | Required for FTH and FRH |
| 24 | V.27ter | 2400 | Required for FTM and FRM |
| 48 | V.27ter | 4800 | Required for FTM and FRM |
| 72 | V.29 | 7200 | optional |
| 96 | V.29 | 9600 | optional |

All other codes reserved. Command range is queried with the command "+<command>=?".

Extended Class 1 "AT" Commands supported:

| | |
|-------|---|
| +MFR? | Query product manufacturer |
| +MDL? | Query product model number |
| +RAD | Set base for results (" \$" for hex input, " #" for binary) |

Class 1 Result Code:

| | |
|-------|--|
| +FC | |
| ERROR | +F4 - FAX error result code. Received carrier other than that requested with the +FRM or +FRH command. |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

FACSIMILE MODEM (continued)

Industry Standard Class 2 "AT" commands:

+FAA= Auto answer
+FBL= Bad lines for a bad page
+FBM= Error rate multiplier
+FBO= Phase "C" bit ordering
+FBS? Buffer size (read only)
+FBU= Session message reporting
+FCC= DCE capabilities parameters
+FCI= Report remote ID response (CSI)
+FCL= Facsimile service class (+FCLASS)
+FCO= Fax connection response
+FCQ= Copy quality capabilities parameters
+FCR= Capability to receive parameters
+FCS= Report session parameters response (DCS)
+FCS= Current session parameters
+FDR= Receive phase "C" data command
+FDT= Transmit phase "C" data command
+FEA= Phase "C" EOL alignment parameter
+FEC= Error correction mode parameter
+FET= Post page message response
+FFC= Format conversion control parameter
+FHR= Report received HDLC frame response
+FHS= Call termination status
+FHS= Hangup status (Fax error) parameter
+FHT= Report transmitted HDLC frame parameter
+FIP= Initialize Fax parameters
+FIS= Report remote capabilities response
+FIS= Current session negotiation parameters
+FKS= Orderly Fax abort command
+FLI= Local ID string parameter (TSI/CSI)
+FLP= Document for polling parameters
+FMM? Request DCE model
+FMI? Request DCE manufacture

+FMR? Request DCE revision
+FMS= Minimum phase "C" speed parameter
+FNC= Report NSC frame response
+FNF= Report NSF frame response
+FNS= Report NSS frame response
+FPI= Report remote ID response (CIG)
+FPI= Local polling ID string
+FPO= Remote polling indication
+FPP= Packet protocol control
+FPS= Rx page transfer status response
+FPS= Page transfer status parameter
+FRY= CTC retry value parameter
+FSP= Enable polling parameter
+FTC= Report remote capabilities response
+FTI= Report remote ID response (TSI)
+FVO= Transition to voice response

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2910

SSI 73D2910 MICROCONTROLLER

The SSI 73D2910 is a custom microcontroller based on the industry standard 80C52 microcontroller. It contains 256 bytes internal RAM, 6 standard interrupt sources, 3 timers and a serial port. In addition to the standard 80C52 features the 73D2910 offers the following special functions:

The interface between the microcontroller and the SSI 73D2920 DSP is accomplished through the 8-bit data bus, RD, WR, CS, A0 and A1. To complete the interface the DSP chip provides an interrupt output to the 73D2910. The DSP has a 16-bit control I/O register and mail box which are memory mapped peripherals (2 bytes each) to the microcontroller.

FEATURES

- Demultiplexed address and data buses available
- Four user ports separate from address and data
- HDLC packetizer with serial I/O
- Built-in chip select outputs
- One additional external interrupt source
- One additional internal (HDLC) interrupt
- Firmware selectable buffered oscillator output
- 1.8 MHz UART clock available
- TQFP package available

NOTE: Detailed 73D2910 controller information may be found in the SSI 73D2910 data sheet.

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|------|---|
| NO CONNECTS | | No connections, leave open. |
| A(0)-A(15) | O | Address bus lines-output latched address for devices that require separate data and address bus. |
| AD(0)-AD(7) | I/O | Data bus lines-I/O for devices that require multiplexed address and data bus. |
| ALE | O | Address Latch Enable output pulse for latching the low byte of the address during accesses to external memory. |
| WR | O | Output strobe during a bus write. Used as a write strobe to external data memory. (Active low) |
| RD | O | Output strobe activated during a bus read. Can be used to enable data onto the bus from an external device. Used as a read strobe to external data memory. (Active low) |
| USR2(0) - USR2(7) | I/O | General purpose I/O port. Can also be used for wakeup. |
| USR4(0) - USR4(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port also Chip select enable. |
| USR3(0) - USR3(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port. If the bank select feature is chosen, USR(7) acts as address bit 7 and USR3 data bit 7 is ignored. Register BANKSEL bits (BS7F) enables bank select. bit 1 (BS1) and bit 0 (BS0) select the appropriate bank. |
| USR2(0) - USR2(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port. |
| USR1(0) - USR1(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port. |
| INT(0)-INT(5) | I | External interrupt 0, 1 and 5. |
| PRXD | I | Serial input port (from modem device). |
| PRCLK | I | Input clock used to receive data PRXD. |
| PTXD | O | HDLC Packetizer TX output. This pin can also be programmed to the DTE's TXD output (serial channel) or the value within bit 2 of the HDLC control register. Connects to modem device TXD. |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2910

PIN DESCRIPTION (includes 73D2910 Microcontroller to 73D2920 DSP interface)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|------|---|
| PSEN | O | Program store enable. This output occurs only during a fetch to external program memory. (Active low) |
| RESET | I | Input which is used to initialize the processor. (Active high) |
| VND | GND | Negative digital voltage. (Digital Ground) |
| OSCIN | I | Crystal input for internal oscillator, also input for external source. |
| OSCOU | O | Crystal oscillator output. |
| VPD | I | Positive digital voltage (+5V Digital Supply) |
| CLKOUT1 | O | Clock output programmable either OSC/2, OSC/1 or logic 0. |
| CLKOUT2 | O | Clock output 1.8432 MHz clock for an external UART given an oscillator frequency of 23.04, 18.432 MHz, or 13.824 MHz. |
| TXD | I | Serial input port to 73D2910 from DTE same as RXD UART input. |
| RXD | O | Serial output port of 73D2910 UART to DTE. |
| PTXCLK | I | Input clock used to transmit data PTXD. |
| PTXD | O | HDLC Packetizer TX output. This pin can also be programmed to the DTE's TXD output (clear channel) or the value written into bit 6 of the HDLC control register. Connects to modem device TXD. |
| PRXCLK | I | Input clock used to receive data PRXD. |
| PRXD | I | Serial input port (from modem device). |
| INT(0)-INT(2) | I | External interrupt 0,1 and 2. |
| USR1(0) -USR1(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port. |
| USR2(0) -USR2(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port. |
| USR3(0) -USR3(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port. If the bank select feature is chosen, USR (7) acts as address bit 17 and USR3 data bit 7 is ignored. Register BNKSEL bit 2 (BSEN) enables bank select, bit 1 (BS1) and bit 0 (BS0) select the appropriate bank. |
| USR4(0) -USR4(7) | I/O | User programmable I/O port also Chip select enable. |
| USR5(0) - USR5(1) | I/O | General purpose input port, can also be used for wakeup. |
| RD | O | Output strobe activated during a bus read. Can be used to enable data onto the bus from an external device. Used as a read strobe to external data memory. (Active low) |
| WR | O | Output strobe during a bus write. Used as a write strobe to external data memory. (Active low) |
| ALE | O | Address Latch Enable output pulse for latching the low byte of the address during accesses to external memory. |
| AD(0)-AD(7) | I/O | Data bus lines-I/O for devices that require multiplexed address and data bus. |
| A(0)-A(15) | O | Address bus lines-output latched address for devices that require separate data and address bus. |
| NO CONNECTS | | No connections, leave open. |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2950

SSI 73D2920

SSI 73D2920 DSP

The SSI 73D2920 DSP provides the digital signal processing for the 73D2950 data/facsimile modem chip set. The 73D2920 uses internal ROM/RAM to reduce system chip count and power consumption.

The 73D2920 provides the functionality necessary for a power and cost efficient FAX/MODEM signal processing element powered by a 3 to 5 volt supply. The integrated circuit consists of a DSP (digital signal processor) core with RAM and ROM data memory, ROM instruction memory, and register mapped input/output functions including timers, interrupt expansion, ADC and DAC ports, Serial Data I/O, and mailbox interface to microprocessor. Other features include a mailbox style port between the microprocessor and the DSP. Some exchanges with the microprocessor are for direct control of the 73D2920. A serial channel for transmit and receive data with synchronizing clocks (RxCLK, TxCLK, ExCLK) is the digital-side of the data path through the DSP. The chip also contains an oscillator and a power control circuit having modes dependent on register bits and input sources, such as DTR, bit stream, and ring detect.

FEATURES

- Supports data and facsimile standards through V.22bis and V.29
- Interfaces to Silicon Systems' custom 73D2930 AFELIC transformerless analog front end DAA
- Additionally provides a standard AFE interface
- Provides a CMOS compatible audio monitor output for modem or system speaker
- Interfaces with Silicon Systems' custom 73D2910 or industry standard microcontroller
- Provides two independent programmable tone generators
- Provides two independent programmable call progress detect filters
- Supports synchronous serial data I/O, parallel μ C control I/O
- Provides microcontroller interrupt
- Power control modes

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK OVERVIEW

The DSP core is the heart of the digital signal processing capabilities of this circuit. The 73D2920 DSP peripherals include:

- On-chip data memory - 1K words of X array RAM; 1K words of Y array RAM and 0.5K words of Y array ROM
- On-chip instruction memory- 16K words of ROM
- Two timers - one with separately adjustable transmit & receive timing and the other with adjustable sample rate.
- Interrupt Pending Register - This register has multiple bits, where each bit is associated with a separate interrupt source. When any bit(s) is set, an interrupt to the DSP (Int0) will be initiated. The firmware interrupt routine can poll this register and act on the indicated interrupt(s). All interrupt sources to this register are of the same priority, and do not re-interrupt an ongoing interrupt service routine. New interrupts get serviced upon completion of the previous interrupt. Prioritization can be created in firmware; the priority decision is made when the register is polled, with several sources simultaneously active. Upon access of the associated function, the interrupt pending bit will be reset and the register can be polled for any further requests.

Function Interface (using External Registers) - The various devices described in this section will be accessed as external registers. Other blocks on the chip include:

- Microprocessor Interfaces - there are two interfaces, one parallel for the transfer of control and internal messages, and the other a full-duplex, serial interface with clocks for the transfer of data. The parallel port is compatible with an 80C52 microprocessor, **but does require the address to be valid during the entire Read/Write cycle.** It is attached to a mailbox register set located on the 73D2920 that provides access to the DSP or to a chip/system register for the control of non-DSP specific functions such as power control and chip configuration. These bits will have preset states upon RESET.

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2920

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK OVERVIEW (continued)

- Power Control Logic - controls the power-saving state of all blocks on the 73D2950, including the DSP. Among its functions is the enabling of the clock for the DSP. This circuit can also send power control signals to the microprocessor. The circuit uses the DTI1, DTI0, RNGDET, AUX1 and AUX0 chip inputs and various control register bits to determine its state.

Speaker Driver

The 73D2920 has an all digital speaker monitor circuit. The circuit allows for four relative levels of volume control, off, low, medium and high, with 6 dB steps between high and medium and medium and low. The level is controlled through the volume control bits VOL[1:0]. The output, MONOUT is a PWM digital signal, which after low pass filtering can be applied to an external speaker driver or may also be connected to a high impedance speaker directly.

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|-------|---|
| VPD, VND | POWER | Digital power supply to the various blocks on the chip. The 73D2920 operates from either a 3.3v $\pm 10\%$ or 5V $\pm 10\%$ supply. |
| VPA, VNA | POWER | These are the analog voltage pins and use the same voltages as the VPD and VND pins. |
| VBG | - | Buffered version of the analog ground signal for biasing off chip analog functions. Maximum current is $\pm 100 \mu A$. |

MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACES

| | | |
|-----------------|---|---|
| \overline{CS} | - | CHIP SELECT, CMOS levels. Disabled by ALERT = 1. |
| UA[1:0] | | Two address bits that are used to select the destination or source for data transferred on the parallel interface. Disabled by ALERT=1 UA Dest/Source 00 Mail Box MSB 01 Mail Box LSB 10 CR0 MSB 11 CR0 LSB When communicating with the mailbox the status bits READ/WRITE MAIL FULL are updated after the MSB is accessed. Therefore the LSB should be addressed following the corresponding access to the MSB. Since this chip does not use the ALE function as provided on the 8052, the address inputs chosen must be valid over the entire write/read cycle. This allows compatibility with Z80 microprocessors. |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2920

MICROPROCESSOR INTERFACES

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------|------|--|
| RD, WR | I | READ ENABLE and WRITE ENABLE (active low) signals, respectively. They are CMOS inputs. Disabled by ALERT=1. |
| UD[7:0] | I/O | The parallel data bus from the microprocessor. Bi-directional, tristate, CMOS. Disabled by ALERT=1. |
| INT | O | INTERRUPT output to a microprocessor indicating that the 73D2920 has information. The uses for this signal are microprocessor wake-up (when the 73D2920 is the clock source) and/or the request for information. Disabled by ALERT=1. |
| TXD, RXD | - | TRANSMIT DATA and RECEIVE DATA signals, respectively. They are CMOS serial ports for the transfer of data from and to the DTE/microprocessor, respectively. Disabled by DIGI bit. |
| RXCLK, TXCLK, EXCLK | - | Along with the data, receive, transmit and external (respectively) CMOS clocks that are appropriate for the sampling of the data are transferred across the interface. In the phase-encoded data modes and for audio compression these are synchronous bit-rate clocks. Note: The clock rate for audio compression is sample-rate times bits-per-sample. For FSK data modes these are asynchronous 16x clocks. Disabled by DIGI bit. |

73D2930 AFELIC INTERFACE

| | | |
|--------|---|---|
| RXADEC | - | RECEIVE ANALOG to DECIMATOR signal is a special capacitor coupled pin to the 73D2930 analog front end integrated circuit. It inputs a data signal at 1.152 MHz that is a density modulated version of the signal received by the AFELIC. Disabled by AFEI bit. |
| TXAMOD | - | TRANSMIT ANALOG from MODULATOR signal is a special capacitor coupled pin to the 73D2930 analog front end integrated circuit. It outputs a data signal at 1.152 MHz that is a density modulated version of the signal created by the DSP for transmission by the AFELIC. Disabled by AFEI bit. |
| AFECLK | - | ANALOG FRONT END CLOCK is a special capacitor coupled pin to the 73D2930 analog front end integrated circuit. It outputs a clock at 2.304 MHz that times all precision circuitry on the 73D2930. This signal can be phase adjusted by the 73D2920 for appropriate sampling of the incoming signal by the AFE. Disabled by AFEI bit. |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

SSI 73D2920

AUXILIARY FUNCTIONS

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|------|---|
| MCLK | - | MICROPROCESSOR CLOCK for use when the system oscillator is on the 73D2920. The oscillator frequency can be scaled for use by the microprocessor. When the 73D2920 ENOSC bit or EMCLK bit is in the disabled state this clock is disabled and the XTLL is an input only. |
| MONOUT | - | MONITOR OUTPUT is a CMOS output pin that can be used to drive a digital interface or be low pass filtered to drive (with optional external driver) a low fidelity speaker for audio monitoring of data when using the analog front end interface. It is the combination of the receive and transmit sampled data streams from the front end. The circuit driving this pin is enabled by SPKR not equal to 00b AND Timer0 enabled. |
| RESET | - | This is an external means for putting the 73D2920 chip into its reset and lowest power state. Upon reset the 73D2920 is completely powered down and must be awakened via an external signal (e.g., DTI1, DTI0, RNGDET or AUX1). The 73D2920 can also be reset by software control. The use of the reset register bit is similar to that of the reset pin, except that the reset register bit will not affect the state of the POWERUP SOURCE DISABLE register bits. This is a CMOS input having hysteresis and a weak internal pull down. |
| DTI1, DTI0 | - | DATA TERMINAL INPUTS are used to monitor the data bit stream and DTR from the DTE, respectively. The detection of these CMOS signals is one means of waking the 73D2920 from the Power Down mode. Although these input signals may contain other information they are not further decoded by the 73D2920. These signals interface to the power control circuit and are CMOS inputs having hysteresis. The DTI1 pin has a weak internal pull down and the DTI0 has a weak internal pull up. The signal can be masked by the PSDIS(0) register bit. |
| RNGDET | - | RING DETECT is a signal from the 73D2930 ring detector that is an alternative source for waking the 73D2920 from the Power Down mode. Although this input may contain other information, it is not further decoded by the 73D2920. This signal interfaces with the power control circuit and is an Active Low CMOS input having hysteresis and an weak internal pull up. The signal can be masked by the PSDIS(1) register bit. |
| AUX1, AUX0 | - | These inputs, which are active low CMOS with hysteresis, provide an additional means for system wakeup via the 72D2920. A low signal on both pins causes the circuit to wakeup (if not masked by PSDIS(0) register bit). The WAKE pin is latched high until a power down request is given to the 73D2920 by the microprocessor. These signals have weak internal pull-ups. |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2920

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------------------------------------|--|-------|-------------------------------------|----------------|---|---|--------------------|---|----------------|---------|
| WAKE | - | This is a CMOS-type output having a large pull down transistor and a weak pull up transistor. Its purpose is to send a signal to the host microprocessor to wakeup. The signal is activated by the <code>RNGDET</code> , <code>DTI1</code> , <code>DTI0</code> , <code>AUX1</code> and <code>AUX0</code> signals when appropriately changed and not masked. The latched signal remains true until the <code>MCLK</code> and <code>OSCCLK</code> register bits are both placed in the disabled state. | | | | | | | | | |
| ALERT | - | ALERT is an input that in conjunction with the <code>POWERUP SOURCE DISABLE</code> register bits may set the 73D2920 in a slow but alert mode when in power down. This allows the 73D2920, used in a Standalone mode with no external wakeup signaling enabled, to bring itself to a functioning state. | | | | | | | | | |
| | | <table> <tr> <th>ALERT</th><th>POWERUP SOURCE DISABLE Bits (ANDed)</th><th>State at Reset</th></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>1</td><td>no external wakeup</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>X (Don't Care)</td><td>Stopped</td></tr> </table> | ALERT | POWERUP SOURCE DISABLE Bits (ANDed) | State at Reset | 1 | 1 | no external wakeup | 0 | X (Don't Care) | Stopped |
| ALERT | POWERUP SOURCE DISABLE Bits (ANDed) | State at Reset | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | no external wakeup | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | X (Don't Care) | Stopped | | | | | | | | | |
| | | In this mode of power down, the DSP clock and on-board oscillator are not shut off and hence the register bits defining those functions are bypassed. The DSP clock is placed at its lowest frequency setting upon reset for power conservation. This pin has a weak internal pull down, setting the chip to the normal power down condition. | | | | | | | | | |

DSP PORTS

| | | |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| CD[15:0] | - | Combined Prog/Data Bus, 16 bits wide is a CMOS bi-directional bus. This port may be used to interface diagnostic converter module used for the display of various algorithmic information. The bus is enabled by (<code>PROTO=1 AND PEXT=1</code>) OR <code>DIAG=1</code> . |
| CA[15:0] | - | COMBINED BUS Address Bus, 16 bits wide is a CMOS address bus that indicates the address associated with the data on the CD bus. The bus is enabled by <code>PROTO=1 AND PEXT=1</code>) OR <code>DIAG=1</code> . |
| $\overline{\text{CWR}}$ | - | COMBINED BUS WRITE is a CMOS output indicating that the DSP is writing to the bus. It is enabled by <code>DIAG=1</code> . |
| $\overline{\text{INT1}}$ | - | INTERRUPT 1 is externally accessible. The DSP core has two interrupt sources to its <code>INT1</code> , this pin and the <code>READ MAIL FULL</code> bit. <code>INT0</code> is the destination for the timer interrupts. It is an Active Low CMOS input with a weak internal pull up. |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2920

73D2910 / 73D2920 BUS INTERFACE TIMING

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------|------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| tAC | ADDR to \overline{CS} | | 0 | | ns |
| tCA | \overline{CS} to ADDR | | 0 | | ns |
| tCW | \overline{CS} to \overline{WR} | 50 | | | ns |
| tWC | \overline{WR} to \overline{CS} | 20 | | | ns |
| tWH | Write Hold Time | 20 | | | ns |
| tWS | Write Setup Time | 150 | | | ns |
| tWW | \overline{WR} width | 150 | | | ns |
| tCR | \overline{CS} to \overline{RD} | 35 | | | ns |
| tRC | \overline{RD} to \overline{CS} | 20 | | | ns |
| tRW | \overline{RD} width | 150 | | | ns |
| tRH | Read Hold Time | 0 | | | ns |
| tRZ | Read High-Z Time | | | 20 | ns |

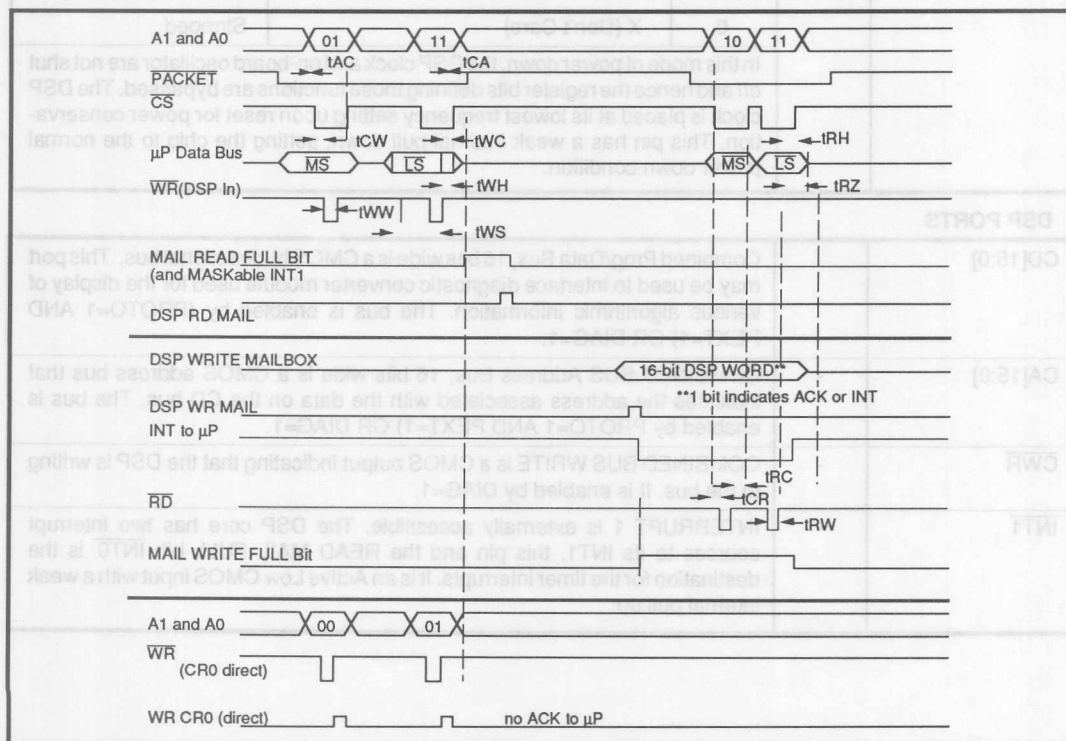


FIGURE 1: Timing Diagram

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2930

SSI 73D2930 AFELIC

The 73D2930 AFELIC (Analog Front End Line Interface Circuit) is one of two CMOS integrated circuits which comprise Silicon Systems' unique line interface chip set. The circuit provides all the necessary off-hook line conditioning functions for connection of high performance modem designs (up to V32bis @ 14.4 bit/s, inclusive) to both domestic and international public switched telephone networks. Additionally, a set of on-hook functions are provided. These include ring detection, auxiliary loop current detection and ANI reception.

The AFELIC is capable of being entirely line powered and normally lays on the PTT network side of the high voltage isolation barrier. Control communication across the barrier is achieved via standard optical isolators whereas data communication utilizes pulse density modulated digital bit streams through capacitively coupled interface circuitry. It is ideally suited for low power and low physical profile (transformerless) applications such as notebook computers and other small, battery operated equipment.

TRANSMIT

The incoming pulse density modulated bit stream from the 73D2920 is converted into a differential analog signal and then decimated by a third-order transmit filter. This filter attenuates high frequency noise and provides $\sin x/x$ amplitude correction for 14.4 kHz sampling. The signal is then summed into the "AC transconductance loop" where it is smoothed and then applied to the line via current mode signaling.

RECEIVE

The receive signal is differentially AC coupled into the LIC. It is then passed through an anti-alias filter and optionally low-pass filtered to attenuate any extraneous signals (billing tones, interference, etc.). The low pass filter also provides decimation. The transmit waveform is then subtracted (2-4 hybrid) and the remaining signal is pulse density modulated via Sigma-Delta ($\Sigma\Delta$) techniques. Finally, the signal is capacitively coupled across the high voltage barrier.

SERIAL CONTROL PROTOCOL

AFELIC control communication is implemented via a self-timed asynchronous input port. A control word consists of two address bits followed by six data bits. The two address bits specify one of four six-bit control registers. The word is received MSB first.

FEATURES

- V.32bis compatible performance
- Totally powered from the PSTN telephone network
- Programmable DC I/V characteristics
- Programmable active termination impedance
- 2-4 wire hybrid conversion
- Partial billing tone filter reduces external hardware
- Programmable level, ring detection
- Auxiliary current detection
- Parallel pick-up detection
- Loop current reversal detection
- Caller ID reception mode

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2930

SERIAL CONTROL PROTOCOL

LIC control communication is implemented via a self-timed asynchronous input port. A control word consists of two address bits followed by six data bits. The two address bits specify one of four six-bit control registers. The word is received MSB first.

CONTROL REGISTER 0

| MSB | Address = 00 | | | LSB | |
|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| CID | PDS | PSR | GN3 | BWC | OFH |
| CID | Caller ID Mode, 1 = active, 0 = inactive | | | | |
| PDS | Pulse Dial signal Impedance, 1 = active, 0 = inactive | | | | |
| PSR | Pin State Request, 1 = return pin state, 0 = inactive | | | | |
| GN3 | 3dB Rx Gain Enable, 1 = enable, 0 = disable | | | | |
| BWC | Bandwidth Control (TX/RX) 0 = 3.3 kHz, 1 = 20 kHz | | | | |
| OFH | OFF Hook Enable, 0 = disabled, 1 = enabled | | | | |

CONTROL REGISTER 1

| MSB | Address = 01 | | | LSB | |
|-----|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| DC1 | DC0 | ILM | AT1 | AT0 | CPD |

DC I/V Characteristics and Active Termination Impedance

| | | |
|-----|-----|--|
| DC1 | DC0 | FUNCTION Rdc = 20Ω 1% |
| 0 | 0 | Disabled |
| 0 | 1 | 5.0V @ 10 mA, 200 load line |
| 1 | 0 | 3.0V @ 10 mA, 100 load line |
| 1 | 1 | TBD |
| ILM | | Current Limit 0 = Disabled, 1 = 60 mA |
| AT1 | AT0 | Impedance ZAC = 300Ω 1% |
| 0 | 0 | 600Ω + 2.16 μF |
| 0 | 1 | 220Ω + 820 115 nF |
| 1 | 0 | 370Ω + 620 310 nF |
| 1 | 1 | Composite (TBD) |
| CPD | | Charge Pump Disable, 0 = Activated, 1 = Disabled |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2930

CONTROL REGISTER 2

| MSB | Address = 10 | | | LSB | |
|-----|--|-----------------------|-----|-----|-----|
| BT1 | BT0 | RG1 | RG0 | LID | PPD |
| PPD | Parallel Pickup Detect Enable 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled | | | | |
| LID | Loop Current Detect Enable 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled | | | | |
| RG0 | RG1 | Ring Levels | | | |
| 0 | 0 | Ringer Disabled | | | |
| 0 | 1 | 1V | | | |
| 1 | 0 | 1.5V | | | |
| 1 | 1 | 2V | | | |
| BT0 | | Billing Tone FF - HPF | | | |
| | | 0 = Disabled | | | |
| | | 1 = Enabled | | | |
| BT1 | | Billing LPF | | | |
| | | 0 = Disabled | | | |
| | | 1 = Enabled | | | |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

SSI 73D2930 PIN DESCRIPTION

SSI 73D2930

POWER AND REFERENCE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|------|--|
| SRG | O | Output to gate of series regulating FET |
| SRS | I | Input from source of series regulating |
| VPA | - | Positive analog supply. (3.3 - 5V + 10%. Must be bypassed to VNA. Analog supply) |
| VNA | - | Negative analog supply (0V) |
| VPD | - | Positive digital supply. (3.3 - 5V + 10%. Must be bypassed to VND. Digital supply) |
| VND | - | Negative digital supply (0V) |
| VBG VRF | O | Voltage reference output pin (1.25V, 2.25V) |
| DCI | I | DC line input |
| ACP | I | AC line input (positive) |
| ACN | I | AC line input (negative) |
| OSC | I | Single pin crystal oscillator input |
| RGP | I | Ring detection input (positive) |
| RGN | I | Ring detection input (negative) |
| RGO | I | TBD |
| LID | I | Line current detection input |
| OPT | I | TBD |

ANALOG OUTPUTS

| | | |
|-----|---|----------------------------|
| DCG | O | DC output to gate of FET |
| DCS | O | DC output to source of FET |
| ACS | O | AC output of FET source |

DIGITAL INPUTS

| | | |
|-----------|---|--|
| DCI | I | Input to transconductance control |
| SIN | I | Serial input for control registers |
| MS | I | Master/slave control for oscillator clock source |
| CC1 - CC4 | I | General information to be transferred. Read from serial output |

DIGITAL OUTPUTS

| | | |
|-----|---|---|
| SOT | O | Serial output. Output from status registers and CC0 - CC4 |
| OFH | O | Off-hook signal |

BARRIER INTERFACE

| | | |
|-----|-----|---|
| RBS | O | Receive bit stream output |
| TBS | I | Transmit bit stream input |
| SCK | I/O | Serial clock input/output at two times the bit rate |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation outside these rating limits may cause permanent damage to this device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 7V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature | 260°C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to VDD + 0.3V |

Note: All inputs and outputs are protected from static charge using built-in, industry standard protection devices and all outputs are short-circuit protected.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| VDD Supply Voltage | 4.5 to 5.5V or 3.0 to 3.6V |
| Clock Variation | Crystal or external clock +0.01% |
| TA, Operating Free-Air Temperature | 0 - 70°C |

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING

(TA = 0°C to +70°C, VDD = recommended range unless otherwise noted. All frequency measurements are made at nominal clock frequency $\pm 0\%$)

Data mode

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|-----|-----|----------|-------|
| QAM/DPSK Modulator | | | | | |
| Carrier Suppression | Measured at line | 35 | | | dB |
| Output Amplitude | TX scrambled marks | -11 | -10 | -9 | dBm |
| FSK Modulator/Demodulator | | | | | |
| Output Frequency Error | | 0.1 | | 0.1 | % |
| Transmit Level | Transmit Dotting Pattern | -11 | -10 | -9 | dBm |
| Transmit Output Distortion | All products | | | -45 | dB |
| Isochronous Distortion | | | | ± 10 | % |

Answer Tone Generator (2100 or 2225 Hz)

| | | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Output Amplitude | Default | -11 | -10 | -9 | dBm |
| Output Distortion | Distortion products in receive band | | | -45 | dB |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND TIMING (continued)

DTMF Generator

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|------------------|------------|----------------------|-----|------|-------|
| Freq. Accuracy | | -0.1 | | +0.1 | % |
| Output Amplitude | High Tone | Measured at TIP/RING | -6 | | dBm |
| Output Amplitude | Low Tone | | -8 | | dBm |
| Twist | | 1 | 2 | 3 | dBm |

Receiver Dynamic Range Call Progress Detector

| | | | | | |
|--------------|---|-----|----|-----|-----|
| Detect Level | 460 Hz test signal selected in United States operation mode | -34 | | | dBm |
| Reject Level | | -40 | | | dBm |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -30 dBm0 STEP | | 25 | | ms |
| Hold Time | -30 dBm0 to -70 dBm0 STEP | | 25 | | ms |
| Bandwidth | U.S. operation mode | 350 | | 640 | Hz |

Carrier Detect

Receive Gain = On for lower input level measurements

| | | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|-----|----|-----|-----|
| CD on Hysteresis | All modes | 2 | | | dBm |
| CD off Threshold | All modes | | | -43 | dBm |
| CD on Threshold | All modes | -48 | | | dBm |
| Delay Time | -70 dBm0 to -6 dBm0 | | 15 | | ms |
| Hold Time | -70 dBm0 to -6 dBm0 | | 15 | | ms |

Answer Tone Detectors

DPSK Mode

| | | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|
| Minimum Detect Level | | -48 | | -43 | dBm |
| Detect Time | 2100 or 2225 Hz | | 25 | | ms |
| Hold Time | | | 25 | | ms |

Bandwidth

| | | | | | |
|---------|--|-----|--|--|----|
| 2100 Hz | | ±1 | | | % |
| 2225 Hz | | ±10 | | | Hz |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

Pattern Detectors DPSK Mode

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| S1 Pattern | For signals from -9 to -40 dBm | | | | |
| Delay Time | | | 25 | | ms |
| Hold Time | | | 25 | | ms |
| Unscrambled Mark | For signals from -9 to -40 dBm | | | | |
| Delay Time | | | 25 | | ms |
| Hold Time | | | 25 | | ms |
| Telephone Line Impedence | Country Specific. See 73D2930 spec | | | | kΩ |
| Max Energy Xmit | 4 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -35 | dBm |
| | 10 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -55 | dBm |
| | 12 kHz, Guard Tones off | | | -65 | dBm |

Carrier Offset

| | | | | | |
|---------------|---------------------|----|--|--|----|
| Capture Range | Originate or Answer | ±7 | | | Hz |
|---------------|---------------------|----|--|--|----|

Recovered Clock

| | | | | | |
|---------------|---|-------|---|------|---|
| Capture Range | % of frequency (originate or answer) | -0.02 | 0 | 0.02 | % |
|---------------|---|-------|---|------|---|

Guard Tone Generator

| | | | | | |
|---|---------|------|----|------|----|
| Tone Accuracy | 550 Hz | | | | % |
| | 1800 Hz | | | | % |
| Tone Level (Below QAM/DPSK Output) | 550 Hz | -4.5 | -3 | -1.5 | dB |
| | 1800 Hz | -7.5 | -6 | -4.5 | dB |
| Harmonic Distortion (700 to 2900 Hz) | 550 Hz | | | -50 | dB |
| | 1800 Hz | | | -50 | dB |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

BILLING TONE SUPPRESSION (continued)

Low Pass Filter

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--------------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| DC Gain | | | 0 | | dB |
| Passband Ripple | | | | 0.3 | dB |
| Passband Cutoff | | 11 | | | kHz |
| Stopband Cutoff | | | 3.3 | | kHz |
| Stopband Rejection | | 30 | | | dB |

Feed-Foward High Pass Filter

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|----------|--|-----|---|-----|
| Gain | @ 11 kHz | | TBD | | dB |
| Passband Ripple | | | | 1 | dB |
| Passband Cutoff | | | 11 | | kHz |
| Stopband Cutoff | | | 4 | | kHz |
| Stopband Rejection | | | TBD | | dB |

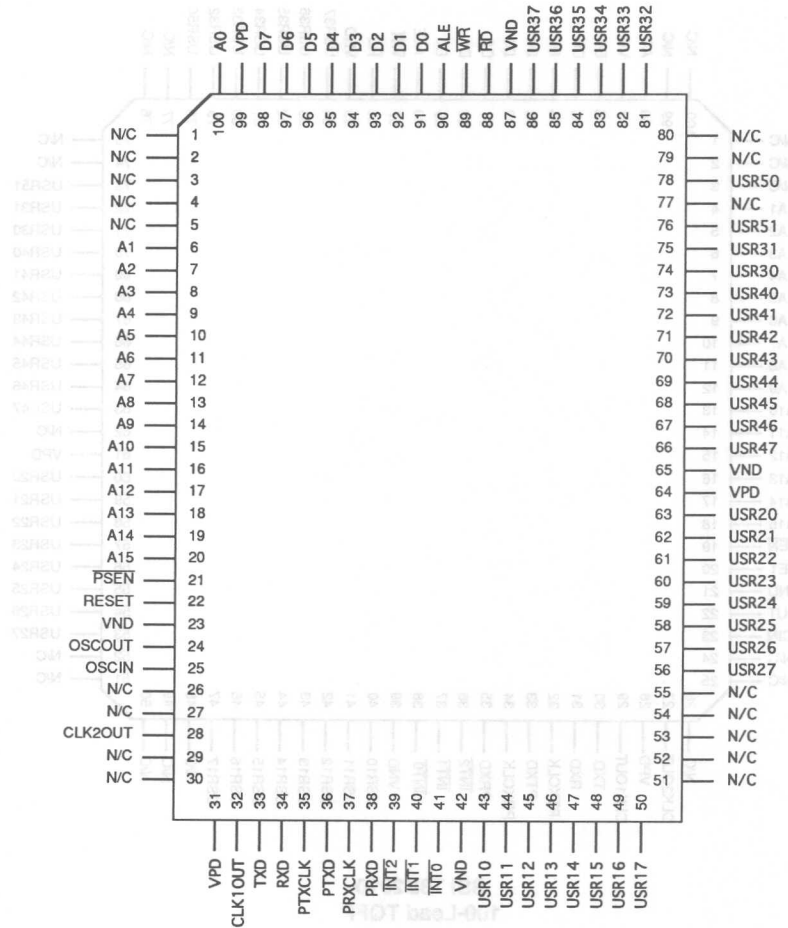
Passband Filter

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------|------|------|------|----|
| Magnitude Response | 14.4 kHz Sinx/x normalized | | | | |
| | 60 Hz | | -28 | | dB |
| | 150 Hz | | -10 | | dB |
| | 300 Hz | -0.5 | -0.3 | -0.1 | dB |
| | 1.8 kHz | -0.2 | 0 | +0.2 | dB |
| | 3.3 kHz | -0.5 | -0.3 | -0.1 | dB |
| | 4.3 kHz | | | TBD | dB |
| | 11 kHz | | | -40 | dB |
| | 17.7 kHz | | | -40 | dB |
| | 100 kHz | | | -40 | dB |

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)



SSI 73D2910
100-Lead QFP

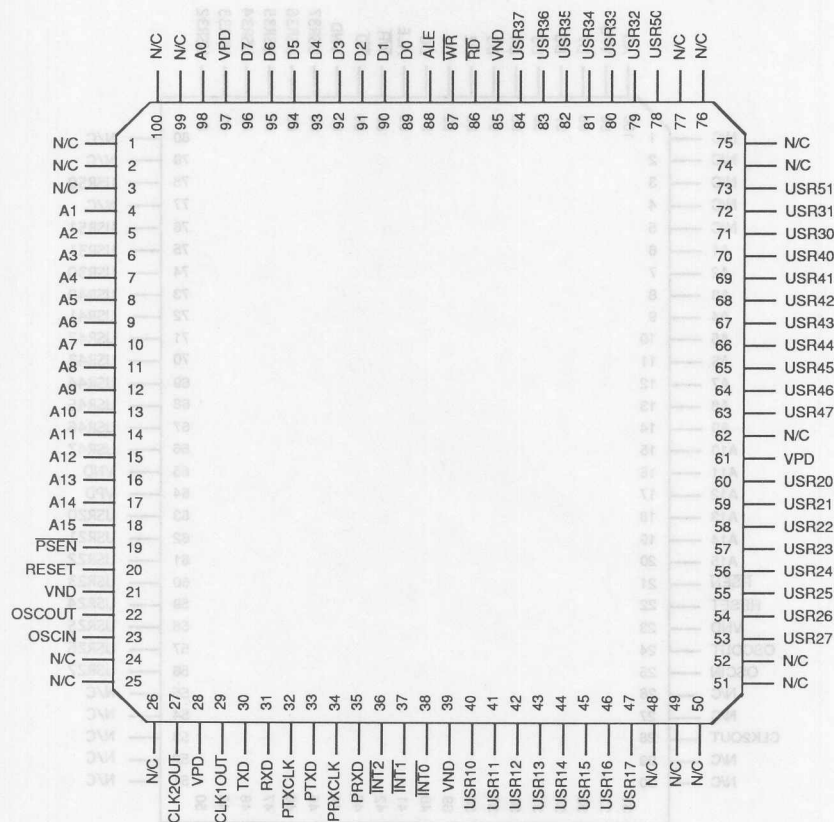
CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



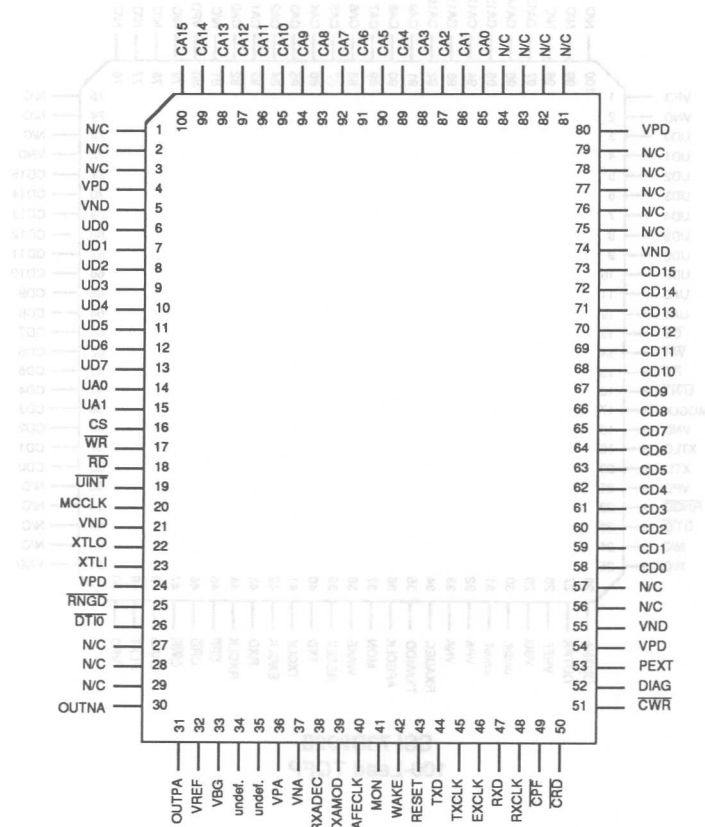
SSI 73D2950
100-Lead TQFP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)



SSI 73D2920
100-Lead QFP

CAUTION: This package is a static sensitive component.
Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

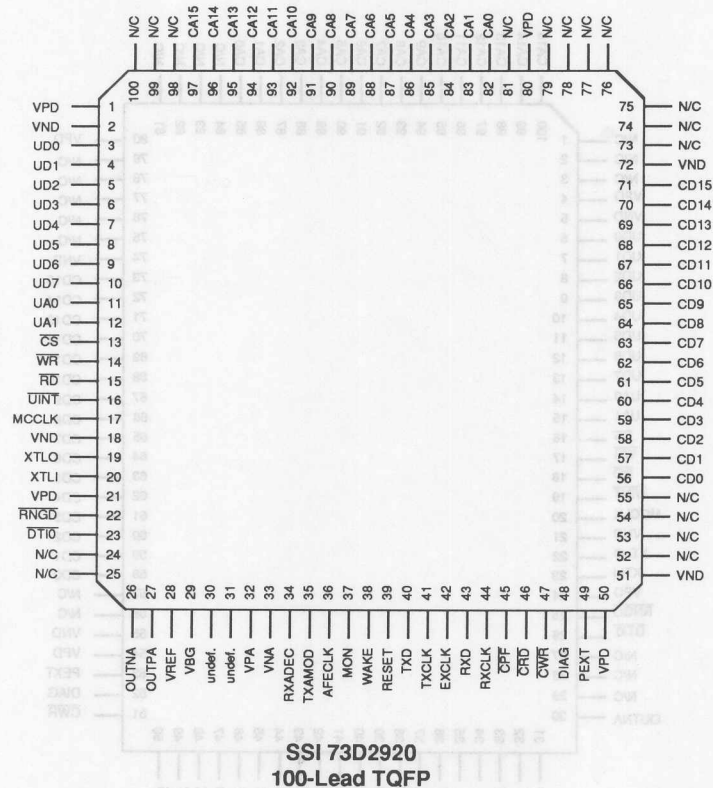
CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73D2950/2950T

V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



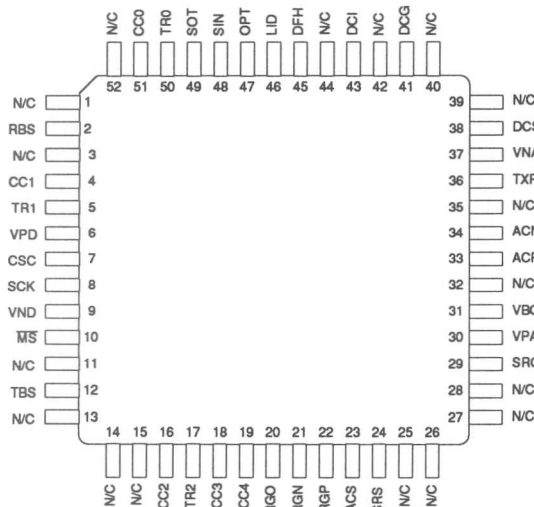
CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73D2950/2950T

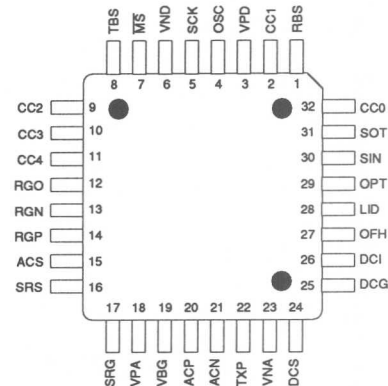
V.29/V.27ter/V.22bis/V.22/V.21/V.23, Bell 212A/103, MNP2-5,
V.42/V.42bis, Low Power FAX/Data Modem Chip Set

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



SSI 73D2930
52-Lead QFP



SSI 73D2930
32-Lead TQFP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

Advance Information: Indicates a product still in the design cycle, and any specifications are based on design goals only. Do not use for final design.

Copyright Notice:

the software contained within certain components of the SSI 73D2950 is copyright protected and may be used in conjunction with the SSI 73D2950 product as supplied by Silicon Systems. No license to reproduce this software is granted or implied. This material may not be reproduced in any form without the express written permission of Silicon Systems, Inc. © Copyright 1992, 1993. All rights reserved.

"Hayes™" and "SMARTMODEM 2400™" are registered trademarks of Hayes Microcomputer Products inc.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 731-7110, FAX (714) 573-6914

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73M550 is a Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) with receive and transmit FIFO buffers. The 16-byte FIFO registers are active during the FIFO mode, allowing the UART to reduce CPU overhead and accommodate Direct Memory Access (DMA) transfers. This mode is supported by interrupt functions and selectable interrupt trigger levels in both the RCVR and TXMR FIFO.

The 73M550 is functionally identical to the SSI 73M450L in the CHARACTER mode. Pins 24 (CSOUT) and 29 (NC) of the 73M450L have been replaced by TXRDY and RXRDY, respectively, on the 73M550. The chip is automatically put into the CHARACTER mode upon power-up, and subsequent mode changes are accomplished via software control.

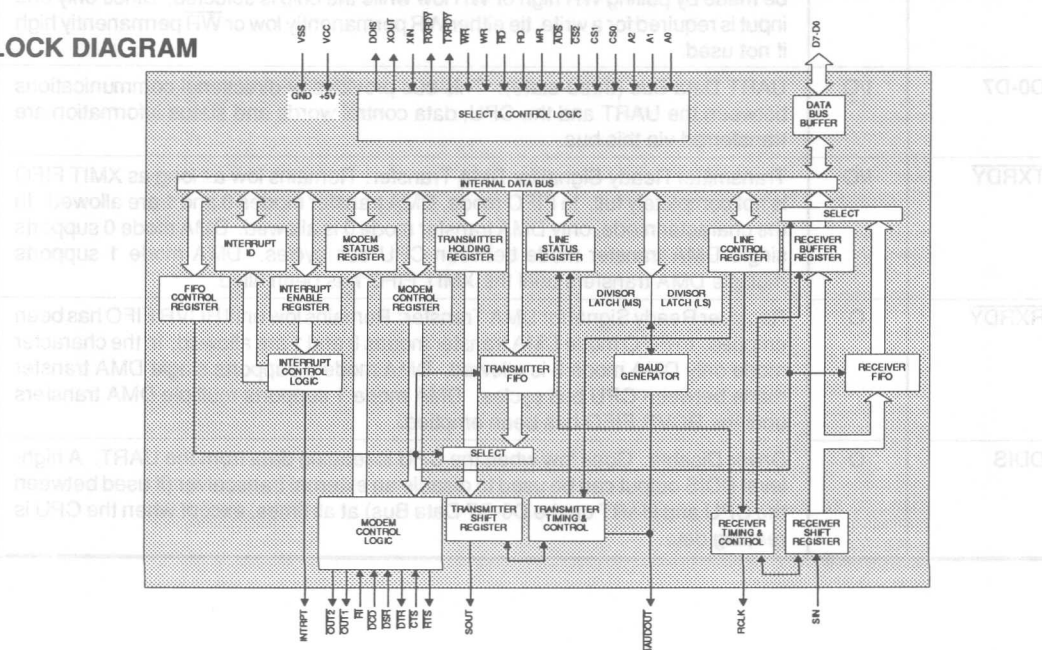
The 73M1550 and 73M2550 are 28-pin versions of the 73M550. The difference between these versions is that 73M2550 adds a μ PRST pin at the expense of the XOUT pin. See Figure 17 on page 32 for detail. These products require a single 5V supply.

FEATURES

- 16 bytes of receive and transmit FIFO buffering available in FIFO mode reduces CPU overhead
- Supports DMA transfers with TXRDY and RXRDY pins
- High-speed timing for zero wait-state operation is compatible with PCMCIA interface
- Oscillator disable allows a static low-power state
- Bit-programmable high impedance state of INTRPT pin
- High drive current for directly driving large loads
- Full double buffering
- Independent control transmit, receive, line status and data set interrupts
- Contains modem control functions including CTS, RTS, DSR, DTR, RI and DCD
- Available in 40-pin DIP, 44-and 28-pin PLCC, 48-lead TQFP (73M550) and 52-lead QFP (73M2550) packages
- CMOS design for low-power operation

4

BLOCK DIAGRAM



SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

PIN DESCRIPTION

BUS INTERFACE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------------|------|--|
| $\overline{\text{ADS}}$ | I | Address Strobe: The rising edge of this signal is used for latching the Register Address and Chip Select inputs, thus facilitating interface to a multiplexed Address/Data bus. $\overline{\text{ADS}}$ is also required when register address signals (A2, A1, A0) are not stable for the duration of the read or write cycle. If not required, $\overline{\text{ADS}}$ should be tied permanently low. |
| CS0, CS1, $\overline{\text{CS2}}$ | I | Chip Select: The UART is selected when CS0 and CS1 are high and $\overline{\text{CS2}}$ is low. Chip selection is complete when the decoded chip select signal is latched with the rising edge of an active (low) $\overline{\text{ADS}}$ input. This enables communication between the UART and the CPU. If $\overline{\text{ADS}}$ is permanently low, then chip select should be stabilized for the duration of the tCSW parameter. |
| A0-A2 | I | Register Select Address: These pins determine which of the UART registers is being selected during a read or write on the UART Data Bus. The contents of the DLAB bit in the UART's Line Control Register (see Table 1) also controls which register is referenced. |
| RD, $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | I | Read Strobe: A request to read status information or data from a selected register may be made by pulling RD high or $\overline{\text{RD}}$ low while the chip is selected. Since only one input is required for a read, tie either RD permanently low or $\overline{\text{RD}}$ permanently high if not used. |
| WR, $\overline{\text{WR}}$ | I | Write Strobe: A request to write control words or data into a selected register may be made by pulling WR high or $\overline{\text{WR}}$ low while the chip is selected. Since only one input is required for a write, tie either WR permanently low or $\overline{\text{WR}}$ permanently high if not used. |
| D0-D7 | I/O | UART Data Bus (three-state): This bus provides bi-directional communications between the UART and the CPU; data control words and status information are transferred via this bus. |
| $\overline{\text{TXRDY}}$ | I/O | Transmitter Ready Signal for DMA Transfer: Remains low as long as XMIT FIFO is not completely full. In FIFO mode, DMA transfer modes 0 and 1 are allowed. In the character mode, only DMA transfer mode 0 is allowed. DMA mode 0 supports single DMA transfer mode between CPU bus cycles. DMA mode 1 supports multiple DMA transfers until the XMIT FIFO has been filled. |
| $\overline{\text{RXRDY}}$ | O | Receiver Ready Signal for DMA Transfer: Remains low until RCVR FIFO has been emptied. In FIFO mode DMA transfer modes 0 and 1 are allowed. In the character mode only DMA mode 0 is allowed. DMA mode 0 supports single DMA transfer made between CPU bus cycles. DMA mode 1 supports multiple DMA transfers until the RCVR FIFO has been emptied. |
| DDIS | O | Driver Disable: Goes low when the CPU is reading data from the UART. A high-level DDIS output can be used to disable an external transceiver (if used between the CPU and UART on the D0-D7 Data Bus) at all times, except when the CPU is reading data. |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

BUS INTERFACE (Continued)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--------|---|
| INTRPT | O | Interrupt: Goes high whenever any one of the following interrupt types has an active high condition and is enabled via the IER: Receiver Error Flag, Received Data Available; Timeout (FIFO mode only); Transmitter Holding Register Empty and Modem Status. The INTRPT signal is reset low upon the appropriate interrupt service or a Master Reset operation. |
| DATA I/O | | |
| SIN | I | Serial Input: Input for serial data from the communications link (peripheral device, modem or data set). |
| SOUT | O | Serial Output: Output for serial data to the communications link (peripheral device, modem or data set). This signal is set high upon a Master Reset. |
| MODEM CONTROL | | |
| $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ | O | Request To Send: This output is programmed by $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ bit (D1) of the Modem Control Register and represents the compliment of that bit. It is used in modem handshaking to signify that the UART has data to transmit. This signal is set high upon Master Reset or during loop mode operation. |
| $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ | I | Clear To Send: A modem status input whose condition corresponds to the complement of the CTS bit (D4) of the Modem Status Register. When $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ is low, it indicates that communications have been established and that data may be transmitted. |
| $\overline{\text{DTR}}$ | O | Data Terminal Ready: This output is programmed by DTR bit (D0) of the Modem Control Register, and represents the compliment of that bit. It is used in modem handshaking to signify that the UART is available to communicate. This signal is set high upon Master Reset or during loop mode operation. |
| $\overline{\text{DSR}}$ | I | Data Set Ready: A modem status input whose condition is complimented and reflected in the DSR bit (D5) of the Modem Status Register. When $\overline{\text{DSR}}$ is low, it indicates that the modem is ready to establish communications. |
| $\overline{\text{DCD}}$ | I | Data Carrier Detect: A modem status input whose condition is complemented and reflected in the DCD bit (D7) of the Modem Status Register. When $\overline{\text{DCD}}$ is low, it indicates that the modem is receiving a carrier. |
| $\overline{\text{RI}}$ | I | Ring Indicator: A modem status input whose condition is complimented and reflected in the RI bit (D6) of the Modem Status Register. When $\overline{\text{RI}}$ is low, it indicates that a telephone ringing signal is being received. |
| $\overline{\text{OUT1}}$ $\overline{\text{OUT2}}$ | O O | Output 1, 2: User designated outputs that can be set to an active low by setting bit 2 ($\overline{\text{OUT1}}$) or bit 3 ($\overline{\text{OUT2}}$) of the Modem Control Register high. These output signals are set high upon Master Reset or during loop mode operation. |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

GENERAL & CLOCKS

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|------|--|
| VCC | I | +5V Supply, $\pm 10\%$: Bypass with 0.1 μF capacitor to VSS. |
| VSS | I | System Ground |
| MR | I | Master Reset: When high, this input clears all UART control logic and registers, except for the Receiver Buffer, Transmitter Holding and Divisor Latches; also, the state of output signals SOUT, INTRPT, OUT1, OUT2, RTS and DTR are affected by an active MR input. This input is buffered with a TTL-compatible Schmitt Trigger. See Table 2. |
| XIN, XOUT | I/O | External System Clock I/O: These two pins connect the main timing reference (crystal or signal clock) to the UART. Additionally, XIN may be driven by an external clock source. |
| RCLK | I | Receiver Clock: This input is the 16X baud rate clock for the receiver section of the chip. |
| BAUDOUT | O | Baud Generator Output: 16X clock signal for the transmitter section of the UART. The clock is equal to the main reference oscillator frequency divided by the specified divisor in the Baud Generator Divisor Latches. May also be used for the receiver section by tying this output to the RCLK input of the chip. |
| N/C | - | No Connection: These pins have no internal connection and may be left floating. |

28-PIN VERSION, SPECIAL PINS

| | | |
|------------------|-----|---|
| INTRPT | O | Interrupt: In the 28-pin versions of this chip, the INTRPT pin can be forced into a high impedance state by resetting to 0 the OUT2 bit (D3) of the Modem Control Register. INTRPT pin operation is enabled by setting the OUT2 bit to 1. |
| XIN, XOUT | I/O | External System Clock: The XOUT pin is not available on the 73M2550 and therefore must be driven by an external clock connected to the XIN pin. |
| μPRST | O | Microprocessor Reset: This output signal is used to provide a hardware reset to a local controller. This pin becomes active high when the MR pin is pulled high or the OUT1 bit (D2) of the Modem Control Register is set to 1. The μPRST function is available only on the 73M2550. |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

TABLE 1: Control Register Address Table

| DLAB | A2 | A1 | A0 | REGISTER |
|------|----|----|----|--|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Receiver Buffer (read), Transmitter Holding Register (write) |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | Interrupt Enable |
| X | 0 | 1 | 0 | Interrupt Identification (read only) |
| X | 0 | 1 | 0 | FIFO Control (write) |
| X | 0 | 1 | 1 | Line Control |
| X | 1 | 0 | 0 | Modem Control |
| X | 1 | 0 | 1 | Line Status |
| X | 1 | 1 | 0 | Modem Status |
| X | 1 | 1 | 1 | Scratch |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Divisor Latch (least significant byte) |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | Divisor Latch (most significant byte) |

TABLE 2: UART Reset Functions

| REGISTER/SIGNAL | RESET CONTROL | RESET STATE |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|--|
| Interrupt Enable Register | Master Reset | All bits low (0-3 & 5 forced and 4, 6 & 7 permanent) |
| Interrupt Identification Register | Master Reset | Bit 0 is high; bits 1, 2, 3, 6 & 7 are low; bits 4 & 5 are permanently low |
| Line Control Register | Master Reset | All bits low |
| Modem Control Register | Master Reset | All bits low (bits 5, 6 & 7 permanent) |
| Line Status Register | Master Reset | All bits low, except bits 5 & 6 are high |
| Modem Status Register | Master Reset | Bits 0-3 are low; bits 4-7 = input signal |
| SOUT | Master Reset | High |
| INTRPT (RCVR Errs) | Read LSR/MR | Low |
| INTRPT (RCVR Data Ready) | Read RBR/MR | Low |
| INTRPT (THRE) | Read IIR/Write THR/MR | Low |
| INTRPT (Modem Status Changes) | Read MSR/MR | Low |
| OUT2 | Master Reset | High |
| RTS | Master Reset | High |
| DTR | Master Reset | High |
| OUT1 | Master Reset | High |
| FIFO Control Register | Master Reset | All bits low |
| RCVR FIFO | MR/FCR1 and FCR0/ΔFCR0 | All bits low |
| XMIT FIFO | MR/FCR2 and FCR0/ΔFCR0 | All bits low |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

CONTROL REGISTER OVERVIEW

| REGISTER | | REGISTER ADDRESS (A2-A0) & DLAB | DATA BIT NUMBER | | | | | | | |
|--|-----|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| | | | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| RECEIVER BUFFER REGISTER (READ ONLY) | RBR | 000 DLAB=0 | BIT 7 (MSB) | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 (LSB) |
| TRANSMIT HOLDING REGISTER (WRITE ONLY) | THR | 000 DLAB=0 | BIT 7 (MSB) | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 (LSB) |
| INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER | IER | 001 DLAB=0 | 0 | 0 | ENABLE SSI MODE (NOTE 1) | 0 | ENABLE MODEM STATUS INTERRUPT | ENABLE REC. LINE STATUS INTERRUPT | ENABLE THR EMPTY INTERRUPT | ENABLE REC. DATA AVAILABLE INTERRUPT |
| INTERRUPT ID REGISTER (READ ONLY) | IIR | 010 DLAB=X | FIFOs ENABLED (NOTE 1) | FIFOs ENABLED (NOTE 1) | SSI MODE RXRDY FOR DMA | SSI MODE TXRDY FOR DMA | INTERRUPT ID BIT 2 (NOTE 1) | INTERRUPT ID BIT 1 | INTERRUPT ID BIT 0 | *0* IF INTERRUPT PENDING |
| FIFO CONTROL REGISTER (WRITE ONLY) | FCR | 010 DLAB=X | RCVR TRIGGER (MSB) | RCVR TRIGGER (LSB) | SSI MODE XMIT TRIGGER (MSB) | SSI MODE XMIT TRIGGER (LSB) | DMA MODE SELECT | XMIT FIFO RESET | RCVR FIFO RESET | FIFO ENABLE |
| LINE CONTROL REGISTER | LCR | 011 DLAB=X | DIVISOR LATCH ACCESS (DLAB) | SET BREAK | STICK PARITY | EVEN PARITY SELECT (EPS) | PARITY ENABLE (PEN) | NUMBER OF STOP BITS (STB) | WORD LENGTH SELECT 1 (WLS1) | WORD LENGTH SELECT 0 (WLS0) |
| MODEM CONTROL REGISTER | MCR | 100 DLAB=X | SSI MODE OSC OFF | 0 | 0 | LOOP | OUT 2 | OUT 1 | REQUEST TO SEND (RTS) | DATA TERMINAL READY (DTR) |
| LINE STATUS REGISTER | LSR | 101 DLAB=X | ERROR IN RCVR FIFO (NOTE 1) | TRANSMITTER EMPTY (TEMT) | TRANSMIT HOLDING REGISTER EMPTY (THRE) | BREAK INTERRUPT (BI) | FRAMING ERROR (FE) | PARITY ERROR (PE) | OVERRUN ERROR (OE) | DATA READY (DR) |
| MODEM STATUS REGISTER (READ ONLY) | MSR | 110 DLAB=X | DATA CARRIER DETECT (DCD) | RING INDICATOR (RI) | DATA SET READY (DSR) | CLEAR TO SEND (CTS) | DELTA DATA CARR. DETECT (DDCD) | TRAILING EDGE RING INDICATOR (TERI) | DELTA DATA SET READY (DDSR) | DELTA CLEAR TO SEND (DCTS) |
| SCRATCH REGISTER | SCR | 111 DLAB=X | BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
| DIVISOR LATCH (MS) | DLL | 000 DLAB=1 | BIT 7 | BIT 6 | BIT 5 | BIT 4 | BIT 3 | BIT 2 | BIT 1 | BIT 0 |
| DIVISOR LATCH (MS) | DLM | 001 DLAB=1 | BIT 15 | BIT 14 | BIT 13 | BIT 12 | BIT 11 | BIT 10 | BIT 9 | BIT 8 |

NOTE 1: THESE BITS ARE RESET TO 0 IN THE 73M450 MODE (Character Mode)

REGISTER BIT DESCRIPTIONS

RECEIVER BUFFER REGISTER (RBR) (READ ONLY)

UART ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 000, DLAB = 0

This read only register contains the parallel received data with start, stop, and parity bits (if any) removed. The high order bits for less than 8 data bits/character will be set to 0.

TRANSMIT HOLDING REGISTER (THR) (WRITE ONLY)

UART ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 000, DLAB = 0

This write only register contains the parallel data to be transmitted. The data is sent LSB first with start, stop, and parity bits (if any) added to the serial bit stream as the data is transferred.

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER (IER)

UART ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 001, DLAB = 0

This 8-bit register enables the five types of interrupts of the UART to separately activate the chip Interrupt (INTRPT) output signal. It is possible to totally disable the interrupt system by resetting bits 0 through 3 of the Interrupt Enable Register. Similarly, by setting the appropriate bits of this register to a logic 1, selected interrupts can be enabled. Disabling the interrupt system inhibits the Interrupt Identification Register and the active (high) INTRPT output from the chip. All other system functions operate in their normal manner, including the setting of the Line Status and Modem Status Registers.

The chip's SSI mode can be activated by setting bit D5. Once in the SSI mode, the chip can be placed in a power shut-down state by setting bit D7 in the Modem Control Register.

| BIT | NAME | COND | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|------------------------------------|------|---|
| D0 | Received Data | 1 | When set to logic 1 this bit enables the Received Data Available Interrupt, and timeout interrupts in FIFO mode. |
| D1 | Transmitter Holding Register Empty | 1 | When set to logic 1 this bit enables the Transmitter Holding Register Empty Interrupt. |
| D2 | Receiver Line Status Interrupt | 1 | When set to logic 1 this bit enables the Receiver Line Status Interrupt. |
| D3 | Modem Status | 1 | When set to logic 1 this bit enables the Modem Status Interrupt. |
| D4 | Not Used | 0 | This bit are is always logic 0. |
| D5 | SSI Mode | 1 | When set to logic 1, this bit enables the SSI Mode. In the SSI Mode the oscillator can be turned off via bit D7 in the Modem Control Register, and the XMIT THRE interrupt trigger set via bits D4 & D5 of the FIFO Control Register. |
| D6-D7 | Not used | 0 | These two bits are always logic 0. |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

INTERRUPT ID REGISTER (IIR) (READ ONLY)

UART ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 010

The IIR register gives prioritized information as to the status of interrupt conditions and also allows for DMA transfer operations in a polled FIFO manner under the SSI mode. When accessed, the IIR freezes the highest priority interrupt pending and no other interrupts are acknowledged until the particular interrupt is serviced by the CPU. The order of interrupt priorities is shown in the table below.

| BIT | NAME | COND | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|---------------------------|-------------------|---|
| D0 | Interrupt Pending | 0 | This bit can be used in either a prioritized interrupt or polled environment to indicate whether an interrupt is pending. When bit 0 is a logic 0, an interrupt is pending and the IIR contents may be used as a pointer to the appropriate interrupt service routine. |
| | | 1 | When bit 0 is a logic 1, no interrupt is pending. |
| D1, D2, D3 | Interrupt ID bits 0, 1, 2 | See table Page 10 | These three bits of the IIR are used to identify the highest priority interrupt pending as indicated in the following table. Bit D3 is reset to 0 when FIFO mode is disabled. |
| D4 | SSI mode TXRDY for DMA | 1 | This bit function is available only when SSI mode is enabled (bit D5 in IER is set). This bit is the compliment of TXRDY pin and is used to support DMA transfers in a polled environment. A logic 1 indicates transmitter is less than full and is ready for DMA transfer. |
| | | 0 | A logic 0 indicates transmitter is full and not ready for DMA transfer. Also when SSI mode is disabled this bit will be reset to 0. |
| D5 | SSI mode RXRDY for DMA | 1 | This bit function is available only when SSI mode is enabled (bit D5 in IER is set). This bit is the compliment of RXRDY pin and is used to support DMA transfers in a polled environment. A logic 1 indicates receiver is not empty and is ready for DMA transfer. |
| | | 0 | A logic 0 indicates receiver is empty and not ready for DMA transfer. Also when SSI mode is disabled this bit will be reset to 0. |
| D6, D7 | FIFOs enabled | 1 | These two bits are set to logic 1 when bit D0 in FCR is set to 1 (FIFO mode enabled). |
| | | 0 | These two bits are reset to logic 0 when bit D0 in FCR is reset to 0 (FIFO mode disabled). |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

INTERRUPT PRIORITY TABLE

| D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | PRIORITY | TYPE | SOURCE | RESET |
|----|----|----|----|----------|---------------------------------|---|--|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | — | None | None | N/A |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | Highest | Receiver Line Status | Overrun Error, Parity Error, Framing Error or Break Interrupt | Reading the Line Status Register |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | Second | Receive Data Available | Receive Data Available or RCVR FIFO trigger level reached | Reading the Receiver Buffer Register or the RCVR FIFO drops below trigger level |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | Second | Character Timeout Indicator | No characters have been removed from or input to the RCVR FIFO during the last 4 character times and there is at least 1 character in it during this time | Reading the Receiver Buffer Register |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | Third | Transmit Holding Register Empty | Transmit Holding Register Empty or below XMIT FIFO trigger level | Reading IIR Register (if source of interrupt) or Writing to Transmit Holding Register or XMIT FIFO trigger level reached |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Fourth | Modem Status | Clear to Send or Data Set Ready or Ring Indicator or Data Carrier Detect | Reading the Modem Status Register |

4

FIFO CONTROL REGISTER (FCR) (WRITE ONLY)

UART ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 010

This is a write only register at the same location as the IIR read only Register. This register is used to enable the FIFOs, clear the FIFOs, set the XMIT and RCVR FIFO trigger level, and select the type of DMA signalling.

| BIT | NAME | COND | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|-----------------|------|--|
| D0 | FIFO Enable | 1 | Setting this bit to logic 1 enables both XMIT and RCVR FIFOs. This bit must be written as 1 when other FCR bits are written to or they will not be programmed. |
| | | 0 | Resetting this bit to logic 0 disables the FIFO mode (enables the 73M450 mode) and clears data in both FIFOs when changing from FIFO mode to 73M450 mode and vice versa, data is automatically cleared from FIFOs. |
| D1 | RCVR FIFO Reset | 1 | Setting this bit to logic 1 clears all data in the RCVR FIFO and resets its counter logic to 0. The shift register is not cleared. The logic 1 written into this bit is self clearing. |
| D2 | XMIT FIFO Reset | 1 | Setting this bit to logic 1 clears all data in the XMIT FIFO and resets its counter logic to 0. The shift register is not cleared. The logic 1 written into this bit is self clearing. |

SSI 73M550
SSI 73M1550/2550
UART with FIFOs

FIFO CONTROL REGISTER (FCR) (WRITE ONLY) (Continued)

| BIT | NAME | COND | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|----------------------------------|------|---|
| D3 | DMA Mode Select | 1 | Setting this bit to logic 1 will enable DMA mode 1. In this mode pins TXRDY and RXRDY and bits D4 and D5 in IIR, support multiple DMA transfers. |
| | | 0 | Resetting this bit to logic 0 will enable DMA mode 0. In this mode, pins TXRDY and RXRDY and bits D4 and D5 in IIR support single DMA transfers. |
| D5, D4 | SSI Mode XMIT Trigger (MSB, LSB) | 0/1 | These two bits are active in the SSI mode only. The value written into D5 and D4 determine the XMIT FIFO trigger level as described in table below. The THRE interrupt will occur if the XMIT FIFO is below the trigger level and will reset when the XMIT FIFO is filled to trigger level. |
| D7, D6 | RCVR Trigger (MSB, LSB) | 0/1 | The value written into D7 and D6 determining the RCVR FIFO trigger level as described in table below. The received data available interrupt will occur if the RCVR FIFO is filled to or above the trigger level and will reset when the RCVR FIFO drops below the trigger level. |

| D5 | D4 | XMIT FIFO Trigger Level (Bytes) |
|----|----|---------------------------------|
| 0 | 0 | 01 |
| 0 | 1 | 04 |
| 1 | 0 | 08 |
| 1 | 1 | 14 |

| D7 | D6 | RCVR FIFO Trigger Level (Bytes) |
|----|----|---------------------------------|
| 0 | 0 | 01 |
| 0 | 1 | 04 |
| 1 | 0 | 08 |
| 1 | 1 | 14 |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

LINE CONTROL REGISTER (LCR)

UART ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 011

The user specifies the format of the asynchronous data communications exchange via the Line Control Register. In addition to controlling the format the user may retrieve the contents of the Line Control Register for inspection. This feature simplifies system programming and eliminates the need for separate storage in system memory of the line characteristics.

| BIT | NAME | COND | | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|-----------------------------|--------|----|---|
| D0/D1 | Word Length Select 0 (WLS0) | | | Bits D0 and D1 select the number of data bits per character as shown: |
| | Word Length Select 1 (WLS1) | D1 | D0 | Word Length |
| | | 0 | 0 | 5 bits |
| | | 0 | 1 | 6 bits |
| | | 1 | 0 | 7 bits |
| | | 1 | 1 | 8 bits |
| D2 | Number of Stop Bits (STB) | 0 or 1 | | This bit specifies the number of stop bits in each transmitted character. If bit D2 is a logic 0, one stop bit is generated in the transmitted data. If bit D2 is a logic 1 when a 5-bit word length is selected via bits D0 and D1, one-and-a-half stop bits are generated. If bit D2 is a logic 1 when either a 6, 7, or 8-bit word length is selected, two stop bits are generated. The receiver checks the first stop bit only, regardless of the number of stop bits selected. |
| D3 | Parity Enable (PEN) | 1 | | This is the Parity Enable (PEN) bit. When set to a logic 1, a parity bit is generated (transmit data) or checked (receive data) between the last data word bit and stop bit of the serial data. (The parity bit is used to produce an even or odd number of 1's when the data word bits and the parity bit are summed). |
| D4 | Even Parity Select (EPS) | 1 or 0 | | This is the Even Parity Select (EPS) bit. When bit D3 is a logic 1 and bit D4 is a logic 0, an odd number of logic 1's is transmitted or checked in the data word bits and parity bit. When bit D3 is a logic 1 and bit D4 is a logic 1 an even number of logic 1's is transmitted or checked. |
| D5 | Stick Parity | 1 or 0 | | This is the Stick Parity bit. When bit D3 is a logic 1 and bit D5 is a logic 1 the parity bit is transmitted and checked by the receiver as a logic 0 if bit D4 is a logic 1 or as a logic 1 if bit D4 is a logic 0. |
| | | D5 | D4 | Parity |
| | | 0 | 0 | ODD Parity |
| | | 0 | 1 | EVEN Parity |
| | | 1 | 0 | MARK Parity |
| | | 1 | 1 | SPACE Parity |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

LINE CONTROL REGISTER (LCR) (Continued)

| BIT | NAME | COND | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|---------------------------------|------|---|
| D6 | Set Break | 1 | This is the Break Control bit. It causes a break condition to be sent to the receiving UART. When set to a logic 1 the serial out (SOUT) is forced to a logic 0 state. The break is disabled by setting bit D6 to a logic 0. This bit acts only on SOUT and has no effect on the transmitter logic. See note below. |
| D7 | Divisor Latch Access Bit (DLAB) | 1 | The Divisor Latch Access Bit (DLAB) must be set high (logic 1) to access the Divisor Latches of the baud generator during a Read or Write operation. It must be set low (logic 0) to access the Receiver Buffer, the Transmitter Holding Register, or the Interrupt Enable Register. |

NOTE: This feature enables the CPU to alert a terminal in a computer communications system. If the following sequence is followed, no erroneous or extraneous characters will be transmitted because of the break.

1. Load an all 0's pad character in response to THRE.
2. Set break in response to the next THRE.
3. Wait for the Transmitter to be idle. (TEMT = 1), and clear break when normal transmission has to be restored.

During the break, the Transmitter can be used as a character timer to accurately establish the break duration.

MODEM CONTROL REGISTER (MCR)

UART ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 100

The Modem Control Register controls the interface with the modem, data set or peripheral device.

| BIT | NAME | COND | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|------|------|---|
| D0 | DTR | 0/1 | This bit controls the Data Terminal Ready ($\overline{\text{DTR}}$) output. When bit 0 is set to a logic 1 the $\overline{\text{DTR}}$ output is forced to a logic 0. When bit 0 is reset to a logic 0 the $\overline{\text{DTR}}$ output is forced to a logic 1. |
| D1 | RTS | 0/1 | This bit controls the Request to Send ($\overline{\text{RTS}}$) output. When bit 1 is set to a logic 1 the $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ output is forced to a logic 0. When bit 1 is reset to a logic 0 the $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ output is forced to a logic 1. |
| D2 | OUT1 | 0/1 | This bit controls the Output 1 ($\overline{\text{OUT1}}$) signal, an auxiliary user-designated output. When bit D2 is set to a logic 1, $\overline{\text{OUT1}}$ is forced to a logic 0. When bit D2 is reset to a logic 0, $\overline{\text{OUT1}}$ is forced to a logic 1. On the SSI 73M2550 only, this bit controls the μPRST output. When bit D2 is set to a logic 1, the μPRST output is forced to a logic 1. When bit D2 is reset to logic 0, μPRST is forced to logic 0. |
| D3 | OUT2 | 0/1 | This bit controls the Output 2 ($\overline{\text{OUT2}}$) signal, an auxiliary user-designated output. When bit D3 is set to a logic 1, $\overline{\text{OUT2}}$ forced to a logic 0. When bit D3 is reset to a logic 0, $\overline{\text{OUT2}}$ output is forced to a logic 1. On the 28-pin versions, this bit controls the INTRPT pin. When bit D3 is set to a logic 1, the INTRPT output is enabled. When bit D3 is reset to logic 0, the INTRPT pin is forced into a high impedance state. |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

MODEM CONTROL REGISTER (MCR) (Continued)

| BIT | NAME | COND | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|-------------------|------|---|
| D4 | LOOP | 0/1 | This bit provides a local loopback feature for diagnostic testing of the UART. When bit 4 is set to logic 1, the following occurs: the transmitter Serial Output (SOUT) is set to the logic 1 state; the receiver Serial Input (SIN) is disconnected; the output of the Transmitter Shift Register is "looped back" into the Receiver Shift Register input; the four Modem Control inputs (CTS, DSR, DCD and RI) are disconnected; the four Modem Control outputs (DTR, RTS, OUT1 and OUT2) are internally connected to the four Modem Control inputs, and the Modem Control output pins are forced to their inactive state (high). In the diagnostic mode, data that is transmitted is immediately received. This feature allows the processor to verify the transmit and received-data paths of the UART. In the diagnostic mode, the receiver and transmitter interrupts are fully operational. The Modem Control Interrupts are also operational, but the interrupts' sources are now the lower four bits of the Modem Control Register instead of the four Modem Control inputs. The interrupts are still controlled by the Interrupt Enable Register. |
| D5-D6 | | 0 | These bits are permanently set to logic 0. |
| D7 | SSi Mode Osc. off | 1 | This bit is active in the SSi Mode only. When D7 is set the UART oscillator is turned off placing the UART in a power shutdown state. All UART memory is retained during power shutdown. |
| | | 0 | Resetting this bit enable the oscillator and powers up the UART. |

4

LINE STATUS REGISTER (LSR)

UART ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 101

This register provides status information to the CPU concerning the data transfer. Bits D1-D4 are the error conditions that produce a Receiver Line Status interrupt whenever any of the corresponding conditions are detected. The Line Status Register is intended for read operation only. Writing to this register is not recommended as this operation is used for factory testing.

| BIT | NAME | COND | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|------|------|---|
| D0 | DR | 0/1 | The Data Ready (DR) bit is set to a 1 whenever a complete incoming character has been received and transferred into the Receiver Buffer Register. DR is reset to 0 by reading all data in the Receiver Buffer Register FIFO. |
| D1 | OE | 0/1 | The Overrun Error (OE) bit is set when data in the Receiver Buffer Register was not read by the CPU before the next character was transferred into the Receiver Buffer Register, thereby destroying the previous character. OE is reset to 0 whenever the CPU reads the contents of the Line Status Register. In FIFO mode if data continues to fill the FIFO beyond the trigger level an overrun error will occur only after the FIFO is full and the next character has been completely received in |

(Continued)

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

LINE STATUS REGISTER (LSR) (Continued)

| BIT | NAME | COND | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--------------------|------|--|
| D1 | OE | 0/1 | the shift register. OE is indicated to the CPU as soon as it occurs. The character in the shift register is overwritten but it is not transferred to the FIFO. |
| D2 | PE | 0/1 | The Parity Error (PE) bit is set when the received character did not have the correct parity. PE is reset to 0 whenever the CPU reads the Line Status Register. In FIFO mode this error is revealed to the CPU when its associated character is at the top of the FIFO. |
| D3 | FE | 1 | The Framing Error (FE) bit indicates that the received character did not have a valid stop bit. FE is reset to 0 whenever the CPU reads the contents of the Line Status Register. In the FIFO mode this error is revealed to the CPU when its associated character is at the top of the FIFO. The UART will try to resynchronize after a framing error. To do this it assumes that the framing error was due to the next start bit, so it samples the following start bit twice and then takes in the data that follows. |
| D4 | BI | 1 | The Break Interrupt (BI) bit is set when a break has been received. A break occurs whenever the received data is held to 0 for a full data word (start + data + stop). BI is reset to 0 whenever the CPU reads the Line Status Register. In the FIFO mode this error is revealed to the CPU when its associated character is at the top of the FIFO. When break occurs only one zero character is loaded into the FIFO. The next character transfer is enabled after SIN goes to the marking (high) state and receives the next valid start bit. |
| D5 | THRE | 1 | The Transmit Holding Register Empty (THRE) is set to a logic 1 when a character is transferred from the Transmit Holding Register into the Transmit Shift Register, indicating that the UART is ready to accept a new character for transmission. In addition this bit causes the UART to issue an interrupt to the CPU when the THRE Interrupt enable is set high. THRE is reset to 0 when the CPU loads a character into the Transmit Holding Register. In the FIFO mode this bit is set when the XMIT FIFO is filled below the trigger level and will reset when the FIFO is filled to the trigger level. |
| D6 | TEMT | 1 | The Transmit Empty (TEMT) indicates that both the Transmit Holding Register and the Transmit Shift Registers are empty. TEMT is reset to 0 whenever the TSR or THR contains a data character. In the FIFO mode this bit is set whenever the XMIT FIFO and the transmitter shift register are both empty. |
| D7 | Error in Rcvr FIFO | 0 | In the character mode this bit is reset to 0. In the FIFO mode this bit is set when there is at least one parity error, framing error or break indication in the FIFO. This bit is reset when the CPU reads the Line Status Register if there are no subsequent errors in the FIFO. |
| Note: Bits D1-D4 are the error conditions that produce a Receiver Line Status interrupt whenever any of the corresponding conditions are detected and the interrupt is enabled. | | | |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

MODEM STATUS REGISTER (MSR) (READ ONLY)

UART ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 110

This register provides the current state of the control signals from the modem or peripheral device. In addition four bits provide change information. Whenever bit D0, D1, D2 or D3 is set to logic 1 a Modem Status Interrupt is generated; reset to logic 0 occurs whenever they are read. In Loop Mode CTS, DSR, RI and DCD are taken from RTS, DTR, OUT1, and OUT2 in the Modem Control Register, respectively.

| BIT | NAME | COND | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|------|------|--|
| D0 | DCTS | 1 | The Delta Clear to Send (DCTS) bit is set when the $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ input to the chip has changed state since the last time it was read by the CPU. |
| D1 | DDSR | 1 | The Delta Data Set Ready (DDSR) bit is set when the $\overline{\text{DSR}}$ input to the chip has changed state since the last time it was read by the CPU. |
| D2 | TERI | 1 | The Trailing Edge of the Ring Indicator (TERI) detect bit is set when the RI input to the chip has changed from an Off (logic 0) to an On (logic 1) condition. |
| D3 | DDCD | 1 | The Delta Data Carrier Detect (DDCD) bit indicates that the $\overline{\text{DCD}}$ input to the chip has changed state. |
| D4 | CTS | 1 | This bit is the complement of the Clear To Send ($\overline{\text{CTS}}$) input. If bit 4 (loop) of the MCR is set to a 1, this bit is equivalent to RTS in the MCR. |
| D5 | DSR | 1 | This bit is the complement of the Data Set Ready ($\overline{\text{DSR}}$) input. If bit 4 of the MCR is set to a 1, this bit is the equivalent of DTR in the MCR. |
| D6 | RI | 1 | This bit is the complement of the Ring Indicator ($\overline{\text{RI}}$) input. If bit 4 of the MCR is set to a 1, this bit is equivalent to OUT1 in the MCR. |
| D7 | DCD | 1 | This bit is the complement of the Data Carrier Detect ($\overline{\text{DCD}}$) input. If bit 4 of the MCR is set to a 1, this bit is equivalent to OUT2 in the MCR. |

4

SCRATCH REGISTER (SCR)

ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 111

This 8-bit Read/Write Register does not control the UART in any way. It is intended as a scratchpad register to be used by the programmer to hold data temporarily.

DIVISOR LATCH (LS) (DLL)

ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 000, DLAB = 1

This register contains the least significant byte of the divisor which is used to control the rate of the programmable baud generator.

DIVISOR LATCH (MS) (DLM)

ADDRESS: A2 - A0 = 001, DLAB = 1

This register contains the most significant byte of the divisor which is used to control the rate of the programmable baud generator.

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

PROGRAMMABLE BAUD GENERATOR

The UART contains a programmable Baud Generator that is capable of taking any clock input (DC to 8 MHz) and dividing it by any divisor from 2 to $2^{16}-1$. 4 MHz is the highest input clock frequency recommended when the divisor = 1. The output frequency of the Baud Generator is 16 x the Baud [divisor # = (frequency input)/(baud rate x 16)]. Two 8-bit latches store the divisor in a 16-bit binary format. These Divisor Latches must be loaded during initialization in order to ensure desired operation of the Baud Generator. Upon loading either of the Divisor Latches, a 16-bit Baud counter is immediately loaded. This prevents long counts on initial load.

Tables 3, 4 and 5 illustrate the use of the Baud Generator with crystal frequencies of 1.8432 MHz, 3.072 MHz, and 8 MHz respectively. For baud rates of 38400 and below, the error obtained is minimal. The accuracy of the desired baud rate is dependent on the crystal frequency chosen.

| DESIRED BAUD RATE (BIT RATE CLOCK) | DIVISOR USED TO GENERATE 16 X CLOCK | PERCENT ERROR DIFFERENCE BETWEEN DESIRED AND ACTUAL |
|--|---|---|
| 50 | 2304 | — |
| 75 | 1536 | — |
| 110 | 1047 | 0.026 |
| 134.5 | 857 | 0.058 |
| 150 | 768 | — |
| 300 | 384 | — |
| 600 | 192 | — |
| 1200 | 96 | — |
| 1800 | 64 | — |
| 2000 | 58 | 0.69 |
| 2400 | 48 | — |
| 3600 | 32 | — |
| 4800 | 24 | — |
| 7200 | 16 | — |
| 9600 | 12 | — |
| 19200 | 6 | — |
| 38400 | 3 | — |
| 56000 | 2 | 2.86 |

TABLE 3: Baud Rates using 1.8432 MHz Crystal

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

| DESIRED BAUD RATE (BIT RATE CLOCK) | DIVISOR USED TO GENERATE 16 X CLOCK | PERCENT ERROR DIFFERENCE BETWEEN DESIRED AND ACTUAL |
|--|---|---|
| 50 | 3840 | — |
| 75 | 2560 | — |
| 110 | 1745 | 0.026 |
| 134.5 | 1428 | 0.034 |
| 150 | 1280 | — |
| 300 | 640 | — |
| 600 | 320 | — |
| 1200 | 160 | — |
| 1800 | 107 | 0.312 |
| 2000 | 96 | — |
| 2400 | 80 | — |
| 3600 | 53 | 0.628 |
| 4800 | 40 | — |
| 7200 | 27 | 1.23 |
| 9600 | 20 | — |
| 19200 | 10 | — |
| 38400 | 5 | — |

TABLE 4: Baud Rates using 3.072 MHZ Crystal

| DESIRED BAUD RATE (BIT RATE CLOCK) | DIVISOR USED TO GENERATE 16 X CLOCK | PERCENT ERROR DIFFERENCE BETWEEN DESIRED AND ACTUAL |
|--|---|---|
| 50 | 10000 | — |
| 75 | 6667 | 0.005 |
| 110 | 4545 | 0.010 |
| 134.5 | 3717 | 0.013 |
| 150 | 3333 | 0.010 |
| 300 | 1667 | 0.020 |
| 600 | 833 | 0.040 |
| 1200 | 417 | 0.080 |
| 1800 | 277 | 0.080 |
| 2000 | 250 | — |
| 2400 | 208 | 0.160 |
| 3600 | 139 | 0.080 |
| 4800 | 104 | 0.160 |
| 7200 | 69 | 0.644 |
| 9600 | 52 | 0.160 |
| 19200 | 26 | 0.160 |
| 38400 | 13 | 0.160 |
| 56000 | 9 | 0.790 |
| 128000 | 4 | 2.344 |

TABLE 5: Baud Rates using 8 MHZ Crystal

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

FIFO INTERRUPT MODE OPERATION

When the RCVR FIFO and receiver interrupts are enabled (FCRD0 = 1, IER D0 = 1) RCVR interrupts will occur as follows:

- The receive data available interrupt will be issued to the CPU when the FIFO has reached its programmed trigger level; it will be cleared as soon as the FIFO drops below its programmed trigger level.
- The IIR receive data available indication also occurs when the FIFO trigger level is reached and like the interrupt it is cleared when the FIFO drops below the trigger level.
- The receiver line status interrupt (IIR = 06), as before, has higher priority than the received data available (IIR = 04) interrupt.
- The data ready bit (LSRD0) is set as soon as a character is transferred from the shift register to the RCVR FIFO. It is reset when the FIFO is empty.

When RCVR FIFO and receiver interrupts are enabled, RCVR FIFO timeout interrupts will occur as follows:

- A FIFO timeout interrupt will occur, if the following conditions exist:
 - at least one character is in the FIFO
 - the most recent serial character received was longer than 4 continuous character times ago (if 2 stop bits are programmed the second one is included in this time delay).
 - the most recent CPU read of the FIFO was longer than 4 continuous character times ago.

This will cause a maximum character received to interrupt issued delay of 160 ms at 300 baud with a 12 bit character.

- Character times are calculated by using the RCLK input for a clock signal (this makes the delay proportional to the baud rate).
- When a timeout interrupt has occurred it is cleared and the timer reset when the CPU reads one character from the RCVR FIFO.
- When a timeout interrupt has not occurred the timeout timer is reset after a new character is received or after the CPU reads the RCVR FIFO.

When the XMIT FIFO and transmitter interrupts are enabled (FCRD0 = 1, IERD1 = 1), XMIT interrupts will occur as follows:

- The transmitter holding register interrupt occurs when the XMIT FIFO is below the trigger level. It is cleared as soon as the transmitter holding register is written to and reaches the trigger level or the IIR is read. If the SSI mode is disabled (IER D5 = 0) then the XMIT FIFO trigger level is set to 1 byte.
- The transmitter FIFO empty indications will be delayed 1 character time minus the last stop bit time whenever the following occurs: THRE = 1 and there have not been at least two bytes at the same time in the transmit FIFO since the last THRE = 1. The first transmitter interrupt after changing FCRD0 will be immediate, if it is enabled.

Character timeout and RCVR FIFO trigger level interrupts have the same priority as the current received data available interrupt; XMIT FIFO empty has the same priority as the current transmitter holding register empty interrupt.

FIFO MODE OPERATION

With FCRD0 = 1 resetting IER D0, IER D1, IER D2, IER D3 or all to zero puts the UART in the FIFO polled mode of operation. Since the RCVR and XMITTER are controlled separately either one or both can be in the polled mode of operation. In this mode the users program will check RCVR and XMITTER status via the LSR. As stated previously:

LSRD0 will be set as long as there is one byte in the RCVR FIFO

LSRD1 to LSR D4 will specify which error(s) has occurred. Character error status is handled the same way as when in the interrupt mode, the IIR is not affected since IER D2 = 0

LSRD5 will indicate when the XMIT FIFO is empty.

LSRD6 will indicate that both the XMIT FIFO and shift register are empty.

LSRD7 will indicate whether there are any errors in the RCVR FIFO.

There is no trigger level reached or timeout condition indicated in the FIFO Polled Mode, however, the RCVR and XMIT FIFOs are still fully capable of holding characters.

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

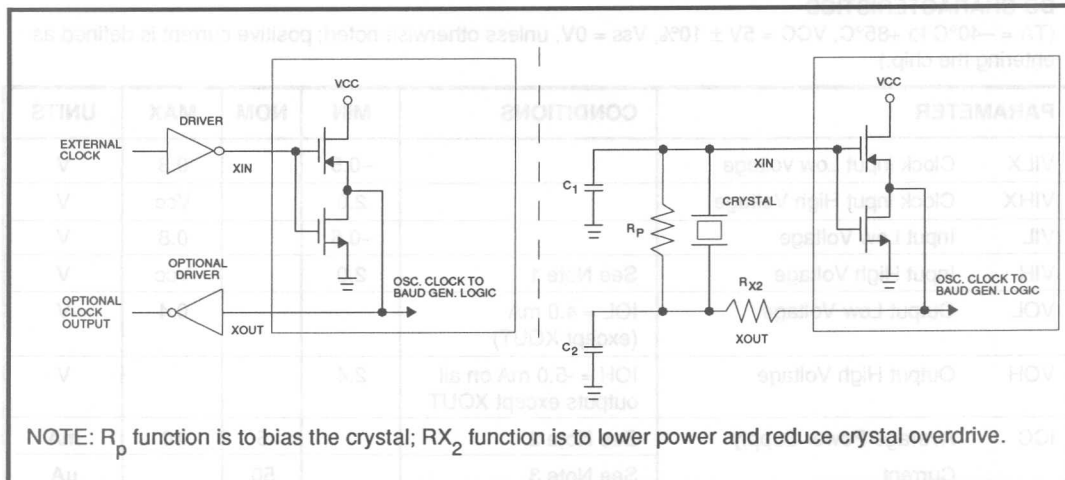


FIGURE 1: Typical Clock Circuits

TYPICAL CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR NETWORK

| CRYSTAL | RP | RX2 | C1 | C2 |
|-------------|--------------|------|----------|----------|
| 1.8 - 8 MHz | 1 M Ω | 1.5K | 10-30 pF | 40-60 pF |
| 8 MHz | 1 M Ω | 0 | 10-30 pF | 40-60 pF |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

($T_A = -40^\circ\text{C}$ to $+85^\circ\text{C}$, $V_{CC} = 5V \pm 10\%$, unless otherwise noted. Operation above absolute maximum ratings may permanently damage the device.)

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| VCC Supply Voltage | +7V |
| Storage Temperature | -65°C to 150°C |
| Lead Temperature | Soldering, 10 sec. 260°C |
| Applied Voltage | -0.3 to $V_{CC} + 0.3$ |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

DC CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = -40°C to +85°C, VCC = 5V ± 10%, VSS = 0V, unless otherwise noted; positive current is defined as entering the chip.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|--|------|-----|-----|-------|
| VILX Clock input Low voltage | | -0.5 | | 0.8 | V |
| VIHX Clock input High Voltage | | 2.0 | | Vcc | V |
| VIL Input Low Voltage | | -0.5 | | 0.8 | V |
| VIH Input High Voltage | See Note 1 | 2.0 | | Vcc | V |
| VOL Output Low Voltage | IOL = 4.0 mA (except XOUT) | | | 0.4 | V |
| VOH Output High Voltage | IOH = -5.0 mA on all outputs except XOUT | 2.4 | | | V |
| ICC Average Power Supply Current | See Note 2 | | 5 | 10 | mA |
| | See Note 3 | | 50 | | μA |
| IIL Input Leakage | VCC=5.25V, VSS=0V. All other pins floating. | | | ±10 | μA |
| ICL Clock Leakage | VIN=0V, 5.25V | | | ±10 | μA |
| IOZ 3-State Leakage | VCC=5.25V, VSS=0V, VOUT=0V, 5.25V 1) Chip deselected 2) Chip & write mode selected | | | ±20 | μA |
| VILMR MR Schmitt VIL | | | | 0.8 | V |
| VIHMR MR Schmitt VIH | | 2.0 | | | V |
| Note 1: All pins except DCD, DSR and CTS pins. VIH for these pins is >2.2V. | | | | | |
| Note 2: VCC = 5.25V, TA = 25°C; No loads on outputs. SIN, DSR, DCD, CTS, RI = 2.4V. All other inputs = 0.4V. Baud Rate Gen. = 4 MHz; Baud Rate = 50 kHz. | | | | | |
| Note 3: VCC = 5.5V, TA = -40°C; No output load; CMOS-level inputs, oscillator disabled. | | | | | |

CAPACITANCE

(TA = 25°C, VCC = VSS = 0V, fc = 1 MHz, unmeasured pins returned to VSS)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---------------------------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| CXTAL2 Clock Input Capacitance | | | 15 | 20 | pF |
| CXTAL1 Clock Output Capacitance | | | 20 | 30 | pF |
| CI Input Capacitance | | | 6 | 10 | pF |
| CO Output Capacitance | | | 10 | 20 | pF |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

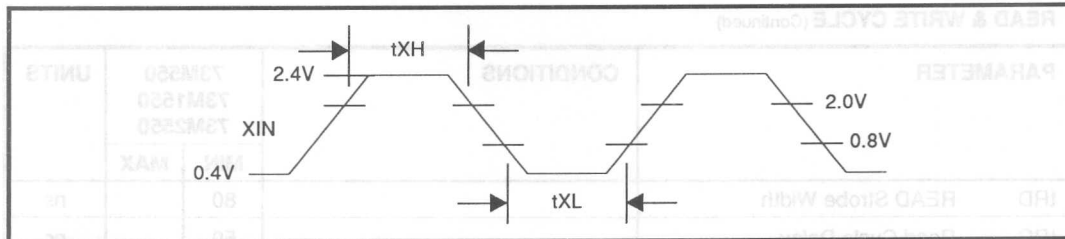


FIGURE 2: External Clock Input* (8 MHz Maximum)

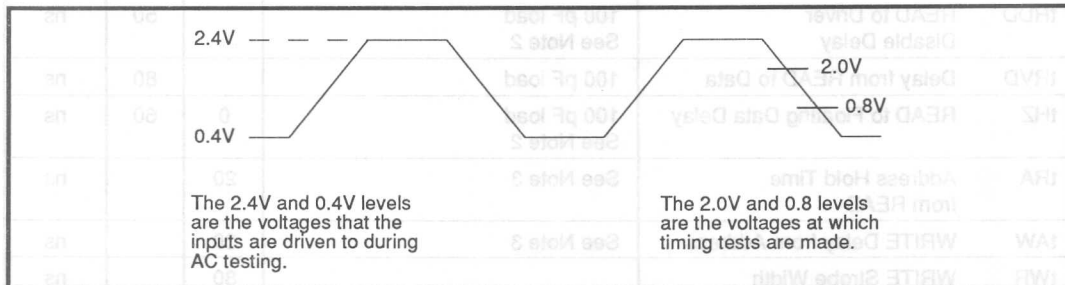


FIGURE 3: AC Test Points*

*All timings are referenced to valid 0 and valid 1.

AC CHARACTERISTICS (TA = -40°C to +85°C, VCC = 5V ±10%, unless otherwise noted.)

READ & WRITE CYCLE (Refer to Figures 4 & 5)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | 73M550 73M1550 73M2550 | | UNITS |
|-----------|-------------------------|------------------------------|-----|-------|
| | | MIN | MAX | |
| tADS | Address Strobe Width | 50 | | ns |
| tAS | Address Setup Time | 30 | | ns |
| tAH | Address Hold Time | 0 | | ns |
| tCS | Chip Select Setup Time | 30 | | ns |
| tCH | Chip Select Hold Time | 0 | | ns |
| tAR | READ Delay from Address | 30 | | ns |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

READ & WRITE CYCLE (Continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | 73M550 73M1550 73M2550 | | UNITS |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------|-------|
| | | MIN | MAX | |
| tRD | READ Strobe Width | 80 | | ns |
| tRC | Read Cycle Delay | 50 | | ns |
| tAD | Address to Read Data | | 160 | ns |
| RC | Read Cycle | See Note 1 & 4 | 210 | ns |
| tRDD | READ to Driver Disable Delay | 100 pF load See Note 2 | 50 | ns |
| tRVD | Delay from READ to Data | 100 pF load | 80 | ns |
| tHZ | READ to Floating Data Delay | 100 pF load See Note 2 | 0 60 | ns |
| tRA | Address Hold Time from READ | See Note 3 | 20 | ns |
| tAW | WRITE Delay from Address | See Note 3 | 30 | ns |
| tWR | WRITE Strobe Width | | 80 | ns |
| tWC | Write Cycle Delay | | 50 | ns |
| WC | Write Cycle = tAW+tWR+tWC | | 160 | ns |
| tDS | Data Setup Time | | 30 | ns |
| tDH | Data Hold Time | | 30 | ns |
| tWA | Address Hold Time from WRITE | See Note 3 | 20 | ns |
| tMRW | Master Reset Pulse Width | | 1 | μs |
| tXH | Duration of Clock High Pulse | External Clock (4 MHz max.) | 100 | ns |
| tXL | Duration of Clock Low Pulse | External Clock (4 MHz max.) | 100 | ns |
| Note 1: $RC = tAD + tRC$ | | | | |
| Note 2: Charge and discharge time is determined by VOL, VOH and the external loading | | | | |
| Note 3: Applicable only when \overline{ADS} is tied low | | | | |
| Note 4: In FIFO mode $RC = 425$ ns (minimum) between reads of the RCVR FIFO and the status registers (interrupt identification register or line status register). | | | | |
| READ occurs when both read (RD , \overline{RD}) and chip select ($CS0$, $CS1$, $\overline{CS2}$, latched by \overline{ADS}) are asserted. | | | | |
| WRITE occurs when both write (WR , \overline{WR}) and chip select ($CS0$, $CS1$, $\overline{CS2}$, latched by \overline{ADS}) are asserted. | | | | |

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

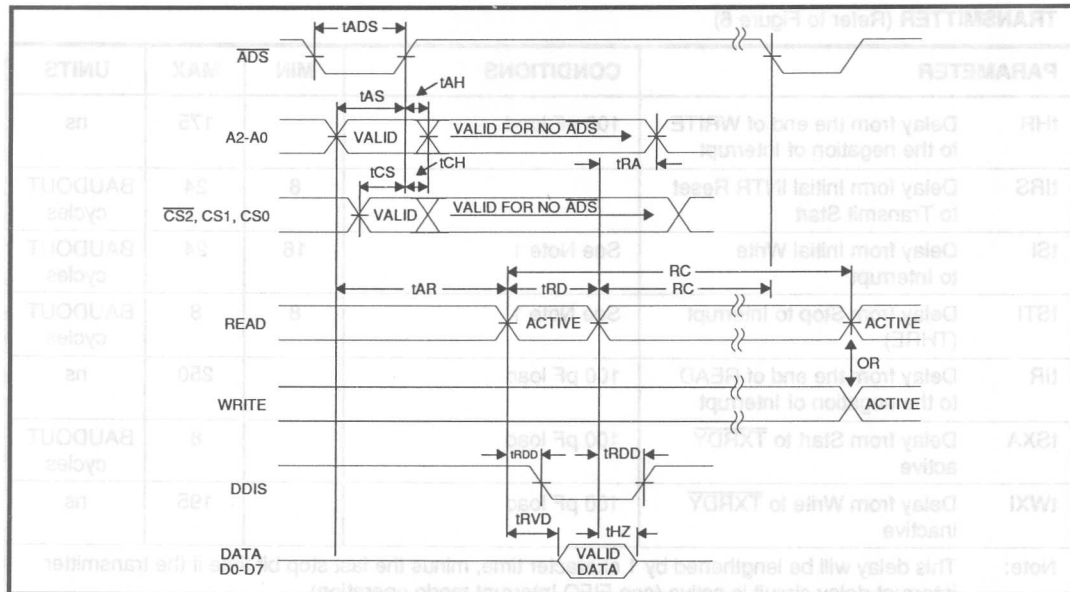


FIGURE 4: Read Cycle Timing

NOTE: READ occurs when both read (\overline{RD} , \overline{RD}) and chip select ($\overline{CS0}$, $\overline{CS1}$, $\overline{CS2}$, latched by \overline{ADS}) are asserted.

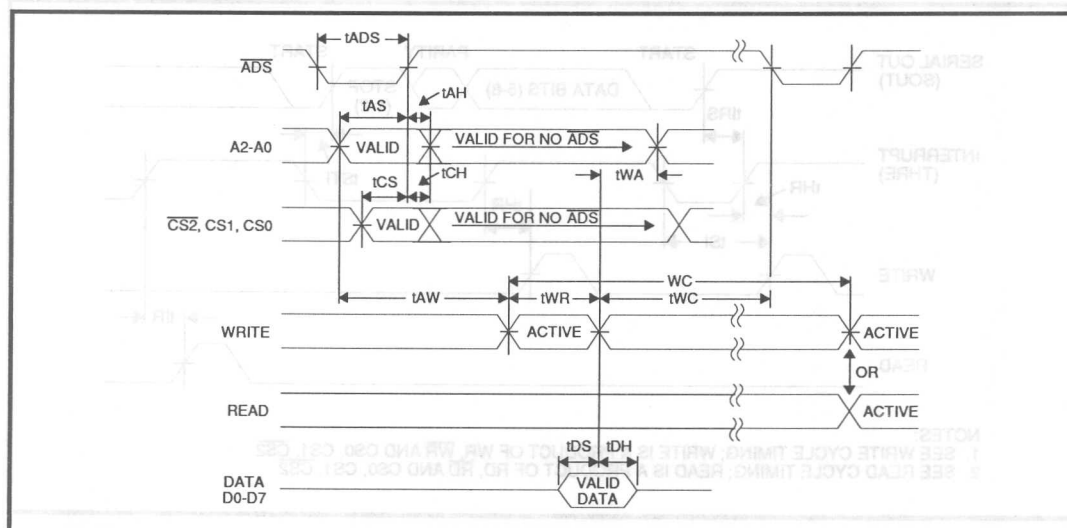


FIGURE 5: Write Cycle Timing

NOTE: WRITE occurs when both write (\overline{WR} , \overline{WR}) and chip select ($\overline{CS0}$, $\overline{CS1}$, $\overline{CS2}$, latched by \overline{ADS}) are asserted.

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

TRANSMITTER (Refer to Figure 6)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | MAX | UNITS |
|------------------|--|------------|-----|----------------|
| t _{HR} | Delay from the end of WRITE to the negation of Interrupt | | 175 | ns |
| t _{IRS} | Delay from Initial INTR Reset to Transmit Start | 8 | 24 | BAUDOUT cycles |
| t _{SI} | Delay from Initial Write to Interrupt | See Note 1 | 24 | BAUDOUT cycles |
| t _{STI} | Delay from Stop to Interrupt (THRE) | See Note 1 | 8 | BAUDOUT cycles |
| t _{IR} | Delay from the end of READ to the negation of Interrupt | | 250 | ns |
| t _{SXA} | Delay from Start to TXRDY active | | 8 | BAUDOUT cycles |
| t _{WXI} | Delay from Write to TXRDY inactive | | 195 | ns |

Note: This delay will be lengthened by 1 character time, minus the last stop bit time if the transmitter interrupt delay circuit is active (see FIFO Interrupt mode operation).

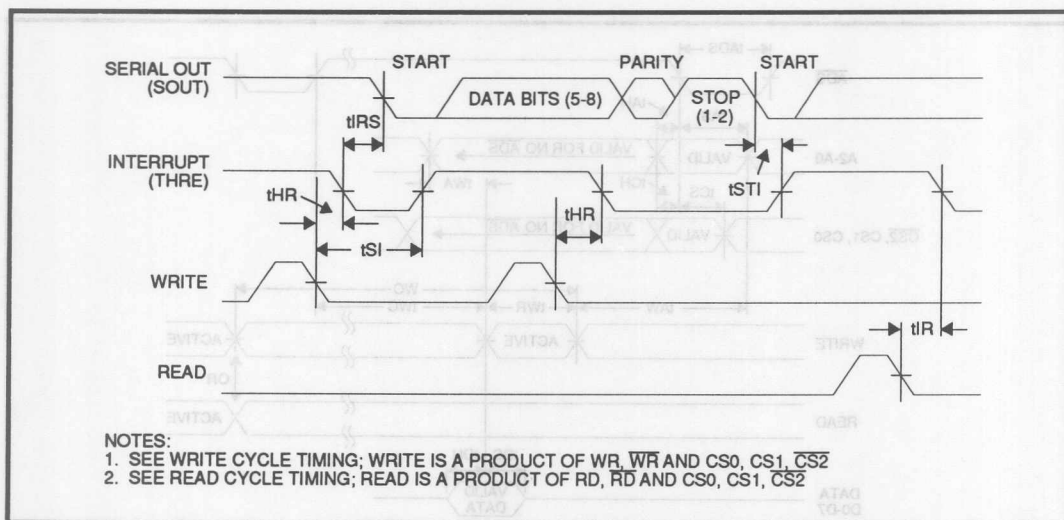


FIGURE 6: Transmitter Timing

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

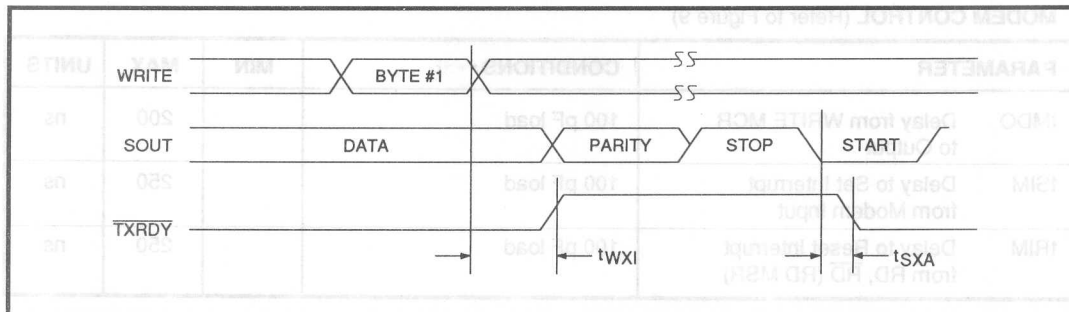


FIGURE 7: Transmitter Ready (Pin 24) FCR D0 = 0 or FCR D0 = 1 and FCR D3 = 0 (Mode 0)

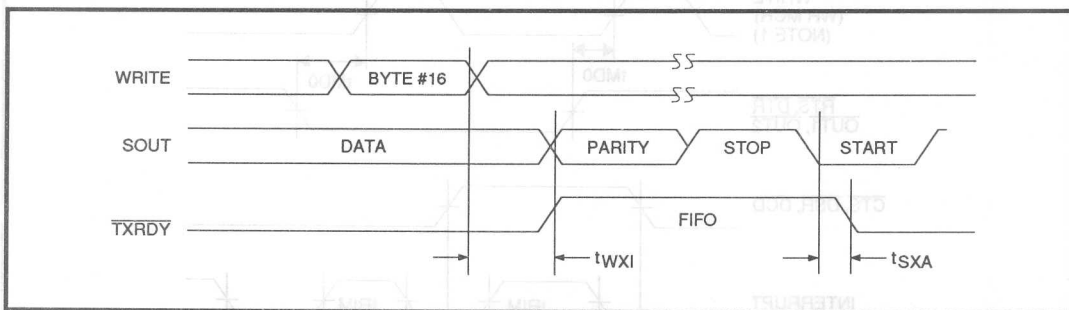


FIGURE 8: Transmitter Ready (Pin 24) FCR D0 = 1 and FCR D3 = 1 (Mode 1)

NOTE: WRITE occurs when both write (WR, \overline{WR}) and chip select (CS0, CS1, $\overline{CS2}$, latched by \overline{ADS}) are asserted.

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

MODEM CONTROL (Refer to Figure 9)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | MAX | UNITS |
|---|-------------|-----|-----|-------|
| tMDO Delay from WRITE MCR to Output | 100 pF load | | 200 | ns |
| tSIM Delay to Set Interrupt from Modem Input | 100 pF load | | 250 | ns |
| tRIM Delay to Reset Interrupt from RD, \overline{RD} (RD MSR) | 100 pF load | | 250 | ns |

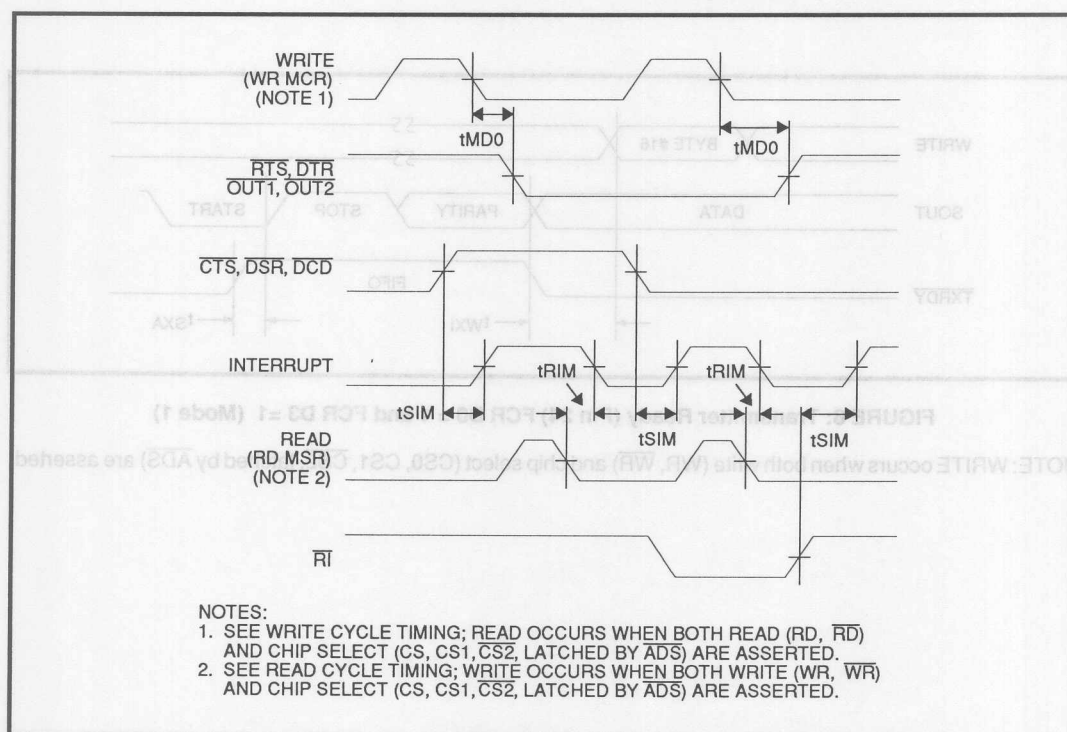


FIGURE 9: Modem Controls Timing

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

BAUD GENERATOR (Refer to Figure 10)

| PARAMETER | MIN | CONDITIONS | MIN | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----|------------|-------|
| N | Baud Divisor | | 1 | $2^{16}-1$ | |
| tBLD | Baud Output Negative Edge Delay | 100 pF load | | 125 | ns |
| tBHD | Baud Output Positive Edge Delay | 100 pF load | | 125 | ns |
| tLW | Baud Output Down Time | fX=8 MHz, div. by 2, 100 pF load | 100 | | ns |
| tHW | Baud Output Up Time | fX=8 MHz, div. by 2, 100 pF load | 75 | | ns |

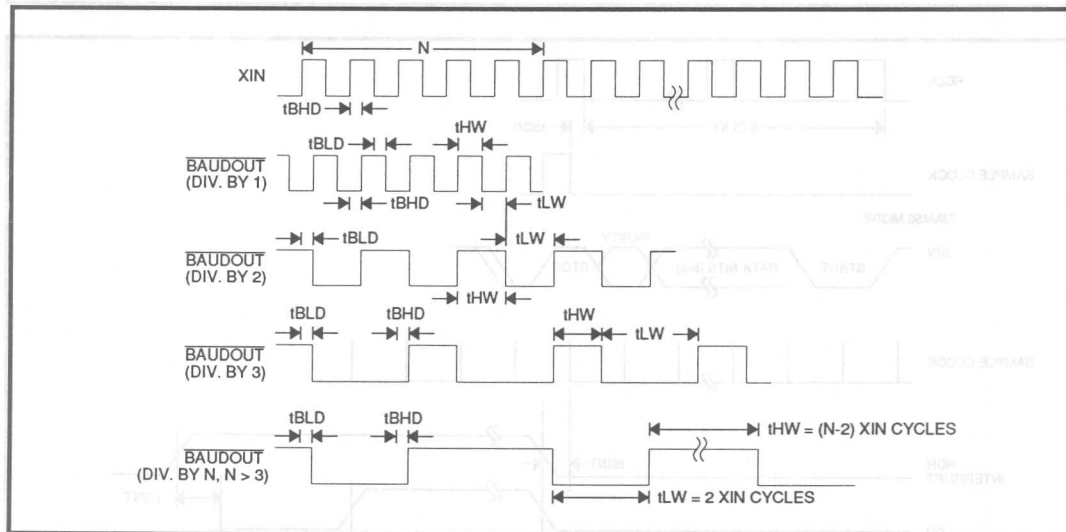


FIGURE 10: BAUDOUT Timing

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

RECEIVER (Refer to Figure 11)

| PARAMETER | MIN | CONDITIONS | MIN | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------|--|------------------------------|-----|-----|-------------|
| tSCD | Delay from RCLK to Sample Time | | | 2 | μ s |
| tSINT | Delay from Stop to Set Interrupt | RCLK=tXH & tXL See Note 1 | | 1 | RCLK cycles |
| tRINT | Delay from READ (RD RBR/RD LSR) to Reset Interrupt | 100 pF load | | 1 | μ s |

Note 1: In the FIFO mode (FCR D0 = 1) the trigger level interrupts, the receiver data available indication, the active RXRDY indication and the overrun error indication will be delayed 3 RCLKs. Status indicators (PE, FE, BI) will be delayed 3 RCLKs after the first byte has been received. For subsequently received bytes these indicators will be updated immediately after RD RBR goes inactive. Timeout interrupt is delayed 8 RCLKs.

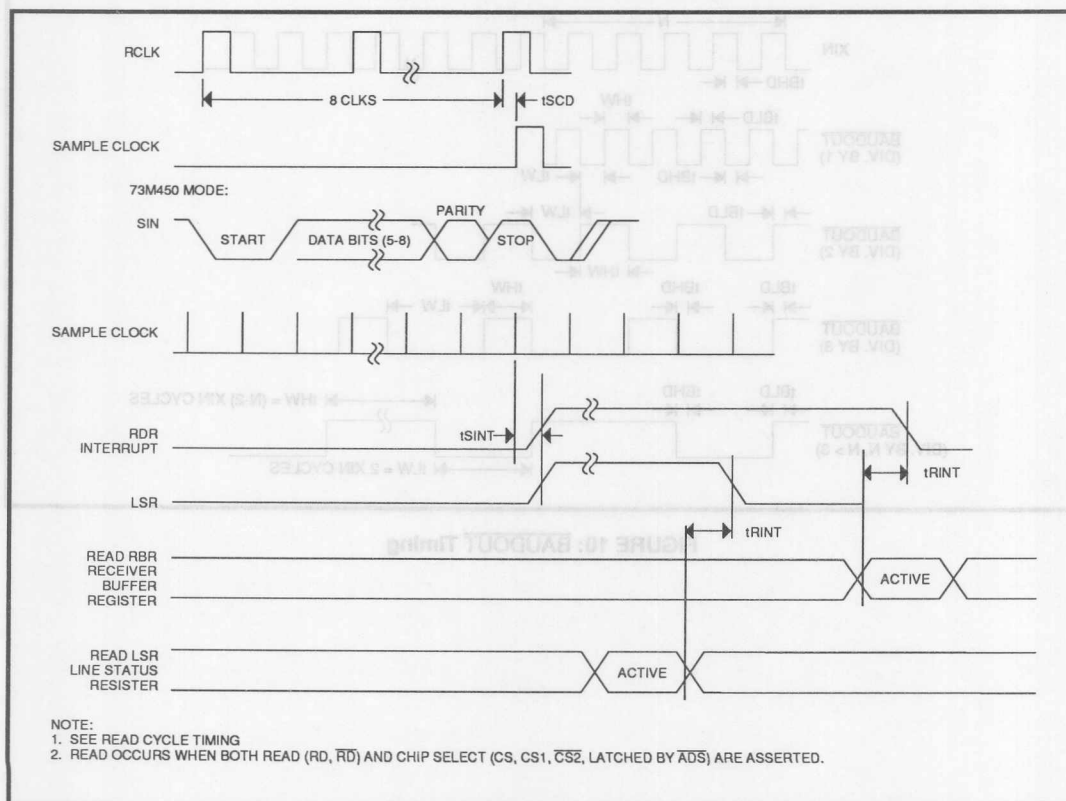


FIGURE 11: Receiver Timing

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

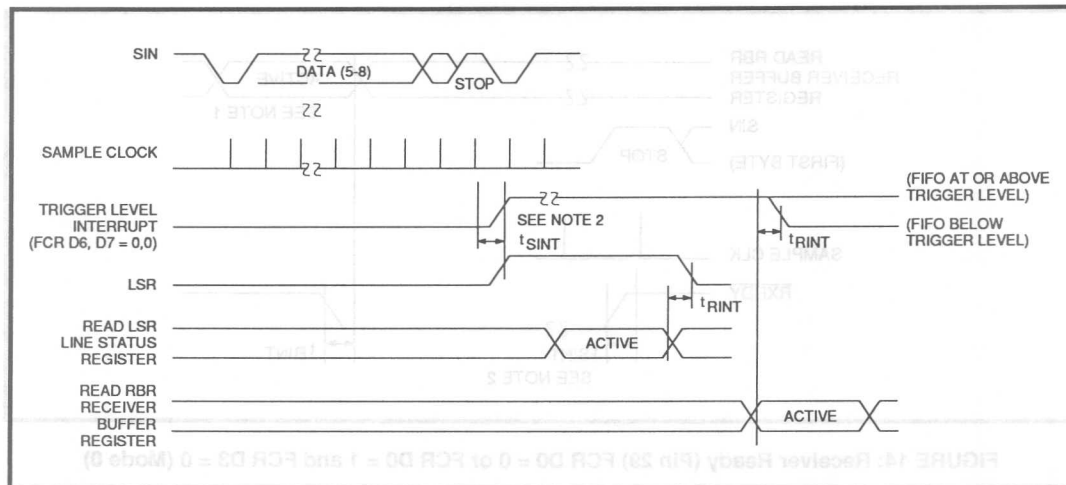


FIGURE 12: RCVR FIFO First Byte (This sets RBR)

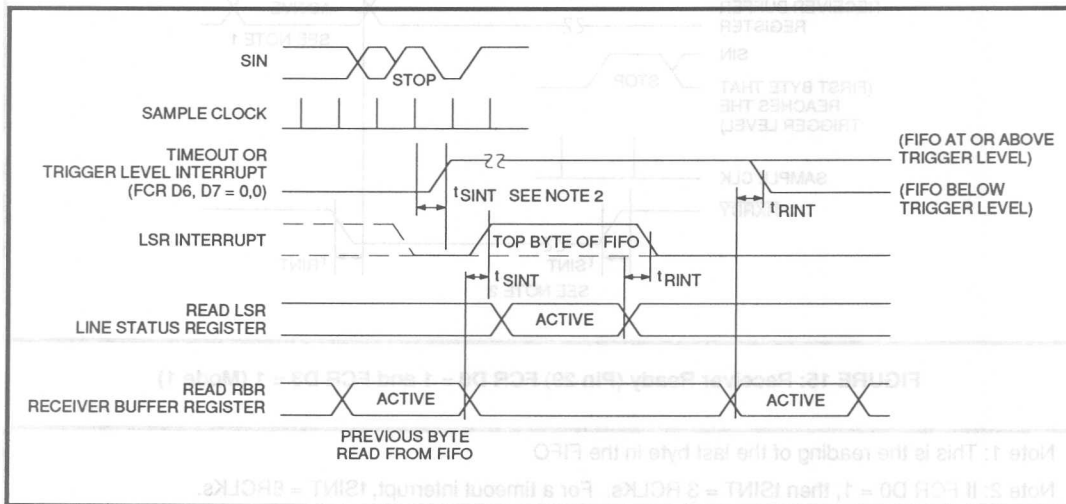


FIGURE 13: RCVR FIFO Bytes Other Than the First Byte (RBR is already set)

Note 1: This is the reading of the last byte in the FIFO

Note 2: If FCR D0 = 1, then tSINT = 3 RCLKs. For a timeout interrupt, tSINT = 8RCLKs.

Note 3: READ occurs when both read (RD, \overline{RD}) and chip select (CS0, CS1, $\overline{CS2}$, latched by \overline{ADS}) are asserted.

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

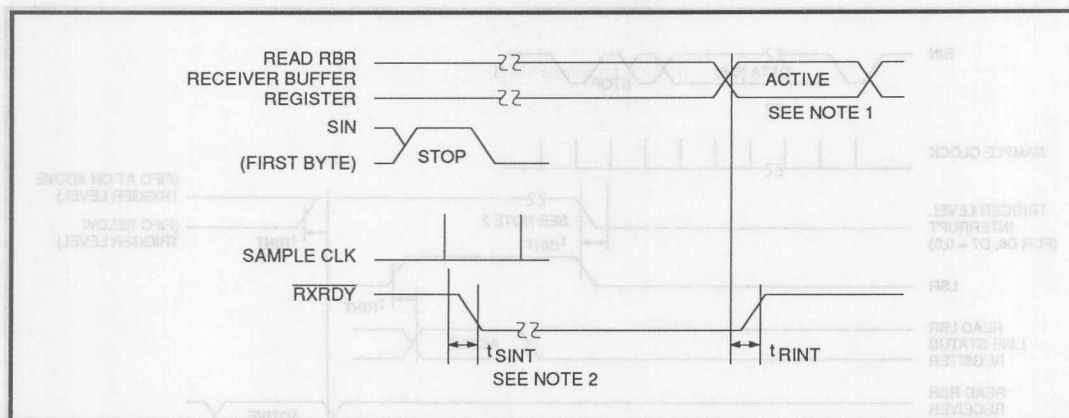


FIGURE 14: Receiver Ready (Pin 29) FCR D0 = 0 or FCR D0 = 1 and FCR D3 = 0 (Mode 0)

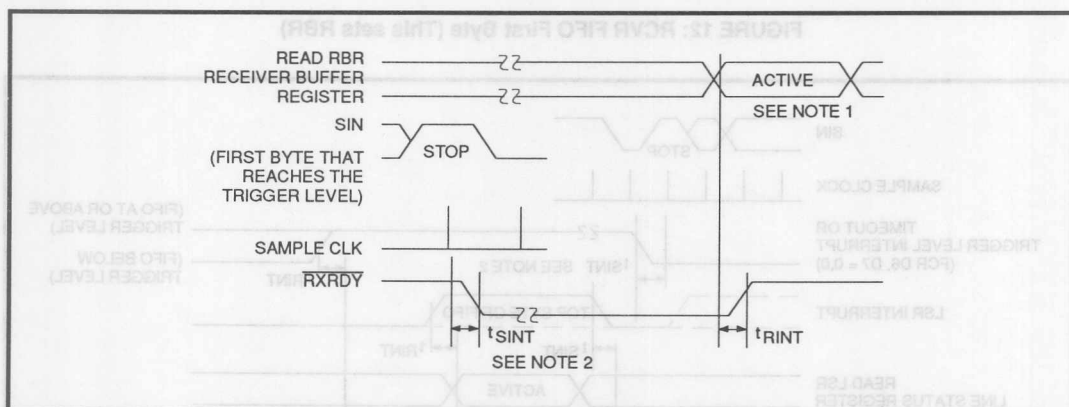


FIGURE 15: Receiver Ready (Pin 29) FCR D0 = 1 and FCR D3 = 1 (Mode 1)

Note 1: This is the reading of the last byte in the FIFO

Note 2: If FCR D0 = 1, then $t_{SINT} = 3 \text{ RCLKs}$. For a timeout interrupt, $t_{SINT} = 8 \text{ RCLKs}$.

Note 3: READ occurs when both read (\overline{RD} , \overline{RD}) and chip select ($\overline{CS0}$, $\overline{CS1}$, $\overline{CS2}$, latched by \overline{ADS}) are asserted.

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

SSI 73M550 TIMING COMPARED TO PCMCIA PC CARD STANDARD - RELEASE 2.0

| ITEM | SYMBOL | IEEE | MIN | MAX | SSI 73M550 | | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|---------|-----|--------|------------|-----|-----|-------|
| | | | | | SSI | MIN | MAX | UNITS |
| Data Setup before IOWR | t _{su} (IOWR) | tDVIWL | 60 | | TDS | 30 | | ns |
| Data Hold following IOWR | t _h (IOWR) | tIWHDX | 30 | | TDH | 30 | | ns |
| IOWR Width Time | t _w IOWR | tIWLWH | 165 | | TWR | 80 | | ns |
| Address Setup before IOWR | t _{su} A (IOWR) | tAVIWL | 70 | | TAW | 30 | | ns |
| Address Hold following IOWR | t _h A (IOWR) | tIWHAX | 20 | | TWA | 20 | | ns |
| CE Setup before IOWR | t _{su} CE (IOWR) | tELIWL | 5 | | | Any | | |
| CE Hold following IOWR | t _h CE (IOWR) | tIWHEH | 20 | | | Any | | |
| REG Setup before IOWR | t _{su} REG (IOWR) | tRGLIWL | 5 | | | | | |
| REG Hold following IOWR | t _h REG (IOWR) | tIWHRGH | 0 | | | | | |
| IOIS16 Delay Falling from Address | t _d IOIS16 (ADR) ₁ | tAVISL | | 35 | | | | |
| IOIS16 Delay Rising from Address | t _d IOIS16 (ADR) ₂ | tAVISH | | 35 | | | | |
| Wait Delay Falling from IOWR | t _d WAIT (IOWR) | tIWLWTL | | 35 | | | | |
| Wait Width Time | t _w WAIT | tIWLWTH | | 12,000 | | | | |

NOTE: The maximum load on WAIT, INPACK and IOIS16 are 1 LSTTL with 50 pF total load.

TABLE 6: I/O Output (WRITE) Timing Specification for All 5V I/O Cards

SSI 73M550
SSI 73M1550/2550
UART with FIFOs

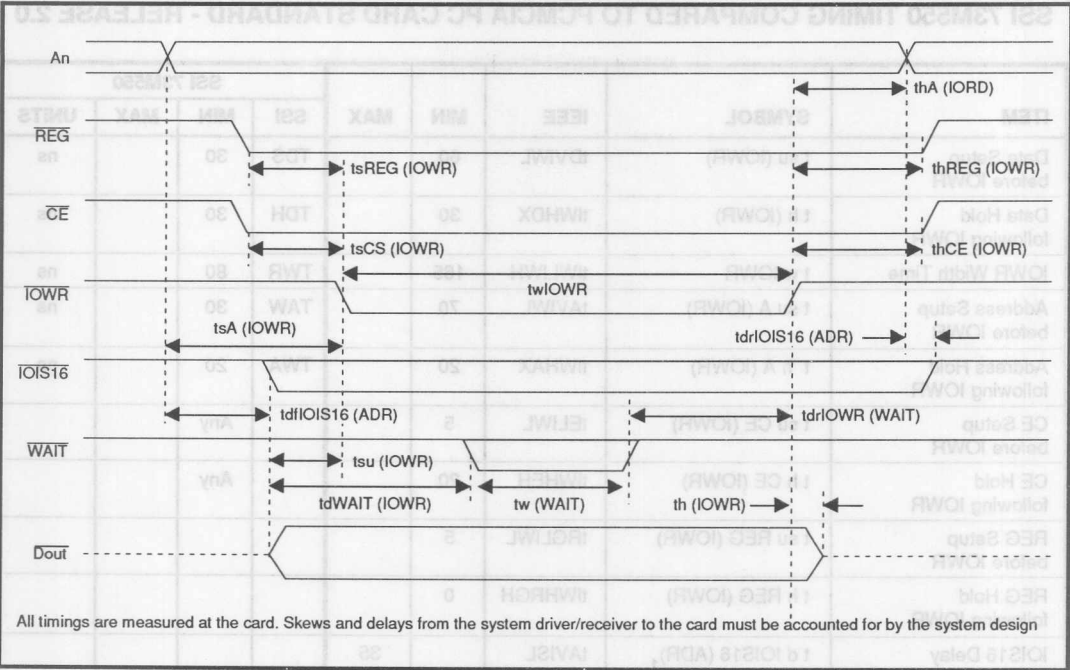


FIGURE 16: I/O Output Timing Specification (WRITE)

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

SSI 73M550 TIMING COMPARED TO PCMCIA PC CARD STANDARD - RELEASE 2.0

| ITEM | SYMBOL | IEEE | MIN | MAX | SSI 73M550 | | | |
|--|-------------------------------|---------|-----|--------|------------|-----|-----|-------|
| | | | | | SSI | MIN | MAX | UNITS |
| Data Delay after IORD | t d (IORD) | tIGLQV | | 100 | TRVD | | 80 | ns |
| Data Hold following IORD | t h (IORD) | tIGHQX | 0 | | THZ | 0 | | ns |
| IORD Width Time | t w IORD | tIGLIGH | 165 | | TRD | 80 | | ns |
| Address Setup before IORD | t su A (IORD) | tAVIGL | 70 | | TAR | 30 | | ns |
| Address Hold following IORD | t h A (IORD) | tIGHAX | 20 | | TRA | 20 | | ns |
| CE Setup before IORD | t su CE (IORD) | tELIGL | 5 | | | Any | | |
| CE Hold following IORD | t h CE (IORD) | tIGHEH | 20 | | | Any | | |
| REG Setup before IORD | t su REG (IORD) | tRGLIGL | 5 | | | | | |
| REG Hold following IORD | t h REG (IORD) | tIGHRGH | 0 | | | | | |
| INPACK Delay Falling from IORD | t d INPACK (IORD) | tGLIAL | 0 | 45 | | | | |
| INPACK Delay Rising from IORD | t d INPACK (IORD) | tIGHIAH | | 45 | | | | |
| IOIS16 Delay Falling from Address | t d IOIS16 (ADR) ₁ | tAVISL | | 35 | | | | |
| IOIS16 Delay Rising from Address | t d IOIS16 (ADR) ₂ | tAVISH | | 35 | | | | |
| Wait Delay Falling from IORD | t d WAIT (IORD) | tIGLWTL | | 35 | | | | |
| Data Delay from Wait Rising | td(WAIT) | tWTHQV | | 35 | | | | |
| Wait Width Time | t w WAIT | tWLWTH | | 12,000 | | | | |
| NOTE: The maximum load on WAIT, INPACK and IOIS16 are 1 LSTTL with 50 pF total load. | | | | | | | | |

TABLE 7: I/O Output (READ) Timing Specification for All 5V I/O Cards

SSI 73M550
SSI 73M1550/2550
UART with FIFOs

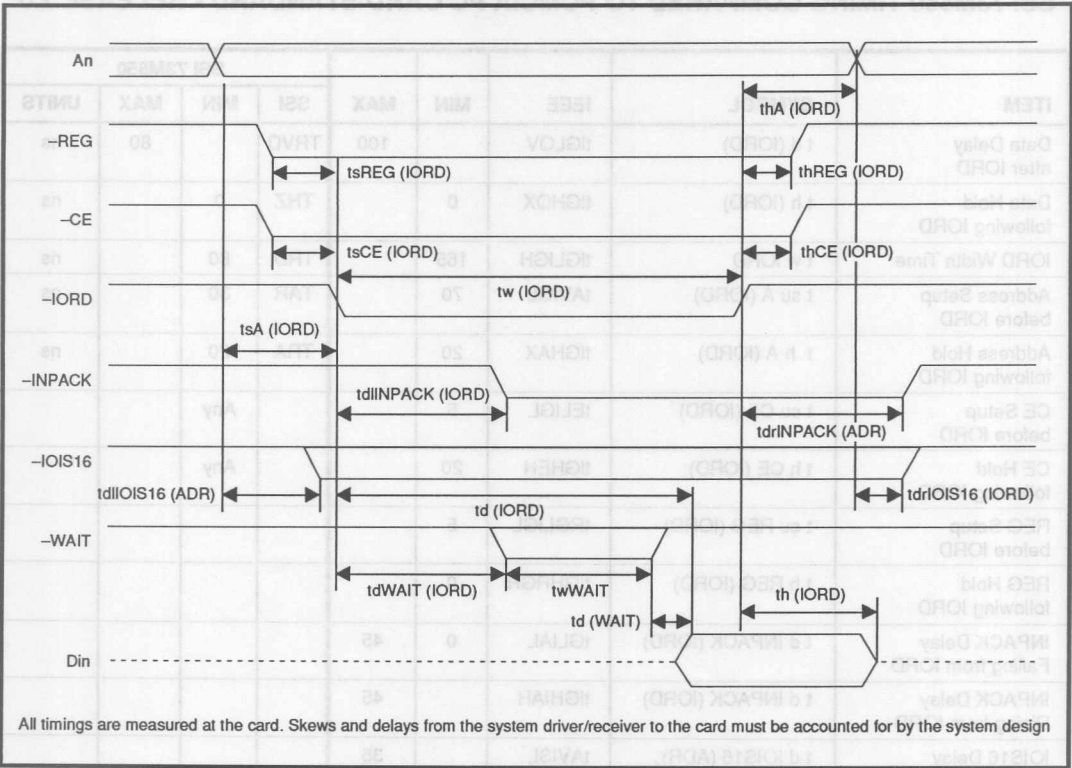


FIGURE 17: I/O Output Timing Specification (READ)

SSI 73M550 SSI 73M1550/2550 UART with FIFOs

APPLICATIONS INFORMATION

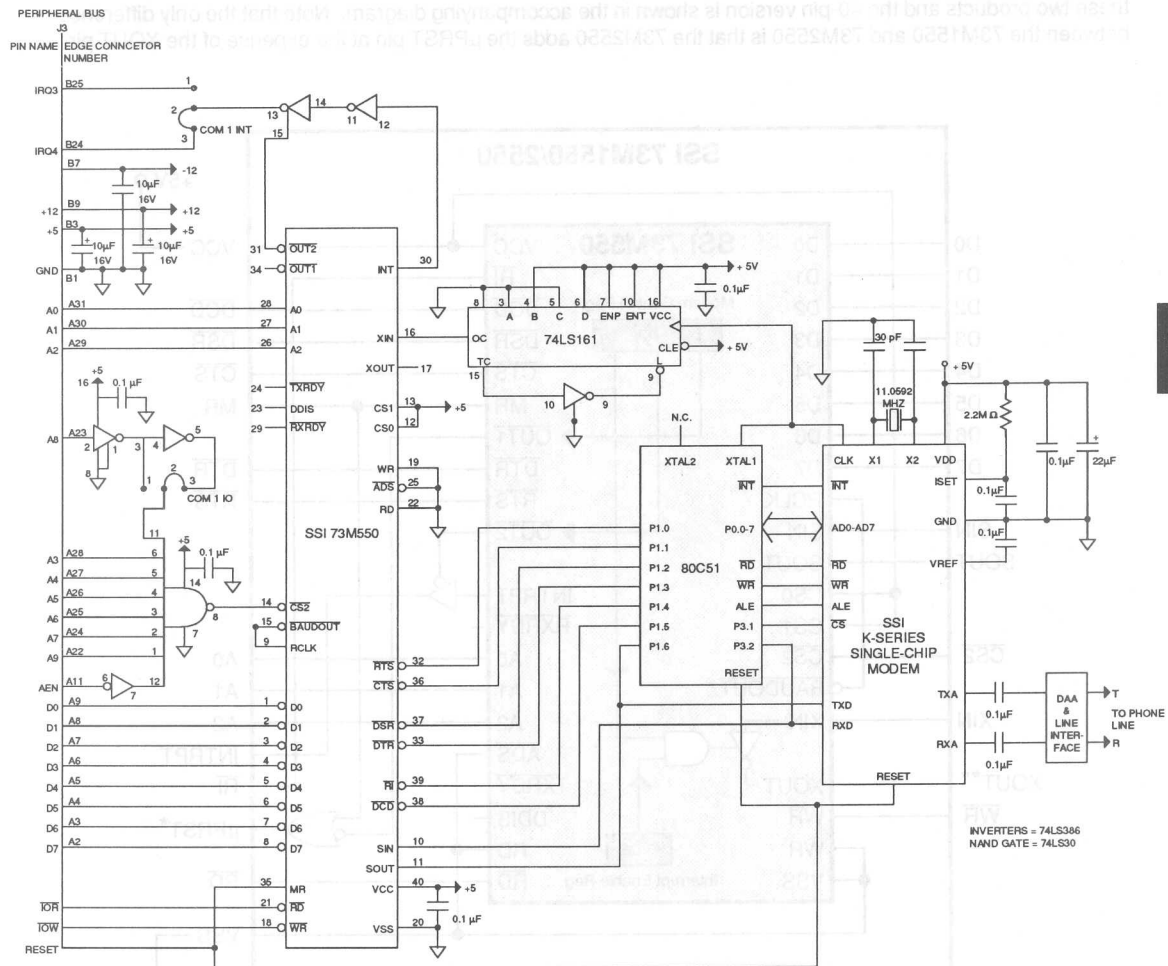


FIGURE 18: Typical Application Showing Modem Interface to Peripheral-Bus via SSI 73M550 UART

SSI 73M550

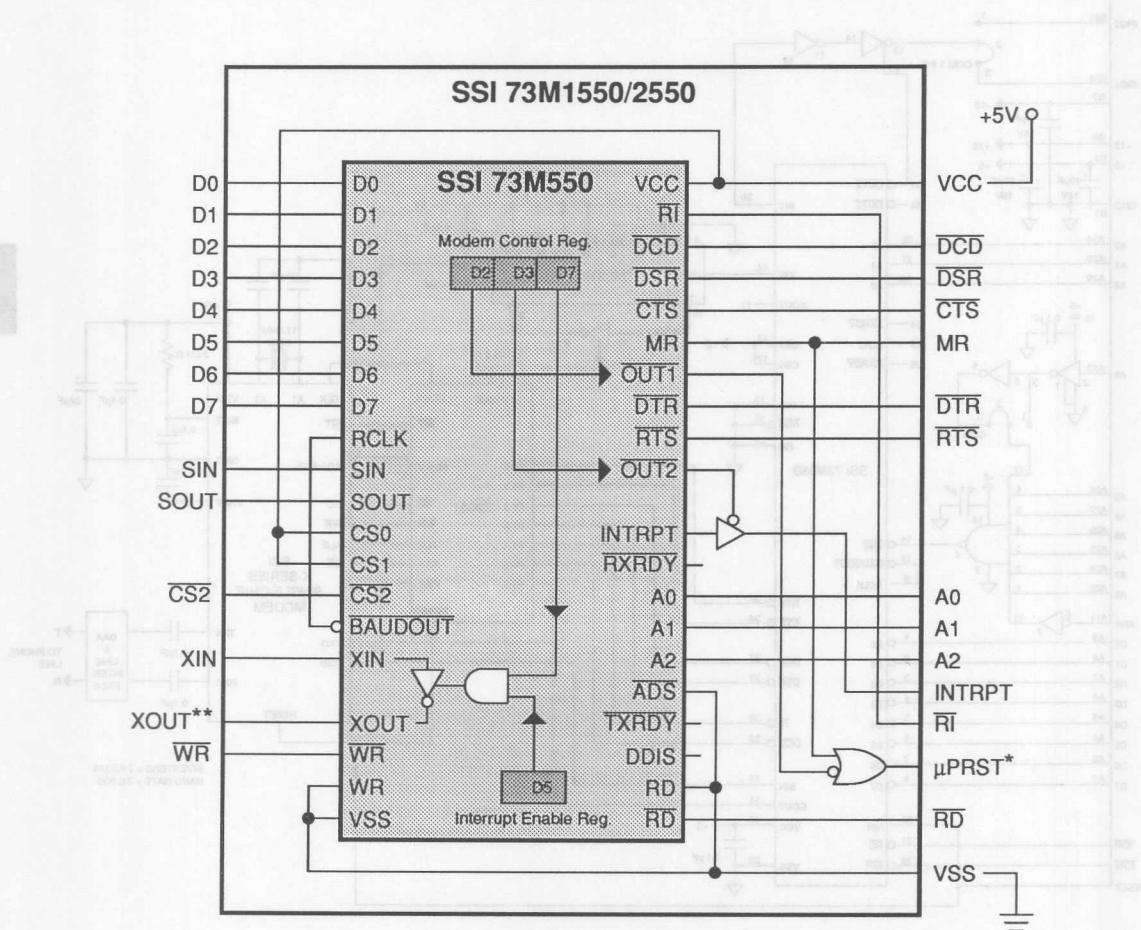
SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

APPLICATIONS INFORMATION (Continued)

28-PIN VERSION

The 73M550 is available in two 28-pin configurations: SSI 73M1550 and SSI 73M2550. The relation between these two products and the 40-pin version is shown in the accompanying diagram. Note that the only difference between the 73M1550 and 73M2550 is that the 73M2550 adds the μ PRST pin at the expense of the XOUT pin.



*SSI 73M2550 only.

**SSI 73M1550 only.

FIGURE 19: Adapter Diagram Showing Internal Connections and Bond-outs from 40-pin to 28-pin Packages

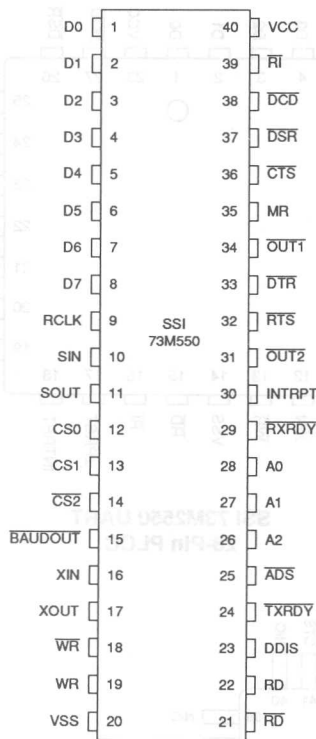
SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

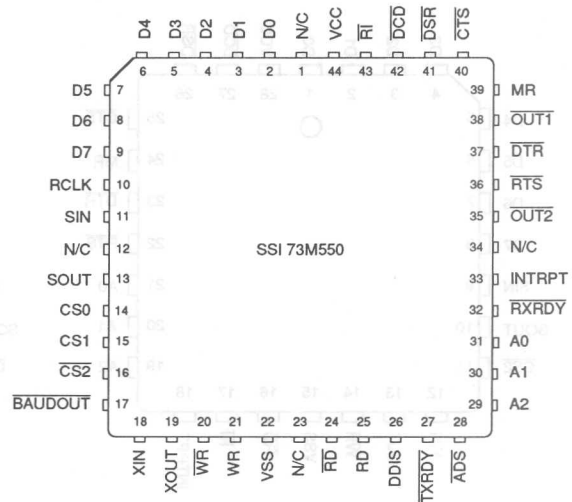
UART with FIFOs

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

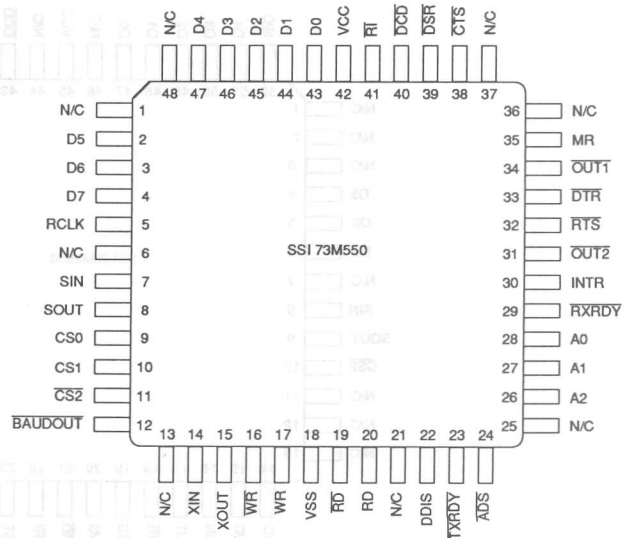
(Top View)



SSI 73M550 40-Pin DIP



SSI 73M550 44-Pin PLCC



SSI 73M550 48-Lead TQFP

SSI 73M550

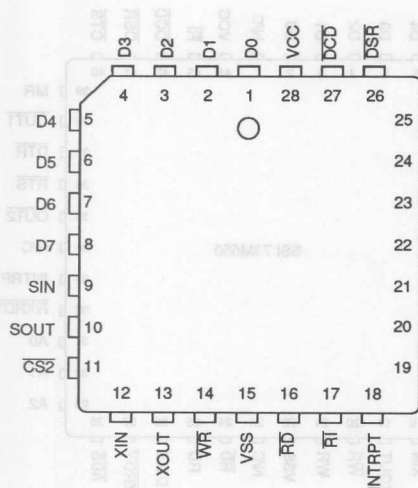
SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs

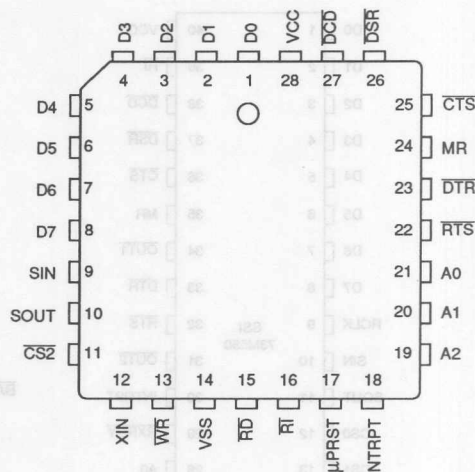
PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (continued)

(Top View)

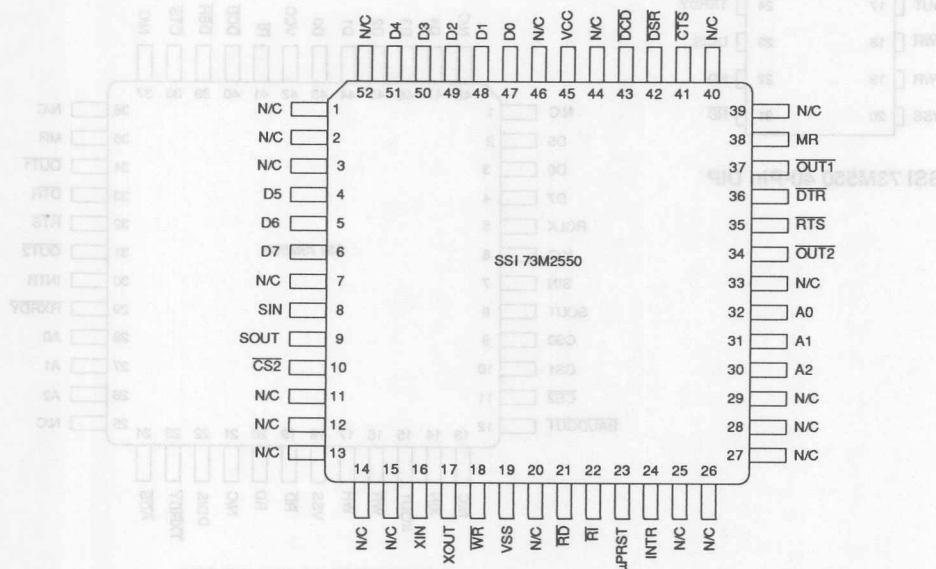
CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



SSI 73M1550 UART
28-Pin PLCC



SSI 73M2550 UART
28-Pin PLCC

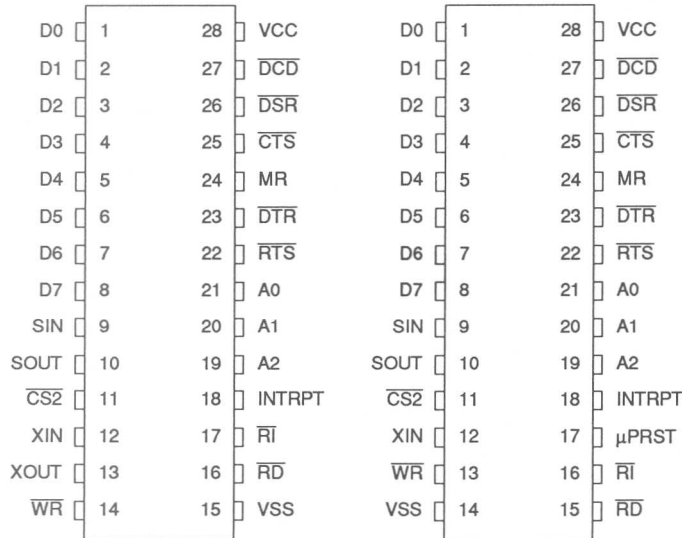


SSI 73M2550 52-Lead QFP

SSI 73M550

SSI 73M1550/2550

UART with FIFOs



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73M1550 UART
28-Pin DIP

SSI 73M2550 UART
28-Pin DIP

4

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 73M550 | 40-pin PDIP | 73M550-IP | 73M550-IP |
| | 44-pin PLCC | 73M550-IH | 73M550-IH |
| | 48-lead TQFP | 73M550-IGT | 73M550-IGT |
| SSI 73M1550 | 28-pin DIP | 73M1550-IP | 73M1550-IP |
| SSI 73M1550 | 28-pin PLCC | 73M1550-IH | 73M1550-IH |
| SSI 73M2550 | 28-pin PLCC | 73M2550-IH | 73M2550-IH |
| | 28-pin DIP | 73M2550-IP | 73M2550-IP |
| | 52-lead QFP | 73M2550-IG | 73M2550-IG |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

Notes:

CAUTION: Use handling procedures recommended for a static sensitive component.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|-------|----|----|------|----|-------|----|----|------|
| 1 | VCC | 28 | 1 | D0 | 1 | VCC | 28 | 1 | D0 |
| 2 | DC0 | 27 | 2 | D1 | 2 | DC0 | 27 | 2 | D1 |
| 3 | D0A | 26 | 3 | D2 | 3 | D0A | 26 | 3 | D2 |
| 4 | CYS | 25 | 4 | D3 | 4 | CYS | 25 | 4 | D3 |
| 5 | MR | 24 | 5 | D4 | 5 | MR | 24 | 5 | D4 |
| 6 | DTR | 23 | 6 | D5 | 6 | DTR | 23 | 6 | D5 |
| 7 | RYS | 22 | 7 | D6 | 7 | RYS | 22 | 7 | D6 |
| 8 | A0 | 21 | 8 | D7 | 8 | A0 | 21 | 8 | D7 |
| 9 | A1 | 20 | 9 | SIN | 9 | A1 | 20 | 9 | SIN |
| 10 | A2 | 19 | 10 | SOUT | 10 | A2 | 19 | 10 | SOUT |
| 11 | INTPT | 18 | 11 | CSS | 11 | INTPT | 18 | 11 | CSS |
| 12 | INTPT | 17 | 12 | XIN | 12 | INTPT | 17 | 12 | XIN |
| 13 | HI | 16 | 13 | WR | 13 | RD | 16 | 13 | XOUT |
| 14 | RD | 15 | 14 | VSS | 14 | VSS | 15 | 14 | WR |

SSI 73M250 PART
28-pin DIP

SSI 73M1550 PART
28-pin DIP

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|-------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 73M250 40-pin PDIP | 73M250-IP | 73M250-IP |
| SSI 73M250 44-pin PLCC | 73M250-IH | 73M250-IH |
| SSI 73M250 48-lead TOP | 73M250-IGT | 73M250-IGT |
| SSI 73M1550 28-pin DIP | 73M1550-IP | 73M1550-IP |
| SSI 73M1550 28-pin PLCC | 73M1550-IH | 73M1550-IH |
| SSI 73M250 28-pin PLCC | 73M250-IH | 73M250-IH |
| SSI 73M250 28-pin DIP | 73M250-IP | 73M250-IP |
| SSI 73M250 52-lead QFP | 73M250-IG | 73M250-IG |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7052 (714) 873-6500 FAX (714) 873-6314

Section **5**

SPECIAL MODEM PRODUCTS

5

MODERN PRODUCTS SPECIAL

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73M223 modem device receives and transmits serial and binary data over existing telephone networks using Frequency Shift Keying (FSK). It provides the filtering, modulation, and demodulation to implement a serial, asynchronous data communication channel. The SSI 73M223 employs the CCITT V.23 signaling frequencies of 1302 and 2097 Hz, operating at 1200 baud, and is intended for half duplex operation over a two-line system.

The SSI 73M223 provides a cost-effective alternative to existing modem solutions. It is ideally suited for R.F. data links, credit verification systems, point-of-sale terminals, and remote process control.

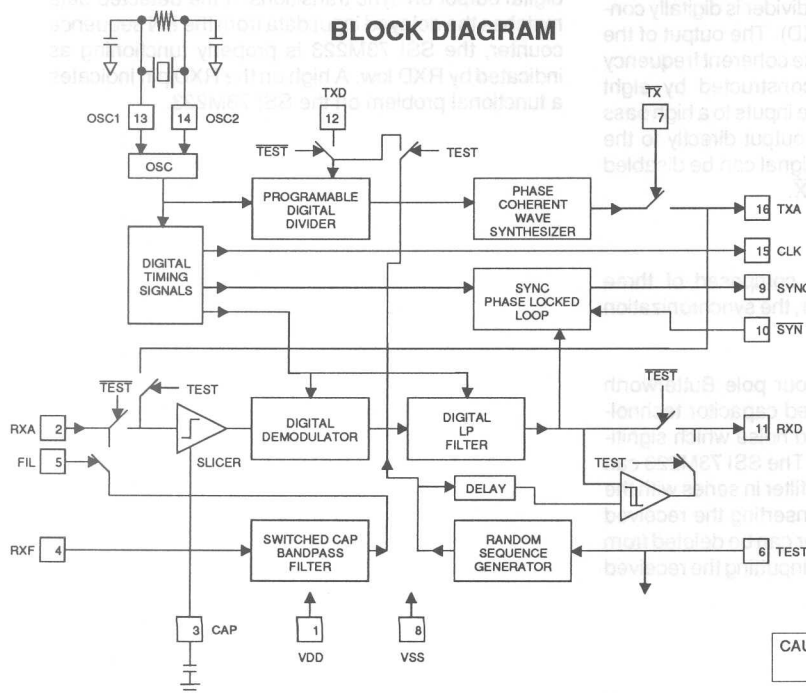
CMOS technology ensures small size, low-power consumption and enhanced reliability.

FEATURES

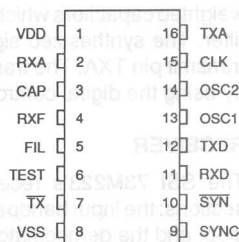
- **Low cost FSK Modem**
- **1200 baud operation**
- **CMOS switched capacitor technology**
- **Built-in self-test feature**
- **On-chip filtering, and Modulation/Demodulation**
- **Uses CCITT V.23 frequencies**
- **On chip crystal oscillator**
- **Low power/High reliability**
- **16-pin plastic packages**

5

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 73M223

1200 Baud FSK Modem

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73M223 has four main functional sections: timing, transmit, receive, and test. Each section of the chip will be individually described below.

TIMING

The timing section contains the oscillator (OSC) and random logic which generates digital timing signals used throughout the chip. The time base can be derived from 3.18 MHz crystal or an external digital input. The digital timing logic divides the oscillator frequency to give a 1200 Hz output than can be used for system timing. The signaling frequencies are 1302 Hz for logic "1" and 2097 Hz for logic "0." The modem will operate with clock inputs from 330 kHz to 3.3 MHz. However, the signaling frequencies and the system timing will be directly proportional to the difference in clock frequency.

TRANSMITTER

The SSI 73M223 transmitter consists of a programmable divider that drives a coherent phase frequency synthesizer. The programmable divider is digitally controlled via the Data Input pin (TXD). The output of the divider clocks a 16 segment phase coherent frequency synthesizer. A sine wave is constructed by eight weighted capacitors which are the inputs to a high pass filter. The synthesized signal is output directly to the transmit pin TXA. The transmit signal can be disabled by using the digital control pin TX.

RECEIVER

The SSI 73M223's receiver is comprised of three sections: the input bandpass filter, the synchronization loop, and the demodulator.

The input bandpass filter is a four pole Butterworth filter, implemented using switched capacitor technology. This filter reduces wideband noise which significantly improves data error rates. The SSI 73M223 can be configured with the bandpass filter in series with the receiver by setting FIL = 1 and inserting the received signal at RXF. The bandpass filter can be deleted from the system by setting FIL = 0 and inputting the received signal through RXA.

The demodulator is used to detect a received mark or space.

The synchronization for sampling the digital output at RXD is derived from a digital phase locked loop. The phase locked loop is clocked at 16 times the bit rate with a maximum lock period of 8 clocks to lock on the data output signal. The output is nominally 1200 Hz, but is resynchronized to the center of the data bit on each data transition.

SELF TEST MODE

The SSI 73M223 features an autotest mode which provides easy field test capability of the chip's functionality. The modem is placed in the test mode by taking the test pin high. In the test mode the Data Input pin is disconnected and the programmable divider is driven by a pseudo random PN sequence generator and the transmitter's output is connected to the receiver's input. The input data to the programmable divider is delayed by the system delay time and compared to the digital output on sync transitions. If the detected data matches the delayed input data from the PN sequence counter, the SSI 73M223 is properly functioning as indicated by RXD low. A high on the RXD pin indicates a functional problem on the SSI 73M223.

SSI 73M223

1200 Baud FSK Modem

PIN DESCRIPTION

| PIN NO. | PIN NAME | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-------------------------|--|
| 1 | VDD | Positive Supply Voltage. Bypasses to Vss with 0.1 μ F capacitor. |
| 2 | RXA | Receive Analog Input. Analog input from the telephone network. |
| 3 | CAP | Capacitor. Connect a 0.1 μ F capacitor between Pin 3 and ground (VSS). |
| 4 | RXF | Filtered Receive Analog Input |
| 5 | FIL | Analog Input Control. A logical 1 selects the filtered input. A logical 0 selects the non-filtered input. |
| 6 | TEST | Self-Test Mode Control. Normal operation when a logical 0. A logical 1 places the device into the self-test mode. A low appears at RXD, to indicate a properly functioning device. |
| 7 | $\overline{\text{TX}}$ | Transmitter Control. A logical 0 selects transmit mode. A logical 1 selects a stand-by condition forcing TXA to VDD/2 VDC. |
| 8 | VSS | Ground |
| 9 | SYNC | Synchronous Clock Output. Digital output synchronized with the 1200 bit/s received data and used to sample the received eye pattern. |
| 10 | $\overline{\text{SYN}}$ | Sync Disable. A logical 1 input disables the phase locked signal from the received data and locks it to the 1200 Hz reference. Logic 0 enables Rec PLL. |
| 11 | RXD | Receiver Digital Output |
| 12 | TXD | Transmitter Digital Input |
| 13 | OSC1 | Crystal Input (3.1872 MHz) or External Clock Input |
| 14 | OSC2 | Crystal Return |
| 15 | CLK | 1200 Hz Squarewave Output. Can drive up to 10 CMOS loads. |
| 16 | TXA | Transmitter Analog Output |

5

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Recommended conditions apply unless otherwise specified.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation outside these rating limits may cause permanent damage to this device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Power Supply Voltage (VDD-VSS) | 14 V |
| Analog Input Voltage at RXA | - 0.3 to VDD V |
| Analog Input Voltage at RXF | - 3 to VDD V |
| Digital Input Voltage | VSS - 0.3 to VDD + 0.3 V |
| Storage Temperature Range | - 65 to + 150 °C |
| Operating Temperature Range | - 25 to + 70 °C |
| Lead Temperature (10 secs soldering) | 260 °C |

SSI 73M223

1200 Baud FSK Modem

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Unless otherwise specified, $4.5 < VDD < 13$ VDC, $VSS = 0$ VDC, $-25^{\circ}C < T_A$

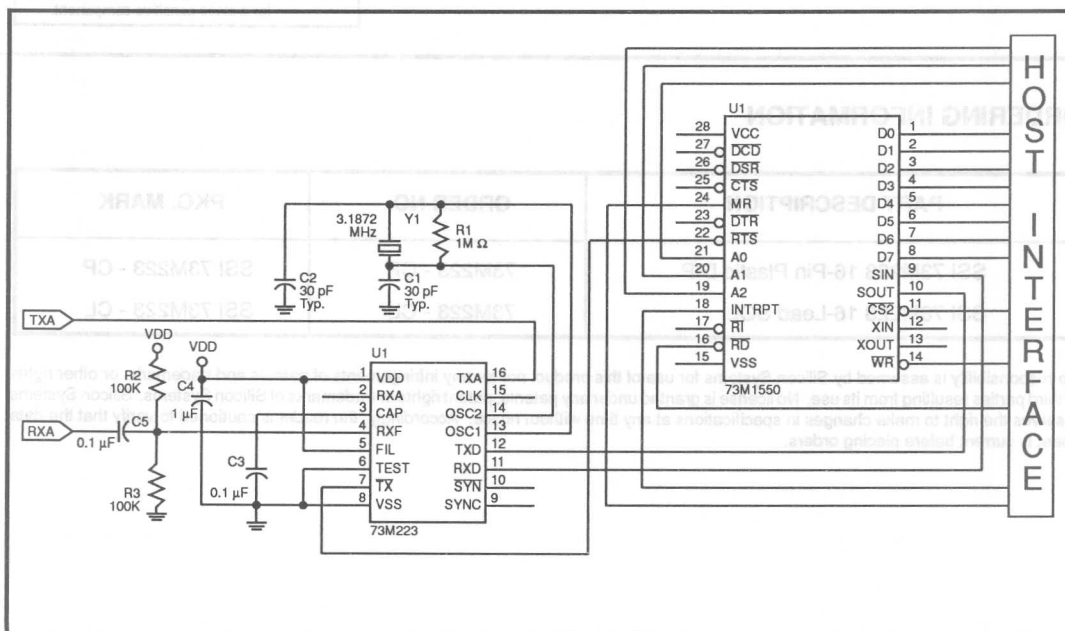
POWER SUPPLY

| PARAMETER | TEST CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|-------|--------------------|---------|
| VDD Voltage Supply Range | | 4.5 | | 13 | V |
| Supply Current | VDD = 5V 25° C | | 2.0 | | mA |
| | VDD = 12V 25° C | | 5.0 | | mA |
| Digital Inputs | | | | | |
| Input Low Voltage VIL | | VSS - 0.3 | | VSS + 1.5 | V |
| Input High Voltage VIH | | VDD - 1.5 | | VDD + 0.3 | V |
| Input Low Current IIL | | -1 | | | μ A |
| Input High Current IIH | | | | 1 | μ A |
| Digital Outputs | | | | | |
| Output Low Voltage VOL | IOL < 1 μ A | | | 0.05 | V |
| Output High Voltage VOH | IOL < -1 μ A VDD = 5V | 4.95 | | | V |
| Output Low Current IOL | VOL = 0.4V VDD = 5V | 0.5 | | | mA |
| Output High Current IOH | VOH = 4.5V VDD = 5V | -0.2 | | | mA |
| Analog Input Level @ RXA | Centered at VDD/2 + 0.5V | 0.2 | | VDD/4 | Vpp |
| Analog Input Level @ RXF | *DC Level between VDD & VSS | 0.2 | | VDD/2 | VDC |
| Error Rate | S/N = 8dB Input @ RXF | | | 5×10^{-3} | |
| Analog Output Level @ TXA | RL \geq 10K TX = 0 | | VDD/4 | | Vpp |
| | TX = 1 | | VDD/2 | | VDC |
| Output Frequency @ TXA | XTAL = 3.1872MHz TXD=1 | | 1302 | | Hz |
| | TXD=0 | | 2097 | | Hz |
| Output Harmonics | 2nd to 14th Harmonics | | -60 | -50 | dB |
| | 15th Harmonic | | | -20 | dB |
| Input Filter (RFX) | *Input = 200 m Vpp to VDD/2 Vpp | | | | |
| Lower 3dB Corner | | | 760 | | Hz |
| Upper 3dB Corner | | | 2625 | | Hz |

* Note: The SSI 73M223 RXF input is AC coupled internally but the DC value of the input must be between the two supplies VDD & VSS.

The SSI 73M223 modem chip allows low cost communications in a private network, utilizing twisted pair telephone wires. This chip is the prime choice of those designers who require an efficient, high performance modem solution for dedicated private networks, HDX dial-up and other specialized applications. Such applications include credit verification systems, point-of-sale terminals, remote process control, private data links and acoustic modem designs. No microprocessors or external adjustments are necessary with this device.

A typical implementation on the SSI 73M223 is shown in the figure below. An SSI 73M1550 UART receives data to be transmitted from a microprocessor bus. The UART sends the data in a serial format to the SSI 73M223 modem after inserting the necessary start and stop bits. The modem transmits this data to the far end via the TXA pin. Full-duplex operation can be implemented by utilizing separate transmit and receive circuits. A USART can be used instead of a UART if synchronous operation is desired. With synchronous operation, a USART uses the modem's SYNC signal for timing to sample the received data, and the modem's CLK signal to send data clock to be transmitted.



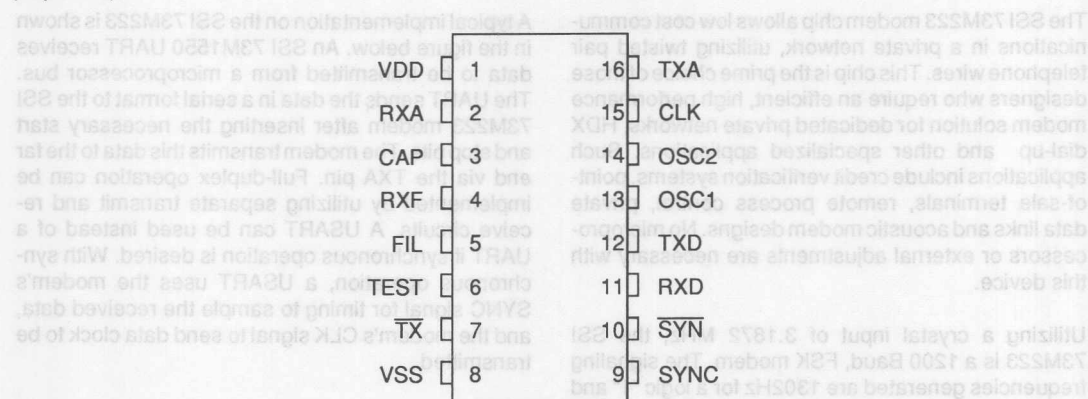
5-5

SSI 73M223

1200 Baud FSK Modem

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



16-Pin DIP and
16-Lead SOL

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-------------------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| SSI 73M223 16-Pin Plastic DIP | 73M223 - CP | SSI 73M223 - CP |
| SSI 73M223 16-Lead SOL | 73M223 - CL | SSI 73M223 - CL |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

January 1994

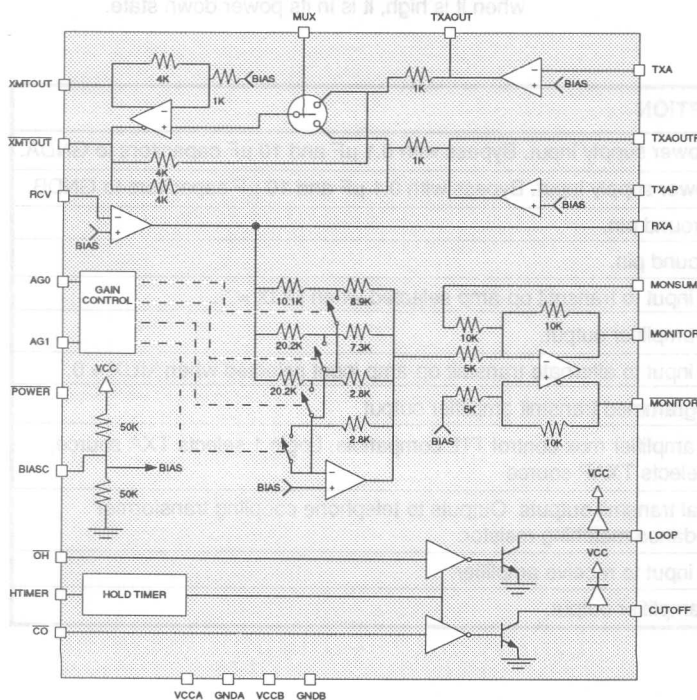
DESCRIPTION

The SSI 73M376 K-Series Integrated Line Interface Unit (LIU) enables the modem to make direct connections to the Public Switched Telephone Network. This single chip data access arrangement integrates all external active (modem side) components required in K-Series modem designs. The SSI 73M376 operates from a single 5 volt supply ideally suited for low power portable applications. Along with the transmit and receive function, it provides transmit and receive amplifiers, programmable audio monitor, and relay drivers. In the transmit path it has provision for level programmable gain path as well as a normal gain path which can be switched via a TTL input. The 73M376 comes in a 28-lead PLCC package.

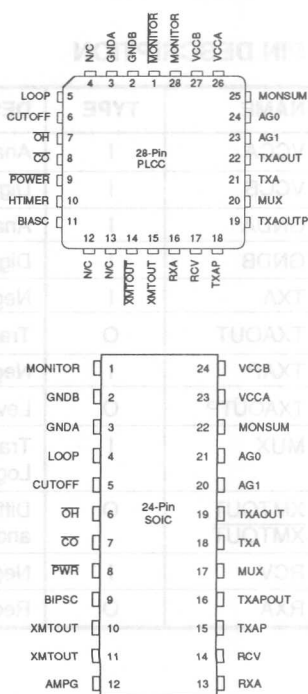
FEATURES

- **One-Chip data access arrangement**
- **Compatible with all SSI K-Series Modem Products**
- **On-board receive and transmit paths. Transmit has level programmability**
- **On-board differential speaker driver with four step variable gain**
- **On-board relay driver with power conserving hold state**
- **Low power (85 mW) with power down mode (25 mW) when on-hook**
- **Operates from a single +5V supply**

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



5

SSI 73M376

Integrated Line Interface

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The transmit output uses a differential drive to allow undistorted signals to be sent with a single 5 volt supply. Each output supplies half the drive signal to the transformer thus increasing the available output amplitude by 100%. Two dedicated transmit op-amps are supplied with the outputs and minus inputs brought out so that external resistors and capacitors can be connected facilitating gain setting and filtering. The TTL input, MUX, switches the output of the op-amps to the differential driver. If the MUX input is pulled high, or left floating, the TXA op-amp is selected. If the MUX input is pulled low the TXAP op-amp is selected.

The receive input, RCV, is the minus input of a dedicated op-amp where external resistors and capacitors can be connected facilitating gain setting and filtering. The bias, or plus, input for all the dedicated op-amps are connected to a VCC/2 bias point which allows for maximum swing between the supply rails. The VCC/2 bias point is brought out to an external pin, BIASC, where a compensation capacitor can be connected for power supply noise filtering.

The audio monitor gain stage has the RXA output as its input and has four gain settings; off or squelch, low, medium, and high. The output of the gain cell is fed to a summer where a signal can be summed in through the MONSUM pin. The audio amp differential output can drive an 8Ω speaker with up to 400 mW rms of power. A capacitor needs to be in series with the speaker so no DC current will flow.

On board relay drivers can directly drive the loop and cutoff relays. The TTL input $\overline{\text{OH}}$ (Off Hook) controls the loop relay driver. The TTL input $\overline{\text{CO}}$ (Cut Off) controls the cutoff relay driver. A timer, which uses an external timing capacitor connected to the HTIMER pin, is available to set a delay after relay energizing before the driver will go into its hold state. A negative transition on $\overline{\text{OH}}$ or $\overline{\text{CO}}$ starts the timer. When the timer has expired, both relay drivers will go into the hold state. While the timer is timing the relay drivers are in their full energizing state. If $\overline{\text{OH}}$ is low and $\overline{\text{CO}}$ goes low before the timer expires, or vice versa, then the timer will reset and start timing again.

The TTL input $\overline{\text{POWER}}$ controls the power down state. When $\overline{\text{POWER}}$ is low the part is powered up and when it is high, it is in its power down state.

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|------|---|
| VCCA | I | Analog power supply input. Bypass with 0.1 μF and 10 μF capacitors to GNDA. |
| VCCB | I | Digital power supply input. Bypass with 0.1 μF and 10 μF capacitors to GNDB. |
| GNDA | I | Analog ground pin. |
| GNDB | I | Digital ground pin. |
| TXA | I | Negative input to transmit op-amp selected when MUX = 1. |
| TXAOUT | O | Transmit amplifier output. |
| TXAP | I | Negative input to alternate transmit op-amp input selected when MUX = 0. |
| TXAOUTP | O | Level programmed transmit amplifier output. |
| MUX | I | Transmit amplifier mux control TTL compatible. Logic 1 selects TXA source, Logic 0 selects TXAP source |
| XMTOUT, XMTOUT | O | Differential transmit outputs. Outputs to telephone coupling transformer and impedance matching resistor. |
| RCV | I | Negative input to receive amplifier. |
| RXA | O | Receive amplifier output. |

SSI 73M376

Integrated Line Interface

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|------|--|
| MONITOR, MONITOR | O | Differential audio amplifier outputs. AC couple with non-polarized electrolytic capacitor for minimum current consumption due to DC offset between pins. Only monitor is available with the VSOP-24 package and must be AC coupled to the speaker. |
| MONSUM | I | Monitor summing input; selected when AG1 and AG0 = 0 |
| AG0, AG1 | I | Audio monitor amplifier level. TTL compatible inputs to set audio level on monitor pins. |
| BIASC | I | VCC/2 bias compensation point. Connect 0.1 μ F capacitor to Gnd A. |
| $\overline{\text{OH}}$ | I | Off hook, active low TTL compatible input. Controls the loop relay. |
| $\overline{\text{CO}}$ | I | Cut off, active low TTL compatible input. Controls the cutoff relay. |
| HTIMER | I | Relay hold timing control pin connect to GND if not used. |
| LOOP | O | Loop relay drive output. |
| CUTOFF | O | Cutoff relay drive output. |
| $\overline{\text{POWER}}$ | I | Power Control TTL compatible input. Controls power down mode. Low logic level powers up 73M376. |
| AMPG | I | VSOP-24 package only - input to speaker amplifier. Connect to RXA. |

5

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above absolute maximum ratings may permanently damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING | UNIT |
|---------------------------------|------------|--------------------|
| VCC Supply Voltage | 7 | V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150 | $^{\circ}\text{C}$ |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 300 | $^{\circ}\text{C}$ |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

Unless otherwise specified $4.50\text{V} < \text{Vcc} < 5.50\text{V}$ and $0^{\circ}\text{C} < \text{T(ambient)} < 70^{\circ}\text{C}$. Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the highest absolute value.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|-----|-----|------|-------|
| VCC SUPPLY VOLTAGE | | | | | |
| +5V | POWER low Outputs unloaded | | | 17.0 | mA |
| +5V | POWER high | | | 5.0 | mA |

SSI 73M376

Integrated Line Interface

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|----------------------|---|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| Junction Temperature | Relay drivers in hold state driving maximum current. MONITOR, MONITOR driving 8Ω speaker to max rms power | | | 135 | °C |

DIGITAL PINS

(TTL compatible inputs: AG0, AG1, \overline{OH} , \overline{CO} , MUX, \overline{POWER} pins)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--------------------|-------------|------|-----|---------|-------|
| Input low voltage | (VIL) | -0.3 | | 0.8 | V |
| Input high voltage | (VOH) | 2.0 | | VCC+0.3 | V |
| Input low current | VIL = 0.4 V | 0.0 | | -0.4 | mA |
| Input high current | VIH = 2.4 V | | | 100 | μA |

TRANSMIT AND RECEIVE SECTION

| | | | | | |
|---|---|------|----|------|----|
| Transmit Gain Single ended into Differential | $\frac{(\overline{XMTOUT} - \overline{XMTOUT})}{TXAOUT}$ MUX=High | 11.5 | | 12.5 | dB |
| Transmit Gain Single ended into Differential | $\frac{(\overline{XMTOUT} - \overline{XMTOUT})}{TXAOUTP}$ MUX=Low | 11.5 | | 12.5 | dB |
| XMTOUT, \overline{XMTOUT} Differential Output Impedance | | | | 30 | Ω |
| Transmit THD | 7V p-p differential From TXA or TXAP to XMTOUT- \overline{XMTOUT} with Op-Amp gain=0dB @ 1 kHz Zload = 600 Ω speaker driver off | | | -72 | dB |
| Max. Capacitive differential load XMTOUT, \overline{XMTOUT} | | | | 300 | pF |
| RCV, TXA, TXAP input impedance | | | 1 | | MΩ |
| RCV, TXA, TXAP input offset voltage | RCV - VCC/2 TXA - VCC/2 TXAP - VCC/2 | | 10 | | mV |
| RCV, TXA, TXAP input bias current | Vin = VCC/2 | | | 500 | nA |

SSI 73M376

Integrated Line Interface

TRANSMIT AND RECEIVE SECTION (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|---|-----|-----|-----|----------|
| Receive THD | From receive Op-Amp input to RXA with Op-Amp gain=8dB 4 kHz speaker driver off | | | -72 | dB |
| Max. Capacitive load, TXAOUT, TXAOUTP, RXA | | | | 150 | pF |
| Transmit and Receive Op-Amps Unity Gain Bandwidth | | | 500 | | kHz |
| BIASC impedance $V_{BIASC}=V_{CC}/2$ | | 18K | | | Ω |

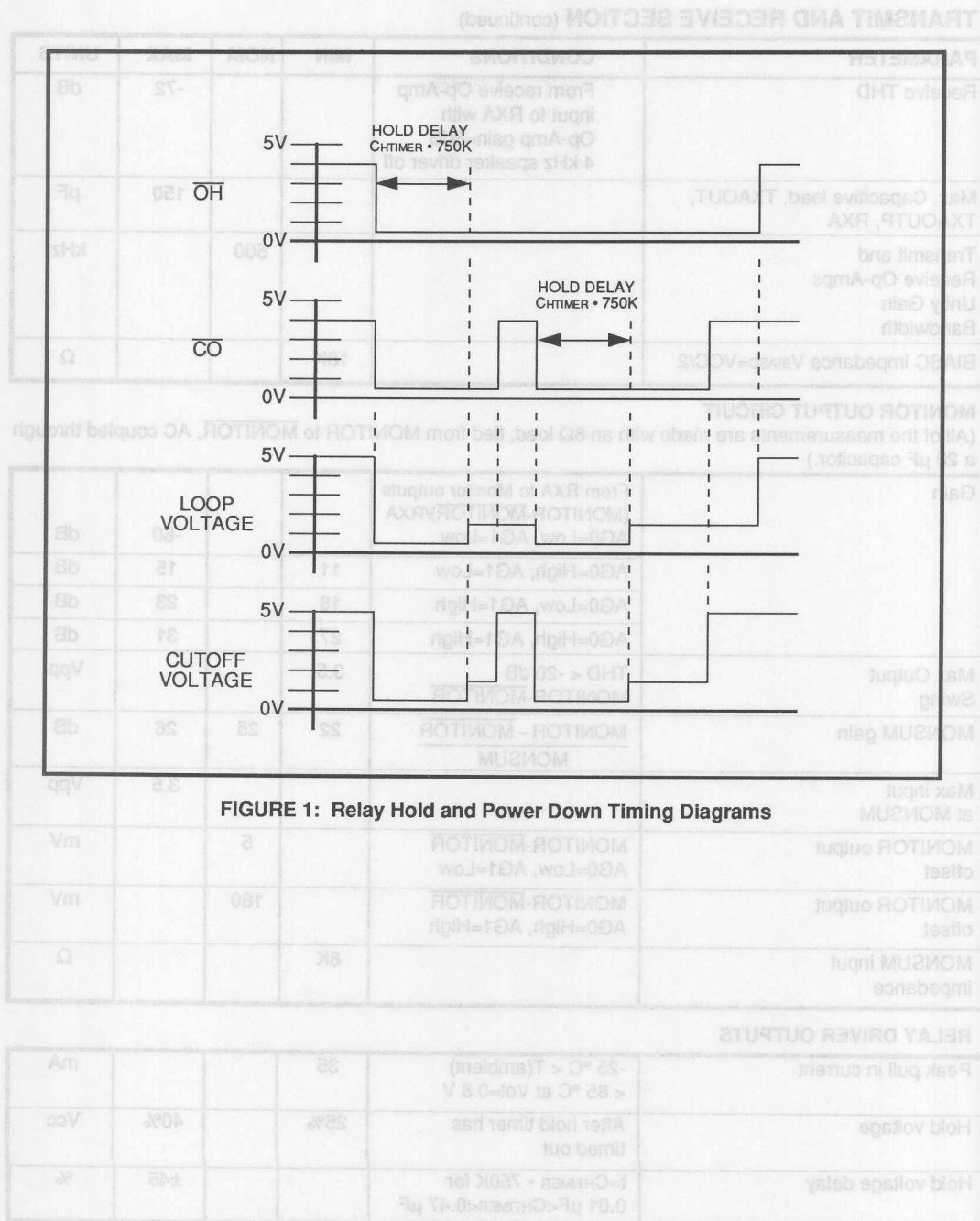
MONITOR OUTPUT CIRCUIT

(All of the measurements are made with an 8Ω load, tied from MONITOR to $\overline{\text{MONITOR}}$, AC coupled through a $20\mu\text{F}$ capacitor.)

| | | | | | |
|------------------------|---|-----|-----|-----|----------|
| Gain | From RXA to Monitor outputs (MONITOR-MONITOR)/RXA AG0=Low, AG1=Low | | | -60 | dB |
| | AG0=High, AG1=Low | 11 | | 15 | dB |
| | AG0=Low, AG1=High | 18 | | 23 | dB |
| | AG0=High, AG1=High | 27 | | 31 | dB |
| Max Output Swing | THD < -20 dB MONITOR-MONITOR | 3.5 | | | Vpp |
| MONSUM gain | $\frac{\text{MONITOR} - \overline{\text{MONITOR}}}{\text{MONSUM}}$ | 22 | 25 | 26 | dB |
| Max input at MONSUM | | | | 3.5 | Vpp |
| MONITOR output offset | MONITOR-MONITOR AG0=Low, AG1=Low | | 5 | | mV |
| MONITOR output offset | MONITOR-MONITOR AG0=High, AG1=High | | 180 | | mV |
| MONSUM input impedance | | 8K | | | Ω |

RELAY DRIVER OUTPUTS

| | | | | | |
|----------------------|---|-----|--|-----|-----|
| Peak pull in current | -25 °C < T(ambient) < 85 °C at Vol=0.8 V | 35 | | | mA |
| Hold voltage | After hold timer has timed out | 25% | | 40% | Vcc |
| Hold voltage delay | $t = C_{HTIMER} \cdot 750K$ for $0.01\mu\text{F} < C_{HTIMER} < 0.47\mu\text{F}$ | | | ±45 | % |



SS1 73M376



SSI 73M376 Integrated Line Interface

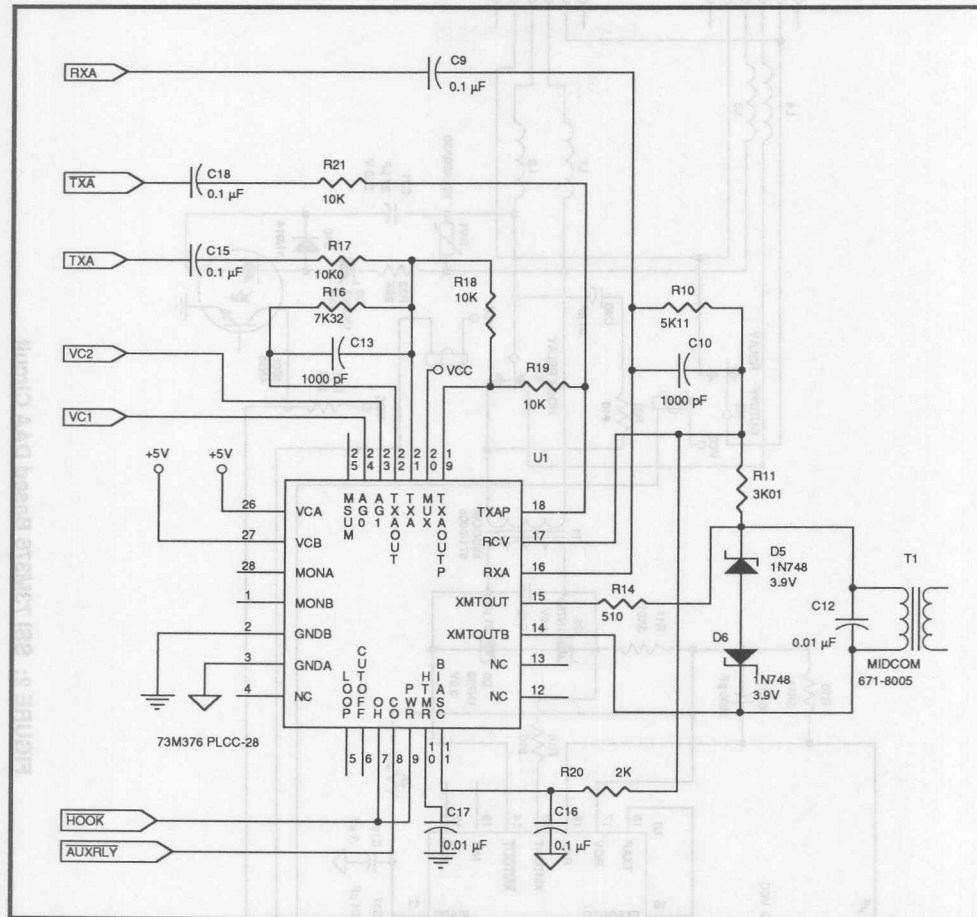


FIGURE 3: SSI 73M376 Based DAA Circuit with Differential Transmit Input

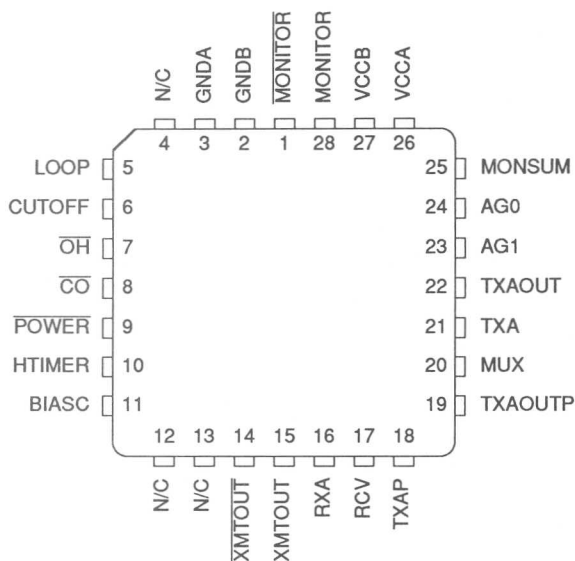
SSI 73M376

Integrated Line Interface

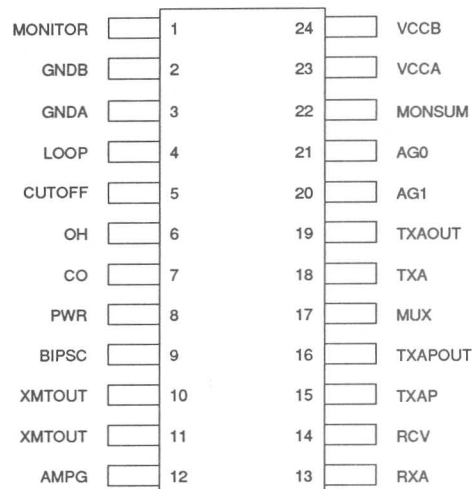
PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



28-Pin PLCC



24-Lead VSOP

5

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| SSI 73M376 28-Pin PLCC | 73M376-CH | 73M376-CH |
| SSI 73M376 24-Lead VSOP | 73M376-CV | 73M376-CV |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

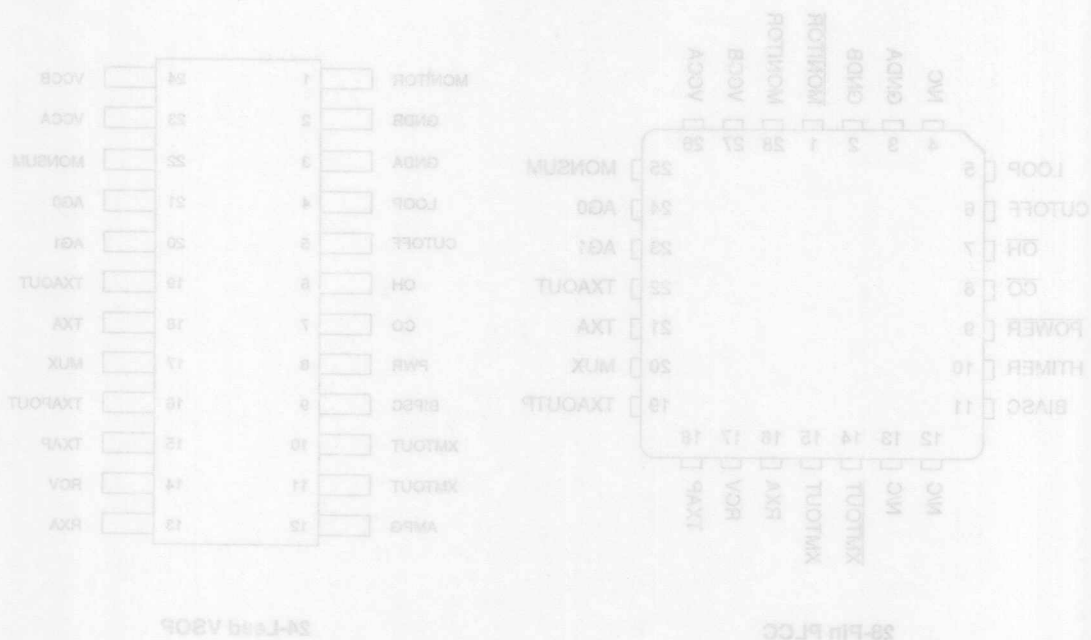
SSI 73M376 Integrated Line Interface

Notes:

CAUTION: Use handling procedures for a static sensitive component.

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|--------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| SSI 73M376 28-Pin PLCC | 73M376-CH | 73M376-CH |
| SSI 73M376 24-Lead VSO-P | 73M376-CV | 73M376-CV |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product not for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, trademarks or other rights of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14551 Hybrid Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7032 (714) 573-6000 FAX (714) 573-6214

Section **6**

ANALOG SIGNALLING & SWITCHING

ANALOG SIGNALING & SWITCHING

October 1991

DESCRIPTION

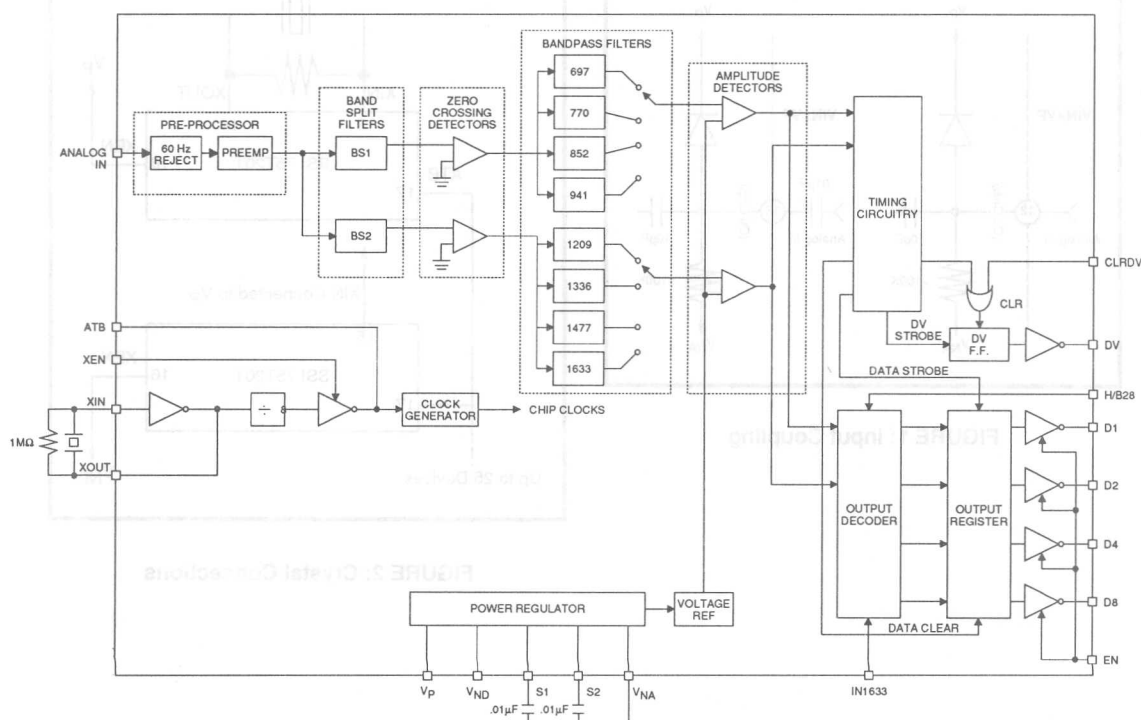
The SSI 75T201 is a complete Dual-Tone Multifrequency (DTMF) receiver detecting a selectable group of 12 or 16 standard digits. No front-end prefiltering is needed. The only external components required are an inexpensive 3.58 MHz television "colorburst" crystal (for frequency reference) and two low-tolerance bypass capacitors. Extremely high system density is made possible by using the clock output of a crystal connected SSI 75T201 receiver to drive the time bases of additional receivers. The SSI 75T201 is a monolithic integrated circuit fabricated with low-power, complementary symmetry MOS (CMOS) processing. It requires only a single low tolerance voltage supply and is packaged in a standard 22-pin DIP.

(Continued)

FEATURES

- Central office quality
- NO front-end band-splitting filters required
- Single, low-tolerance, 12-volt supply
- Detects either 12 or 16 standard DTMF digits
- Uses inexpensive 3.579545 MHz crystal for reference
- Excellent speech immunity
- Output in either 4-bit hexadecimal code or binary coded 2-of-8
- 22-pin DIP package for high system density
- Synchronous or handshake interface
- Three-state outputs

BLOCK DIAGRAM



6

SSI 75T201 Integrated DTMF Receiver

DESCRIPTION (Continued)

The SSI 75T201 employs state-of-the-art circuit technology to combine digital and analog functions on the same CMOS chip using a standard digital semiconductor process. The analog input is preprocessed by 60 Hz reject and band splitting filters and then hard-limited to provide AGC. Eight bandpass filters detect the individual tones. The digital post-processor times the tone durations and provides the correctly coded digital outputs. Outputs interface directly to standard CMOS circuitry, and are three-state enabled to facilitate bus-oriented architectures.

ANALOG IN

This pin accepts the analog input. It is internally biased so that the input signal may be AC coupled. The input may be DC coupled as long as it does not exceed the positive supply. Proper input coupling is illustrated in Figure 1.

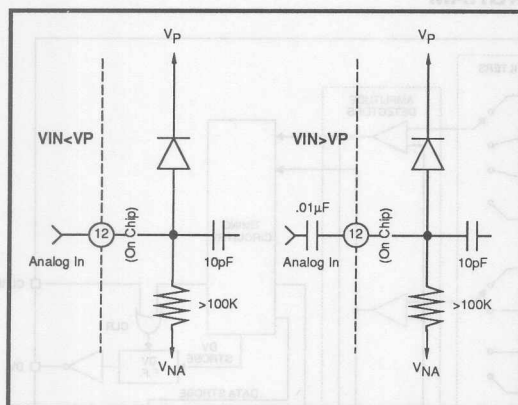


FIGURE 1: Input Coupling

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

The SSI 75T201 contains an onboard inverter with sufficient gain to provide oscillation when connected to a low-cost television "colorburst" crystal. The crystal oscillator is enabled by tying XEN high. The crystal is connected between XIN and XOUT. A 1 M Ω 10% resistor is also connected between these pins. In this mode, ATB is a clock frequency output. Other SSI 75T201's may use the same frequency reference by tying their ATB pins to the ATB of a crystal connected device. XIN and XEN of the auxiliary devices must then be tied high and low respectively. Twenty-five devices may run off a single crystal-connected SSI 75T201 as shown in Figure 2.

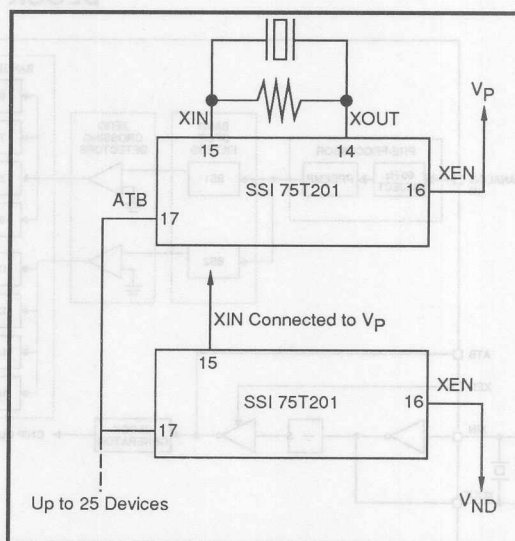


FIGURE 2: Crystal Connections

SSI 75T201 Integrated DTMF Receiver

H/B28

This pin selects the format of the digital output code. When H/B28 is tied high, the output is hexadecimal. When tied low, the output is binary coded 2-of-8. The table below describes the two output codes.

| Hexadecimal | | | | | Binary Coded 2-of-8 | | | | |
|-------------|----|----|----|----|---------------------|----|----|----|----|
| Digit | D8 | D4 | D2 | D1 | Digit | D8 | D4 | D2 | D1 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 2 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 7 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 7 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 9 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 9 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| * | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | * | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| # | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | # | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| A | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | A | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| B | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | B | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| C | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | C | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| D | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | D | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

TABLE 1: Output Codes

6

IN1633

When tied high, this pin inhibits detection of tone pairs containing the 1633 Hz component. For detection of all 16 standard digits, IN1633 must be tied low.

OUTPUTS D1, D2, D4, D8 and EN

Outputs D1, D2, D4, and D8 are CMOS push-pull when enabled (EN high) and open circuited (high impedance) when disabled by pulling EN low. These digital outputs provide the code corresponding to the detected digit in the format programmed by the H/B28 pin. The digital outputs become valid after a tone pair has been detected and they are then cleared when a valid pause is timed.

DV and CLRDV

DV signals a detection by going high after a valid tone pair is sensed and decoded at the output pins D1, D2, D4, and D8. DV remains high until a valid pause occurs or the CLRDV is raised high, whichever comes first.

INTERNAL BYPASS PINS, S1, S2

In order for the SSI 75T201 DTMF Receiver to function properly, these pins must be bypassed to V_{NA} with $0.01 \mu F \pm 20\%$ capacitors.

SSI 75T201

Integrated

DTMF Receiver

POWER SUPPLY PINS, V_P , V_{NA} , V_{ND}

The analog (V_{NA}) and digital (V_{ND}) supplies are brought out separately to enhance analog noise immunity on the chip. V_{NA} and V_{ND} should be connected externally as shown in Figure 3.

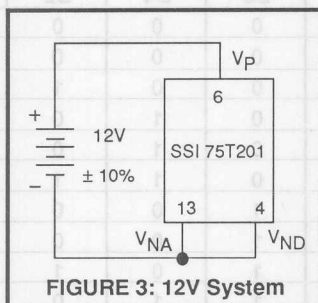


FIGURE 3: 12V System

N/C PINS

These pins have no internal connection and may be left floating.

| | Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Row 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | A |
| Row 1 | 4 | 5 | 6 | B |
| Row 2 | 7 | 8 | 9 | C |
| Row 3 | * | 0 | # | D |

NOTE: Column 3 is for special applications and is not normally used in telephone dialing.

FIGURE 4: DTMF Dialing Matrix

DETECTION FREQUENCY

| Low Group f_0 | High Group f_0 |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Row 0 = 697 Hz | Column 0 = 1209 Hz |
| Row 1 = 770 Hz | Column 1 = 1336 Hz |
| Row 2 = 852 Hz | Column 2 = 1477 Hz |
| Row 3 = 941 Hz | Column 3 = 1633 Hz |

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above absolute maximum ratings may damage the device. All SSI 75T201 unused inputs must be connected to V_P or V_{ND} , as appropriate.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|---|
| DC Supply Voltage - V_P Referenced to V_{NA} , V_{ND} | +16V |
| Operating Temperature | -40 to +85°C Ambient |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to +150°C |
| Power Dissipation (25°C) | 1W |
| Input Voltage (All inputs except ANALOG IN) | ($V_P + 0.5V$) to ($V_{ND} - 0.5V$) |
| ANALOG IN Voltage | ($V_P + 0.5V$) to ($V_P - 22V$) |
| DC Current into any Input | ±1.0 mA |
| Lead Temperature - Soldering, 10 sec. | 300°C |

SSI 75T201

Integrated

DTMF Receiver

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

($-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_a \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$, $V_P - V_{ND} = V_P - V_{NA} = 12\text{V} \pm 10\%$)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | TYP | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|--------------------------|-----------|--------------|--------------------------|
| Frequency Detect Bandwidth | | $\pm (1.5+2 \text{ Hz})$ | ± 2.3 | ± 3.0 | % of f_o |
| Amplitude for Detection | each tone | -24 | | +6 | dBm ref. to 600 Ω |
| Twist Tolerance | $\text{Twist} = \frac{\text{High Tone}}{\text{Low Tone}}$ | -8 | | +4 | dB |
| 60 Hz Tolerance | | | | 2 | Vrms |
| Dial Tone Tolerance | "precise" dial tone | | | 0 | dB* |
| Talk Off | MITEL tape #CM 7290 | | 2 | | hits |
| Digital Outputs (except XOUT) | "0" level, 750 μA load | V_{ND} | | $V_{ND}+0.5$ | V |
| | "1" level, 750 μA load | $V_P-0.5$ | | V_P | V |
| Digital Inputs (except H/B28, XEN) | "0" level | V_{ND} | | ** | V |
| | "1" level | *** | | V_P | V |
| Digital Inputs H/B28, XEN | "0" level | V_{ND} | | $V_{ND}+1$ | V |
| | "1" level | V_P-1 | | V_P | V |
| Power Supply Noise | wide band | | | 25 | mVp-p |
| Supply Current | $T_a = 25^{\circ}\text{C}$ $V_P - V_{NA} = V_P - V_{ND} = 12\text{V} \pm 10\%$ | | 29 | 50 | mA |
| Noise Tolerance | MITEL tape #CM 7290 | | | -12 | dB* |
| Input Impedance | $V_P \geq V_{IN} \geq V_P - 22$ | 100 k Ω 5 pF | | | |
| * dB referenced to lowest amplitude tone ** $V_{ND} + 0.3(V_P - V_{ND})$ *** $V_P - 0.3(V_P - V_{ND})$ | | | | | |

TIMING CHARACTERISTICS

($-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_a \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$, $V_P - V_{ND} = V_P - V_{NA} = 12\text{V} \pm 10\%$)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | TYP | MAX | UNITS |
|--|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|---------------|
| t_v Tone Detection Time | | 20 | 25 | 40 | ms |
| t_{slh} Data Overlap of DV Rising Edge | $CLRDV = V_{ND}$, $EN = V_P$ | 7 | | | μs |
| t_p Pause Detection Time | | 25 | 32 | 40 | ms |
| t_{dv} Time between end of Tone and Fall of DV | | 40 | 45 | 50 | ms |

SSI 75T201

Integrated

DTMF Receiver

TIMING CHARACTERISTICS (Continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | TYP | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|-----|------|-----|---------|
| t_{shl} Data overlap of DV Falling Edge | | 4 | 4.56 | 4.8 | ms |
| t_{phl} Prop. Delay: Rise of CLRDV to fall of DV | CI = 300 pF Measured at 50% points | | | 1 | μ s |
| Output Enable Time | CI = 300 pF, RI = 10K Measured from 50% point of Rising Edge of EN to the 50% point of the data output with RI to opposite rail. | | | 1 | μ s |
| Output Disable Time | CI = 300 pF, RI = 1K, $\Delta V = 1V$ Measured from 50% point of Falling Edge of EN to time at which output has changed 1V with RI to opposite rail. | | | 1 | μ s |
| Output 10-90% Transition Time | CI = 300 pF | | | 1 | μ s |

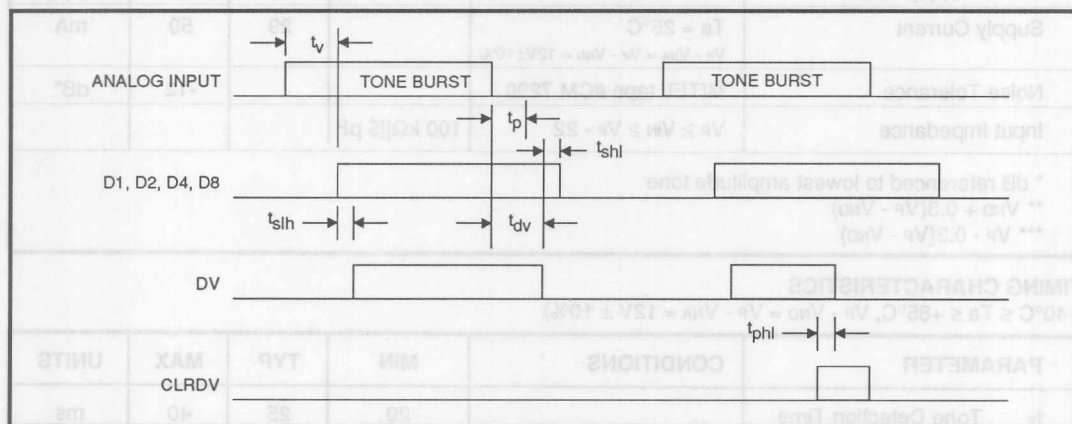


FIGURE 5: Timing Diagram

SSI 75T201 Integrated DTMF Receiver

APPLICATION INFORMATION

TELEPHONE LINE INTERFACE

In applications that use the SSI 75T201 to decode DTMF signals from a phone line, a DAA (Direct Access Arrangement) must be implemented. Equipment intended for connection to the public telephone network must comply with and be registered in accordance with FCC Part 68. For PBX applications refer to EIA Standard RS-464.

Some of the basic guidelines are:

- 1) Maximum voltage and current ratings of the SSI 75T201 must not be exceeded; this calls for protection from ringing voltage, if applicable, which ranges from 80 to 120 volts RMS over a 20 to 80Hz frequency range.
- 2) The interface equipment must not breakdown with high-voltage transient tests (including a 2500 volt peak surge) as defined in the applicable document.
- 3) Phone line termination must be less than 200Ω DC and approximately 600Ω AC (200-3200 Hz).
- 4) Termination must be capable of sustaining phone line loop current (off-hook condition) which is typically 18 to 120 mA DC.
- 5) The phone line termination must be electrically balanced with respect to ground.

6) Public phone line termination equipment must be registered in accordance to FCC Part 68 or connected through registered protection circuitry. Registration typically takes about six months.

Figure 6 shows a simplified phone line interface using a 600Ω 1:1 line transformer. Transformers specially designed for phone line coupling are available from many transformer manufacturers.

Figure 7 shows a more featured version of Figure 6. These added options include:

- 1) A 150-volt surge protector to eliminate high voltage spikes.
- 2) A Texas Instruments TCM1520A ring detector, optically isolated from the supervisory circuitry.
- 3) Back-to-back Zener diodes to protect the DTMF (and optional multiplexer Op-Amp) from ringing voltage.
- 4) Audio multiplexer which allows voice or other audio to be placed on the line (a recorded message, for example) and not interfere with incoming DTMF tone detection.

An integrated voice circuit may also be implemented for line coupling, such as the Texas Instruments TCM1705A, however, this approach is typically more expensive than using a transformer as shown above.

6

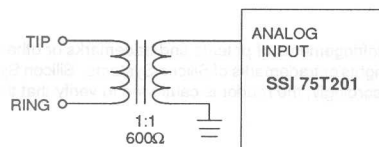


FIGURE 6: Simplified Interface

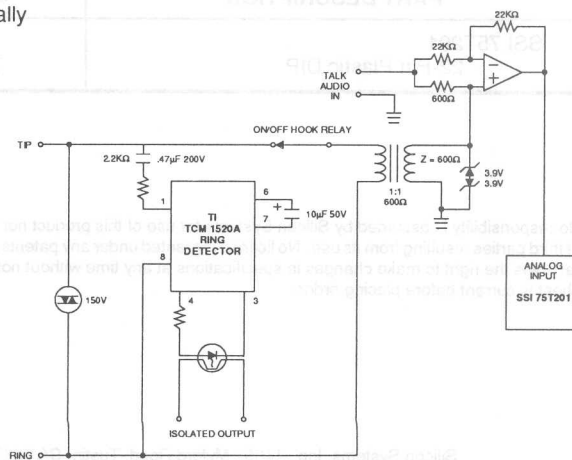


FIGURE 7: Full Featured Interface

SSI 75T201

Integrated

DTMF Receiver

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(TOP VIEW)

| | | | |
|--------|----|----|-----------|
| D1 | 1 | 22 | D2 |
| H/B28 | 2 | 21 | D4 |
| EN | 3 | 20 | D8 |
| VND | 4 | 19 | CLR DV |
| IN1633 | 5 | 18 | DV |
| Vp | 6 | 17 | ATB |
| N/C | 7 | 16 | XEN |
| N/C | 8 | 15 | XIN |
| S1 | 9 | 14 | XOUT |
| S2 | 10 | 13 | VNA |
| N/C | 11 | 12 | ANALOG IN |

22-Pin DIP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|----------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| SSI 75T201 22-Pin Plastic DIP | 75T201 - IP | 75T201 - IP |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

October 1991

DESCRIPTION

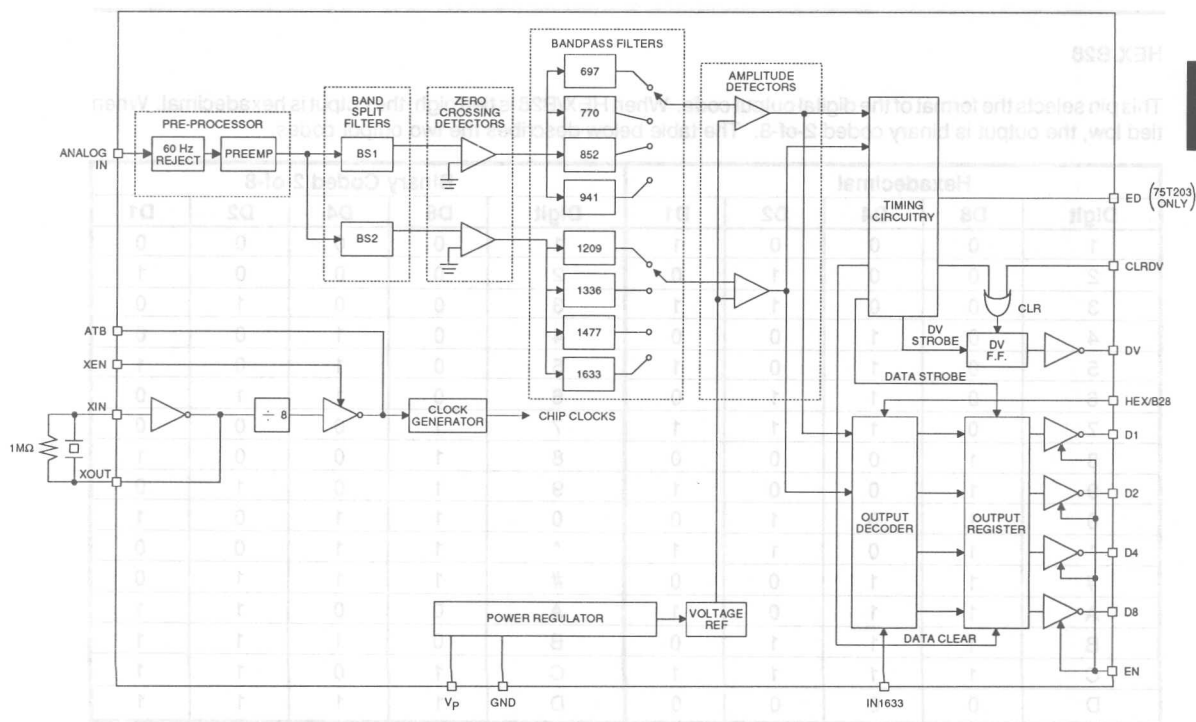
The SSI 75T202 and 75T203 are complete Dual-Tone Multifrequency (DTMF) receivers detecting a selectable group of 12 or 16 standard digits. No front-end pre-filtering is needed. The only externally required components are an inexpensive 3.58-MHz television "colorburst" crystal (for frequency reference) and a bias resistor. Extremely high system density is made possible by using the clock output of a crystal-connected SSI 75T202 or 75T203 receiver to drive the time bases of additional receivers. Both are monolithic integrated circuits fabricated with low-power, complementary symmetry MOS (CMOS) processing. They require only a single low tolerance voltage supply and are packaged in a standard 18-pin plastic DIP.

(Continued)

FEATURES

- Central office quality
- NO front-end band-splitting filters required
- Single, low-tolerance, 5-volt supply
- Detects either 12 or 16 standard DTMF digits
- Uses inexpensive 3.579545-MHz crystal for reference
- Excellent speech immunity
- Output in either 4-bit hexadecimal code or binary coded 2-of-8
- 18-pin DIP package for high system density
- Synchronous or handshake interface
- Three-state outputs
- Early detect output (SSI 75T203 only)

BLOCK DIAGRAM



6

SSI 75T202/203

5V Low-Power

DTMF Receiver

DESCRIPTION (Continued)

The SSI 75T202 and 75T203 employ state-of-the-art circuit technology to combine digital and analog functions on the same CMOS chip using a standard digital semiconductor process. The analog input is pre-processed by 60-Hz reject and band splitting filters and then hard-limited to provide AGC. Eight bandpass filters detect the individual tones. The digital post-processor times the tone durations and provides the correctly coded digital outputs. Outputs interface directly to standard CMOS circuitry, and are three-state enabled to facilitate bus-oriented architectures.

ANALOG IN

This pin accepts the analog input. It is internally biased so that the input signal may be AC coupled. The input may be DC coupled as long as it does not exceed the positive supply. Proper input coupling is illustrated in Figure 1.

The SSI 75T202 is designed to accept sinusoidal input wave forms but will operate satisfactorily with any input that has the correct fundamental frequency with harmonics less than -20 dB below the fundamental.

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

The SSI 75T202 and 75T203 contain an onboard inverter with sufficient gain to provide oscillation when connected to a low-cost television "colorburst" crystal. The crystal oscillator is enabled by tying XEN high. The crystal is connected between XIN and XOUT. A 1 M Ω 10% resistor is also connected between these pins. In this mode, ATB is a clock frequency output. Other SSI 75T202's (or 75T203's) may use the same frequency reference by tying their ATB pins to the ATB of a crystal connected device. XIN and XEN of the auxiliary devices must then be tied high and low respectively. Ten devices may run off a single crystal-connected SSI 75T202 or 75T203 as shown in Figure 2.

HEX/B28

This pin selects the format of the digital output code. When HEX/B28 is tied high, the output is hexadecimal. When tied low, the output is binary coded 2-of-8. The table below describes the two output codes.

| Hexadecimal | | | | | Binary Coded 2-of-8 | | | | |
|-------------|----|----|----|----|---------------------|----|----|----|----|
| Digit | D8 | D4 | D2 | D1 | Digit | D8 | D4 | D2 | D1 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 2 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 7 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 7 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 9 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 9 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| * | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | * | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| # | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | # | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| A | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | A | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| B | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | B | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| C | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | C | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| D | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | D | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

TABLE 1: Output Codes

SSI 75T202/203

5V Low-Power

DTMF Receiver

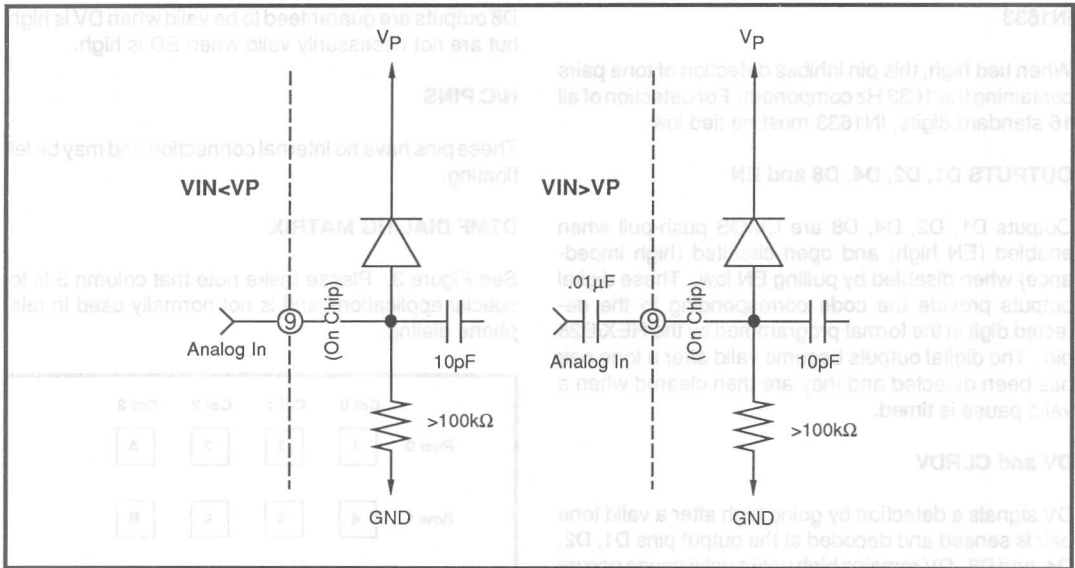


FIGURE 1: Input Coupling

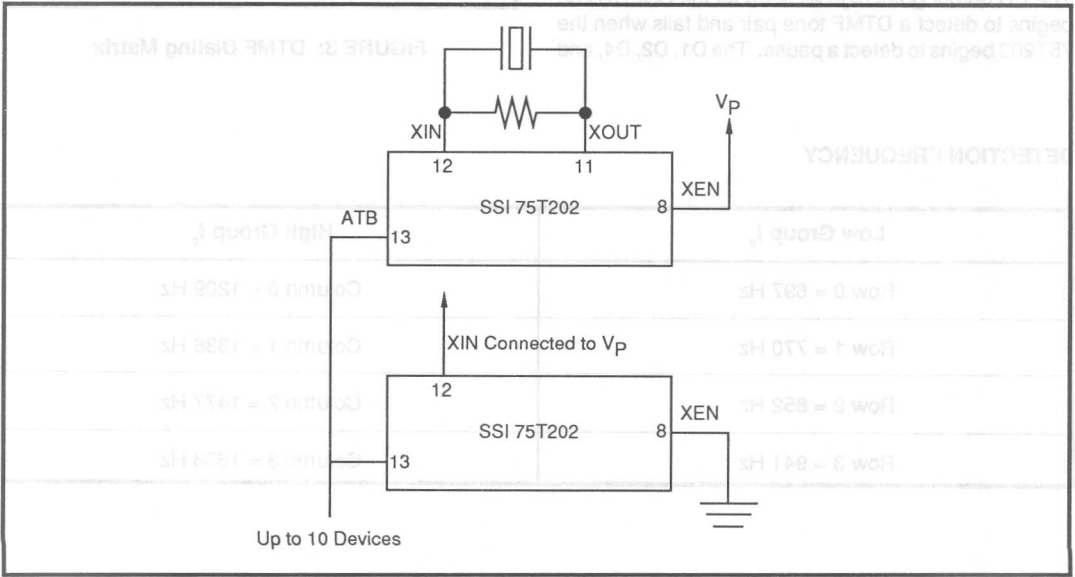


FIGURE 2: Crystal Connections

SSI 75T202/203

5V Low-Power

DTMF Receiver

IN1633

When tied high, this pin inhibits detection of tone pairs containing the 1633 Hz component. For detection of all 16 standard digits, IN1633 must be tied low.

OUTPUTS D1, D2, D4, D8 and EN

Outputs D1, D2, D4, D8 are CMOS push-pull when enabled (EN high) and open circuited (high impedance) when disabled by pulling EN low. These digital outputs provide the code corresponding to the detected digit in the format programmed by the HEX/B28 pin. The digital outputs become valid after a tone pair has been detected and they are then cleared when a valid pause is timed.

DV and CLRDV

DV signals a detection by going high after a valid tone pair is sensed and decoded at the output pins D1, D2, D4, and D8. DV remains high until a valid pause occurs or the CLRDV is raised high, whichever is earlier.

ED (SSI 75T203 only)

The ED output goes high as soon as the SSI 75T203 begins to detect a DTMF tone pair and falls when the 75T203 begins to detect a pause. The D1, D2, D4, and

D8 outputs are guaranteed to be valid when DV is high, but are not necessarily valid when ED is high.

N/C PINS

These pins have no internal connection and may be left floating.

DTMF DIALING MATRIX

See Figure 3. Please make note that column 3 is for special applications and is not normally used in telephone dialing.

| | Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Row 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | A |
| Row 1 | 4 | 5 | 6 | B |
| Row 2 | 7 | 8 | 9 | C |
| Row 3 | * | 0 | # | D |

FIGURE 3: DTMF Dialing Matrix

DETECTION FREQUENCY

| Low Group f_0 | High Group f_0 |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Row 0 = 697 Hz | Column 0 = 1209 Hz |
| Row 1 = 770 Hz | Column 1 = 1336 Hz |
| Row 2 = 852 Hz | Column 2 = 1477 Hz |
| Row 3 = 941 Hz | Column 3 = 1633 Hz |

SSI 75T202/203
5V Low-Power
DTMF Receiver

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

(Operation above absolute maximum ratings may damage the device. All SSI 75T202/203 unused inputs must be connected to V_P or GND, as appropriate.)

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|--|
| DC Supply Voltage - V _P | +7V |
| Operating Temperature | -40°C to +85°C Ambient |
| Storage Temperature | -65°C to +150°C |
| Power Dissipation (25°C) | 65mW |
| Input Voltage (All inputs except ANALOG IN) | (V _P + .5V) to -.5V |
| ANALOG IN Voltage | (V _P + .5V) to (V _P - 10V) |
| DC Current into any Input | ±1.0mA |
| Lead Temperature - Soldering, 10 sec. | 300°C |

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(-40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C, V_P = 5V ± 10%)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | TYP | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|---------------------|------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Frequency Detect Bandwidth | | ±(1.5+2Hz) | ±2.3 | ±3.5 | % of f _o |
| Amplitude for Detection | each tone | -32 | | -2 | dBm ref. to 600Ω |
| Twist Tolerance | Twist = $\frac{\text{High Tone}}{\text{Low Tone}}$ | -10 | | +10 | dB |
| 60-Hz Tolerance | | | | 0.8 | V _{rms} |
| Dial Tone Tolerance | "precise" dial tone | | | 0dB | dB* |
| Talk Off | MITEL tape #CM 7290 | | 2 | | hits |
| Digital Outputs (except XOUT) | "0" level, 400μA load | 0 | | 0.5 | V |
| | "1" level, 200μA load | V _P -0.5 | | V _P | V |
| Digital Inputs | "0" level | 0 | | 0.3V _P | V |
| | "1" level | 0.7V _P | | V _P | V |
| Power Supply Noise | wide band | | | 10 | mV p-p |
| Supply Current | T _A = 25°C | | 10 | 16 | mA |
| Noise Tolerance | MITEL tape #CM 7290 | | | -12 | dB* |
| Input Impedance | V _P ≥ V _{IN} ≥ V _P -10 | 100kΩ 15pF | | | |
| * dB referenced to lowest amplitude tone | | | | | |

SSI 75T202/203

5V Low-Power

DTMF Receiver

SSI 75T202/203 TIMING

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------|---|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| ton Tone Time | for detection | 40 | - | - | ms |
| | for rejection | - | - | 20 | ms |
| toff Pause Time | for detection | 40 | - | - | ms |
| | for rejection | - | - | 20 | ms |
| td Detect Time | | 25 | - | 46 | ms |
| tr Release Time | | 35 | - | 50 | ms |
| tsu Data Setup Time | | 7 | - | - | μs |
| th Data Hold Time | | 4.2 | - | 5.0 | ms |
| tcl DV Clear Time | | - | 160 | 250 | ns |
| tpw CLRDV Pulse Width | | 200 | - | - | ns |
| tED ED Detect Time | | 7 | - | 22 | ms |
| ter ED Release Time | | 2 | - | 18 | ms |
| Output Enable Time | $C_L = 50\text{pF}$, $R_L = 1\text{k}\Omega$ | - | - | 200 | ns |
| Output Disable Time | $C_L = 35\text{pF}$, $R_L = 500\Omega$ | - | - | 200 | ns |
| Output Rise Time | $C_L = 50\text{pF}$ | - | - | 200 | ns |
| Output Fall Time | $C_L = 50\text{pF}$ | - | 160 | 200 | ns |

SSI 75T202/203

5V Low-Power

DTMF Receiver

SSI 75T202/203 TIMING (Continued)

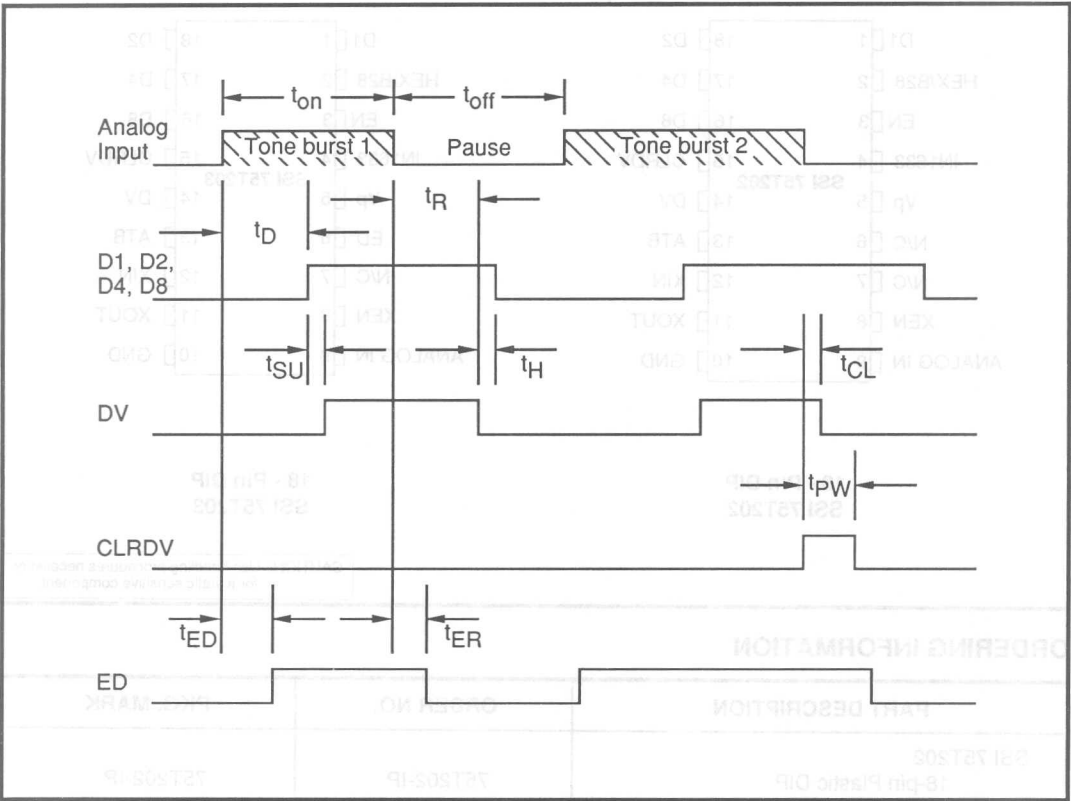


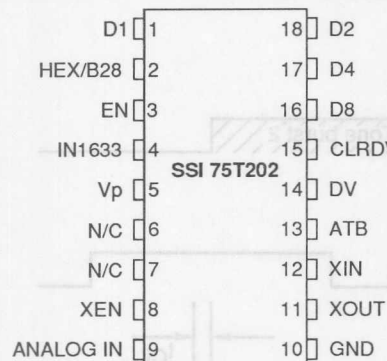
FIGURE 4: Timing Diagram

SSI 75T202/203

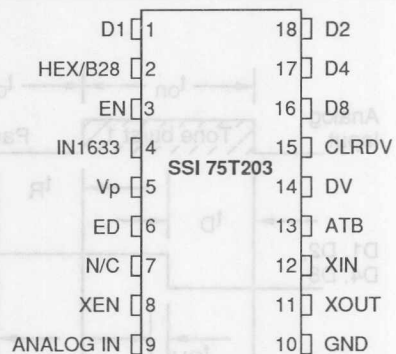
5V Low-Power

DTMF Receiver

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (TOP VIEW)



18 - Pin DIP
SSI 75T202



18 - Pin DIP
SSI 75T203

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| SSI 75T202 18-pin Plastic DIP | 75T202-IP | 75T202-IP |
| SSI 75T203 18-pin Plastic DIP | 75T203-IP | 75T203-IP |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

October 1991

DESCRIPTION

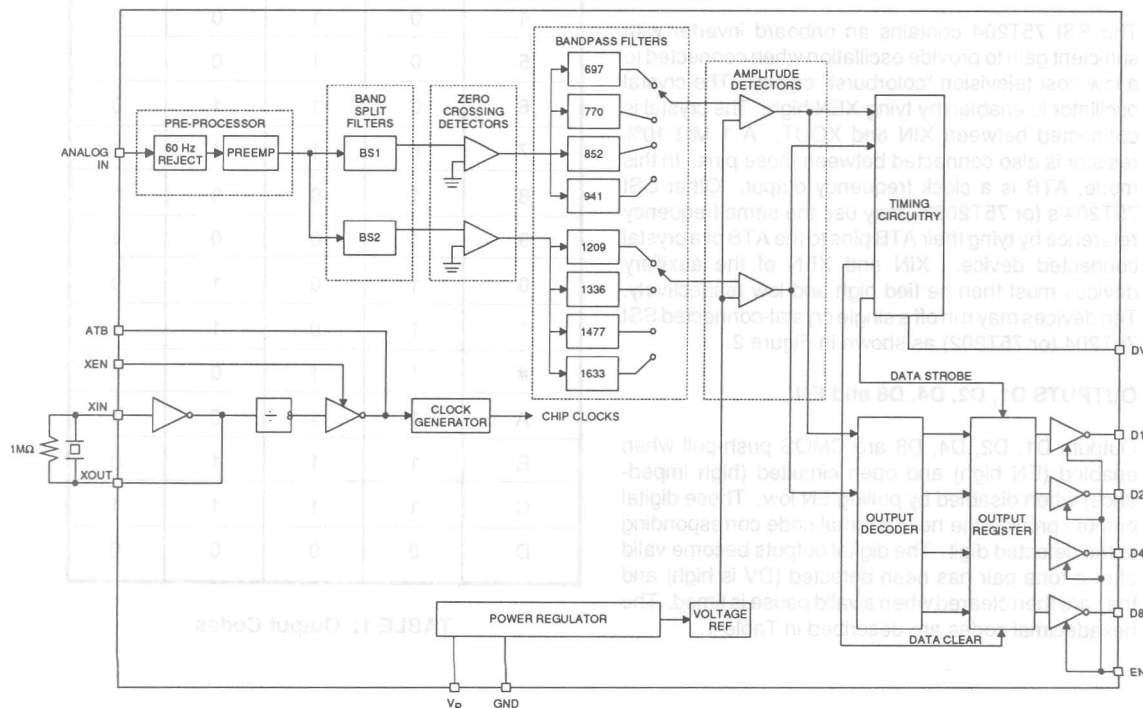
The SSI 75T204 is a complete Dual-Tone Multifrequency (DTMF) receiver that detects 16 standard digits. No front-end pre-filtering is needed. The only external components required are an inexpensive 3.58-MHz television "colorburst" crystal for frequency reference and a bias resistor. An Alternate Time Base (ATB) is provided to permit operation of up to 10 SSI 75T204's from a single crystal. The SSI 75T204 employs state-of-the-art "switched-capacitor" filter technology, resulting in approximately 40 poles of filtering, and digital circuitry on the same CMOS chip. The analog input signal is pre-processed by 60-Hz reject and band split filters and then zero-cross detected to provide AGC. Eight bandpass filters detect the individual tones. Digital processing is used to

(Continued)

FEATURES

- Intended for applications with less requirements than the SSI 75T202
- 14-pin plastic DIP or 16-pin SO package for high system density
- NO front-end band-splitting filters required
- Single low-tolerance 5-volt supply
- Detects all 16 standard DTMF digits.
- Uses an inexpensive 3.579545-MHz crystal
- Excellent speech immunity
- Output in 4-bit hexadecimal code
- Three-state outputs for microprocessor interface

BLOCK DIAGRAM



6

SSI 75T204

5V Low-Power

Subscriber DTMF Receiver

DESCRIPTION (Continued)

measure the tone and pause durations and to provide output timing and decoding. The outputs interface directly to standard CMOS circuitry and are three-state enabled to facilitate bus-oriented architectures.

ANALOG IN

This pin accepts the analog input. It is internally biased so that the input signal may be AC coupled. The input may be DC coupled as long as it does not exceed the positive supply. Proper input coupling is illustrated in Figure 1.

The SSI 75T204 is designed to accept sinusoidal input wave forms but will operate satisfactorily with any input that has the correct fundamental frequency with harmonics less than -20 dB below the fundamental.

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

The SSI 75T204 contains an onboard inverter with sufficient gain to provide oscillation when connected to a low-cost television "colorburst" crystal. The crystal oscillator is enabled by tying XEN high. The crystal is connected between XIN and XOUT. A 1 M Ω 10% resistor is also connected between these pins. In this mode, ATB is a clock frequency output. Other SSI 75T204's (or 75T202's) may use the same frequency reference by tying their ATB pins to the ATB of a crystal connected device. XIN and XEN of the auxiliary devices must then be tied high and low respectively. Ten devices may run off a single crystal-connected SSI 75T204 (or 75T202) as shown in Figure 2.

OUTPUTS D1, D2, D4, D8 and EN

Outputs D1, D2, D4, D8 are CMOS push-pull when enabled (EN high) and open circuited (high impedance) when disabled by pulling EN low. These digital outputs provide the hexadecimal code corresponding to the detected digit. The digital outputs become valid after a tone pair has been detected (DV is high) and they are then cleared when a valid pause is timed. The hexadecimal codes are described in Table 1.

DV

DV signals a detection by going high after a valid tone pair is sensed and decoded at the output pins D1, D2, D4, and D8. DV remains high until a valid pause occurs.

N/C PINS

These pins have no internal connection and may be left floating.

| Output Code | | | | |
|-------------|----|----|----|----|
| Digit | D8 | D4 | D2 | D1 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 2 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 7 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 9 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| * | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| # | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| A | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| B | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| C | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| D | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

TABLE 1: Output Codes

SSI 75T204

5V Low-Power

Subscriber DTMF Receiver

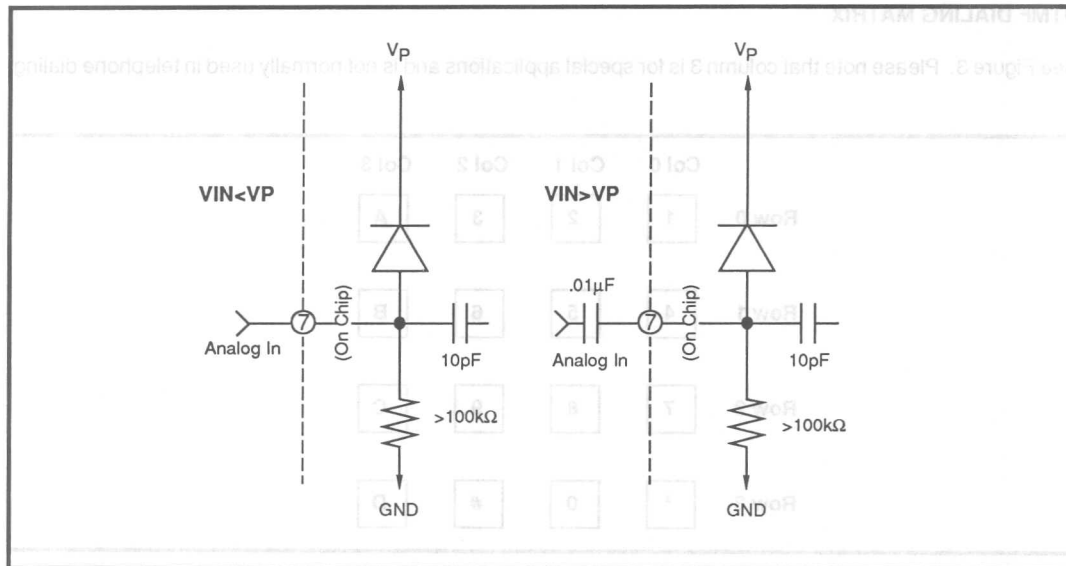


FIGURE 1: Input Coupling

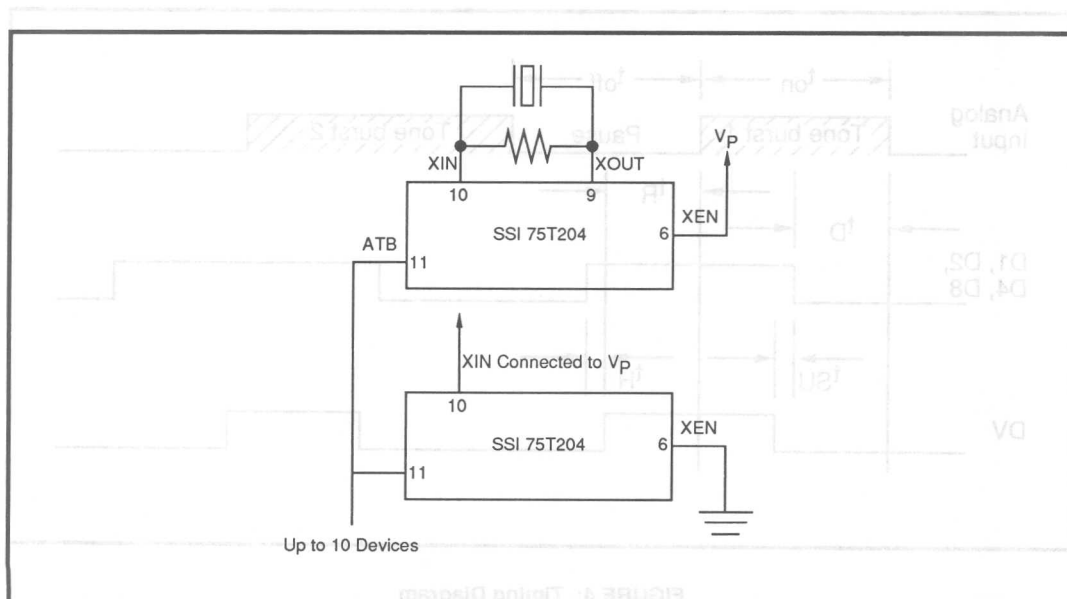


FIGURE 2: Crystal Connections

SSI 75T204

5V Low-Power

Subscriber DTMF Receiver

DTMF DIALING MATRIX

See Figure 3. Please note that column 3 is for special applications and is not normally used in telephone dialing.

| | Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Row 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | A |
| Row 1 | 4 | 5 | 6 | B |
| Row 2 | 7 | 8 | 9 | C |
| Row 3 | * | 0 | # | D |

FIGURE 3: DTMF Dialing Matrix

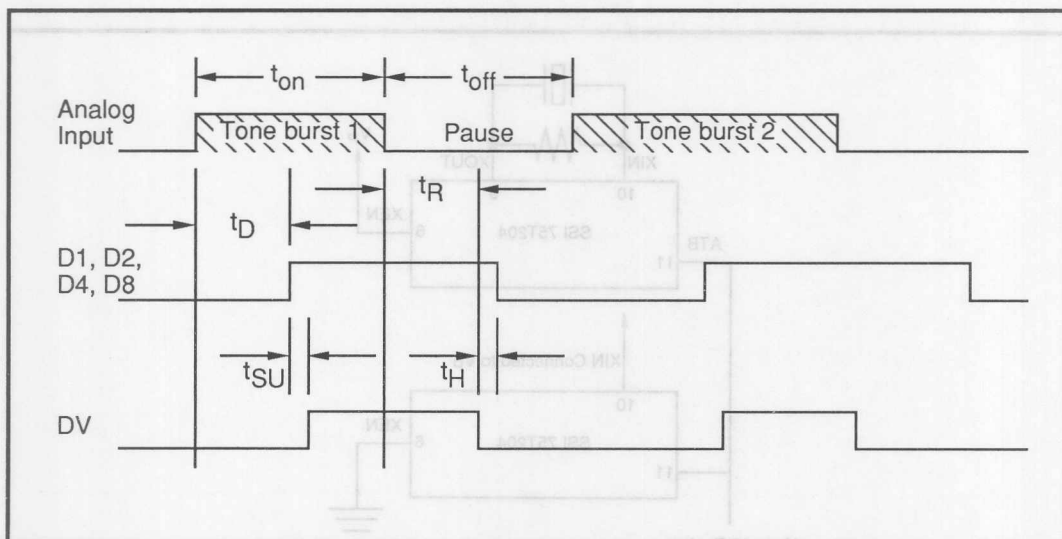


FIGURE 4: Timing Diagram

SSI 75T204

5V Low-Power

Subscriber DTMF Receiver

DETECTION FREQUENCY

| Low Group f_0 | High Group f_0 |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Row 0 = 697 Hz | Column 0 = 1209 Hz |
| Row 1 = 770 Hz | Column 1 = 1336 Hz |
| Row 2 = 852 Hz | Column 2 = 1477 Hz |
| Row 3 = 941 Hz | Column 3 = 1633 Hz |

SSI 75T204 TIMING (Refer to Figure 4.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---------------------|---|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| ton Tone Time | for detection | 40 | - | - | ms |
| | for rejection | - | - | 20 | ms |
| toff Pause Time | for detection | 40 | - | - | ms |
| | for rejection | - | - | 20 | ms |
| td Detect Time | | 25 | - | 46 | ms |
| tr Release Time | | 35 | - | 50 | ms |
| tsu Data Setup Time | | 7 | - | - | μs |
| th Data Hold Time | | 4.2 | - | 5.0 | ms |
| Output Enable Time | $C_L = 50\text{pF}$, $R_L = 1\text{k}\Omega$ | - | - | 200 | ns |
| Output Disable Time | $C_L = 35\text{pF}$, $R_L = 500\Omega$ | - | - | 200 | ns |
| Output Rise Time | $C_L = 50\text{pF}$ | - | - | 200 | ns |
| Output Fall Time | $C_L = 50\text{pF}$ | - | - | 200 | ns |

SSI 75T204

5V Low-Power

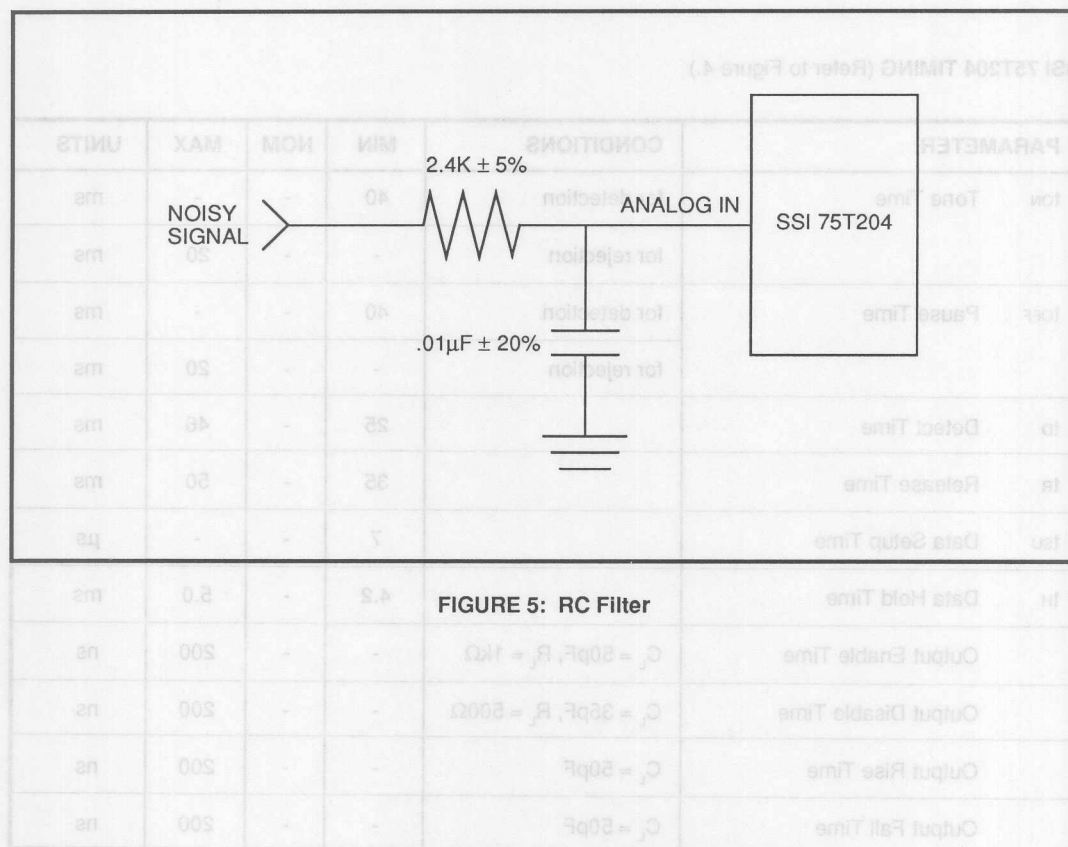
Subscriber DTMF Receiver

APPLICATION INFORMATION

The SSI 75T204 will tolerate total input RMS noise up to 12dB below the lowest amplitude tone. For most telephone applications, the combination of the high frequency attenuation of the telephone line and internal band-limiting make special circuitry at the input to the SSI 75T204 unnecessary. However, noise near the 56kHz internal sampling frequency will be aliased (folded back) into the audio spectrum, so if excessive

noise is present above 28kHz, the simple RC filter shown in Figure 5 may be employed to band limit the incoming signal.

Noise will also be reduced by placing a grounded trace around the XIN and XOUT pins on the circuit board layout when using a crystal. It is important to note that XOUT is not intended to drive an additional device. XIN may be driven externally; in this case leave XOUT floating.



SSI 75T204

5V Low-Power

Subscriber DTMF Receiver

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

(Operation above absolute maximum ratings may damage the device. All SSI 75T204 unused inputs must be connected to V_P or GND, as appropriate.)

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|--|
| DC Supply Voltage - V _P | +7V |
| Operating Temperature | -40°C to +85°C Ambient |
| Storage Temperature | -65°C to +150°C |
| Power Dissipation (25°C) | 65mW |
| Input Voltage (All inputs except ANALOG IN) | (V _P + 0.5V) to -0.5V |
| ANALOG IN Voltage | (V _P + .5V) to (V _P - 10V) |
| DC Current into any Input | ±1.0mA |
| Lead Temperature - Soldering, 10 sec. | 300°C |

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(-40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C, V_P = 5V ± 10%)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | TYP | MAX | UNITS |
|----------------------------------|---|---------------------|------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Frequency Detect Bandwidth | | ±(1.5+2Hz) | ±2.3 | ±3.5 | % of f _o |
| Amplitude for Detection | each tone | -32 | | -2 | dBm ref. to 600Ω |
| Twist Tolerance | $\text{Twist} = \frac{\text{High Tone}}{\text{Low Tone}}$ | -10 | | +10 | dB |
| 60-Hz Tolerance | | | | 0.8 | V _{rms} |
| Dial Tone Tolerance | "precise" dial tone | | | 0dB | dB* |
| Talk Off | MITEL tape #CM 7290 | | 2 | | hits |
| Digital Outputs (except XOUT) | "0" level, 400μA load | 0 | | 0.5 | V |
| | "1" level, 200μA load | V _P -0.5 | | V _P | V |
| Digital Inputs | "0" level | 0 | | 0.3V _P | V |
| | "1" level | 0.7V _P | | V _P | V |
| Power Supply Noise | wide band | | | 10 | mV p-p |
| Supply Current | T _A = 25°C | | 10 | 16 | mA |
| Noise Tolerance | MITEL tape #CM 7290 | | | -12 | dB* |
| Input Impedance | V _P ≥ V _{IN} ≥ V _P -10 | 100KΩ 15pF | | | |

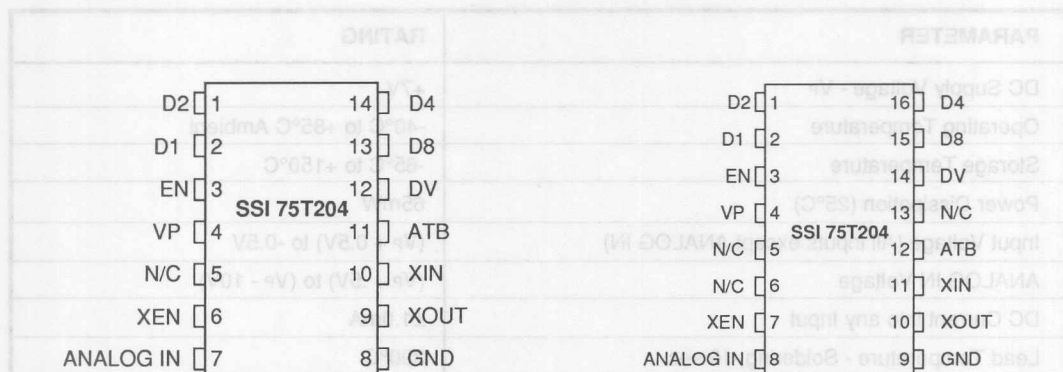
* dB referenced to lowest amplitude tone

SSI 75T204

5V Low-Power

Subscriber DTMF Receiver

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (TOP VIEW)



14 - Pin DIP

16 - Lead SOL

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|---------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| SSI 75T204 14-pin PDIP | 75T204-IP | 75T204-IP |
| SSI 75T204 16-lead SOL | 75T204-IL | 75T204-IL |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

DESCRIPTION

Silicon Systems' SSI 75T2089/2090/2091 are complete Dual-Tone Multifrequency (DTMF) Transceivers that can both generate and detect all 16 DTMF tone-pairs. These ICs integrate the performance-proven SSI 75T202 DTMF receiver with a DTMF generator circuit.

The DTMF receiver electrical characteristics are identical to the standard SSI 75T202 device characteristics. The DTMF generator provides performance similar to the Mostek MK5380, but with an improved (tighter) output amplitude range specification and with the addition of independent latch and reset controls.

An additional feature of the SSI 75T2090/2091 is "imprecise" call progress detector. The detector detects the presence of signals in the 305-640 Hz band.

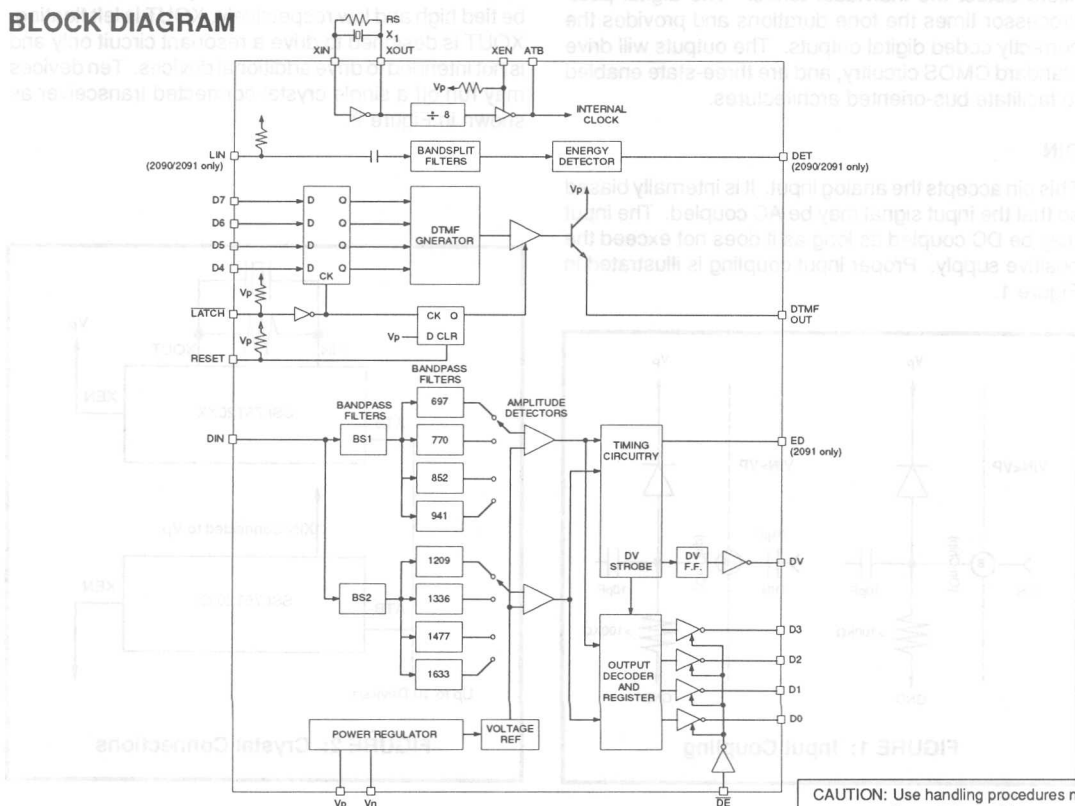
(Continued)

FEATURES

November 1991

- DTMF Generator and Receiver on one-chip
- Call progress detection (2090/2091 only)
- Early detect output (2091 only)
- DTMF Receiver exhibits excellent speech immunity
- Analog input range from -32 to -2 dBm (ref 600 Ω)
- Three-state outputs (4-bit hexadecimal) from DTMF Receiver
- AC coupled, internally biased analog input
- Latched DTMF Generator inputs
- DTMF output typ. -8 dBm (Low Band) and -5.5 dBm (High Band)
- Easy interface for microprocessor dialing
- Uses inexpensive 3.579545 MHz crystal for reference
- Low-power 5 volt CMOS

BLOCK DIAGRAM



6

SSI 75T2089/2090/2091

DTMF Transceivers

DESCRIPTION (Continued)

The SSI 75T2091 also incorporates an early detect function which is useful in multi-channel radio scanning applications. The only external components necessary for the SSI 75T2089/2090/2091 are a 3.58 MHz "colorburst" crystal with a parallel 1M Ω resistor. This provides the time base for digital functions and switched-capacitor filters in the device. No external filtering is required.

CIRCUIT OPERATION

RECEIVER

The DTMF Receiver in the SSI 75T2089/2090/2091 detects the presence of a valid tone pair (indicating a single dialed digit) on a telephone line or other transmission medium. The analog input is pre-processed by 60 Hz reject and band-splitting filters, then hard-limited to provide Automatic Gain Control. Eight bandpass filters detect the individual tones. The digital post-processor times the tone durations and provides the correctly coded digital outputs. The outputs will drive standard CMOS circuitry, and are three-state enabled to facilitate bus-oriented architectures.

DIN

This pin accepts the analog input. It is internally biased so that the input signal may be AC coupled. The input may be DC coupled as long as it does not exceed the positive supply. Proper input coupling is illustrated in Figure 1.

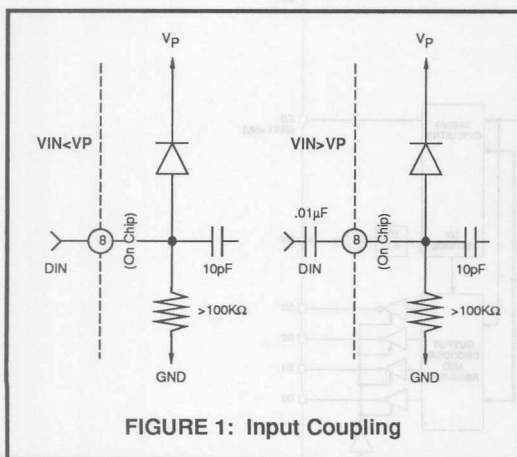


FIGURE 1: Input Coupling

The IC is designed to accept sinusoidal input waveforms but will operate satisfactorily with any input that has the correct fundamental frequency with harmonics greater than -20 dB below the fundamental.

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

The IC contains an onboard inverter with sufficient gain to provide oscillation when connected to a low-cost television "color-burst" crystal. The crystal is placed between XIN and XOUT in parallel with a 1M Ω resistor, while XEN is tied high. Since the switched-capacitor-filter time base is derived from the crystal oscillator, the frequency accuracy of all portions of the IC depends on the time base tolerance. The SSI DTMF Receiver frequency response and timing is specified for a time base accuracy of at least $\pm 0.005\%$. ATB is a clock output with the frequency of 1/8 of crystal. Other devices may use the same frequency reference by tying their ATB pins to the ATB of a crystal connected device. XIN and XEN of the auxiliary devices must then be tied high and low respectively, XOUT is left floating. XOUT is designed to drive a resonant circuit only and is not intended to drive additional devices. Ten devices may run off a single crystal-connected transceiver as shown in Figure 2.

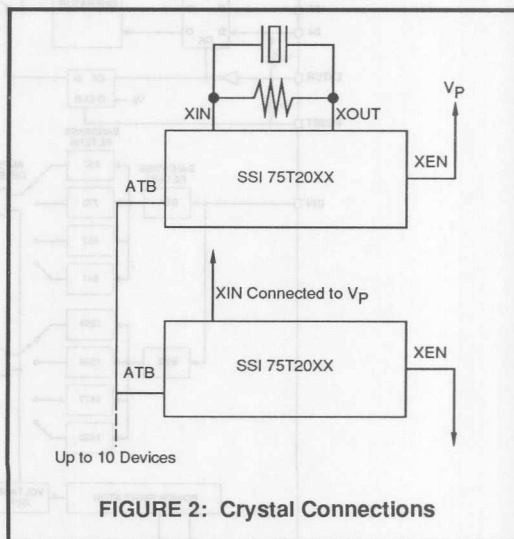


FIGURE 2: Crystal Connections

RECEIVER OUTPUTS AND THE \overline{DE} PIN

Outputs D0, D1, D2, D3 are CMOS push-pull when enabled (\overline{DE} low) and open-circuited (high impedance) when disabled (\overline{DE} high). These digital outputs provide the hexadecimal code corresponding to the detected digit. Figure 3 shows that code.

The digital outputs become valid and DV signals a detection after a valid tone pair has been sensed. The outputs and DV are cleared when a valid pause has been timed.

| Hexadecimal Code | | | | | |
|------------------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Digit | In Out | D7 D3 | D6 D2 | D5 D1 | D4 D0 |
| 1 | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 2 | | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 3 | | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 4 | | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 5 | | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 6 | | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 7 | | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 8 | | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 9 | | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| * | | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| # | | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| A | | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| B | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| C | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| D | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

FIGURE 3

FIGURE 3

ED OUTPUT (75T2091 only)

The ED output goes high as soon as the SSI 75T2091 begins to detect a DTMF tone pair and falls when the SSI 75T2091 begins to detect a pause. The D1, D2, D4, and D8 outputs are guaranteed to be valid when DV is high, but are not necessarily valid when ED is high.

GENERATOR

The DTMF generator responds to a hexadecimal code input with a valid tone pair. Pins D4-D7 are the data inputs for the generator. A high to low transition on LATCH causes the hexadecimal code to be latched internally and generation of the appropriate DTMF tone pair to begin. The DTMF output is disabled by a high on RESET and will not resume until new data is latched in.

DIGITAL INPUTS

The D4, D5, D6, D7, LATCH, RESET inputs to the DTMF generator may be interfaced to open-collector TTL with a pull-up resistor or standard CMOS. These inputs follow the same hexadecimal code format as the DTMF receiver output. Figure 4 shows the code for each digit. The dialing matrix and detection frequency table below list the frequencies of the digits.

| | Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Row 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | A |
| Row 1 | 4 | 5 | 6 | B |
| Row 2 | 7 | 8 | 9 | C |
| Row 3 | * | 0 | # | D |

NOTE: Column 3 is for special applications and is not normally used in telephone dialing.

FIGURE 4: DTMF Dialing Matrix

DETECTION FREQUENCY

| Low Group f_0 | High Group f_0 |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Row 0 = 697Hz | Column 0 = 1209Hz |
| Row 1 = 770Hz | Column 1 = 1336Hz |
| Row 2 = 852Hz | Column 2 = 1477Hz |
| Row 3 = 941Hz | Column 3 = 1633Hz |

SSI 75T2089/2090/2091

DTMF Transceivers

DTMF OUT

The output amplitude characteristics listed in the specifications are given for a supply voltage of 5.0V. However, the output level is directly proportional to the supply, so variations in it will affect the DTMF output. A recommended line interface for this output is shown in Figure 5.

CALL PROGRESS DETECTION (75T2090/2091)

The 75T2090/2091 have a Call Progress Detector that consists of a bandpass filter and an energy detector for turning the on/off cadences into a microprocessor compatible signal.

DET OUTPUT (75T2090/2091)

The output is TTL compatible and will be of a frequency corresponding to the various cadences of Call Progress signals such as: on 0.5 sec/off 0.5 sec for a busy tone, on 0.25 sec/off 0.25 sec for a reorder tone and on 0.8-1.2 sec/off 2.7-3.3 sec for an audible ring tone.

LIN INPUT (75T2090/2091)

This analog input accepts the call progress signal and should be used in the same manner as the receiver input DIN.

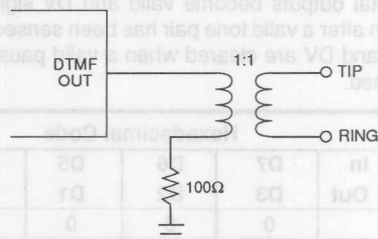


FIGURE 5: DTMF Output

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operating above absolute maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| DC Supply Voltage ($V_p - V_n$) | +7V |
| Voltage at any Pin ($V_n = 0$) | -0.3 to $V_p + 0.3V$ |
| DIN Voltage | $V_p + 0.5$ to $V_p - 10V$ |
| Current through any Protection Device | $\pm 20mA$ |
| Operating Temperature Range | -40 to +85°C |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| Supply Voltage | | 4.5 | | 5.5 | V |
| Power Supply Noise (wide band) | | | | 10 | mV pp |
| Ambient Temperature | | -40 | | +85 | °C |
| Crystal Frequency (F Nominal = 3.579545MHz) | | -0.01 | | +0.01 | % |
| Crystal Shunt Resistor | | 0.8 | | 1.2 | MΩ |
| DTMF OUT Load Resistance | | 100 | | | Ω |

SSI 75T2089/2090/2091

DTMF Transceivers

DIGITAL AND DC REQUIREMENTS

The following electrical specifications apply to the digital input and output signals over the recommended operating range unless otherwise noted. The specifications do not apply to the following pins: LIN, DIN, XIN, XOUT, and DTMF OUT. Positive current is defined as entering the circuit. $V_n = 0$ unless otherwise stated.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---------------------|--------------|--------|-----|--------|---------|
| Supply Current* | | | 15 | 30 | mA |
| Power Dissipation | | | | 225 | mW |
| Input Voltage High | | 0.7Vp | | | V |
| Input Voltage Low | | | | 0.3Vp | V |
| Input Current High | | | | 10 | μ A |
| Input Current Low | | -10 | | | μ A |
| Output Voltage High | Ioh = -0.2mA | Vp-0.5 | | | V |
| Output Voltage Low | Iol = +0.4mA | | | Vn+0.5 | V |

* with DTMF output disabled

DTMF RECEIVER: Electrical Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| Frequency Detect Bandwidth | | $\pm(1.5+2\text{Hz})$ | ± 2.3 | ± 3.5 | %Fo |
| Amplitude for Detection | Each Tone | -32 | | -2 | dBm/tone |
| Twist Tolerance | | -10 | | +10 | dB |
| 60Hz Tolerance | | | | 0.8 | Vrms |
| Dial Tone Tolerance | Precise Dial Tone | | | 0 | dB* |
| Speech Immunity | MITEL Tape #CM7290 | | 2 | | hits |
| Noise Tolerance | MITEL Tape #CM7290 | | | -12 | dB* |
| Input Impedance | | 100 | | | K Ω |

* Referenced to lowest amplitude tone

DTMF RECEIVER: Timing Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---------------------------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| TON Tone Time for Detect | | 40 | | | ms |
| TON Tone Time for No Detect | | | | 20 | ms |
| TOFF Pause Time for Redetection | | 40 | | | ms |
| TOFF Pause Time for Bridging | | | | 20 | ms |
| TD1 Detect Time | | 25 | | 46 | ms |
| TR1 Release Time | | 35 | | 50 | ms |

SSI 75T2089/2090/2091

DTMF Transceivers

DTMF RECEIVER: Timing Characteristics (Continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-----------------------|--------------|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| TSU1 Data Set Up Time | | 7 | | | μ s |
| THD1 Data Hold Time | | 4.2 | | 5.0 | ms |
| TED ED Detect Time | 75T2091 only | 7 | | 22 | ms |
| BER ED Release Time | 75T2091 only | 2 | | 18 | ms |
| Output Enable Time | | | | 200 | ns |
| Output Disable Time | | | | 200 | ns |

DTMF GENERATOR: Electrical Characteristics

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|---|------|--|------|-----|
| Frequency Accuracy | | -1.0 | | +1.0 | %Fo |
| Output Amplitude | R1 = 100 Ω to Vn, Vp - Vn = 5.0V | | | | |
| Low Band | | -9.2 | | -7.2 | dBm |
| High Band | | -6.6 | | -4.6 | dBm |
| Output Distortion | DC to 50 kHz | | | -20 | dB |

DTMF GENERATOR: Timing Characteristics

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------|--|-----|--|-----|---------|
| TSTART Start-Up Time | | | | 2.5 | μ s |
| TSU2 Data Set-Up Time | | 100 | | | ns |
| THD2 Data Hold Time | | 50 | | | ns |
| TRP RESET Pulse Width | | 100 | | | ns |
| TPW LATCH Pulse Width | | 100 | | | ns |

CALL PROGRESS DETECTOR: Electrical Characteristics (75T2090/2091 only)

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------|--------|--|-----|------------|
| Amplitude for Detection | 305 Hz-640 Hz | -40 | | 0 | dBm |
| Amplitude for No Detection | 305 Hz-640 Hz | | | -50 | dBm |
| | f>2200 Hz, <160 Hz | | | -25 | dBm |
| Detect Output | Logic 0 | | | .5 | V |
| | Logic 1 | 4.5 | | | V |
| "LIN" Input | Max. Voltage | VDD-10 | | VDD | V |
| Input Impedance | 500 Hz | 100 | | | k Ω |

SSI 75T2089/2090/2091

DTMF Transceivers

CALL PROGRESS DETECTOR: Electrical Characteristics (Continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------------------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| TON Signal Time for Detect | | 40 | | | ms |
| TON Signal Time for No Detect | | | | 10 | ms |
| TOFF Interval Time for Detect | | 40 | | | ms |
| TOFF Interval Time for No Detect | | | | 20 | ms |
| TD2 Detect Time | | | | 40 | ms |
| TR2 Release Time | | | | 40 | ms |

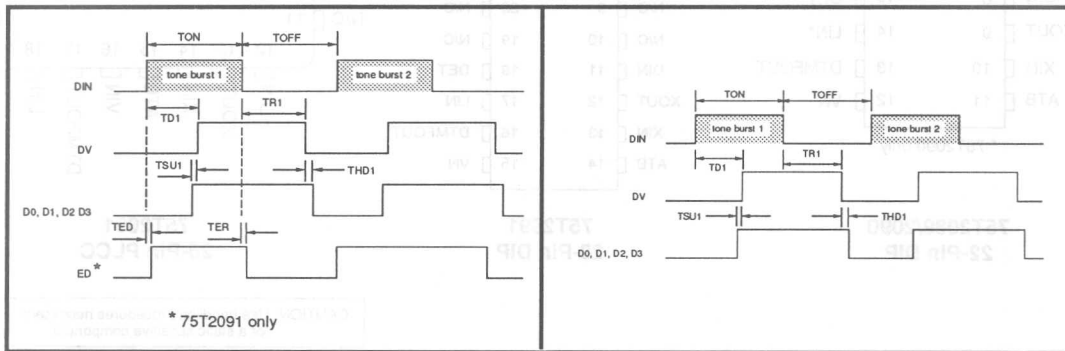


FIGURE 6: DTMF Decoder

FIGURE 7: Call Progress Detector
(75T2090/2091 only)

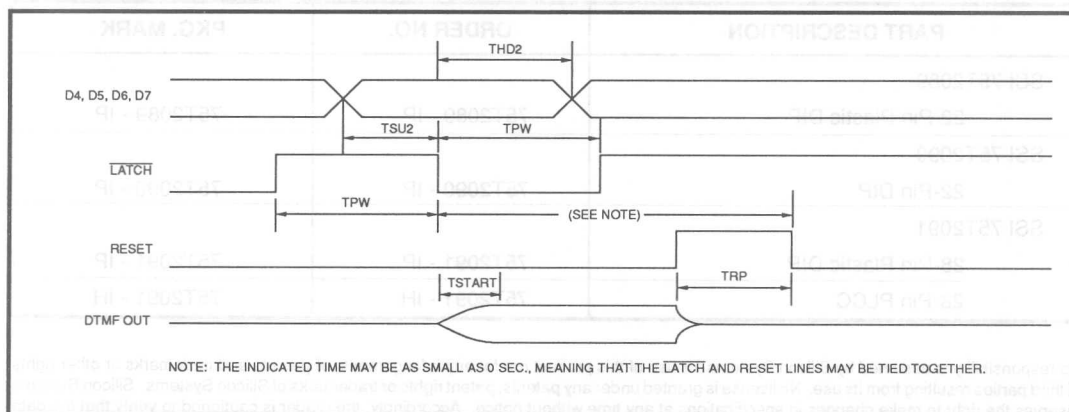


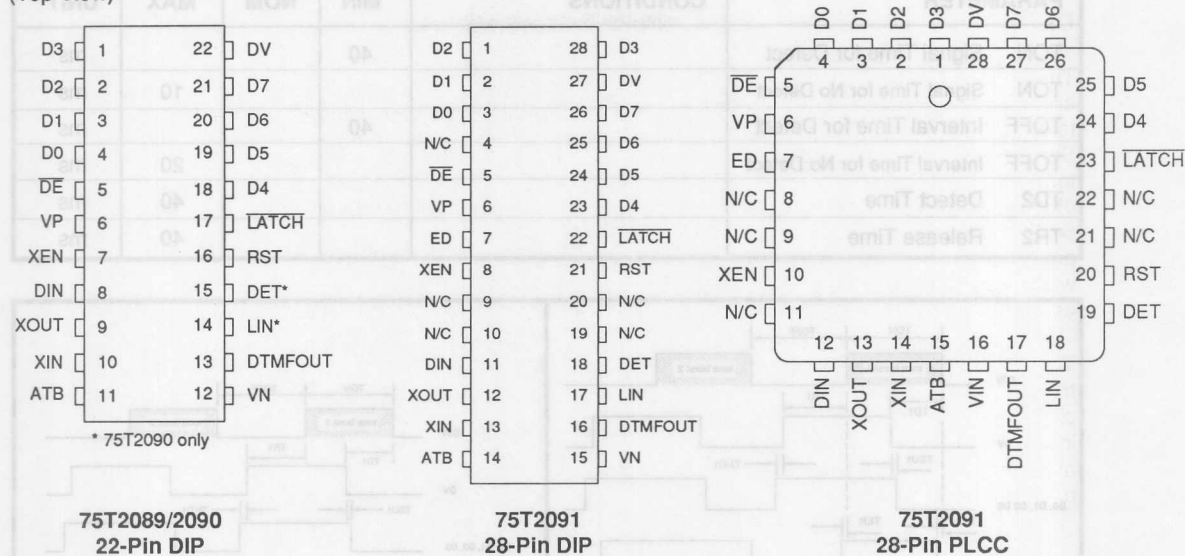
FIGURE 8: DTMF Generator

SSI 75T2089/2090/2091

DTMF Transceivers

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 75T2089 22-Pin Plastic DIP | 75T2089 - IP | 75T2089 - IP |
| SSI 75T2090 22-Pin DIP | 75T2090 - IP | 75T2090 - IP |
| SSI 75T2091 28-Pin Plastic DIP | 75T2091 - IP | 75T2091 - IP |
| 28-Pin PLCC | 75T2091 - IH | 75T2091 - IH |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

July 1992

DESCRIPTION

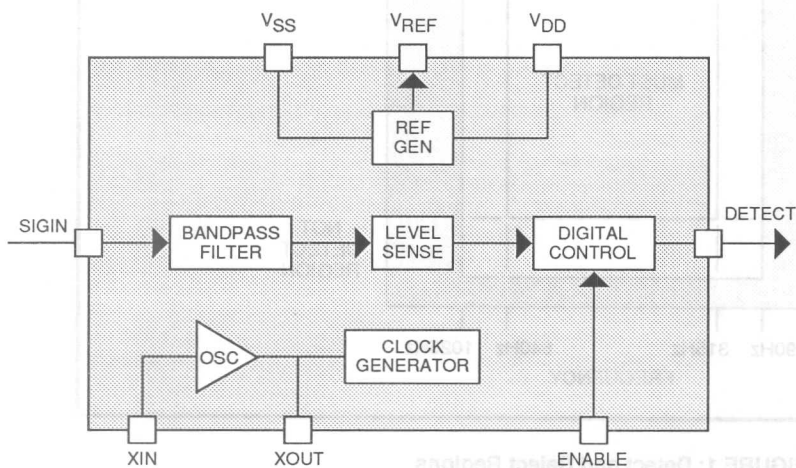
The SSI 75T980 Call Progress Tone Detector circuit allows automatic equipment to monitor tones in dial telephone systems that relate to the routing of calls. Such tones commonly include dial tones, circuits-busy tones, station-busy tones, audible ringing tones and others. By sensing signals in the range of 315 to 640 Hz, the SSI 75T980 does not require the use of precision tones to function. This means that tones which vary with location or call destination can be detected regardless of their exact frequency.

The low power CMOS switched capacitor filters used in the SSI 75T980 derive their accuracy from a 3.58 MHz clock, which in turn may be derived from other devices in the system being designed. The SSI 75T980 is available in a plastic 8-pin DIP and 16-pin SO packages.

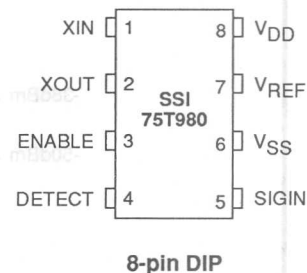
FEATURES

- Detects tones throughout the telephone progress supervision band (315 to 640 Hz)
- Sensitivity to -38 dBm
- Dynamic range over 36 dB
- 40 ms minimum detect (50 ms to output)
- Single supply CMOS (low power)
- Supply range 4.5 to 5.5 VDC
- Uses 3.58 MHz crystal or external clock
- 8-pin DIP and 16-pin SO packages
- Second source of Teltone M-980

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAMS



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 75T980

Call Progress

Tone Detector

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|------|--|
| SIGIN | I | Accepts analog input signal. See "Electrical Characteristics" for voltage levels, and "Timing Characteristics" for timing. |
| DETECT | O | Call progress detect output. Goes to logic "1" when signal in 315-640 Hz band is sensed. See "Timing Characteristics." |
| ENABLE | I | Application of logic "1" on this pin enables the output; logic "0" disables output. |
| VREF | O | Supplies voltage at half V _{DD} for voltage reference of on-chip op amps. |
| XIN, XOUT | I | Crystal connections to on-chip oscillator circuit. |
| VDD | - | Positive power supply connection |
| VSS | - | Negative power supply connection |

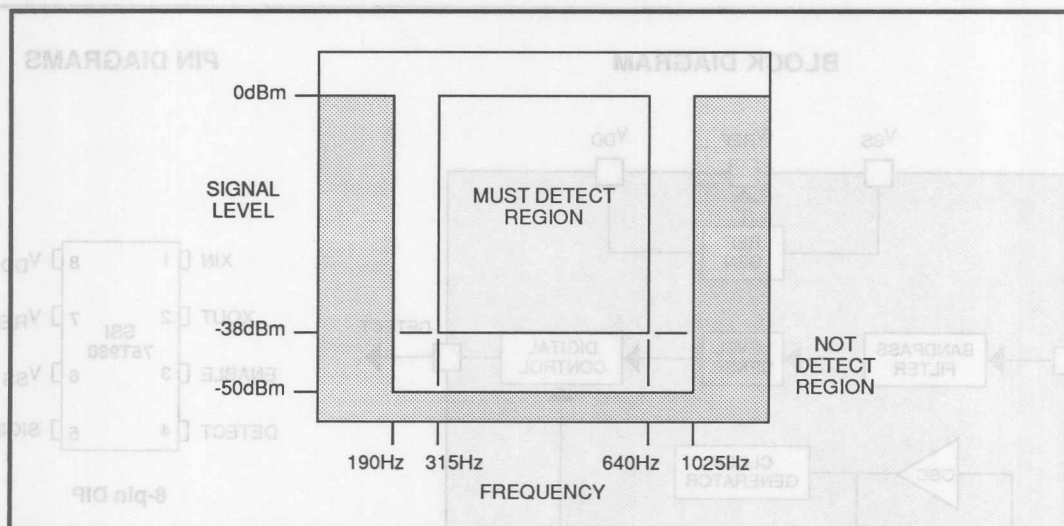


FIGURE 1: Detect and Reject Regions

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 75T980

Call Progress

Tone Detector

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

(Operation above absolute maximum ratings may permanently damage the device.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | RATING |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| DC Supply Voltage | $V_{DD}-V_{SS}$ | 16.0V |
| Input Voltage | All inputs except SIGNAL IN | $(V_{DD} + 0.5V)$ to $(V_{SS} - 0.5V)$ |
| SIGNAL IN Voltage | | $(V_{DD} + 0.5V)$ to $(V_{SS} - 22V)$ |
| Storage Temperature | | -65°C to 150°C |
| Operating Temperature | | 0°C to 70°C |
| Lead Temperature | Soldering, 5 sec. | 260°C |

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

($T_a = 25^\circ\text{C}$, $V_{DD} - V_{SS} = 4.5V$ to $5.5V$, dBm is referenced to 600 Ω)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|--|----------------|-----------------------|----------------|------------|
| Supply Current | $V_{DD} - V_{SS} = 5V$ | - | 4 | 10 | mA |
| Signal level for detection | 315-640 Hz | -38 | - | 0 | dBm |
| Signal level for rejection | 315-640 Hz | - | - | -50 | dBm |
| | $f > 1025 \text{ Hz}$, $f < 190 \text{ Hz}$ | - | - | 0 | dBm |
| DETECT output ($I_{out} = +1\text{mA}$) | Logic 0 | - | - | 0.5 | V |
| | Logic 1 | 4.5 | - | - | V |
| ENABLE, XIN input ($I_{in} = 10\mu\text{A}$) | Logic 0 | V_{SS} | - | $V_{SS} + 0.2$ | V |
| | Logic 1 | $V_{DD} - 0.2$ | - | V_{DD} | V |
| XIN duty cycle | | 40 | - | 60 | % |
| XIN, XOUT loading | | - | - | 10 | pF |
| VREF output | Deviation | -2 | $(V_{DD} + V_{SS})/2$ | +2 | % |
| | Resistance | 3.25 | - | 6.75 | k Ω |
| SIGIN input | Maximum voltage | $V_{DD} - 10$ | - | V_{DD} | V |
| | Impedance (500 Hz) | 80 | - | - | k Ω |

SSI 75T980

Call Progress

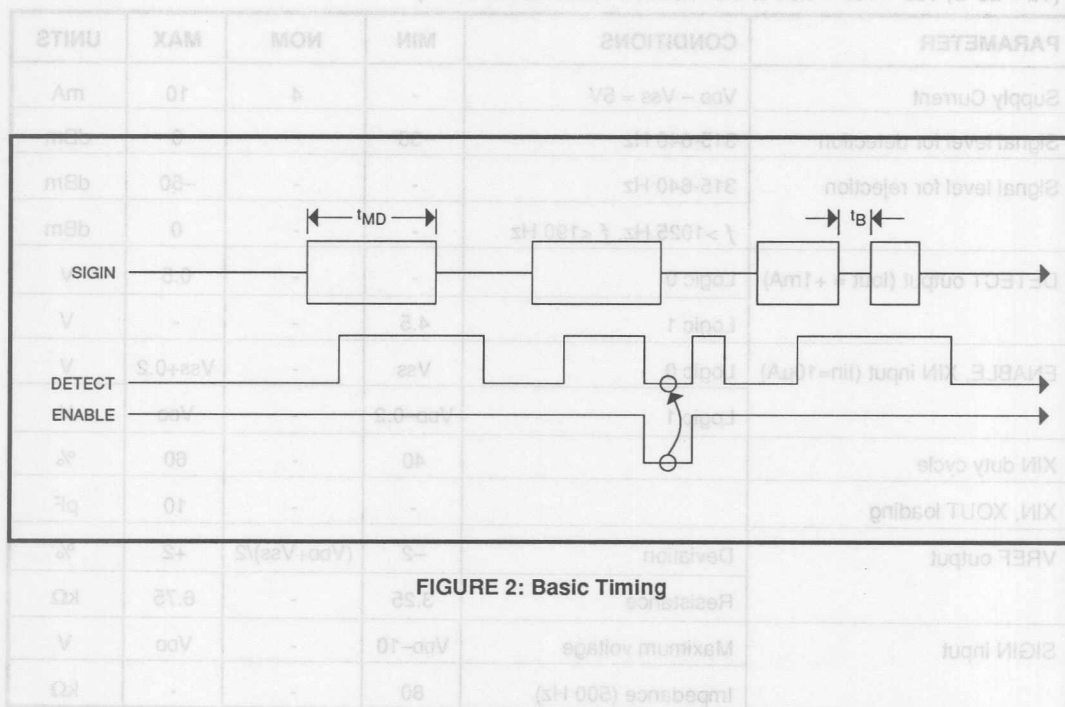
Tone Detector

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

TIMING CHARACTERISTICS

(Ta = 25°C, VDD - VSS = 4.5V to 5.5V)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|-----|-----|-------|
| t_{MD} Signal duration for detection | 315-640 Hz | 40 | - | ms |
| Interval duration for detection | Signal dropping from -38 dBm to -50 dBm (t_2) | - | 40 | ms |
| | Signal dropping from 0 dBm to -50 dBm (t_1) | - | 90 | ms |
| t_B Tone dropout bridging | | - | 20 | ms |



SSI 75T980 Call Progress Tone Detector

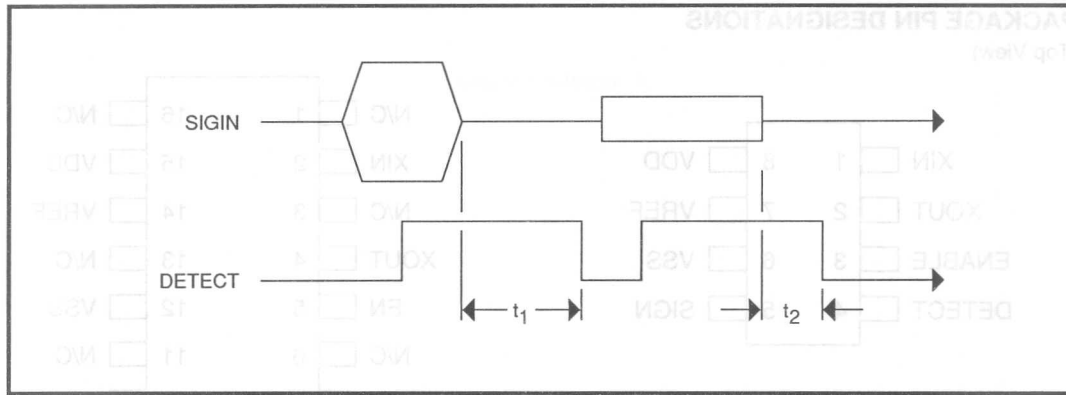


FIGURE 3: Effect of Amplitude on Timing

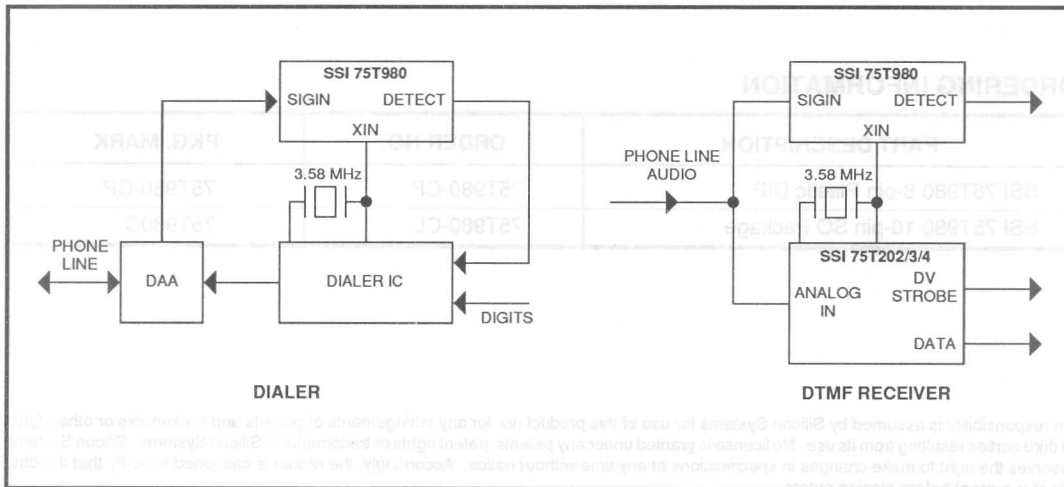


FIGURE 4: Applications Circuits

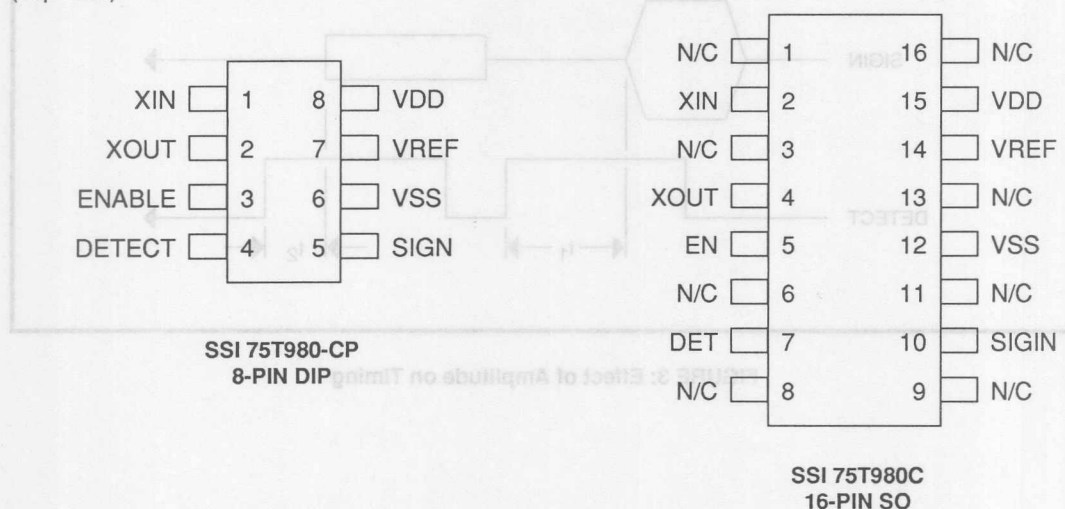
SSI 75T980

Call Progress

Tone Detector

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| SSI 75T980 8-pin Plastic DIP | 75T980-CP | 75T980-CP |
| SSI 75T980 16-pin SO Package | 75T980-CL | 75T980C |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

July 1990

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78A207 is a single-chip, Multi-Frequency (MF) receiver that can detect all 15 tone-pairs, including ST and KP framing tones. This receiver is intended for use in equal access applications and thus meets both Bell and CCITT R1 central office register signalling specifications.

The SSI 78A207 employs state-of-the-art switched capacitor filters in CMOS technology. The receiver consists of a bank of channel-separation bandpass filters followed by zero-crossing detectors and frequency-measurement bandpass filters, an amplitude check circuit, a timer and decoder circuit, and a clock generator. The device does not attempt to identify strings of digits by the KP (key pulse) and ST (stop) tone pairs.

No anti-alias filtering is needed if the input signal is band-limited to 26 KHz. The only external component required is an inexpensive television "color burst" 3.58 MHz crystal.

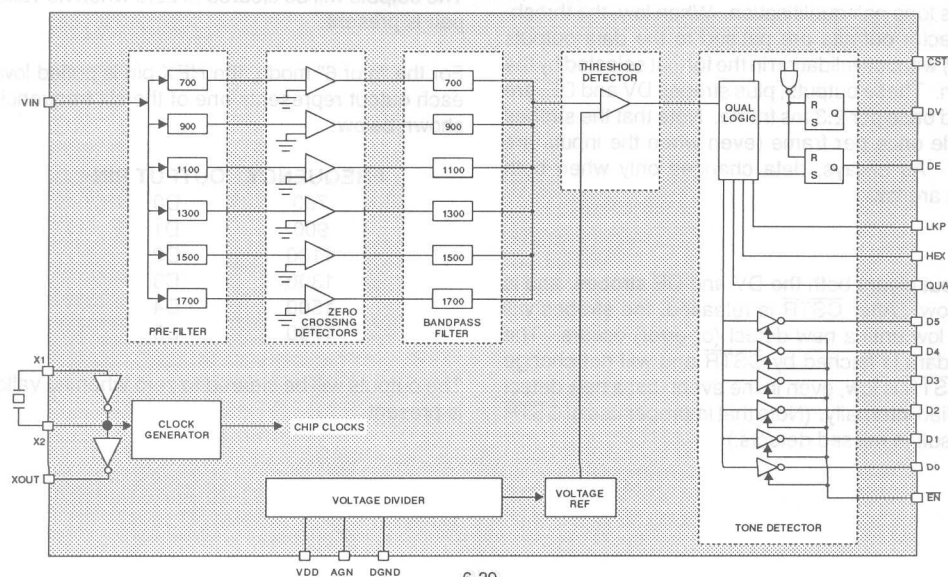
The outputs interface directly with standard CMOS or TTL circuitry and are three-state enabled to facilitate bus-oriented architecture.

FEATURES

- Meets Bell and CCITT R1 specifications
- 20-pin plastic DIP
- Single low-tolerance 5V supply
- Detects all 15 tone-pairs including ST and KP
- Long KP capability
- Built-in amplitude discrimination
- Excellent noise tolerance
- Outputs in either "n of 6" or hexadecimal code
- Three-state outputs, CMOS-compatible and TTL-compatible

6

BLOCK DIAGRAM



SSI 78A207

MFR1 Receiver

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

VIN

This pin accepts the analog input. It is internally biased to half the supply and is capacitively coupled to the channel separation filters. The input may be DC coupled as long as it does not exceed VDD or drop below GND. Equivalent input circuit is shown below in Figure 1.

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

The SSI 78A207 contains an on-board inverter with sufficient gain to provide oscillation when connected to a low cost television "color-burst" crystal. The on-chip clock signals are generated from the oscillator. The crystal is connected between X1 and X2.

XOUT is a 3.58 MHz square wave capable of driving other circuits as long as the capacitive load does not exceed 50 pF. Other devices driven by XOUT should use X1 as the input pin, while X2 should be left floating.

LKP

The KP timer control: When high, the KP detect time is increased. When low, the KP detect time is the same as for other tones.

QUAL

Enables tone pair qualification. When low, the threshold detector outputs are passed to the data outputs (D0-D5) without validation in the format selected by the HEX pin. These outputs, plus strobes DV and DE, are updated once per 2.3 ms frame. Note that the strobes will cycle once per frame (even when the inputs are stable.) As always, data changes only when both strobes are low.

CSTR

This input clears both the DV and DE strobes, and is active low. After CSTR is released, the strobes will remain low until a new detect (or error) occurs. The output data is latched by CSTR and will not change while CSTR is low, even in the event that a new detect is qualified internally. (Note that improper use of CSTR may result in missed detects.)

EN

The three-state enable control: When low, the D0-D5 outputs are in the low impedance state. In an interrupt oriented microprocessor interface, EN and CSTR will often be tied together to provide automatic reset of the strobes when the output data is enabled.

STROBE PINS - DV AND DE

Valid data is indicated on the DV strobe pin, and data errors are indicated on the DE strobe pin. Whenever a valid 2 of 6 code has been detected, the DV strobe rises. It remains high until the code goes away, or the CSTR line is activated. When an invalid code is detected, e.g., 1 of 6, 3 of 6, etc., the DE strobe remains high until all errors stop, a valid tone pair is detected, or the CSTR line is activated. Once cleared by CSTR, DE will not reactivate until a new invalid condition is detected. The DE and DV strobes will never be high simultaneously.

DATA OUTPUT MODES

The digital output format may be either "n of 6" or 4-bit hexadecimal.

For "hex" mode, the HEX pin is pulled high. Outputs D0 to D3 provide a 4-bit code identifying one of the 15 valid tone combinations according to Table 1.

The outputs will be cleared to zero when no valid tone pair is present.

For the "n of 6" mode, the HEX pin is pulled low, and each output represents one of the six frequencies as shown below:

| FREQUENCY | OUTPUT PIN |
|-----------|------------|
| 700 | D0 |
| 900 | D1 |
| 1100 | D2 |
| 1300 | D3 |
| 1500 | D4 |
| 1700 | D5 |

The outputs will be cleared to zero when no valid tone is present.

TABLE 1:

| Channels | Tone Pair Freq. | Name | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|----------|------------------|------|----|----|----|----|
| 0-1 | 700, 900 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 0-2 | 700, 1100 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 1-2 | 900, 1100 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 0-3 | 700, 1300 | 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 1-3 | 900, 1300 | 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 2-3 | 1100, 1300 | 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 0-4 | 700, 1500 | 7 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 1-4 | 900, 1500 | 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 2-4 | 1100, 1500 | 9 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 3-4 | 1300, 1500 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 2-5 | 1100, 1700 | KP | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 4-5 | 1500, 1700 | ST | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 1-5 | 900, 1700 | ST1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 3-5 | 1300, 1700 | ST2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 0-5 | 700, 1700 | ST3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | any other signal | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

NOTE: In the hex mode, D4 = DE and D5 = DV.

6

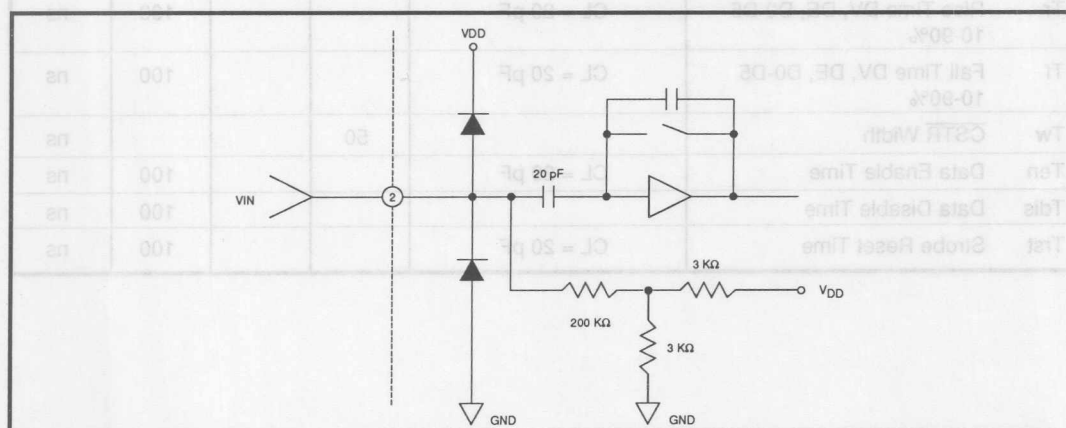


FIGURE 1: VIN Equivalent Input Circuit

SSI 78A207

MFR1 Receiver

TIMING SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--------------------------------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| Ton Tone Time, KP (LKP = VDD) | detect | 55 | | | ms |
| Ton | reject | | | 30 | ms |
| Ton Tone Time, KP (LKP = DGND) | detect | 30 | | | ms |
| Ton | reject | | | 10 | ms |
| Ton Tone Time, All Others | detect | 30 | | | ms |
| Ton | reject | | | 10 | ms |
| Tpse Pause Time | detect | 20 | | | ms |
| Tbr | reject | | | 10 | ms |
| Tsu Data Setup Time | | 6 | | | μs |
| Th Data Hold Time | | 7 | | | μs |
| Tskew Tone Skew Tolerance | | | | 4 | ms |
| Tstr Minimum Strobe Pulse Width | | | | | |
| QUAL High | | 20 | | | ms |
| QUAL Low | | 2 | | | ms |
| Tsep Minimum Strobe Separation | | | | | |
| QUAL High | | 20 | | | ms |
| QUAL Low | | 2 | | | ms |
| Tr Rise Time DV, DE, D0-D5 10-90% | CL = 20 pF | | | 100 | ns |
| Tf Fall Time DV, DE, D0-D5 10-90% | CL = 20 pF | | | 100 | ns |
| Tw CSTR Width | | 50 | | | ns |
| Ten Data Enable Time | CL = 20 pF | | | 100 | ns |
| Tdis Data Disable Time | | | | 100 | ns |
| Trst Strobe Reset Time | CL = 20 pF | | | 100 | ns |

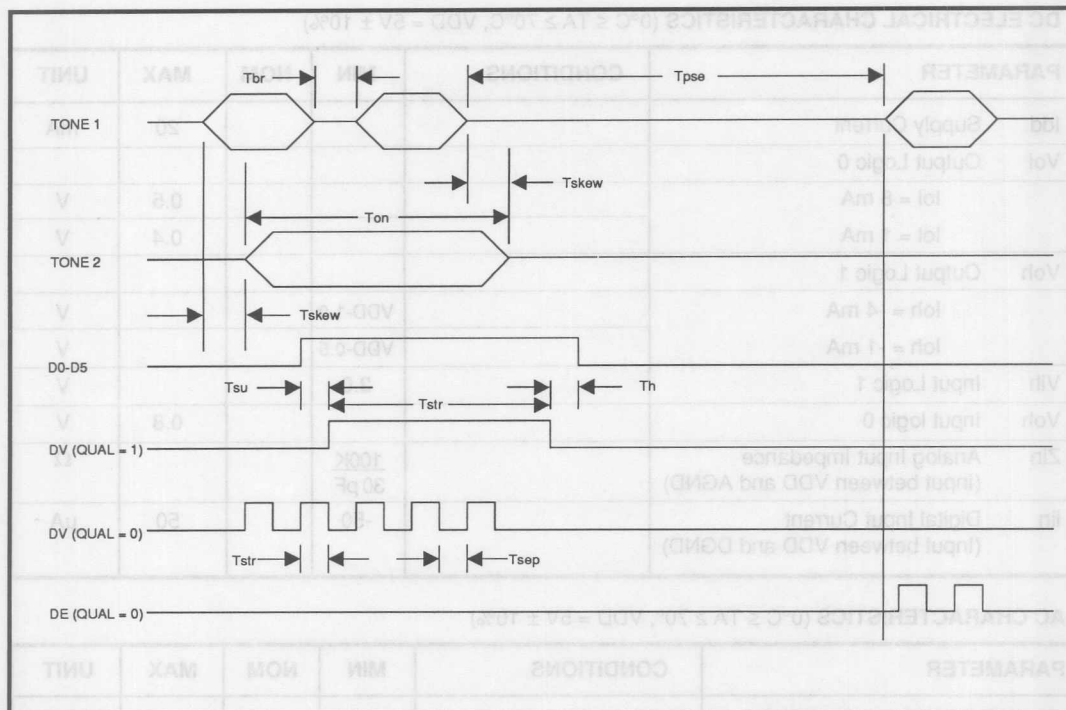


FIGURE 2: SSI 78A207 Timing Diagram

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

(Operating above absolute maximum ratings may damage the device.)

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|--|--|
| DC Supply Voltage V_{DD} | + 7V |
| Operating Temperature | 0 to 70 (Ambient)°C |
| Storage Temperature | 65 to 150°C |
| Power Dissipation (25°C) (Derate above $T_A=25^\circ\text{C}$ @ 6.25 mW/°C) | 650mW |
| Input Voltage | ($V_{DD} + 0.3\text{V}$) to -0.3V |
| DC Current into any input | $\pm 10\text{mA}$ |
| Lead Temperature (Soldering, 10 sec.) | 300°C |

SSI 78A207

MFR1 Receiver

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (0°C ≤ TA ≤ 70°C, VDD = 5V ± 10%)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|---------------|-----|-----|------|
| I _{dd} Supply Current | | | | 20 | mA |
| V _{ol} Output Logic 0 | | | | | |
| I _{ol} = 8 mA | | | | 0.5 | V |
| I _{ol} = 1 mA | | | | 0.4 | V |
| V _{oh} Output Logic 1 | | | | | |
| I _{oh} = -4 mA | | VDD-1.0 | | | V |
| I _{oh} = -1 mA | | VDD-0.5 | | | V |
| V _{ih} Input Logic 1 | | 2.0 | | | V |
| V _{oh} Input logic 0 | | | | 0.8 | V |
| Z _{in} Analog Input Impedance (Input between VDD and AGND) | | 100K 30 pF | | | Ω |
| I _{in} Digital Input Current (Input between VDD and DGND) | | -50 | | 50 | μA |

AC CHARACTERISTICS (0°C ≤ TA ≤ 70°C, VDD = 5V ± 10%)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|---|----------------------|-----|-------|------------------|
| F Frequency for Detect Tolerance | | ±(0.015 x Fo + 5) | | | Hz |
| A Amplitude for Detect | each tone | -25 | | 0 | dBm |
| | | 0.123 | | 2.191 | V _{pp} |
| AN Amplitude for no Detect | | | | -35 | dB |
| | | | | 0.039 | V _{pp} |
| TW Twist Tolerance | TW = $\frac{\text{high tone}}{\text{low tone}}$ | -6 | | +6 | dB |
| T3 Third MF Tone Reject Amp | relative to highest amplitude tone | -15 | | | dB |
| N60 60 HZ Tolerance | not more than one error in 2500 10-digit calls | 81 | | | dB _{rn} |
| | | 0.777 | | | V _{pp} |
| N180 180 HZ Tolerance | same as above | 68 | | | dB _{rn} |
| | | 0.174 | | | V _{pp} |
| Nn Noise Tolerance ¹ | same as above | | | -20 | dB |
| NI Impulse Noise Tolerance ² | same as above | | | +12 | dB |

NOTES: 1. C-message weighted. Measured with respect to highest amplitude tone.

2. With noise tape 201 per PUB 56201. Measured with respect to highest amplitude tone.

SSI 78A207 MFR1 Receiver

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (TOP VIEW)



20 - PIN DIP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| SSI 78A207 20-Pin Plastic DIP | 78A207-CP | 78A207-CP |

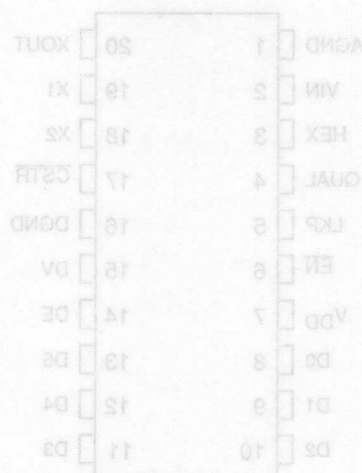
6

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

Notes:

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS
(TOP VIEW)



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

20 - PIN DIP

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| SSI 78A207 20-Pin Plastic DIP | 78A207-CP | 78A207-CP |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Section **7**

PCM



Section

PCM

7

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P236 is a line interface transceiver IC intended for DS-3 (44.736 Mbit/s) applications. The receiver has a very wide dynamic range and is designed to accept B3ZS-encoded Alternate-Mark Inversion (AMI) inputs; it provides clock, positive data, negative data, and low-level signal detector logical outputs. The transmitter converts clock and data input signals into AMI pulses of the appropriate shape for transmission. A line buildout (LBO) equalizer may be selected to shape the outgoing pulses for shorter line lengths. The SSI 78P236 requires a single 5-volt supply and is available in DIP and surface mount packages.

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

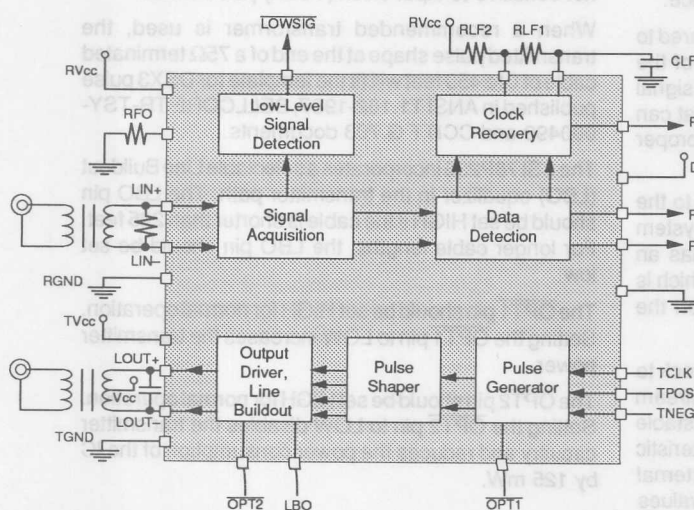
The SSI 78P236 is a single chip line interface IC designed to work with 44.736 Mbit/s DS-3 signals. The receiver recovers 44.736 MHz clock, positive data and negative data from an Alternate Mark Inversion (AMI) signal which has travelled a maximum of 450 feet from a DSX3 crosspoint over 75 Ω coaxial cable (cable type WECO 728A, RG-59B or equivalent). The wide dynamic range of SSI 78P236 allows for additional resistive attenuation. The input DS-3 signal should be B3ZS coded.

(continued)

FEATURES

- Single chip transmit and receive interface for DS-3 (44.736 Mbit/s) applications
- Unique clock recovery circuit, requires no crystals, tuned components or external clock
- Selectable transmit line buildout (LBO) to accommodate shorter line lengths
- Standard CMOS level unipolar POS and NEG data and CLK ports
- Compliant with ANSI T1.102 - 1987, TR-TSY-000499 and CCITT G.703
- Low-level input signal indication
- Available in DIP or surface mount packages
- -40°C to +85°C operating range
- Pin-compatible with SSI 78P2361, 78P2362 and 78P2200

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



28-Pin DIP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 78P236

DS-3 Line Interface

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION (continued)

The transmitter accepts CMOS level logical clock, positive data and negative data and converts them to the AMI signal to drive a 75 Ω coaxial cable. Programmable internal Line Buildout (LBO) circuitry eliminates the need for external LBO networks. The shape of the transmitted signal through any cable length of 0 to 450 feet complies with the published templates of ANSI T.102-1987, CCITT G.703 and TR-TSY-000499. The SSI 78P236 is designed to work with a B3ZS coded signal. The B3ZS encoding and decoding functions are normally included in the DS-3 framer ICs or can easily be implemented in a PAL.

RECEIVER

The receiver input is normally transformer-coupled to the DS-3 signal. The inputs to the IC are internally referenced to RVCC so that when no transformer is used, a DC blocking capacitor of 0.01 μ F should be used to isolate these pins from the DS-3 signal. Since the input impedance of the SSI 78P236 is high, the DS-3 line must be terminated in 75 Ω . The input signal to the SSI 78P236 must be limited to a maximum of three consecutive zeros using a coding scheme such as B3ZS or HDB3.

The DS-3 signal is input to a variable gain differential amplifier whose output is maintained at a constant voltage level regardless of the input voltage level. The gain of this amplifier is adjusted by detecting the peak of the signal and comparing it to a fixed reference.

The output of the variable gain amplifier is compared to a threshold value which is a fixed percentage of the signal peak. In this way, even though the input signal amplitude may fall below the minimum value that can be regulated by the variable gain circuit, the proper detection threshold is maintained.

Output of the data comparators are connected to the clock recovery circuits. The clock recovery system employs a unique phase locked loop which has an auxiliary frequency-sensitive acquisition loop which is active only when cycle-slipping occurs between the received signal rate and the internal oscillator.

This system permits the loop to independently lock to the frequency and phase of the incoming data stream without the need for high precision and/or adjustable oscillator or tuned circuits. The response characteristic for the phase locked loop is established by external filter components, RLF1, RLF2 and CLF1. The values

of these components are specified such that the bandwidth of the phase locked loop is greater than 200 kHz.

The jitter tolerance of the SSI 78P236 exceeds the requirements of TR-TSY-000499 for the category II of equipments. The jitter transfer function is maximally flat so the IC doesn't add any jitter to the system.

Figure 2 shows the recovered clock (RCLK), positive data (RPOS) and negative data (RNEG) signals timing. The data is valid on the rising edge of the clock. The minimum setup and hold times allow easy interface to all DS-3 framer circuits. These signals are CMOS-level outputs.

Should the input signal fall below a minimum value, the LOWSIG pin goes active low. A time delay is provided before this output is active so the transient interruptions do not needlessly cause the indication.

TRANSMITTER

The transmitter accepts unipolar CMOS-level logical clock, positive data and negative data signals (TCLK, TPOS, TNEG) and generates high current drive pulses on the LOUT+ and LOUT- pins. When properly connected to a center tapped transformer, an AMI pulse is generated which can drive a 75 Ω coaxial cable (type WE728A or RG59B).

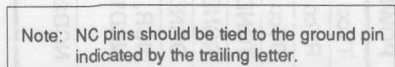
Figure 3 shows the timing for the transmitter logic signals. The output pulse width is internally set and is not sensitive to input clock (TCLK) pulse width.

When a recommended transformer is used, the transmitted pulse shape at the end of a 75 Ω terminated cable of 0 to 450 feet will fit the template for DSX3 pulse published in ANSI T1.102-1987, BELLCORE TR-TSY-000499 and CCITT G.703 documents.

The SSI 78P236 incorporates a selectable Line Buildout (LBO) equalizer in the transmitter path. The LBO pin should be set HIGH if the cable is shorter than 225 feet. For longer cable lengths, the LBO pin should be set low.

The $\overline{\text{OPT1}}$ pin should be set HIGH for normal operation. Setting the $\overline{\text{OPT1}}$ pin to LOW increases the transmitter power.

The $\overline{\text{OPT2}}$ pin should be set HIGH for normal operation. Setting the $\overline{\text{OPT2}}$ pin to LOW disables the transmitter circuitry and reduces the power consumption of the IC by 125 mW.



7

SSI 78P236 DS-3 Line Interface

SSI 78P236

DS-3 Line Interface

PIN DESCRIPTION

RECEIVER

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|------|--|
| LIN+, LIN- | I | Differential inputs, transformer-coupled from line. |
| RPOS | O | Unipolar receiver output, active as result of positive pulse at inputs. |
| RNEG | O | Unipolar receiver output, active as result of negative pulse at inputs. |
| RCLK | O | Clock pulses recovered from line data. |
| LOWSIG | O | Low signal logic output indicating that input signal is less than threshold value. |

TRANSMITTER

| | | |
|-------|---|---|
| TPOS | I | Unipolar transmitter data input, active high. |
| TNEG | I | Unipolar transmitter data input, active high. |
| TCLK | I | Transmitter clock input, active high. |
| LOUT+ | O | Output to transformer for positive data pulses. |
| LOUT- | O | Output to transformer for negative data pulses. |
| LBO | I | Line buildout control. Selected for shorter cable lengths. |
| OPT1 | I | Transmit option 1. Selects faster output pulse transition time and higher amplitude when low. |
| OPT2 | I | Transmit option 2. Disables output driver and reduces output bias current when low. |

EXTERNAL COMPONENT CONNECTION

| | | |
|----------|---|--|
| RFO | I | Resistor connected to RGND to provide basic center frequency of receiver phase locked loop oscillator. |
| LF1, LF2 | - | Resistor-capacitor loop filter network to establish bandwidth of phase locked loop. |

POWER

| | | |
|------------------|---|---|
| TVcc | - | 5V power supply for transmit circuits. |
| RVcc | - | 5V power supply for receive circuits. |
| DVcc | - | 5V power supply for receive logic circuits. |
| TGND | - | Ground return for transmit circuits. |
| RGND | - | Ground return for receive circuits. |
| DGND | - | Ground return for receive logic circuits. |
| NCR, NCT NCD1 | - | No connect. These pins are not connected to the chip. They should be tied to the appropriate ground pin (see figure 1) to minimize pin-to-pin coupling capacitance. |
| NCD2 | - | No connect. This pin is not connected for compatibility to SSI 78P7200. |

SSI 78P236

DS-3 Line Interface

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, Vcc = 5V ±5%, unless otherwise noted.) Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the largest absolute value. Operation above absolute maximum ratings may permanently damage the device.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|-------------------------------|
| Positive 5.0V supply: TVcc, RVcc, DVcc | 6.0V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260°C |
| Ambient Operating Temperature, TA | -40 to +85°C |
| Pin Ratings: LOUT+, LOUT- | Vcc -2.0 to Vcc +2.0V |
| LIN+, LIN-, TPOS, TNEG, TCLK, LBO, RFO, LF2, LF1, OPT1, OPT2 Pins | -0.3 to Vcc +0.3V |
| Pin Ratings: RPOS, RNEG, RCLK, LOWSIG Pins | -0.3 to Vcc +0.3V or +12mA |

SUPPLY CURRENTS AND POWER

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---------------------|--|-----|-----|------|------|
| ICC Supply Current | Outputs Unloaded, normal operation, transmit and receive all 1's pattern | | 142 | 174 | mA |
| P Power Dissipation | Outputs unloaded, TA = 85°C | | | 0.93 | W |

EXTERNAL COMPONENTS (Refer to Figure 1 for location of components.)

| | | | | | | |
|------|--------------------------------|--------------|--|------|----|----|
| RFO | Loop center frequency resistor | 1% tolerance | | 5.23 | | kΩ |
| RLF1 | Loop filter resistor | 1% | | 20 | | kΩ |
| RLF2 | Loop filter resistor | 1% | | 100 | | kΩ |
| CLF1 | Loop filter capacitor | 5% | | 0.22 | | μF |
| RTR | Receive termination resistor | 1% | | 75 | | Ω |
| CTT | Transmit termination capacitor | 5% | | | 10 | pF |

SSI 78P236

DS-3 Line Interface

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DIGITAL INPUTS AND OUTPUTS

(CMOS-compatible pins: LOWSIG, RPOS, RNEG, RCLK, TPOS, TNEG, TCLK, LBO, OPT1.) Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the largest absolute value.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------|---------------|------|-----|----------|------|
| VIL Input low voltage | | -0.3 | | 1.5 | V |
| VIH Input high voltage | | 3.5 | | Vcc +0.3 | V |
| IIL Input low current | VIL = 1.5V | -5.0 | | 5.0 | μA |
| IIH Input high current | VIH = 3.5V | -5.0 | | 5.0 | μA |
| VOL Output low voltage | IOL = 0.1 mA | | | 1.0 | V |
| VOH Output high voltage | IOH = -0.1 mA | 4.0 | | | V |

OPT2 CHARACTERISTICS

| | | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------|-----|--|-----|---|
| VIL Input low voltage | IIL = 0.4 mA | | | 0.5 | V |
| VIH Input high voltage | | 2.0 | | | V |

RECEIVER

All of the measurements for the receiver are made with the following conditions unless otherwise stated:

1. The input signal is transformer coupled as shown in Figure 1.
2. RFO = 5.23 kΩ
3. The circuit is connected as in Figure 1.
4. The maximum cable length (type 728-A or RG-59B) to DSX-3 point is 450 ft.

| | | | | | |
|--|---|--------|-------|-------|-----|
| VIN Input signal voltage | Input AC-Coupled | ±0.045 | | ±1.20 | Vpk |
| RIN Input Resistance | Input at chip's common mode voltage | 15 | 20 | 30 | kΩ |
| VDTH Receive data detection threshold | Relative to peak amplitude for 22.37 MHz sinusoidal input | | 50 | | % |
| VLOW Receive data low signal threshold | Relative to peak amplitude for 22.37 MHz sinusoidal input | | ±55 | | mV |
| VLOWT Receive data low signal delay | Relative to peak amplitude for 22.37 MHz sinusoidal input | | 1.5 | | μs |
| TRCF Receive clock period | | | 22.35 | | ns |
| TRC Receive clock pulse width | | | 12.24 | | ns |
| TRCPT Receive clock positive transition time | CL = 15 pF | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TRCNT Receive clock negative transition time | CL = 15 pF | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |

SSI 78P236

DS-3 Line Interface

RECEIVER (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------|---|--------|-------|------|-----------------|
| TRDP TRDN | Positive or negative receive data pulse width | | 22.35 | | ns |
| TRDPS TRDNS | Receive data set-up time | 5 | 11.18 | 13.7 | ns |
| TRDPH TRDNH | Receive data hold time | 5 | 11.18 | 13.7 | ns |
| | Receive input jitter tolerance high frequency | ±3.35 | | | ns |
| | | 0.3 | | | UIPP |
| | Receive input jitter tolerance low frequency | ±111.7 | | | ns |
| | | 10 | | | UIPP |
| KD | Clock Recovery Phase Detector Gain | 72 | 80 | 88 | μA/Rad |
| KO | Clock Recovery Phase Locked Oscillator Gain | 12 | 14.5 | 17 | Mrad/sec. -Volt |

TRANSMITTER

All of the measurements for the transmitter are made with the following conditions unless otherwise stated:

1. Transmit pulse characteristics are obtained using a line transformer which has the characteristics TBD.
2. The circuit is connected as in Figure 1.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------|---|-------|-------|------|------|
| TTCF | Transmit clock repetition period | | 22.35 | | ns |
| TTC | Transmit clock pulse width | | 11.18 | | ns |
| TTCNT | Transmit clock negative transition time | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TTCPT | Transmit clock positive transition time | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TTPDS TTNDS | Transmit data set-up time | 3.5 | 11.18 | | ns |
| TTPDH TTNDH | Transmit data hold time | 3.5 | 11.18 | | ns |
| TTPL | Transmit positive line pulse width | 10.62 | 11.18 | 12.0 | ns |

SSI 78P236

DS-3 Line Interface

TRANSMITTER (continued)

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-----------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------|-------|------|------|
| TTNL | Transmit negative line pulse width | Measured at transformer, LBO = Low | 10.62 | 11.18 | 12.0 | ns |
| | Transmit line pulse waveshape | See Note | | | | |

Note: Characteristics are in accordance with ANSI T1.102 - 1987, Table 5 and Figure 8.

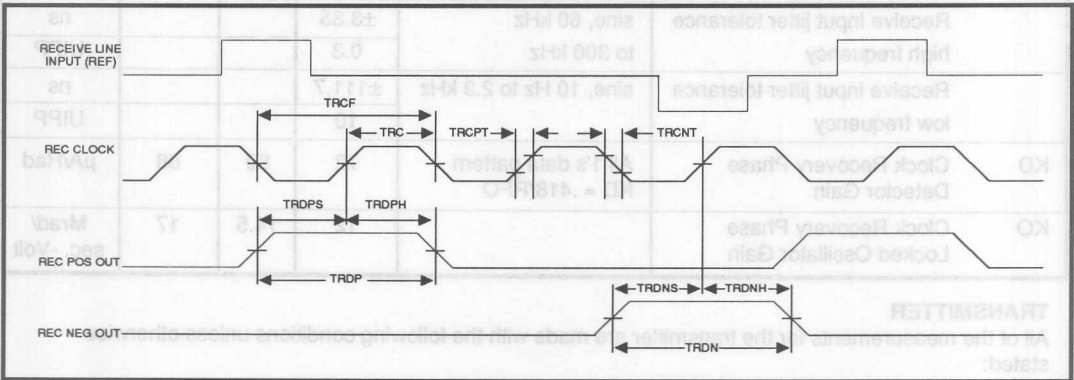


FIGURE 2: Receive Waveforms

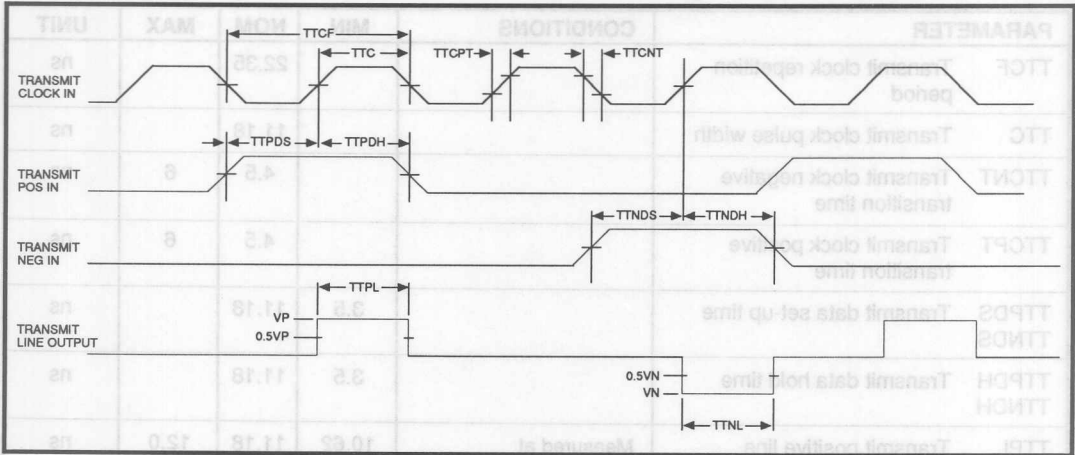


FIGURE 3: Transmit Waveforms

SSI 78P236

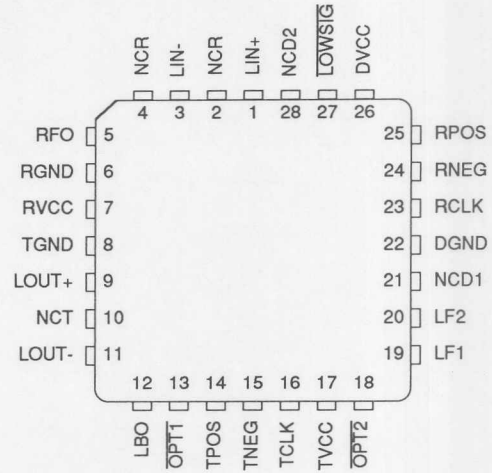
DS-3 Line Interface

(Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



28-Pin DIP



28-Pin PLCC

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 78P236, DS-3 Line Interface – 28-pin | | |
| Standard Width Plastic DIP (600 mil) | 78P236-IP | 78P236-IP |
| Surface Mount 28-pin PLCC | 78P236-IH | 78P236-IH |

7

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

DS-3 Line Interface

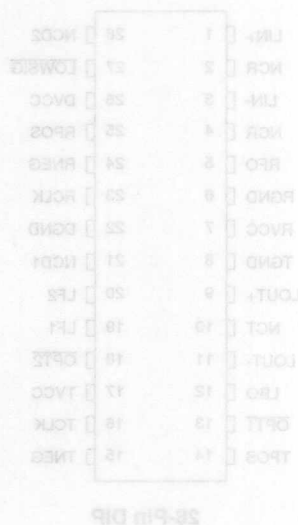
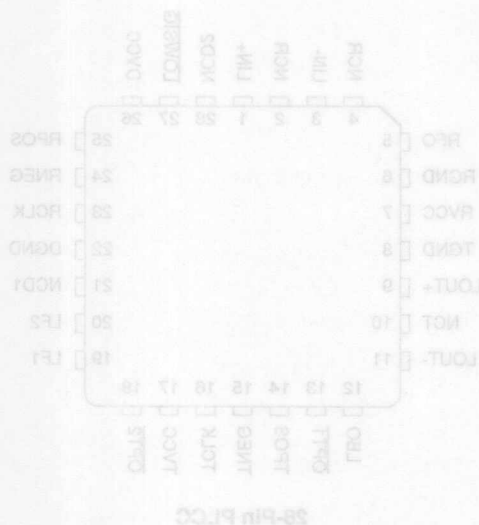
DS1 78P236

Notes:

CAUTION: Use handling procedures for a static sensitive component.

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| DS1 78P236, DS-3 Line Interface - 28-pin | | |
| Standard Width Plastic DIP (600 mil) | 78P236-IP | 78P236-IP |
| Surface Mount 28-pin PLCC | 78P236-IH | 78P236-IH |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, trademarks or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14381 Midway Road, Austin, TX 78758-1033 (714) 673-6000 FAX (714) 673-6014

December 1993

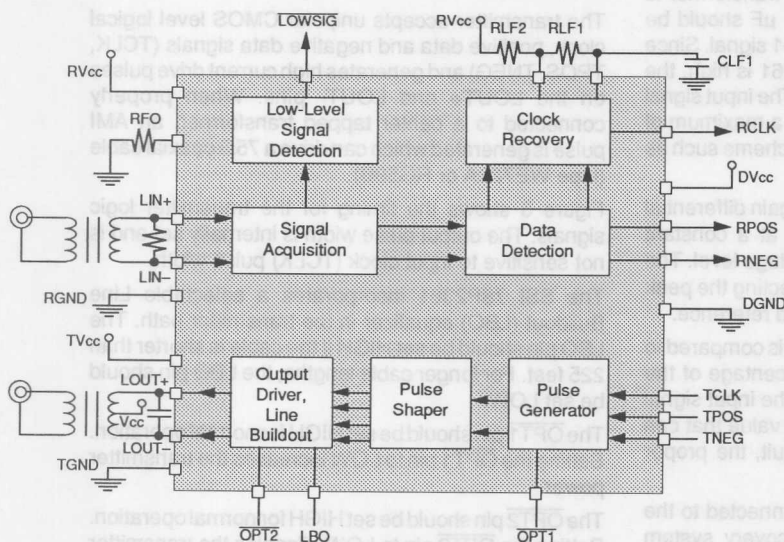
DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P2361 is a line interface transceiver IC intended for STS-1 (51.84 Mbit/s) applications. The receiver has a very wide dynamic range and is designed to accept B3ZS-encoded Alternate-Mark Inversion (AMI) inputs; it provides clock, positive data, negative data, and low-level signal detector logical outputs. The transmitter converts clock and data input signals into AMI pulses of the appropriate shape for transmission. A line buildout (LBO) equalizer may be selected to shape the outgoing pulses for shorter line lengths. The SSI 78P2361 requires a single 5-volt supply and is available in DIP and surface mount packages.

FEATURES

- Single chip transmit and receive interface for STS-1 (51.84 Mbit/s) applications
- Unique clock recovery circuit, requires no crystals, tuned components or external clock
- Selectable transmit line buildout (LBO) to accommodate shorter line lengths
- Standard CMOS level unipolar POS and NEG data and CLK ports
- Low-level input signal indication
- Available in DIP or surface mount packages
- -40°C to +85°C operating range
- Pin-compatible with SSI 78P236 and 78P2362

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM

| | | | |
|-------|----|----|--------|
| LIN+ | 1 | 28 | NCD2 |
| NCR | 2 | 27 | LOWSIG |
| LIN- | 3 | 26 | DVCC |
| NCR | 4 | 25 | RPOS |
| RFO | 5 | 24 | RNEG |
| RGND | 6 | 23 | RCLK |
| RVCC | 7 | 22 | DGND |
| TGND | 8 | 21 | NCD1 |
| LOUT+ | 9 | 20 | LF2 |
| NCT | 10 | 19 | LF1 |
| LOUT- | 11 | 18 | OPT2 |
| LBO | 12 | 17 | TVCC |
| OPT1 | 13 | 16 | TCLK |
| TPOS | 14 | 15 | TNEG |

28-Pin DIP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 78P2361 STS-1 Line Interface

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P2361 is a single chip line interface IC designed to work with 51.84 Mbit/s STS-1 signals. The receiver recovers 51.84 MHz clock, positive data and negative data from an Alternate Mark Inversion (AMI) signal which has travelled a maximum of 450 feet from a crosspoint over 75 Ω coaxial cable (cable type WE78A, RG-59B or equivalent). The wide dynamic range of 78P2361 allows for additional resistive attenuation. The input STS-1 signal should be B3ZS coded.

The transmitter accepts CMOS level logical clock, positive data and negative data and converts them to the AMI signal to drive a 75 Ω coaxial cable. Programmable internal Line Buildout (LBO) circuitry eliminates the need for external LBO networks. The shape of the transmitted signal through any cable length of 0 to 450 feet will match a scaled DS-3 template. The SSI 78P2361 is designed to work with a B3ZS coded signal. The B3ZS encoding and decoding functions are normally included in the STS-1 framer ICs or can easily be implemented in a PAL.

RECEIVER

The receiver input is normally transformer-coupled to the STS-1 signal. The inputs to the IC are internally referenced to RVCC so that when no transformer is used, a DC blocking capacitor of 0.01 μ F should be used to isolate these pins from the STS-1 signal. Since the input impedance of the SSI 78P2361 is high, the STS-1 line must be terminated in 75 Ω . The input signal to the SSI 78P2361 must be limited to a maximum of two consecutive zeros using a coding scheme such as B3ZS.

The STS-1 signal is input to a variable gain differential amplifier whose output is maintained at a constant voltage level regardless of the input voltage level. The gain of this amplifier is adjusted by detecting the peak of the signal and comparing it to a fixed reference.

The output of the variable gain amplifier is compared to a threshold value which is a fixed percentage of the signal peak. In this way, even though the input signal amplitude may fall below the minimum value that can be regulated by the variable gain circuit, the proper detection threshold is maintained.

Output of the data comparators are connected to the clock recovery circuits. The clock recovery system employs a unique phase locked loop which has an auxiliary frequency-sensitive acquisition loop which is

active only when cycle-slipping occurs between the received signal rate and the internal oscillator.

This system permits the loop to independently lock to the frequency and phase of the incoming data stream without the need for high precision and/or adjustable oscillator or tuned circuits.

The response characteristic for the phase locked loop is established by external filter components, RLF1, RLF2 and CLF1. The values of these components are specified such that the bandwidth of the phase locked loop is greater than 200 kHz.

The jitter transfer function of the 78P2361 should be set maximally flat so the IC doesn't add any jitter to the system.

Figure 2 shows the recovered clock (RCLK), positive data (RPOS) and negative data (RNEG) signals timing. The data is valid on the rising edge of the clock. The minimum setup and hold times allow easy interface to many STS-1 framer circuits. These signals are CMOS-level outputs.

Should the input signal fall below a minimum value, the LOWSIG pin goes active low. A time delay is provided before this output is active so the transient interruptions do not needlessly cause the indication.

TRANSMITTER

The transmitter accepts unipolar CMOS level logical clock, positive data and negative data signals (TCLK, TPOS, TNEG) and generates high current drive pulses on the LOUT+ and LOUT- pins. When properly connected to a center tapped transformer, an AMI pulse is generated which can drive a 75 Ω coaxial cable (type WE78A or RG59B).

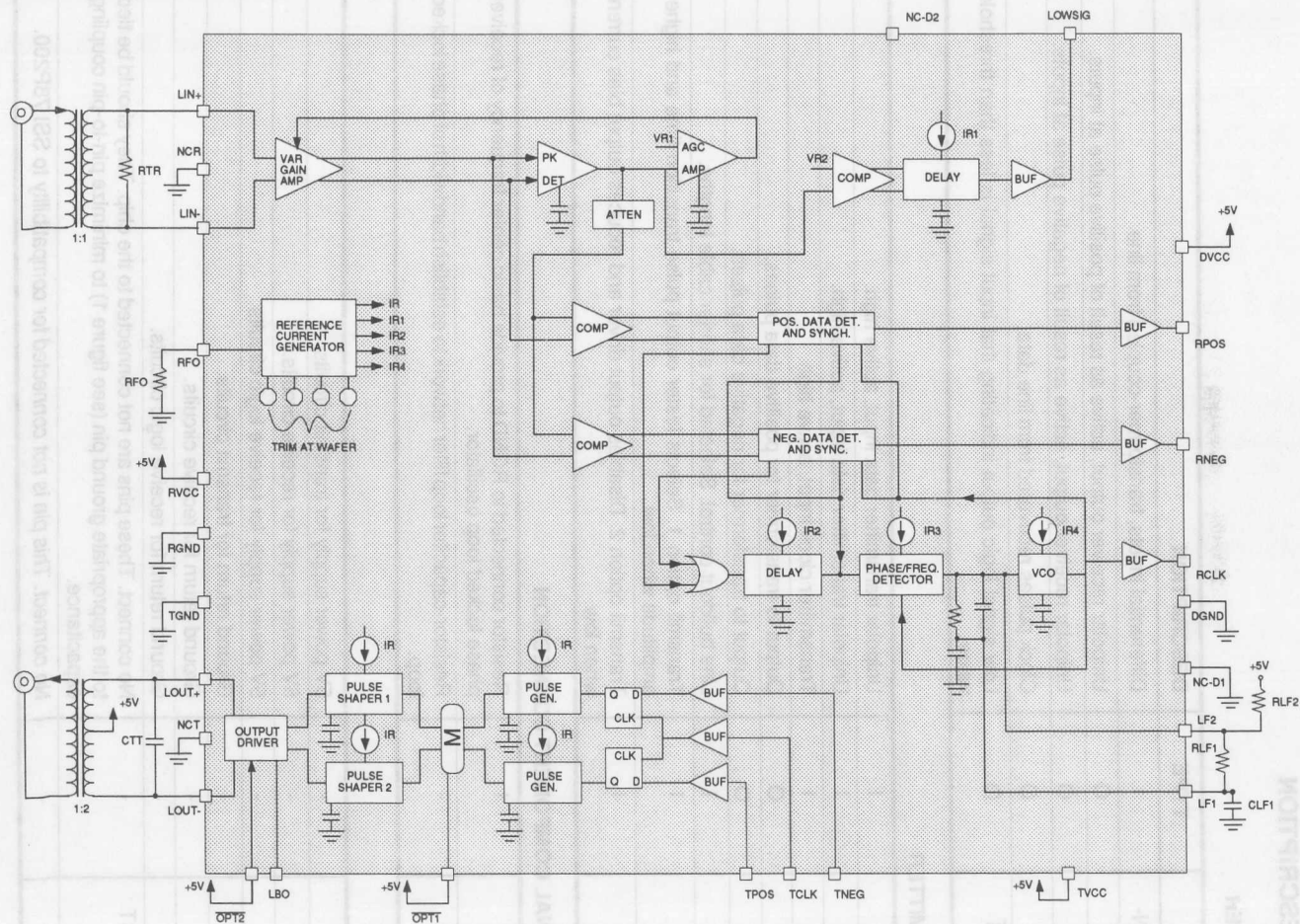
Figure 3 shows the timing for the transmitter logic signals. The output pulse width is internally set and is not sensitive to input clock (TCLK) pulse width.

The SSI 78P2361 incorporates a selectable Line Buildout (LBO) equalizer in the transmitter path. The LBO pin should be set HIGH if the cable is shorter than 225 feet. For longer cable lengths, the LBO pin should be set LOW.

The OPT1 pin should be set HIGH for normal operation. Setting the OPT1 pin to LOW increases the transmitter power.

The OPT2 pin should be set HIGH for normal operation. Setting the OPT2 pin to LOW disables the transmitter circuitry and reduces the power consumption of the IC by 125 mW.

SSI 78P2361 STS-1 Line Interface



Note: NC pins should be tied to the ground pin indicated by the trailing letter.

FIGURE 1: Functional Diagram

SSI 78P2361

STS-1 Line Interface

PIN DESCRIPTION

RECEIVER

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|------|--|
| LIN+, LIN- | I | Differential inputs, transformer-coupled from line. |
| RPOS | O | Unipolar receiver output, active as result of positive pulse at inputs. |
| RNEG | O | Unipolar receiver output, active as result of negative pulse at inputs. |
| RCLK | O | Clock pulses recovered from line data. |
| LOWSIG | O | Low signal logic output indicating that input signal is less than threshold value. |

TRANSMITTER

| | | |
|-------|---|---|
| TPOS | I | Unipolar transmitter data input, active high. |
| TNEG | I | Unipolar transmitter data input, active high. |
| TCLK | I | Transmitter clock input, active high. |
| LOUT+ | O | Output to transformer for positive data pulses. |
| LOUT- | O | Output to transformer for negative data pulses. |
| LBO | I | Line buildout control. Selected for shorter cable lengths. |
| OPT1 | I | Transmit option 1. Selects faster output pulse transition time and higher amplitude when low. |
| OPT2 | I | Transmit option 2. Disables output driver and reduces output bias current when low. |

EXTERNAL COMPONENT CONNECTION

| | | |
|----------|---|--|
| RFO | I | Resistor connected to RGND to provide basic center frequency of receiver phase locked loop oscillator. |
| LF1, LF2 | - | Resistor-capacitor loop filter network to establish bandwidth of phase locked loop. |

POWER

| | | |
|------------------|---|---|
| TVcc | - | 5V power supply for transmit circuits. |
| RVcc | - | 5V power supply for receive circuits. |
| DVcc | - | 5V power supply for receive logic circuits. |
| TGND | - | Ground return for transmit circuits. |
| RGND | - | Ground return for receive circuits. |
| DGND | - | Ground return for receive logic circuits. |
| NCR, NCT NCD1 | - | No connect. These pins are not connected to the chip. They should be tied to the appropriate ground pin (see figure 1) to minimize pin-to-pin coupling capacitance. |
| NCD2 | - | No connect. This pin is not connected for compatibility to SSI 78P200. |

SSI 78P2361

STS-1 Line Interface

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, Vcc = 5V ±5%, unless otherwise noted.) Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the largest absolute value. Operation above absolute maximum ratings may permanently damage the device.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|--------------------------------|
| Positive 5.0V supply: TVcc, RVcc, DVcc | 6.0V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260°C |
| Ambient Operating Temperature, TA | -40 to +85°C |
| Pin Ratings: LOUT +, LOUT- | Vcc -2.0 to Vcc +2.0V |
| LIN+, LIN-, TPOS, TNEG, TCLK, LBO, RFO, LF2, LF1, OPT1, OPT2 Pins | -0.3 to Vcc +0.3V |
| Pin Ratings: | |
| RPOS, RNEG, RCLK, LOWSIG Pins | -0.3 to Vcc +0.3V or +12 mA |

SUPPLY CURRENTS AND POWER

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---------------------|--|-----|-----|------|------|
| ICC Supply Current | Outputs Unloaded, normal operation, transmit and receive all 1's pattern | | 142 | 174 | mA |
| P Power Dissipation | Outputs unloaded, TA = 85°C | | | 0.93 | W |

EXTERNAL COMPONENTS (Refer to Figure 1 for location of components.)

| | | | | | | |
|------|--------------------------------|--------------|--|------|----|----|
| RFO | Loop center frequency resistor | 1% tolerance | | 4.53 | | kΩ |
| RLF1 | Loop filter resistor | 1% | | 20 | | kΩ |
| RLF2 | Loop filter resistor | 5% | | 100 | | kΩ |
| CLF1 | Loop filter capacitor | 5% | | 0.22 | | μF |
| RTR | Receive termination resistor | 1% | | 75 | | Ω |
| CTT | Transmit termination capacitor | 5% | | | 10 | pF |

SSI 78P2361

STS-1 Line Interface

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DIGITAL INPUTS AND OUTPUTS

(CMOS-compatible pins: $\overline{\text{LOWSIG}}$, $\overline{\text{RPOS}}$, $\overline{\text{RNEG}}$, $\overline{\text{RCLK}}$, $\overline{\text{TPOS}}$, $\overline{\text{TNEG}}$, $\overline{\text{TCLK}}$, $\overline{\text{LBO}}$, $\overline{\text{OPT1}}$.) Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the largest absolute value.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------|---------------|------|-----|----------|---------------|
| VIL Input low voltage | | -0.3 | | 1.5 | V |
| VIH Input high voltage | | 3.5 | | Vcc +0.3 | V |
| IIL Input low current | VIL = 1.5V | -5.0 | | 5.0 | μA |
| IIH Input high current | VIH = 3.5V | -5.0 | | 5.0 | μA |
| VOL Output low voltage | IOL = 0.1 mA | | | 1.0 | V |
| VOH Output high voltage | IOH = -0.1 mA | 4.0 | | | V |

$\overline{\text{OPT2}}$ CHARACTERISTICS

| | | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------|-----|--|-----|---|
| VIL Input low voltage | IIL = 0.4 mA | | | 0.5 | V |
| VIH Input high voltage | | 2.0 | | | V |

RECEIVER

All of the measurements for the receiver are made with the following conditions unless otherwise stated:

1. The input signal is transformer coupled as shown in Figure 1.
2. RFO = 4.53 k Ω
3. The circuit is connected as in Figure 1.
4. The maximum cable length (type 728-A or RG-59B) to DSX-3 point is 450 ft.

| | | | | | |
|--|---|-------------|----------|------------|---------------|
| VIN Input signal voltage | Input AC-Coupled | ± 0.045 | | ± 1.20 | Vpk |
| RIN Input Resistance | Input at chip's common mode voltage | 15 | 20 | 30 | k Ω |
| VDTH Receive data detection threshold | Relative to peak amplitude for 25.92 MHz sinusoidal input | | 50 | | % |
| VLOW Receive data low signal threshold | Relative to peak amplitude for 25.92 MHz sinusoidal input | | ± 55 | | mV |
| VLOWT Receive data low signal delay | Relative to peak amplitude for 22.37 MHz sinusoidal input | | 1.5 | | μs |
| TRCF Receive clock period | | | 19.29 | | ns |
| TRC Receive clock pulse width | | | 10.99 | | ns |
| TRCPT Receive clock positive transition time | C _L = 15 pF | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TRCNT Receive clock negative transition time | C _L = 15 pF | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |

SSI 78P2361

STS-1 Line Interface

RECEIVER (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------|---|-------|-------|-------|-----------------|
| TRDP TRDN | Positive or negative receive data pulse width | | 19.29 | | ns |
| TRDPS TRDNS | Receive data set-up time | 5 | 9.65 | 11.82 | ns |
| TRDPH TRDNH | Receive data hold time | 5 | 9.65 | 11.82 | ns |
| | Receive input jitter tolerance high frequency | ±2.89 | | | ns |
| | | 0.3 | | | UIPP |
| | Receive input jitter tolerance low frequency | ±96.4 | | | ns |
| | | 10 | | | UIPP |
| KD | Clock Recovery Phase Detector Gain | 83 | 92 | 101 | μA/Rad |
| KO | Clock Recovery Phase Locked Oscillator Gain | 12 | 14.5 | 17 | Mrad/sec. -Volt |

TRANSMITTER

All of the measurements for the transmitter are made with the following conditions unless otherwise stated:

1. Transmit pulse characteristics are obtained using a line transformer which has the characteristics TBD.
2. The circuit is connected as in Figure 1.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------|---|------------------------------------|-------|-------|------|
| TTCF | Transmit clock repetition period | | 19.29 | | ns |
| TTC | Transmit clock pulse width | 8.20 | 9.65 | 11.09 | ns |
| TTCNT | Transmit clock negative transition time | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TTCPT | Transmit clock positive transition time | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TTPDS TTNDS | Transmit data set-up time | 3.5 | 9.65 | | ns |
| TTPDH TTNDH | Transmit data hold time | 3.5 | 9.65 | | ns |
| TTPL | Transmit positive line pulse width | Measured at transformer, LBO = Low | 9.65 | | ns |

SSI 78P2361

STS-1 Line Interface

TRANSMITTER (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------------------------------|-----|------|-----|------|
| TTNL Transmit negative line pulse width | Measured at transformer, LBO = Low | | 9.65 | | ns |
| Transmit line pulse waveshape | See Note | | | | |

Note: The pulse template fits a scaled DSX-3 pulse template.

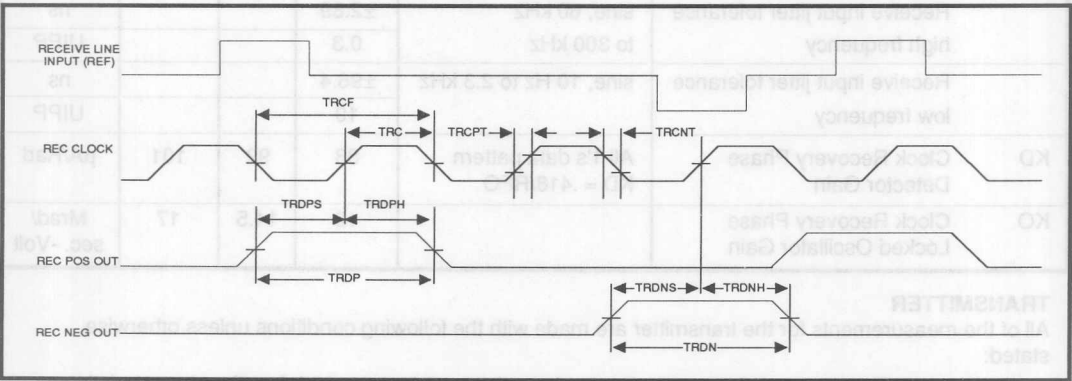


FIGURE 2: Receive Waveforms

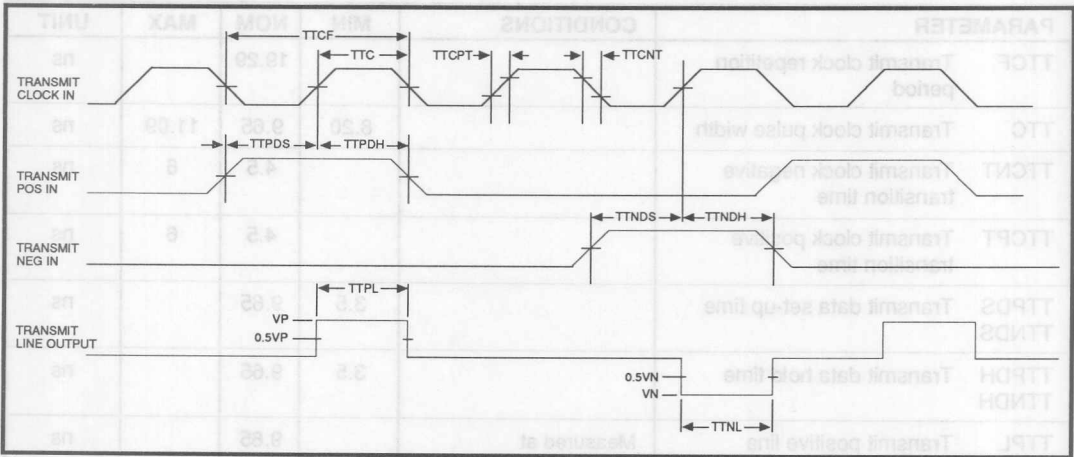


FIGURE 3: Transmit Waveforms

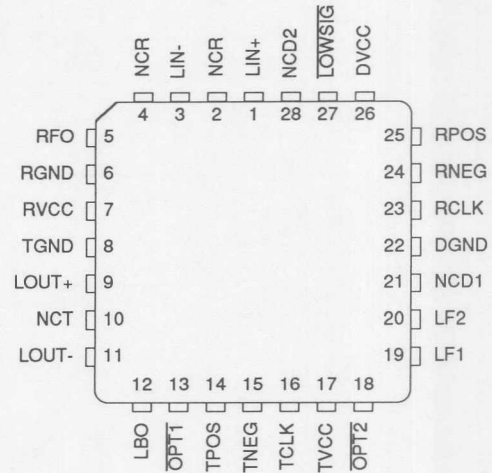
SSI 78P2361 STS-1 Line Interface

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



28-Pin DIP



28-Pin PLCC

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 78P2361, STS-1 Line Interface – 28-pin | | |
| Standard Width Plastic DIP (600 mil) | 78P2361-IP | 78P2361-IP |
| Surface Mount 28-pin PLCC | 78P2361-IH | 78P2361-IH |

7

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

December 1993

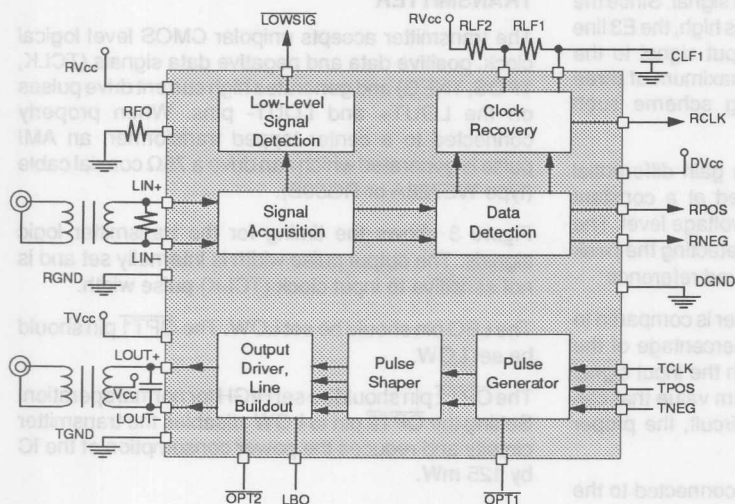
DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P2362 is a line interface transceiver IC intended for 34.368 Mbit/s applications. The receiver has a very wide dynamic range and is designed to accept HDB3 encoded Alternate-Mark Inversion (AMI) inputs; it provides clock, positive data, negative data, and low-level signal detector logical outputs. The transmitter converts clock and data input signals into AMI pulses of the appropriate shape for transmission. The SSI 78P2362 requires a single 5-volt supply and is available in DIP and surface mount packages.

FEATURES

- Single chip transmit and receive interface for E3 (34.368 Mbit/s) applications
- Unique clock recovery circuit, requires no crystals, tuned components or external clock
- Standard CMOS level unipolar POS and NEG data and CLK ports
- Compliant with CCITT recommendation G.703 and G.823
- Low-level input signal indication
- Available in DIP or surface mount packages
- -40°C to +85°C operating range
- Pin-compatible with SSI 78P236 and 78P2361

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM

| | | | |
|-------|----|----|--------|
| LIN+ | 1 | 28 | NCD2 |
| NCR | 2 | 27 | LOWSIG |
| LIN- | 3 | 26 | DVCC |
| NCR | 4 | 25 | RPOS |
| RFO | 5 | 24 | RNEG |
| RGND | 6 | 23 | RCLK |
| RVCC | 7 | 22 | DGND |
| TGND | 8 | 21 | NCD1 |
| LOUT+ | 9 | 20 | LF2 |
| NCT | 10 | 19 | LF1 |
| LOUT- | 11 | 18 | OPT2 |
| LBO | 12 | 17 | TVCC |
| OPT1 | 13 | 16 | TCLK |
| TPOS | 14 | 15 | TNEG |

28-Pin DIP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 78P2362

34.368 Mbit/s Line Interface

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P2362 is a single chip line interface IC designed to work with 34.368 Mbit/s E3 signals. The receiver recovers 34.368 MHz clock, positive data and negative data from an Alternate Mark Inversion (AMI) signal which has travelled a maximum of 1000 feet from a transmitter over 75 Ω coaxial cable (cable type WECO 728A, RG-59B or equivalent). The wide dynamic range of SSI 78P2362 allows for additional resistive attenuation. The input E3 signal must be HDB3 coded.

The transmitter accepts CMOS level logical clock, positive data and negative data and converts them to the AMI signal to drive a 75 Ω coaxial cable. The transmitted signal meets the requirements of the CCITT G.703 recommendations. The SSI 78P2362 is designed to work with HDB3 coded signal. The HDB3 encoding and decoding functions are normally included in the E3 framer ICs or can easily be implemented in a PAL.

RECEIVER

The receiver input is normally transformer-coupled to the E3 signal. The inputs to the IC are internally referenced to RVCC so that when no transformer is used, a DC blocking capacitor of 0.01 μ F should be used to isolate these pins from the E3 signal. Since the input impedance of the SSI 78P2362 is high, the E3 line must be terminated in 75 Ω . The input signal to the SSI 78P2362 must be limited to a maximum of three consecutive zeros using a coding scheme such as HDB3.

The E3 signal is input to a variable gain differential amplifier whose output is maintained at a constant voltage level regardless of the input voltage level. The gain of this amplifier is adjusted by detecting the peak of the signal and comparing it to a fixed reference.

The output of the variable gain amplifier is compared to a threshold value which is a fixed percentage of the signal peak. In this way, even though the input signal amplitude may fall below the minimum value that can be regulated by the variable gain circuit, the proper detection threshold is maintained.

Output of the data comparators are connected to the clock recovery circuits. The clock recovery system employs a unique phase locked loop which has an auxiliary frequency-sensitive acquisition loop which is active only when cycle-slipping occurs between the received signal rate and the internal oscillator.

This system permits the loop to independently lock to the frequency and phase of the incoming data stream without the need for high precision and/or adjustable oscillator or tuned circuits.

The response characteristic for the phase locked loop is established by external filter components, RLF1, RLF2 and CLF1. The values of these components are specified such that the bandwidth of the phase locked loop is greater than 200 kHz.

The jitter tolerance of the SSI 78P2362 meets the requirements of CCITT G.823. The jitter transfer function of the SSI 78P2362 should be maximally flat so the IC doesn't add any jitter to the system.

Figure 2 shows the recovered clock (RCLK), positive data (RPOS) and negative data (RNEG) signals timing. The data is valid on the rising edge of the clock. The minimum setup and hold times allow easy interface to many E3 framer circuits. These signals are CMOS-level outputs.

Should the input signal fall below a minimum value, the LOWSIG pin goes active low. A time delay is provided before this output is active so the transient interruptions do not needlessly cause the indication.

TRANSMITTER

The transmitter accepts unipolar CMOS level logical clock, positive data and negative data signals (TCLK, TPOS, TNEG) and generates high current drive pulses on the LOUT+ and LOUT- pins. When properly connected to a center tapped transformer, an AMI pulse is generated which can drive a 75 Ω coaxial cable (type WE728A or RG59B).

Figure 3 shows the timing for the transmitter logic signals. The output pulse width is internally set and is not sensitive to input clock (TCLK) pulse width.

The LBO pin should be set LOW. The $\overline{\text{OPT1}}$ pin should be set LOW.

The $\overline{\text{OPT2}}$ pin should be set HIGH for normal operation. Setting the $\overline{\text{OPT2}}$ pin to LOW disables the transmitter circuitry and reduces the power consumption of the IC by 125 mW.

SSI 78P2362 34.368 Mbit/s Line Interface

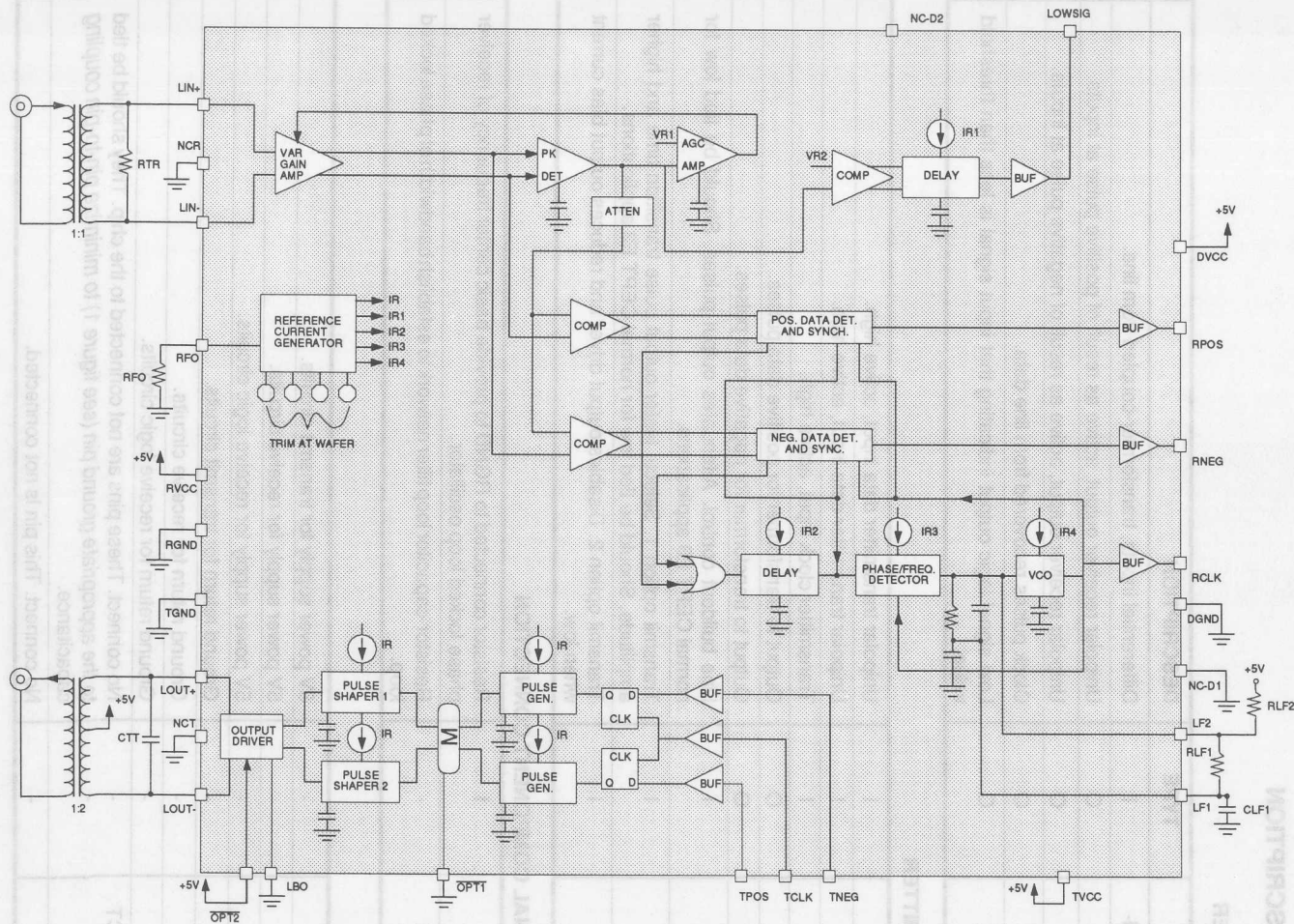


FIGURE 1: Functional Diagram

Note: NC pins should be tied to the ground pin indicated by the trailing letter.

SSI 78P2362

34.368 Mbit/s Line Interface

PIN DESCRIPTION

RECEIVER

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|------|--|
| LIN+, LIN- | I | Differential inputs, transformer-coupled from line. |
| RPOS | O | Unipolar receiver output, active as result of positive pulse at inputs. |
| RNEG | O | Unipolar receiver output, active as result of negative pulse at inputs. |
| RCLK | O | Clock pulses recovered from line data. |
| LOWSIG | O | Low signal logic output indicating that input signal is less than threshold value. |

TRANSMITTER

| | | |
|-------|---|--|
| TPOS | I | Unipolar transmitter data input, active high. |
| TNEG | I | Unipolar transmitter data input, active high. |
| TCLK | I | Transmitter clock input, active high. |
| LOUT+ | O | Output to transformer for positive data pulses. |
| LOUT- | O | Output to transformer for negative data pulses. |
| LBO | I | Line buildout control. Attenuates output pulses. Should be tied low for normal CEPT E3 applications. |
| OPT1 | I | Transmit option 1. Selects faster output pulse transition time and higher amplitude. Should be tied low for normal CEPT E3 applications. |
| OPT2 | I | Transmit option 2. Disables output driver and reduces output bias current when low. |

EXTERNAL COMPONENT CONNECTION

| | | |
|----------|---|--|
| RFO | I | Resistor connected to RGND to provide basic center frequency of receiver phase locked loop oscillator. |
| LF1, LF2 | - | Resistor-capacitor loop filter network to establish bandwidth of phase locked loop. |

POWER

| | | |
|------------------|---|---|
| TVcc | - | 5V power supply for transmit circuits. |
| RVcc | - | 5V power supply for receive circuits. |
| DVcc | - | 5V power supply for receive logic circuits. |
| TGND | - | Ground return for transmit circuits. |
| RGND | - | Ground return for receive circuits. |
| DGND | - | Ground return for receive logic circuits. |
| NCR, NCT NCD1 | - | No connect. These pins are not connected to the chip. They should be tied to the appropriate ground pin (see figure 1) to minimize pin-to-pin coupling capacitance. |
| NCD2 | - | No connect. This pin is not connected. |

SSI 78P2362

34.368 Mbit/s Line Interface

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, Vcc = 5V ±5%, unless otherwise noted.) Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the largest absolute value. Operation above absolute maximum ratings may permanently damage the device.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|--------------------------------|
| Positive 5.0V supply: TVcc, RVcc, DVcc | 6.0V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260°C |
| Ambient Operating Temperature, TA | -40 to +85°C |
| Pin Ratings: LOUT+, LOUT- | |
| LIN+, LIN-, TPOS, TNEG, TCLK, LBO, RFO, LF2, LF1, OPT1, OPT2 Pins | -0.3 to Vcc +0.3V |
| Pin Ratings: RPOS, RNEG, RCLK, LOWSIG Pins | -0.3 to Vcc +0.3V or +12 mA |

SUPPLY CURRENTS AND POWER

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---------------------|---|-----|-----|------|------|
| ICC Supply Current | Outputs Unloaded, normal operation, transmit and receive all 1's pattern | | 142 | 174 | mA |
| P Power Dissipation | Outputs unloaded, TA = 85°C | | | 0.93 | W |

EXTERNAL COMPONENTS (Refer to Figure 1 for location of components.)

| | | | | | | |
|------|--------------------------------|--------------|--|------|---|----|
| RFO | Loop center frequency resistor | 1% tolerance | | 6.81 | | kΩ |
| RLF1 | Loop filter resistor | 1% | | 20 | | kΩ |
| RLF2 | Loop filter resistor | 1% | | 100 | | kΩ |
| CLF1 | Loop filter capacitor | 5% | | 0.22 | | μF |
| RTR | Receive termination resistor | 1% | | 75 | | Ω |
| CTT | Transmit termination capacitor | 5% | | | 5 | pF |

SSI 78P2362

34.368 Mbit/s Line Interface

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DIGITAL INPUTS AND OUTPUTS

(CMOS-compatible pins: $\overline{\text{LWSIG}}$, RPOS , RNEG , RCLK , TPOS , TNEG , TCLK , LBO , $\overline{\text{OPT1}}$.) Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the largest absolute value.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------|---------------|------|-----|----------------|---------------|
| VIL Input low voltage | | -0.3 | | 1.5 | V |
| VIH Input high voltage | | 3.5 | | $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| IIL Input low current | VIL = 1.5V | -5.0 | | 5.0 | μA |
| IIH Input high current | VIH = 3.5V | -5.0 | | 5.0 | μA |
| VOL Output low voltage | IOL = 0.1 mA | | | 1.0 | V |
| VOH Output high voltage | IOH = -0.1 mA | 4.0 | | | V |

$\overline{\text{OPT2}}$ CHARACTERISTICS

| | | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------|-----|--|-----|---|
| VIL Input low voltage | IIL = 0.4 mA | | | 0.5 | V |
| VIH Input high voltage | | 2.0 | | | V |

RECEIVER

All of the measurements for the receiver are made with the following conditions unless otherwise stated:

1. The input signal is transformer coupled as shown in Figure 1.
2. $\text{RFO} = 6.81 \text{ k}\Omega$
3. The circuit is connected as in Figure 1.

| | | | | | |
|--|---|-------------|----------|------------|------------------|
| VIN Input signal voltage | Input AC-Coupled | ± 0.045 | | ± 1.20 | Vpk |
| RIN Input Resistance | Input at chip's common mode voltage | 15 | 20 | 30 | $\text{k}\Omega$ |
| VDTH Receive data detection threshold | Relative to peak amplitude for 17.18 MHz sinusoidal input | | 50 | | % |
| VLOW Receive data low signal threshold | Relative to peak amplitude for 17.18 MHz sinusoidal input | | ± 55 | | mV |
| VLOWT Receive data low signal delay | Relative to peak amplitude for 17.18 MHz sinusoidal input | | 1.5 | | μs |
| TRCF Receive clock period | | | 29.1 | | ns |
| TRC Receive clock pulse width | | | 16.58 | | ns |
| TRCPT Receive clock positive transition time | $C_L = 15 \text{ pF}$ | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TRCNT Receive clock negative transition time | $C_L = 15 \text{ pF}$ | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |

SSI 78P2362

34.368 Mbit/s Line Interface

RECEIVER (continued)

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------|---|---------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------|---------------------|
| TRDP TRDN | Positive or negative receive data pulse width | | | 29.1 | | ns |
| TRDPS TRDNS | Receive data set-up time | | 5 | 14.55 | 17.83 | ns |
| TRDPH TRDNH | Receive data hold time | | 5 | 14.55 | 17.83 | ns |
| | Receive input jitter tolerance high frequency | sine, 10 kHz to 800 kHz | ±2.18 | ±1.45 | | ns |
| | | | 0.1 | | | UIPP |
| | Receive input jitter tolerance low frequency | sine, 100 Hz to 1.0 kHz | ±21.83 | ±145.5 | | ns |
| | | | 10 | | | UIPP |
| KD | Clock Recovery Phase Detector Gain | All 1's data pattern KD = .418/RFO | 56 | 62 | 68 | μA/Rad |
| KO | Clock Recovery Phase Locked Oscillator Gain | | 12 | 14.5 | 17 | Mrad/ sec. -Volt |

TRANSMITTER

All of the measurements for the transmitter are made with the following conditions unless otherwise stated:

1. Transmit pulse characteristics are obtained using a line transformer which has the characteristics TBD.
2. The circuit is connected as in Figure 1.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------|---|--|-------|-------|------|
| TTCF | Transmit clock repetition period | | 29.1 | | ns |
| TTC | Transmit clock pulse width | 12.36 | 14.55 | 16.73 | ns |
| TTCNT | Transmit clock negative transition time | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TTCPT | Transmit clock positive transition time | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TTPDS TTNDS | Transmit data set-up time | 3.5 | 14.55 | | ns |
| TTPDH TTNDH | Transmit data hold time | 3.5 | 14.55 | | ns |
| TTPL | Transmit positive line pulse width | Measured at $\overline{\text{OPT1}}$ = Low transformer, LBO = Low | 14.5 | | ns |

SSI 78P2362
34.368 Mbit/s Line Interface

TRANSMITTER (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|---|-----|------|-----|------|
| TTNL Transmit negative line pulse width | Measured at OPT1 = Low transformer, LBO = Low | | 14.5 | | ns |
| Transmit line pulse waveshape | See Note | | | | |

Note: Characteristics are in accordance with CCITT recommendation G.703.

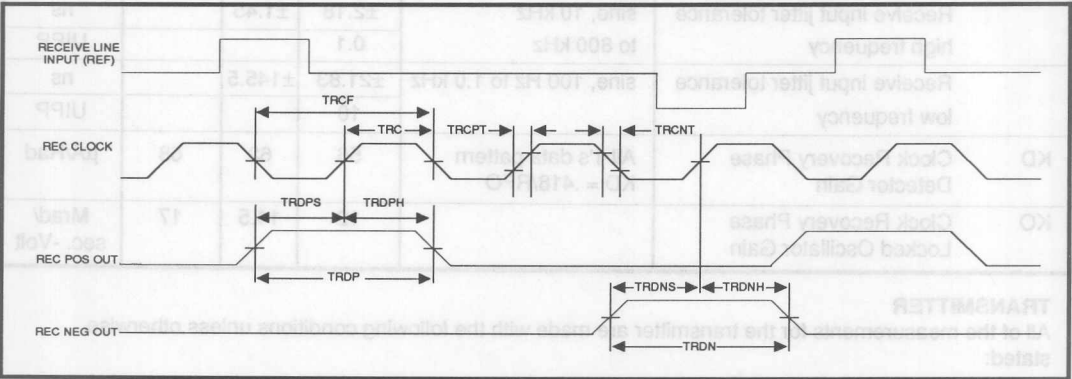


FIGURE 2: Receive Waveforms

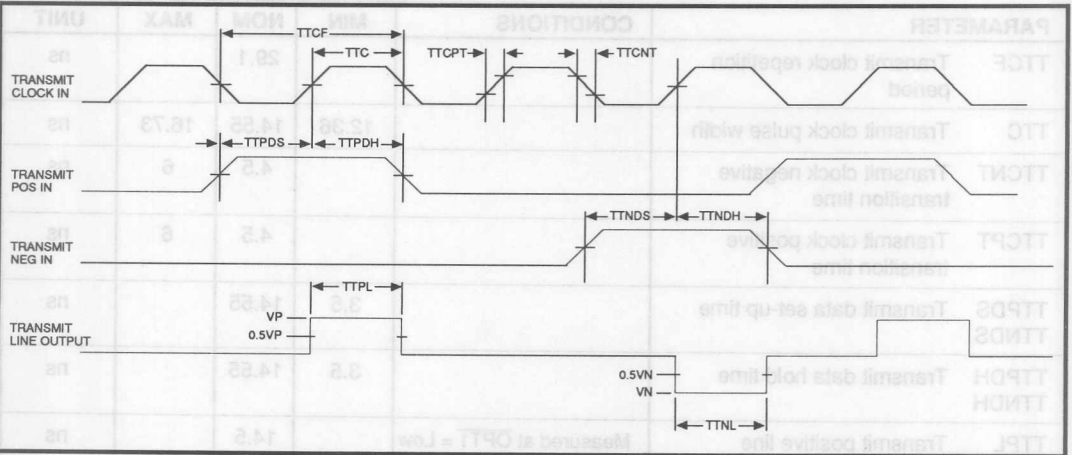


FIGURE 3: Transmit Waveforms

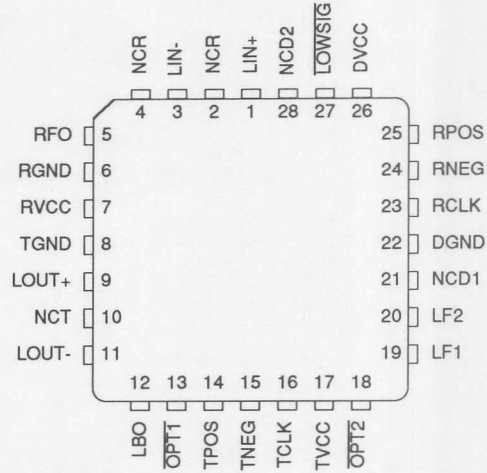
34.368 Mbit/s Line Interface

(Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



28-Pin DIP



28-Pin PLCC

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 78P2362, 34.368 Mbit/s Line Interface – 28-pin | | |
| Standard Width Plastic DIP (600 mil) | 78P2362-IP | 78P2362-IP |
| Surface Mount 28-pin PLCC | 78P2362-IH | 78P2362-IH |

7

Preliminary Data: Indicates a product not completely released to production. The specifications are based on preliminary evaluations and are not guaranteed. Small quantities are available, and Silicon Systems should be consulted for current information.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P300 is a fully integrated transceiver for both North American 1.544 MHz (T1), and European 2.048 MHz (E1/CEPT) applications. Transmit pulse shapes (DSX-1 or E1/CEPT) are selectable for various line lengths and cable types.

The SSI 78P300 provides receive jitter attenuation starting at 3 Hz, and is microprocessor controllable through a serial interface.

The SSI 78P300 offers a variety of diagnostic features including transmit and receive monitoring. Clock inputs may be derived from an on-chip crystal oscillator or digital inputs. The SSI 78P300 uses an advanced double-poly, double-metal CMOS process and requires only a single 5-volt power supply.

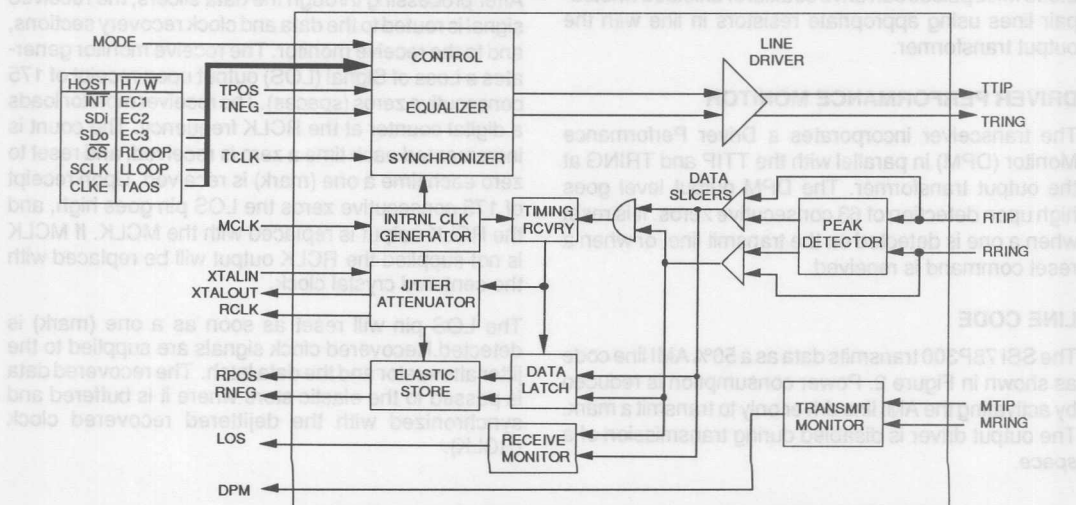
APPLICATIONS

- PCM / Voice Channel Banks
- Data Channel Bank / Concentrator
- T1 / E1 multiplexer
- Digital Access and Cross-connect Systems (DACS)
- Computer to PBX interface (CPI & DMI)
- High speed data transmission lines
- Interfacing Customer Premises Equipment to a CSU
- Digital Loop Carrier (DLC) terminals

FEATURES

- Compatible with most popular PCM framers including the 2180A and 2181
- Line driver, data recovery and clock recovery functions
- Pin and functionally compatible with Crystal CS61574
- Minimum receive signal of 500 mV
- Selectable slicer levels (CEPT/DSX-1) improve SNR
- Programmable transmit equalizer shapes pulses to meet DSX-1 pulse template from 0 to 655 ft
- Local and remote loopback functions
- Transmit Driver Performance Monitor (DPM) output
- Receive monitor with Loss of Signal (LOS) output
- Receiver jitter tolerance 0.4 UI from 40 kHz to 100 kHz
- Microprocessor controllable
- Receive jitter attenuation starting at 6 Hz
- Available in 28 pin DIP or PLCC

BLOCK DIAGRAM



SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P300 is a fully integrated PCM transceiver for both 1.544 MHz (DSX-1) and 2.048 MHz (CEPT) applications. This transceiver allows transmission of digital data over existing twisted-pair installations.

The SSI 78P300 transceiver interfaces with two twisted-pair lines (one twisted-pair for transmit, one twisted-pair for receive) through standard pulse transformers and appropriate resistors.

TRANSMITTER

Data received for transmission onto the line is clocked serially into the device at TPOS and TNEG. Input synchronization is supplied by the transmit clock (TCLK). The transmitted pulse shape is determined by Equalizer Control signals EC1 through EC3 as shown in Table 1. Refer to Table 2 and Figure 1 for master and transmit clock timing characteristics. Shaped pulses are applied to the AMI line driver for transmission onto the line at TTIP and TRING. Equalizer Control signals may be hardwired in the Hardware mode, or input as part of the serial data stream (SDI) in the Host mode.

Pulses can be shaped for either 1.544 or 2.048 MHz applications. 1.544 MHz pulses for DSX-1 applications can be programmed to match line lengths from 0 to 655 feet of ABAM cable. The SSI 78P300 also matches FCC and ECSA specifications for CSU applications. 2.048 MHz pulses can drive coaxial or shielded twisted-pair lines using appropriate resistors in line with the output transformer.

DRIVER PERFORMANCE MONITOR

The transceiver incorporates a Driver Performance Monitor (DPM) in parallel with the TTIP and TRING at the output transformer. The DPM output level goes high upon detection of 63 consecutive zeros. It is reset when a one is detected on the transmit line, or when a reset command is received.

LINE CODE

The SSI 78P300 transmits data as a 50% AMI line code as shown in Figure 2. Power consumption is reduced by activating the AMI line driver only to transmit a mark. The output driver is disabled during transmission of a space.

RECEIVER

The SSI 78P300 receives AMI signals from one twisted-pair line on each side of a center-grounded transformer. Positive pulses are received at RTIP and negative pulses are received at RRING. Recovered data is output at RPOS and RNEG, and the recovered clock is output at RCLK. Refer to Table 3 and Figure 3 for SSI 78P300 receiver timing.

The signal received at RPOS and RNEG is processed through the peak detector and data slicers. The peak detector samples the inputs and determines the maximum value of the received signal. A percentage of the peak value is provided to the data slicers as a threshold level to ensure optimum signal-to-noise ratio.

For DSX-1 applications (determined by Equalizer Control inputs EC1 - EC3 \neq 000) the threshold is set to 70% of the peak value. This threshold is maintained above 65% for up to 15 successive zeros over the range of specified operating conditions. For CEPT applications (EC inputs = 000) the threshold is set to 50 %.

The receiver is capable of accurately recovering signals with up to -13.6 dB of cable attenuation (from 2.4 V), corresponding to a received signal level of approximately 500 mV (1500 feet of ABAM cable.) Regardless of received signal level, the peak detectors are held above a minimum level of .3 V to provide immunity from impulsive noise.

After processing through the data slicers, the received signal is routed to the data and clock recovery sections, and to the receive monitor. The receive monitor generates a Loss of Signal (LOS) output upon receipt of 175 consecutive zeros (spaces). The receiver monitor loads a digital counter at the RCLK frequency. The count is incremented each time a zero is received, and reset to zero each time a one (mark) is received. Upon receipt of 175 consecutive zeros the LOS pin goes high, and the RCLK output is replaced with the MCLK. If MCLK is not supplied the RCLK output will be replaced with the centered crystal clock.

The LOS pin will reset as soon as a one (mark) is detected. Recovered clock signals are supplied to the jitter attenuator and the data latch. The recovered data is passed to the elastic store where it is buffered and synchronized with the dejittered recovered clock (RCLK).

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

JITTER ATTENUATION

Jitter attenuation of the SSI 78P300 clock and data outputs is provided by a Jitter Attenuation Loop (JAL) and an Elastic Store (ES). An external crystal oscillating at 4 times the bit rate provides clock stabilization. Refer to Table 4 for crystal specifications. The ES is a 32 x 2-bit register. Recovered data is clocked into the ES with the recovered clock signal, and clocked out of the ES with the dejittered clock from the JAL. When the bit count in the ES is within two bits of overflowing or underflowing, the ES adjusts the output clock by 1/8 of a bit period. The ES produces an average delay of 16 bits in the receive path.

OPERATING MODES

The SSI 78P300 transceiver can be controlled through hard-wired pins (Hardware mode). This transceiver can also be commanded to operate in one of several diagnostic modes.

The SSI 78P300 can be controlled by a microprocessor through a serial interface (Host mode). The mode of operation is set by the MODE pin logic level.

HOST MODE OPERATION

To allow a host microprocessor to access and control the SSI 78P300 through the serial interface, MODE is set to 1. The serial interface (SDI/SDO) uses a 16-bit word consisting of an 8-bit Command/Address byte and an 8-bit Data byte. Figure 4 shows the serial interface data structure and timing.

The Host mode provides a latched Interrupt output (INT) which is triggered by a change in the Loss of Signal (LOS) and/or Driver Performance Monitor (DPM) bits. The Interrupt is cleared when the interrupt condition no longer exists, and the host processor enables the respective bit in the serial input data byte. Host mode also allows control of the serial data and receive data output timing. The Clock Edge (CLKE) signal determines when these outputs are valid, relative to the Serial Clock (SCLK) or RCLK as follows:

| CLKE | OUTPUT | CLOCK | VALID EDGE |
|------|--------|-------|------------|
| LOW | RPOS | RCLK | RISING |
| | RNEG | RCLK | RISING |
| | SDO | SCLK | FALLING |
| HIGH | RPOS | RCLK | FALLING |
| | RNEG | RCLK | FALLING |
| | SDO | SCLK | RISING |

The SSI 78P300 serial port is addressed by setting bit A4 in the Address/Command byte, corresponding to address 16. The SSI 78P300 contains only a single output data register so no complex chip addressing scheme is required. The register is accessed by causing the Chip Select (CS) input to make a transition from high to low. Bit 1 of the serial Address/Command byte provides Read/Write control when the chip is accessed. A logic 1 indicates a read operation, and a logic 0 indicates a write operation. Table 5 lists serial data output bit combinations for each status. Serial data I/O timing characteristics are shown in Table 6, and Figures 5 and 6.

HARDWARE MODE OPERATION

In Hardware mode the transceiver is accessed and controlled through individual pins. With the exception of the INT and CLKE functions, Hardware mode provides all the functions provided in the Host mode. In the Hardware mode RPOS and RNEG outputs are valid on the rising edge of RCLK. To operate in Hardware mode, MODE must be set to 0. Equalizer Control signals (EC1 through EC3) are input on the Interrupt, Serial Data In and Serial Data Out pins. Diagnostic control for Remote Loopback (RLOOP), Local Loopback (LLOOP), and Transmit All Ones (TAOS) modes is provided through the individual pins used to control serial interface timing in the Host mode.

RESET OPERATION

Upon power up, the transceiver is held static until the power supply reaches approximately 3V. Upon crossing this threshold, the device begins a 32 ms reset cycle to calibrate the transmit and receive delay lines and lock the Phase Lock Loop to the receive line. A reference clock is required to calibrate the delay lines. The transmitter reference is provided by TCLK. The crystal oscillator provides the receiver reference in the SSI 78P300. If the SSI 78P300 crystal oscillator is grounded, MCLK is used as the receiver reference clock.

The transceiver can also be reset from the Host or Hardware mode. In Host mode, reset is commanded by simultaneously writing RLOOP and LLOOP to the register. In Hardware mode, reset is commanded by holding RLOOP and LLOOP high simultaneously for 200 ns. Reset is initiated on the falling edge of the reset request. In either mode, reset clears and sets all registers to 0 and centers the oscillator, then begins calibration.

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

DIAGNOSTIC MODE OPERATION

In Transmit All Ones (TAOS) mode the TPOS and TNEG inputs to the transceiver are ignored. The transceiver transmits a continuous stream of 1's when the TAOS mode is activated. TAOS can be commanded simultaneously with Local Loopback, but is inhibited during Remote loopback.

In Remote Loopback (RLOOP) mode, the transmit data and clock inputs (TPOS, TNEG and TCLK) are ignored. The RPOS and RNEG outputs are looped back through the transmit circuits and output on TTIP and TRING at the RCLK frequency. Receiver circuits are unaffected by the RLOOP command and continue to output the RPOS, RNEG and RCLK signals received from the twisted-pair line.

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|------|--|
| MCLK | I | Master Clock: A 1.544 or 2.048 MHz clock input used to generate internal clocks. Upon Loss of Signal (LOS), RCLK is derived from MCLK. If MCLK not applied, this pin should be grounded. |
| TCLK | I | Transmit Clock: Transmit clock input. TPOS and TNEG are sampled on the falling edge of TCLK. |
| TPOS | I | Transmit Positive Data: Input for positive pulse to be transmitted on the twisted-pair or coaxial cable. |
| TNEG | I | Transmit Negative Data: Input for negative pulse to be transmitted on the twisted-pair or coaxial cable. |
| MODE | I | Mode Select: Setting MODE to logic 1 puts the SSI 78P300 in the Host mode. In the Host mode, the serial interface is used to control the SSI 78P300 and determined its status. Setting MODE to logic 0 puts the SSI 78P300 in the Hardware (H/W) mode. In the Hardware mode the serial interface is disabled and hard-wired pins are used to control configuration and report status. |
| RNEG/RPOS | O | Receive Negative Data/Receive Positive Data: Received data outputs. A signal on RNEG corresponds receipt of a negative pulse on RTIP and RRING. A signal on RPOS corresponds to receipt of a positive pulse on RTIP and RRING. RNEG and RPOS outputs are Non-Return-to-Zero (NRZ). In the Host Mode, CLKE determines the clock edge (RCLK) at which these outputs are stable and valid. In the Hardware mode both outputs are stable and valid on the rising edge or RCLK. |
| RCLK | O | Recovered Clock: This is the clock recovered from the signal received at RTIP and RRING. |

In Local Loopback (LLOOP) mode, the receiver circuits are inhibited. The transmit data and clock inputs (TPOS, TNEG and TCLK) are looped back onto the receive data and clock outputs (RPOS, RNEG and RCLK.) The transmitter circuits are unaffected by the LLOOP command. The TPOS and TNEG inputs (or a stream of 1's if the TAOS command is active) will be transmitted normally. When used in this mode with a crystal, the transceiver can be used as a stand-alone jitter attenuator.

POWER REQUIREMENTS

The SSI 78P300 is a low-power CMOS device. It operates from a single +5V power supply which can be connected externally to both the transmitter and receiver. However, the two inputs must be within $\pm 3V$ of each other, and decoupled to their respective grounds separately, as shown in Figure 7. Isolation between the transmit and receive circuits is provided internally.

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|------|--|
| XTALIN/ XTALOUT | I/O | Crystal Input/Crystal Output: An external crystal operating at four times the bit rate (6.176 MHz for DSX-1, 8.192 MHz for CEPT applications with an 18.7 pF load) is required to enable the jitter attenuation function of the SSI 78P300. These pins may also be used to disable the jitter attenuator by connecting the XTALIN pin to the positive supply through a resistor, and tying the XTALOUT pin to ground. |
| DPM | O | Driver Performance Monitor: DPM goes to a logic 1 when the transmit monitor loop (MTIP and MRING) does not detect a signal for 63 ± 2 clock periods. DPM remains at logic 1 until a signal is detected. |
| LOS | O | Loss Of Signal: LOS goes to a logic 1 when 175 consecutive spaces have been detected. LOS returns to a logic 0 when a mark is detected. |
| TTIP/TRING | O | Transmit Tip/Transmit Ring: Differential Driver Outputs. These outputs are designed to drive a 25Ω load. The transmitter will drive 100Ω shielded twisted-pair cable through a 2:1 step-up transformer without additional components. To drive 75Ω coaxial cable, two 2.2Ω resistors are required in series with the transformer. |
| TGND | - | Transmit Ground: Ground return for the transmit drivers power supply TV+. |
| TV+ | I | Transmit Power Supply: +5 VDC power supply input for the transmit drivers. TV+ must not vary from RV+ by more than $\pm 0.3V$. |
| MTIP/MRING | I | Monitor Tip/Monitor Ring: These pins are used to monitor the tip and ring transmit outputs. The transceiver can be connected to monitor its own output or the output of another SSI 78P300. To prevent false interrupts in the Host mode if the monitor is not used, apply a clock signal to one of the monitor pins and tie the other monitor pin to approximately the clock's mod-level voltage. The monitor clock can range from 100 kHz to the TCLK frequency. |
| RTIP/RRING | I | Receive Tip/Receive Ring: The AMI signal received from the line is applied at these pins. A center-tapped, center-grounded, 2:1 step-up transformer is required on these pins. Data and clock from the signal applied at these pins are recovered and output on the RPOS/RNEG, and RCLK pins. |
| RV+ | I | Receive Power Supply: +5 VDC power supply for all circuits except the transmit drivers. (Transmit drivers are supplied by TV+.) |
| RGND | - | Receive Ground: Ground return for power supply RV+. |
| INT | O | Interrupt (Host Mode): This SSI 78P300 Host mode output goes low to flag the host processor when LOS or DPM go active. INT is an open-drain output and should be tied to power supply RV+ through a resistor. INT is reset by clearing the respective register bit (LOS and/or DPM.) |
| EC1 | I | Equalizer Control 1 (H/W Mode): The signal applied at this pin in the SSI 78P300 Hardware mode is used in conjunction with EC2 and EC3 inputs to determine shape and amplitude of AMI output transmit pulses. |

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|------|---|
| SDI | I | Serial Data In (Host Mode): The serial data input stream is applied to this pin when the SSI 78P300 operates in the Host mode. SDI is sampled on the rising edge of SCLK. |
| EC2 | I | Equalizer Control 2 (H/W Mode): The signal applied at this pin in the SSI 78P300 Hardware mode is used in conjunction with EC1 and EC3 inputs to determine shape and amplitude of AMI output transmit pulses. |
| SDO | O | Serial Data Out (Host Mode): The serial data from the on-chip register is output on this pin in the SSI 78P300 Host mode. If CLKE is high, SDO is valid on the rising edge of SCLK. If CLKE is low SDO is valid on the falling edge of SCLK. This pin goes to a high-impedance state when the serial port is being written to and when \overline{CS} is high. |
| EC3 | I | Equalizer Control 3 (H/W Mode): The signal applied at this pin in the SSI 78P300 Hardware mode is used in conjunction with EC1 and EC2 inputs to determine shape and amplitude of AMI output transmit pulses. |
| \overline{CS} | I | Chip Select (Host Mode): This input is used to access the serial interface in the SSI 78P300 Host mode. For each read or write operation, \overline{CS} must remain low for duration of operation. |
| RLOOP | I | Remote Loopback (H/W Mode): This input controls loopback functions in the SSI 78P300 Hardware mode. Setting RLOOP to a logic 1 enables the Remote Loopback mode. Setting both RLOOP and LLOOP causes a Reset. |
| SCLK | I | Serial Clock (Host Mode): This clock is used in the SSI 78P300 Host mode to write data to or read data from the serial interface registers. |
| LLOOP | I | Local Loopback (H/W Mode): This input controls loopback functions in the SSI 78P300 Hardware mode. Setting LLOOP to a logic 1 enables the Local Loopback Mode. |
| CLKE | I | Clock Edge (Host Mode): Setting CLKE to logic 1 causes RPOS and RNEG to be valid on the falling edge of RCLK, and SDO to be valid on the rising edge of SCLK. When CLKE is a logic 0, RPOS and RNEG are valid on the rising edge of RCLK, and SDO is valid on the falling edge of SCLK. |
| TAOS | I | Transmit All Ones (H/W Mode): When set to a logic 1, TAOS causes the SSI 78P300 (Hardware mode) to transmit a continuous stream of marks at the TCLK frequency. Activating TAOS causes TPOS and TNEG inputs to be ignored. TAOS is inhibited during Remote Loopback. |

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|--------------------------|
| DC Supply (referenced to GND), RV+, TV+ | 0 to 6.0V |
| Input Voltage, Any Pin, V_{IN} (see note 1) | RGND -0.03 to RV+ +0.03V |
| Input Current, Any Pin, I_{IN} (see note 2) | -10 to 10mA |
| Ambient Operating Temperature, T_A | -40 to 85°C |
| Storage Temperature, T_{STG} | -65 to 150°C |

¹ Excluding RTIP and RRING which must stay within -6V to RV+ + 0.3V.

² Transient currents of up to 100 mA will not cause SCR latch-up. TTIP, TRING, TV+ and TGND can withstand a continuous current of 100 mA.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|---|------|-----|------|------|
| DC supply, RV+, TV+ (see note 1) | | 4.75 | 5.0 | 5.25 | V |
| Ambient Operating Temp., T_A | | -40 | 25 | 85 | °C |
| Total Power Dissipation, P_D (see note 2) | 100% Ones Density & Maximum Line Length @ 5.25V | - | 620 | - | mW |

¹ TV+ must not exceed RV+ by more than $\pm 0.3V$.

² Power dissipation while driving 25 Ω load over operating temperature range. Includes device and load. Digital input levels are within 10% of the supply rails and digital outputs are driving a 50pF capacitive load.

DIGITAL CHARACTERISTICS

$T_A = -40^\circ\text{C}$ to 85°C , $V_+ = 5.0\text{ V} \pm 5\%$, GND = 0V

| | | | | | |
|----------|--|-------------------------------|-----|----------|---------------|
| V_{IH} | High Level Input Voltage (pins 1-5, 10, 23-28) (see note 1, 2) | 2.0 | - | - | V |
| V_{IL} | Low Level Input Voltage (pins 1-5, 10, 23-28) (see note 1, 2) | - | - | 0.8 | V |
| V_{OH} | High Level Output Voltage (pins 6-8, 11, 12, 23, 25) (see note 1, 2) | $I_{OUT} = -400\ \mu\text{A}$ | 2.4 | - | V |
| V_{OL} | Low Level Output Voltage (pins 6-8, 11, 12, 23, 25) (see note 1, 2) | $I_{OUT} = 1.6\ \text{mA}$ | - | 0.4 | V |
| I_{LL} | Input Leakage Current | 0 | | ± 10 | μA |
| I_{3L} | Three -State Leakage Current (pin 25) (see note 1) | 0 | - | ± 10 | μA |

¹ Functionality of pins 23 and 25 depends on mode. See Host / Hardware Mode descriptions.

² Output drivers will output CMOS logic levels into CMOS loads.

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

ANALOG SPECIFICATIONS

T_A = -40° to 85°C, V₊ = 5.0 V ± 5%, GND = 0V

| PARAMETER | | TEST CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|----------------|-----------------------|------|-----|-------|-------|
| AMI Output Pulse Amplitudes | DSX-1 | Measured at the DSX | 2.4 | 3.0 | 3.6 | V |
| | CEPT | Measured at Line Side | 2.7 | 3.0 | 3.3 | V |
| Load Presented to Transmitter Output | | | - | 25 | - | Ω |
| Jitter Added by the Transmitter (see note 1) | 10 Hz - 8 kHz | | - | - | 0.01 | UI |
| | 8 kHz - 40 kHz | | - | - | 0.025 | UI |
| | 10 Hz - 40 kHz | | - | - | 0.025 | UI |
| | Broad Band | | - | - | 0.05 | UI |
| Sensitivity Below DSX (0dB = 2.4V) | | | 13.6 | - | - | dB |
| | | | 500 | - | - | mV |
| Loss of Signal Threshold | | | - | 0.3 | - | V |
| Data Decision Threshold | DSX-1 | | 63 | 70 | 77 | %peak |
| | CEPT | | 43 | 50 | 57 | %peak |
| Allowable Consecutive Zeros Before LOS | | | 160 | 175 | 190 | - |
| Input Jitter Tolerance 10 kHz - 100 kHz | | | 0.4 | - | - | UI |
| Jitter Attenuation Curve Corner Frequency (see note 2) | | | - | 3 | - | Hz |

¹ Input signal to TCLK is jitter-free.

² Circuit attenuates jitter at 20 dB/decade above the corner frequency.

TABLE 1: Equalizer Control Inputs

| EC3 | EC2 | EC1 | LINE LENGTH | CABLE LOSS | APPLICATION | FREQUENCY |
|-----|-----|-----|----------------------------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 - 133 ft ABAM | 0.6 dB | | |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 133 - 266 ft ABAM | 1.2 dB | | |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 266 - 399 ft ABAM | 1.8 dB | DSX-1 | 1.544 MHz |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 399 - 533 ft ABAM | 2.4 dB | | |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 533 - 655 ft ABAM | 3.0 dB | | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | CCITT Recommendation G.703 | | CEPT | 2.048 MHz |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | FCC Part 68, Option A | | CSU | 1.544 MHz |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | ECSA T1C1.2 | | | |

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

TABLE 2: 78P300 Master Clock and Transmit Timing Characteristics

| PARAMETER | | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|------------------------------|-------|-------|------------|-----|-------|-----|------|
| Master clock frequency | MCLK | DSX-1 | | - | 1.544 | - | MHz |
| | MCLK | CEPT | | - | 2.048 | - | MHz |
| Master clock tolerance | MCLKt | | | - | ±100 | - | ppm |
| Master clock duty cycle | MCLKd | | | 40 | - | 60 | % |
| Crystal frequency | fc | DSX-1 | | - | 6.176 | - | MHz |
| | fc | CEPT | | - | 8.192 | - | MHz |
| Transmit clock frequency | TCLK | DSX-1 | | - | 1.544 | - | MHz |
| | TCLK | CEPT | | - | 2.048 | - | MHz |
| Transmit clock tolerance | TCLKt | | | - | - | ±50 | ppm |
| Transmit clock duty cycle | TCLKd | | | 10 | - | 90 | % |
| TPOS/TNEG to TCLK setup time | tsut | | | 25 | - | - | ns |
| TCLK to TPOS/TNEG Hold time | tHT | | | 25 | - | - | ns |

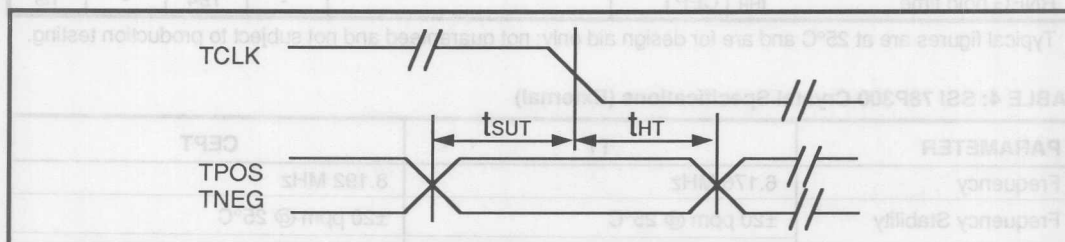


FIGURE 1: 78P300 Transmit Clock Timing Diagram

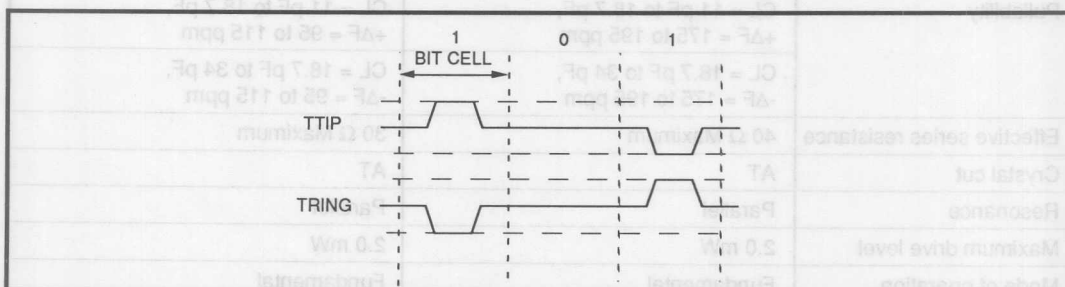


FIGURE 2: 50% AMI Coding Diagram

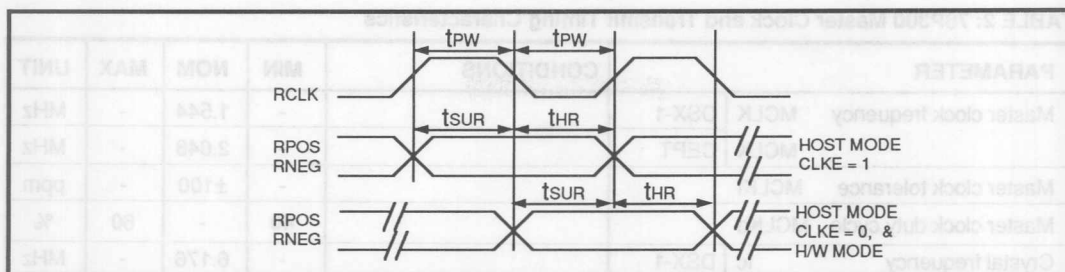


FIGURE 3: 78P300 Receive Clock Timing Diagram

TABLE 3: 78P300 Receive Timing Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM ¹ | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----|------------------|-----|------|
| Receive clock duty cycle RCLKd | | 40 | - | 60 | % |
| Receive clock pulse width tPW | DSX-1 | - | 324 | - | ns |
| | CEPT | - | 244 | - | ns |
| RPOS/RNEG to RCLK rising setup time tSUR | DSX-1 | - | 274 | - | ns |
| | CEPT | - | 194 | - | ns |
| RCLK rising to RPOS/RNEG hold time tHR | DSX-1 | - | 274 | - | ns |
| | CEPT | - | 194 | - | ns |

¹ Typical figures are at 25°C and are for design aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

TABLE 4: SSI 78P300 Crystal Specifications (External)

| PARAMETER | T1 | CEPT |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| Frequency | 6.176 MHz | 8.192 MHz |
| Frequency Stability | ±20 ppm @ 25°C | ±20 ppm @ 25°C |
| | ±25 ppm from -40°C to +85°C (Ref 25°C reading) | ±25 ppm from -40°C to +85°C (Ref 25°C reading) |
| Pullability | CL = 11 pF to 18.7 pF, +ΔF = 175 to 195 ppm | CL = 11 pF to 18.7 pF, +ΔF = 95 to 115 ppm |
| | CL = 18.7 pF to 34 pF, -ΔF = 175 to 195 ppm | CL = 18.7 pF to 34 pF, -ΔF = 95 to 115 ppm |
| Effective series resistance | 40 Ω Maximum | 30 Ω Maximum |
| Crystal cut | AT | AT |
| Resonance | Parallel | Parallel |
| Maximum drive level | 2.0 mW | 2.0 mW |
| Mode of operation | Fundamental | Fundamental |
| Crystal holder | HC49 (R3W), C _O = 7 pF Maximum C _M = 17 pF typical | HC49 (R3W), C _O = 7 pF Maximum C _M = 17 pF typical |

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

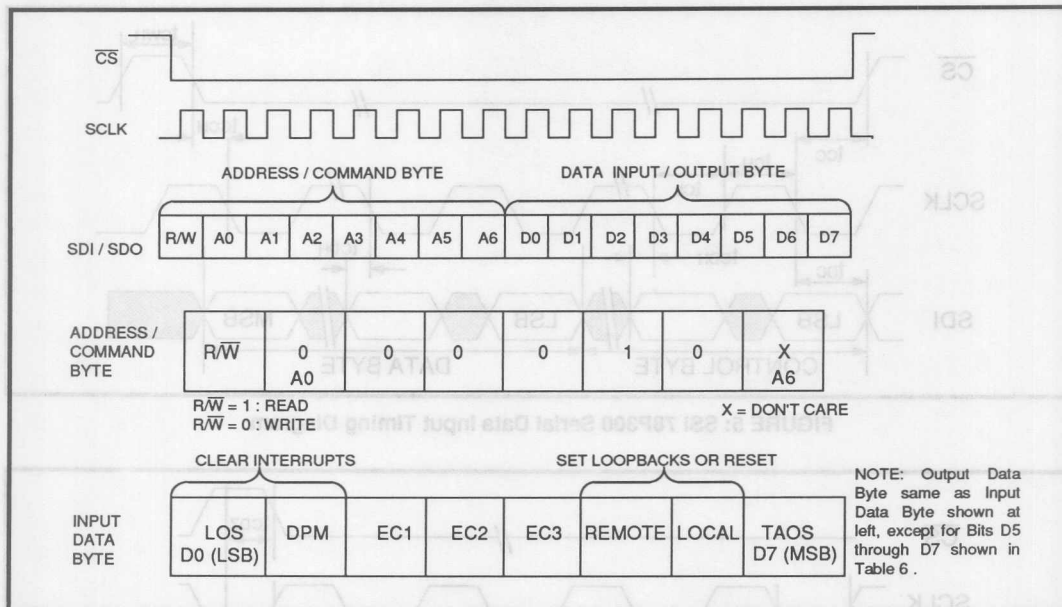


FIGURE 4: SSI 78P300 Serial Interface Data Structure

TABLE 5: SSI 78P300 Serial Data Output Bits (See Figure 4)

| BIT D5 | BIT D6 | BIT D7 | STATUS |
|--------|--------|--------|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | Reset has occurred, or no program input. |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | TAOS active |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | Local Loopback active |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | TAOS and Local Loopback active |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | Remote Loopback active |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | DPM has changed state since last Clear DPM occurred |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | LOS has changed state since last Clear LOS occurred |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | LOS and DPM have both changed state since last Clear DPM and Clear LOS occurred |

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

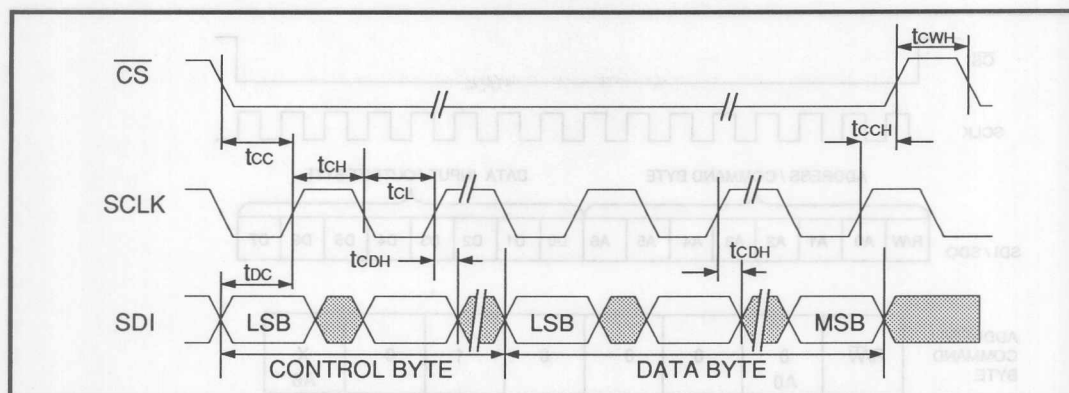


FIGURE 5: SSI 78P300 Serial Data Input Timing Diagram

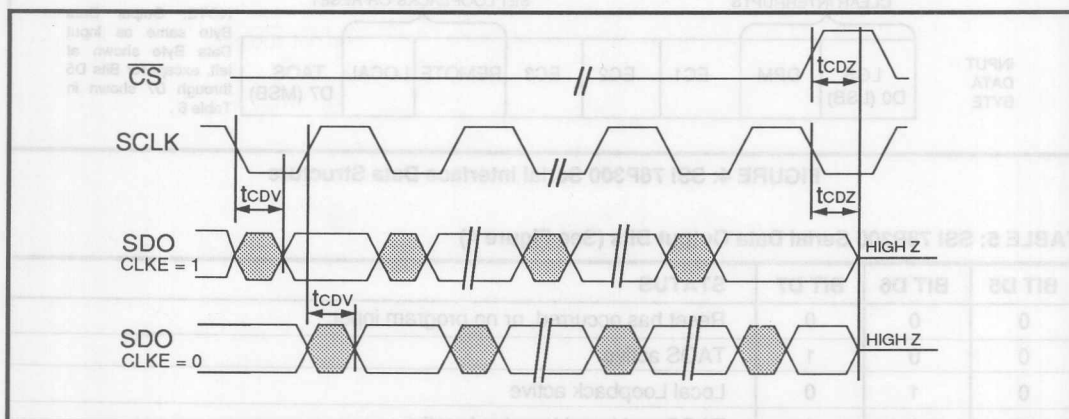


FIGURE 6: SSI 78P300 Serial Data Output Timing Diagram

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

TABLE 6: SSI 78P300 Serial I/O Timing Characteristics (See Figures 5 and 6)

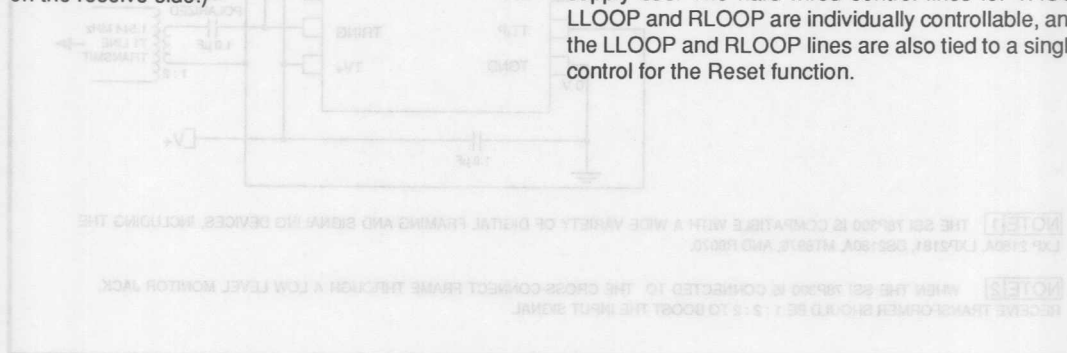
| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM ¹ | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|------------------|-----|------|
| Rise/Fall time - any digital output | t_{RF} | - | - | 100 | ns |
| SDI to SCLK setup time | t_{DC} | 50 | - | - | ns |
| SCLK to SDI hold time | t_{CDH} | 50 | - | - | ns |
| SCLK low time | t_{CL} | 240 | - | - | ns |
| SCLK high time | t_{CH} | 240 | - | - | ns |
| SCLK rise and fall time | t_R, t_F | - | - | 50 | ns |
| CS to SCLK setup time | t_{CC} | 50 | - | - | ns |
| SCLK to CS hold time | t_{CCH} | 50 | - | - | ns |
| CS inactive time | t_{CWH} | 250 | - | - | ns |
| SCLK to SDO valid | t_{CDV} | - | - | 200 | ns |
| SCLK falling edge or CS rising edge to SDO high Z | t_{CDZ} | - | 100 | - | ns |

¹ Typical figures are at 25°C and are for desig aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

APPLICATION INFORMATION

SSI 78P300 1.544 MHz T1 INTERFACE APPLICATIONS

Figure 7 is a typical 1.544 MHz T1 application. The SSI 78P300 is shown in the Host mode with the 2180A T1/ESF Framer providing the digital interface with the host controller. Both devices are controlled through the serial interface. The power supply inputs are tied to a common bus with appropriate decoupling capacitors installed (1.0 μ F on the transmit side, 68 μ F and 0.1 μ F on the receive side.)



SSI 78P300 2.048 MHz E1/CEPT INTERFACE APPLICATIONS

Figure 8 is a typical 2.048 MHz E1/CEPT application. The SSI 78P300 is shown in Hardware mode with the 2181 E1/CRC4 Framer. Resistors are installed in line with the transmit transformer for loading a 75 Ω coaxial cable. The in-line resistors are not required for transmission on 100 Ω shielded twisted-pair lines. As in the T1 application Figure 7, this configuration is illustrated with a crystal in place to enable the SSI 78P300 Jitter Attenuation Loop, and a single power supply bus. The hard-wired control lines for TAOS, LLOOP and RLOOP are individually controllable, and the LLOOP and RLOOP lines are also tied to a single control for the Reset function.

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

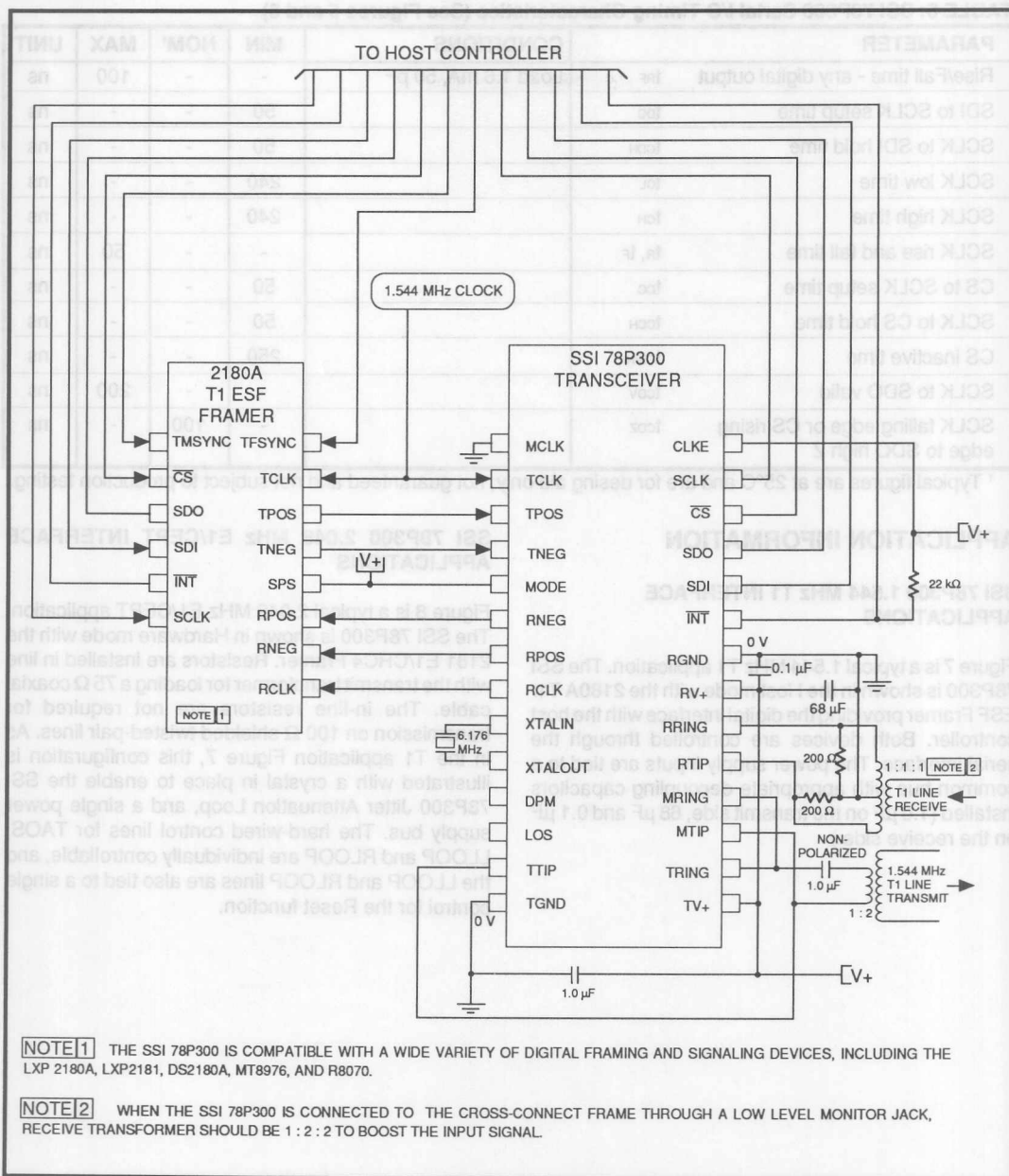


FIGURE 7: Typical SSI 78P300 1.544 MHz T1 Application (Host Mode)

SSI 78P300

T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

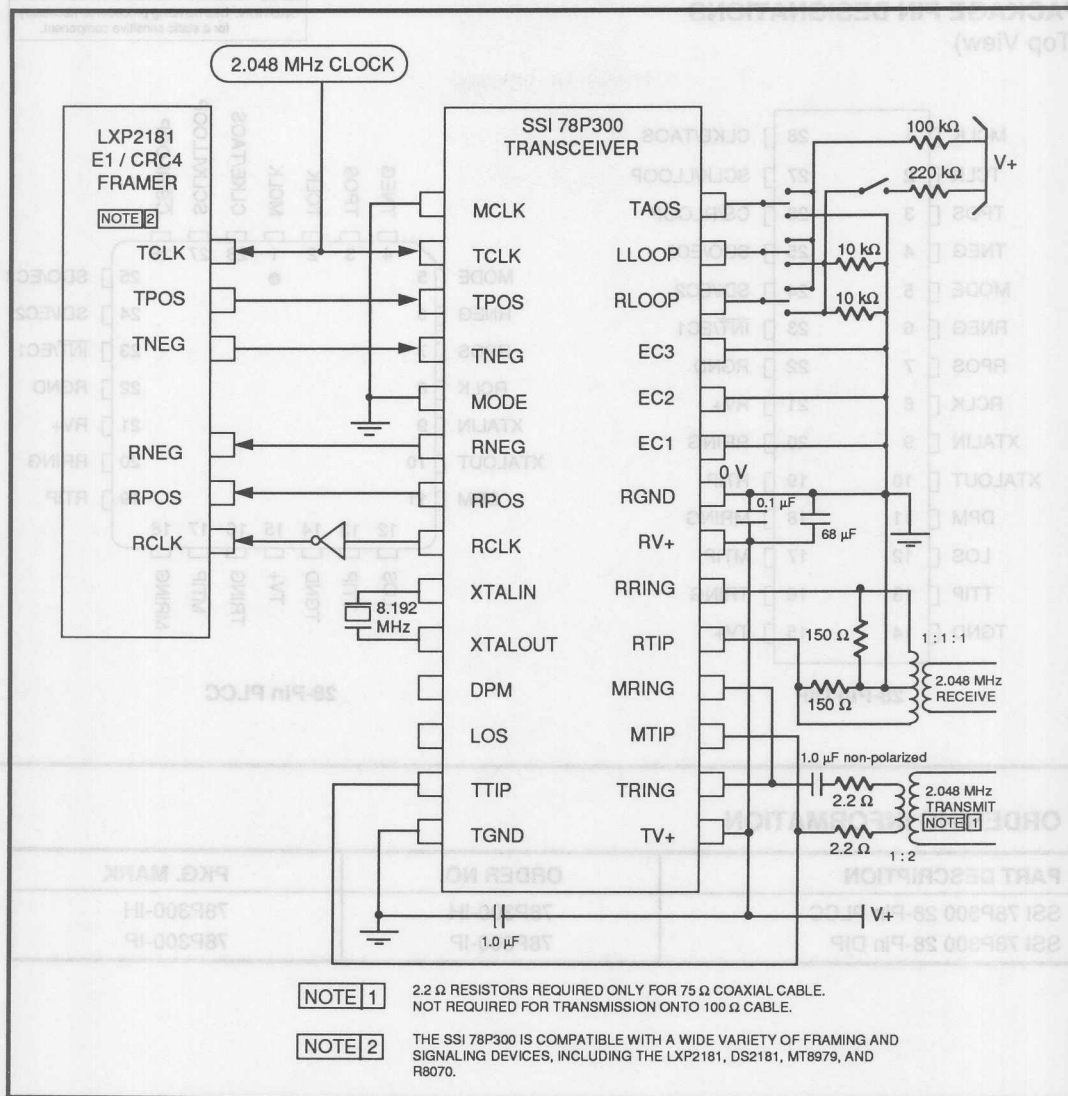


FIGURE 8: Typical SSI 78P300 2.048 MHz E1 Application (Hardware Mode)

SSI 78P300

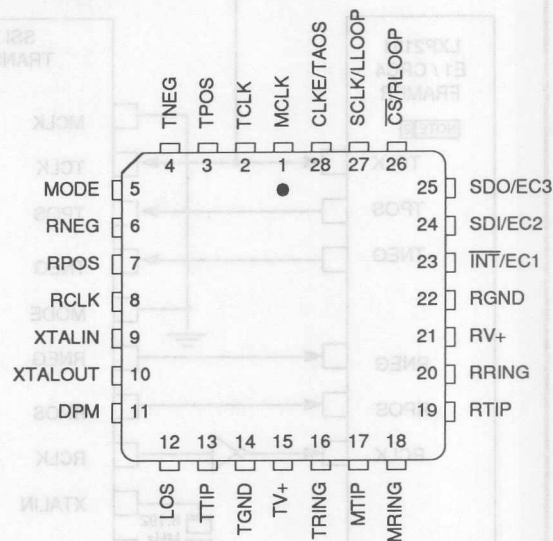
T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receive Jitter Attenuation

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.



28-Pin DIP



28-Pin PLCC

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| SSI 78P300 28-Pin PLCC | 78P300-IH | 78P300-IH |
| SSI 78P300 28-Pin DIP | 78P300-IP | 78P300-IP |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P304A is a fully integrated low-power transceiver for both North American 1.544 MHz (T1), and European 2.048 MHz (E1/CEPT) applications. It features a constant low output impedance transmitter allowing for high transmitter return loss in E1 applications. Transmit pulse shapes (DSX-1 or E1/CEPT) are selectable for various line lengths and cable types.

The SSI 78P304A provides receive jitter attenuation starting at 3 Hz, and is microprocessor controllable through a serial interface.

The SSI 78P304A offers a variety of diagnostic features including transmit and receive monitoring. The device incorporates an on-chip crystal oscillator, and also accepts digital clock inputs. It uses an advanced double-poly, double-metal CMOS process and requires only a single 5-volt power supply.

APPLICATIONS

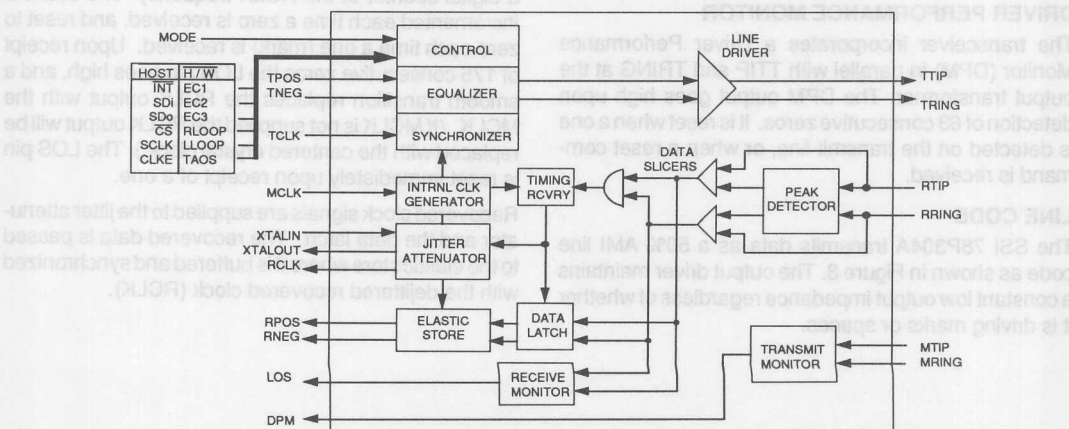
- PCM / Voice Channel Banks
- Data Channel Bank / Concentrator
- T1 / E1 multiplexer
- Digital Access and Cross-connect Systems (DACs)
- Computer to PBX interface (CPI & DMI)
- High speed data transmission lines
- Interfacing Customer Premises Equipment to a CSU
- Digital Loop Carrier (DLC) terminals

FEATURES

- Low power consumption (400 mW maximum) 40% less than the SSI 78P300
- Constant low output impedance transmitter regardless of data pattern
- High transmit and receive return loss
- Meets or exceeds all industry specifications including CCITT G.703, ANSI T1.403 and ATT Pub 62411
- Compatible with most popular PCM framers including the 2180A (T1) and 2181/2181A (E1)
- Line driver, data recovery and clock recovery functions
- Minimum receive signal of 500 mV
- Selectable slicer levels (CEPT/DSX-1) improve SNR
- Programmable transmit equalizer shapes pulses to meet DSX-1 pulse template from 0 to 655 ft
- Local and remote loopback functions
- Transmit / Receive performance monitors with DPM and LOS outputs
- Receiver jitter tolerance 0.4 UI from 40 kHz to 100 kHz
- Receive jitter attenuation starting at 6 Hz
- Microprocessor controllable
- Available in 28 pin DIP or PLCC

7

FIGURE 1: BLOCK DIAGRAM



SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P304A is a fully integrated PCM transceiver for both 1.544 MHz (DSX-1) and 2.048 MHz (E1) applications. It allows transmission of digital data over existing twisted-pair installations. The SSI 78P304A transceiver interfaces with two twisted-pair lines, one twisted-pair for transmit, one twisted-pair for receive.

TRANSMITTER

Data received for transmission onto the line is clocked serially into the device at TPOS and TNEG. Input synchronization is supplied by the transmit clock (TCLK). The transmitted pulse shape is determined by Equalizer Control signals EC1 through EC3 as shown in Table 1. Refer to Table 2 and Figure 2 for master and transmit clock timing characteristics. Shaped pulses are applied to the AMI line driver for transmission onto the line at TTIP and TRING. Equalizer Control signals may be hardwired in the Hardware mode, or input as part of the serial data stream (SDI) in the Host mode.

Pulses can be shaped for either 1.544 or 2.048 MHz applications. 1.544 MHz pulses for DSX-1 applications can be programmed to match line lengths from 0 to 655 feet of ABAM cable. The SSI 78P304A also matches FCC and ECSA specifications for CSU applications. A 1:1.15 transmit transformer is used for all 1.544 MHz systems.

2.048 MHz pulses can drive coaxial or shielded twisted-pair lines. For E1 systems, a 1:2 transmit transformer and series resistors are recommended. This design meets or exceeds all CCITT and European PTT specifications for transmit and receive return loss. A 1:1 or 1:1.26 transformer may be used without series resistors.

DRIVER PERFORMANCE MONITOR

The transceiver incorporates a Driver Performance Monitor (DPM) in parallel with TTIP and TRING at the output transformer. The DPM output goes high upon detection of 63 consecutive zeros. It is reset when a one is detected on the transmit line, or when a reset command is received.

LINE CODE

The SSI 78P304A transmits data as a 50% AMI line code as shown in Figure 3. The output driver maintains a constant low output impedance regardless of whether it is driving marks or spaces.

RECEIVER

The SSI 78P304A receives the signal input from one twisted-pair line on each side of a center-grounded transformer. Positive pulses are received at RTIP and negative pulses are received at RRING. Recovered data is output at RPOS and RNEG, and the recovered clock is output at RCLK. Refer to Table 3 and Figure 4 for SSI 78P304A receiver timing.

The signal received at RPOS and RNEG is processed through the peak detector and data slicers. The peak detector samples the inputs and determines the maximum value of the received signal. A percentage of the peak value is provided to the data slicers as a threshold level to ensure optimum signal-to-noise ratio. For DSX-1 applications (determined by Equalizer Control inputs EC1 - EC3 \neq 000) the threshold is set to 70% of the peak value. This threshold is maintained above 65% for up to 15 successive zeros over the range of specified operating conditions. For E1 applications (EC inputs = 000 or 001) the threshold is 50%.

The receiver is capable of accurately recovering signals with up to -13.6 dB of attenuation (from 2.4V), corresponding to a received signal level of approximately 500 mV. Maximum line length is 1500 feet of ABAM cable (approximately 6 dB of attenuation). Regardless of received signal level, the peak detectors are held above a minimum level of .3V to provide immunity from impulsive noise.

After processing through the data slicers, the received signal is routed to the data and clock recovery sections, and to the receive monitor. The receive monitor generates a Loss of Signal (LOS) output upon receipt of 175 consecutive zeros (spaces). The receiver monitor loads a digital counter at the RCLK frequency. The count is incremented each time a zero is received, and reset to zero each time a one (mark) is received. Upon receipt of 175 consecutive zeros the LOS pin goes high, and a smooth transition replaces the RCLK output with the MCLK. (If MCLK is not supplied the RCLK output will be replaced with the centered crystal clock.) The LOS pin is reset immediately upon receipt of a one.

Recovered clock signals are supplied to the jitter attenuator and the data latch. The recovered data is passed to the elastic store where it is buffered and synchronized with the dejittered recovered clock (RCLK).

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

JITTER ATTENUATION

Jitter attenuation of the SSI 78P304A clock and data outputs is provided by a Jitter Attenuation Loop (JAL) and an Elastic Store (ES). An external crystal oscillating at 4 times the bit rate provides clock stabilization. Refer to Table 4 for crystal specifications. The ES is a 32 x 2-bit register. Recovered data is clocked into the ES with the recovered clock signal, and clocked out of the ES with the dejittered clock from the JAL. When the bit count in the ES is within two bits of overflowing or underflowing, the ES adjusts the output clock by 1/8 of a bit period. The ES produces an average delay of 16 bits in the receive path.

OPERATING MODES

The SSI 78P304A transceiver can be controlled through hard-wired pins (Hardware mode) or by a microprocessor through a serial interface (Host mode). The mode of operation is set by the MODE pin logic level. The SSI 78P304A can also be commanded to operate in one of several diagnostic modes.

HOST MODE OPERATION

To allow a host microprocessor to access and control the SSI 78P304A through the serial interface, MODE is set to 1. The serial interface (SDI/SDO) uses a 16-bit word consisting of an 8-bit Command/Address byte and an 8-bit Data byte. Figure 5 shows the serial interface data structure and timing.

The Host mode provides a latched Interrupt output ($\overline{\text{INT}}$) which is triggered by a change in the Loss of Signal (LOS) and/or Driver Performance Monitor (DPM) bits. The Interrupt is cleared when the interrupt condition no longer exists, and the host processor enables the respective bit in the serial input data byte. Host mode also allows control of the serial data and receive data output timing. The Clock Edge (CLKE) signal determines when these outputs are valid, relative to the Serial Clock (SCLK) or RCLK as follows:

| CLKE | Output | Clock | Valid Edge |
|------|--------|-------|------------|
| LOW | RPOS | RCLK | Rising |
| | RNEG | RCLK | Rising |
| | SDO | SCLK | Falling |
| HIGH | RPOS | RCLK | Falling |
| | RNEG | RCLK | Falling |
| | SDO | SCLK | Rising |

The SSI 78P304A serial port is addressed by setting bit A4 in the Address/Command byte, corresponding to address 16. The SSI 78P304A contains only a single output data register so no complex chip addressing scheme is required. The register is accessed by causing the Chip Select (CS) input to make a transition from high to low. Bit 1 of the serial Address/Command byte provides Read/Write control when the chip is accessed. A logic 1 indicates a read operation, and a logic 0 indicates a write operation. Table 6 lists serial data output bit combinations for each status. Serial data I/O timing characteristics are shown in Table 6, and Figures 6 and 7.

HARDWARE MODE OPERATION

In Hardware mode the transceiver is accessed and controlled through individual pins. With the exception of the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ and CLKE functions, Hardware mode provides all the functions provided in the Host mode. In the Hardware mode RPOS and RNEG outputs are valid on the rising edge of RCLK. To operate in Hardware mode, MODE must be set to 0. Equalizer Control signals (EC1 through EC3) are input on the Interrupt, Serial Data In and Serial Data Out pins. Diagnostic control for Remote Loopback (RLOOP), Local Loopback (LLOOP), and Transmit All Ones (TAOS) modes is provided through the individual pins used to control serial interface timing in the Host mode.

RESET OPERATION

Upon power up, the transceiver is held static until the power supply reaches approximately 3V. Upon crossing this threshold, the device begins a 32 ms reset cycle to calibrate the transmit and receive delay lines and lock the Phase Lock Loop to the receive line. A reference clock is required to calibrate the delay lines. The transmitter reference is provided by TCLK. The crystal oscillator provides the receiver reference. If the 78P304A crystal oscillator is grounded, MCLK is used as the receiver reference clock.

The transceiver can also be reset from the Host or Hardware mode. In Host mode, reset is commanded by simultaneously writing RLOOP and LLOOP to the register. In Hardware mode, reset is commanded by holding RLOOP and LLOOP high simultaneously for 200 ns. Reset is initiated on the falling edge of the reset request. In either mode, reset clears and sets all registers to 0 and centers the oscillator, then calibration begins.

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

DIAGNOSTIC MODE OPERATION

In Transmit All Ones (TAOS) mode the TPOS and TNEG inputs to the transceiver are ignored. The transceiver transmits a continuous stream of 1's when the TAOS mode is activated. TAOS can be commanded simultaneously with Local Loopback, but is inhibited during Remote Loopback.

In Remote Loopback (RLOOP) mode, the transmit data and clock inputs (TPOS, TNEG and TCLK) are ignored. The RPOS and RNEG outputs are looped back through the transmit circuits and output on TTIP and TRING at the RCLK frequency. Receiver circuits are unaffected by the RLOOP command and continue to output the RPOS, RNEG and RCLK signals received from the twisted-pair line.

In Local Loopback (LLOOP) mode, the receiver circuits are inhibited. The transmit data and clock inputs (TPOS,

TNEG and TCLK) are looped back onto the receive data and clock outputs (RPOS, RNEG and RCLK.) The transmitter circuits are unaffected by the LLOOP command. The TPOS and TNEG inputs (or a stream of 1's if the TAOS command is active) will be transmitted normally. When used in this mode with a crystal, the transceiver can be used as a stand-alone jitter attenuator.

POWER REQUIREMENTS

The SSI 78P304A is a low-power CMOS device. It operates from a single +5 V power supply which can be connected externally to both the transmitter and receiver. However, the two inputs must be within $\pm .3V$ of each other, and decoupled to their respective grounds separately, as shown in Figure 8. Isolation between the transmit and receive circuits is provided internally.

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|------|---|
| MCLK | I | Master Clock: A 1.544 or 2.048 MHz clock input used to generate internal clocks. Upon Loss of Signal (LOS), RCLK is derived from MCLK. If MCLK is not applied, this pin should be grounded. |
| TCLK | I | Transmit Clock: Transmit clock input. TPOS and TNEG are sampled on the falling edge of TCLK. |
| TPOS | I | Transmit Positive Data: Input for positive pulse to be transmitted on the twisted-pair or coaxial cable. |
| TNEG | I | Transmit Negative Data: Input for negative pulse to be transmitted on the twisted-pair or coaxial cable. |
| MODE | I | Mode Select: Setting MODE to logic 1 puts the SSI 78P304A in the Host mode. In the Host mode, the serial interface is used to control the SSI 78Q904A and determine its status. Setting MODE to logic 0 puts the SSI 78P304A in the Hardware (H/W) mode. In the Hardware mode the serial interface is disabled and hard-wired pins are used to control configuration and report status. |
| RNEG / RPOS | O | Receive Negative/Positive Data: Received data outputs. A signal on RNEG corresponds to receipt of a negative pulse on RTIP and RRING. A signal on RPOS corresponds to receipt of a positive pulse on RTIP and RRING. RNEG and RPOS outputs are Non-Return-to-Zero (NRZ). In the Host mode, CLKE determines the clock edge at which these outputs are stable and valid. In the Hardware mode both outputs are stable and valid on the rising edge of RCLK. |
| RCLK | O | Recovered Clock: This is the clock recovered from the signal received at RTIP and RRING. |

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|------|---|
| XTALIN / XTALOUT | I | Crystal Input / Crystal Output: An external crystal operating at four times the bit rate (6.176 MHz for DSX-1, 8.192 MHz for E1 applications with an 18.7 pF load) is required to enable the jitter attenuation function of the SSI 78P304A. These pins may also be used to disable the jitter attenuator by connecting the XTALIN pin to the positive supply through a resistor, and tying the XTALOUT pin to ground. |
| DPM | O | Driver Performance Monitor: DPM goes to a logic 1 when the transmit monitor loop (MTIP and MRING) does not detect a signal for 63 ± 2 clock periods. DPM remains at logic 1 until a signal is detected. |
| LOS | O | Loss of Signal: LOS goes to a logic 1 when 175 consecutive spaces have been detected. LOS returns to a logic 0 when a mark is received. |
| TTIP / TTRING | O | Transmit Tip / Transmit Ring: Differential Driver Outputs. These low impedance outputs achieve maximum power savings through a 1:1.15 transformer (T1), or a 1:1 or 1:1.26 transformer (E1) without additional components. To provide higher return loss for E1 systems, resistors may be used in series with a 1:2 transformer (use 15 Ω resistors for 120 Ω terminations, and 9.3 Ω resistors for 75 Ω terminations.) |
| TGND | - | Transmit Ground: Ground return for the transmit drivers power supply TV+. |
| TV+ | I | Transmit Power Supply: +5 VDC power supply input for the transmit drivers. TV+ must not vary from RV+ by more than $\pm 0.3V$. |
| MTIP / MRING | I | Monitor Tip / Monitor Ring: These pins are used to monitor the tip and ring transmit outputs. The transceiver can be connected to monitor its own output or the output of another 78P304A on the board. To prevent false interrupts in the host mode if the monitor is not used, apply a clock signal to one of the monitor pins and tie the other monitor pin to approximately the clock's mid-level voltage. The monitor clock can range from 100kHz to the TCLK frequency. |
| RTIP / RRING | O | Receive Tip / Receive Ring: The AMI signal received from the line is applied at these pins. A center-tapped, center-grounded, 2:1 step-up transformer is required on these pins. Data and clock from the signal applied at these pins are recovered and output on the RPOS/RNEG, and RCLK pins. |
| RV+ | I | Received Power Supply: +5 VDC power supply for all circuits except the transmit drivers. (Transmit drivers are supplied by TV+.) |
| RGND | - | Receive Ground: Ground return for power supply RV+. |
| INT | O | Interrupt (Host Mode): This SSI 78P304A Host mode output goes low to flag the host processor when LOS or DPM go active. INT is an open-drain output and should be tied to power supply RV+ through a resistor. INT is reset by clearing the respective register bit (LOS and/or DPM.) |
| EC1 | I | Equalizer Control 1 (H/W Mode): The signal applied at this pin in the SSI 78P304A Hardware mode is used in conjunction with EC2 and EC3 inputs to determine shape and amplitude of AMI output transmit pulses. |

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|------|--|
| SDI | I | Serial Data In (Host Mode): The serial data input stream is applied to this pin when the SSI 78P304A operates in the Host mode. SDI is sampled on the rising edge of SCLK. |
| EC2 | I | Equalizer Control 2 (H/W Mode): The signal applied at this pin in the SSI 78P304A Hardware mode is used in conjunction with EC1 and EC3 inputs to determine shape and amplitude of AML output transmit pulses. |
| SDO | O | Serial Data Out (Host Mode): The serial data from the on-chip register is output on this pin in the SSI 78P304A Host mode. If CLKE is high, SDO is valid on the rising edge of SCLK. If CLKE is low SDO is valid on the falling edge of SCLK. This pin goes to a high-impedance state when the serial port is being written to and when \overline{CS} is high. |
| EC3 | I | Equalizer Control 3 (H/W Mode): The signal applied at this pin in the SSI 78P304A Hardware mode is used in conjunction with EC1 and EC2 inputs to determine shape and amplitude of AML output transmit pulses. |
| \overline{CS} | I | Chip Select (Host Mode): This input is used to access the serial interface in the SSI 78P304A Host mode. For each read or write operation, \overline{CS} must remain low for the duration of operation. |
| RLOOP | I | Remote Loopback (H/W Mode): This input controls loopback functions in the SSI 78P304A Hardware mode. Setting RLOOP to a logic 1 enables the Remote Loopback mode. Setting both RLOOP and LLOOP causes a Reset. |
| SCLK | I | Serial Clock (Host Mode): This clock is used in the SSI 78P304A Host mode to write data to or read data from the serial interface registers. |
| LLOOP | I | Local Loopback (H/W Mode): This input controls loopback functions in the SSI 78P304A Hardware mode. Setting LLOOP to a logic 1 enables the Local Loopback Mode. |
| CLKE | I | Clock Edge (Host Mode): Setting CLKE to logic 1 causes RPOS and RNEG to be valid on the falling edge of RCLK, and SDO to be valid on the rising edge of SCLK. When CLKE is a logic 0, RPOS and RNEG are valid on the rising edge of RCLK, and SDO is valid on the falling edge of SCLK. |
| TAOS | I | Transmit All Ones (H/W Mode): When set to a logic 1, TAOS causes the SSI 78P304A (Hardware mode) to transmit a continuous stream of marks at the TCLK frequency. Activating TAOS causes TPOS and TNEG inputs to be ignored. TAOS is inhibited during Remote Loopback. |

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may damage the device. Normal operation not guaranteed at these extremes.

| PARAMETER | | RATING | UNIT |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|------------------------|------|
| DC supply (referenced to GND) | RV+, TV+ | -0 to 6.0 | V |
| Input voltage, any pin (see note 1) | V _{IN} | RGND -0.3 to RV+ + 0.3 | V |
| Input current, any pin (see note 2) | I _{IN} | -10 to +10 | mA |
| Ambient operating temperature | T _A | -40 to 85 | °C |
| Storage temperature | T _{STG} | -65 to 150 | °C |

¹ Excluding RTIP and RRING which must stay within -6V to RV+ + 0.3V.

² Transient currents of up to 100 mA will not cause SCR latch-up. TTIP, TRING, TV+ and TGND can withstand a continuous current of 100 mA.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | | SYMBOL | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------------|----------------|---|------|-----|------|------|
| DC supply (see note 1) | | RV+, TV+ | 4.75 | 5.0 | 5.25 | V |
| Ambient Operating Temperature | | T _A | -40 | 25 | 85 | °C |
| Total power dissipation | P _D | 100% ones density & max line length @ 5.25V | - | - | 400 | mW |

¹ TV+ must not exceed RV+ by more than ±0.3 V.

² Power dissipation while driving 25Ω load over operating temperature range. Includes device and load. Digital input levels are within 10% of the supply rails and digital outputs are driving a 50 pF capacitive load.

DIGITAL CHARACTERISTICS (T_A = -40° to 85 °C, V₊ = 5.0V ±5%, GND = 0V)

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| High level input voltage | V _{IH} | | 2.0 | - | - | V |
| (see notes 1 & 2) | | | | | | |
| Low level input voltage | V _{IL} | | - | - | 0.8 | V |
| (see notes 1 & 2) | | | | | | |
| High level output voltage | V _{OH} | I _{OUT} = -400 μA | 2.4 | - | - | V |
| (see notes 1 & 2) | | | | | | |
| Low level output voltage | V _{OL} | I _{OUT} = 1.6 mA | - | - | 0.4 | V |
| (see notes 1 & 2) | | | | | | |
| Input leakage current | I _{IL} | | 0 | - | ±10 | μA |
| (see note 3) | | | | | | |
| Three-state leakage current | I _{3L} | | 0 | - | ±10 | μA |
| (see note 2) | | | | | | |

¹ Functionality of pins 23 and 25 depends on mode. See Host / Hardware Mode descriptions.

² Output drivers will output CMOS logic levels into CMOS loads.

³ Except MTIP and MRING I_{IL} = ± 50 μA.

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

ANALOG SPECIFICATIONS ($T_A = -40$ to 85°C , $V_+ = 5.0\text{V} \pm 5\%$, $\text{GND} = 0\text{V}$)

| PARAMETER | | TEST CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT | |
|--|------------------|-----------------------|----------|-----|---------|-------|----|
| AMI Output | DSX-1 | measured at the DSX | 2.4 | 3.0 | 3.6 | V | |
| Pulse Amplitudes | CEPT | measured at line side | 2.7 | 3.0 | 3.3 | V | |
| Load presented to transmitter output | | | - | 75 | - | Ω | |
| Jitter added by the transmitter (see note 1) | 10 Hz - 8 kHz | | - | - | 0.01 | UI | |
| | 8 kHz - 40 kHz | | - | - | 0.025 | UI | |
| | 10 Hz - 40 kHz | | - | - | 0.025 | UI | |
| | Broad Band | | - | - | 0.05 | UI | |
| Sensitivity below DSX (0 dB = 2.4V) | | | 13.6 | - | - | dB | |
| | | | 500 | - | - | mV | |
| Loss of Signal threshold | | | - | 0.3 | - | V | |
| Data decision | DSX-1 | | 63 | 70 | 77 | %peak | |
| threshold | CEPT | | 43 | 50 | 57 | %peak | |
| Allowable consecutive zeros before LOS | | | 160 | 175 | 190 | - | |
| Input jitter tolerance | 10 kHz - 100 kHz | | 0.4 | - | - | UI | |
| Jitter attenuation curve corner frequency (see note 2) | | | - | 6 | - | Hz | |
| Minimum Return Loss (see notes 3 & 4) | | | Transmit | | Receive | | |
| | | | Min | Typ | Min | Typ | |
| 51 kHz - 102 kHz | | | 20 | 28 | 20 | 30 | dB |
| 102 kHz - 2.048 MHz | | | 20 | 28 | 20 | 30 | dB |
| 2.048 MHz - 3.072 MHz | | | 20 | 24 | 20 | 25 | dB |

¹ Input signal to TCLK is jitter-free.

² Circuit attenuates jitter at 20 dB/decade above the corner frequency.

³ In accordance with CCITT G.703/RC6367A return loss specifications (CEPT), when wired as shown in Figure 9.

⁴ Guaranteed by design.

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

TABLE 1: Equalizer Control Inputs for Transmitter

| EC3 | EC2 | EC1 | Line Length ¹ | Cable Loss ² | Application | Frequency |
|-----|-----|-----|----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 - 133 ft ABAM | 0.6 dB | DSX-1 | 1.544 MHz |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 133 - 266 ft ABAM | 1.2 dB | | |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 266 - 399 ft ABAM | 1.8 dB | | |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 399 - 533 ft ABAM | 2.4 dB | | |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 533 - 655 ft ABAM | 3.0 dB | | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | CCITT Recommendation G.703 | | E1 - Coax (75 Ω) | 2.048 MHz |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | | | E1 - Twisted-pair (120 Ω) | |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | FCC Part 68, Option A | | CSU | 1.544 MHz |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | ECSA T1C1.2 | | | |

¹ Line length from transceiver to DSX-1 cross-connect point.

² Maximum cable loss at 772 kHz.

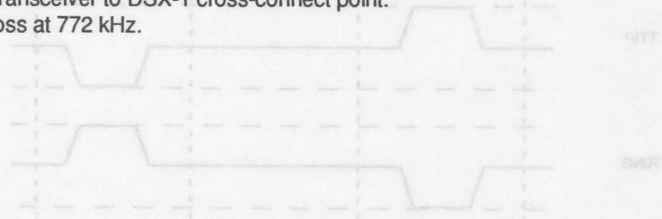


Figure 3: 50% AM Coding

TABLE 2: SSI 78P304A Master Clock and Transmitter Timing Characteristics (See Figure 3)

| Parameter | Symbol | Min | Typ ¹ | Max | Units |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|-----|------------------|-----|-------|
| Master clock frequency | DSX-1 MCLK | - | 1.544 | - | MHz |
| | E1 MCLK | - | 2.048 | - | MHz |
| Master clock tolerance | MCLK _{tol} | - | ±100 | - | ppm |
| Master clock duty cycle | MCLK _{dc} | 40 | - | 60 | % |
| Crystal frequency | DSX-1 f _c | - | 8.176 | - | MHz |
| | E1 f _c | - | 8.192 | - | MHz |
| Transmit clock frequency | DSX-1 TCLK | - | 1.544 | - | MHz |
| | E1 TCLK | - | 2.048 | - | MHz |
| Transmit clock tolerance | TCLK _{tol} | - | - | ±50 | ppm |
| Transmit clock duty cycle | TCLK _{dc} | 40 | - | 60 | % |
| T1P0STN1EG to TCLK setup time | t _{su} | 25 | - | - | ns |
| TCLK to T1P0STN1EG hold time | t _{ht} | 25 | - | - | ns |

¹ Typical figures are at 25°C and are for design aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

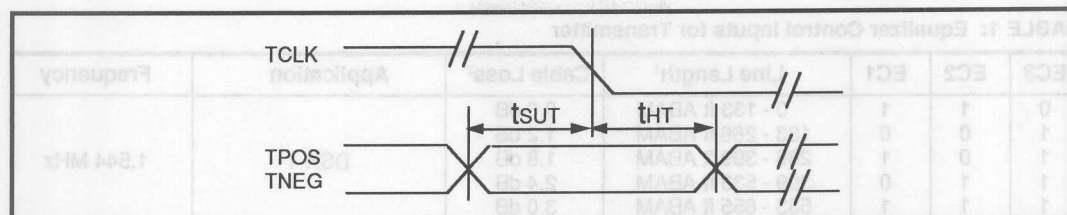


Figure 2: SSI 78P304A Transmit Clock Timing

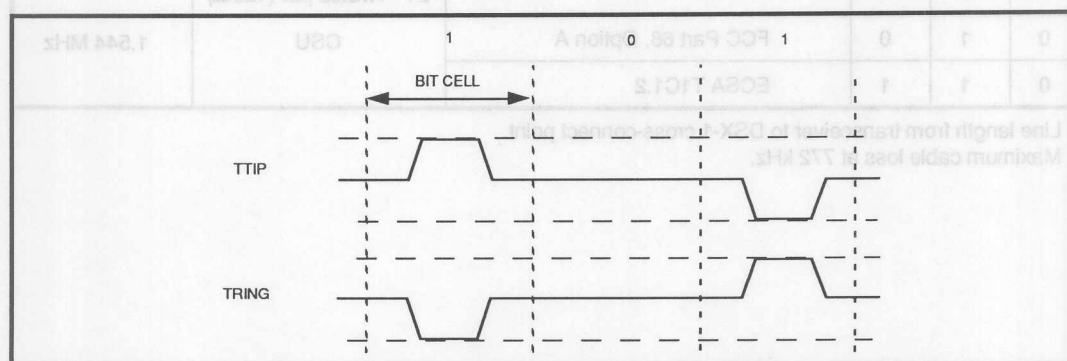


Figure 3: 50% AMI Coding

TABLE 2: SSI 78P304A Master Clock and Transmit Timing Characteristics (See Figure 2)

| Parameter | | Sym | Min | Typ ¹ | Max | Units |
|------------------------------|-------|-------|-----|------------------|-----|-------|
| Master clock frequency | DSX-1 | MCLK | - | 1.544 | - | MHz |
| | E1 | MCLK | - | 2.048 | - | MHz |
| Master clock tolerance | | MCLKt | - | ±100 | - | ppm |
| Master clock duty cycle | | MCLKd | 40 | - | 60 | % |
| Crystal frequency | DSX-1 | fc | - | 6.176 | - | MHz |
| | E1 | fc | - | 8.192 | - | MHz |
| Transmit clock frequency | DSX-1 | TCLK | - | 1.544 | - | MHz |
| | E1 | TCLK | - | 2.048 | - | MHz |
| Transmit clock tolerance | | TCLKt | - | - | ±50 | ppm |
| Transmit clock duty cycle | | TCLKd | 40 | - | 60 | % |
| TPOS/TNEG to TCLK setup time | | tsUT | 25 | - | - | ns |
| TCLK to TPOS/TNEG Hold time | | tHT | 25 | - | - | ns |

¹ Typical figures are at 25°C and are for design aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

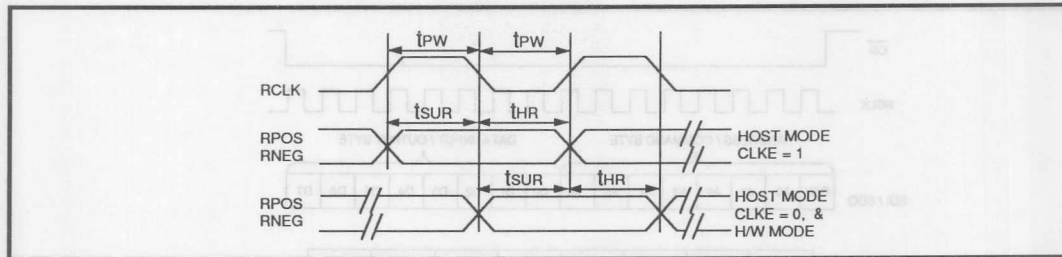


FIGURE 4: SSI 78P304A Receive Clock Timing

TABLE 3: SSI 78P304A Receive Timing Characteristics (See Figure 4)

| Parameter | Sym | Min | Typ ¹ | Max | Units |
|---------------------------------------|-------|------|------------------|-----|-------|
| Receive clock duty cycle | RCLKd | 40 | - | 60 | % |
| Receive clock pulse width | DSX-1 | tPW | - | 324 | ns |
| | CEPT | tPW | - | 244 | ns |
| RPOS / RNEG to RCLK rising setup time | DSX-1 | tSUR | - | 274 | ns |
| | CEPT | tSUR | - | 194 | ns |
| RCLK rising to RPOS / RNEG hold time | DSX-1 | tHR | - | 274 | ns |
| | CEPT | tHR | - | 194 | ns |

¹ Typical figures are at 25°C and are for design aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

TABLE 4: SSI 78P304A Crystal Specifications (External)

| Parameter | T1 | E1 |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| Frequency | 6.176 MHz | 8.192 MHz |
| Frequency Stability | ±20 ppm @ 25° C | ±20 ppm @ 25° C |
| | ±25 ppm from -40° C to + 85° C (Ref 25° C reading) | ±25 ppm from -40° C to + 85° C (Ref 25° C reading) |
| Pullability | CL = 11 pF to 18.7 pF, +ΔF = 175 to 195 ppm | CL = 11 pF to 18.7 pF, +ΔF = 95 to 115 ppm |
| | CL = 18.7 pF to 34 pF, -ΔF = 175 to 195 ppm | CL = 18.7 pF to 34 pF, -ΔF = 95 to 115 ppm |
| Effective series resistance | 40Ω Maximum | 30Ω Maximum |
| Crystal cut | AT | AT |
| Resonance | Parallel | Parallel |
| Maximum drive level | 2.0 mW | 2.0 mW |
| Mode of operation | Fundamental | Fundamental |
| Crystal holder | HC49 (R3W), C _O = 7 pF maximum C _M = 17 pF typical | HC49 (R3W), C _O = 7 pF maximum C _M = 17 pF typical |

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

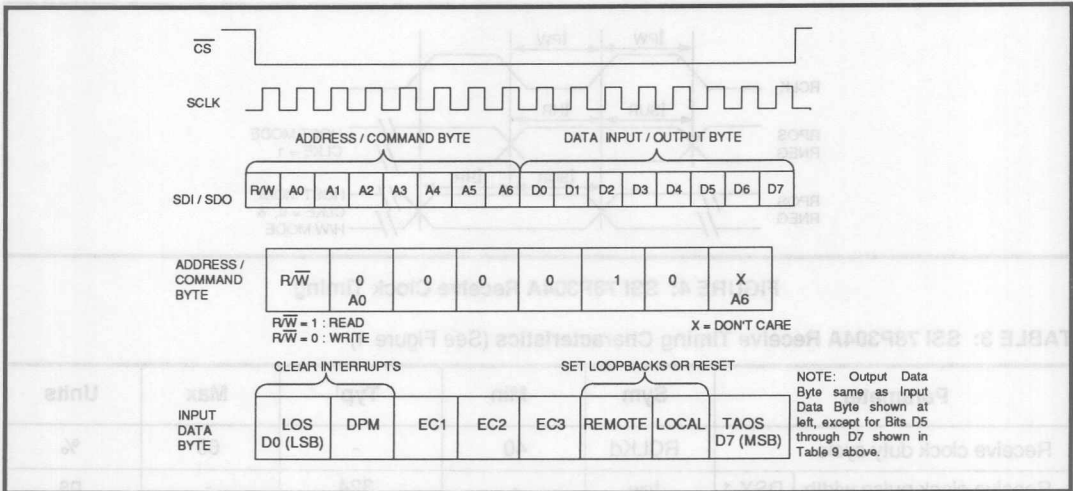


FIGURE 5: SSI 78P304A Serial Interface Data Structure

TABLE 5: SSI 78P304A Serial Data Output Bits (See Figure 5)

| Bit D5 | Bit D6 | Bit D7 | Status |
|--------|--------|--------|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | Reset has occurred, or no program input. |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | TAOS active |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | Local Loopback active |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | TAOS and Local Loopback active |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | Remote Loopback active |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | DPM has changed state since last Clear DPM occurred |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | LOS has changed state since last Clear LOS occurred |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | LOS and DPM have both changed state since last Clear DPM and Clear LOS occurred |

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

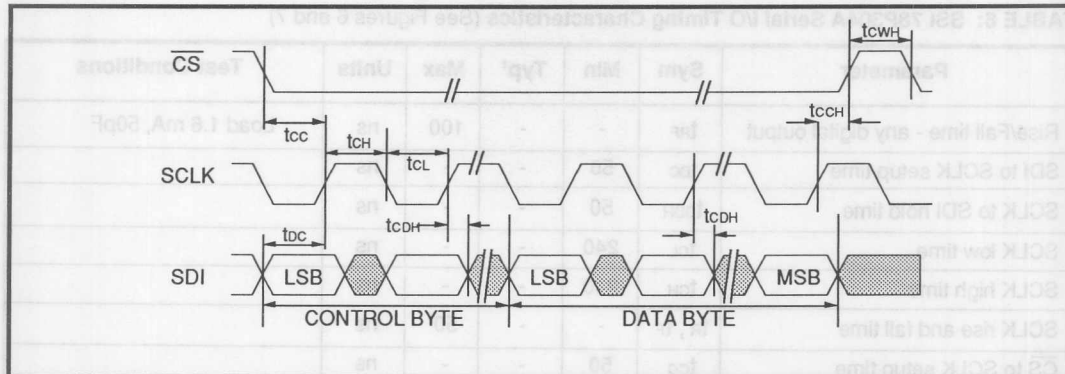


FIGURE 6: SSI 78P304A Serial Data Input Timing Diagram

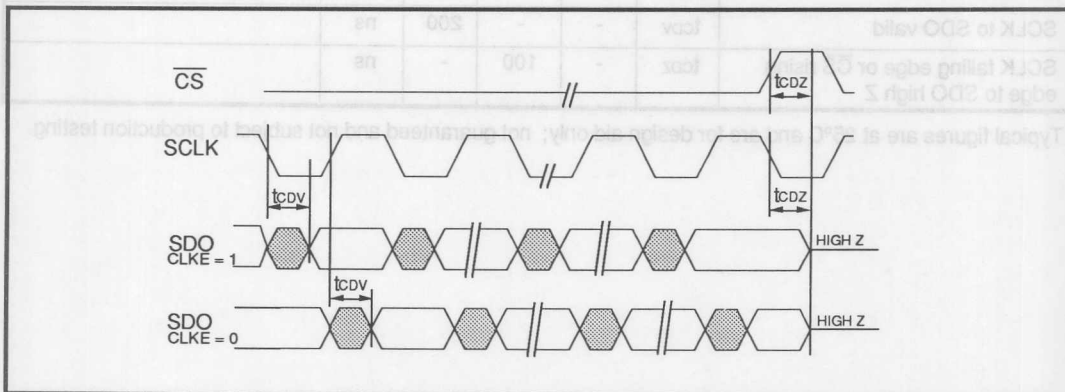


Figure 7: SSI 78P304A Serial Data Output Timing Diagram

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

TABLE 6: SSI 78P304A Serial I/O Timing Characteristics (See Figures 6 and 7)

| Parameter | Sym | Min | Typ ¹ | Max | Units | Test Conditions |
|---|---------------------------------|-----|------------------|-----|-------|-------------------|
| Rise/Fall time - any digital output | t _{RF} | - | - | 100 | ns | Load 1.6 mA, 50pF |
| SDI to SCLK setup time | t _{DC} | 50 | - | - | ns | |
| SCLK to SDI hold time | t _{CDH} | 50 | - | - | ns | |
| SCLK low time | t _{CL} | 240 | - | - | ns | |
| SCLK high time | t _{CH} | 240 | - | - | ns | |
| SCLK rise and fall time | t _R , t _F | - | - | 50 | ns | |
| $\overline{\text{CS}}$ to SCLK setup time | t _{CC} | 50 | - | - | ns | |
| SCLK to $\overline{\text{CS}}$ hold time | t _{CCH} | 50 | - | - | ns | |
| $\overline{\text{CS}}$ inactive time | t _{CWH} | 250 | - | - | ns | |
| SCLK to SDO valid | t _{CDV} | - | - | 200 | ns | |
| SCLK falling edge or $\overline{\text{CS}}$ rising edge to SDO high Z | t _{CDZ} | - | 100 | - | ns | |

¹ Typical figures are at 25°C and are for design aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

SSI 78P304A

Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

APPLICATION INFORMATION

1.544 MHz T1 INTERFACE APPLICATIONS

Figure 8 is a typical 1.544 MHz T1 application. The SSI 78P304A is shown in the Host mode with the 2180A T1/ESF Framer providing the digital interface with the host controller. Both devices are controlled through the serial bus with appropriate decoupling capacitors installed (1.0 μ F on the transmit side, 68 μ F and 0.1 μ F on the receive side.)

TABLE 7: E1/CEPT Output Combinations

| EC | 75 Ω Coax | 120 Ω TWP |
|-------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 0 0 1 | 1:1, $R_t = 10\Omega$ | 1:1, $R_t = 0\Omega$ |
| 0 0 1 | 1:2, $R_t = 14.3\Omega$ | 1:2, $R_t = 15\Omega$ |
| 0 0 0 | 1:1, $R_t = 0\Omega$ | 1:1.26, $R_t = 0\Omega$ |
| 0 0 0 | 1:2, $R_t = 9.37\Omega$ | 1:2, $R_t = 8.7\Omega$ |

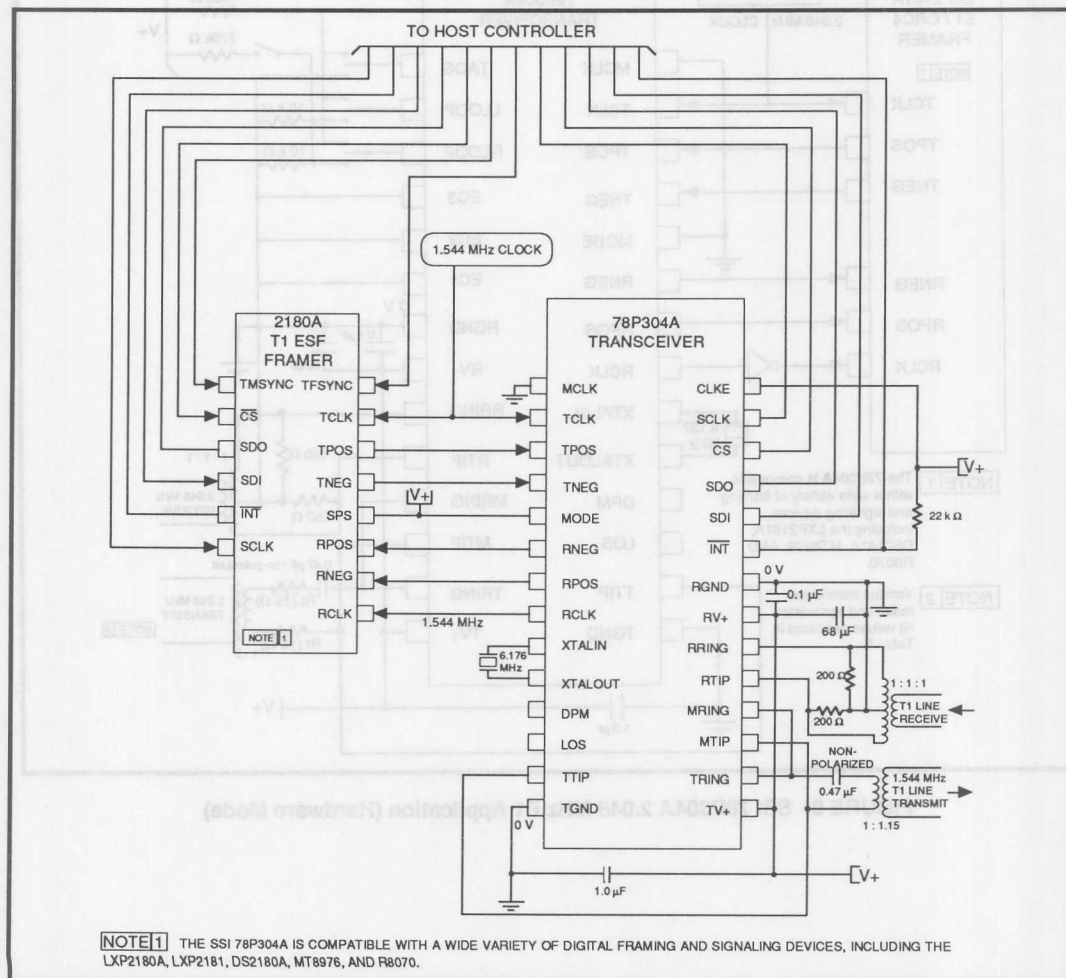


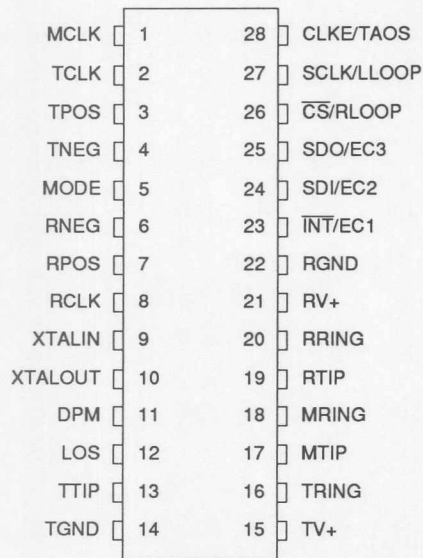
FIGURE 8: Typical SSI 78P304A 1.544 MHz T1 Application (Host Mode)

SSI 78P304A

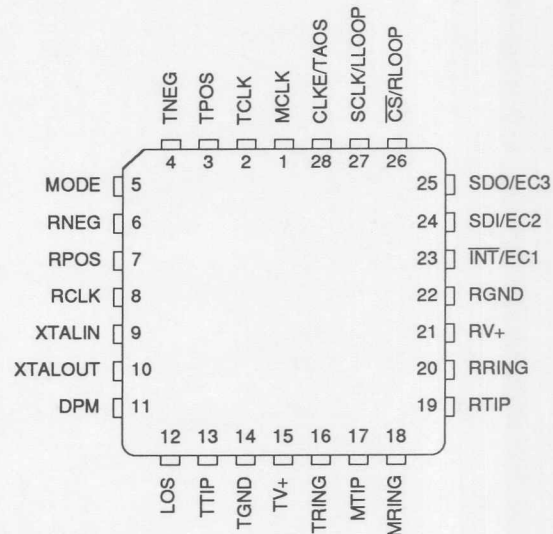
Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



28-Pin DIP



28-Pin PLCC

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-------------------------|------------|------------|
| SSI 78P304A 28-Pin DIP | 78P304A-IP | 78P304A-IP |
| SSI 78P304A 28-Pin PLCC | 78P304A-IH | 78P304A-IH |

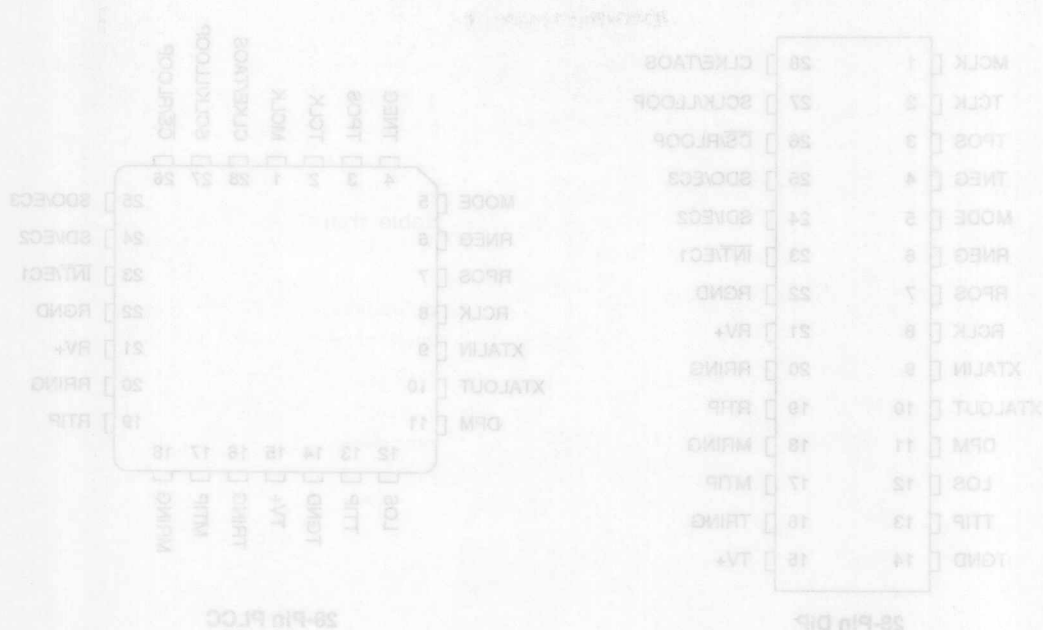
No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

Transceiver with Receiver Jitter Attenuation Low-Power T1/E1 Integrated Short Haul SSI 78P304A

Notes:
CAUTION: Use handling precautions for a static sensitive device.

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)



ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-------------------------|------------|------------|
| SSI 78P304A 28-Pin DIP | 78P304A-IP | 78P304A-IP |
| SSI 78P304A 28-Pin PLCC | 78P304A-IH | 78P304A-IH |

Its responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, trademarks or other rights of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the user is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14881 Skyway Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7025, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-8814

December 1993

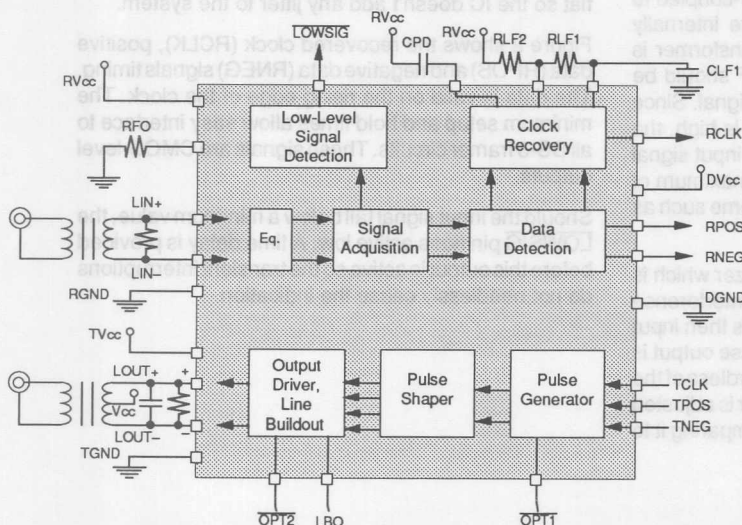
DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P7200 is a line interface transceiver IC intended for DS-3 (44.736 Mbit/s) applications. The receiver has a very wide dynamic range and is designed to accept B3ZS-encoded Alternate-Mark Inversion (AMI) inputs; it provides clock, positive data, negative data, and low-level signal detector logical outputs. An on-chip equalizer improves the intersymbol interference tolerance on the receive path. The transmitter converts clock and data input signals into AMI pulses of the appropriate shape for transmission. A line buildout (LBO) equalizer may be selected to shape the outgoing pulses for shorter line lengths. The SSI 78P7200 requires a single 5 volt supply and is available in DIP and surface mount packages.

FEATURES

- Single chip transmit and receive interface for DS-3 (44.736 Mbit/s) applications
- On-chip Receive Equalizer
- Unique clock recovery circuit, requires no crystals, tuned components or external clock
- Selectable transmit line buildout (LBO) to accommodate shorter line lengths
- Compliant with ANSI T1.102 - 1987, TR-TSY-000499 and CCITT G.703
- Low-level input signal indication
- Available in DIP or surface mount packages
- -40°C to +85°C operating range
- Pin-compatible with SSI 78P236, 78P2361 and 78P2362

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM

| | | | |
|-------|----|----|--------|
| LIN+ | 1 | 28 | CPD |
| NCR | 2 | 27 | LOWSIG |
| LIN- | 3 | 26 | DVCC |
| NCR | 4 | 25 | RPOS |
| RFO | 5 | 24 | RNEG |
| RGND | 6 | 23 | RCLK |
| RVCC | 7 | 22 | DGND |
| TGND | 8 | 21 | NCD |
| LOUT+ | 9 | 20 | LF2 |
| NCT | 10 | 19 | LF1 |
| LOUT- | 11 | 18 | OPT2 |
| LBO | 12 | 17 | TVCC |
| OPT1 | 13 | 16 | TCLK |
| TPOS | 14 | 15 | TNEG |

28-Pin DIP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 78P7200

DS-3 Line Interface with Receive Equalizer

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78P7200 is a single chip line interface IC designed to work with 44.736 Mbit/s DS-3 signals. The receiver recovers 44.736 MHz clock, positive data and negative data from an Alternate Mark Inversion (AMI) signal which has travelled a maximum of 450 feet from a DSX3 crosspoint over 75 Ω coaxial cable (cable type WECO728A, RG-59B or equivalent). The wide dynamic range of SSI 78P7200 allows for additional resistive attenuation. The input DS-3 signal should be B3ZS coded.

The transmitter accepts CMOS level logical clock, positive data and negative data and converts them to the AMI signal to drive a 75 Ω coaxial cable. Programmable internal Line Buildout (LBO) circuitry eliminates the need for external LBO networks. The shape of the transmitted signal through any cable length of 0 to 450 feet complies with the published templates of ANSI T.102-1987, CCITT G.703 and TR-TSY-000499. The SSI 78P7200 is designed to work with a B3ZS coded signal. The B3ZS encoding and decoding functions are normally included in the DS-3 framer ICs or can easily be implemented in a PAL.

RECEIVER

The receiver input is normally transformer-coupled to the DS-3 signal. The inputs to the IC are internally referenced to RVCC so that when no transformer is used, a DC blocking capacitor of 0.01 μ F should be used to isolate these pins from the DS-3 signal. Since the input impedance of the SSI 78P7200 is high, the DS-3 line must be terminated in 75 Ω . The input signal to the SSI 78P7200 must be limited to a maximum of two consecutive zeros using a coding scheme such as B3ZS.

The DS-3 signal first enters a fixed equalizer which is designed to overcome the intersymbol interference caused by long cable lengths. The signal is then input to a variable gain differential amplifier whose output is maintained at a constant voltage level regardless of the input voltage level. The gain of this amplifier is adjusted by detecting the peak of the signal and comparing it to a fixed reference.

The output of the variable gain amplifier is compared to a threshold value which is a fixed percentage of the signal peak. In this way, even though the input signal amplitude may fall below the minimum value that can be regulated by the variable gain circuit, the proper detection threshold is maintained.

Output of the data comparators are connected to the clock recovery circuits. The clock recovery system employs a unique phase locked loop which has an auxiliary frequency-sensitive acquisition loop which is active only when cycle-slipping occurs between the received signal rate and the internal oscillator.

This system permits the loop to independently lock to the frequency and phase of the incoming data stream without the need for high precision and/or adjustable oscillator or tuned circuits.

The response characteristic for the phase locked loop is established by external filter components, RLF1, RLF2 and CLF1. The values of these components are specified such that the bandwidth of the phase locked loop is greater than 200 kHz.

The jitter tolerance of the SSI 78P7200 exceeds the requirements of TR-TSY-000499 for the category II of equipments. The jitter transfer function is maximally flat so the IC doesn't add any jitter to the system.

Figure 2 shows the recovered clock (RCLK), positive data (RPOS) and negative data (RNEG) signals timing. The data is valid on the rising edge of the clock. The minimum setup and hold times allow easy interface to all DS-3 framer circuits. These signals are CMOS-level outputs.

Should the input signal fall below a minimum value, the LOWSIG pin goes active low. A time delay is provided before this output is active so the transient interruptions do not needlessly cause the indication.

SSI 78P7200

DS-3 Line Interface with Receive Equalizer

TRANSMITTER

The transmitter accepts unipolar CMOS level logical clock, positive data and negative data signals (TCLK, TPOS, TNEG) and generates high current drive pulses on the LOUT+ and LOUT- pins. When properly connected to a center tapped transformer, an AMI pulse is generated which can drive a 75 Ω coaxial cable (type WE728A or RG59B).

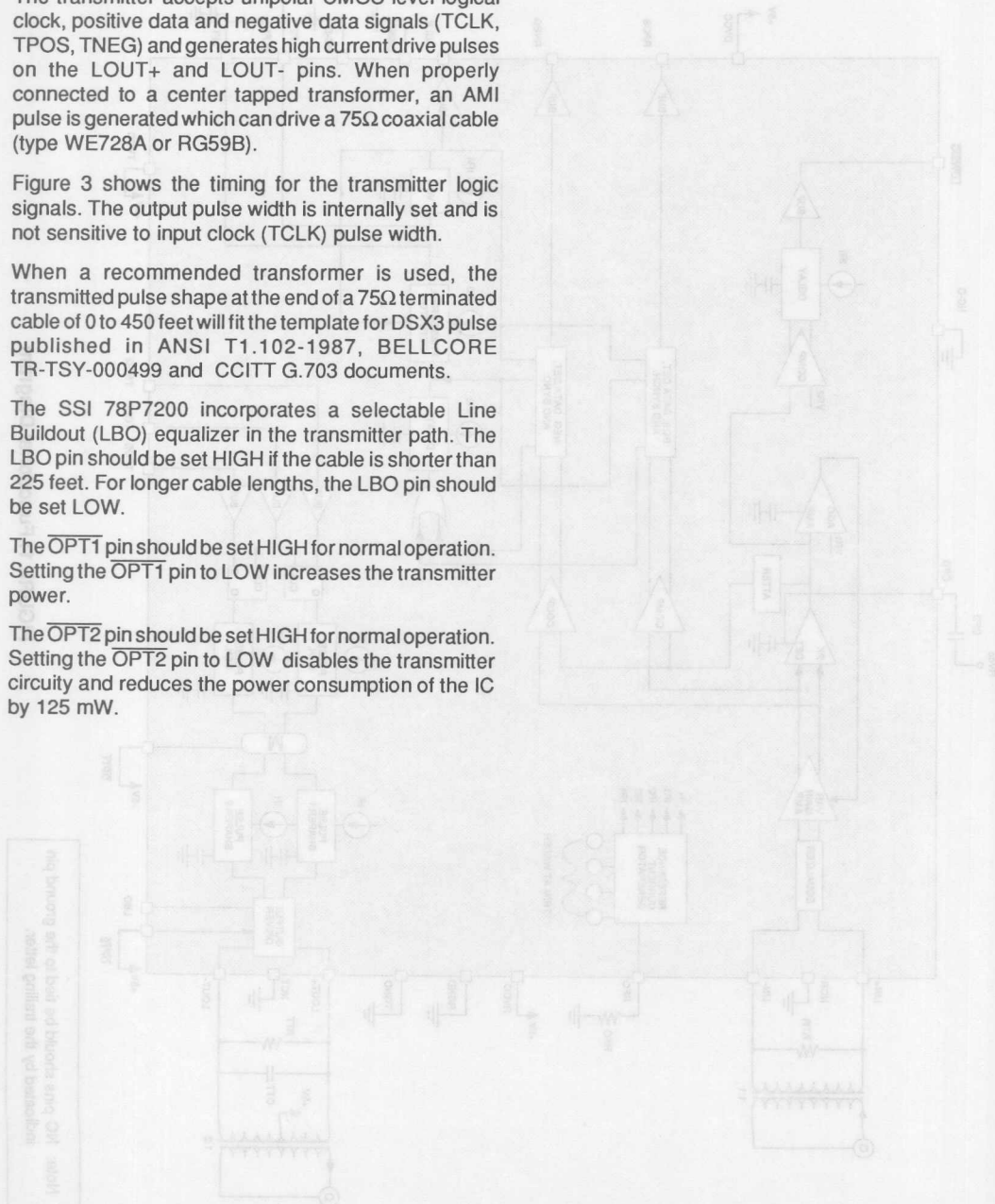
Figure 3 shows the timing for the transmitter logic signals. The output pulse width is internally set and is not sensitive to input clock (TCLK) pulse width.

When a recommended transformer is used, the transmitted pulse shape at the end of a 75 Ω terminated cable of 0 to 450 feet will fit the template for DSX3 pulse published in ANSI T1.102-1987, BELLCORE TR-TSY-000499 and CCITT G.703 documents.

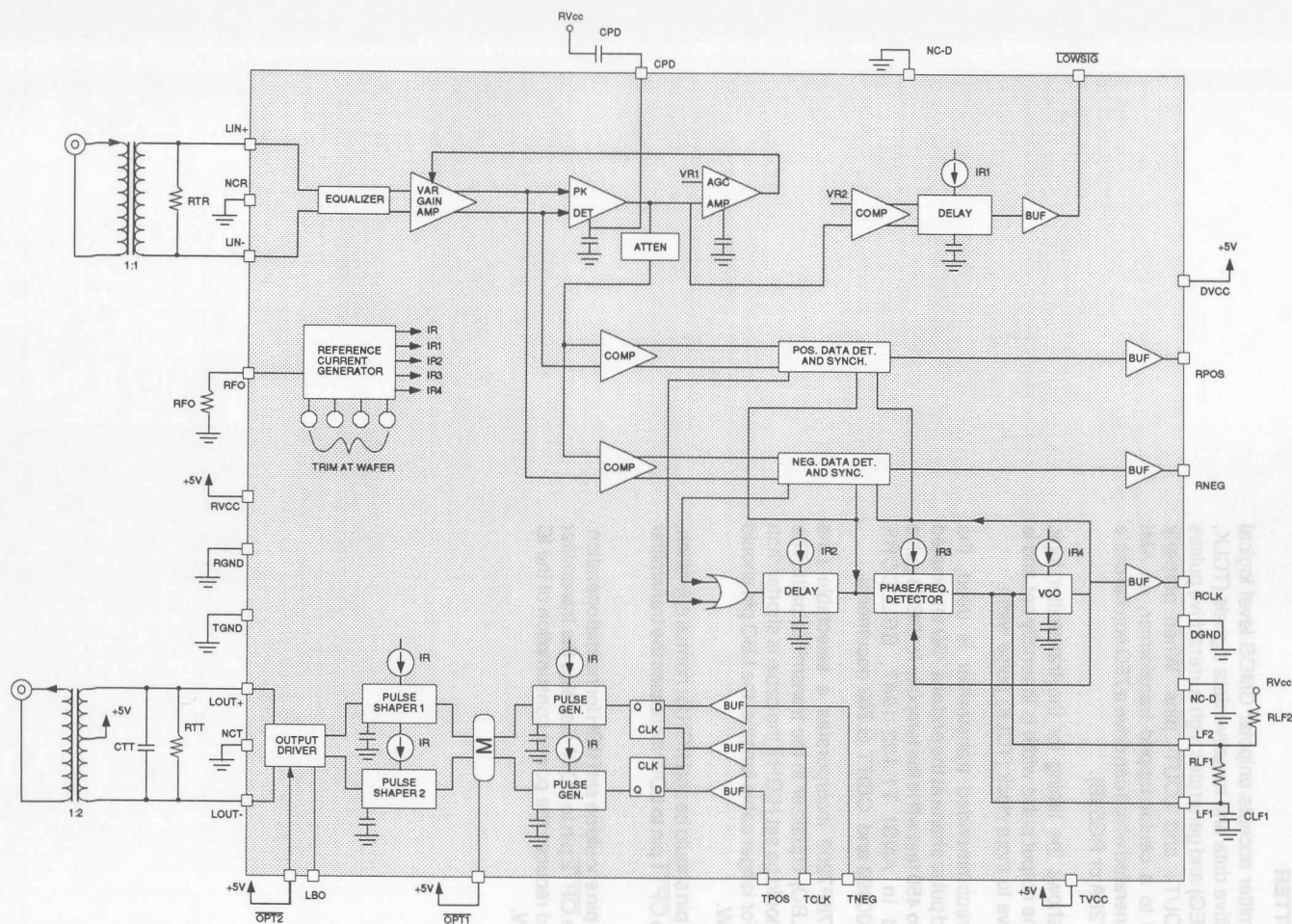
The SSI 78P7200 incorporates a selectable Line Buildout (LBO) equalizer in the transmitter path. The LBO pin should be set HIGH if the cable is shorter than 225 feet. For longer cable lengths, the LBO pin should be set LOW.

The $\overline{\text{OPT1}}$ pin should be set HIGH for normal operation. Setting the $\overline{\text{OPT1}}$ pin to LOW increases the transmitter power.

The $\overline{\text{OPT2}}$ pin should be set HIGH for normal operation. Setting the $\overline{\text{OPT2}}$ pin to LOW disables the transmitter circuitry and reduces the power consumption of the IC by 125 mW.



SSI 78P7200 DS-3 Line Interface with Receive Equalizer



Note: NC pins should be tied to the ground pin indicated by the trailing letter.

FIGURE 1: Functional Diagram

SSI 78P7200

DS-3 Line Interface with Receive Equalizer

PIN DESCRIPTION

RECEIVER

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|------|--|
| LIN+, LIN- | I | Differential inputs, transformer-coupled from line. |
| RPOS | O | Unipolar receiver output, active as result of positive pulse at inputs. |
| RNEG | O | Unipolar receiver output, active as result of negative pulse at inputs. |
| RCLK | O | Clock pulses recovered from line data. |
| LOWSIG | O | Low signal logic output indicating that input signal is less than threshold value. |

TRANSMITTER

| | | |
|-------|---|---|
| TPOS | I | Unipolar transmitter data input, active high. |
| TNEG | I | Unipolar transmitter data input, active high. |
| TCLK | I | Transmitter clock input, active high. |
| LOUT+ | O | Output to transformer for positive data pulses. |
| LOUT- | O | Output to transformer for negative data pulses. |
| LBO | I | Line buildout control. Selected for shorter cable lengths. |
| OPT1 | I | Transmit option 1. Selects faster output pulse transition time and higher amplitude when low. |
| OPT2 | I | Transmit option 2. Disables output driver and reduces output bias current when low. |

EXTERNAL COMPONENT CONNECTION

| | | |
|----------|---|---|
| RFO | I | Resistor connected to RGND to provide basic center frequency of receiver phase locked loop oscillator. |
| LF1, LF2 | - | Resistor-capacitor loop filter network to establish bandwidth of phase locked loop. |
| CPD | - | Capacitor to RVcc that is connected to peak detector node to reduce signal-dependent ripple on that node. |

POWER

| | | |
|------|---|---|
| TVcc | - | 5V power supply for transmit circuits. |
| RVcc | - | 5V power supply for receive circuits. |
| DVcc | - | 5V power supply for receive logic circuits. |
| TGND | - | Ground return for transmit circuits. |
| RGND | - | Ground return for receive circuits. |
| DGND | - | Ground return for receive logic circuits. |
| NC | - | No connect. These pins are not connected to the chip. They should be tied to the appropriate ground pin (see figure 1) to minimize pin-to-pin coupling capacitance. |

SSI 78P7200

DS-3 Line Interface with Receive Equalizer

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

(TA = -40°C to 85°C, Vcc = 5V ±5%, unless otherwise noted.) Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the largest absolute value. Operation above absolute maximum ratings may permanently damage the device.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|--------------------------------|
| Positive 5.0V supply: TVcc, RVcc, DVcc | 6.0V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150°C |
| Soldering Temperature (10 sec.) | 260 °C |
| Ambient Operating Temperature, TA | -40 to +85°C |
| Pin Ratings: LOUT+, LOUT- | Vcc -2.0 to Vcc +2.0V |
| LIN+, LIN-, TPOS, TNEG, TCLK, LBO, RFO, LF2, LF1, OPT1, OPT2 Pins | -0.3 to Vcc +0.3V |
| Pin Ratings: RPOS, RNEG, RCLK, LOWSIG Pins | -0.3 to Vcc +0.3V or +12 mA |

SUPPLY CURRENTS AND POWER

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---------------------|---|-----|-----|------|------|
| ICC Supply Current | Outputs Unloaded, normal operation, transmit and receive all 1's pattern | | 150 | 182 | mA |
| P Power Dissipation | Outputs unloaded, TA = 85°C | | | 0.93 | W |

EXTERNAL COMPONENTS (Refer to Figure 1 for location of components.)

| | | | | | | |
|------|--------------------------------|--------------|--|-------|----|----|
| RFO | Loop center frequency resistor | 1% tolerance | | 5.23 | | kΩ |
| RLF1 | Loop filter resistor | 1% | | 6.04 | | kΩ |
| RLF2 | Loop filter resistor | 1% | | 100 | | kΩ |
| CLF1 | Loop filter capacitor | 5% | | 0.22 | | μF |
| RTR | Receive termination resistor | 1% | | 75 | | Ω |
| CTT | Transmit termination capacitor | 5% | | | 10 | pF |
| RTT | Transmit termination resistor | 1% | | 301 | | Ω |
| CPD | Peak detector capacitor | 5% | | 0.022 | | μF |

SSI 78P7200

DS-3 Line Interface

with Receive Equalizer

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

DIGITAL INPUTS AND OUTPUTS

(CMOS-compatible pins: $\overline{\text{L}}\text{OWSIG}$, RPOS , RNEG , RCLK , TPOS , TNEG , TCLK , LBO , $\overline{\text{OPT1}}$.) Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the largest absolute value.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------|---------------|------|-----|----------|---------------|
| VIL Input low voltage | | -0.3 | | 1.5 | V |
| VIH Input high voltage | | 3.5 | | Vcc +0.3 | V |
| IIL Input low current | VIL = 1.5V | -5.0 | | 5.0 | μA |
| IIH Input high current | VIH = 3.5V | -5.0 | | 5.0 | μA |
| VOL Output low voltage | IOL = 0.1 mA | | | 1.0 | V |
| VOH Output high voltage | IOH = -0.1 mA | 4.0 | | | V |

$\overline{\text{OPT2}}$ CHARACTERISTICS

| | | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------|-----|--|-----|---|
| VIL Input low voltage | IIL = 0.4 mA | | | 0.5 | V |
| VIH Input high voltage | | 2.0 | | | V |

RECEIVER

All of the measurements for the receiver are made with the following conditions unless otherwise stated:

1. The input signal is transformer coupled as shown in Figure 1.
2. RFO = 5.23 k Ω
3. The circuit is connected as in Figure 1.
4. The maximum cable length (type 728-A or RG-59B) to DSX-3 point is 450 ft.

| | | | | | |
|--|---|-------------|----------|------------|---------------|
| VIN Input signal voltage | Input AC-Coupled | ± 0.045 | | ± 1.20 | Vpk |
| RIN Input Resistance | Input at chip's common mode voltage | 15 | 20 | 30 | k Ω |
| VDTH Receive data detection threshold | Relative to peak amplitude for 22.37 MHz sinusoidal input | | 50 | | % |
| VLOW Receive data low signal threshold | Relative to peak amplitude for 22.37 MHz sinusoidal input | | ± 55 | | mV |
| VLOWT Receive data low signal delay | Relative to peak amplitude for 22.37 MHz sinusoidal input | | 500 | | μs |
| TRCF Receive clock period | | | 22.35 | | ns |
| TRC Receive clock pulse width | | | 12.24 | | ns |
| TRCPT Receive clock positive transition time | C _L = 15 pF | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TRCNT Receive clock negative transition time | C _L = 15 pF | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |

SSI 78P7200

DS-3 Line Interface with Receive Equalizer

RECEIVER (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------|---|--------|-------|------|-----------------|
| TRDP TRDN | Positive or negative receive data pulse width | | 22.35 | | ns |
| TRDPS TRDNS | Receive data set-up time | 5 | 11.18 | 13.7 | ns |
| TRDPH TRDNH | Receive data hold time | 5 | 11.18 | 13.7 | ns |
| | Receive input jitter tolerance high frequency | ±3.35 | | | ns |
| | | 0.3 | | | UIPP |
| | Receive input jitter tolerance low frequency | ±111.7 | | | ns |
| | | 10 | | | UIPP |
| KD | Clock Recovery Phase Detector Gain | 72 | 80 | 88 | μA/Rad |
| KO | Clock Recovery Phase Locked Oscillator Gain | 12 | 14.5 | 17 | Mrad/sec. -Volt |

TRANSMITTER

All of the measurements for the transmitter are made with the following conditions unless otherwise stated:

1. Transmit pulse characteristics are obtained using a line transformer which has the characteristics TBD.
2. The circuit is connected as in Figure 1.

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------|---|------------------------------------|-------|-------|------|------|
| TTCF | Transmit clock repetition period | | | 22.35 | | ns |
| TTC | Transmit clock pulse width | | | 11.18 | | ns |
| TTCNT | Transmit clock negative transition time | | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TTCPT | Transmit clock positive transition time | | | 4.5 | 6 | ns |
| TTPDS TTNDS | Transmit data set-up time | | 3.5 | 11.18 | | ns |
| TTPDH TTNDH | Transmit data hold time | | 3.5 | 11.18 | | ns |
| TTPL | Transmit positive line pulse width | Measured at transformer, LBO = Low | 10.62 | 11.18 | 12.0 | ns |

SSI 78P7200

DS-3 Line Interface with Receive Equalizer

TRANSMITTER (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------------------------------|-------|-------|------|------|
| TTNL Transmit negative line pulse width | Measured at transformer, LBO = Low | 10.62 | 11.18 | 12.0 | ns |
| Transmit line pulse waveshape | See Note | | | | |

Note: Characteristics are in accordance with ANSI T1.102 - 1987, Table 5 and Figure 8.

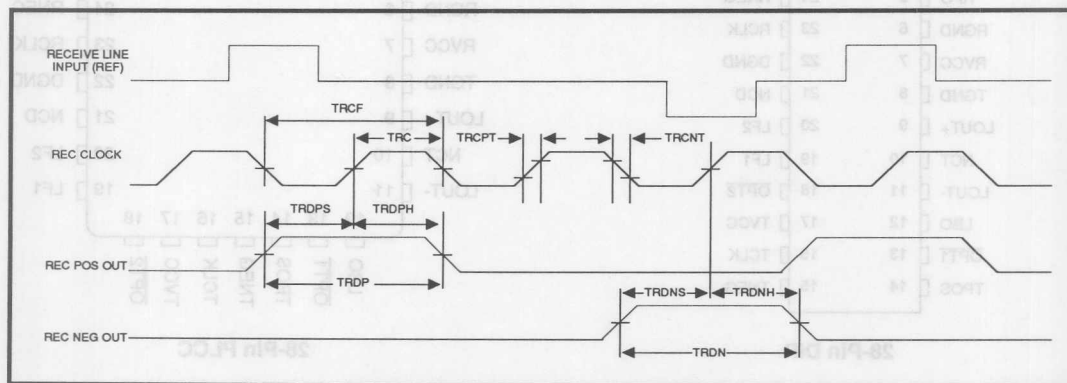


FIGURE 2: Receive Waveforms

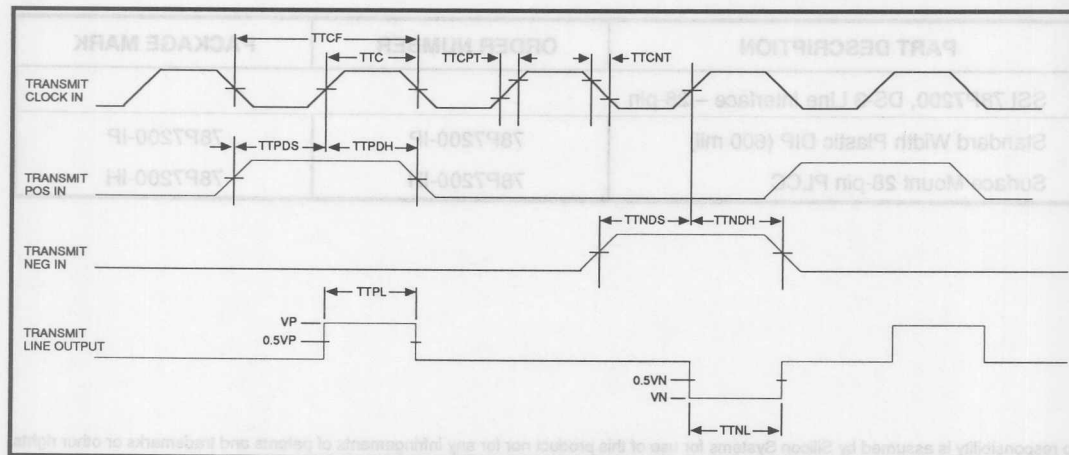


FIGURE 3: Transmit Waveforms

SSI 78P7200

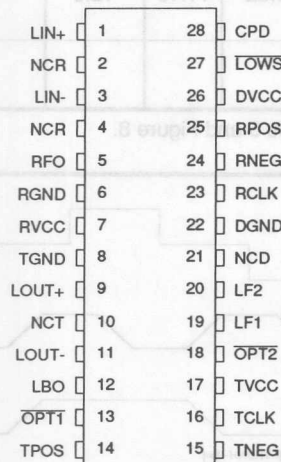
DS-3 Line Interface

with Receive Equalizer

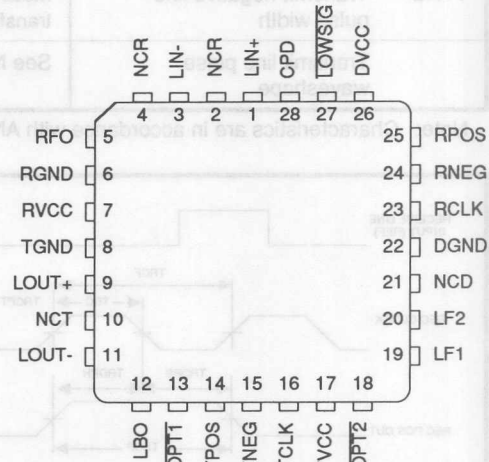
PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



28-Pin DIP



28-Pin PLCC

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|---|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 78P7200, DS-3 Line Interface – 28-pin | | |
| Standard Width Plastic DIP (600 mil) | 78P7200-IP | 78P7200-IP |
| Surface Mount 28-pin PLCC | 78P7200-IH | 78P7200-IH |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

Section **8**

LAN

8

Section

LAN

December 1992

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78Q902 twisted-pair Media Attachment Unit (TP-MAU) is designed to allow Ethernet connections to use the existing twisted-pair wiring plant through an Ethernet Attachment Unit Interface (AUI). The SSI 78Q902 provides the electrical interface between the AUI and the twisted-pair wire.

SSI 78Q902 functions include level-shifted data pass-through from one transmission media to another, collision detection, Signal Quality Error (SQE) testing and automatic correction of polarity reversal on the twisted pair input. It also includes LED drivers for transmit, receive, jabber, collision, reversed polarity detect and link functions.

The SSI 78Q902 is an advanced CMOS device and requires only a single 5-volt power supply.

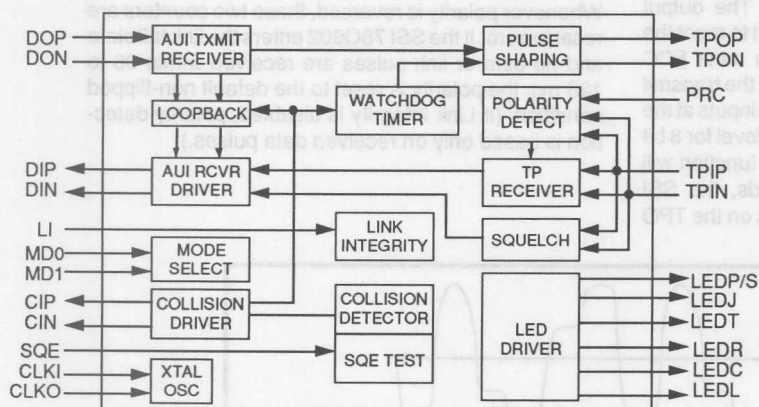
APPLICATIONS

- Computer/workstation interface boards
- LAN repeater
- External 10Base-T converter

FEATURES

- Meets or exceeds IEEE 802.3 standards for AUI and 10Base-T Interface
- Direct interface to AUI and RJ45 connectors
- Automatic AUI/RJ45 selection
- Internal predistortion generation
- Internal common mode voltage generation
- Jabber function
- Selectable link test, SQE test disable
- Twisted-pair receive polarity reverse detection and selectable polarity correction
- LED driver for transmit, receive, jabber, collision, link and reversed polarity indicators or for flashing status indicator
- Single +5V supply, CMOS technology
- Available in 28-pin DIP or PLCC

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM

| | | | |
|------|----|----|--------|
| DON | 1 | 28 | LEDC |
| DOP | 2 | 27 | LEDR |
| LEDJ | 3 | 26 | LEDT |
| LEDL | 4 | 25 | LEDP/S |
| PRC | 5 | 24 | TPOP |
| CLKO | 6 | 23 | GND2 |
| CLKI | 7 | 22 | VCC2 |
| GND1 | 8 | 21 | TPON |
| CIN | 9 | 20 | VCC1 |
| CIP | 10 | 19 | RBIAS |
| MD0 | 11 | 18 | MD1 |
| DIN | 12 | 17 | SQE |
| DIP | 13 | 16 | TPIP |
| LI | 14 | 15 | TPIN |

28-Pin DIP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media Attachment Unit

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78Q902 Media Attachment Unit (MAU) interfaces the Attachment Unit Interface (AUI) to the unshielded twisted pair cables, transferring data in both directions between the two. The AUI side of the interface comprises three circuits: Data Output (DO), Data Input (DI) and Collision Interface (CI). The twisted pair network side of the interface comprises two circuits: Twisted Pair Input (TPI) and Twisted Pair Output (TPO). In addition to the five basic circuits, the SSI 78Q902 contains an internal crystal oscillator, separate power and ground pins for analog and digital circuits, various logic controls and six LED drivers for status indications.

Functions are defined from the AUI side of the interface. The SSI 78Q902 Transmit function refers to data transmitted by the Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) through the AUI and MAU to the twisted pair network. The SSI 78Q902 Receive function refers to data received by the DTE through the MAU and AUI from the twisted pair network. In addition to basic transmit and receive functions, the SSI 78Q902 performs all required MAU functions defined by the IEEE 802.3 10Base-T specification such as collision detection, link integrity testing, Signal Quality Error (SQE), jabber control and loopback.

TRANSMIT FUNCTION

The SSI 78Q902 transfers Manchester encoded data from the AUI port of the DTE (the DO circuit) to the twisted pair network (the TPO circuit). The output signal on TPON and TPOP is pre-distorted to meet the 10 Base-T jitter template, and filtered to meet FCC requirements. The output waveform (after the transmit filter) is shown in Figure 1. If the differential inputs at the DO circuit fall below 75% of the threshold level for 8 bit times (typical), the SSI 78Q902 transmit function will enter the idle state. During idle periods, the SSI 78Q902 transmits link integrity test pulses on the TPO circuit.

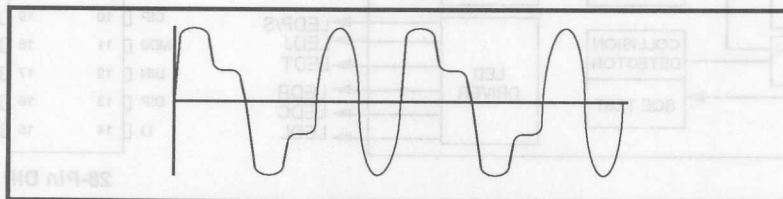


FIGURE 1: 78Q902 TPO Output Waveform

RECEIVE FUNCTION

The SSI 78Q902 receive function transfers serial data from the twisted pair network (the TPI circuit) to the DTE (over the DI circuit of the AUI). An internal squelch function discriminates noise from link test pulses and valid data streams. Only valid data streams activate the receive function. If the differential inputs at the TPI circuit fall below 75% of the threshold level (unsquelched) for 8 bit times (typical), the SSI 78Q902 receive function will enter the idle state. The TPI threshold can be reduced by approximately 3 dB to allow for longer loops in low-noise environments. The reduced threshold is selected when MD1 = 0 and MD0 = 1.

DIFFERENTIAL INPUT MODE

In the differential input mode, the transmit interface consists of TXP and TXN, PE, PDC, and the Transmit Enable input (TEN). Transmission starts when PE is high and TEN is low, and ends when either PE or TEN goes inactive. Predistortion control is provided by the PDC input.

POLARITY REVERSE FUNCTION

The SSI 78Q902 polarity reverse function uses both link pulses and end-of-frame data to determine polarity of the received signal. A reversed polarity condition is detected when eight opposite receive link pulses are detected without receipt of a link pulse with the expected polarity. Reversed polarity is also detected if four frames are received with a reversed start-of-idle. Whenever polarity is reversed, these two counters are reset to zero. If the SSI 78Q902 enters the link fail state and no data or link pulses are received within 96 to 128 ms, the polarity is reset to the default non-flipped condition. (If Link Integrity is disabled, polarity detection is based only on received data pulses.)

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media Attachment Unit

COLLISION DETECTION FUNCTION

The collision detection function operates on the twisted pair side of the interface. A collision is defined as the simultaneous presence of valid signals on both the TPI circuit and the TPO circuit. The SSI 78Q902 reports collisions to the AUI by sending a 10 MHz signal over the CI circuit. The collision report signal is output no more than 9 bit times (BT) after the chip detects a collision. If the TPI circuit becomes active while there is activity on the TPO circuit, the TPI data is passed to the DTE over the DI circuit, disabling the loopback. Figure 2 is a state diagram of the SSI 78Q902 collision detection function (refer to IEEE 802.3 10Base-T specification).

LOOPBACK FUNCTION

The SSI 78Q902 loopback function operates in conjunction with the transmit function. Data transmitted by the DTE is internally looped back within the SSI 78Q902 from the DO pins to the DI pins and returned to the DTE. The loopback function is disabled when a data collision occurs, clearing the DI circuit for the TPI data. Loopback is also disabled during link fail and jabber states.

SQE TEST FUNCTION

Figure 3 is a state diagram of the SQE Test function. The SQE test function is enabled when the SQE pin is tied high. When enabled, the SQE test sequence is transmitted to the controller after every successful transmission on the 10Base-T network. When a successful transmission is completed, the SSI 78Q902 transmits the SQE signal to the AUI over the CI circuit for $10 \text{ BT} \pm 5 \text{ BT}$. The SQE function can be disabled for hub applications by tying the SQE pin to ground.

JABBER CONTROL FUNCTION

Figure 4 is a state diagram of the SSI 78Q902 Jabber control function. The SSI 78Q902 on-chip watchdog timer prevents the DTE from locking into a continuous transmit mode. When a transmission exceeds the time limit, the Watchdog timer disables the transmit and loopback functions, and sends the SQE signal to the DTE over the CI circuit. Once the SSI 78Q902 is in the jabber state, the DO circuit must remain idle for a period of 491 to 525 ms before it will exit the jabber state.

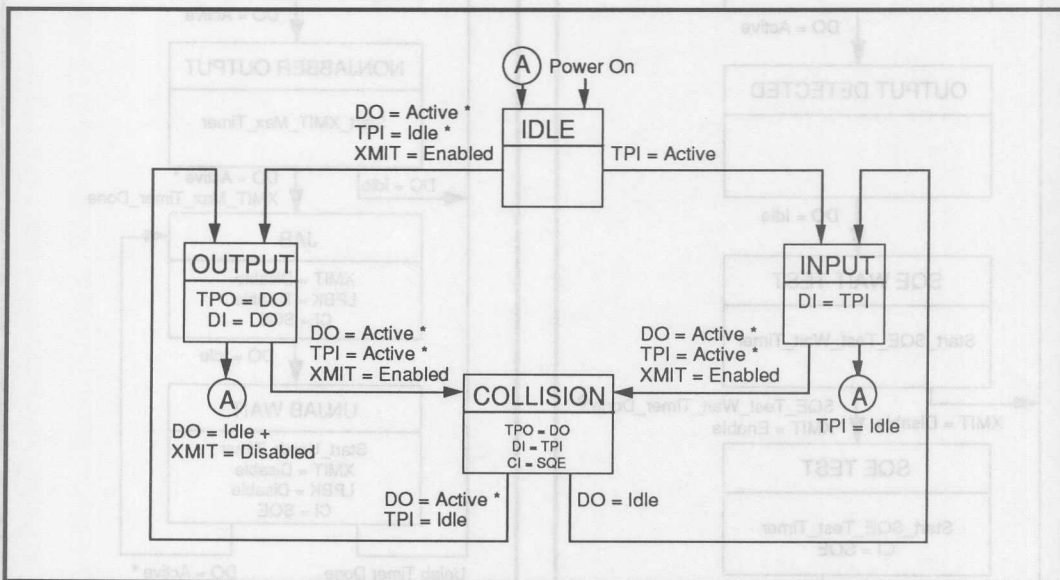


FIGURE 2: Collision Detection Function

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media Attachment Unit

LINK INTEGRITY TEST FUNCTION

Figure 5 is a state diagram of the SSI 78Q902 Link Integrity Test Function. The Link Integrity Test is used to determine the status of the receive side twisted pair cable. The link integrity test is enabled when the LI pin is tied high. When enabled, the receiver recognizes link integrity pulses which are transmitted in the absence of receive traffic. If no serial data stream or link integrity pulses are detected within 50 - 150 ms, the chip enters a link fail state and disables the transmit and loopback functions. The SSI 78Q902 ignores any link integrity pulse with intervals less than 2 - 7 ms. The SSI 78Q902 will remain in the link fail state until it detects either a serial data packet or two or more link integrity pulses.

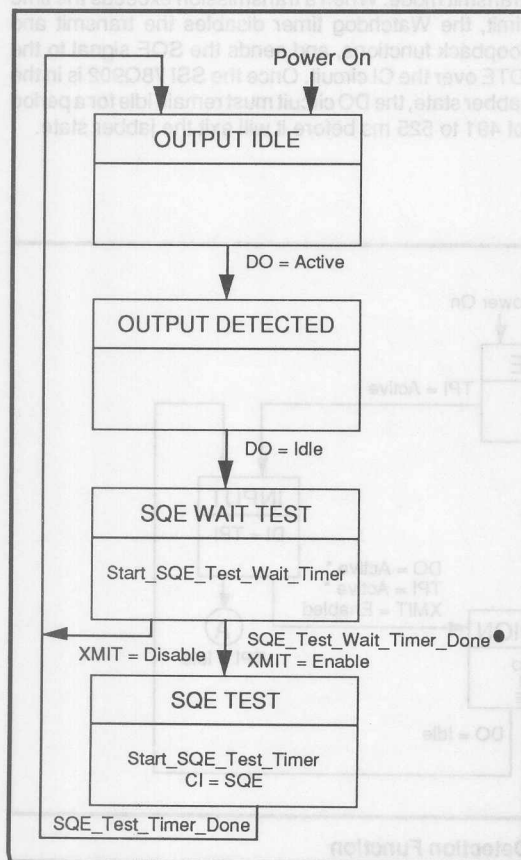


FIGURE 3: SQE Test Function

TEST MODE

The SSI 78Q902 Test mode is selected when a 2 to 2.5 MHz clock is input on the MD0 mode select pin. Test mode sets the internal counter chains to run at 1024 times their normal speed. The maximum transmit time, unjab time, Link Integrity timing and LED timing are reduced by a factor of 1024. During test operation, 10 MHz and 20 MHz signals are output on the PRC and SQE pins, respectively. When Test mode is selected, the SQE function cannot be disabled. In Test mode the PRC function can be disabled by the LI pin. Jabber can be disabled by setting MD1 = 0.

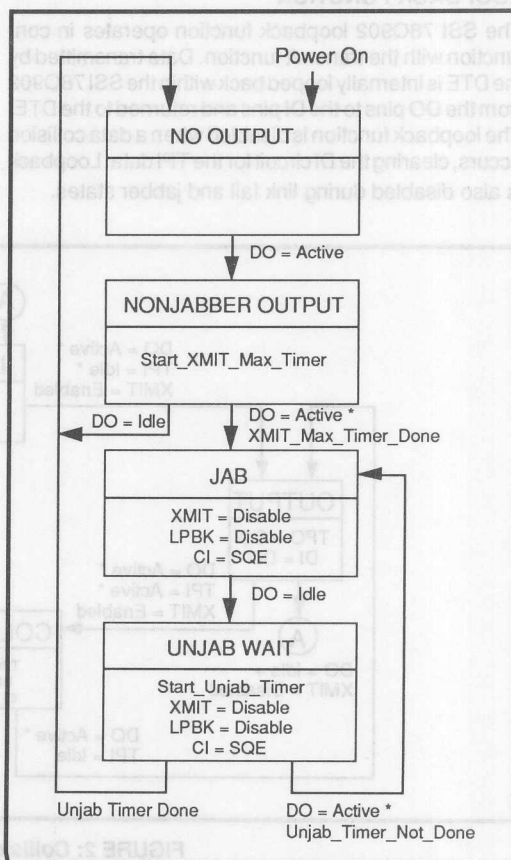


FIGURE 4: Jabber Control Function

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media Attachment Unit

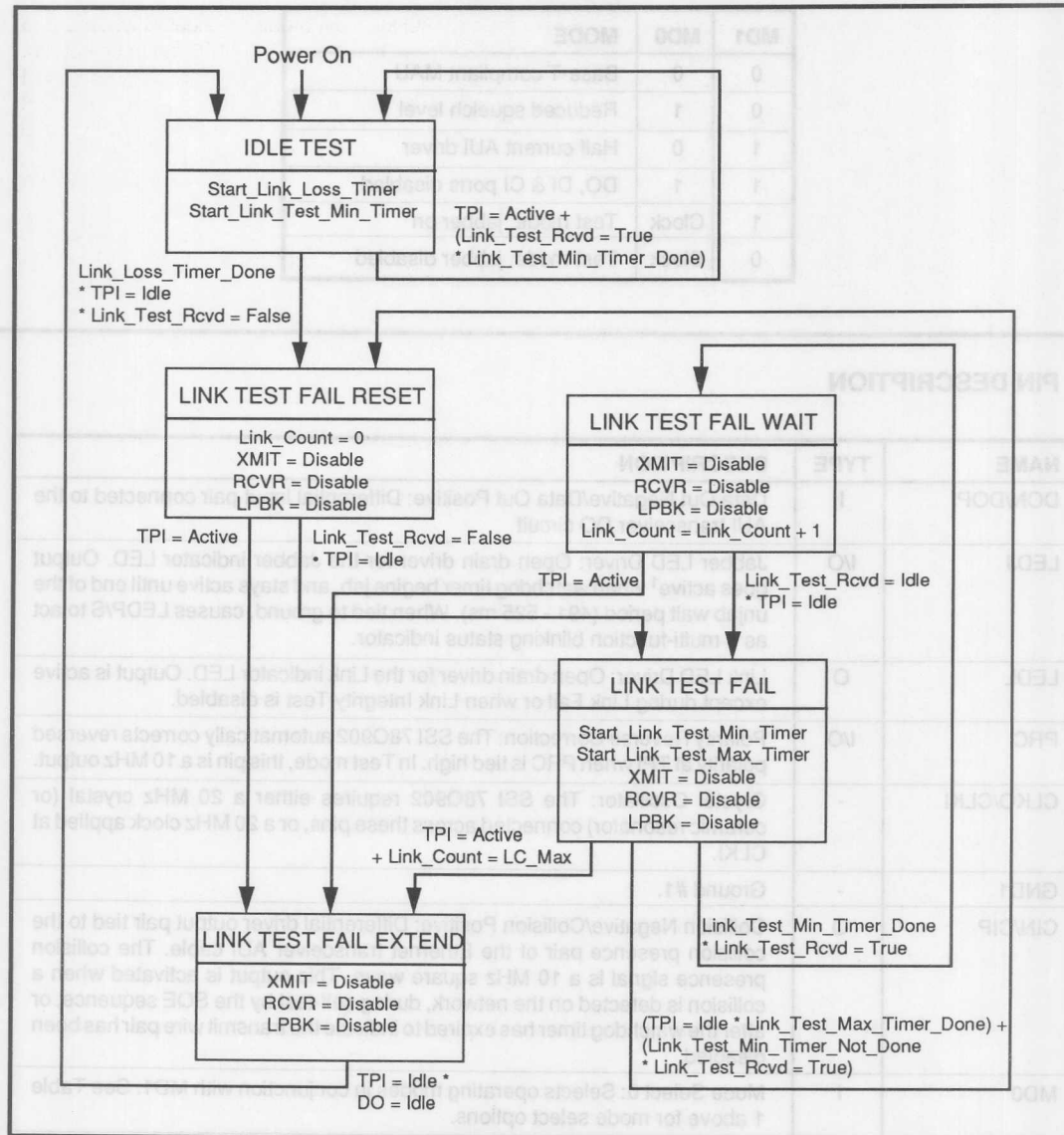


FIGURE 5: Link Integrity Test Function

SSI 78Q902
Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media
Attachment Unit

TABLE 1: Mode Select Options

| MD1 | MD0 | MODE |
|-----|-------|----------------------------|
| 0 | 0 | Base-T compliant MAU |
| 0 | 1 | Reduced squelch level |
| 1 | 0 | Half current AUI driver |
| 1 | 1 | DO, DI & CI ports disabled |
| 1 | Clock | Test mode, jabber on |
| 0 | Clock | Test mode, jabber disabled |

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|------|--|
| DON/DOP | I | Data Out Negative/Data Out Positive: Differential input pair connected to the AUI transceiver DO circuit |
| LEDJ | I/O | Jabber LED Driver: Open drain driver for the Jabber indicator LED. Output goes active ¹ when watchdog timer begins jab, and stays active until end of the unjab wait period (491 - 525 ms). When tied to ground, causes LEDP/S to act as a multi-function blinking status indicator. |
| LEDL | O | Link LED Driver: Open drain driver for the Link indicator LED. Output is active except during Link Fail or when Link Integrity Test is disabled. |
| PRC | I/O | Polarity Reverse Correction: The SSI 78Q902 automatically corrects reversed polarity at TPI when PRC is tied high. In Test mode, this pin is a 10 MHz output. |
| CLKO/CLKI | - | Crystal Oscillator: The SSI 78Q902 requires either a 20 MHz crystal (or ceramic resonator) connected across these pins, or a 20 MHz clock applied at CLKI. |
| GND1 | - | Ground #1. |
| CIN/CIP | O | Collision Negative/Collision Positive: Differential driver output pair tied to the collision presence pair of the Ethernet transceiver AUI cable. The collision presence signal is a 10 MHz square wave. This output is activated when a collision is detected on the network, during self-test by the SQE sequence, or after the watchdog timer has expired to indicate the transmit wire pair has been disabled. |
| MD0 | I | Mode Select 0: Selects operating modes in conjunction with MD1. See Table 1 above for mode select options. |
| DIN/DIP | O | Data In Negative/Data In Positive: Differential driver pair connected to the AUI transceiver DI circuit. |

¹ LED drivers pull low when active.

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media

Attachment Unit

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|------|--|
| LI | I | Link Integrity Test Enable: Link integrity testing is enabled when this pin is tied high. With link test enabled, the SSI 78Q902 sends the link integrity signal in the absence of transmit traffic. It also recognizes received link test pulses, indicating the receive wire pair is present in the absence of transmit traffic. |
| TPIN/TPIP | I | Twisted Pair Receive Inputs: Differential receive inputs from the twisted pair input filter. |
| SQE | I/O | Signal Quality Error Test Enable: SQE is enabled when this pin is tie high. When enabled, the SSI 78Q902 sends the signal quality error test sequence to the CI of the AUI cable after every successful transmission to the media. In Test mode, SQE becomes a 20 MHz output. |
| MD1 | I | Mode Select 1: Selects operating modes in conjunction with MD0, (see Table 1). MD1 clock input between 2.0 and 2.5 MHz enables Test mode. |
| RBIAS | - | Resistor Bias Control: Bias control pin for the operating circuit. Bias set from external resistor to ground. External resistor value = 12.4 kΩ (±1%). |
| VCC1 | I | Power Supply 1: +5V power supply. |
| TPON/TPOP | O | Twisted Pair Transmit Outputs: Transmit drivers to the twisted-pair output filter. The output is Manchester encoded and pre-distorted to meet the 10Base-T template. |
| VCC2 | I | Power Supply 2: +5V power supply. |
| GND2 | - | Ground #2. |
| LEDP/S | O | Polarity/Status LED Driver: Open drain LED driver. In normal mode, LEDP/S is active when reversed polarity is detected. If LEDJ is tied to ground, the output LEDP/S indicates multiple status conditions as shown in Figure 6. On solid = Normal, 1 Blink = Link Down, 2 Blinks = Jabber, 5 Blinks = Polarity Reversed |
| LEDT | O | Transmit LED Driver: Open drain driver for the Transmit indicator LED. Output is active during transmit. |
| LEDR | O | Receive LED Driver: Open drain driver for the Receive indicator LED. Output is active during receive. |
| LEDC | O | Collision LED Driver: Open drain driver for the Collision indicator LED. Output is active when a collision occurs. |

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media Attachment Unit

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING | UNIT |
|----------------------------|-------------|------|
| Supply Voltage, Vcc | -0.3 to 6 | V |
| Operating Temperature, Top | 0 to +70 | °C |
| Storage Temperature, Tst | -65 to +150 | °C |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-----------------------------------|------------|------|-----|------|------|
| Supply Voltage ¹ , Vcc | | 4.75 | 5.0 | 5.25 | V |
| Operating Temperature, Top | | 0 | - | 70 | °C |

¹Maximum voltage differential between VCC1 and VCC2 must not exceed 0.3V.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS (Ta = 0 to 70°C, Vcc = 5V ±5%)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM ¹ | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|------|------------------|-----|------|
| Jabber Timing | | | | | |
| Maximum transmit time ² | | 98.5 | - | 131 | ms |
| Unjab time ² | | 491 | - | 525 | ms |
| Time from Jabber to CS0 on CIP/CIN ³ | | 0 | - | 900 | ns |
| Link Integrity Timing | | | | | |
| Time link loss ² | | 65 | - | 66 | ms |
| Time between Link Integrity Pulses ² | | 9 | - | 11 | ms |
| Interval for valid receive Link Integrity Pulses ² | | 4.1 | - | 65 | ms |
| Collision Timing | | | | | |
| Simultaneous TPI/TPO to CS0 state on CIN/CIP | | 0 | - | 900 | ns |
| DO loopback to TPI on DI ³ | | 300 | - | 900 | ns |
| CS0 state delay after TPI/DO idle ³ | | - | - | 900 | ns |
| CS0 high pulse width | | 40 | - | 60 | ns |
| CS0 low pulse width | | 40 | - | 60 | ns |
| CS0 frequency | | - | 10 | - | MHz |

¹ Typical figures are at 25 °C and are for design aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

² Switching times reduced by a factor of 1024 during Test mode.

³ Parameter is guaranteed by design; not subject to production testing.

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media Attachment Unit

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS (Ta = 0 to 70°C, Vcc = 5V ±5%) (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM ¹ | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----|------------------|------|------|
| SQE Timing | | | | | |
| SQE signal duration | | 500 | - | 1500 | ns |
| Delay after last positive transition of DO | | 0.6 | - | 1.6 | μs |
| LED Timing | | | | | |
| LEDC, LEDT, LEDR on time ² | | 100 | - | - | ms |
| LEDP/S on time ² (See Figure 6) | | - | 164 | - | ms |
| LEDP/S period ² (See Figure 6) | | - | 328 | - | ms |
| General | | | | | |
| Receive start-up delay | | 0 | - | 500 | ns |
| Transmit start-up delay | | 0 | - | 200 | ns |
| Loopback start-up delay | | 0 | - | 500 | ns |

¹ Typical figures are at 25 °C and are for design aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

² Switching times reduced by a factor of 1024 during Test mode.

I/O ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Ta = 0 to 70 °C, Vcc = 5V ±5%)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM ¹ | MAX | UNIT |
|--|--|-----|------------------|------|------|
| Input low voltage ² | V _{IL} | - | - | 0.8 | V |
| Input high voltage ² | V _{IH} | 2.0 | - | - | V |
| Output low voltage (Open drain LED Driver ³) | V _{OL} R _{LOAD} = 2 kΩ | - | - | 0.13 | V |
| Supply current (Vcc1 = Vcc2 = 5.25V) | Line Idle | - | 60 | 69.3 | mA |
| | Line Active, transmitting all ones | - | 125 | 140 | mA |
| Input leakage current ⁴ | I _{IL} Input between VCC and GND | - | ±1 | ±10 | μA |
| Tristate leakage current | I _{TS} Output between VCC and GND | - | ±1 | ±10 | μA |

¹ Typical figures are at 25°C and are for desing aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

² MD0, MD1, SQE, PRC and LI pins. MD1 clock (test mode) must be CMOS level input.

³ LED Drivers can sink up to 10 mA of drive current.

⁴ Not including TPIN, TPIP, DOP or DON.

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media Attachment Unit

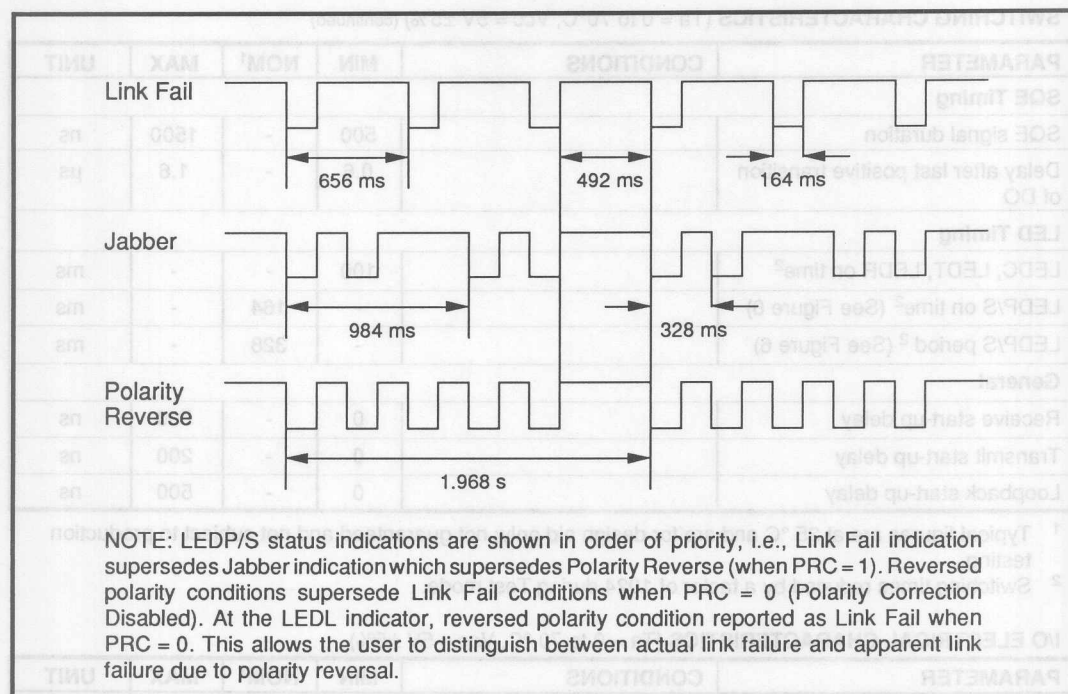


FIGURE 6: LEDP/S Status Indication Timing

AUI ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Ta = 0 to 70°C, Vcc = 5V ±5%)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM ¹ | MAX | UNIT |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|------------------|-------|------|
| Input low current | I _{IL} | - | - | -700 | μA |
| Input high current | I _{IH} | - | - | 500 | μA |
| Differential output voltage | V _{OD} | ±550 | - | ±1200 | mV |
| Differential squelch threshold | V _{DS} | - | 220 | - | mV |
| Receive input impedance | R _Z | Between DOP and DON | 20 | - | kΩ |

¹ Typical figures are at 25°C and are for design aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media

Attachment Unit

TRANSMIT CHARACTERISTICS (Ta = 0 to 70°C, Vcc = 5V ±5%)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM ¹ | MAX | UNIT |
|--|--|------|------------------|------|------|
| Transmit output impedance Z _{OUT} | | - | 5 | - | Ω |
| Peak differential output voltage V _{OD} | Load = 200Ω at TPOP and TPON | ±4.5 | - | ±5.2 | V |
| Transmit timing jitter addition ² | After Tx filter, 0 line length | - | - | ±8 | ns |
| Transmit timing jitter addition ² | After Tx filter, line model as shown in IEEE 802.3 standard for 10Base-T | - | - | ±3.5 | ns |

RECEIVE CHARACTERISTICS (Ta = 0 to 70°C, Vcc = 5V ±5%)

| | | | | | |
|--|-------------------|---|-----|-----|----|
| Receive input impedance Z _{IN} | Between TPIP/TPIN | - | 20 | - | kΩ |
| Differential squelch threshold V _{DS} | | - | 420 | - | mV |
| Reduced squelch threshold V _{DSR} | | - | 300 | - | mV |
| Receive timing jitter ² | | - | - | 1.5 | ns |

¹ Typical figures are at 25°C and are for design aid only; not guaranteed and not subject to production testing.

² Parameter is guaranteed by design; not subject to production testing.

APPLICATION INFORMATION

EXTERNAL MAU

Figure 7 shows the SSI 78Q902 in a typical external MAU application, interfacing between an AUI and the RJ45 connectors of the twisted pair network. A 20 MHz crystal (or ceramic resonator) connected across CLKI and CLKO provides the required clock signal. Transmit and receive filters are required in the TPO and TPI circuits. Details of the transmit and receive filters are shown in Figures 8 and 9, respectively. (Differential filters are also recommended.)

INTERNAL MAU

Figure 10 shows an internal MAU application which takes advantage of the SSI 78Q902's unique AUI/10Base-T switching feature to select either the D-connector (AUI) or the RJ45 connector (10Base-T). No termination resistors are used on the SSI 78Q902

side of the AUI interface to prevent impedance mismatch with the drop cable. The half current drive mode is used to maintain the same voltage levels in the absence of termination resistors. This application uses capacitive coupling instead of transformer coupling. MD1 is tied high so MD0 functions as the mode control switch.

When MD0 is low, the half current drive mode is selected. When MD0 is high, the SSI 78Q902 is effectively removed from the circuit. The 902 AUI ports (DO, DI and CI) are disabled isolating the SSI 78Q902 from the AUI. The SSI 78Q902 DI and CI ports go to a high impedance state and the DO port is ignored.

To implement an auto-select function, LEDL can be tied to MD0. This activates the 902/AUI interface when the TP link is active (data or link integrity pulses) and disables it when the link is inactive.

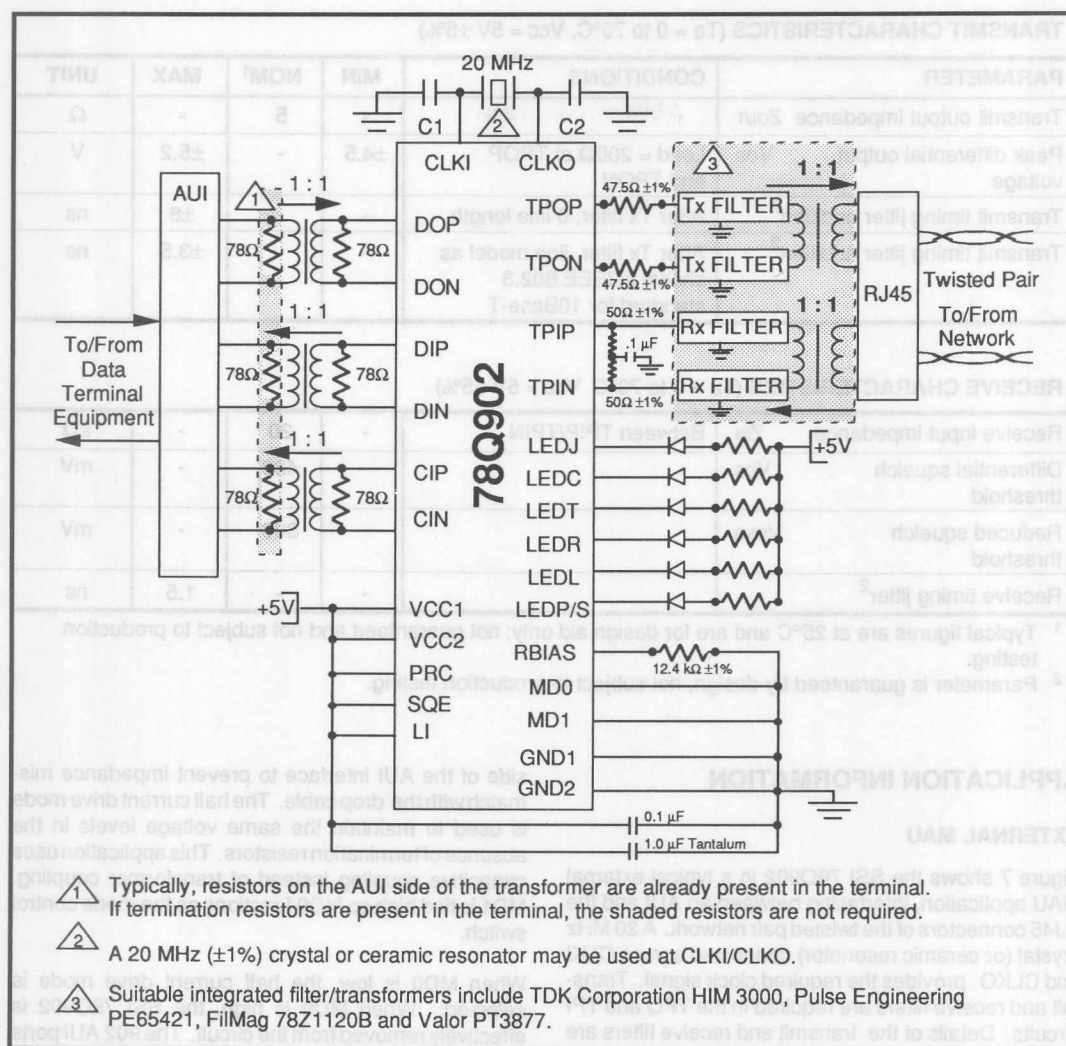


FIGURE 7: SSI 78Q902 External MAU Application Diagram

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media Attachment Unit

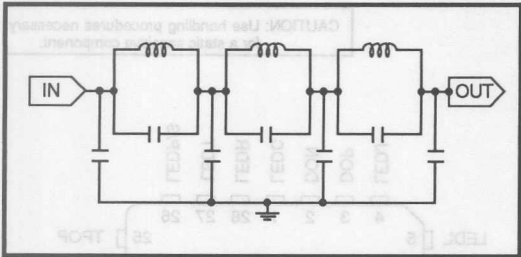


FIGURE 8: Transmit Filter Diagram

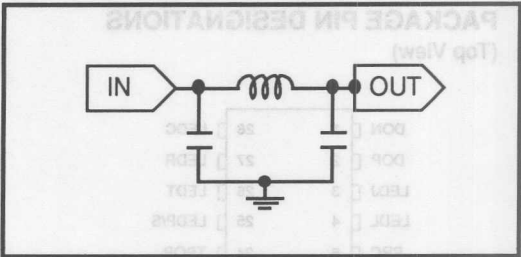


FIGURE 9: Receive Filter Diagram

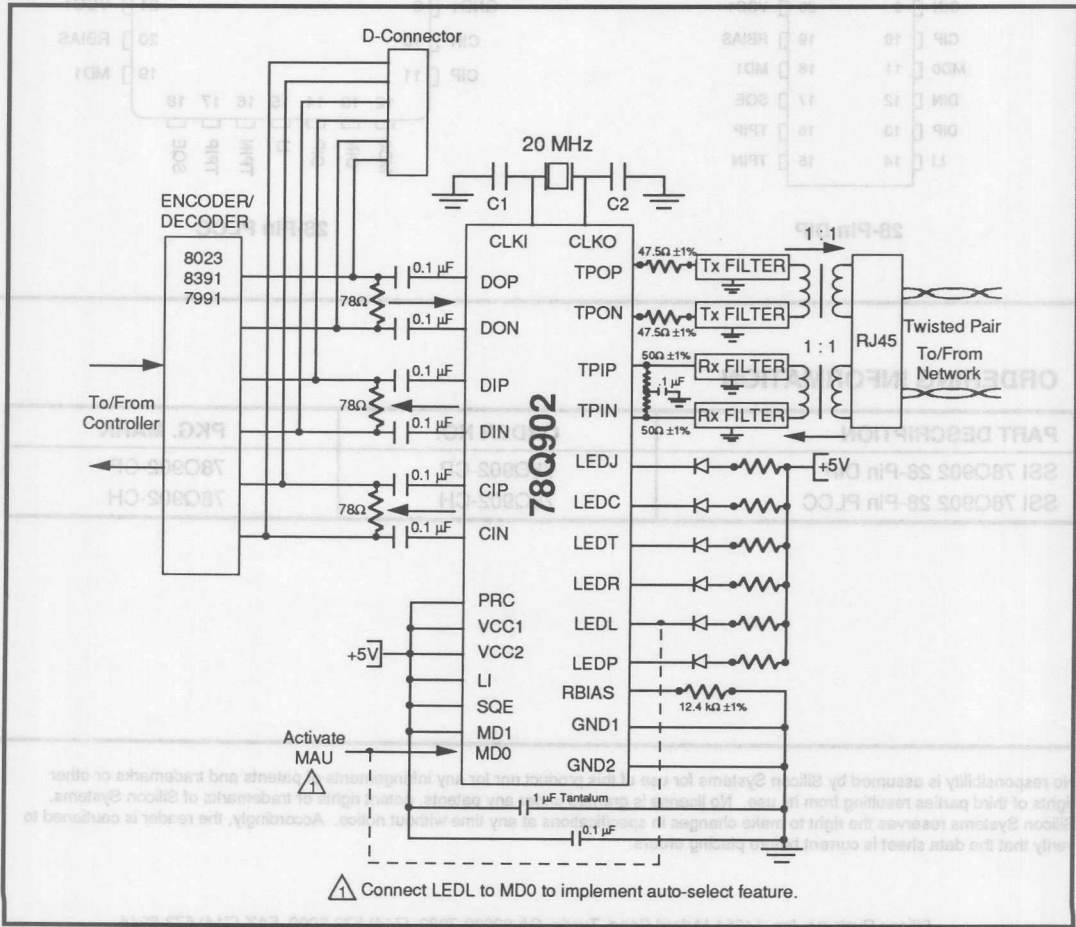


FIGURE 10: SSI 78Q902 Internal MAU Application Diagram

SSI 78Q902

Ethernet Twisted-Pair Media Attachment Unit

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

| | | | |
|------|----|----|--------|
| DON | 1 | 28 | LEDC |
| DOP | 2 | 27 | LEDR |
| LEDJ | 3 | 26 | LEDT |
| LEDL | 4 | 25 | LEDP/S |
| PRC | 5 | 24 | TPOP |
| CLKO | 6 | 23 | GND2 |
| CLKI | 7 | 22 | VCC2 |
| GND1 | 8 | 21 | TPON |
| CIN | 9 | 20 | VCC1 |
| CIP | 10 | 19 | RBIAS |
| MD0 | 11 | 18 | MD1 |
| DIN | 12 | 17 | SQE |
| DIP | 13 | 16 | TPIP |
| LI | 14 | 15 | TPIN |

28-Pin DIP

| | | | | | | | |
|-------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| LEDJ | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 28 | 27 | 26 |
| LEDL | 5 | | | | | | 25 |
| PRC | 6 | | | | | | 24 |
| CLKO | 7 | | | | | | 23 |
| CLKI | 8 | | | | | | 22 |
| GND1 | 9 | | | | | | 21 |
| CIN | 10 | | | | | | 20 |
| CIP | 11 | | | | | | 19 |
| MD0 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 |
| DIN | | | | | | | |
| DIP | | | | | | | |
| LI | | | | | | | |
| TPIN | | | | | | | |
| TPIP | | | | | | | |
| SQE | | | | | | | |
| TPOP | | | | | | | |
| GND2 | | | | | | | |
| VCC2 | | | | | | | |
| TPON | | | | | | | |
| VCC1 | | | | | | | |
| RBIAS | | | | | | | |
| MD1 | | | | | | | |

28-Pin PLCC

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| SSI 78Q902 28-Pin DIP | 78Q902-CP | 78Q902-CP |
| SSI 78Q902 28-Pin PLCC | 78Q902-CH | 78Q902-CH |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78Q8330 is a line transceiver for IEEE 802.3 coaxial cable applications. The SSI 78Q8330 is compliant both with thin cable (10Base2) requirements and thick cable (10Base5) operation.

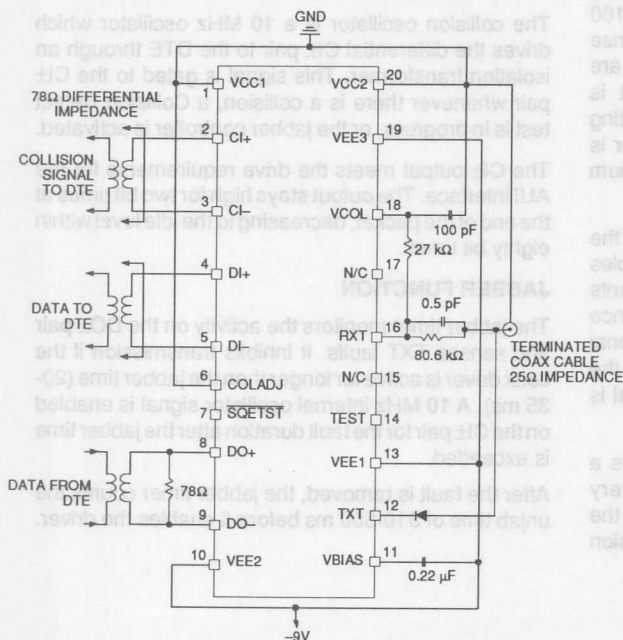
This transceiver provides the interface between the single-ended coaxial cable signals and the Manchester-encoded differential logic signals. Primary functional blocks include the receiver, transmitter, collision detection and jabber timer. This IC may be used in either internal or external MAU environments.

The SSI 78Q8330 design is optimized for low power consumption. Typical supply current while transmitting is 96 mA, and only 56 mA when not transmitting. The low power consumption coupled with 20-pin PLCC or 64-lead TQFP packaging make this product ideal for portable computer applications.

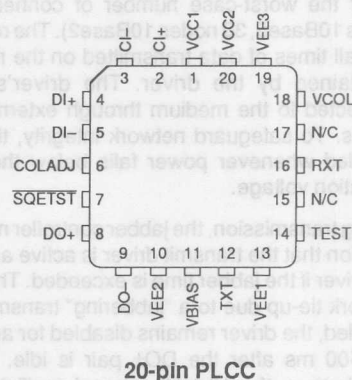
FEATURES

- Compliant with both 10Base2 and 10Base5 requirements
- Innovative design minimizes power consumption - ideal for portable computer applications
- Integrated jabber timer function
- Minimal external component count
- For internal or external MAU applications
- Available in 20-pin PLCC, DIP, or 64-lead TQFP

SSI 78Q8330 CONNECTION DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



20-pin PLCC

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78Q8330 IEEE-802.3/Ethernet/Cheaperpet Transceiver consists of four sections: 1) Transmit - receives signals from DTE and sends it to the coaxial medium, 2) Receive - obtains data from medium and sends it to DTE, 3) Collision Detect - indicates to DTE any collision on the medium, and 4) Jabber - guards medium from DTE transmissions that are excessive in length.

TRANSMITTER

The SSI 78Q8330 receives differential signals from the DTE over the AUI interface.

Differential data is received through a squelch network that rejects signals with pulse widths less than 7 ns, or with levels more positive than -175 mV peak. Signals with pulse widths wider than 50 ns and levels more negative than -275 mV peak from the DTE are guaranteed to be enabled. This minimizes false starts due to noise and ensures no valid packets are missed.

The coax driver provides the driving capability to ensure adequate signal level at the end of the maximum length network segment (500m 10Base5, 185m 10Base2) under the worst-case number of connections (100 nodes 10Base5, 30 nodes 10Base2). The required rise and fall times of data transmitted on the network are maintained by the driver. The driver's output is connected to the medium through external isolating diodes. To safeguard network integrity, the driver is disabled whenever power falls below the minimum operation voltage.

During transmission, the jabber controller monitors the duration that the transmit driver is active and disables the driver if the jabber time is exceeded. This prevents network tie-up due to a "jabbering" transmitter. Once disabled, the driver remains disabled for an additional 310-500 ms after the DO_{\pm} pair is idle. During the disable time, the 10 MHz internal oscillator signal is sent on the CI_{\pm} pair to the DTE.

When \overline{SQETST} is tied to VEE, the IC generates a Collision Detect message at the end of every transmission. This signal is a self-test indication to the DTE that the Medium Attachment Unit (MAU) collision pair is operational.

RECEIVE AND CARRIER DETECT

Received signals are acquired from the coax tap through a high-impedance resistive divider. A high input-impedance (low capacitance, high bandwidth) DC-coupled input amplifier in the chip receives the signal. The received signal is internally AC coupled and then sliced. The carrier detector compares received signals to a reference. Signals meeting carrier squelch criteria are passed to the differential line driver within five bit times from the start of packet.

Received data is transmitted from the DI_{\pm} pair through an isolation transformer of the AUI interface. Following the last transition in a packet, the DI_{\pm} pair is held high for two bit times and then decreases to the idle level within eighty bit times.

COLLISION DETECT

The SSI 78Q8330 detects collisions if two or more stations are transmitting on the network.

The average DC level of received signals is compared against the collision threshold reference. If the level is more negative than the reference, an enable signal is generated to the CI_{\pm} pair.

The collision oscillator is a 10 MHz oscillator which drives the differential CI_{\pm} pair to the DTE through an isolation transformer. This signal is gated to the CI_{\pm} pair whenever there is a collision, a Collision Detect test is in progress, or the jabber controller is activated.

The CI_{\pm} output meets the drive requirements for the AUI interface. The output stays high for two bit times at the end of the packet, decreasing to the idle level within eighty bit times.

JABBER FUNCTION

The jabber timer monitors the activity on the DO_{\pm} pair and senses TXT faults. It inhibits transmission if the coax driver is active for longer than the jabber time (20-35 ms). A 10 MHz internal oscillator signal is enabled on the CI_{\pm} pair for the fault duration after the jabber time is exceeded.

After the fault is removed, the jabber timer counts the unjab time of 310-500 ms before it enables the driver.

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

SQE TEST

A Signal Quality Error (SQE) test will occur at the end of every transmission if the SQETST pin is tied to VEE. An SQE test signal is a 10 MHz signal gated to the CI± pair. The SQE test ensures that the twisted pair assigned for collision notification to the DTE is intact and

operational. The SQE test starts eight bit times after the last transition of the transmitted signal and lasts for a duration of eight bit times.

The SQE test can be disabled by connecting the SQETST pin to GND.

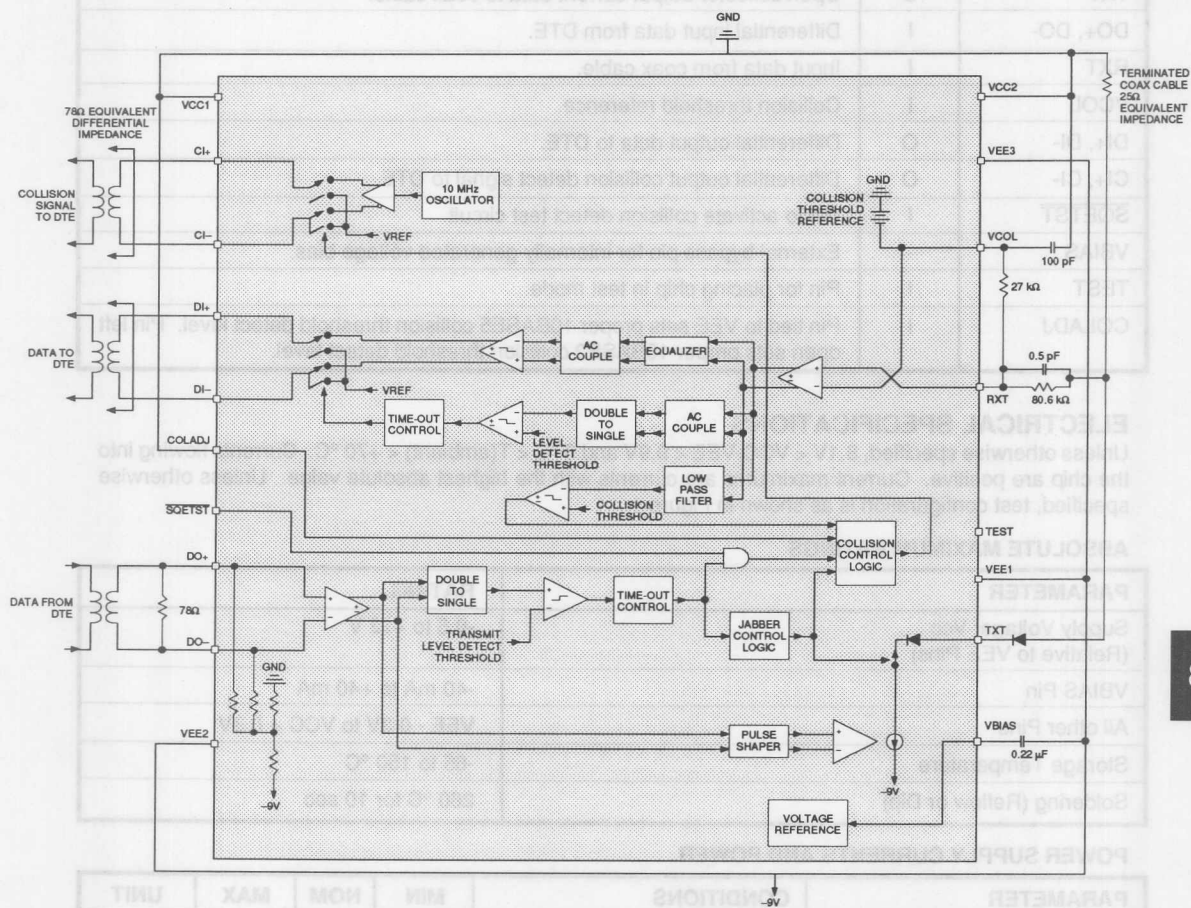


FIGURE 1 : Functional Diagram

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|------|---|
| VCC1, VCC2 | - | Positive supply to chip. Tied to external ground. |
| VEE1, VEE2, VEE3 | - | Negative supply to chip. Tied to external -9 volts. |
| TXT | O | Open collector output current data to coax cable. |
| DO+, DO- | I | Differential input data from DTE. |
| RXT | I | Input data from coax cable. |
| VCOL | I | Collision threshold reference. |
| DI+, DI- | O | Differential output data to DTE. |
| CI+, CI- | O | Differential output collision detect signal to DTE. |
| SQETST | I | Pin to activate collision detect test circuit. |
| VBIAS | - | External bypass pin for internally generated voltage bias. |
| TEST | I | Pin for placing chip in test mode. |
| COLADJ | I | Pin tied to VEE sets proper 10BASE5 collision threshold detect level. Pin left open sets proper 10BASE2 collision threshold detect level. |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Unless otherwise specified, $8.1V < VCC-VEE < 9.9V$ and $0^{\circ}C < T(\text{ambient}) < +70^{\circ}C$. Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the highest absolute value. Unless otherwise specified, test configuration is as shown in Figure 1.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|--------------------------|
| Supply Voltage; Vcc (Relative to VEE Pins) | -0.5 to +12 V |
| VBIAS Pin | -40 mA to +40 mA |
| All other Pins | VEE - 0.3V to VCC + 0.3V |
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150 °C |
| Soldering (Reflow or Dip) | 260 °C for 10 sec |

POWER SUPPLY CURRENTS AND POWER

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------------|--|-----|-----|-----|------|
| VCC Supply Current | Includes current from VCC1, VCC2, TXT pins | | | | |
| Transmitter active | | | 96 | 121 | mA |
| Transmitter inactive | | | 56 | 74 | mA |

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

TTL COMPATIBLE INPUTS: \overline{SQETST} Pin

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|-----|---------|---------------|
| Input Low Voltage V_{il} | | VEE-0.3 | | VEE+0.8 | V |
| Input High Voltage V_{ih} | | VEE+2.0 or pin open | | VCC+0.3 | V |
| Input Low Current | $V_{il} = VEE + 0.4 \text{ V}$ | +0.05 | | -0.4 | mA |
| Input High Current | $V_{ih} = VEE + 2.4 \text{ V}$ | | | 100 | μA |

TRANSMITTER TO COAX

| | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------|---|---------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| Input Capacitance TXT Pin | CTXT | $f = 10 \text{ MHz}$ Transmitter inactive | | | | |
| | | $8.1 < VCC - VEE < 9.9 \text{ V}$ | | | 9.5 | pF |
| | | $0 < VCC - VEE < 8.1 \text{ V}$ | | | 11.0 | pF |
| Input Resistance TXT Pin | RTXT | $V(\text{TXT}) = VCC - 4 \text{ V}$, Transmitter inactive | 1000 | | | k Ω |
| Differential Input Impedance DO+ to DO- Pins | ZDO | $f = 10 \text{ MHz}$ | 1.6 | | 5.6 | k Ω |
| DO+/- Common Mode Input Resistance | Ricm | DO+ tied to DO- | 1.5 | | 2.8 | k Ω |
| DO+/- Common Mode Output Voltage | Vicm | DO+/- open | VEE+3.0 | | VEE+5.0 | V |
| DO+/- Input Current | Iidl & Iidh | $VEE < V(\text{DO+/-}) < VCC$, DO+ tied to DO- | -5 | | 7 | mA |
| Output Leakage Current on TXT Pin | IBTXT | Transmitter Inactive | -0.5 | | +5.0 | μA |
| TXT Output High Voltage | VH | 25 Ω TXT pin to VCC | VCC- .425 | | VCC | V |
| TXT Output Low Voltage | VL | 25 Ω TXT pin to VCC | VCC- 2.200 | | VCC- 1.625 | V |
| TXT Differential Output Voltage | VTXTHL | $VTXTHL = V_H - V_L$, 25 Ω TXT pin to VCC | 1.400 | | 2.200 | V |
| TXT Average Output Voltage | VTXTOFF | $VTXTOFF = (V_H + V_L)/2$ 25 Ω TXT pin to VCC | VCC -1.125 | VCC -1.00 | VCC -.925 | V |
| Differential Input Squelch Threshold | VIDC | $V(\text{DO+}) - V(\text{DO-})$ | 175 | 225 | 275 | mVp |
| TXT Output Current Rise/Fall Time | tTXTR, tTXTF | $f = 5 \text{ and } 10 \text{ MHz}$ | 20 | | 30 | ns |

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

TRANSMITTER TO COAX (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|--|------|------|------|---------|
| Difference In Driver Rise vs. Fall Times | tTDRF $ t_{TXTR} - t_{TXTF} $ f = 5 and 10 MHz | | 0.5 | 2 | ns |
| Transmitter Turn On Delay | tTON f = 10 MHz 1 Bit = 100 ns | | | 2 | Bits |
| DO+/- Input Pulse Width to Stay On | tPWSN | | | 105 | ns |
| DO+/- Input Pulse Width to Turn Off | tPWOFF | 200 | | | ns |
| Transmit Static Delay | tTSDR, tTSDF f = 10 MHz | | 36 | 50 | ns |
| Transmit Output Current Data | tTSKEW $t_{TSKEW} = t_{TSDR} - t_{TSDF}$ f = 5 and 10 MHz | -2.0 | | +2.0 | ns |
| Jabber Control Time | tJCT | 20 | 30 | 35 | ms |
| Jabber Reset Time | tJRT | 0.31 | 0.42 | 0.50 | s |
| Jabber Recovery Time | tJREC | 1.0 | | | μ s |
| TXT Output Current Pulse Harmonic Content | f2, f3HA f = 10 MHz, on specified board with 47 pF capacitor between TXT and GND 2nd, 3rd, Harmonics | | | -20 | dB |
| | f4, f5HA 4th, 5th Harmonics | | | -30 | dB |
| | f6, f7HA 6th, 7th Harmonics | | | -40 | dB |
| | f8HA All Higher Harmonics | | | -50 | dB |

RECEIVER FROM COAX

| | | | | | | |
|---|-------|---|------|-----|------|------------|
| Input Capacitance RXT Pin | CRXT | 20-pin PLCC | | 1.3 | 1.85 | pF |
| Input Resistance RXT Pin | RRXT | $V(RXT) = VCC - 1.5V$ | 120 | | | k Ω |
| Input Bias Current RXT Pin | IBRXT | | -1.5 | | +20 | μ A |
| Receiver Carrier Sense Threshold (measured at coax) | VCAT1 | $VCAT1 = VCC - V(RXTL)$, f = 5 MHz, $V(RXTH) = VCC$ | 400 | | 800 | mVp |

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

RECEIVER FROM COAX (continued)

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|--------------|---|-----|-----|------|------|
| Receiver Hysteresis (measured at coax) | VCAT2 | $VCAT2 = [V(RXTH) - V(RXTL)]/2$ $f = 5 \text{ MHz}$, $[V(RXTH) + V(RXTL)]/2 = VCC - 1V$ | | | 100 | mVp |
| Receiver Turn-Off Holding Time | tROFF | | 200 | | 1000 | ns |
| Receiver Static Delay | tRSDR, tRSDF | $f = 10 \text{ MHz}$ | | 20 | 50 | ns |
| Receiver Turn-On Delay | tRON | $f = 10 \text{ MHz}$ 1 Bit = 100 ns $VLAT > VCC - 600 \text{ mV}$ | | 2 | 5 | Bits |
| Receiver Output Data Symmetry | tRSKEW | $tRSKEW = tRSDR - tRSDF$ $f = 5 \text{ and } 10 \text{ MHz}$, after first 2 μs from the input beginning packet | -2 | | 2 | ns |

COLLISION DETECT CIRCUIT

With \overline{SQETST} set high the collision detect output is enabled when a collision is detected on the coax and for jabber timeout. With \overline{SQETST} set low the collision detect output is also enabled at the end of every transmission to the coax.

| | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|------------|-----|------------|---------|
| Collision Sense Threshold | VCOT | COLADJ pin to VEE (for 10Base5) | VCC -1.492 | | VCC -1.629 | V |
| | | COLADJ pin open (for 10Base2) | VCC -1.404 | | VCC -1.581 | V |
| Collision Output Turn-On Delay | tCON | | | 600 | 900 | ns |
| Collision Reset Time | tCOFF | | | | 2000 | ns |
| Collision Output Frequency | fCL | $fCL = 1/(Tcl + Tch)$ | 8.5 | | 11.5 | MHz |
| Collision Output Duty Cycle | tCOL | $tCOL = \frac{tch}{tch + tcl}$ | 40 | | 60 | % |
| Collision Detect Test Delay Time | tSTD | | 0.6 | | 1.5 | μs |
| Collision Detect Test Length | tSTL | 1 Bit = 100 ns | 5 | 8 | 15 | Bits |
| Collision Detect Test Holding Time | tHLD | | 200 | | 1000 | ns |

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

DI+/- AND CI+/- OUTPUT DRIVERS

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|---------|--|---------------|---------|----------------|------|
| Differential Output Voltage | VODC | $V(CI+) - V(CI-)$, $V(DI+) - V(DI-)$, $RI = 78 \Omega$ | ± 550 | | ± 850 | mVp |
| CI+/- Common Mode Output Voltage | Vcmt1 | Output active or idle, $VBIAS = (VCC + VEE)/2 \pm 5\%$ | VBIAS -1.7 | | VBIAS - 0.5 | V |
| DI+/- Common Mode Output Voltage | Vcmt2 | Output active or idle | VCC-1.7 | | VCC-0.5 | V |
| DI+/- or CI+/- Differential Output Voltage Imbalance | Vodi | Output active | | ± 5 | ± 20 | mV |
| DI+/- or CI+/- Differential Output Idle Voltage | Vod Off | Output idle | -20 | | +20 | mV |
| DI+/- or CI+/- Rise Time | tRR | 20-80%, $RI = 78$ | | | 5 | ns |
| DI+/- or CI+/- Fall Time | tRF | 80-20%, $RI = 78$ | | | 5 | ns |

TEST MODE

The following test modes are entered by setting the voltage of the TEST pin:

1. Normal mode
2. tJRT and tJCT reduced by factor of 32
3. Activate transmitter and receiver, deactivate jabber and collision detect

| TEST Pin Voltage | Mode 1 | Mode 2 | Mode 3 | Pin Open |
|------------------|--------|---------|--------|----------|
| | | VEE+2.5 | VEE | |
| | | | | VEE+3.5 |
| | | | | VEE+0.2 |

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

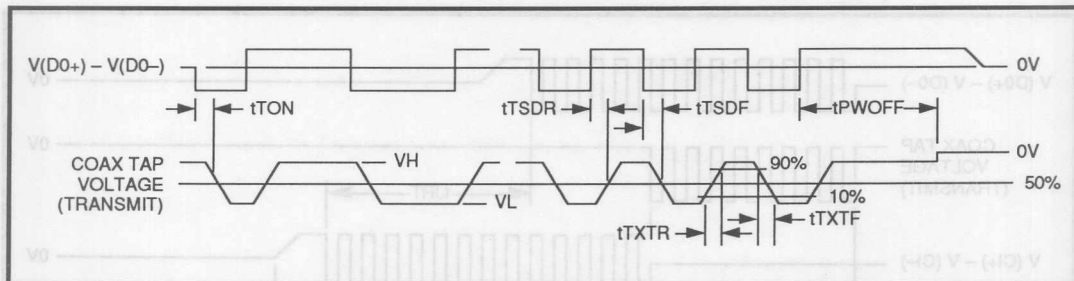


FIGURE 2 : Transmit Function

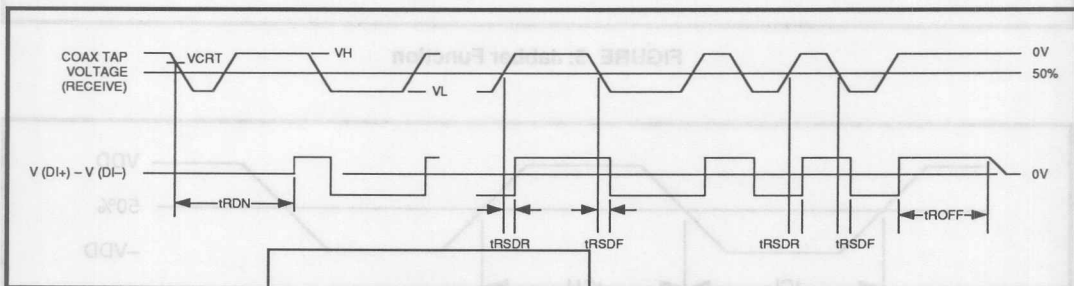


FIGURE 3: Receive Function

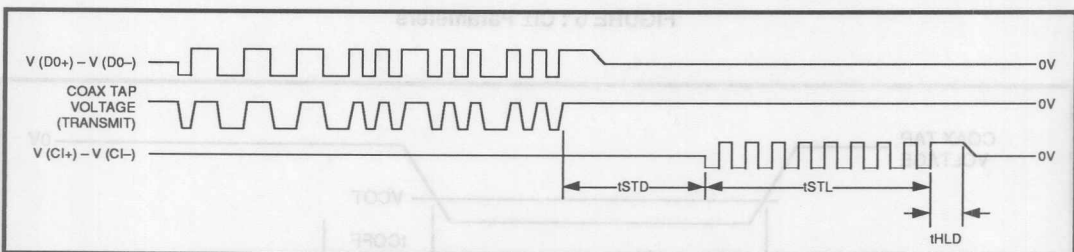


FIGURE 4: SQE Test

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

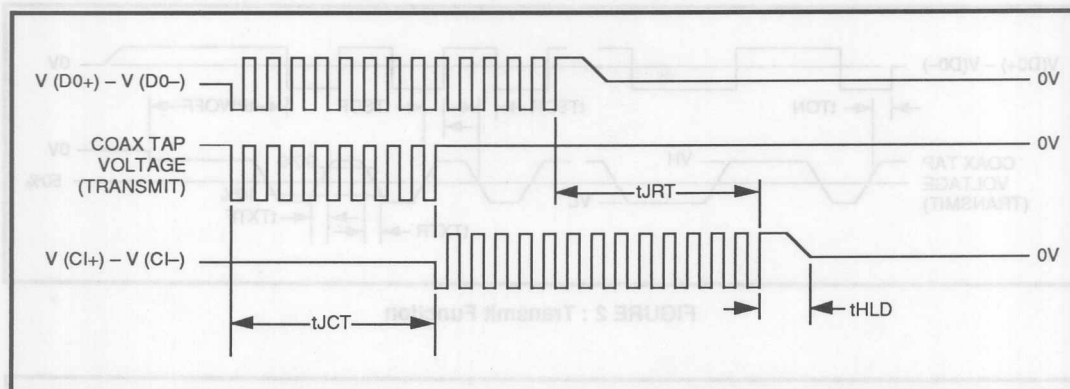


FIGURE 5: Jabber Function

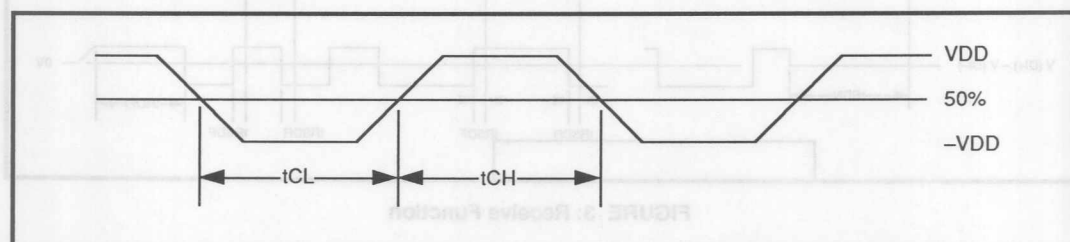


FIGURE 6 : CI± Parameters

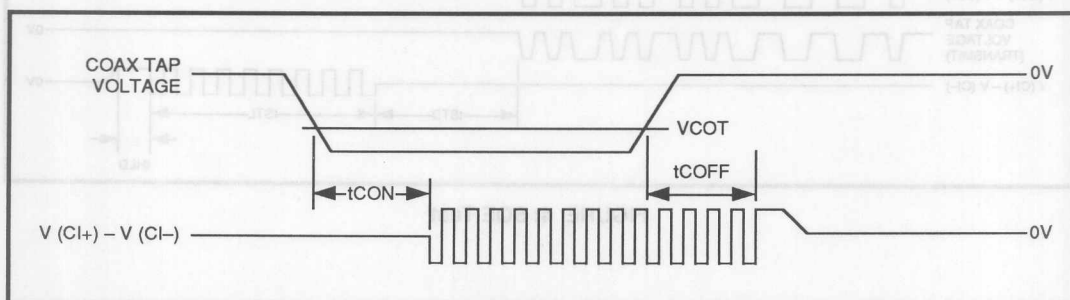


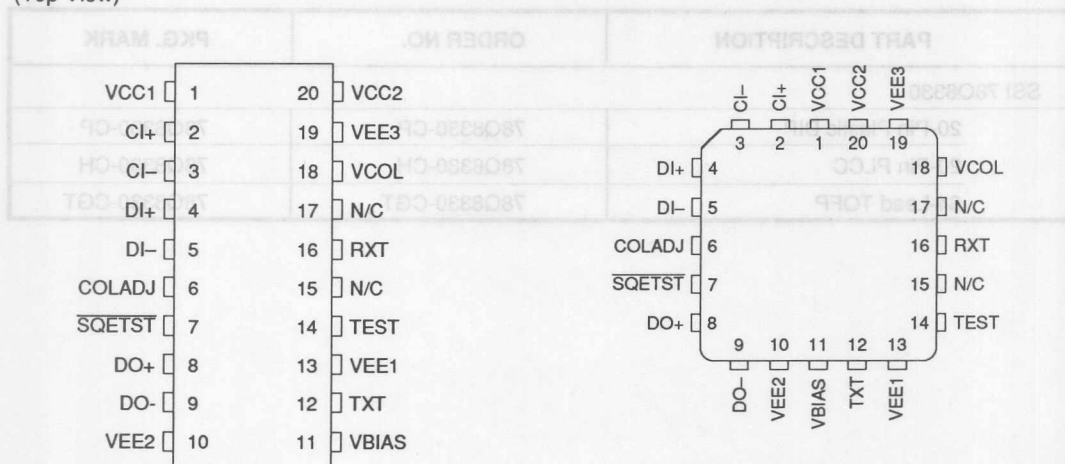
FIGURE 7: Collision Detect Timing

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

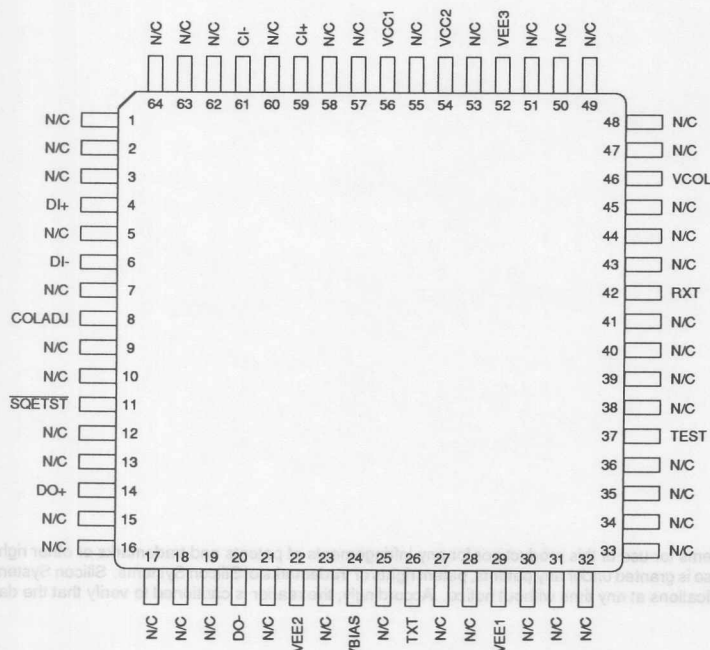
PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



20-Pin DIP

20-Pin PLCC



64-Lead TQFP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 78Q8330

Ethernet Coaxial Transceiver

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------|
| SSI 78Q8330 | | |
| 20-Pin Plastic DIP | 78Q8330-CP | 78Q8330-CP |
| 20-Pin PLCC | 78Q8330-CH | 78Q8330-CH |
| 64-Lead TQFP | 78Q8330-CGT | 78Q8330-CGT |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78Q8360 is a combination Media Access Controller (MAC) and 10 Mbit/s Manchester encoder/decoder (ENDEC) with Attachment Unit Interface (AUI) for IEEE 802.3 applications. It is connected to the transmission medium through the AUI with a transceiver circuit such as the SSI 78Q8330 Ethernet Coax Transceiver or the 78Q902 10Base-T Transceiver. Connection to the host is accomplished via external bus decoding logic.

An intelligent Buffer Manager is controlled by the host read, host write, receive and transmit pointers, and the 8360 manages the pointers internally without any host intervention. The 8360 interleaves access to the buffer memory so that accesses from the host and from the network media seem to operate concurrently.

The 8360 has a sophisticated power management capability with three different operating modes allowing the user to maximize power savings. Interface with the host can be accomplished in several different ways: memory mapping, I/O mapping, programmable DMA or a combination of these. Big and little endian byte orderings make for simple bus interface to all standard microprocessors. The 78Q8360 is packaged in a 100-pin QFP or TQFP and uses a single 5V supply.

FEATURES

- IEEE 802.3 and Ethernet 2.0 compliant
- Power management options:
 - Intelligent Power mode automatically shuts off unused circuitry
 - Standby mode reduces power while not in operation
 - Full Shutdown mode offers maximum power savings
- Advanced Buffer Manager architecture:
 - Automatic management of all pointers
 - Allows "simultaneous" access to data in buffer memory by both the network and host
 - High-speed received packet skip
- Configurable Buffer Memory for design flexibility:
 - Two-bank transmit buffer in 2, 4, 8, or 16 Kbyte sizes
 - Ring-structure receive buffer from 4 to 62 Kbytes
- Software-configurable system bus structure:
 - Compatible with major microprocessors
 - 8- or 16-bit wide data path
 - Supports single and programmable burst DMA, I/O and interrupt operations
- Two different Loopback modes
- Multicast address filtering via 64-element hash table

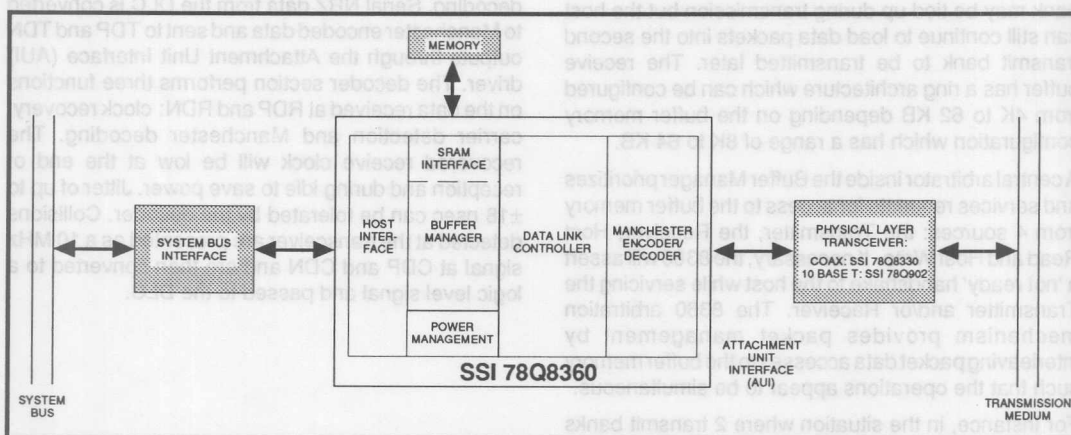


FIGURE 1: System Diagram

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The 78Q8360 consists of five major blocks:

- Buffer Manager (and SRAM Interface)
- Data Link Controller
- Host Interface
- Manchester ENDEC
- Power Management

A block diagram of the 78Q8360 is shown in Figure 2.

BUFFER MANAGER

The Buffer Manager manages all accesses to the buffer memory through the SRAM interface. The buffer memory is connected directly to the Data Link Controller (DLC), thus eliminating the need for a local microprocessor. The Buffer Manager also keeps track of all buffer memory pointers automatically, simplifying the software driver task. Together with intelligent arbitration, this makes the 8360 a high performance LAN controller.

The buffer memory is divided into two portions: transmit memory portion and receive memory portion. The transmit memory portion can be partitioned into 2K, 4K, 8K or 16 Kbyte buffer sizes. There is only one transmit bank if a 2 KB transmit buffer size is selected. If the transmit buffer size is greater than 2 KB, then the transmit buffer is configured into two banks of equal size. With the two bank configuration, one transmit bank may be tied up during transmission but the host can still continue to load data packets into the second transmit bank to be transmitted later. The receive buffer has a ring architecture which can be configured from 4K to 62 KB depending on the buffer memory configuration which has a range of 8K to 64 KB.

A central arbitrator inside the Buffer Manager prioritizes and services requests for access to the buffer memory from 4 sources: the Transmitter, the Receiver, Host Read and Host Write. If necessary, the 8360 will assert a 'not ready' handshake to the host while servicing the Transmitter and/or Receiver. The 8360 arbitration mechanism provides packet management by interleaving packet data accesses to the buffer memory such that the operations appear to be simultaneous.

For instance, in the situation where 2 transmit banks are configured, the host can load the first transmit bank and initiate a transmission. While the first transmit bank is being transmitted, the host can continue to load

packets in the second transmit bank. At this stage, the 8360 can potentially be receiving data from the medium and loading it into the receive buffer (if the 8360 is in a Loopback mode or if self-reception occurs).

DATA LINK CONTROLLER

The Data Link Controller (DLC) implements the ISO/ANSI/IEEE 8802-3 CSMA/CD protocol. It consists of a Transmitter, a Receiver and CRC logic (which is shared by both transmit and receive operations). Automatic generation and stripping of the 64-bit preamble and the 32-bit CRC code are provided on-chip.

HOST INTERFACE

The Host Interface (HIF) provides connection to the host system. It consists of the various registers, DMA circuits and ready logic. Both word and byte interfaces are supported as well as big endian and little endian data ordering. Host access to the buffer memory is through BMR8 (and BMR9). Reading from BMR8 will read a byte or word from the receive buffer and writing to BMR8 will write a byte or word to the transmit buffer. The ready logic is capable of delaying host access to the buffer memory with a time-out mechanism. Both single and burst DMA transfer modes are supported.

MANCHESTER ENDEC

This block implements Manchester encoding and decoding. Serial NRZ data from the DLC is converted to Manchester encoded data and sent to TDP and TDN outputs through the Attachment Unit Interface (AUI) driver. The decoder section performs three functions on the data received at RDP and RDN: clock recovery, carrier detection and Manchester decoding. The recovered receive clock will be low at the end of reception and during idle to save power. Jitter of up to ± 18 nsec can be tolerated by the decoder. Collisions detected at the transceiver are presented as a 10 MHz signal at CDP and CDN and are then converted to a logic level signal and passed to the DLC.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

POWER MANAGEMENT

One very useful and important feature that the 8360 offers is intelligent power management. It supports three different power saving modes: Intelligent, Standby, and Full Shutdown. All modes are configurable through registers. In the Intelligent mode, clocks are active only when they are needed. For example, when not transmitting, the clock supplied to the transmitter circuit

in the DLC block is not active while host read from buffer memory may be active. In Standby mode, the oscillator clock is disconnected from the rest of the circuits, so that only the oscillator circuits draw power. Full Shutdown turns off the oscillator, resulting in maximum power savings. Note that this mode is not available when using an external clock source.

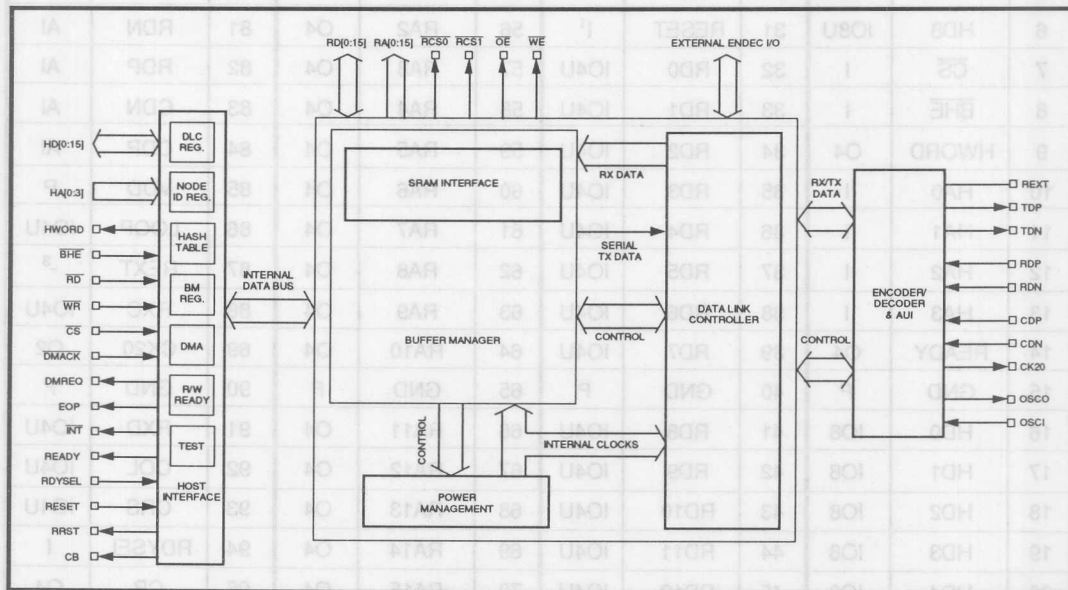


FIGURE 2: 78Q8360 Block Diagram

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

PIN ASSIGNMENT TABLE – 100-Pin QFP

| PIN # | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN # | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN # | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN # | PIN NAME | TYPE |
|-------|------------------|------|-------|--------------------|----------------|-------|-------------------|------|-------|----------|----------------|
| 1 | HD11 | IO8U | 26 | DMREQ | O16 | 51 | $\overline{RCS0}$ | O4 | 76 | OSCI | I ² |
| 2 | HD10 | IO8U | 27 | \overline{DMACK} | I | 52 | $\overline{RCS1}$ | O4 | 77 | OSCO | O ² |
| 3 | VDD | P | 28 | VDD | P | 53 | VDD | P | 78 | AVDD | P |
| 4 | GND | P | 29 | \overline{RD} | I | 54 | RA0 | O4 | 79 | AGND | P |
| 5 | HD9 | IO8U | 30 | \overline{WR} | I | 55 | RA1 | O4 | 80 | TXC | IO4U |
| 6 | HD8 | IO8U | 31 | RESET | I ¹ | 56 | RA2 | O4 | 81 | RDN | AI |
| 7 | \overline{CS} | I | 32 | RD0 | IO4U | 57 | RA3 | O4 | 82 | RDP | AI |
| 8 | \overline{BHE} | I | 33 | RD1 | IO4U | 58 | RA4 | O4 | 83 | CDN | AI |
| 9 | HWORD | O4 | 34 | RD2 | IO4U | 59 | RA5 | O4 | 84 | CDP | AI |
| 10 | HA0 | I | 35 | RD3 | IO4U | 60 | RA6 | O4 | 85 | VDD | P |
| 11 | HA1 | I | 36 | RD4 | IO4U | 61 | RA7 | O4 | 86 | LOOP | IO4U |
| 12 | HA2 | I | 37 | RD5 | IO4U | 62 | RA8 | O4 | 87 | REXT | . ³ |
| 13 | HA3 | I | 38 | RD6 | IO4U | 63 | RA9 | O4 | 88 | RXC | IO4U |
| 14 | READY | O4 | 39 | RD7 | IO4U | 64 | RA10 | O4 | 89 | CK20 | O2 |
| 15 | GND | P | 40 | GND | P | 65 | GND | P | 90 | GND | P |
| 16 | HD0 | IO8 | 41 | RD8 | IO4U | 66 | RA11 | O4 | 91 | RXD | IO4U |
| 17 | HD1 | IO8 | 42 | RD9 | IO4U | 67 | RA12 | O4 | 92 | COL | IO4U |
| 18 | HD2 | IO8 | 43 | RD10 | IO4U | 68 | RA13 | O4 | 93 | CRS | IO4U |
| 19 | HD3 | IO8 | 44 | RD11 | IO4U | 69 | RA14 | O4 | 94 | RDYSEL | I |
| 20 | HD4 | IO8 | 45 | RD12 | IO4U | 70 | RA15 | O4 | 95 | CB | O4 |
| 21 | HD5 | IO8 | 46 | RD13 | IO4U | 71 | TXE | IO4U | 96 | RRST | O4 |
| 22 | HD6 | IO8 | 47 | RD14 | IO4U | 72 | TXD | IO4U | 97 | HD15 | IO8U |
| 23 | HD7 | IO8 | 48 | RD15 | IO4U | 73 | GND | P | 98 | HD14 | IO8U |
| 24 | EOP | I | 49 | \overline{OE} | O4 | 74 | TDN | AO | 99 | HD13 | IO8U |
| 25 | \overline{INT} | O4 | 50 | \overline{WE} | O4 | 75 | TDP | AO | 100 | HD12 | IO8U |

Legend:

I: Input (TTL level)
 On: Output with IOL = n mA
 IOn: Input (TTL level) and Output with IOL = n mA
 IOnU: IOn with "controlled" internal pull-up resistor
 AI: Analog Input
 AO: Analog Output
 P: Power

Notes:

- [1] RESET has a Schmitt trigger and a pull-down resistor.
 [2] OSCI and OSCO use CMOS levels.
 [3] REXT is connected to a resistor and then to analog ground.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

PIN ASSIGNMENT TABLE – 100-Pin TQFP

| PIN # | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN # | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN # | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN # | PIN NAME | TYPE |
|-------|--------------------|------|-------|-------------------|----------------|-------|----------|----------------|-------|----------|----------------|
| 1 | GND | P | 26 | \overline{RD} | I | 51 | RA0 | O4 | 76 | AGND | P |
| 2 | HD9 | IO8U | 27 | \overline{WR} | I | 52 | RA1 | O4 | 77 | TXC | IO4U |
| 3 | HD8 | IO8U | 28 | RESET | I ¹ | 53 | RA2 | O4 | 78 | RDN | AI |
| 4 | \overline{CS} | I | 29 | RD0 | IO4U | 54 | RA3 | O4 | 79 | RDP | AI |
| 5 | \overline{BHE} | I | 30 | RD1 | IO4U | 55 | RA4 | O4 | 80 | CDN | AI |
| 6 | HWORD | O4 | 31 | RD2 | IO4U | 56 | RA5 | O4 | 81 | CDP | AI |
| 7 | HA0 | I | 32 | RD3 | IO4U | 57 | RA6 | O4 | 82 | VDD | P |
| 8 | HA1 | I | 33 | RD4 | IO4U | 58 | RA7 | O4 | 83 | LOOP | IO4U |
| 9 | HA2 | I | 34 | RD5 | IO4U | 59 | RA8 | O4 | 84 | REXT | . ³ |
| 10 | HA3 | I | 35 | RD6 | IO4U | 60 | RA9 | O4 | 85 | RXC | IO4U |
| 11 | READY | O4 | 36 | RD7 | IO4U | 61 | RA10 | O4 | 86 | CK20 | O2 |
| 12 | GND | P | 37 | GND | P | 62 | GND | P | 87 | GND | P |
| 13 | HD0 | IO8 | 38 | RD8 | IO4U | 63 | RA11 | O4 | 88 | RXD | IO4U |
| 14 | HD1 | IO8 | 39 | RD9 | IO4U | 64 | RA12 | O4 | 89 | COL | IO4U |
| 15 | HD2 | IO8 | 40 | RD10 | IO4U | 65 | RA13 | O4 | 90 | CRS | IO4U |
| 16 | HD3 | IO8 | 41 | RD11 | IO4U | 66 | RA14 | O4 | 91 | RDYSEL | I |
| 17 | HD4 | IO8 | 42 | RD12 | IO4U | 67 | RA15 | O4 | 92 | CB | O4 |
| 18 | HD5 | IO8 | 43 | RD13 | IO4U | 68 | TXE | IO4U | 93 | RRST | O4 |
| 19 | HD6 | IO8 | 44 | RD14 | IO4U | 69 | TXD | IO4U | 94 | HD15 | IO8U |
| 20 | HD7 | IO8 | 45 | RD15 | IO4U | 70 | GND | P | 95 | HD14 | IO8U |
| 21 | EOP | I | 46 | \overline{OE} | O4 | 71 | TDN | AO | 96 | HD13 | IO8U |
| 22 | INT | O4 | 47 | \overline{WE} | O4 | 72 | TDP | AO | 97 | HD12 | IO8U |
| 23 | DMREQ | O16 | 48 | $\overline{RCS0}$ | O4 | 73 | OSCI | I ² | 98 | HD11 | IO8U |
| 24 | \overline{DMACK} | I | 49 | $\overline{RCS1}$ | O4 | 74 | OSCO | O ² | 99 | HD10 | IO8U |
| 25 | VDD | P | 50 | VDD | P | 75 | AVDD | P | 100 | VDD | P |

Legend:

I: Input (TTL level)
 On: Output with IOL = n mA
 IOn: Input (TTL level) and Output with IOL = n mA
 IOnU: IOn with "controlled" internal pull-up resistor
 AI: Analog Input
 AO: Analog Output
 P: Power

Notes:

- [1] RESET has a Schmitt trigger and a pull-down resistor.
- [2] OSCI and OSCO use CMOS levels.
- [3] REXT is connected to a resistor and then to analog ground.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

PIN DESCRIPTION

HOST BUS INTERFACE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|------|--|-------------------------------------|-----|-----|----------|---|---|---|---------------|---|---|---|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|----------|---|---|---|-------------------------|
| RESET | I | HARDWARE RESET. Active high. A minimum pulse length of 200 ns is required. This pin resets the 8360's internal pointers and registers to their appropriate states. Note: the 8360 must be reset after power on before usage. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| READY | O | READY. This output is asserted to indicate to the host that the 8360 is ready to complete the requested read or write operation. It will also be used if the device is unable to respond to read or write requests within 2.4 μs. In these situations, the 8360 will also assert $\overline{\text{INT}}$ and the host read error status bit (DLCR1 <6>) or host write error status bit (DLCR0 <0>). The polarity of the READY pin is determined by RDYSEL. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| RDYSEL | I | READY POLARITY SELECT. Control input to select the polarity of the READY pin. When RDYSEL is a '1', READY will be active high. If RDYSEL is a '0', READY will be an active low signal. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| $\overline{\text{WR}}$ | I | WRITE. The $\overline{\text{WR}}$ pin is an active low input that enables a write operation from the host to the 8360's internal registers as selected by the host address inputs HA[0:3]. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | I | READ. The $\overline{\text{RD}}$ pin is an active low input that enables a read operation by the host from the 8360's internal registers as selected by the host address inputs HA[0:3]. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| $\overline{\text{CS}}$ | I | CHIP SELECT. An active low input signal as the chip select for the 8360. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BHE | I | BYTE HIGH ENABLE. This is an active low byte/word control pin used only when the 8360 is configured for word transfer by HBYTE bit (DLCR6 <5>). Combinations of BHE and HA0 are used to select word, upper byte only or lower byte only transfers. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | <table><tr><th>HBYTE</th><th>BHE</th><th>HA0</th><th>FUNCTION</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Word transfer</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Byte transfer on high bus HD[8:15].</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Byte transfer on low bus HD[0:7].</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Reserved</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>Byte transfer (HD[0:7])</td></tr></table> | HBYTE | BHE | HA0 | FUNCTION | 0 | 0 | 0 | Word transfer | 0 | 0 | 1 | Byte transfer on high bus HD[8:15]. | 0 | 1 | 0 | Byte transfer on low bus HD[0:7]. | 0 | 1 | 1 | Reserved | 1 | X | X | Byte transfer (HD[0:7]) |
| HBYTE | BHE | HA0 | FUNCTION | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | Word transfer | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | Byte transfer on high bus HD[8:15]. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | Byte transfer on low bus HD[0:7]. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | Reserved | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | X | X | Byte transfer (HD[0:7]) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| $\overline{\text{INT}}$ | O | INTERRUPT. This active low signal is asserted when the 8360 requires the intervention of the Host in the situations as depicted in DLCR0&1. The $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal is masked by writing a '0' to the interrupt enable register. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EOP | I | END OF PROCESS. Asserted at the end of a DMA transfer by the Host DMA controller. Further DMA requests (DMREQ) will be discontinued after EOP is asserted. Polarity can be selected via register bit (DLCR7 <1>). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DMREQ | O | DMA REQUEST. The 8360 issues a DMREQ to the Host DMA controller to initiate a write to its transmit buffer or a read from its receive buffer. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|------|--|
| $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ | I | DMA ACKNOWLEDGE. An active low signal issued by the Host DMA controller when it is ready to perform data transfers between the Host and the 8360's buffer memory via BMR8. |
| HA[0:3] | I | HOST ADDRESS. Selects the set of internal registers to be accessible by the 8360 for read or write operations. |
| HD[0:15] | I/O | HOST DATA BUS. A bi-directional, tri-state bus for data, command and status transfers between the Host and the 8360 with the direction being controlled by $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$. The combinations of HBYTE, $\overline{\text{BHE}}$ and HA0 control the portion of the bus that is being utilized. HA[0:3] and RBNK <0:1> (DLCR7 <2:3>) select the set of internal registers for access. |
| HWORD | O | HOST WORD CONFIGURATION. This pin is the complement of the register bit HBYTE (DLCR6 <5>). If HBYTE is a '0', the Host interface is configured for word transfers. If HBYTE is a '1', the Host interface is configured for byte transfers on the lower bus, HD[0:7]. |

BUFFER MEMORY INTERFACE

| | | |
|------------------------|-----|--|
| RCS0, RCS1 | O | RAM CHIP SELECT. $\overline{\text{RCS0}}$ and $\overline{\text{RCS1}}$ are active low chip select lines for the SRAM with $\overline{\text{RCS0}}$ as the least significant byte. |
| $\overline{\text{OE}}$ | O | RAM OUTPUT ENABLE. Active low. This is the output enable asserted by the 8360 during buffer memory read cycles for the SRAM. |
| $\overline{\text{WE}}$ | O | RAM WRITE ENABLE. Active low. This is the write enable asserted by the 8360 during buffer memory write cycles for the SRAM. |
| RD[0:15] | I/O | RAM DATA BUS. This is the data bus between the 8360 and the buffer memory. It can be configured for byte or word transfer depending on register bit RBYTE (DLCR6 <4>) RAM BYTE. For word transfers, the ordering of the most and least significant byte is defined by the register bit, INTLMOT (DLCR7 <0>). |
| RA[0:15] | O | RAM ADDRESS BUS. Addresses up to 64 KByte of SRAM buffer memory. |

NETWORK INTERFACE

| | | |
|----------|---|---|
| TDN, TDP | O | TRANSMIT DATA NEGATIVE and POSITIVE. Differential outputs to the transceiver for transmission. |
| RDN, RDP | I | RECEIVE DATA NEGATIVE and POSITIVE. Manchester differential inputs from the transceiver for reception. |
| CDN, CDP | I | COLLISION DETECT NEGATIVE and POSITIVE. When the transceiver detects a collision on the media, these differential inputs are driven by a 10 MHz signal. |
| REXT | - | EXTERNAL RESISTOR. External biasing resistor for the Attachment Unit Interface (AUI). |

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

EXTERNAL ENCODER/DECODER INTERFACE

The following eight pins are provided for connection to an external encoder/decoder in the optional mode of using an external encoder/decoder with the 78Q8360. They are also used as monitor pins for test purposes. In normal network interface applications these pins are not used and are pulled-up internally. Optional modes of configuration are determined by the EEDCNTL <1:0> register bits DLCR7<7:6>.

CONTROLLER-ENCODER/DECODER INTERFACE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------|------|--|
| TXD | I/O | TRANSMIT DATA. Normally not used. (Non-Return to Zero) NRZ transmit serial data. |
| TXC | I/O | TRANSMIT CLOCK. Normally not used. A synchronous 10 MHz clock with the serially transmitted data, TXD. |
| TXE | I/O | TRANSMIT ENABLE. Normally not used. Enable for transmission. |
| COL | I/O | COLLISION. Normally not used. Active high collision signal. |
| LOOP | I/O | LOOP BACK. Normally not used. ENDEC loop back test signal. |
| RXD | I/O | RECEIVE DATA. Normally not used. NRZ serial receive data. |
| RXC | I/O | RECEIVE CLOCK. Normally not used. A synchronous 10 MHz recovered clock with the serially received data, RXD. |
| CRS | I/O | CARRIER SENSE. Normally not used. When asserted high, it signifies that a carrier is active in the media. |

ENCODER/DECODER PIN INPUT/OUTPUT TABLE

| EEDCNTL <1:0> | MODE | TXD | TXC | TXE | LOOP | RXD | RXC | CRS | COL |
|---------------|----------|---|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 00 | Normal | On-chip internal ENDEC is used with the 8360 | | | | | | | |
| | 78Q8360 | ZU | ZU | ZU | ZU | ZU | ZU | ZU | ZU |
| 01 | 78Q8360 | On-chip internal ENDEC is used with the 8360 | | | | | | | |
| | Monitor | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | O |
| 10 | External | External ENDEC is used with the 8360, internal ENDEC is off | | | | | | | |
| | ENDEC | O | I | O | O | I | I | I | I |
| 11 | ENDEC | On-chip internal ENDEC is used only, the 8360 controller is off | | | | | | | |
| | Test | I | O | I | I | O | O | O | O |

ZU: High impedance with internal pull-up

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

DEVICE POWER

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------|------|---|
| VDD | P | POWER SUPPLY. A +5V DC ($\pm 5\%$) supply is required. |
| GND | P | SYSTEM GROUND. |
| AVDD | P | ANALOG VDD. The analog VDD pin required by the internal encoder/decoder is to be connected to a different VDD path from the digital VDD. A +5V DC ($\pm 5\%$) supply is required. |
| AGND | P | ANALOG GROUND. The analog ground required by the internal encoder/decoder is to be connected to a separate GND path from the digital GND. |

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

| | | |
|------|---|---|
| OSCI | I | OSCILLATOR IN. Connection for one side of the 20 MHz crystal or an input for an external 20 MHz clock source. |
| OSCO | O | OSCILLATOR OUT. Connection for other side of the 20 MHz crystal. Left unconnected if an external clock is used. |

MISCELLANEOUS

| | | |
|------|---|--|
| CB | O | CONTROL BIT. A complement of the internal register bit, DLCR4 <2>, which is used to activate any external hardware. |
| RRST | O | REMOTE RESET. This pin follows the RMTRST register bit (DLCR1 <4>). The RMTRST bit is '1' only if a packet with the pattern 0900H in the Type Field is detected and ENA_RMTRST (DLCR5 <2>) is activated. This feature can be used by the nodes on the network to remotely-control external hardware. |
| CK20 | O | 20 MHz CLOCK: A 20 MHz free-running buffered clock output provided by the crystal oscillator circuit. |

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

CONTROL AND STATUS REGISTERS

The registers in the 8360 can be divided into 5 groups: the Data Link Control Registers (DLCR0-7), Node ID registers (IDR8-13), Time Domain Reflectometry Registers (TDR14-15), Hash Table Registers (HTR8-15) and Buffer Memory Registers (BMR8-15).

The Data Link Control Registers contain the transmit and receive status information, interrupt enable, 8360 setup and software reset bit (DLCR6<7>). They are accessed through direct register addresses xxx0H through xxx7H. The Ethernet Node ID is stored in IDR 8-15. The TDR14-15 registers are used to provide the count value of the number of bits transmitted for each packet. This value can indicate whether a packet has completed its transmission or has encountered a collision. Both the Node ID and the Time Domain Reflectometry Registers can be accessed through direct register addresses xxx8H through xxxFH.

The Hash Table Registers (HTR8-15) provide a means for filtering incoming multicast packets. Any packet that does not match the hash table coding will be rejected. The HTR8-15 can be accessed by the bank-switching addresses RBNK<1:0> (DLCR7 <3:2>).

The final group of the registers belongs to the Buffer Memory Registers (BMR8-15). The tasks performed by these registers include transferring of packets between the host and the 8360 (via BMR8-9), collision control, DMA operations and activation of the transmit operation. A summary table of the registers and their addresses are tabulated below:

| RBNK<1:0> | HA3 | HA2 | HA1 | HA0 | ADDRESS | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|-------------------------|
| XX | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | DLCR0 | Transmit Status |
| XX | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | DLCR1 | Receive Status |
| XX | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | DLCR2 | Transmit Interrupt Mask |
| XX | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | DLCR3 | Receive Interrupt Mask |
| XX | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | DLCR4 | Transmit Mode |
| XX | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DLCR5 | Receive Mode |
| XX | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | DLCR6 | Configuration 1 |
| XX | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | DLCR7 | Configuration 2 |
| 00 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | IDR8 | NODE ID 0 |
| 00 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | IDR9 | NODE ID 1 |
| 00 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | IDR 10 | NODE ID 2 |
| 00 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | IDR11 | NODE ID 3 |
| 00 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | IDR12 | NODE ID 4 |
| 00 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | IDR13 | NODE ID 5 |
| 00 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | TDR14 | TDR 0 (LSB) |
| 00 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | TDR15 | TDR 1 (MSB) |

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

CONTROL AND STATUS REGISTERS (continued)

| RBNK<1:0> | HA3 | HA2 | HA1 | HA0 | ADDRESS | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|------------------------------------|
| 01 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | HTR8 | Hash Table 0 |
| 01 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | HTR9 | Hash Table 1 |
| 01 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | HTR10 | Hash Table 2 |
| 01 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | HTR11 | Hash Table 3 |
| 01 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | HTR12 | Hash Table 4 |
| 01 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | HTR13 | Hash Table 5 |
| 01 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | HTR14 | Hash Table 6 |
| 01 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | HTR15 | Hash Table 7 |
| 10 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | BMR8 | Buffer Memory I/O Port |
| 10 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | BMR9 | Buffer Memory I/O Port (word mode) |
| 10 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | BMR10 | Transmit Start + Packet Count |
| 10 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | BMR11 | 16 Collisions Control |
| 10 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | BMR12 | DMA Enable |
| 10 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | BMR13 | DMA Burst |
| 10 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | BMR14 | Skip Packet |
| 10 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | BMR15 | Reserved |
| 11 | X | X | X | X | - | RESERVED |

Note: All registers are both word and byte accessible. In word mode, register bytes are paired up. IDR and HTR can only be accessed when ENADLC (DLCR 6<7>) is a '1'. In byte mode, only BMR8 will be used.

| | | | | |
|----|-----|-----|-----------------|--|
| Am | | n | $V_{OL} = 0.4V$ | Low level output current (1) (pin types On, IOn and IOu) |
| Am | | -n | $V_{OH} = 2.4V$ | High level output current (1) (pin types On, IOn and IOu) |
| Au | 10 | -10 | | Leakage current (input/output) I _l |
| Am | 50 | | Fully active | Supply current I _{cc} |
| Am | 25 | | Idle | |
| Am | 5 | | Sec. on | Power down supply current I _{sd} |
| Au | 100 | | Sec. off | |

Note: (1) "n" refers to the rated output current and takes the value of 2, 4, 8, 16 depending on the pins. Refer to pin assignment tables for the value of "n".
(2) Inputs at VCC or GND. Fully active means 3 "simultaneous" operations: transmitting, receiving and either host write or read.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation beyond the maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|--|-------------------------|
| Supply voltage, V_{DD} | -0.5 to 6.0V |
| Input voltage, V_{IN} | -0.5 to $V_{DD} + 0.5V$ |
| Output voltage, V_{OUT} | -0.5 to $V_{DD} + 0.5V$ |
| Storage temperature, T_{STG} | -55 to 150°C |
| Lead temperature (max 10 sec soldering), T_L | 250°C max |

DC CHARACTERISTICS

($T_A = 0^\circ\text{C}$ to $+70^\circ\text{C}$, $V_{DD} = 5V \pm 5\%$)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|----------------------------|----------------|-----|----------|---------------|
| Low level input voltage V_{IL} | TTL inputs | 0 | | 0.8 | V |
| | OSCI pin | 0 | | 1.4 | V |
| | RESET pin | 0 | | 1.2 | V |
| High level input voltage V_{IH} | TTL inputs | 2.0 | | V_{DD} | V |
| | OSCI pin | 3.2 | | V_{DD} | V |
| | RESET pin | 1.8 | | V_{DD} | V |
| Low level output voltage V_{OL} | Rated I_{OL} | 0 | | 0.4 | V |
| | $I_{OL} = 20 \mu\text{A}$ | 0 | | 0.1 | V |
| High level output voltage V_{OH} | Rated I_{OH} | 2.4 | | V_{DD} | V |
| | $I_{OH} = -20 \mu\text{A}$ | $V_{DD} - 0.1$ | | V_{DD} | V |
| Low level output current ⁽¹⁾ I_{OL} (pin types On, IOn and IOnU) | $V_{OL} = 0.4V$ | n | | | mA |
| High level output current ⁽¹⁾ I_{OH} (pin types On, IOn and IOnU) | $V_{OH} = 2.4V$ | -n | | | mA |
| Leakage current (input/output) I_L | | -10 | | 10 | μA |
| Supply current ⁽²⁾ I_{DD} | Fully active | | | 50 | mA |
| | Idle | | | 25 | mA |
| Power down supply current ⁽²⁾ I_{PWRDN} | Osc. on | | | 5 | mA |
| | Osc. off | | | 100 | μA |

Note: (1) "n" refers to the rated output current and takes the value of 2, 4, 8, 16 depending on the pins.
Refer to pin assignment tables for the value of "n."

(2) Inputs at VCC or GND. Fully active means 3 "simultaneous" operations: transmitting, receiving and either host write or read.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

AUI CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = 0 to 70 °C, VDD = 5V ±5%)

Input refers to RDP, N and CDP, N. Output refers to TDP, N.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|---|------|------|----------------|------|
| AC Common Mode Output Voltage V_{ACCM} | | | | ±40 | mV |
| DC Common Mode Output Voltage V_{DCCM} | | 3.0 | 4.0 | $V_{DD} - 0.5$ | V |
| Differential Peak Output Voltage V_{OP} | $R_{EXT} = 20\text{ k}\Omega$ $R_T = 78\Omega$ | 0.7 | 0.9 | 1.1 | V |
| Output Current I_{OP} | $R_{EXT} = 20\text{ k}\Omega$ | 9 | 11 | 13 | mA |
| Input Squelch Threshold Voltage V_{SQ} | | -140 | -190 | -260 | mV |
| Open Circuit Input Bias Voltage V_{BIAS} | | 2.5 | 3.5 | $V_{DD} - 0.5$ | V |

CAPACITANCE

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|----|----|
| Input pin capacitance C_{IN} | | | | 10 | pF |
| Output pin capacitance C_{OUT} | | | | 10 | pF |
| I/O pin capacitance C_{IO} | | | | 10 | pF |

SSI 78Q8360 **Ethernet Controller/** **ENDEC Combo**

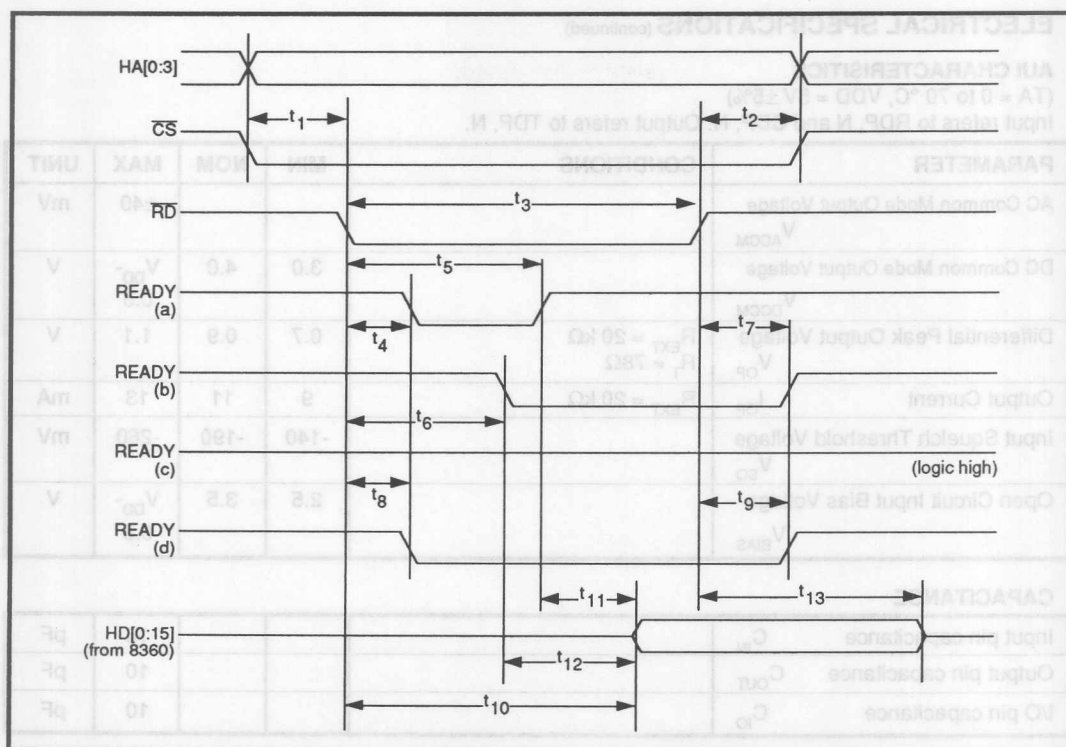


FIGURE 3: Read Cycle

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

TABLE 1: Read Cycle

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| \overline{CS} low to \overline{RD} low; HA[0:3] valid to \overline{RD} low | t_1 | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{RD} high to \overline{CS} high; \overline{RD} high to HA[0:3] invalid | t_2 | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{RD} low pulse width | t_3 | 30 | | | ns |
| \overline{RD} low to READY low | t_4 (a) | 0 | | 35 | ns |
| \overline{RD} low to READY high ⁽¹⁾ | t_5 (a) | | | 400 | ns |
| \overline{RD} low to READY low ⁽¹⁾ | t_6 (b) | 0 | | 400 | ns |
| \overline{RD} high to READY high | t_7 (b) | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| \overline{RD} low to READY low | t_8 (d) | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| \overline{RD} high to READY high | t_9 (d) | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| \overline{RD} low to HD[0:15] valid | t_{10} Register access | | | 45 | ns |
| READY high to HD[0:15] valid | t_{11} Port access | | | 5 | ns |
| READY low to HD[0:15] valid | t_{12} Port access | | | 5 | ns |
| \overline{RD} high to HD[0:15] invalid (data hold) | t_{13} | 10 | | | ns |

Note: (1) Maximum of 400 ns may occur if system makes contiguous system read cycles at less than 100 ns intervals, and both the transmitter and receiver are active in "loopback" reception (if the transmitter and receiver are idle, the max value becomes 250 ns). 2.4 μ s max for host read error.

- (a) For Buffer Memory Port when port is busy and RDYSEL = 1.
- (b) For Buffer Memory Port when port is busy and RDYSEL = 0.
- (c) For register or port is not busy and RDYSEL = 1.
- (d) For register or port is not busy and RDYSEL = 0.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

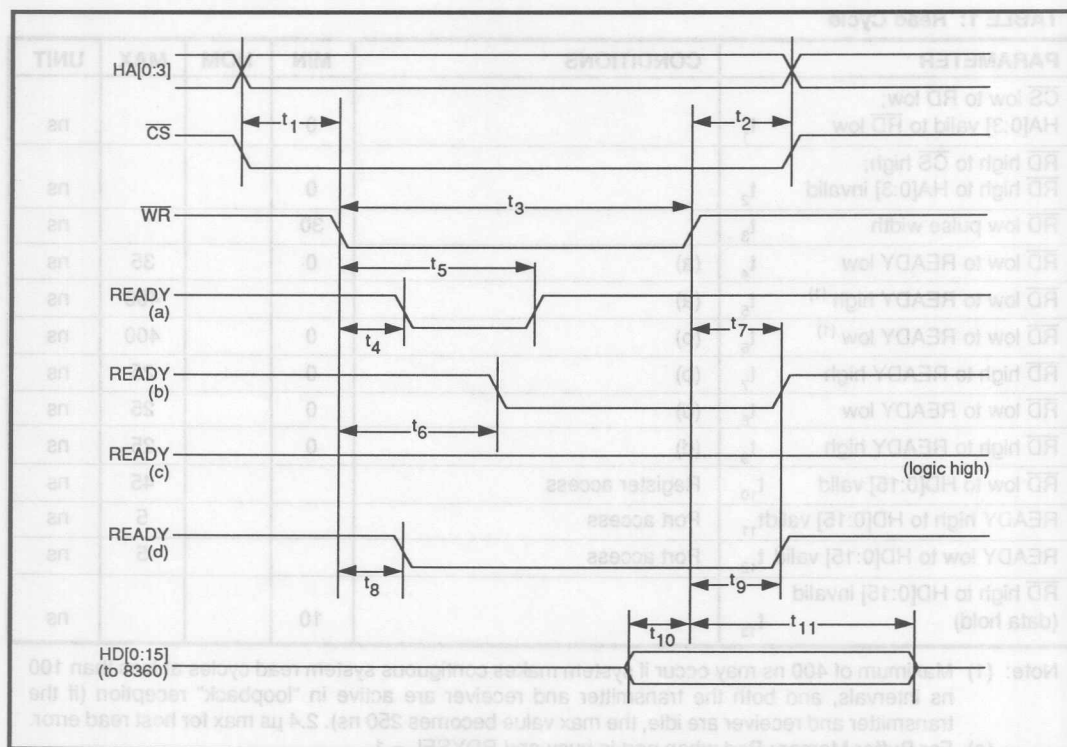


FIGURE 4: Write Cycle

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

TABLE 2: Write Cycle

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| CS low to \overline{WR} low; HA[0:3] valid to \overline{WR} low t_1 | | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{WR} high to \overline{CS} high; \overline{WR} high to HA[0:3] invalid t_2 | | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{WR} low pulse width t_3 | | 30 | | | ns |
| \overline{WR} low to READY low t_4 | (a) | 0 | | 35 | ns |
| \overline{WR} low to READY high ⁽¹⁾ t_5 | (a) | | | 400 | ns |
| \overline{WR} low to READY low ⁽¹⁾ t_6 | (b) | 0 | | 400 | ns |
| \overline{WR} high to READY high t_7 | (b) | | | 25 | ns |
| \overline{WR} low to READY low t_8 | (d) | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| \overline{WR} high to READY high t_9 | (d) | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| HD[0:15] valid to \overline{WR} high (data setup) t_{10} | | 17 | | | ns |
| \overline{WR} high to HD[0:15] invalid (data hold) t_{11} | | 10 | | | ns |

Note: (1) Maximum of 400 ns may occur if system makes contiguous system read cycles at less than 100 ns intervals, and both the transmitter and receiver are active on "loopback" reception (if the transmitter and receiver are idle, the max value becomes 250 ns). 2.4 μ s max for host write error.

(a) For Buffer Memory Port when port is busy and RDYSEL = 1.

(b) For Buffer Memory Port when port is busy and RDYSEL = 0.

(c) For register or port is not busy and RDYSEL = 1.

(d) For register or port is not busy and RDYSEL = 0.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

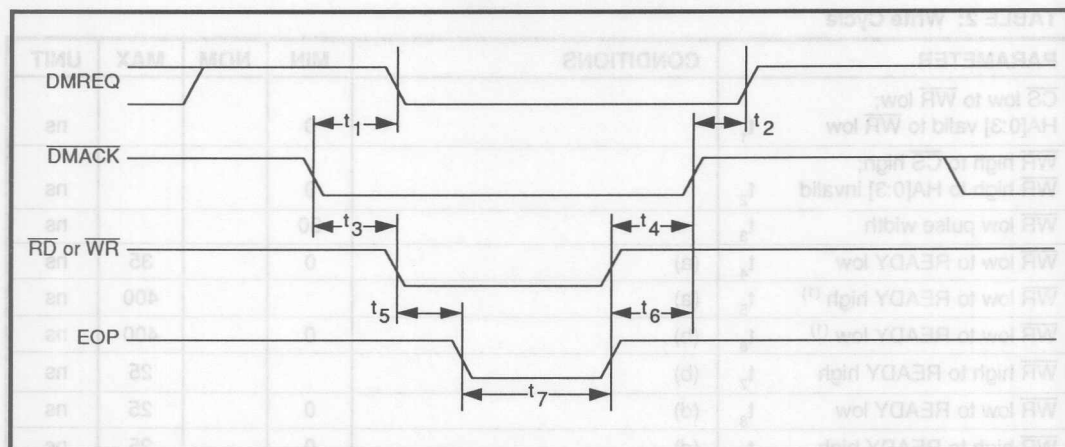


FIGURE 5: Single-Cycle DMA Timing

TABLE 3: Single-Cycle DMA Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| DMACK low to DMREQ low t_1 | | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| DMACK high to DMREQ high t_2 | | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| DMACK low to \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} low t_3 | | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} high to DMACK high t_4 | | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} low to EOP low t_5 | | 0 | | | ns |
| EOP high to DMACK high t_6 | | 0 | | | ns |
| EOP low pulse width t_7 | | 10 | | | ns |

- Note: (1) An asserted EOP terminates any further DMREQ after \overline{DMACK} returns high.
(2) The DMA cycle uses \overline{DMACK} as the chip select. \overline{DMACK} overrides \overline{CS} and $HA[0:3]$ if they are both asserted at the same time, forcing selection of the Buffer Memory Port as in a DMA cycle.
(3) For READY timing and $HD[0:15]$ timing, see Figure 3, t_4 - t_{13} , and Figure 4, t_4 - t_{11} .

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

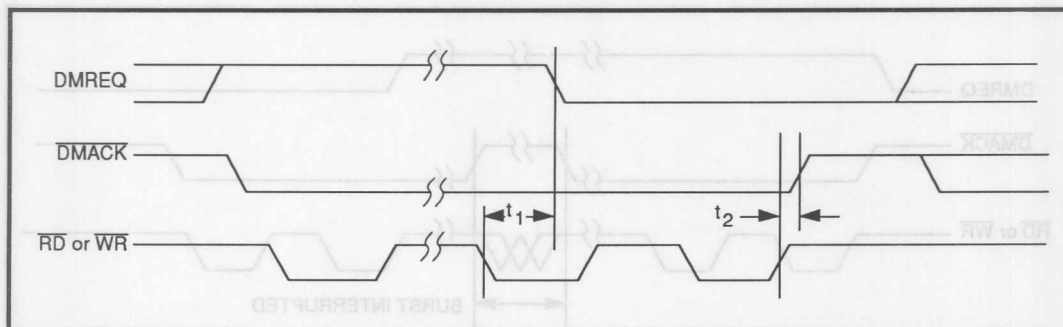


FIGURE 6: Burst DMA Timing

TABLE 4: Burst DMA Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} low to DMREQ low t_1 | | | | 30 | ns |
| \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} high to DMACK high t_2 | | 0 | | | ns |

- Note: (1) DMREQ goes low during the next-to-last transfer of the burst. DMACK should not go high until after the RD or WR pulse of the last transfer cycle goes high
(2) The DMA cycle uses DMACK as the chip select. DMACK overrides \overline{CS} and HA[0:3] if they are both asserted at the same time, forcing selection of the Buffer Memory Port as in a DMA cycle.
(3) For READY timing and HD[0:15] timing, see Figure 3, t_4 - t_{13} , and Figure 4, t_4 - t_{11} .

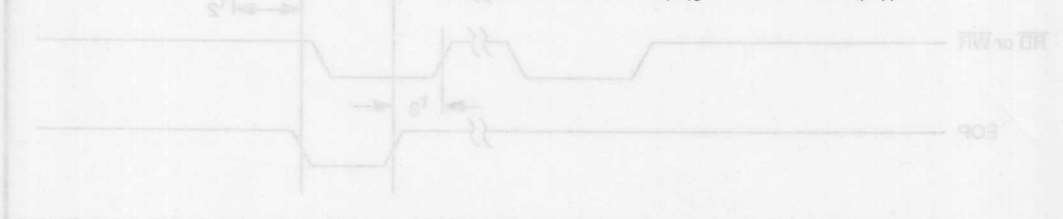


FIGURE 8: Burst DMA Terminated by EOP

TABLE 5: Burst DMA Terminated by EOP

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| EOP low to DMREQ low t_1 | | 4 | | 28 | ns |
| EOP high to DMACK high t_2 | | 3 | | | ns |
| \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} low to EOP low t_3 | | 0 | | | ns |

Note: EOP can be asserted during any transfer of the burst to terminate the process following that transfer.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

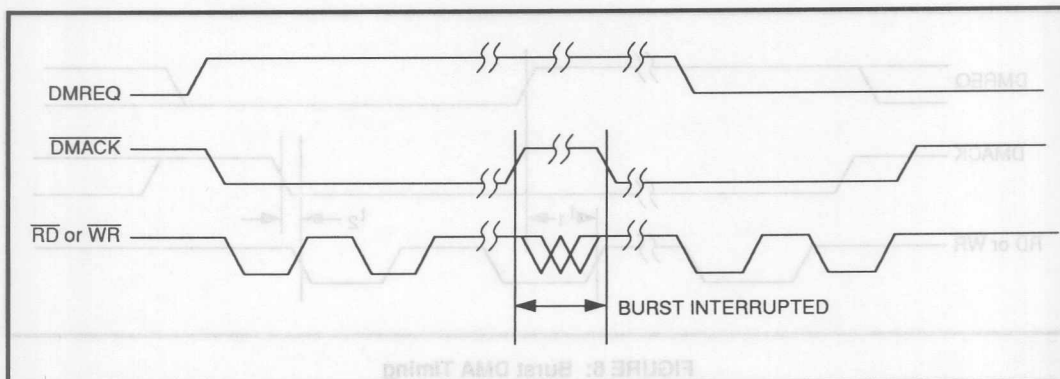


FIGURE 7: Burst DMA Interrupted by $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$

Note: Burst can be interrupted by $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ high-going pulse during the burst. Burst will resume when $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ returns low.

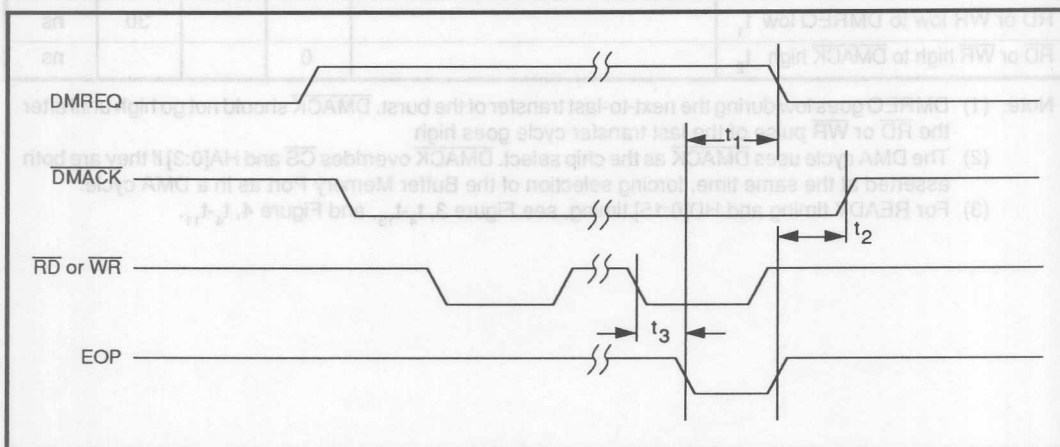


FIGURE 8: Burst DMA Terminated by EOP

TABLE 5: Burst DMA Terminated by EOP

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| EOP low to DMREQ low | t_1 | 4 | | 28 | ns |
| EOP high to $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ high | t_2 | 3 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$ or $\overline{\text{WR}}$ low to EOP low | t_3 | 0 | | | ns |

Note: EOP can be asserted during any transfer of the burst to terminate the process following that transfer.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

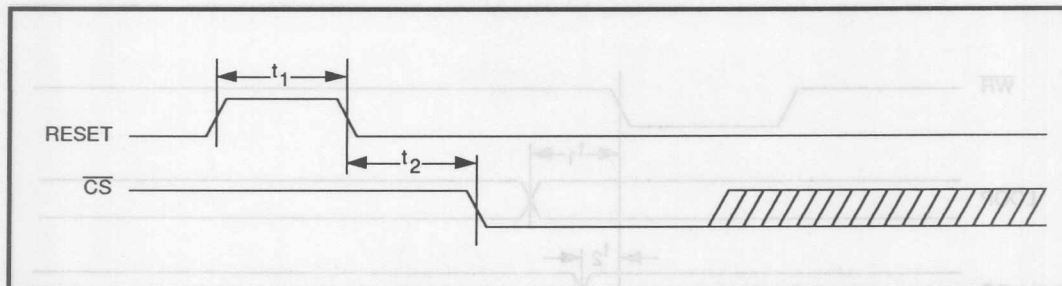


FIGURE 9: RESET Timing

TABLE 6: RESET Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| RESET pulse width t_1 | | 200 | | | ns |
| RESET low to first \overline{CS} low t_2 | | 300 | | | ns |

Note: Before enabling transmit and receive functions (\overline{ENADLC}), wait 10 μ s after reset pulse for internal calibration of DPLL.

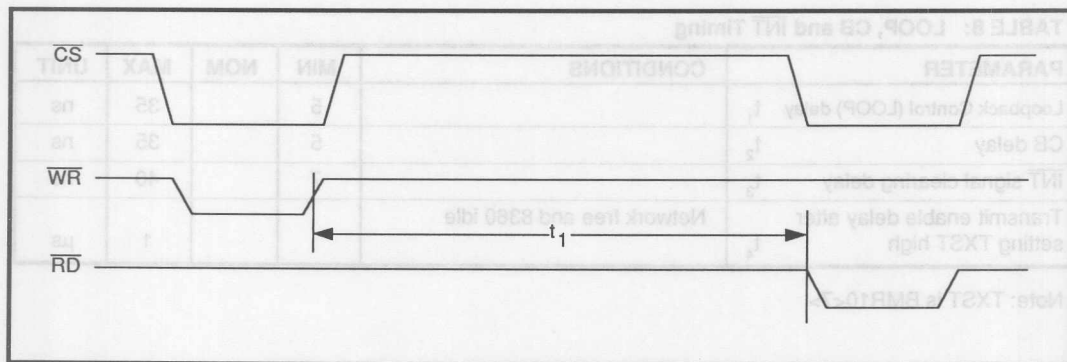


FIGURE 10: Skip Packet Timing

TABLE 7: Skip Packet Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| Writing Skip Packet high to next Buffer Memory Port read t_1 | | 200 | | | ns |

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

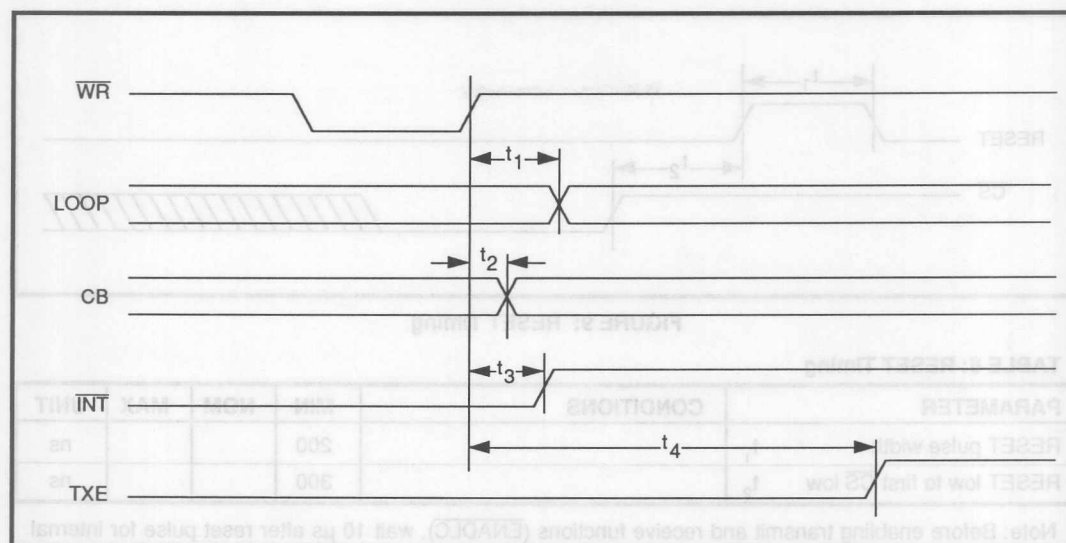


FIGURE 11: LOOP, CB and $\overline{\text{INT}}$ Timing

TABLE 8: LOOP, CB and $\overline{\text{INT}}$ Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|---------------|
| Loopback Control (LOOP) delay t_1 | | 5 | | 35 | ns |
| CB delay t_2 | | 5 | | 35 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal clearing delay t_3 | | 7 | | 40 | ns |
| Transmit enable delay after setting TXST high t_4 | Network free and 8360 idle | | | 1 | μs |

Note: TXST is BMR10<7>

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

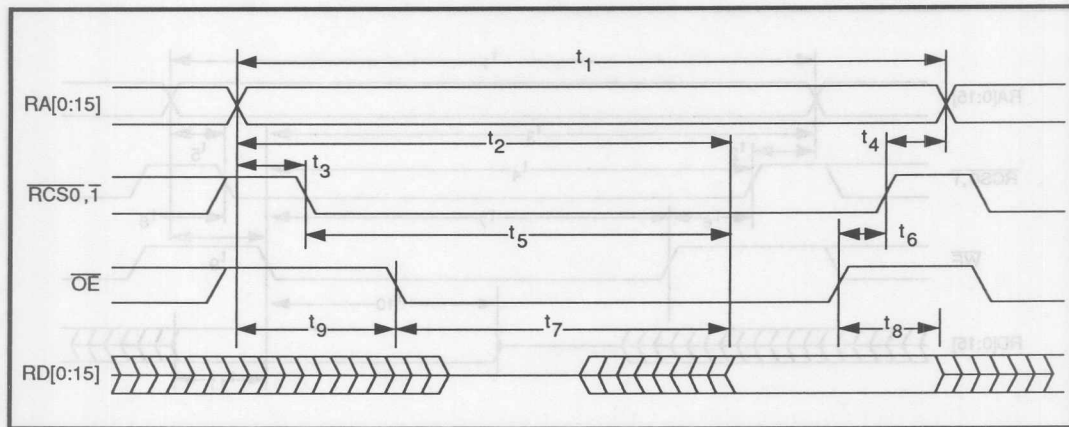


FIGURE 12: SRAM Read Timing

TABLE 9: SRAM Read Timing

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| Read cycle | t_1 | RAMSP = 1 | 95 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 145 | | | ns |
| Address access time | t_2 | RAMSP = 1 | | | 80 | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | | | 130 | ns |
| Address valid to $\overline{\text{RCS0,1}}$ low | t_3 | | 0 | | 5 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{RCS0,1}}$ high to address invalid | t_4 | | 0 | | | ns |
| Chip select access time | t_5 | RAMSP = 1 | | | 80 | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | | | 130 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{OE}}$ high to $\overline{\text{RCS0,1}}$ high | t_6 | | 0 | | 3 | ns |
| Output enable access time | t_7 | RAMSP = 1 | | | 50 | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | | | 100 | ns |
| Data hold time | t_8 | | 0 | | | ns |
| Address valid to $\overline{\text{OE}}$ low | t_9 | | | | 30 | ns |

Note: Use SRAM with address access time of 80 ns or less for RAMSP = 1 and 130 ns or less for RAMSP = 0. RAMSP is DLCR6 <6>.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

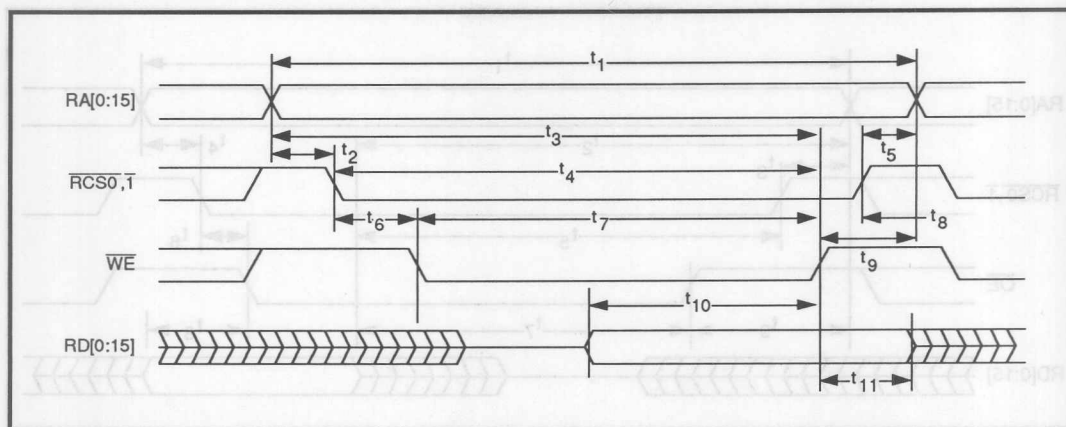


FIGURE 13: SRAM Write Timing

TABLE 10: SRAM Write Timing

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|-----------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| Write Cycle | t ₁ | RAMSP = 1 | 95 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 145 | | | ns |
| Address Valid to $\overline{\text{RCS0}}, \overline{1}$ low | t ₂ | | - | | 5 | ns |
| Address Valid to $\overline{\text{WE}}$ high | t ₃ | RAMSP = 1 | 70 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 120 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{RCS0}}, \overline{1}$ low to $\overline{\text{WE}}$ high | t ₄ | RAMSP = 1 | 70 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 120 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{RCS0}}, \overline{1}$ high to Address Invalid | t ₅ | | 0 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{RCS0}}, \overline{1}$ low to $\overline{\text{WE}}$ low | t ₆ | | 0 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{WE}}$ Pulse Width | t ₇ | RAMSP = 1 | 70 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 120 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{WE}}$ high to $\overline{\text{RCS0}}, \overline{1}$ high | t ₈ | | 0 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{WE}}$ high to Address Invalid | t ₉ | | 20 | | | ns |
| Data Setup Time | t ₁₀ | RAMSP = 1 | 40 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 90 | | | ns |
| Data Hold Time | t ₁₁ | | 20 | | | ns |

Note: Use SRAM with address access time of 80 ns or less for RAMSP = 1 and 130 ns or less for RAMSP = 0. RAMSP is DLCR6 <6>.

SSI 78Q8360 Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

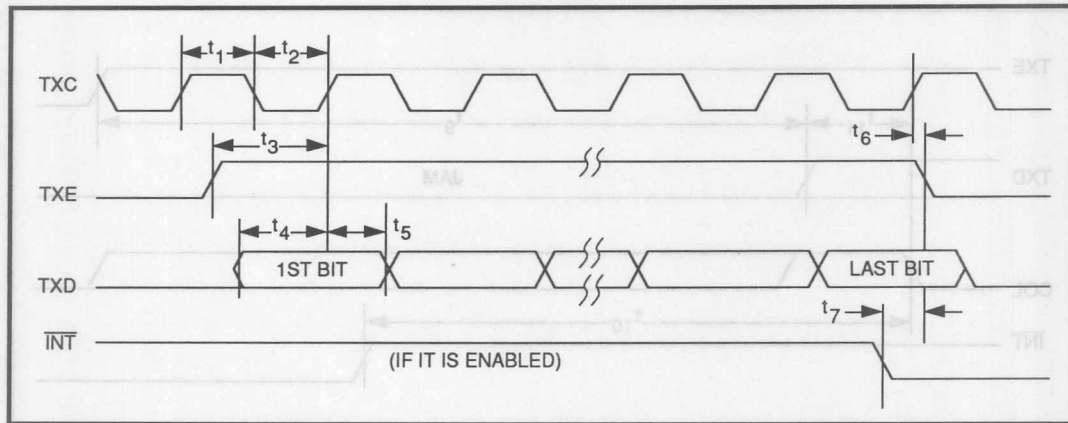


FIGURE 14: Transmit Timing

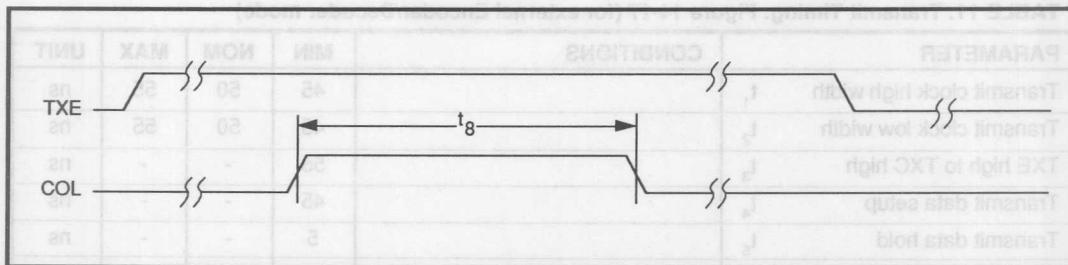


FIGURE 15: Transmit Timing

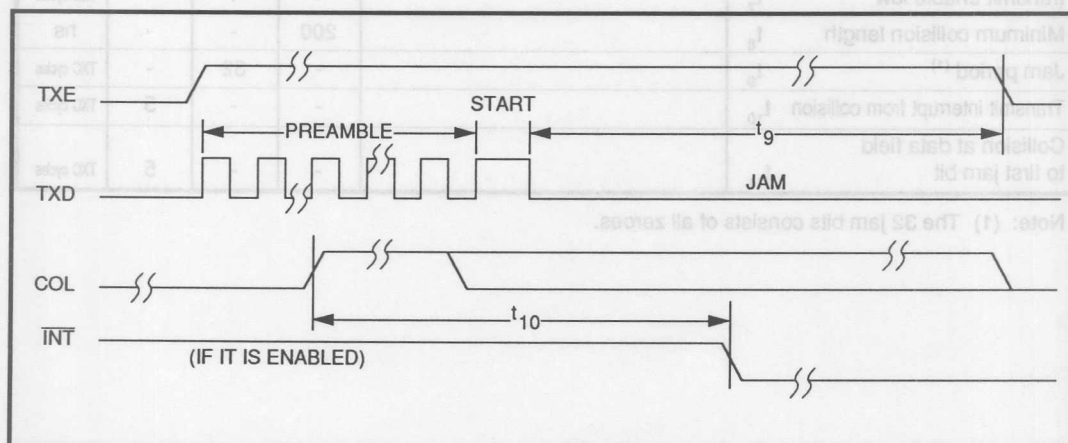


FIGURE 16: Transmit Timing

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

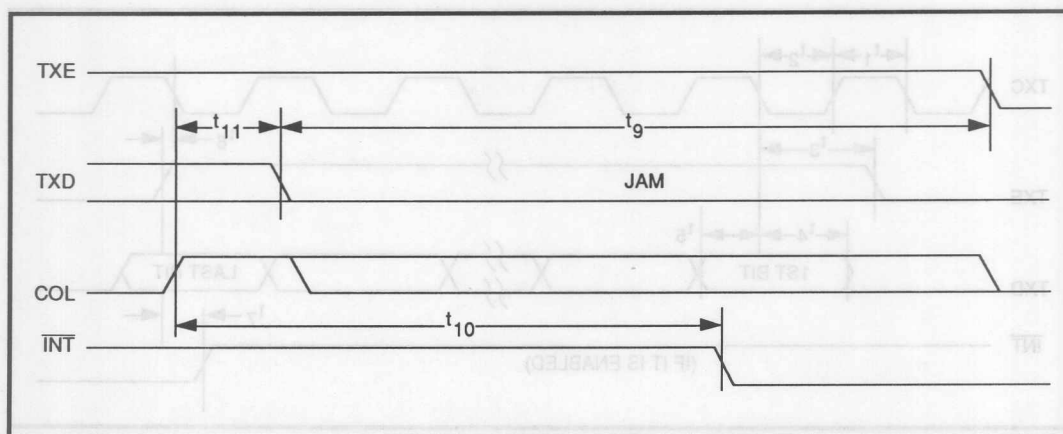


FIGURE 17: Transmit Timing

TABLE 11: Transmit Timing: Figure 14-17 (for external Encoder/Decoder mode)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------------|
| Transmit clock high width | t_1 | 45 | 50 | 55 | ns |
| Transmit clock low width | t_2 | 45 | 50 | 55 | ns |
| TXE high to TXC high | t_3 | 55 | - | - | ns |
| Transmit data setup | t_4 | 45 | - | - | ns |
| Transmit data hold | t_5 | 5 | - | - | ns |
| TXC high to TXE low | t_6 | - | - | 35 | ns |
| Transmit interrupt low to transmit enable low | t_7 | - | 1 | - | TXC cycles |
| Minimum collision length | t_8 | 200 | - | - | ns |
| Jam period ⁽¹⁾ | t_9 | - | 32 | - | TXC cycles |
| Transmit interrupt from collision | t_{10} | - | - | 5 | TXC cycles |
| Collision at data field to first jam bit | t_{11} | - | - | 5 | TXC cycles |

Note: (1) The 32 jam bits consists of all zeroes.

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

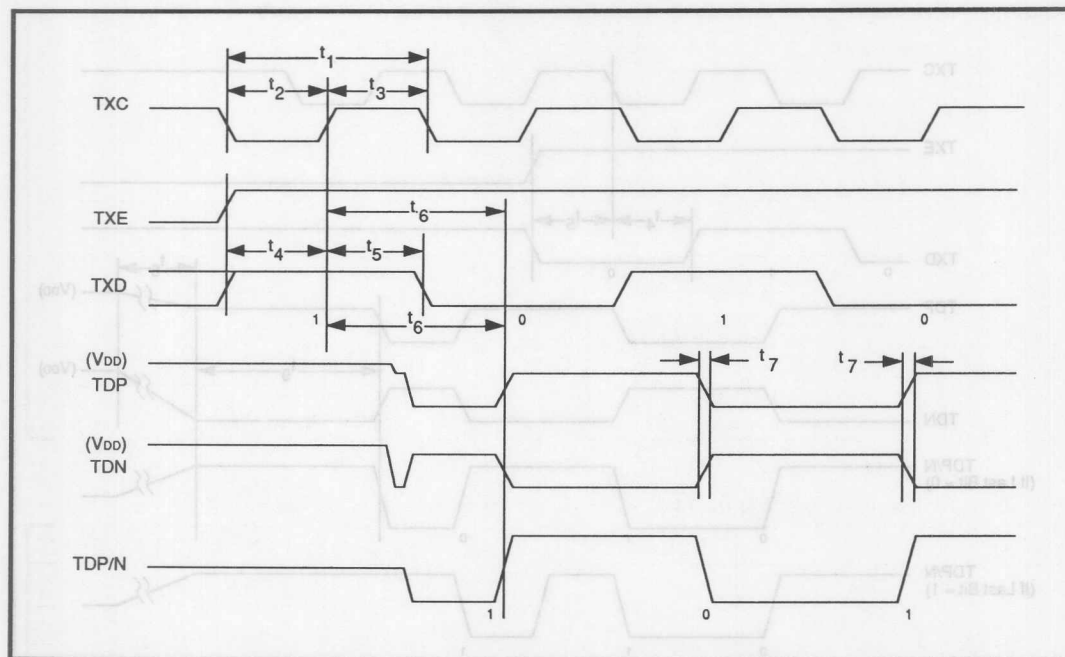


FIGURE 18: Transmit Start Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------------|---|-------|-----|--------|------|
| TXC cycle time | | 98.98 | 100 | 100.01 | ns |
| TXC high width | | 40 | 50 | 80 | ns |
| TXC low width | | 40 | 50 | 80 | ns |
| TXD, TXE setup time to TXC | | - | 30 | - | ns |
| TXD, TXE hold time from TXC | | - | 20 | - | ns |
| TDP/N encode time | | - | 90 | - | ns |
| TDP/N tailtime time | 50% to 80% NEXT = 50 kΩ R _T = 75Ω | - | 5 | - | ns |
| TDP/N line voltage transition | | - | - | 8 | µs |
| TDP/N end-of-packet delimiter | | 200 | - | - | ns |

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

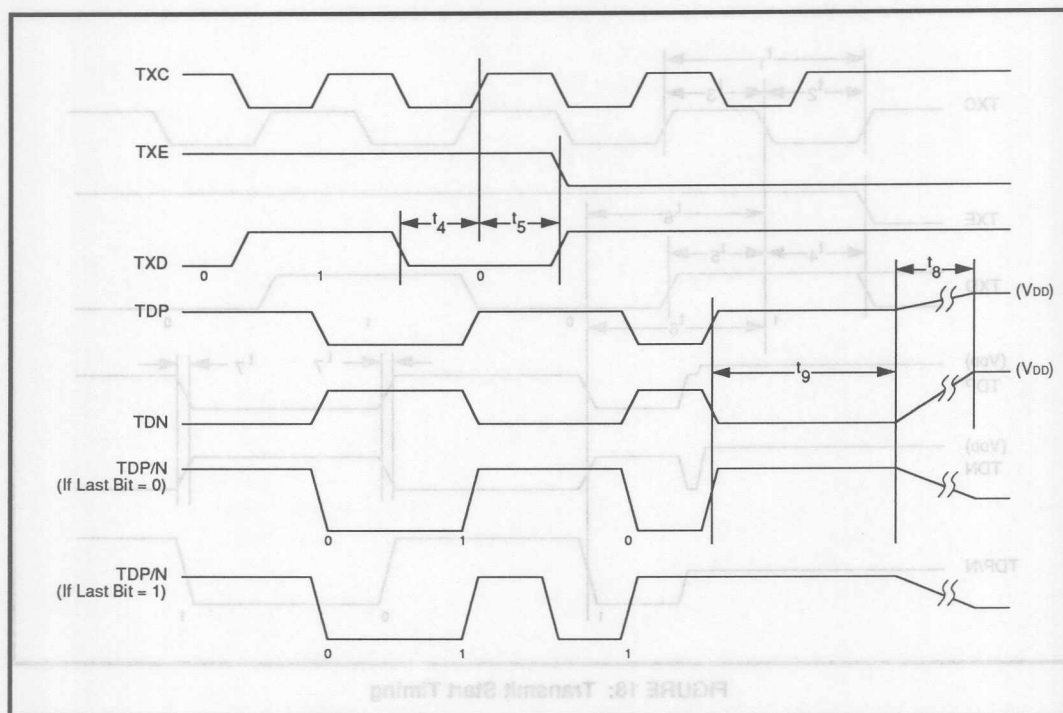


FIGURE 19: Transmit End Timing

TABLE 12: Transmit Start and End Timing: Figure 18-19 (for Encoder/Decoder Test mode)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------------|------------|---|-----|--------|---------------|
| TXC cycle time | t_1 | 99.99 | 100 | 100.01 | ns |
| TXC high width | t_2 | 40 | 50 | 60 | ns |
| TXC low width | t_3 | 40 | 50 | 60 | ns |
| TXD, TXE setup time to TXC | t_4 | - | 30 | - | ns |
| TXD, TXE hold time from TXC | t_5 | - | 20 | - | ns |
| TDP/N encode time | t_6 | - | 90 | - | ns |
| TDP,N fall/rise time | t_7 | 20% to 80%, $R_{EXT} = 20\text{ k}\Omega$, $R_T = 78\Omega$ | - | 2 | ns |
| TDP/N line voltage transition | t_8 | - | - | 8 | μs |
| TDP/N end-of-packet delimiter | t_9 | 200 | - | - | ns |

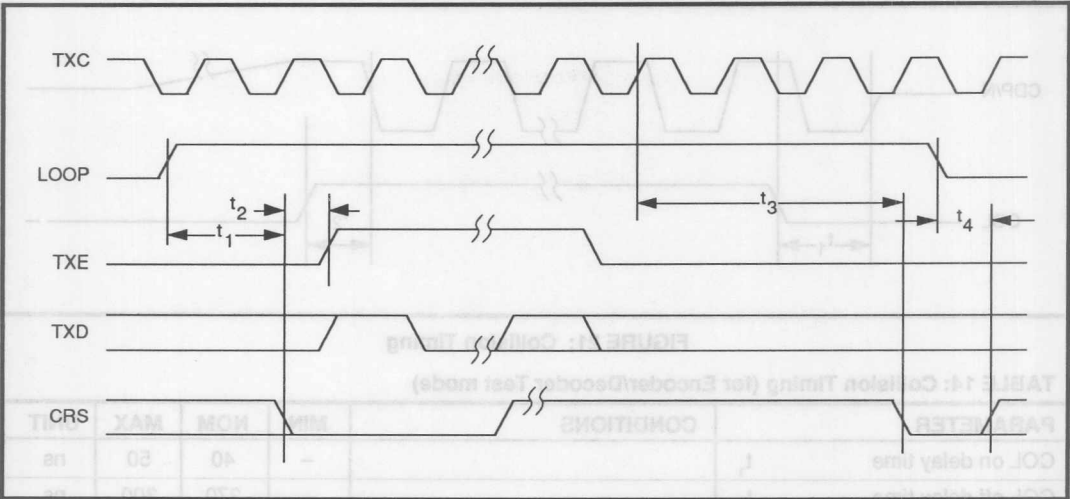


FIGURE 20: Loopback Timing

TABLE 13: Loopback Timing (for Encoder/Decoder test mode)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| Loop receiving data purge time t_1 | | - | 180 | - | ns |
| Wait time from CRS low to TXE high t_2 | | 9.6 | - | - | μ s |
| Data through time t_3 | | - | 190 | - | ns |
| Loop receiving data accept time t_4 | | - | 30 | - | ns |

SSI 78Q8360
Ethernet Controller/
ENDEC Combo

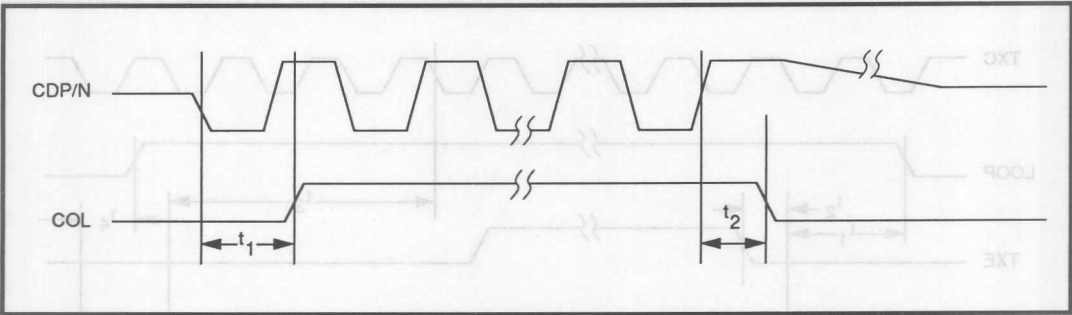


FIGURE 21: Collision Timing

TABLE 14: Collision Timing (for Encoder/Decoder Test mode)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--------------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| COL on delay time | t_1 | — | 40 | 50 | ns |
| COL off delay time | t_2 | — | 270 | 300 | ns |

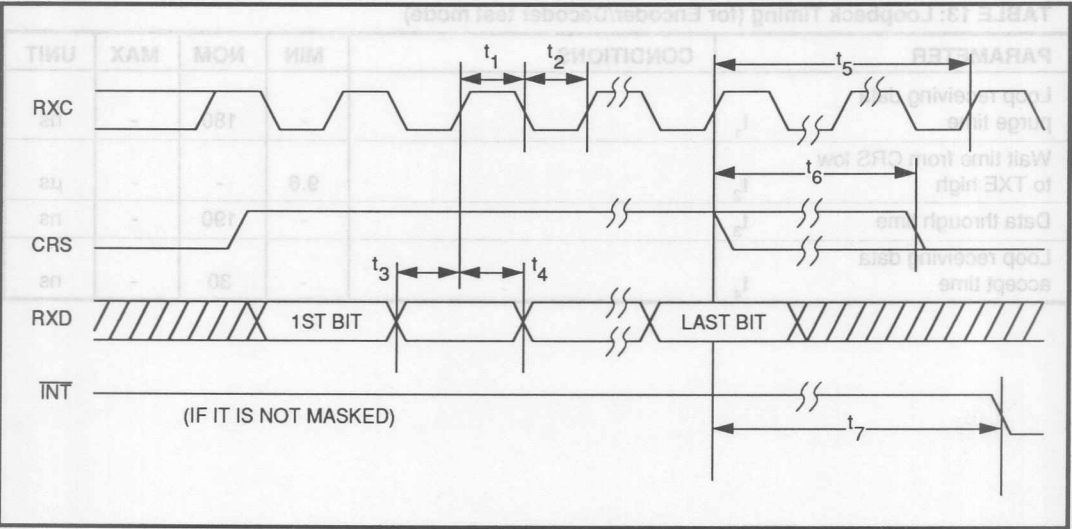


FIGURE 22: Receive Timing

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

TABLE 15: Receive Timing (for external Encoder/Decoder mode)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|-------------|-----|-----|-----|------------|
| Receive clock high width | t_1 | 40 | | | ns |
| Receive clock low width | t_2 | 40 | | | ns |
| Receive data and carrier sense setup | t_3 | 20 | | | ns |
| Receive data and carrier sense hold | t_4 | 20 | | | ns |
| Number of RXC cycles after last bit | t_5 | 1 | | | RXC cycles |
| Receive carrier sense drop after last bit | t_6 | | | 7 | RXC cycles |
| Last bit of packet received to interrupt | Good packet | | | 8 | RXC cycles |
| | Bad packet | | | 2 | RXC cycles |

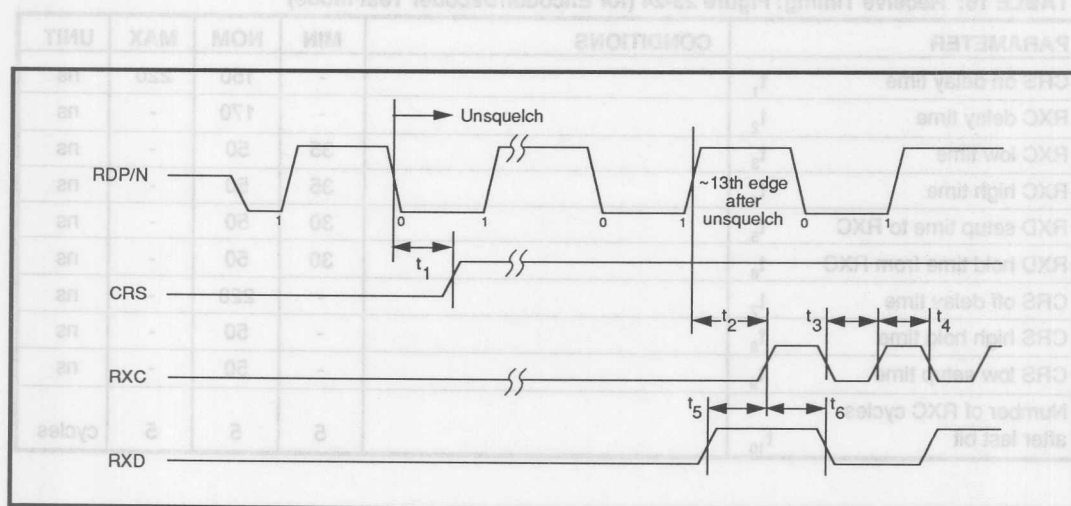


FIGURE 23: Receive Start Timing

SSI 78Q8360

Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

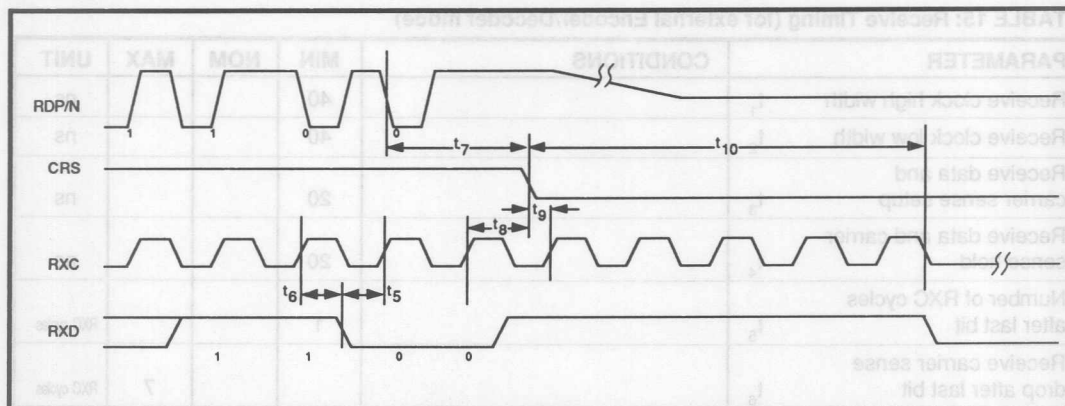


FIGURE 24: Receive End Timing

TABLE 16: Receive Timing: Figure 23-24 (for Encoder/Decoder Test mode)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| CRS on delay time | t_1 | - | 150 | 220 | ns |
| RXC delay time | t_2 | - | 170 | - | ns |
| RXC low time | t_3 | 35 | 50 | - | ns |
| RXC high time | t_4 | 35 | 50 | - | ns |
| RXD setup time to RXC | t_5 | 30 | 50 | - | ns |
| RXD hold time from RXC | t_6 | 30 | 50 | - | ns |
| CRS off delay time | t_7 | - | 220 | - | ns |
| CRS high hold time | t_8 | - | 50 | - | ns |
| CRS low setup time | t_9 | - | 50 | - | ns |
| Number of RXC cycles after last bit | t_{10} | 5 | 5 | 5 | cycles |

SSI 78Q8360 Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

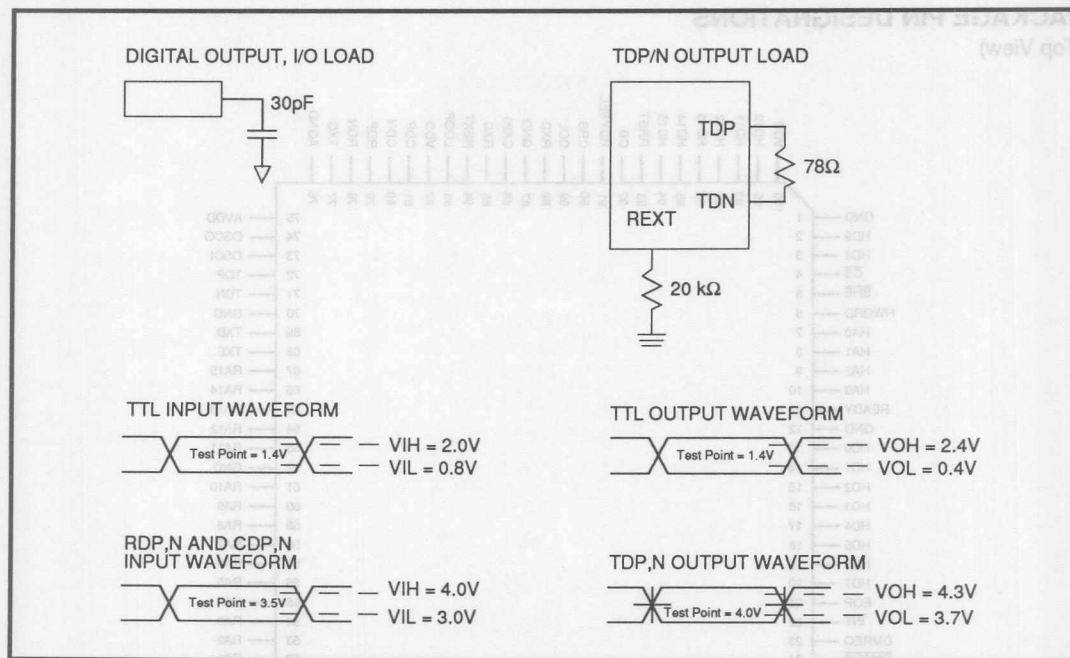
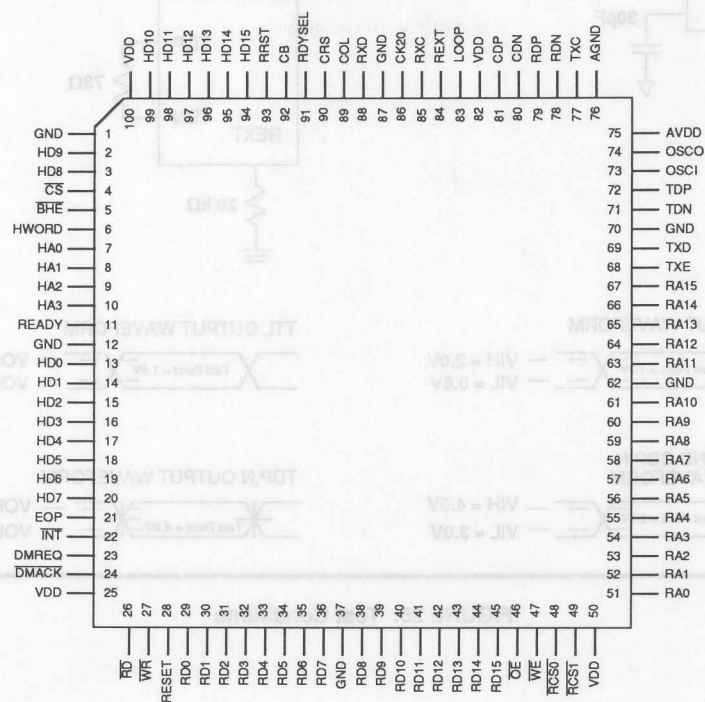


FIGURE 25: Test Conditions

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

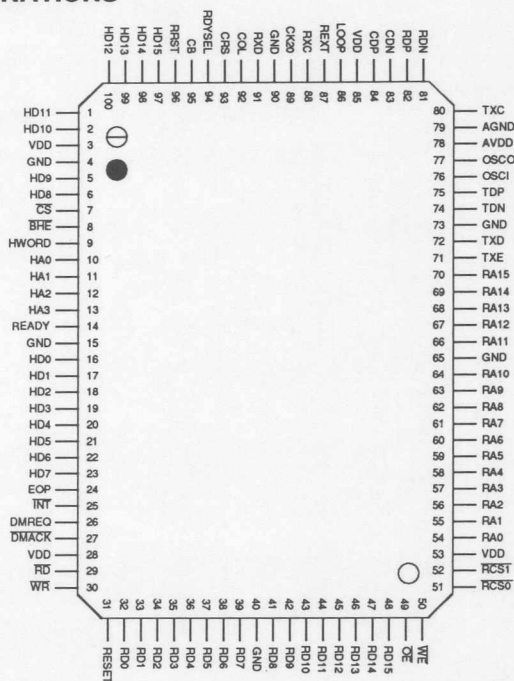
(Top View)



100-Lead TQFP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

(Top View)



100-Lead QFP

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

8

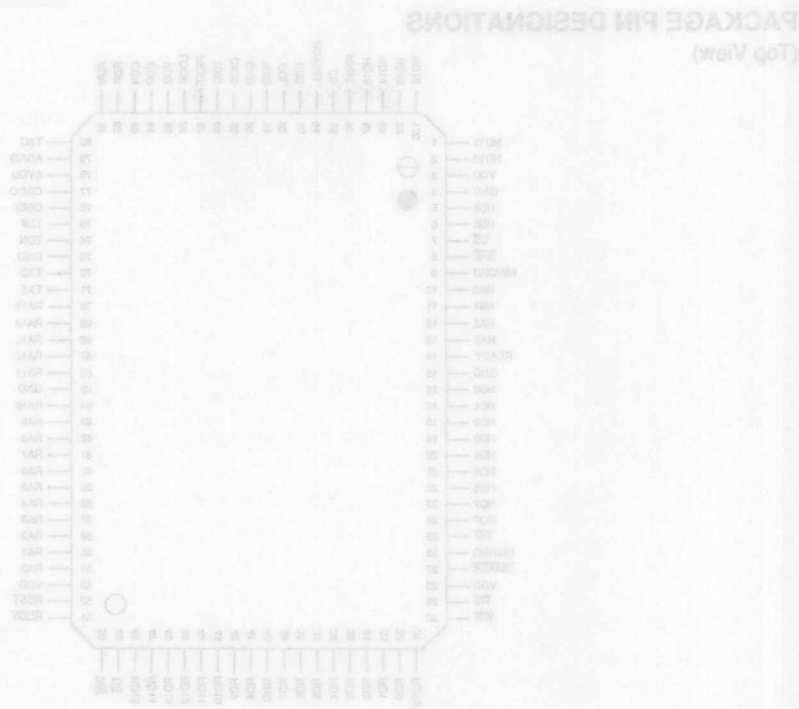
| PART DESCRIPTION | | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|---|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 78Q8360 - Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo | | | |
| | 100-lead QFP | 78Q8360-CG | 78Q8360-CG |
| | 100-lead TQFP | 78Q8360-CGT | 78Q8360-CGT |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

©1992 Silicon Systems, Inc.

SSI 7808360 Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo

Notes:



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

100-lead QFP

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 7808360 - Ethernet Controller/ ENDEC Combo 100-lead QFP | 7808360-CG | 7808360-CG |
| 100-lead TQFP | 7808360-CGT | 7808360-CGT |

Preliminary Data: Indicates a product not completely released to production. The specifications are based on preliminary evaluations and are not guaranteed. Small quantities are available, and Silicon Systems should be consulted for current information.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product not for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc. 14321 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7025, (714) 875-6000, FAX (714) 875-0914

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78Q8370 is a highly integrated Ethernet IC for use in PCMCIA (Personal Computer Memory Card International Association) applications. It contains a Media Access Controller (MAC), a 10 Mbit/s Manchester encoder/decoder (ENDEC), a 10Base-T transceiver, a memory-card bus interface (PCMCIA), and an Attachment Unit Interface (AUI). This level of integration allows the user to implement a PCMCIA card for 10Base-T using only the SSI 78Q8370, external memory, and some passive components. The internal bus interface circuit allows connection to a PCMCIA 2.1 bus without other external components. The PCMCIA bus-decoding logic can be bypassed for connection to other bus types. The SSI 78Q8370 connects to twisted-pair media via line transformers through the on-chip transceiver circuit. Connection to other media such as coaxial cable is made through the AUI port to an external transceiver, such as the SSI 78Q8330 Ethernet Coax Transceiver.

The SSI 78Q8370 has a sophisticated power management capability with three different operating modes allowing the user to maximize power savings, making it ideal for use in PCMCIA applications. During normal operation, the IC monitors its own actions and shuts down the circuits that are not being used, resulting in the lowest possible operating power. It also has a standby mode which leaves only the oscillator running, and a full shutdown mode which also turns off the oscillator.

An intelligent Buffer Manager is controlled by the host read, host write, receive and transmit pointers, and the SSI 78Q8370 manages the pointers internally without any host intervention. The device interleaves access to the buffer memory so that accesses from the host and from the network media seem to operate concurrently. Big and little endian byte orderings make for simple bus interface to all standard microprocessors.

The SSI 78Q8370 is available in both a 100-lead QFP and thin QFP (TQFP) packages, and uses a single 5V supply.

FEATURES

- **Single-chip solution for 10Base-T/PCMCIA designs**
- **Integrated 10Base-T transceiver:**
 - Programmable/automatic selection of twisted pair (RJ45) or AUI port
 - Receive polarity detection/correction on twisted-pair inputs
- **Manchester Encoder/Decoder circuit**
- **AUI port for connection to 10Base2/5 transceiver or AUI cable**
- **Integrated bus interface compliant with PCMCIA release 2.1 specification**
- **Bus interface can be bypassed for non-PCMCIA applications**
- **Protocol Controller compliant with IEEE 802.3 and Ethernet 2.0**
- **Advanced Buffer Manager architecture:**
 - Automatic management of all pointers
 - Allows "simultaneous" access to data in buffer memory by both the network and host
 - High-speed received packet skip
- **Configurable Buffer Memory for design flexibility:**
 - Two-bank transmit buffer in 2, 4, 8, or 16 Kbyte sizes
 - Ring-structure receive buffer from 4 to 62 Kbytes
- **Software-configurable system bus structure:**
 - Compatible with major microprocessors
 - 8- or 16-bit wide data path communications with hosts
- **Power management options:**
 - Intelligent power mode automatically shuts off unused circuitry
 - Standby mode reduces power while not in operation
 - Full shutdown mode offers maximum power savings
- **Multicast address filtering via 64-element hash table**
- **Available in 100-lead QFP and TQFP**

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The 78Q8370 consists of six major blocks as shown in Figure 1.

- Buffer Manager (and SRAM Interface)
- Data Link Controller
- Host/PCMCIA Interface
- Manchester ENDEC
- Twisted Pair Transceiver
- Power Management

BUFFER MANAGER

The Buffer Manager manages all accesses to the buffer memory through the SRAM interface. The buffer memory is connected directly to the Data Link Controller (DLC), thus eliminating the need for a local microprocessor. The Buffer Manager also keeps track of all buffer memory pointers automatically, simplifying the software driver task. Together with intelligent arbitration, this makes the 8370 a high performance LAN controller.

The buffer memory is divided into two portions: transmit memory portion and receive memory portion. The transmit memory portion can be partitioned into 2K, 4K, 8K or 16 Kbyte buffer sizes. There is only one transmit bank if a 2 KB transmit buffer size is selected. If the transmit buffer size is greater than 2 KB, then the transmit buffer is configured into two banks of equal size. With the two bank configuration, one transmit bank may be tied up during transmission but the host can still continue to load data packets into the second transmit bank to be transmitted later. The receive buffer has a ring architecture which can be configured from 4K to 62 KB depending on the buffer memory configuration which has a range of 8K to 64 KB.

A central arbitrator inside the Buffer Manager prioritizes and services requests for access to the buffer memory from 4 sources: the Transmitter, the Receiver, Host Read and Host Write. If necessary, the 8370 will assert a 'not ready' handshake to the host while servicing the Transmitter and/or Receiver. The 8370 arbitration mechanism provides packet management by interleaving packet data accesses to the buffer memory such that the operations appear to be simultaneous.

For instance, in the situation where 2 transmit banks are configured, the host can load the first transmit bank and initiate a transmission. While the first transmit bank

is being transmitted, the host can continue to load packets in the second transmit bank. At this stage, the 8370 can potentially be receiving data from the medium and loading it into the receive buffer (if the 8370 is in a loop back mode or if self-reception occurs).

DATA LINK CONTROLLER

The Data Link Controller (DLC) implements the ISO/ANSI/IEEE 8802-3 CSMA/CD protocol. It consists of a Transmitter, a Receiver and CRC logic (which is shared by both transmit and receive operations). Automatic generation and stripping of the 64-bit preamble and the 32-bit CRC code are provided on-chip.

HOST/PCMCIA INTERFACE

The Host Interface (HIF) provides connection to the host system. It consists of the various registers, DMA circuits and ready logic. Both word and byte interfaces are supported as well as big endian and little endian data ordering. Host access to the buffer memory is through BMR8 (and BMR9). Reading from BMR8 will read a byte or word from the receive buffer and writing to BMR8 will write a byte or word to the transmit buffer. The ready logic is capable of delaying host access to the buffer memory with a time-out mechanism. Both single and burst DMA transfer modes are supported.

The PCMCIA interface circuitry builds on top of the 8370 generic host interface and is only active if the MODE pin is left unconnected (internally pulled-up). The 8370 can thus connect directly to a PCMCIA release 2.1 compliant bus. It also supports decoding for the external CIS memory (both ROM and Flash types). The 8370 pinout has been defined to minimize criss-crossing connections to the PCMCIA connector. This allows for a cost effective 2-layer PCB design.

MANCHESTER ENDEC

This block implements Manchester encoding and decoding. Serial NRZ data from the DLC is converted to Manchester encoded data and sent to either the twisted-pair transceiver block or to the Attachment Unit Interface (AUI) driver, depending on which block is active. The decoder section performs three functions: clock recovery, carrier detection and Manchester decoding. The recovered receive clock will be low at the end of reception and during idle to save power. Jitter of up to ± 18 ns can be tolerated by the decoder. This block also translates a 10 MHz collision signal to a logic-level signal before sending it to the DLC block if the AUI port is selected.

SSI 78Q8370 PCMCIA Ethernet Combo

TWISTED PAIR TRANSCEIVER

The on-chip Twisted Pair module consists of a number of functions. It has a smart squelch circuitry to determine valid data present on the differential receive inputs TPIP/TPIN. Its transmit and pre-distortion drivers connect to the twisted pair network via the summing resistors and transformer/filter. The link detector/generator circuitry checks the integrity of the cable connecting the two twisted pair MAUs. Collision, jabber and SQE are also incorporated.

POWER MANAGEMENT

One very useful and important feature that the 8370 offers is intelligent power management. It supports three different power saving modes: Intelligent, Standby, and Full Shutdown. All modes are configurable through registers. In the Intelligent mode, clocks are active only when they are needed. For example, when not transmitting, the clock supplied to the transmitter circuit in the DLC block is not active while host read from buffer memory may be active. In Standby mode, the oscillator clock is disconnected from the rest of the circuits, so that only the oscillator circuits draw power. Full Shutdown turns off the oscillator, resulting in maximum power savings. Note that this mode is not available when using an external clock source.

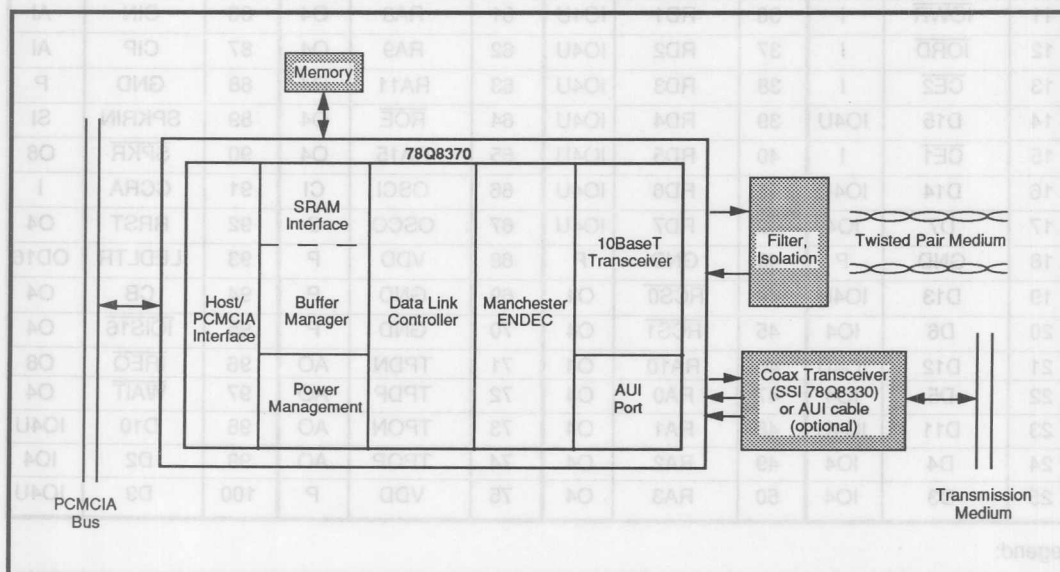


FIGURE 1: System Diagram

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

Pin Assignment Table - PCMCIA Bus Mode - 100-Pin TQFP

| PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE |
|------|-------------------|------|------|---------------------|------|------|------------------|------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1 | D1 | IO4 | 26 | \overline{OE} | I | 51 | RA4 | O4 | 76 | DON | AO |
| 2 | D8 | IO4U | 27 | \overline{WE} | I | 52 | RA5 | O4 | 77 | DOP | AO |
| 3 | D0 | IO4 | 28 | \overline{INPACK} | O4 | 53 | RA6 | O4 | 78 | AGND | P |
| 4 | A0 | I | 29 | \overline{REG} | I | 54 | GND | P | 79 | REXT | R |
| 5 | A1 | I | 30 | \overline{ROMG} | O4 | 55 | VDD | P | 80 | AVDD | P |
| 6 | A2 | I | 31 | \overline{FCE} | O4 | 56 | RA7 | O4 | 81 | TPIN | AI |
| 7 | A3 | I | 32 | \overline{XPD} | O4 | 57 | RA12 | O4 | 82 | TPIP | AI |
| 8 | RESET | SI | 33 | XRST | O4 | 58 | RA14 | O4 | 83 | MODE | TI |
| 9 | VDD | P | 34 | GND | P | 59 | \overline{RWE} | O4 | 84 | DIN | AI |
| 10 | GND | P | 35 | RD0 | IO4U | 60 | RA13 | O4 | 85 | DIP | AI |
| 11 | \overline{IOWR} | I | 36 | RD1 | IO4U | 61 | RA8 | O4 | 86 | CIN | AI |
| 12 | \overline{IORD} | I | 37 | RD2 | IO4U | 62 | RA9 | O4 | 87 | CIP | AI |
| 13 | $\overline{CE2}$ | I | 38 | RD3 | IO4U | 63 | RA11 | O4 | 88 | GND | P |
| 14 | D15 | IO4U | 39 | RD4 | IO4U | 64 | \overline{ROE} | O4 | 89 | SPKRIN | SI |
| 15 | $\overline{CE1}$ | I | 40 | RD5 | IO4U | 65 | RA15 | O4 | 90 | \overline{SPKR} | O8 |
| 16 | D14 | IO4U | 41 | RD6 | IO4U | 66 | OSCI | CI | 91 | CCRA | I |
| 17 | D7 | IO4 | 42 | RD7 | IO4U | 67 | OSCO | O | 92 | RRST | O4 |
| 18 | GND | P | 43 | GND | P | 68 | VDD | P | 93 | LEDLTR | OD16 |
| 19 | D13 | IO4U | 44 | $\overline{RCS0}$ | O4 | 69 | GND | P | 94 | CB | O4 |
| 20 | D6 | IO4 | 45 | $\overline{RCS1}$ | O4 | 70 | GND | P | 95 | $\overline{IOIS16}$ | O4 |
| 21 | D12 | IO4U | 46 | RA10 | O4 | 71 | TPDN | AO | 96 | \overline{IREQ} | O8 |
| 22 | D5 | IO4 | 47 | RA0 | O4 | 72 | TPDP | AO | 97 | \overline{WAIT} | O4 |
| 23 | D11 | IO4U | 48 | RA1 | O4 | 73 | TPON | AO | 98 | D10 | IO4U |
| 24 | D4 | IO4 | 49 | RA2 | O4 | 74 | TPOP | AO | 99 | D2 | IO4 |
| 25 | D3 | IO4 | 50 | RA3 | O4 | 75 | VDD | P | 100 | D9 | IO4U |

Legend:

- I: Input (TTL level)
- O4, O8: Output with IOL = 4 or 8 mA
- OD16: Output Open Drain with IOL = 16 mA
- IO4, IO4U: Input (TTL level) and Output with IOL = 4 mA; IO4U refers to IO4 with an internal pull-up resistor
- CI: CMOS level input
- SI: Schmitt trigger input
- TI: Three-state input. May be connected to low, high, or left open.
- AI: Analog input
- AO: Analog output
- P: Power
- R: Resistor to ground
- O: Output

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

Pin Assignment Table - PCMCIA Bus Mode - 100-Pin QFP

| PIN # | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE |
|-------|-------------------|------|------|---------------------|------|------|------------------|------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1 | D10 | IO4U | 26 | D11 | IO4U | 51 | RA1 | O4 | 76 | TPON | AO |
| 2 | D2 | IO4 | 27 | D4 | IO4 | 52 | RA2 | O4 | 77 | TPOP | AO |
| 3 | D9 | IO4U | 28 | D3 | IO4 | 53 | RA3 | O4 | 78 | VDD | P |
| 4 | D1 | IO4 | 29 | \overline{OE} | I | 54 | RA4 | O4 | 79 | DON | AO |
| 5 | D8 | IO4U | 30 | \overline{WE} | I | 55 | RA5 | O4 | 80 | DOP | AO |
| 6 | D0 | IO4 | 31 | \overline{INPACK} | O4 | 56 | RA6 | O4 | 81 | AGND | P |
| 7 | A0 | I | 32 | \overline{REG} | I | 57 | GND | P | 82 | REXT | R |
| 8 | A1 | I | 33 | \overline{ROMG} | O4 | 58 | VDD | P | 83 | AVDD | P |
| 9 | A2 | I | 34 | \overline{FCE} | O4 | 59 | RA7 | O4 | 84 | TPIN | AI |
| 10 | A3 | I | 35 | \overline{XPD} | O4 | 60 | RA12 | O4 | 85 | TPIP | AI |
| 11 | RESET | SI | 36 | XRST | O4 | 61 | RA14 | O4 | 86 | MODE | TI |
| 12 | VDD | P | 37 | GND | P | 62 | \overline{RWE} | O4 | 87 | DIN | AI |
| 13 | GND | P | 38 | RD0 | IO4U | 63 | RA13 | O4 | 88 | DIP | AI |
| 14 | \overline{IOWR} | I | 39 | RD1 | IO4U | 64 | RA8 | O4 | 89 | CIN | AI |
| 15 | \overline{IORD} | I | 40 | RD2 | IO4U | 65 | RA9 | O4 | 90 | CIP | AI |
| 16 | $\overline{CE2}$ | I | 41 | RD3 | IO4U | 66 | RA11 | O4 | 91 | GND | P |
| 17 | D15 | IO4U | 42 | RD4 | IO4U | 67 | \overline{ROE} | O4 | 92 | SPKRIN | SI |
| 18 | $\overline{CE1}$ | I | 43 | RD5 | IO4U | 68 | RA15 | O4 | 93 | \overline{SPKR} | O8 |
| 19 | D14 | IO4U | 44 | RD6 | IO4U | 69 | OSCI | CI | 94 | CCRA | I |
| 20 | D7 | IO4 | 45 | RD7 | IO4U | 70 | OSCO | O | 95 | RRST | O4 |
| 21 | GND | P | 46 | GND | P | 71 | VDD | P | 96 | LEDLTR | OD16 |
| 22 | D13 | IO4U | 47 | $\overline{RCS0}$ | O4 | 72 | GND | P | 97 | CB | O4 |
| 23 | D6 | IO4 | 48 | $\overline{RCS1}$ | O4 | 73 | GND | P | 98 | $\overline{IOIS16}$ | O4 |
| 24 | D12 | IO4U | 49 | RA10 | O4 | 74 | TPDN | AO | 99 | \overline{IREQ} | O8 |
| 25 | D5 | IO4 | 50 | RA0 | O4 | 75 | TPDP | AO | 100 | \overline{WAIT} | O4 |

Legend:

- I: Input (TTL level)
- O4, O8: Output with IOL = 4 or 8 mA
- OD16: Output Open Drain with IOL = 16 mA
- IO4, IO4U: Input (TTL level) and Output with IOL = 4 mA; IO4U refers to IO4 with an internal pull-up resistor
- CI: CMOS level input
- SI: Schmitt trigger input
- TI: Three-state input. May be connected to low, high, or left open.
- AI: Analog input
- AO: Analog output
- P: Power
- R: Resistor to ground
- O: Output

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

Pin Assignment Table - Generic Bus Mode - 100-Pin TQFP

| PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE |
|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|
| 1 | HD1 | IO4 | 26 | RD8 | IO4U | 51 | RA4 | O4 | 76 | DON | AO |
| 2 | HD8 | IO4U | 27 | RD9 | IO4U | 52 | RA5 | O4 | 77 | DOP | AO |
| 3 | HD0 | IO4 | 28 | RD10 | IO4U | 53 | RA6 | O4 | 78 | AGND | P |
| 4 | HA0 | I | 29 | RD11 | IO4U | 54 | GND | P | 79 | REXT | R |
| 5 | HA1 | I | 30 | RD12 | IO4U | 55 | VDD | P | 80 | AVDD | P |
| 6 | HA2 | I | 31 | RD13 | IO4U | 56 | RA7 | O4 | 81 | TPIN | AI |
| 7 | HA3 | I | 32 | RD14 | IO4U | 57 | RA12 | O4 | 82 | TPIP | AI |
| 8 | RESET | SI | 33 | RD15 | IO4U | 58 | RA14 | O4 | 83 | MODE | TI |
| 9 | VDD | P | 34 | GND | P | 59 | RWE | O4 | 84 | DIN | AI |
| 10 | GND | P | 35 | RD0 | IO4U | 60 | RA13 | O4 | 85 | DIP | AI |
| 11 | WR | I | 36 | RD1 | IO4U | 61 | RA8 | O4 | 86 | CIN | AI |
| 12 | RD | I | 37 | RD2 | IO4U | 62 | RA9 | O4 | 87 | CIP | AI |
| 13 | BHE | I | 38 | RD3 | IO4U | 63 | RA11 | O4 | 88 | GND | P |
| 14 | HD15 | IO4U | 39 | RD4 | IO4U | 64 | ROE | O4 | 89 | DMACK | SI |
| 15 | CS | I | 40 | RD5 | IO4U | 65 | RA15 | O4 | 90 | DMREQ | O8 |
| 16 | HD14 | IO4U | 41 | RD6 | IO4U | 66 | OSCI | CI | 91 | EOP | I |
| 17 | HD7 | IO4 | 42 | RD7 | IO4U | 67 | OSCO | O | 92 | RRST | O4 |
| 18 | GND | P | 43 | GND | IO4U | 68 | VDD | P | 93 | LEDLTR | OD16 |
| 19 | HD13 | IO4U | 44 | RCS0 | P | 69 | GND | P | 94 | CB | O4 |
| 20 | HD6 | IO4 | 45 | RCS1 | O4 | 70 | GND | P | 95 | HWOR | O4 |
| 21 | HD12 | IO4U | 46 | RA10 | O4 | 71 | TPDN | AO | 96 | INT | O8 |
| 22 | HD5 | IO4 | 47 | RA0 | O4 | 72 | TPDP | AO | 97 | READY | O4 |
| 23 | HD11 | IO4U | 48 | RA1 | O4 | 73 | TPON | AO | 98 | HD10 | IO4U |
| 24 | HD4 | IO4 | 49 | RA2 | O4 | 74 | TPOP | AO | 99 | HD2 | IO4 |
| 25 | HD3 | IO4 | 50 | RA3 | O4 | 75 | VDD | P | 100 | HD9 | IO4U |

Legend:

- I: Input (TTL level)
- O4, O8: Output with IOL = 4 or 8 mA
- OD16: Output Open Drain with IOL = 16 mA
- IO4, IO4U: Input (TTL level) and Output with IOL = 4 mA; IO4U refers to IO4 with an internal pull-up resistor
- CI: CMOS level input
- SI: Schmitt trigger input
- TI: Three-state input. May be connected to low, high, or left open.
- AI: Analog input
- AO: Analog output
- P: Power
- R: Resistor to ground
- O: Output

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

Pin Assignment Table - Generic Bus Mode -100-Pin QFP

| PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE |
|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|
| 1 | HD10 | IO4U | 26 | HD11 | IO4U | 51 | RA1 | O4 | 76 | TPON | AO |
| 2 | HD2 | IO4 | 27 | HD4 | IO4 | 52 | RA2 | O4 | 77 | TPOP | AO |
| 3 | HD9 | IO4U | 28 | HD3 | IO4 | 53 | RA3 | O4 | 78 | VDD | P |
| 4 | HD1 | IO4 | 29 | RD8 | IO4U | 54 | RA4 | O4 | 79 | DON | AO |
| 5 | HD8 | IO4U | 30 | RD9 | IO4U | 55 | RA5 | O4 | 80 | DOP | AO |
| 6 | HD0 | IO4 | 31 | RD10 | IO4U | 56 | RA6 | O4 | 81 | AGND | P |
| 7 | HA0 | I | 32 | RD11 | IO4U | 57 | GND | P | 82 | REXT | R |
| 8 | HA1 | I | 33 | RD12 | IO4U | 58 | VDD | P | 83 | AVDD | P |
| 9 | HA2 | I | 34 | RD13 | IO4U | 59 | RA7 | O4 | 84 | TPIN | AI |
| 10 | HA3 | I | 35 | RD14 | IO4U | 60 | RA12 | O4 | 85 | TIPI | AI |
| 11 | RESET | SI | 36 | RD15 | IO4U | 61 | RA14 | O4 | 86 | MODE | TI |
| 12 | VDD | P | 37 | GND | P | 62 | RWE | O4 | 87 | DIN | AI |
| 13 | GND | P | 38 | RD0 | IO4U | 63 | RA13 | O4 | 88 | DIP | AI |
| 14 | WR | I | 39 | RD1 | IO4U | 64 | RA8 | O4 | 89 | CIN | AI |
| 15 | RD | I | 40 | RD2 | IO4U | 65 | RA9 | O4 | 90 | CIP | AI |
| 16 | BHE | I | 41 | RD3 | IO4U | 66 | RA11 | O4 | 91 | GND | P |
| 17 | HD15 | IO4U | 42 | RD4 | IO4U | 67 | ROE | O4 | 92 | DMACK | SI |
| 18 | CS | I | 43 | RD5 | IO4U | 68 | RA15 | O4 | 93 | DMREQ | O8 |
| 19 | HD14 | IO4U | 44 | RD6 | IO4U | 69 | OSCI | CI | 94 | EOP | I |
| 20 | HD7 | IO4 | 45 | RD7 | IO4U | 70 | OSCO | O | 95 | RRST | O4 |
| 21 | GND | P | 46 | GND | P | 71 | VDD | P | 96 | LEDLTR | OD16 |
| 22 | HD13 | IO4U | 47 | RCS0 | O4 | 72 | GND | P | 97 | CB | O4 |
| 23 | HD6 | IO4 | 48 | RCS1 | O4 | 73 | GND | P | 98 | HWORD | O4 |
| 24 | HD12 | IO4U | 49 | RA10 | O4 | 74 | TPDN | AO | 99 | INT | O8 |
| 25 | HD5 | IO4 | 50 | RA0 | O4 | 75 | TPDP | AO | 100 | READY | O4 |

Legend:

- I: Input (TTL level)
- O4, O8: Output with IOL = 4 or 8 mA
- OD16: Output Open Drain with IOL = 16 mA
- IO4, IO4U: Input (TTL level) and Output with IOL = 4 mA; IO4U refers to IO4 with an internal pull-up resistor
- CI: CMOS level input
- SI: Schmitt trigger input
- TI: Three-state input. May be connected to low, high, or left open.
- AI: Analog input
- AO: Analog output
- P: Power
- R: Resistor to ground
- O: Output

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

PIN DESCRIPTION

HOST BUS INTERFACE - PCMCIA BUS MODE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------|--|-------|---------|-----------|----------|-----------|--------|---|---|---|-----------|---|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|----------|---|---|---|---|----------|-----------|---|---|---|---|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|----------|
| RESET | I | HARDWARE RESET. Active high. A minimum pulse length of 800 ns is required. This pin resets the 8370's internal pointers and registers to their appropriate states. It also clears the CI (Configuration Index) in the CCR (Card Configuration Register), thus placing the 8370 in an unconfigured (Memory-only Interface) state. The 8370 remains in the unconfigured state until the CI has been written with a non-zero value. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| IOWR | I | I/O WRITE. The IOWR pin is an active low input that enables a write operation by the host to the 8370 internal registers as selected by the host address inputs A[0:3]. The REG and at least one of CE1 or CE2 must be also active for the I/O write to take place. The 8370 will not respond to the IOWR signal until it has been configured for I/O operation by the host. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| IORD | I | I/O READ. The IORD pin is an active low input that enables a read operation by the host from the 8370 internal registers as selected by the host address inputs A[0:3]. The REG and at least one of CE1 or CE2 must be also active for the I/O read to take place. The 8370 will not respond to the IORD signal until it has been configured for I/O operation by the host. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| CE1, CE2 | I | CHIP ENABLE. Active low input signals acting as chip select for the 8370. CE1 enables even-numbered address bytes and CE2 enables odd-numbered address bytes. When the 8370 is programmed to be in byte mode (DLCR6<5> HBYTE bit is a "1"), CE2 is a don't care and only lower databus D[0:7] is used for data transfer. Combinations of CE1, CE2, A0 and HBYTE bit (DLCR6<5>) are used to select the different modes of I/O space word/byte transfer according to the following table (the table assumes REG is activated): | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | <table><tr><th>HBYTE</th><th>CE2</th><th>CE1</th><th>A0</th><th>D[15:8]</th><th>D[7:0]</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>X</td><td>even-byte</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>X</td><td>odd-byte</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>odd-byte</td><td>even-byte</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>X</td><td>odd-byte</td><td>X</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>X</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>X</td><td>even-byte</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>X</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>X</td><td>odd-byte</td></tr></table> | HBYTE | CE2 | CE1 | A0 | D[15:8] | D[7:0] | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | X | even-byte | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | X | odd-byte | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | odd-byte | even-byte | 0 | 0 | 1 | X | odd-byte | X | 1 | X | 0 | 0 | X | even-byte | 1 | X | 0 | 1 | X | odd-byte |
| | | HBYTE | CE2 | CE1 | A0 | D[15:8] | D[7:0] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | X | even-byte | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | X | odd-byte | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | odd-byte | even-byte | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 0 | 0 | 1 | X | odd-byte | X | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 | X | 0 | 0 | X | even-byte | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 | X | 0 | 1 | X | odd-byte | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | For Attribute Memory access, data transfer occurs only on D[7:0] with the following valid combinations only: | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <table><tr><th>HBYTE</th><th>CE2</th><th>CE1</th><th>A0</th><th>D[15:8]</th><th>D[7:0]</th></tr><tr><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>X</td><td>even-byte</td></tr></table> | HBYTE | CE2 | CE1 | A0 | D[15:8] | D[7:0] | X | X | 0 | 0 | X | even-byte | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| HBYTE | CE2 | CE1 | A0 | D[15:8] | D[7:0] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| X | X | 0 | 0 | X | even-byte | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| CCRA | I | CARD CONFIGURATION REGISTER ADDRESS. This pin connects to PCMCIA higher address bit. A high (together with REG activation) on this bit selects the internal CCR registers and a low selects the external CIS (Card Information Structure) ROM/Flash memory. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| OE | I | OUTPUT ENABLE. An active low input signal used to read data from the internal CCR (Card Configuration Registers) and from the external Attribute Memory (through the activation of FCE and ROMG). This OE should also connect to the output enable of the external Flash Memory or the ROM. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

HOST BUS INTERFACE - PCMCIA BUS MODE (continued)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|------|---|
| WE | I | WRITE ENABLE. An active low input signal used to write data to the internal CCR (Card Configuration Registers) and to the external Attribute (Flash) Memory (through the activation of \overline{FCE}). This WE should also connect to the write enable of the external Flash Memory. |
| REG | I | ATTRIBUTE MEMORY SELECT. When this signal is active (low), it signifies access from or to the Attribute Memory (\overline{OE} or WE active) or the I/O space (\overline{IORD} or \overline{IOWR} active). Attribute Memory is generally used to record card capacity and other configuration and attribute information. This includes the standardized CCRs (Card Configuration Registers) which are located internally in the 8370. When Attribute Memory is accessed, only data signals D[0:7] are valid and signals D[8:15] are ignored. |
| A[0:3] | I | ADDRESS BUS. Selects the set of 8370 internal registers including the CCR (Card Configuration Registers) for read or write operations. |
| D[0:15] | I/O | DATA BUS. A bi-directional, tri-state bus. The combinations of $\overline{CE1}$, $\overline{CE2}$ and A0 control the portion of the bus that is being utilized. A[0:3] and RBNK1,0 (DLCR7<3:2>) select the set of internal registers for access. |

HOST BUS INTERFACE - PCMCIA BUS MODE

The following output signals are inactive (high) until the 8370 is configured for I/O mode.

| | | |
|---------------------|---|--|
| WAIT | O | WAIT. An active low output that is asserted to delay completion of the current I/O read or write operation. It will also be used if the device is unable to respond to read or write requests within 2.4 μ s. In these situations, the 8370 will also assert \overline{IREQ} and the host read error status bit (DLCR1<6>) or host write error status bit (DLCR0<0>). |
| INPACK | O | INPUT ACKNOWLEDGE. This active low output signal is asserted when the 8370 is selected and it can respond to an I/O read cycle requested by the host. This signal is used by the host to control the enable of any input data buffer between the card and the CPU. This signal will only be active after the 8370 is configured for I/O mode. |
| $\overline{IOIS16}$ | O | I/O IS 16 BIT PORT. This active low output signal is asserted when the 8370 is configured for word transfer to indicate to the host that it is capable of 16-bit access. Therefore, this pin follows the register bit HBYTE (DLCR6<5>) once the 8370 is configured for I/O mode. |
| \overline{IREQ} | O | INTERRUPT REQUEST. This signal is available only after the 8370 is configured for I/O mode. It is asserted when the 8370 requires the intervention of the Host in situations as depicted in DLCR0,1 and BMR15. The IREQ signal is masked by writing a "0" to the respective interrupt enable register. To comply to with PCMCIA 2.0 spec, the 8370 supports both Pulsed- and Level- Mode interrupts as selected by the LevIREQ (CCR0<6>) register bit. |
| SPKR | O | SPEAKER. This signal is held inactive (i.e. high) until the 8370 is configured for I/O mode. It provides a single-amplitude, on-off, binary audio waveform intended to drive the host's loudspeaker. The source for the signal is SPKRIN. |

SSI 78Q8370
PCMCIA
Ethernet Combo

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

PCMCIA APPLICATION PINS

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|------|--|
| ROMG | O | ROM ENABLE. Active low. This signal will be activated when an attribute memory read is performed on the external CIS memory. |
| FCE | O | FLASH MEMORY CHIP ENABLE. Active low. The flash memory \overline{WE} (Write Enable) and \overline{OE} (Output Enable) come from PCMCIA pins \overline{WE} and \overline{OE} . |
| XPD | O | EXTERNAL POWER DOWN. Active low. When the 8370 enters power down mode, this pin will be low. It can be used to control power down of external devices residing on the same card. |
| XRST | O | EXTERNAL RESET. Active high. This pin is a reflection of CCR0<7> register bit. This allows a software controlled hardware reset of the 8370 and the rest of the devices residing on the same card. |
| SPKRIN | I | SPEAKER IN. This pin is qualified with the AUDIO bit, CCR1<3> to produce the inverted \overline{SPKR} output. |

SSI 78Q8370 PCMCIA Ethernet Combo

HOST BUS INTERFACE - GENERIC BUS MODE

| | | | | |
|------------------|---|--|-----|-----|
| RESET | I | HARDWARE RESET. Active high. A minimum pulse length of 800 ns is required. This pin resets the 8370's internal pointers and registers to their appropriate states. Note: the 8370 must be reset after power on before usage. | | |
| READY | O | READY. This output is asserted to indicate to the host that the 8370 is ready to complete the requested read or write operation. It will also be used if the device is unable to respond to read or write requests within 2.4 μ s. In these situations, the 8370 will also assert \overline{INT} and the host read error status bit (DLCR1 <6>) or host write error status bit (DLCR0 <0>). The polarity of the READY pin is determined by the MODE pin. | | |
| \overline{WR} | I | WRITE. The \overline{WR} pin is an active low input that enables a write operation from the host to the 8370's internal registers as selected by the host address inputs HA[0:3]. | | |
| \overline{RD} | I | READ. The \overline{RD} pin is an active low input that enables a read operation by the host from the 8370's internal registers as selected by the host address inputs HA[0:3]. | | |
| \overline{CS} | I | CHIP SELECT. An active low input signal as the chip select for the 8370. | | |
| BHE | I | BYTE HIGH ENABLE. This is an active low byte/word control pin used only when the 8370 is configured for word transfer by HBYTE bit (DLCR6 <5>). Combinations of BHE and HA0 are used to select word, upper byte only or lower byte only transfers. | | |
| | | HBYTE | BHE | HA0 |
| | | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| | | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| | | 1 | X | X |
| | | FUNCTION | | |
| | | Word transfer | | |
| | | Byte transfer on high bus HD[8:15]. | | |
| | | Byte transfer on low bus HD[0:7]. | | |
| | | Reserved | | |
| | | Byte transfer (HD[0:7]) | | |
| \overline{INT} | O | INTERRUPT. This active low signal is asserted when the 8370 requires the intervention of the Host in situations as depicted in DLCR0,1 and BMR15. The \overline{INT} signal is masked by writing a '0' to the respective interrupt enable register. | | |
| EOP | I | END OF PROCESS. Asserted at the end of a DMA transfer by the Host DMA controller. Further DMA requests (DMREQ) will be discontinued after EOP is asserted. Polarity can be selected via the register bit (DLCR7 <1>). | | |
| DMREQ | O | DMA REQUEST. The 8370 issues a DMREQ to the Host DMA controller to initiate a write to its transmit buffer or a read from its receive buffer. | | |

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

HOST BUS INTERFACE - GENERIC BUS MODE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|------|---|
| DMACK | I | DMA ACKNOWLEDGE. An active low signal issued by the Host DMA controller when it is ready to perform data transfers between the Host and the 8370's buffer memory via BMR8. |
| HA[0:3] | I | HOST ADDRESS. Selects the set of internal registers to be accessible by the 8370 for read or write operations. |
| HD[0:15] | I/O | HOST DATA BUS. A bi-directional, tri-state bus for data, command and status transfers between the Host and the 8370 with the direction being controlled by \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} . The combinations of HBYTE, \overline{BHE} and HA0 control the portion of the bus that is being utilized. HA[0:3] and RBNK <0:1> (DLCR7 <2:3>) select the set of internal registers for access. |
| HWORD | O | HOST WORD CONFIGURATION. This pin is the complement of the register bit HBYTE (DLCR6 <5>). If HBYTE is a '0', the Host interface is configured for word transfers. If HBYTE is a '1', the Host interface is configured for byte transfers on the lower bus, HD[0:7]. |

BUFFER MEMORY INTERFACE

| | | |
|------------|-----|---|
| RCS0, RCS1 | O | RAM CHIP SELECT. $\overline{RCS0}$ and $\overline{RCS1}$ are active low chip select lines for the SRAM with $\overline{RCS0}$ as the least significant byte. |
| ROE | O | RAM OUTPUT ENABLE. Active low. This is the output enable asserted by the 8370 during buffer memory read cycles for the SRAM. |
| RWE | O | RAM WRITE ENABLE. Active low. This is the write enable asserted by the 8370 during buffer memory write cycles for the SRAM. |
| RD[0:15] | I/O | RAM DATA BUS. This is the data bus between the 8370 and the buffer memory. It can be configured for byte or word transfer depending on register bit RBYTE (DLCR6 <4>) RAM BYTE. For word transfers, the ordering of the most and least significant byte is defined by the register bit, INTLMOT (DLCR7 <0>). In PCMCIA bus mode, this data bus is only 8 bits wide (RD[0:7]). |
| RA[0:15] | O | RAM ADDRESS BUS. Addresses up to 64 KByte of SRAM buffer memory. |

NETWORK ATTACHMENT UNIT INTERFACE

| | | |
|----------|---|--|
| DON, DOP | O | TRANSMIT DATA NEGATIVE and POSITIVE. Differential outputs to external transceiver for transmission. |
| DIN, DIP | I | RECEIVE DATA NEGATIVE and POSITIVE. Manchester differential inputs from external transceiver for reception. |
| CIN, CIP | I | COLLISION DETECT NEGATIVE and POSITIVE. When an externally connected transceiver detects a collision on the medium, these differential inputs are driven by a 10 MHz signal. |
| REXT | - | EXTERNAL RESISTOR. External biasing resistor for the Attachment Unit Interface (AUI). |

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

NETWORK TWISTED-PAIR MEDIUM INTERFACE

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|------|--|
| TPON, TPOP | O | TWISTED-PAIR OUTPUT NEGATIVE and POSITIVE. Driver outputs to twisted-pair medium. Must be summed together with TPDN and TPDP by external resistors in a pre-equalization network to produce twisted-pair transmit signal. |
| TPDN, TPDP | O | TWISTED-PAIR DELAYED NEGATIVE and POSITIVE. Delayed (50 ns) driver outputs to twisted-pair medium. Must be summed together with TPON and TPOP by external resistors in a pre-equalization network to produce twisted-pair transmit signal. |
| TPIN, TPIP | I | TWISTED-PAIR INPUT NEGATIVE and POSITIVE. Inputs from twisted-pair medium. |

DEVICE POWER

| | | |
|------|---|---|
| VDD | P | POWER SUPPLY. A +5V DC ($\pm 5\%$) supply is required. |
| GND | P | SYSTEM GROUND. |
| AVDD | P | ANALOG VDD. The analog VDD pin required by the internal AUI and twisted-pair circuits is to be connected to a different VDD path from the digital VDD. A +5V DC ($\pm 5\%$) supply is required. |
| AGND | P | ANALOG GROUND. The analog ground required by the internal encoder/decoder is to be connected to a separate GND path from the digital GND. |

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

| | | |
|------|---|---|
| OSCI | I | OSCILLATOR IN. Connection for one side of the 20 MHz crystal or an input for an external 20 MHz clock source. |
| OSCO | O | OSCILLATOR OUT. Connection for other side of the 20 MHz crystal. Left unconnected if an external clock is used. |

MISCELLANEOUS

| | | |
|--------|---|---|
| CB | O | CONTROL BIT. A complement of the internal register bit, DLCR4 <2>, which is used to activate any external hardware. |
| RRST | O | REMOTE RESET. This pin follows the RMTRST register bit (DLCR1 <4>). The RMTRST bit is '1' only if a packet with the pattern 0900H in the Type Field is detected and ENA_RMTRST (DLCR5 <2>) is activated. This feature can be used by the nodes on the network to remotely-control external hardware. |
| MODE | I | MODE SELECT. Tied high to select Generic bus mode with active high READY timing. Tied low to select Generic bus mode with active low READY timing. Left open to select PCMCIA bus mode (it will be internally pulled up). |
| LEDLTR | O | LED LINK, TRANSMIT, RECEIVE. Connect to LED with current limiting resistor to VDD. LED is on during link up and off during link down. During link up (when LED is on), a transmission or a reception will blink off the LED temporarily to indicate activity. This feature is available only when the twisted-pair interface is selected. |

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation beyond the maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|--|-------------------------|
| Supply voltage, V_{DD} | -0.5 to 6.0V |
| Input voltage, V_{IN} | -0.5 to $V_{DD} + 0.5V$ |
| Output voltage, V_{OUT} | -0.5 to $V_{DD} + 0.5V$ |
| Storage temperature, T_{STG} | -55 to 150°C |
| Lead temperature (max 10 sec soldering), T_L | 250°C max |

DC CHARACTERISTICS

($T_A = 0^\circ\text{C}$ to $+70^\circ\text{C}$, $V_{DD} = 5V \pm 5\%$)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|-----------------------------|----------------|-----|----------|---------------|
| Low level input voltage V_{IL} | TTL inputs | 0 | | 0.8 | V |
| | OSCI pin | 0 | | 1.4 | V |
| | RESET and DMACK/SPKRIN pins | 0 | | 1.2 | V |
| High level input voltage V_{IH} | TTL inputs | 2.0 | | V_{DD} | V |
| | OSCI pin | 3.2 | | V_{DD} | V |
| | RESET and DMACK/SPKRIN pins | 1.6 | | V_{DD} | V |
| Low level output voltage V_{OL} | Rated I_{OL} | 0 | | 0.4 | V |
| | $I_{OL} = 20 \mu\text{A}$ | 0 | | 0.1 | V |
| High level output voltage V_{OH} | Rated I_{OH} | 2.4 | | V_{DD} | V |
| | $I_{OH} = -20 \mu\text{A}$ | $V_{DD} - 0.1$ | | V_{DD} | V |
| Low level output current I_{OL} (with $V_{OL} = 0.4V$) | Pin types O4, IO4, IO4U | 4 | | | mA |
| | Pin type O8 | 8 | | | mA |
| | Pin type OD16 | 16 | | | mA |
| High level output current I_{OH} (with $V_{OH} = 2.4V$) | Pin types O4, IO4, IO4U | -4 | | | mA |
| | Pin type O8 | -8 | | | mA |
| Leakage current (input/output) I_L | | -10 | | 10 | μA |
| Supply current ⁽¹⁾ I_{DD} | Fully active | | | 70 | mA |
| | Idle | | | 30 | mA |
| Power down supply current ⁽¹⁾ I_{PWRDN} | Osc. on | | | 5 | mA |
| | Osc. off | | | 100 | μA |

Note: (1) Fully active means 3 "simultaneous" operations: transmitting, receiving (through twisted-pair port) and either host write or read.

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

AUI CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = 0 to 70 °C, VDD = 5V ±5%)

Input refers to DIP, DIN and CIP, CIN. Output refers to DOP, DON.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|---|------|------|----------------|------|
| AC Common Mode Output Voltage V_{ACCM} | | | | ±40 | mV |
| DC Common Mode Output Voltage V_{DCCM} | | 3.0 | 4.0 | $V_{DD} - 0.5$ | V |
| Differential Peak Output Voltage V_{OP} | $R_{EXT} = 20\text{ k}\Omega$ $R_T = 78\Omega$ | 0.7 | 0.9 | 1.1 | V |
| Output Current I_{OP} | $R_{EXT} = 20\text{ k}\Omega$ | 9 | 11 | 13 | mA |
| Input Squelch Threshold Voltage V_{SQ} | | -140 | -190 | -260 | mV |
| Open Circuit Input Bias Voltage V_{BIAS} | | 2.5 | 3.5 | $V_{DD} - 0.5$ | V |

CAPACITANCE

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|----|----|
| Input pin capacitance C_{IN} | | | | 10 | pF |
| Output pin capacitance C_{OUT} | | | | 10 | pF |
| I/O pin capacitance C_{IO} | | | | 10 | pF |

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

TP CHARACTERISTICS

(TA = 0 to 70 °C, VDD = 5V ±5%)

Input refers to TPIP, TPIN. Output refers to TPOP, TPON: TPDP, TPDN.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|---------------------|--------------|-----|--------------|------------|
| Output High Voltage Level V_{TOH} | $I = 32 \text{ mA}$ | $V_{DD}-0.5$ | | V_{DD} | V |
| Output Low Voltage Level V_{TOL} | $I = 32 \text{ mA}$ | 0 | | 0.5 | V |
| Output Current I_{TO} | | | | 32 | mA |
| Output Resistance R_{TO} | | | | 15 | Ω |
| Differential Input Resistance R_{TI} | | 3 | | | k Ω |
| Open Circuit Input Bias Voltage V_{TBIAS} | | 2.75 | 3.5 | $V_{DD}-1.0$ | V |
| Differential Input Voltage Range V_{TIV} | $V_{DD} = 5V$ | -3.1 | | 3.1 | V |
| Input Positive Squelched Threshold V_{TPS} | | 300 | | 585 | mV |
| Input Negative Squelched Threshold V_{TNS} | | -300 | | -585 | mV |
| Input Positive Unsquelched Threshold V_{TPU} | | 200 | | 350 | mV |
| Input Negative Unsquelched Threshold V_{TNU} | | -200 | | -350 | mV |
| Input Positive Squelched Threshold In Long Mode V_{TPSL} | | 200 | | 350 | mV |
| Input Negative Squelched Threshold In Long Mode V_{TNSL} | | -200 | | -350 | mV |
| Input Positive Unsquelched Threshold In Long Mode V_{TPUL} | | 100 | | 180 | mV |
| Input Negative Unsquelched Threshold In Long Mode V_{TNUL} | | -100 | | -180 | mV |

SSI 78Q8370
PCMCIA
Ethernet Combo

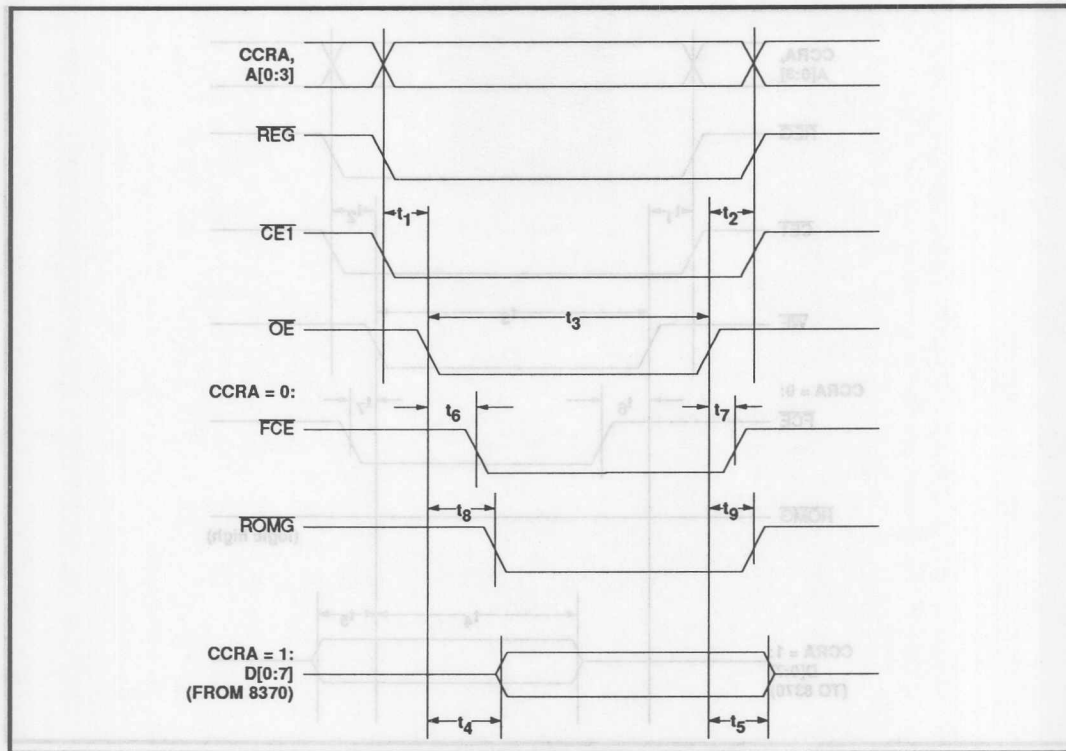


FIGURE 2. Attribute Memory Read Cycle (PCMCIA mode)

TABLE 5: Attribute Memory Read Cycle (PCMCIA mode) (Refer to Figure 2)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| CCRA, A[0:3] Valid to \overline{OE} low; t_1 REG, $\overline{CE1}$ low to \overline{OE} low | | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{OE} high to CCRA, A[0:3] invalid; t_2 \overline{OE} high to REG, $\overline{CE1}$ high | | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{OE} low pulse width t_3 | | 30 | | | ns |
| \overline{OE} low to D[0:7] valid t_4 | | | | 45 | ns |
| \overline{OE} high to D[0:7] invalid (data hold) t_5 | | 10 | | | ns |
| \overline{OE} low to \overline{FCE} low t_6 | | | | 20 | ns |
| \overline{OE} high to \overline{FCE} high t_7 | | | | 20 | ns |
| \overline{OE} low to \overline{ROMG} low t_8 | | | | 20 | ns |
| \overline{OE} high to \overline{ROMG} high t_9 | | | | 20 | ns |

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

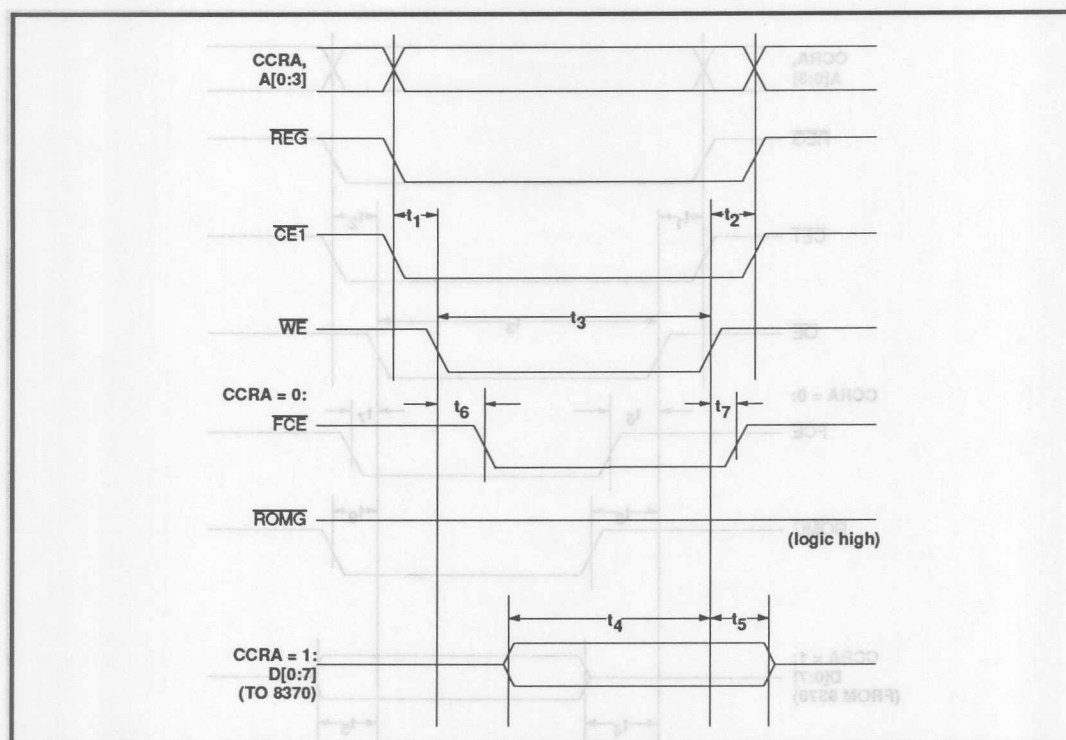


FIGURE 3. Attribute Memory Write Cycle (PCMCIA mode)

TABLE 6: ATTRIBUTE MEMORY WRITE CYCLE (PCMCIA mode) (Refer to Figure 3)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| CCRA, A[0:3] Valid to \overline{WE} low; t_1 REG, $\overline{CE1}$ low to \overline{WE} low | | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{WE} high to CCRA, A[0:3] invalid; t_2 \overline{WE} high to REG, $\overline{CE1}$ high | | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{WE} low pulse width | t_3 | 30 | | | ns |
| D[0:7] valid to \overline{WE} high (data setup) | t_4 | 17 | | | ns |
| \overline{WE} high to D[0:7] invalid (data hold) | t_5 | 10 | | | ns |
| \overline{WE} low to \overline{FCE} low | t_6 | | | 20 | ns |
| \overline{WE} high to \overline{FCE} high | t_7 | | | 20 | ns |

SSI 78Q8370 PCMCIA Ethernet Combo

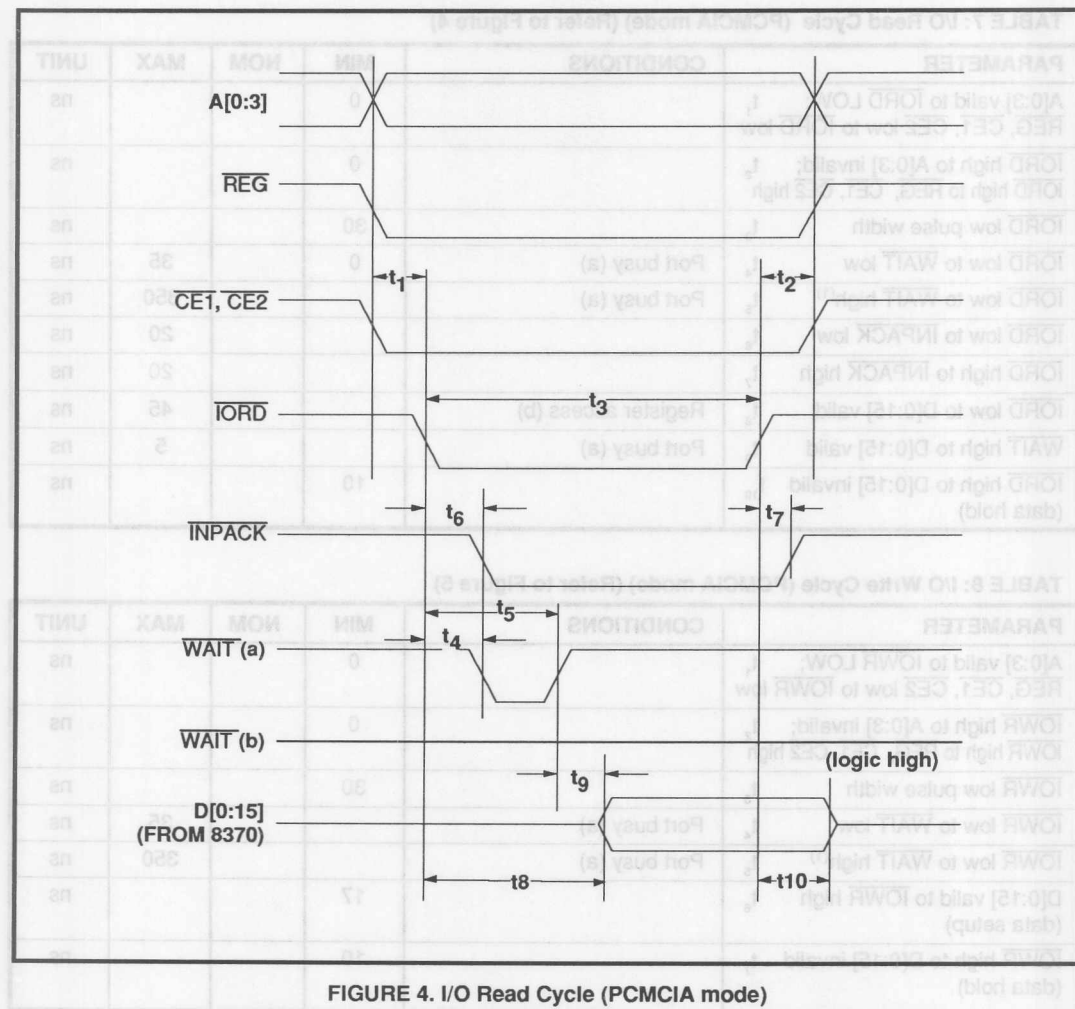


FIGURE 4. I/O Read Cycle (PCMCIA mode)

Note: (1) Maximum of 320 ns may occur if system makes contiguous system read cycles at less than 100 ns intervals, and both the transmitter and receiver are active in "loopback" reception (if the transmitter and receiver are idle, the max value becomes 250 ns). 2-4 ns max for post read error.

(a) For Buffer Memory Port when port is busy.

(b) For Register or Port when port is not busy.

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

TABLE 7: I/O Read Cycle (PCMCIA mode) (Refer to Figure 4)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|---------------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| A[0:3] valid to $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ LOW; t_1 REG, CE1, CE2 low to $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ low | | 0 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ high to A[0:3] invalid; t_2 $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ high to REG, CE1, CE2 high | | 0 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ low pulse width t_3 | | 30 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ low to $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ low t_4 | Port busy (a) | 0 | | 35 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ low to $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ high ⁽¹⁾ t_5 | Port busy (a) | | | 350 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ low to $\overline{\text{INPACK}}$ low t_6 | | | | 20 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ high to $\overline{\text{INPACK}}$ high t_7 | | | | 20 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ low to D[0:15] valid t_8 | Register access (b) | | | 45 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ high to D[0:15] valid t_9 | Port busy (a) | | | 5 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ high to D[0:15] invalid (data hold) t_{10} | | 10 | | | ns |

TABLE 8: I/O Write Cycle (PCMCIA mode) (Refer to Figure 5)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|---------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| A[0:3] valid to $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ LOW; t_1 REG, CE1, CE2 low to $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ low | | 0 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ high to A[0:3] invalid; t_2 $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ high to REG, CE1, CE2 high | | 0 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ low pulse width t_3 | | 30 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ low to $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ low t_4 | Port busy (a) | | | 35 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ low to $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ high ⁽¹⁾ t_5 | Port busy (a) | | | 350 | ns |
| D[0:15] valid to $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ high t_6 (data setup) | | 17 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ high to D[0:15] invalid (data hold) t_7 | | 10 | | | ns |

Note: (1) Maximum of 350 ns may occur if system makes contiguous system read cycles at less than 100 ns intervals, and both the transmitter and receiver are active in "loopback" reception (if the transmitter and receiver are idle, the max value becomes 250 ns). 2.4 μ s max for host read error.

- (a) For Buffer Memory Port when port is busy.
- (b) For register or port is not busy.

SSI 78Q8370
PCMCIA
Ethernet Combo

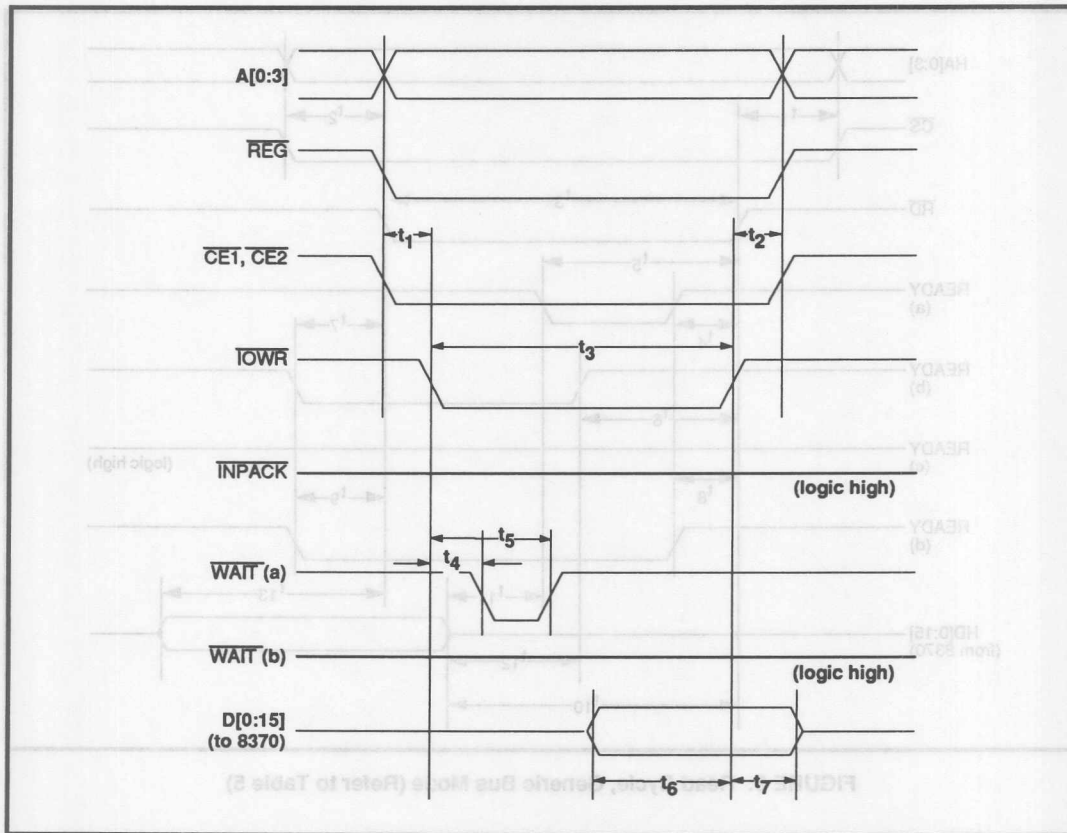


FIGURE 5: I/O Write Cycle (PCMCIA mode)

SSI 78Q8370 PCMCIA Ethernet Combo

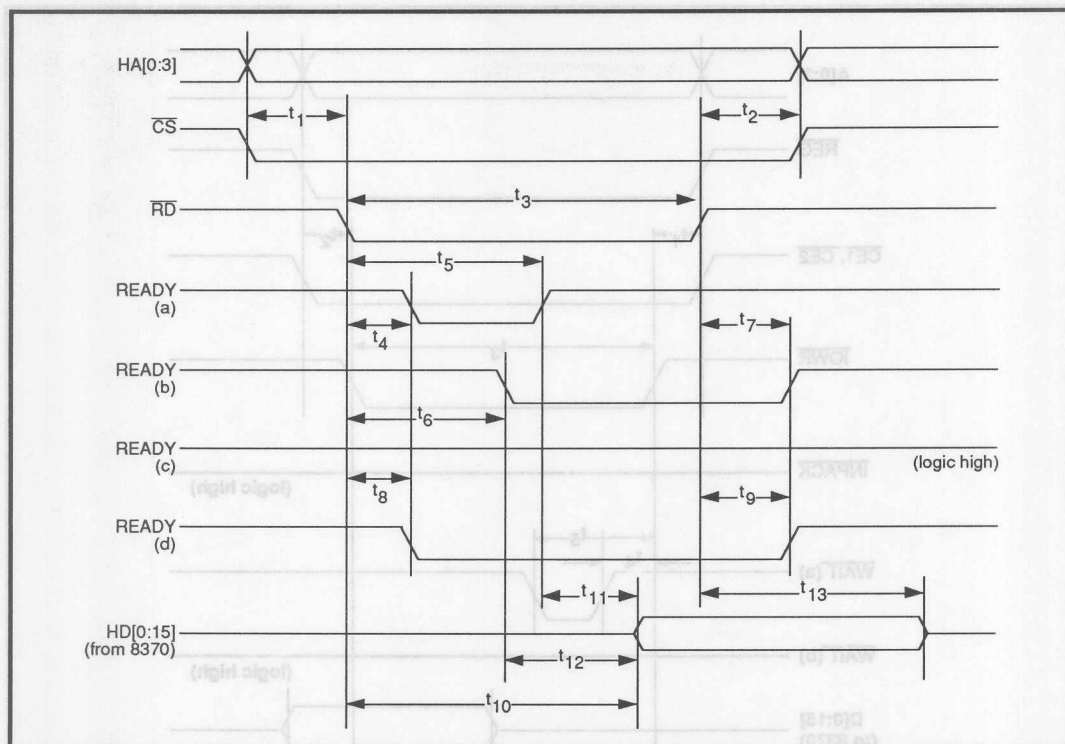


FIGURE 6: Read Cycle, Generic Bus Mode (Refer to Table 5)

SSI 78Q8370
PCMCIA
Ethernet Combo

TABLE 9: Read Cycle, Generic Bus Mode (Refer to Figure 6)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| \overline{CS} low to \overline{RD} low; HA[0:3] valid to \overline{RD} low | t_1 | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{RD} high to \overline{CS} high; \overline{RD} high to HA[0:3] invalid | t_2 | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{RD} low pulse width | t_3 | 30 | | | ns |
| \overline{RD} low to READY low | t_4 (a) | 0 | | 35 | ns |
| \overline{RD} low to READY high ⁽¹⁾ | t_5 (a) | | | 350 | ns |
| \overline{RD} low to READY low ⁽¹⁾ | t_6 (b) | 0 | | 350 | ns |
| \overline{RD} high to READY high | t_7 (b) | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| \overline{RD} low to READY low | t_8 (d) | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| \overline{RD} high to READY high | t_9 (d) | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| \overline{RD} low to HD[0:15] valid | t_{10} Register access | | | 45 | ns |
| READY high to HD[0:15] valid t_{11} | Port access | | | 5 | ns |
| READY low to HD[0:15] valid t_{12} | Port access | | | 5 | ns |
| \overline{RD} high to HD[0:15] invalid (data hold) | t_{13} | 10 | | | ns |

Note: (1) Maximum of 350 ns may occur if system makes contiguous system read cycles at less than 100 ns intervals, and both the transmitter and receiver are active in "loopback" reception (if the transmitter and receiver are idle, the max value becomes 250 ns). 2.4 μ s max for host read error.

- (a) For Buffer Memory Port when port is busy and RDYSEL = 1.
- (b) For Buffer Memory Port when port is busy and RDYSEL = 0.
- (c) For register or port is not busy and RDYSEL = 1.
- (d) For register or port is not busy and RDYSEL = 0.

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

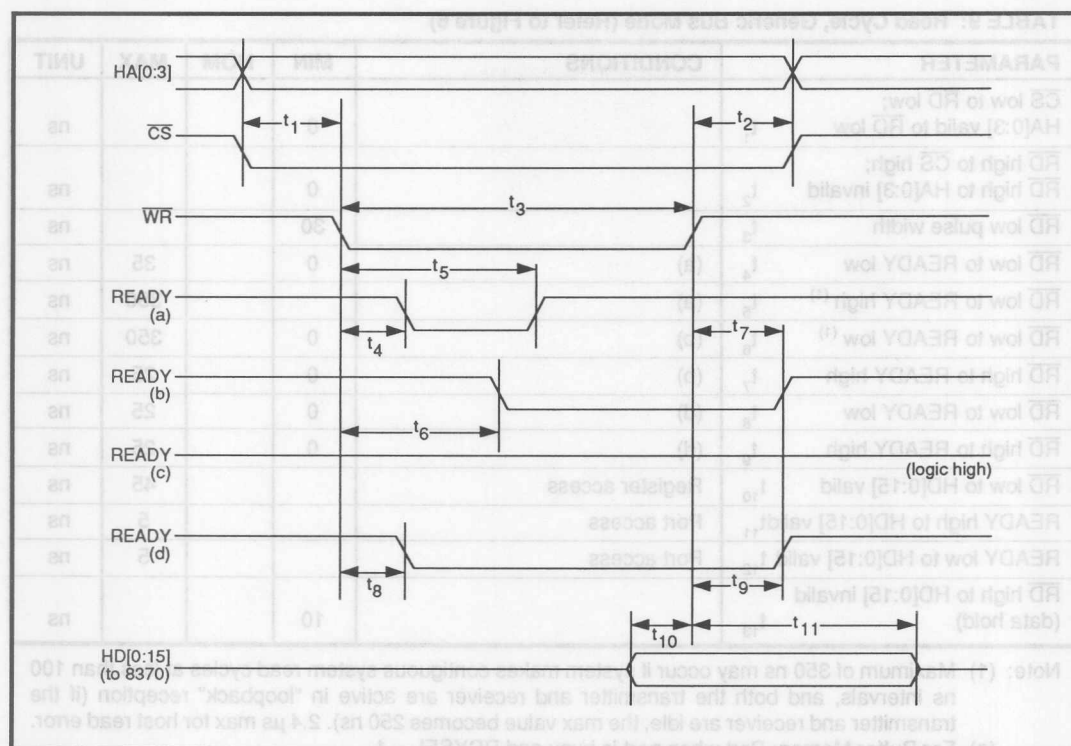


FIGURE 7: Write Cycle, Generic Bus Mode (Refer to Table 10)

SSI 78Q8370
PCMCIA
Ethernet Combo

TABLE 10: Write Cycle, Generic Bus Mode (Refer to Figure 7)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| \overline{CS} low to \overline{WR} low; HA[0:3] valid to \overline{WR} low | t_1 | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{WR} high to \overline{CS} high; \overline{WR} high to HA[0:3] invalid | t_2 | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{WR} low pulse width | t_3 | 30 | | | ns |
| \overline{WR} low to READY low | t_4 (a) | 0 | | 35 | ns |
| \overline{WR} low to READY high ⁽¹⁾ | t_5 (a) | | | 350 | ns |
| \overline{WR} low to READY low ⁽¹⁾ | t_6 (b) | 0 | | 350 | ns |
| \overline{WR} high to READY high | t_7 (b) | | | 25 | ns |
| \overline{WR} low to READY low | t_8 (d) | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| \overline{WR} high to READY high | t_9 (d) | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| HD[0:15] valid to \overline{WR} high (data setup) | t_{10} | 15 | | | ns |
| \overline{WR} high to HD[0:15] invalid (data hold) | t_{11} | 10 | | | ns |

Note: (1) Maximum of 350 ns may occur if system makes contiguous system read cycles at less than 100 ns intervals, and both the transmitter and receiver are active on "loopback" reception (if the transmitter and receiver are idle, the max value becomes 250 ns). 2.4 μ s max for host write error.

- (a) For Buffer Memory Port when port is busy and RDYSEL = 1.
 (b) For Buffer Memory Port when port is busy and RDYSEL = 0.
 (c) For register or port is not busy and RDYSEL = 1.
 (d) For register or port is not busy and RDYSEL = 0.

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

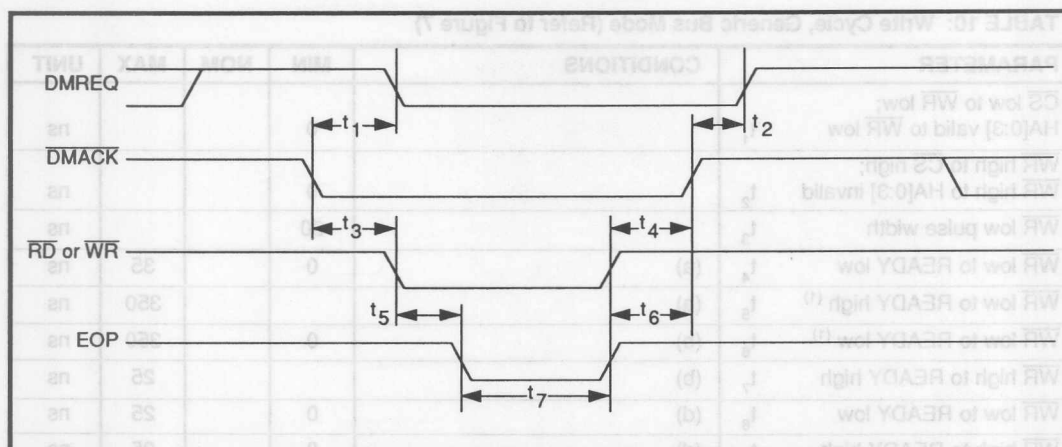


FIGURE 8: Single-Cycle DMA Timing

TABLE 11: Single-Cycle DMA Timing (Refer to Figure 8)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-----------------------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| DMACK low to DMREQ low | t_1 | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| DMACK high to DMREQ high | t_2 | 0 | | 25 | ns |
| DMACK low to RD or WR low | t_3 | 0 | | | ns |
| RD or WR high to DMACK high | t_4 | 0 | | | ns |
| RD or WR low to EOP low | t_5 | 0 | | | ns |
| EOP high to DMACK high | t_6 | 0 | | | ns |
| EOP low pulse width | t_7 | 10 | | | ns |

- Note: (1) An asserted EOP terminates any further DMREQ after DMACK returns high.
 (2) The DMA cycle uses DMACK as the chip select. DMACK overrides CS and HA[0:3] if they are both asserted at the same time, forcing selection of the Buffer Memory Port as in a DMA cycle.
 (3) For READY timing and HD[0:15] timing, see Figure 6, t_4 - t_{13} , and Figure 7, t_4 - t_{11} .

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

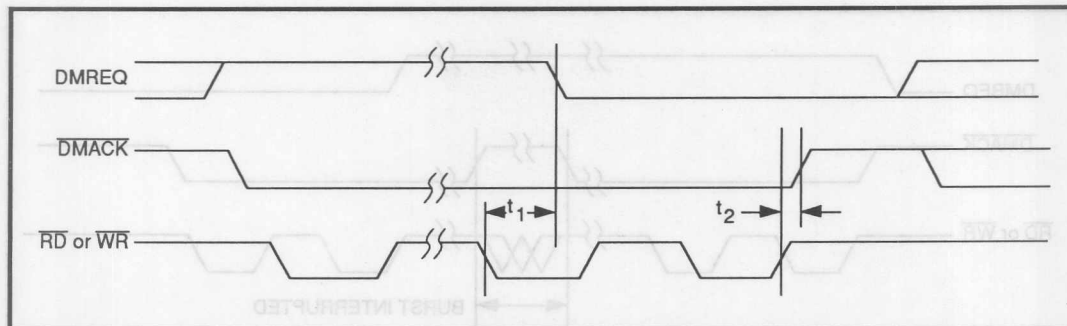


FIGURE 9: Burst DMA Timing

TABLE 12: Burst DMA Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} low to DMREQ low t_1 | | | | 30 | ns |
| \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} high to DMACK high t_2 | | 0 | | | ns |

- Note: (1) DMREQ goes low during the next-to-last transfer of the burst. DMACK should not go high until after the \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} pulse of the last transfer cycle goes high
- (2) The DMA cycle uses DMACK as the chip select. DMACK overrides \overline{CS} and HA[0:3] if they are both asserted at the same time, forcing selection of the Buffer Memory Port as in a DMA cycle.
- (3) For READY timing and HD[0:15] timing, see Figure 6, t_4 - t_{13} , and Figure 7, t_4 - t_{11} .

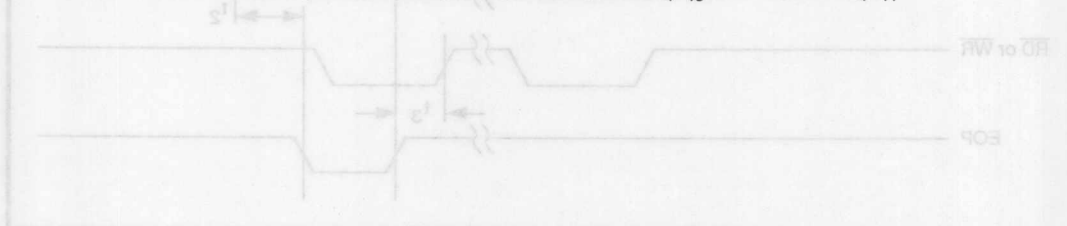


FIGURE 11: Burst DMA Terminated by EOP

TABLE 13: Burst DMA Terminated by EOP

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| EOP low to DMREQ low t_1 | | 4 | | 28 | ns |
| EOP high to DMACK high t_2 | | 3 | | | ns |
| \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} low to EOP low t_3 | | 0 | | | ns |

Note: EOP can be asserted during any transfer of the burst to terminate the process following that transfer.

SSI 78Q8370
PCMCIA
Ethernet Combo

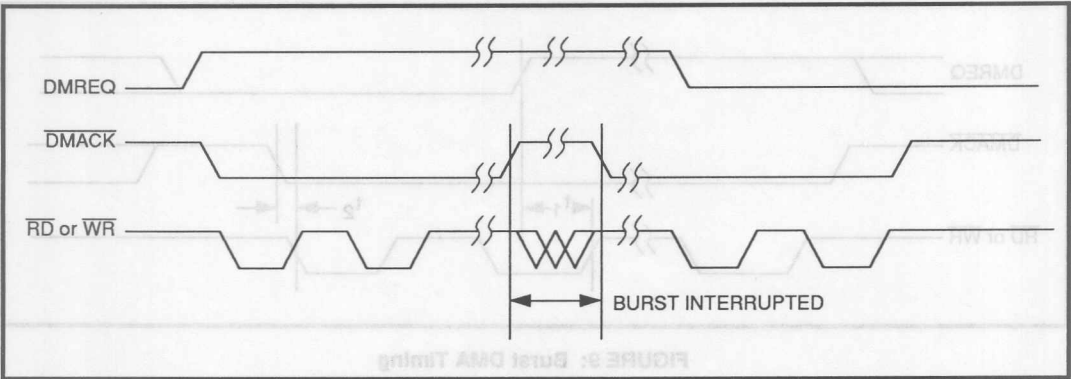


FIGURE 10: Burst DMA Interrupted by $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$

Note: Burst can be interrupted by $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ high-going pulse during the burst. Burst will resume when $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ returns low.

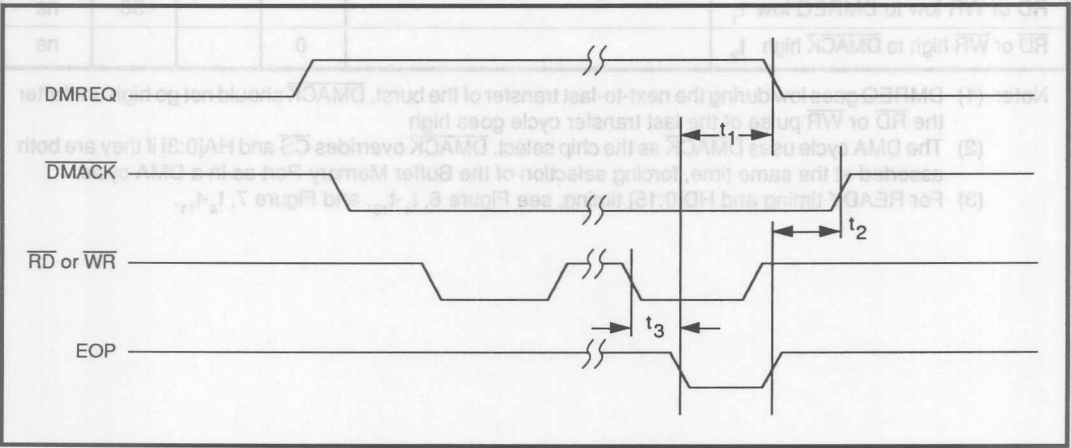


FIGURE 11: Burst DMA Terminated by EOP

TABLE 13: Burst DMA Terminated by EOP

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| EOP low to $\overline{\text{DMREQ}}$ low | t_1 | 4 | | 28 | ns |
| EOP high to $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ high | t_2 | 3 | | | ns |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$ or $\overline{\text{WR}}$ low to EOP low | t_3 | 0 | | | ns |

Note: EOP can be asserted during any transfer of the burst to terminate the process following that transfer.

SSI 78Q8370 PCMCIA Ethernet Combo

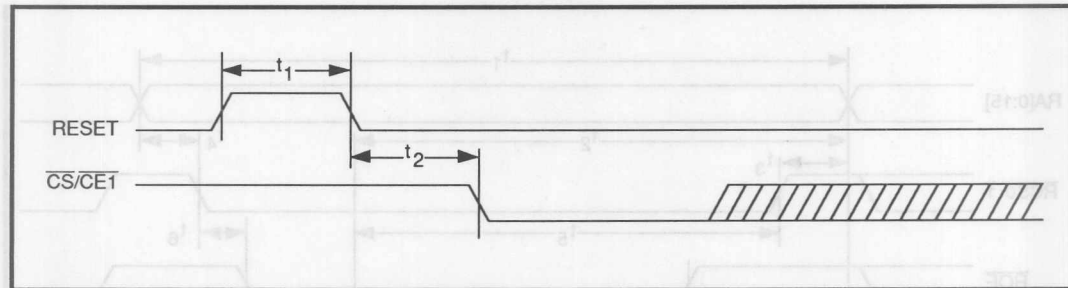


FIGURE 12: RESET Timing

TABLE 14: RESET Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| RESET pulse width t_1 | | 500 | | | ns |
| RESET low to first $\overline{\text{CS/CE1}}$ low t_2 | | 800 | | | ns |

Note: Before enabling transmit and receive functions ($\overline{\text{ENADLC}}$), wait 10 μs after reset pulse for internal calibration of DPLL.

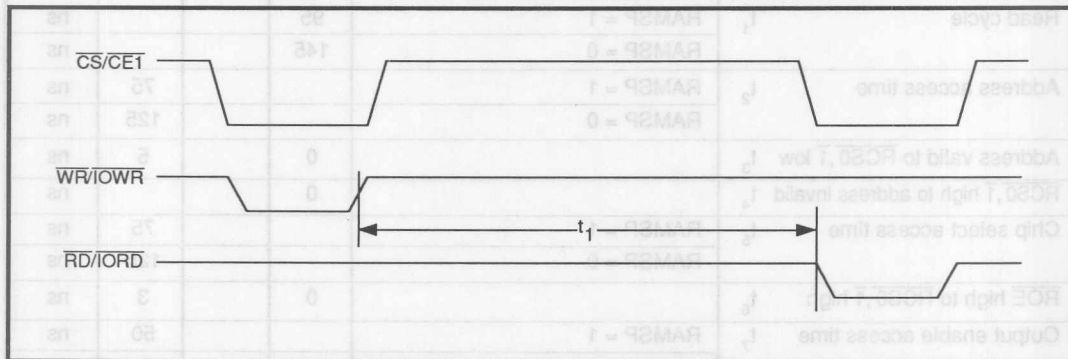


FIGURE 13: Skip Packet Timing

TABLE 15: Skip Packet Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| Writing Skip Packet high to next Buffer Memory Port read t_1 | | 200 | | | ns |

SSI 78Q8370

PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

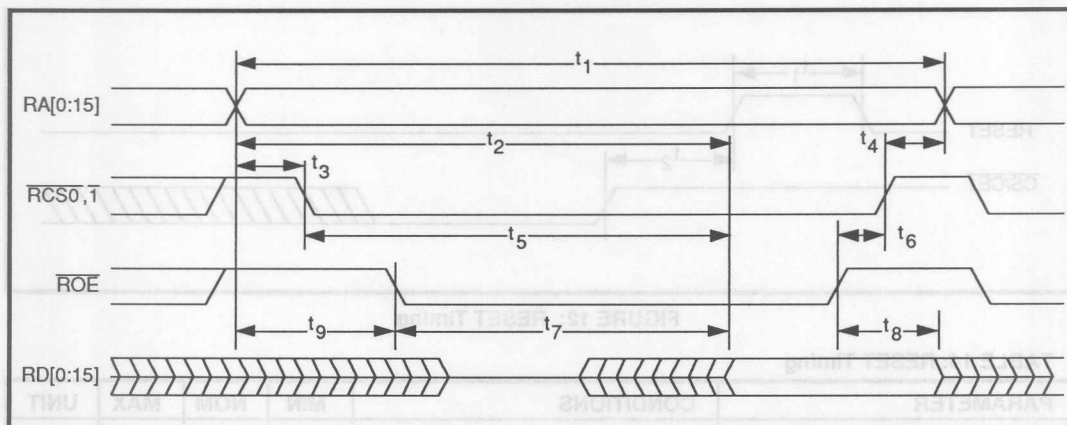


FIGURE 14: SRAM Read Timing

TABLE 16: SRAM Read Timing

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| Read cycle | t_1 | RAMSP = 1 | 95 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 145 | | | ns |
| Address access time | t_2 | RAMSP = 1 | | | 75 | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | | | 125 | ns |
| Address valid to $\overline{\text{RCS0}}, \overline{\text{1}}$ low | t_3 | | 0 | | 5 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{RCS0}}, \overline{\text{1}}$ high to address invalid | t_4 | | 0 | | | ns |
| Chip select access time | t_5 | RAMSP = 1 | | | 75 | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | | | 125 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{ROE}}$ high to $\overline{\text{RCS0}}, \overline{\text{1}}$ high | t_6 | | 0 | | 3 | ns |
| Output enable access time | t_7 | RAMSP = 1 | | | 50 | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | | | 100 | ns |
| Data hold time | t_8 | | 0 | | | ns |
| Address valid to $\overline{\text{ROE}}$ low | t_9 | | | | 30 | ns |

Note: Use SRAM with address access time of 75 ns or less for RAMSP = 1 and 125 ns or less for RAMSP = 0. RAMSP is DLCR6 <6>.

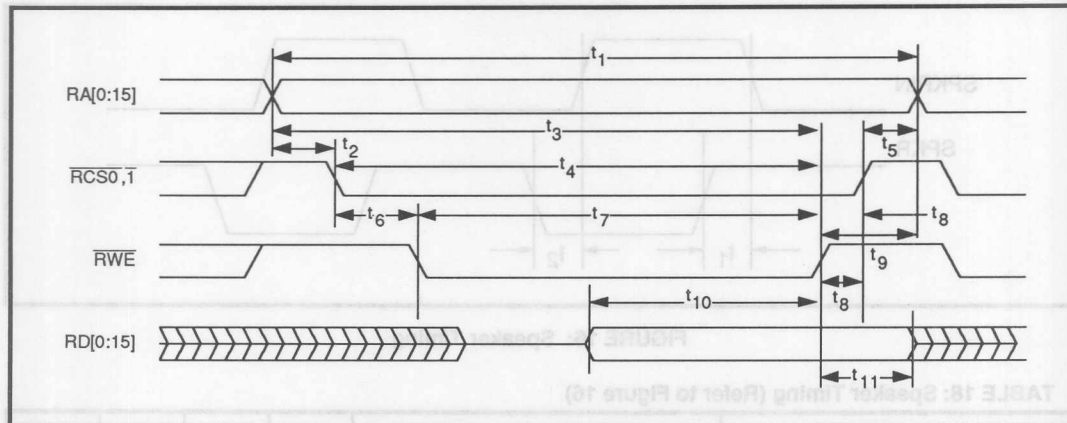


FIGURE 15: SRAM Write Timing

TABLE 17: SRAM Write Timing

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|----------|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| Write Cycle | t_1 | RAMSP = 1 | 95 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 145 | | | ns |
| Address Valid to $\overline{RCS0,1}$ low | t_2 | | 0 | | 5 | ns |
| Address Valid to \overline{RWE} high | t_3 | RAMSP = 1 | 70 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 120 | | | ns |
| $\overline{RCS0,1}$ low to \overline{RWE} high | t_4 | RAMSP = 1 | 70 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 120 | | | ns |
| $\overline{RCS0,1}$ high to Address Invalid | t_5 | | 0 | | | ns |
| $\overline{RCS0,1}$ low to \overline{RWE} low | t_6 | | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{RWE} Pulse Width | t_7 | RAMSP = 1 | 70 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 120 | | | ns |
| \overline{RWE} high to $\overline{RCS0,1}$ high | t_8 | | 0 | | | ns |
| \overline{RWE} high to Address Invalid | t_9 | | 20 | | | ns |
| Data Setup Time | t_{10} | RAMSP = 1 | 40 | | | ns |
| | | RAMSP = 0 | 90 | | | ns |
| Data Hold Time | t_{11} | | 20 | | | ns |

Note: Use SRAM with address access time of 75 ns or less for RAMSP = 1 and 125 ns or less for RAMSP = 0. RAMSP is DLCR6 <6>.

SSI 78Q8370
PCMCIA
Ethernet Combo

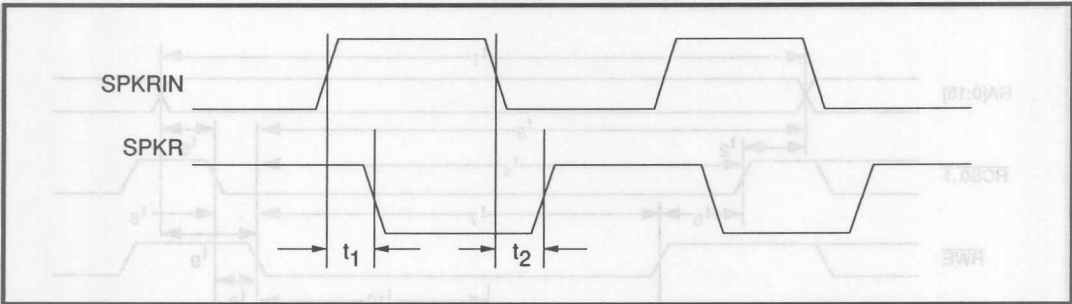


FIGURE 16: Speaker Timing

TABLE 18: Speaker Timing (Refer to Figure 16)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| $\overline{\text{SPKR}}$ high to low propagation delay t_1 | | | | 20 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{SPKR}}$ low to high propagation delay t_2 | | | | 20 | ns |

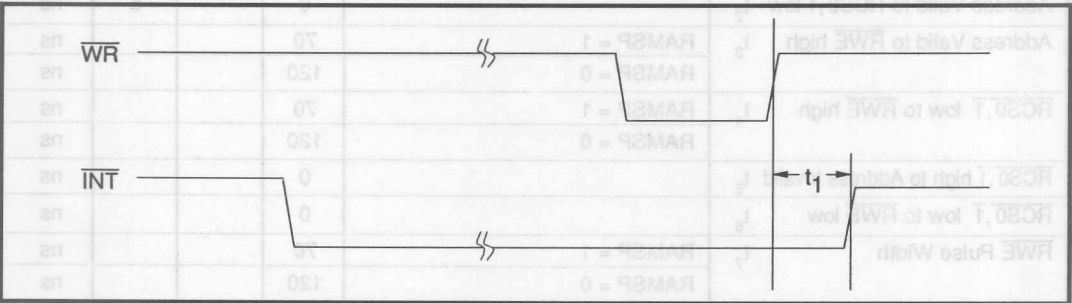


FIGURE 17: Interrupt Timing (Generic Bus Mode)

TABLE 19: Interrupt Timing (Generic Bus Mode)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal cleaning delay t_1 | | 7 | | 40 | ns |

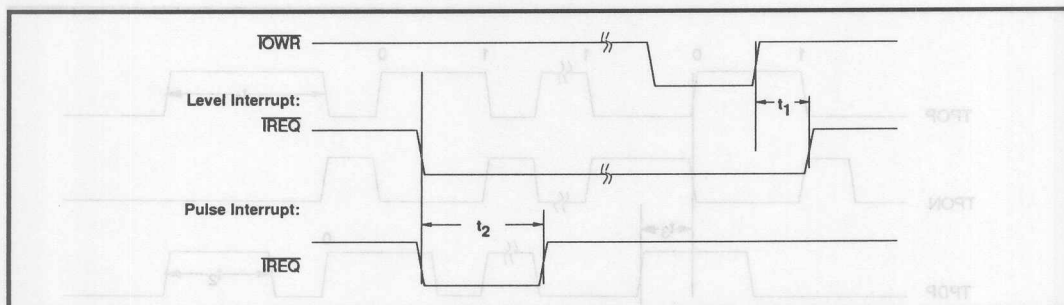


FIGURE 18: Interrupt Timing (PCMCIA Mode)

TABLE 20: Interrupt Timing (PCMCIA Mode)

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|-------|-----------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| $\overline{\text{IREQ}}$ signal clearing delay | t_1 | level interrupt | 7 | | 40 | ns |
| $\overline{\text{IREQ}}$ low pulse width | t_2 | pulse interrupt | 750 | | 800 | ns |

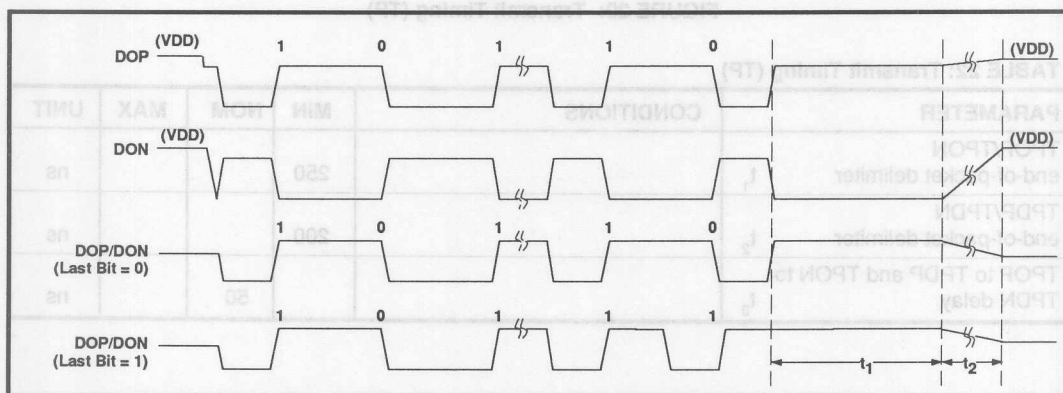


FIGURE 19: Transmit Timing (AUI)

TABLE 21: Transmit Timing (AUI)

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---------------------------------|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|---------------|
| DOP/DON end-of-packet delimiter | t_1 | | 200 | | | ns |
| DOP/DON line voltage transition | t_2 | | | | 8 | μs |

SSI 78Q8370
PCMCIA
Ethernet Combo

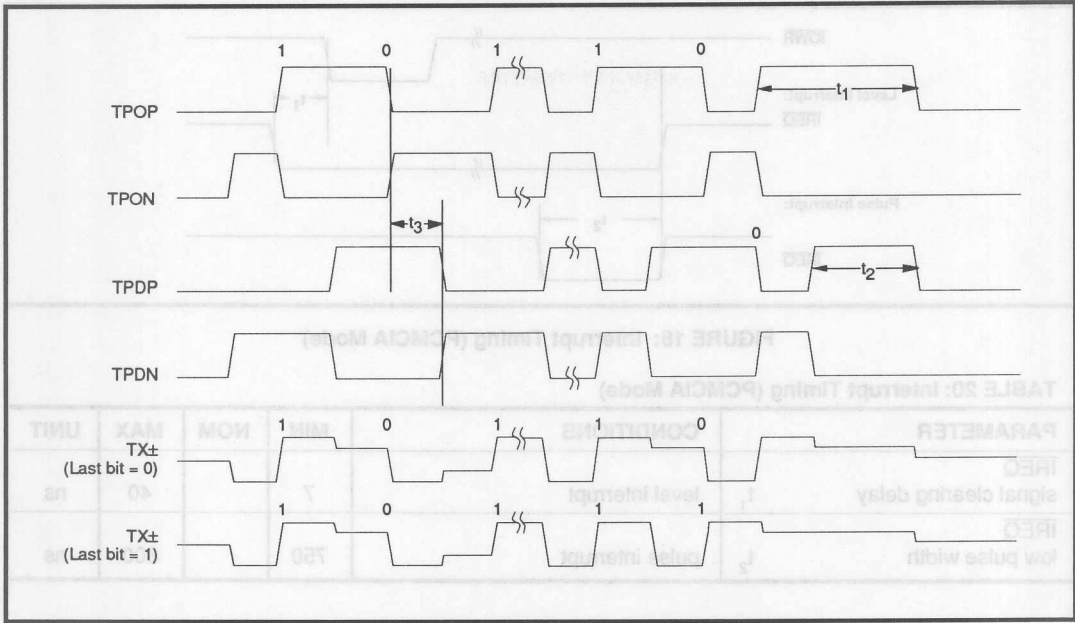


FIGURE 20: Transmit Timing (TP)

TABLE 22: Transmit Timing (TP)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| TPOP/TPON end-of-packet delimiter | t_1 | 250 | | | ns |
| TPDP/TPDN end-of-packet delimiter | t_2 | 200 | | | ns |
| TPOP to TPDP and TPON to TPDN delay | t_3 | | 50 | | ns |

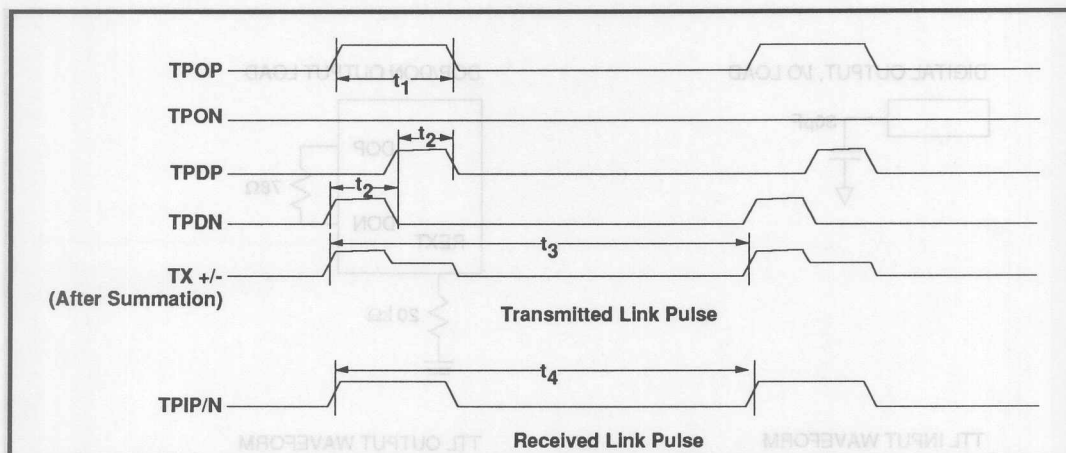


FIGURE 21: Link Test Timing

TABLE 23: Link Test Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| TPOP link pulse width t_1 | | | 100 | | ns |
| TPDP/TPDN link pulse width t_2 | | | 50 | | ns |
| Duration between transmitted link pulses t_3 | | 8 | 13 | 24 | ms |
| Duration between received link pulses t_4 | | 3 | | 105 | ms |

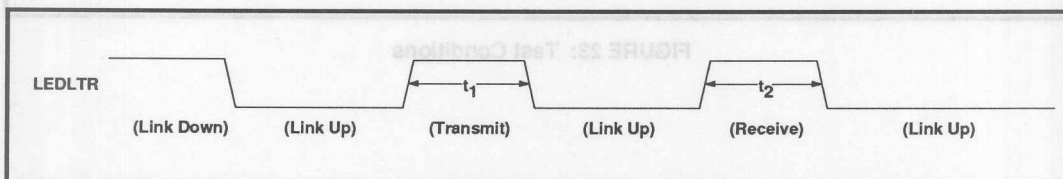


FIGURE 22: LED Timing (TP)

TABLE 24: LED Timing

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---------------------------------|-------------|-----|------|-----|------|
| Transmit blink-off timing t_1 | TP selected | | 26.2 | | ms |
| Receive blink-off timing t_2 | TP selected | | 26.2 | | ms |

SSI 78Q8370
PCMCIA
Ethernet Combo

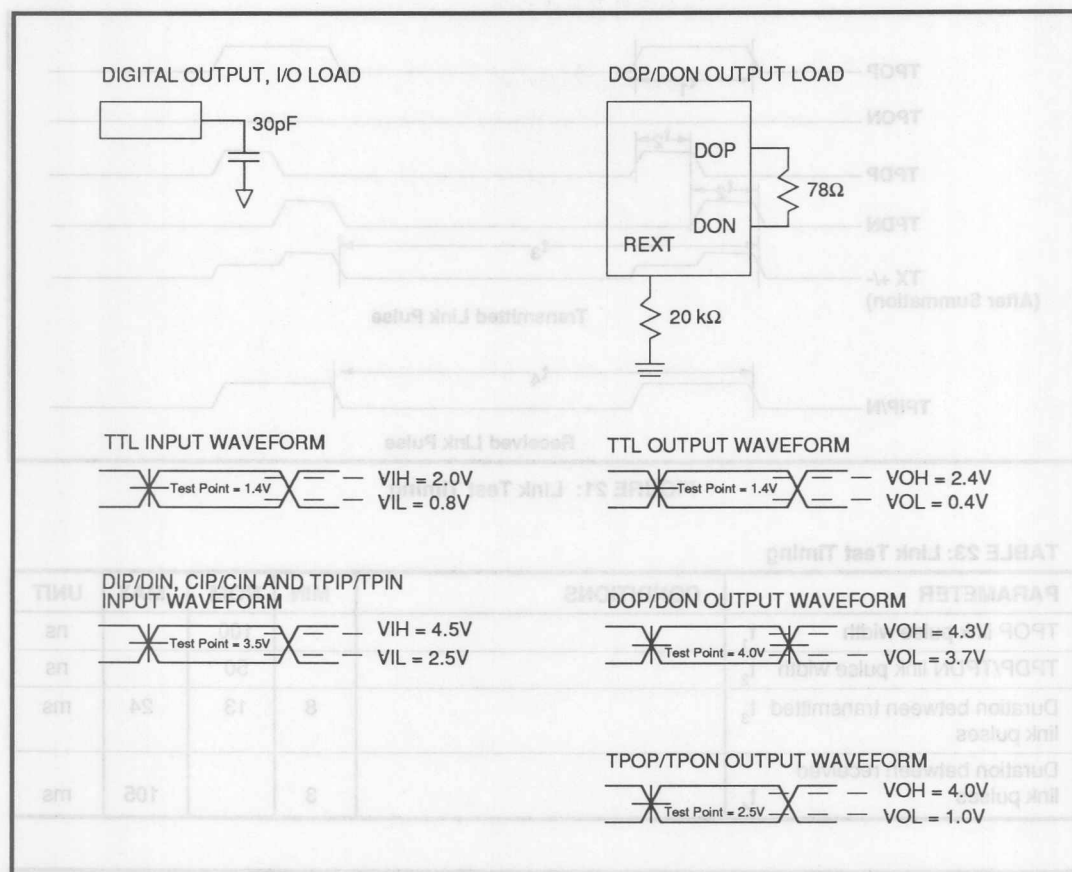
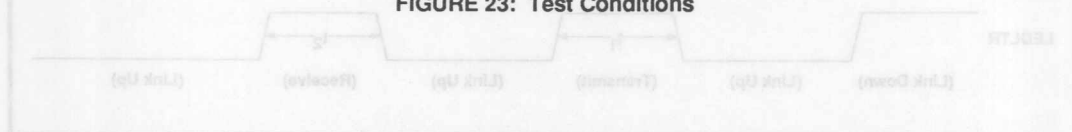


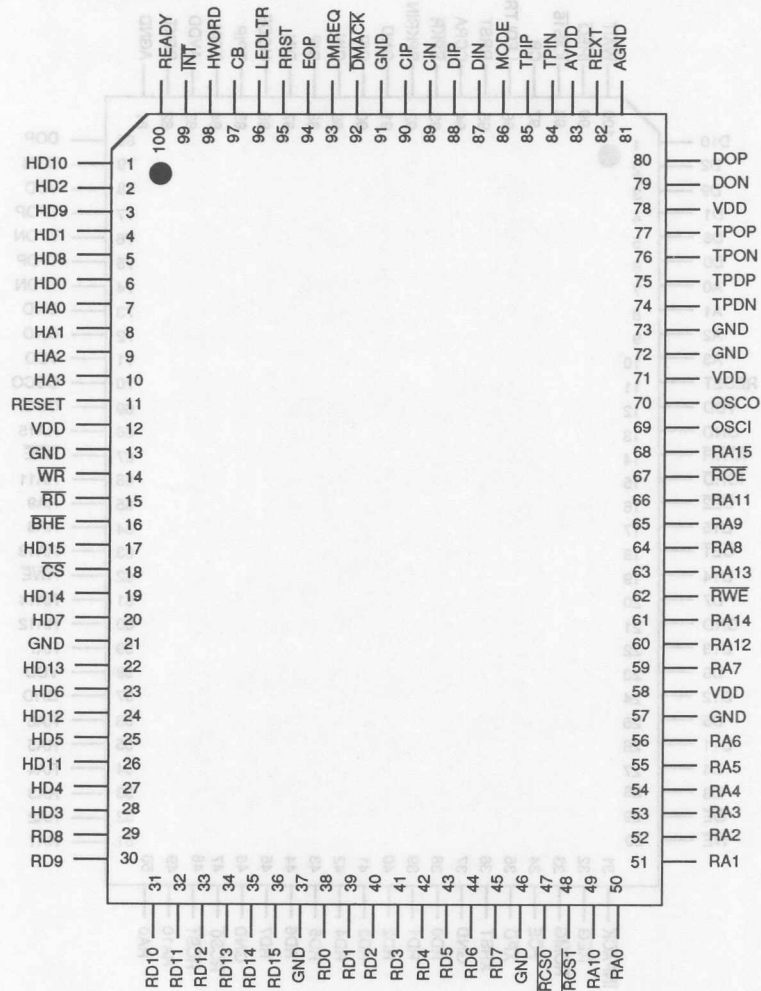
FIGURE 23: Test Conditions



SSI 78Q8370
PCMCIA
Ethernet Combo

(Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



100-Lead QFP Generic Bus Mode

SSI 78Q8370

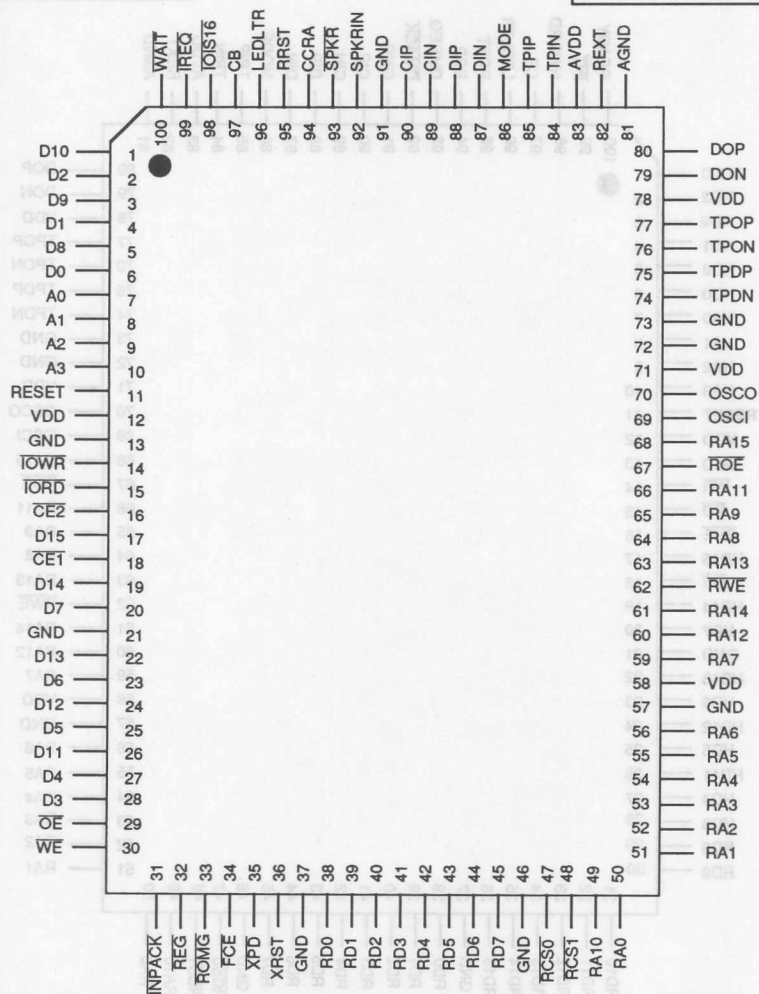
PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

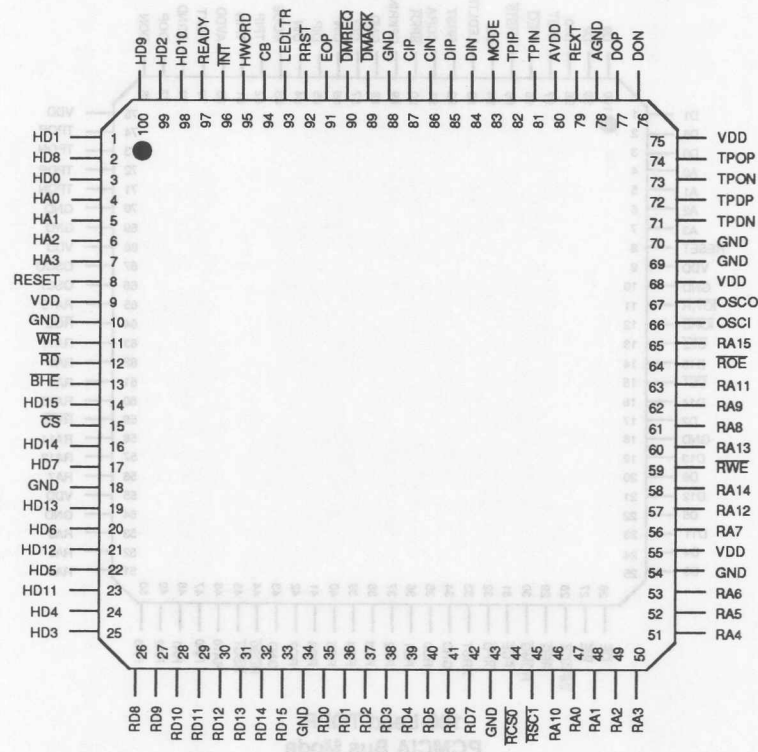


100-Lead QFP
PCMCIA Bus Mode

SSI 78Q8370 PCMCIA Ethernet Combo

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.



100-Lead TQFP Generic Bus Mode

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 78Q8370 - PCMCIA Ethernet Combo | 78Q8370-CG | 78Q8370-CG |
| 100-lead TQFP | 78Q8370-CGT | 78Q8370-CGT |

8

Preliminary Data: Indicates a product not completely released to production. The specifications are based on preliminary evaluation and are not guaranteed. Small quantities are available, and Silicon Systems should be contacted for current information.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of the product not for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Midway Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 873-0000, FAX (714) 873-6814

SSI 78Q8370

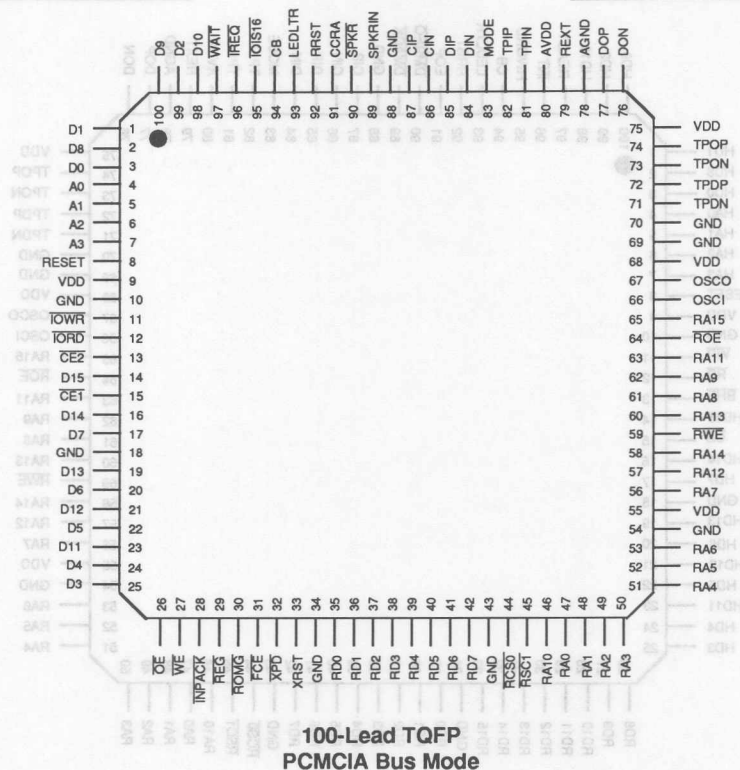
PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



100-Lead TQFP
PCMCIA Bus Mode

8

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 78Q8370 - PCMCIA Ethernet Combo | | |
| 100-lead QFP | 78Q8370-CG | 78Q8370-CG |
| 100-lead TQFP | 78Q8370-CGT | 78Q8370-CGT |

Preliminary Data: Indicates a product not completely released to production. The specifications are based on preliminary evaluations and are not guaranteed. Small quantities are available, and Silicon Systems should be consulted for current information.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78Q8373 is a highly integrated Ethernet IC for use in PCMCIA (Personal Computer Memory Card International Association) applications and can operate with a power supply of 3.3 volts or 5 volts. It contains a Media Access Controller (MAC), a 10Mbit/s Manchester encoder/decoder (ENDEC), a 10Base-T transceiver, a PCMCIA bus interface and an Attachment Unit Interface (AUI). This level of integration allows the user to implement a PCMCIA card for 10Base-T using only the SSI 78Q8373, external memory, and some passive components. The internal bus interface circuit allows connection to a PCMCIA 2.1 bus without other external components. The PCMCIA bus-decoding logic can be bypassed for connection to other bus types. The SSI 78Q8373 connects to twisted-pair media via line transformers through the on-chip transceiver circuit. Connection to other media such as coaxial cable is made through the AUI port to an external transceiver, such as the SSI 78Q8330 Ethernet Coax Transceiver.

The SSI 78Q8373 has a sophisticated power management capability with three different operating modes allowing the user to maximize power savings, making it ideal for use in PCMCIA applications. During normal operation, the IC monitors its own actions and shuts down the circuits that are not being used, resulting in the lowest possible operating power. It also has a standby mode which leaves only the oscillator running, and a full shutdown mode which also turns off the oscillator.

An intelligent Buffer Manager is controlled by the host read, host write, receive and transmit pointers, and the SSI 78Q8373 manages the pointers internally without any host intervention. The device interleaves access to the buffer memory so that accesses from the host and from the network media seem to operate concurrently. Big and little endian byte orderings make for simple bus interface to all standard microprocessors.

The SSI 78Q8373 is available in both a 100-lead QFP and thin QFP (TQFP) packages.

FEATURES

- Single-chip solution for 10Base-T/PCMCIA designs
- Operation at 3.3 volts or 5.0 volts
- Pin-compatible with 78Q8370
- Integrated 10Base-T transceiver:
 - Programmable/automatic selection of twisted pair (RJ45) or AUI port
 - Receive polarity detection/correction on twisted-pair inputs
- Manchester Encoder/Decoder circuit
- AUI port for connection to 10Base2/5 transceiver or AUI cable
- Integrated bus interface compliant with PCMCIA release 2.1 specification
- Bus interface can be bypassed for non-PCMCIA applications
- Protocol Controller compliant with IEEE 802.3 and Ethernet 2.0
- Advanced Buffer Manager architecture:
 - Automatic management of all pointers
 - Allows “simultaneous” access to data in buffer memory by both the network and host
 - High-speed received packet skip
- Configurable Buffer Memory for design flexibility:
 - Two-bank transmit buffer in 2, 4, 8, or 16 Kbyte sizes
 - Ring-structure receive buffer from 4 to 62 Kbytes
- Software-configurable system bus structure:
 - Compatible with major microprocessors
 - 8- or 16-bit wide data path communications with hosts
- Power management options:
 - Intelligent power mode automatically shuts off unused circuitry
 - Standby mode reduces power while not in operation
 - Full shutdown mode offers maximum power savings
- Available in 100-lead QFP and TQFP

SSI 78Q8373

3V/5V PCMCIA

Ethernet Combo

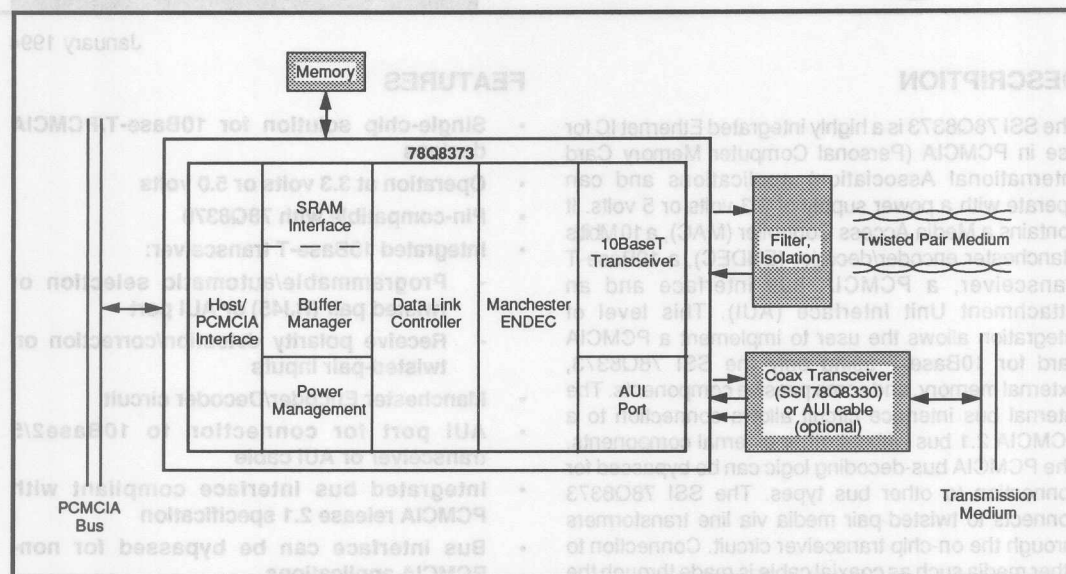


FIGURE 1: System Diagram

Advance Information: Indicates a product still in the design cycle, and any specifications are based on design goals only. Do not use for final design.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

Section **9**

PROGRAMMABLE ELECTRONIC FILTERS

ELECTRONIC FILTERS PROGRAMMABLE

October 1993

DESCRIPTION

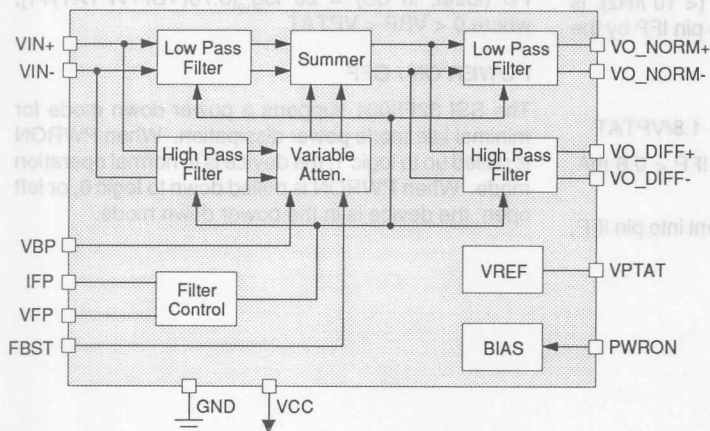
The SSI 32F8001 Programmable Electronic Filter provides an electronically controlled low-pass filter with a separate differentiated low-pass output. A seven-pole, low-pass filter is provided along with a single-pole, single-zero differentiator. Both outputs have matched delays. The delay matching is unaffected by any amount of programmed equalization or bandwidth. This programmability combined with low group delay variation make the SSI 32F8001 ideal for use in constant density recording applications. Pulse slimming equalization is accomplished by a two-pole, low-pass with a two-pole, high-pass feed forward section to provide complimentary real axis zeros. A variable attenuator is used to program the zero locations.

The SSI 32F8001 programmable equalization and bandwidth characteristics can be controlled by external DACs. Fixed characteristics are easily accomplished with three external resistors, in addition equalization can be switched in or out by a logic signal. The SSI 32F8001 requires only a +5V supply and is available in 16-lead SON and SOL packages.

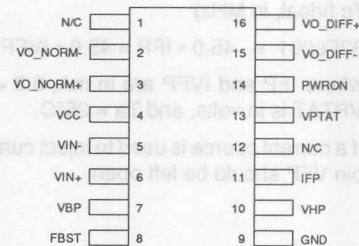
FEATURES

- **Ideal for multi-rate systems applications**
- **Programmable filter cutoff frequency ($f_c = 9$ to 27 MHz, 32F8001)**
- **Programmable pulse slimming equalization (0 to 13.5 dB boost at the filter cutoff frequency)**
- **Matched normal and differentiated low-pass outputs**
- **Differential filter inputs and outputs**
- **$\pm 12\%$ cutoff frequency accuracy**
- **$\pm 2\%$ maximum group delay variation from $0.2 f_c$ to f_c**
- **Total harmonic distortion less than 1%**
- **No external filter components required**
- **+5V only operation**
- **16-lead SON and SOL package**
- **Pin compatible with SSI 32F8011**

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



16-Lead SOL, SON

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8001 is a high performance programmable electronic filter. It features a 7-pole 0.05° equiripple linear phase filter with matched normal and differentiated outputs.

CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING

The SSI 32F8001 programmable electronic filter can be set to a filter cutoff frequency from 9 to 27 MHz with no boost.

Cutoff frequency programming can be established using either a current source fed into pin IFP whose output current is proportional to the SSI 32F8001 output reference voltage VPTAT, or by means of an external resistor tied from the output voltage reference pin VPTAT to pin VFP. The former method is optimized using the SSI 32D4661 Time Base Generator, since the current source into pin IFP is available at the DAC F output of the SSI 32D4661. Furthermore, the voltage reference input is supplied to pin VR3 of the SSI 32D4661 by the reference voltage from the VPTAT pin of the SSI 32F8001. This reference voltage is internally generated by a band-gap circuit in conjunction with a temperature varying reference to create a voltage which is proportional to absolute temperature.

The VPTAT voltage will compensate for internal temperature variation of the f_c and boost circuits.

The cutoff frequency, determined by the -3dB point relative to a very low frequency value (< 10 kHz), is related to the current IVFP injected into pin IFP by the following formulas.

f_c (ideal, in MHz)

$$32F8001 = 45.0 \cdot IFP = 45.0 \cdot IVFP \cdot 1.8/VPTAT$$

where IFP and IVFP are in mA, $0.2 < IFP < 0.6$ mA, VPTAT is in volts, and $T_a = 25^\circ\text{C}$.

If a current source is used to inject current into pin IFP, pin VFP should be left open.

If the SSI 32F8001 cutoff frequency is set using voltage VPTAT to bias up a resistor tied to pin VFP, the cutoff frequency is related to the resistor value by the following formulas.

f_c (ideal, in MHz)

$$32F8001 = 45.0 \cdot IFP = 45.0 \cdot 1.8/(3 \cdot R_x)$$

R_x in $k\Omega$

If pin VFP is used to program cutoff frequency, pin IFP should be left open.

MAGNITUDE EQUALIZATION PROGRAMMING

The magnitude equalization, measured in dB, is the amount of high frequency peaking at the cutoff frequency relative to the original -3 dB point. For example, when 12 dB boost is applied, the magnitude response peaks up 9 dB above the DC gain.

The amplitude of the input signal at frequencies near the cutoff frequency can be increased using this feature. Applying an external voltage to pin VBP which is proportional to reference output voltage VPTAT (provided by the VPTAT pin) will set the amount of boost. A fixed amount of boost can be set by an external resistor divider network connected from pin VBP to pins VPTAT and GND. No boost is applied if pin FBST, frequency boost enable, is at a low logic level.

The amount of boost FB at the cutoff frequency F_c is related to the voltage VBP by the formula

$$FB \text{ (ideal, in dB)} = 20 \log_{10}[3.73(VBP/VPTAT)+1],$$

where $0 < VBP < VPTAT$.

POWER ON / OFF

The SSI 32F8001 supports a power down mode for minimal idle mode power dissipation. When PWRON is pulled up to logic 1, the device is in normal operation mode. When PWRON is pulled down to logic 0, or left open, the device is in the power down mode.

SSI 32F8001

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|------|---|
| VIN+, VIN- | I | Differential Signal Inputs. The input signals must be AC coupled to these pins. |
| VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- | O | Differential Normal Outputs. The output signals must be AC coupled. |
| VO_DIFF+, VO_DIFF- | O | Differential Differentiated Outputs. For minimum time skew, these outputs should be AC coupled. |
| IFP | I | Frequency Program Input. The filter cutoff frequency f_c , is set by an external current IFP, injected into this pin. IFP must be proportional to voltage VPTAT. This current can be set with an external current generator such as a DAC. VFP should be left open when using this pin. |
| VFP | I | Frequency Program Input. The filter cutoff frequency can be set by programming a current through a resistor from VPTAT to this pin. IFP should be left open when using this pin. |
| VBP | I | Frequency Boost Program Input. The high frequency boost is set by an external voltage applied to this pin. VBP must be proportional to voltage VPTAT. A fixed amount of boost can be set by an external resistor divider network connected from VBP to VPTAT and GND. No boost is applied if the FBST pin is grounded, or at logic low. |
| FBST | I | Frequency Boost. A high logic level or open enables the frequency boost circuitry. A low input disables this function. |
| PWRON | I | Power On. A high logic level enables the chip. A low level or open pin puts the chip in a low power state. |
| VPTAT | O | PTAT Reference Voltage. This pin outputs a reference voltage which is proportional to absolute temperature (PTAT). VBP, VFP or IFP must be referenced to this pin for proper operation. |
| VCC | O | +5 Volt Supply. |
| GND | I | Ground |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATINGS |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Storage Temperature | -65°C to +150°C |
| Junction Operating Temperature, T_j | +130°C |
| Supply Voltage, VCC | -0.5V to 7V |
| Voltage Applied to Inputs | -0.5V to VCC |

SSI 32F8001

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | RATINGS |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| Supply voltage, VCC | 4.50V < VCC < 5.50V |
| Ambient Temperature | 0°C < Ta < 70°C |

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Unless otherwise specified recommended operating conditions apply.

Power Supply Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| Power Supply Current ICC | PWRON ≤ 0.8V | | 0.1 | 0.5 | mA |
| Power Supply Current ICC | PWRON ≥ 2.0V | | 46 | 60 | mA |
| Power Dissipation PD | PWRON ≥ 2.0V, VCC = 5.0V | | 230 | 300 | mW |
| | PWRON ≥ 2.0V, VCC = 5.5V | | 275 | 330 | mW |
| | PWRON ≤ 0.8V | | 0.5 | 2.5 | mW |

DC Characteristics

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------|------------|------|--|-----|----|
| High Level Input Voltage VIH | TTL input | 2.0 | | | V |
| Low Level Input Voltage VIL | | | | 0.8 | V |
| High Level Input Current IIH | VIH = 2.7V | | | 20 | μA |
| Low Level Input Current IIL | VIL = 0.4V | -1.5 | | | mA |

Filter Characteristics

| | | | | | |
|--|--|-------|------|-------|-----|
| Filter Cutoff Frequency *fc (f -3dB) | 32F8001 $f_c = \frac{45 \text{ MHz}}{\text{mA}} (\text{IVFP})$ IVFP = 0.2 to 0.6 mA, Ta = 25v °C | 9.0 | | 27.0 | MHz |
| Filter fc Accuracy FCA | fc = max. | -12 | | +12 | % |
| VO_NORM Diff Gain AO | F = 0.67 fc, FB = 0 dB | 0.8 | | 1.2 | V/V |
| VO_DIFF Diff Gain AD | F = 0.67 fc, FB = 0 dB | 0.8AO | | 1.2AO | V/V |
| Frequency Boost at fc FB | VBP = VPTAT fc = max. | 12.0 | 13.5 | 15.0 | dB |
| | fc = min. | 11.5 | 13.0 | 14.5 | dB |
| Frequency Boost Accuracy FBA | VBP/VPTAT = 1.0 fc = max. | -1.5 | | +1.5 | dB |
| Group Delay Variation Without Boost TGDO | fc = max., $\frac{VBP}{VPTAT} = 0$ | -500 | | +500 | ps |
| | F = 0.2 fc to fc | | | | |
| | fc = min., $\frac{VBP}{VPTAT} = 0$ F = 0.2 fc to fc | -1.5 | | +1.5 | ns |

SSI 32F8001

Low-Power Programmable

Electronic Filter

FILTER CHARACTERISTICS (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|---|------|-----|-------|------------|
| Group Delay Variation Without Boost (continued) TGDO | $f_c = 9 \text{ MHz} - 27 \text{ MHz}$ $F = 0.2 f_c \text{ to } f_c$ $\frac{V_{BP}}{V_{PTAT}} = 0$ | -2 | | +2 | % |
| | $f_c = 9 \text{ MHz} - 27 \text{ MHz}$, $F = f_c \text{ to } 1.75 f_c$ $\frac{V_{BP}}{V_{PTAT}} = 0$ | -4 | | +4 | % |
| Group Delay Variation with Boost TGDB | $f_c = \text{max}$, $V_{BP} = V_{PTAT}$ $F = 0.2 f_c \text{ to } f_c$ | -500 | | +500 | ps |
| | $f_c = \text{min.}$, $V_{BP} = V_{PTAT}$ $F = 0.2 \text{ to } f_c$ | -1.5 | | +1.5 | ns |
| | $f_c = 9 \text{ MHz} - 27 \text{ MHz}$ $F = 0.2 f_c \text{ to } f_c$, $V_{BP} = V_{PTAT}$ | -2.5 | | +2.5 | % |
| | $f_c = 9 \text{ MHz} - 27 \text{ MHz}$, $F = f_c \text{ to } 1.75 f_c$, $V_{BP} = V_{PTAT}$ | -4 | | +4 | % |
| Filter Input Dynamic Range VIF | THD = 1% max, $F = 0.67 f_c$, $V_{BP} = 0V$ (1000 pF across Rx) | 1.0 | | | Vpp |
| | THD = 1.7% max, $F = 0.67 f_c$, $V_{BP} = 0V$, Normal output (1000 pF across Rx) | 1.5 | | | Vpp |
| Filter Input Dynamic Range VIF | THD = 3.5% max, $F = 0.67 f_c$, $V_{BP} = 0V$, Differentiated output (1000 pF across Rx) | 1.5 | | | Vpp |
| Filter Output Dynamic Range VOF | THD = 1% max, $F = 0.67 f_c$ $R_{LOAD} \geq 1k\Omega$ (1000 pF across Rx) | 1.0 | | | Vpp |
| Filter Diff Input Resistance RIN | | 3.0 | 4.3 | | k Ω |
| Filter Input Capacitance CIN | | | | 3 | pF |
| Output Noise Voltage Differentiated Output EOUT | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ $f_c = \text{max}$, $V_{BP} = 0V$ | | 3.5 | 5.4 | mVRms |
| Output Noise Voltage Normal Output EOUT | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ $f_c = \text{max}$, $V_{BP} = 0V$ | | 2.3 | 3.45 | mVRms |
| Output Noise Voltage Differentiated Output EOUT | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ $f_c = \text{max}$, $V_{BP} = V_{PTAT}$ | | 7.7 | 10.75 | mVRms |
| Output Noise Voltage Normal Output EOUT | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ $f_c = \text{max}$, $V_{BP} = V_{PTAT}$ | | 3.8 | 4.75 | mVRms |
| Filter Output Sink Current IO - | | 1.0 | | | mA |
| Filter Output Source Current IO + | | | | 2.0 | mA |
| Filter Output Resistance RO (Single ended) | IO+ = 1.0 mA | | | 60 | Ω |

SSI 32F8001

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

FILTER CONTROL CHARACTERISTICS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----|-----------|-------|---------------|
| Reference Voltage VPTAT | $T_J = 25^\circ\text{C}$ | | 1.8 | | V |
| PTAT Voltage Input VFP | | | 2/3 VPTAT | | V |
| Programming Current Range IVFP | $T_a = 25^\circ\text{C}$ | 0.2 | | 0.6 | mA |
| Programming Voltage Range V_{VBP} | | 0 | | VPTAT | V |
| Voltage at pin IFP V_{IFP} | $I_{VFP} = 0 \text{ mA}$ | | 2/3 VPTAT | | V |
| Power Up Time | $f_c = 9 \text{ MHz}$ | | | 1.5 | μs |
| | $f_c = 27 \text{ MHz}$ | | | 1.0 | μs |
| Power Down Time | | | | 1.0 | μs |

SSI 32F8001 Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

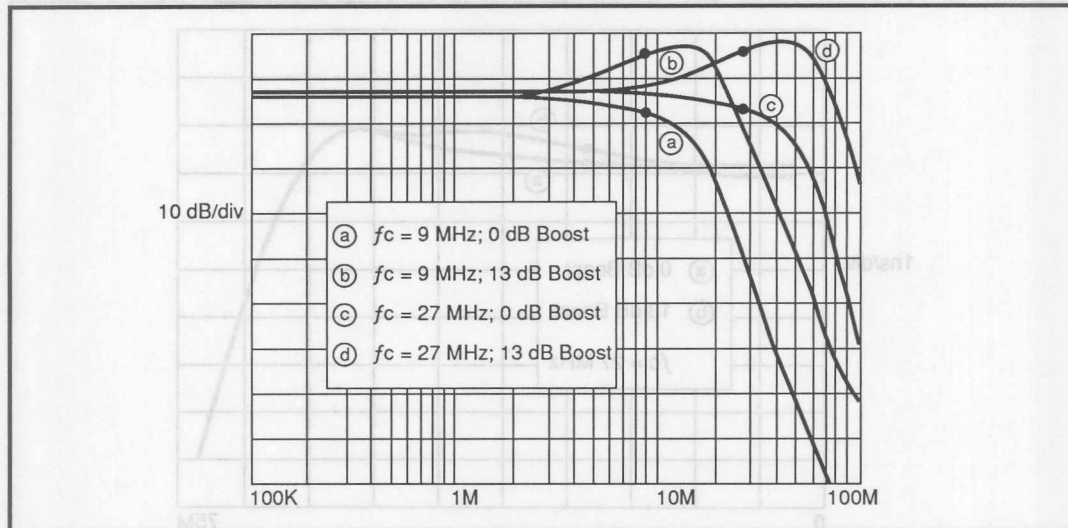


FIGURE 1: 32F8001 Normal Low Pass Response

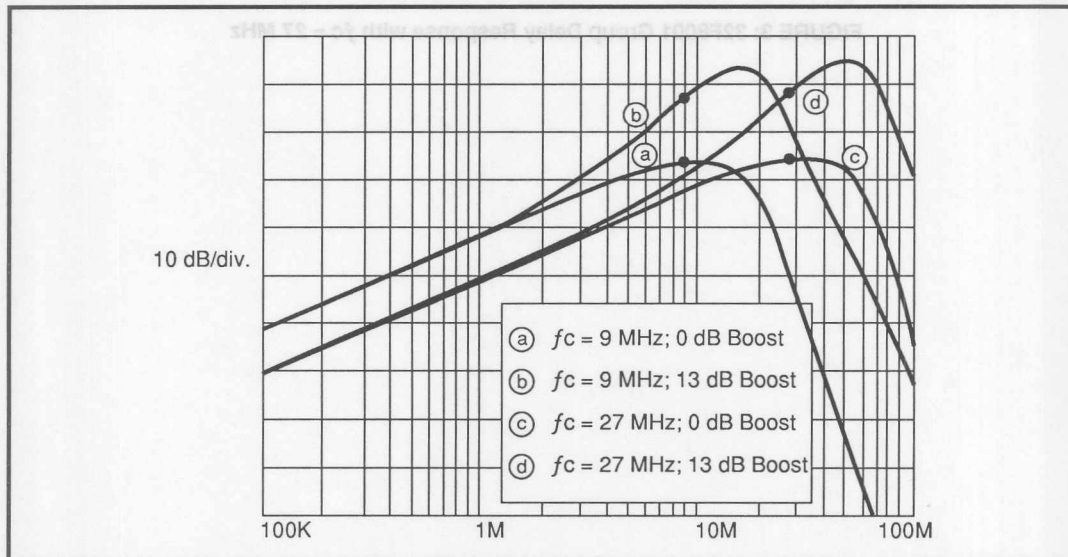


FIGURE 2: 32F8001 Differentiated Low Pass Response

SSI 32F8001

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

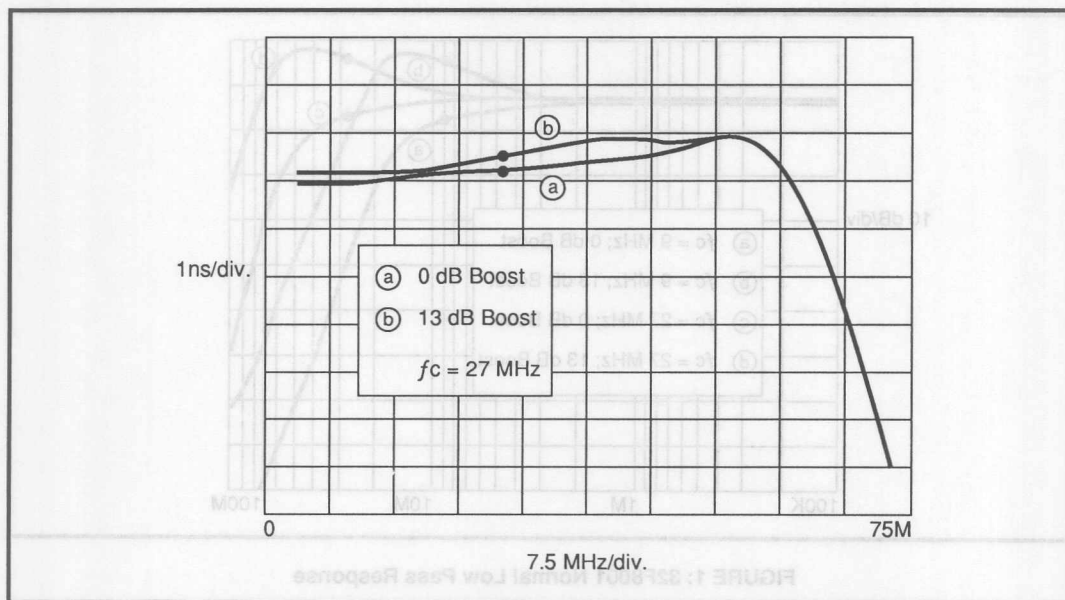


FIGURE 3: 32F8001 Group Delay Response with $f_c = 27$ MHz

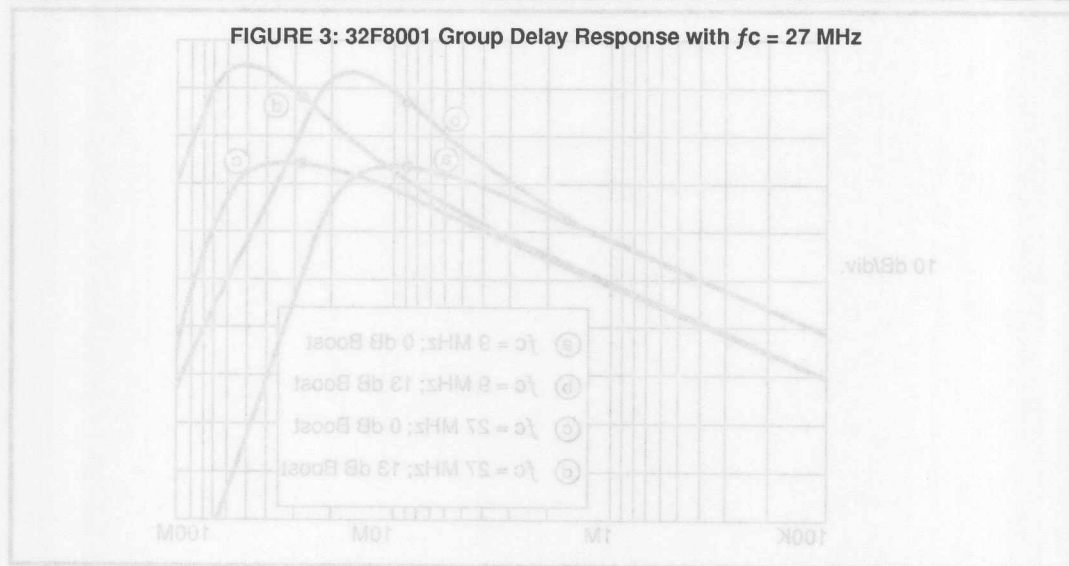


FIGURE 2: 32F8001 Differentiated Low Pass Response

SSI 32F8001 Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

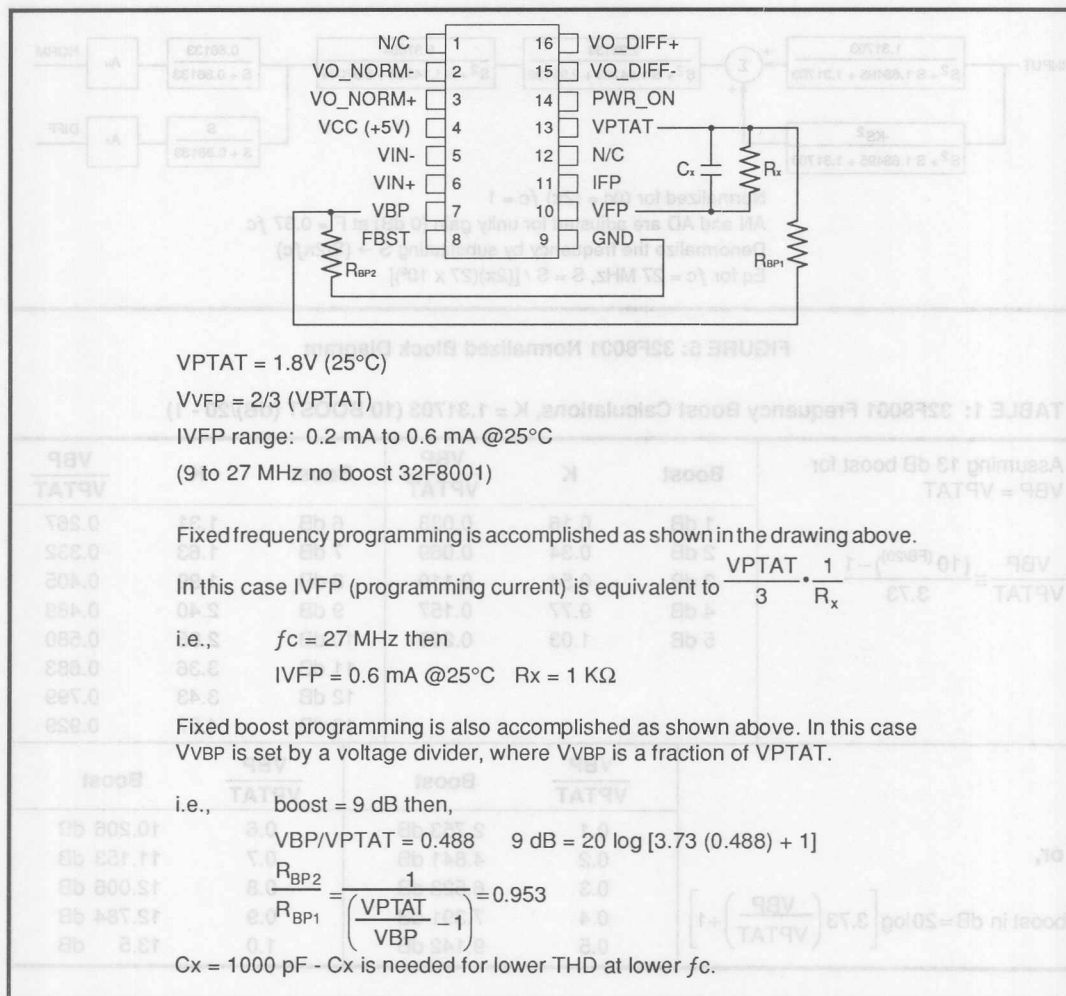


FIGURE 4: 32F8001 Applications Setup

SSI 32F8001

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

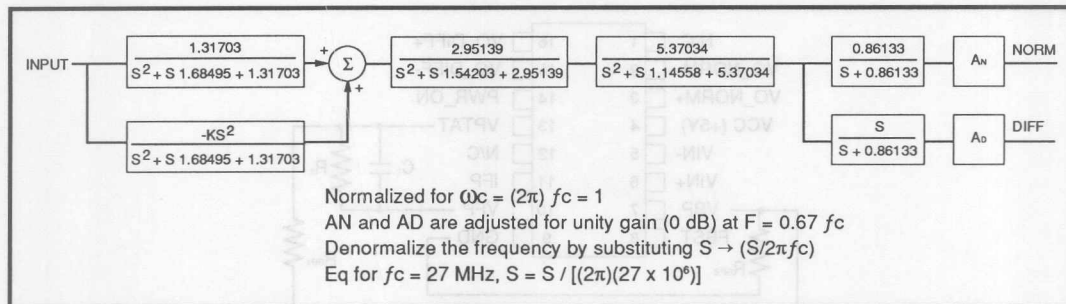


FIGURE 5: 32F8001 Normalized Block Diagram

TABLE 1: 32F8001 Frequency Boost Calculations, $K = 1.31703$ (10 BOOST (dB)/20 - 1)

| Assuming 13 dB boost for VBP = VPTAT | Boost | K | $\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VPTAT}}$ | Boost | K | $\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VPTAT}}$ |
|---|-------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| | 1 dB | 0.16 | 0.033 | 6 dB | 1.31 | 0.267 |
| | 2 dB | 0.34 | 0.069 | 7 dB | 1.63 | 0.332 |
| | 3 dB | 0.54 | 0.110 | 8 dB | 1.99 | 0.405 |
| | 4 dB | 0.77 | 0.157 | 9 dB | 2.40 | 0.488 |
| | 5 dB | 1.03 | 0.209 | 10 dB | 2.85 | 0.580 |
| or, boost in dB = $20 \log \left[3.73 \left(\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VPTAT}} \right) + 1 \right]$ | | | | 11 dB | 3.36 | 0.683 |
| | | | | 12 dB | 3.43 | 0.799 |
| | | | | 13 dB | 4.57 | 0.929 |
| | | $\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VPTAT}}$ | Boost | $\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VPTAT}}$ | Boost | |
| | | 0.1 | 2.753 dB | 0.6 | 10.206 dB | |
| | | 0.2 | 4.841 dB | 0.7 | 11.153 dB | |
| | | 0.3 | 6.523 dB | 0.8 | 12.006 dB | |
| | | 0.4 | 7.391 dB | 0.9 | 12.784 dB | |
| | | 0.5 | 9.142 dB | 1.0 | 13.5 dB | |

SSI 32F8001

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

TABLE 2: Calculations

Typical change in f -3 dB point with boost

| Boost (dB) | Gain@fc (dB) | Gain@ peak (dB) | f_{peak}/f_c | f -3dB/ f_c |
|------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 0 | -3 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.00 |
| 1 | -2 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.21 |
| 2 | -1 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.51 |
| 3 | 0 | 0.15 | 0.70 | 1.80 |
| 4 | 1 | 0.99 | 1.05 | 2.04 |
| 5 | 2 | 2.15 | 1.23 | 2.20 |
| 6 | 3 | 3.41 | 1.33 | 2.33 |
| 7 | 4 | 4.68 | 1.38 | 2.43 |
| 8 | 5 | 5.94 | 1.43 | 2.51 |
| 9 | 6 | 7.18 | 1.46 | 2.59 |
| 10 | 7 | 8.40 | 1.48 | 2.66 |
| 11 | 8 | 9.59 | 1.51 | 2.73 |
| 12 | 9 | 10.77 | 1.51 | 2.80 |
| 13 | 10 | 11.92 | 1.53 | 2.87 |
| 14 | 11 | 13.06 | 1.53 | 2.93 |

Notes: 1. f_c is the original programmed cutoff frequency with no boost
2. f -3 dB is the new -3 dB value with boost implemented
3. f_{peak} is the frequency where the amplitude reaches its maximum value with boost implemented
i.e., $f_c = 9$ MHz when boost = 0 dB
if boost is programmed to 5 dB then f -3 dB = 19.8 MHz
 $f_{peak} = 11.07$ MHz

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|------------------|------------|------------|
| SSI 32F8001 | | |
| 16-Lead SOL | 32F8001-CL | 32F8001-CL |
| 16-Lead SON | 32F8001-CN | 32F8001-CN |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, trademarks or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14321 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7052 (714) 873-6000, FAX (714) 873-6814

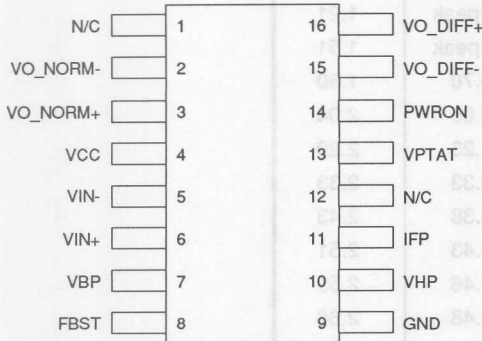
1083 - new

©1992 Silicon Systems, Inc.
Printed by the following parties:
(800) 328-7000 (714) 873-6000

SSI 32F8001
Low-Power Programmable
Electronic Filter

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



16-Lead SON, SOL

THERMAL CHARACTERISTICS: θ_{JA}

| | |
|-----------------------|---------|
| 16-lead SON (150 mil) | 105°C/W |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 100°C/W |

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|------------------|------------|------------|
| SSI 32F8001 | | |
| 16-Lead SOL | 32F8001-CL | 32F8001-CL |
| 16-Lead SON | 32F8001-CN | 32F8001-CN |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

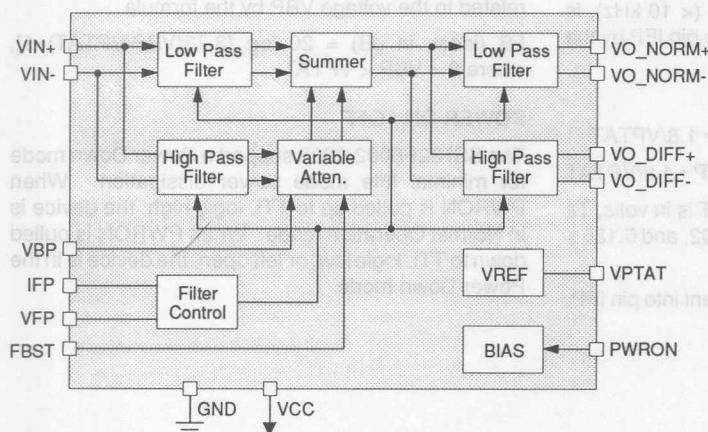
December 1993

DESCRIPTION

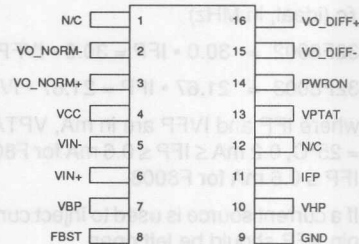
The SSI 32F8002/8003 Programmable Electronic Filters provide an electronically controlled low-pass filter with a separate differentiated low-pass output. A seven-pole, low-pass filter is provided along with a single-pole, single-zero differentiator. Both outputs have matched delays. The delay matching is unaffected by any amount of programmed equalization or bandwidth. This programmability combined with low group delay variation make the SSI 32F8002/8003 ideal for use in constant density recording applications. Pulse slimming equalization is accomplished by a two-pole, low-pass with a two-pole, high-pass feed forward section to provide complimentary real axis zeros. A variable attenuator is used to program the zero locations.

The SSI 32F8002/8003 programmable equalization and bandwidth characteristics can be controlled by external DACs. Fixed characteristics are easily accomplished with three external resistors, in addition equalization can be switched in or out by a logic signal. The SSI 32F8002/8003 require only a +5V supply and is available in 16-lead SON and SOL packages.

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



16-Lead SOL, SON

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 32F8002/8003

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8002/8003 are high performance programmable electronic filter. They feature a 7-pole 0.05° equiripple linear phase filter with matched normal and differentiated outputs.

CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING

The SSI 32F8001 programmable electronic filter can be set to a filter cutoff frequency from 9 to 27 MHz with no boost.

Cutoff frequency programming can be established using either a current source fed into pin IFP whose output current is proportional to the SSI 32F8001 output reference voltage VPTAT, or by means of an external resistor tied from the output voltage reference pin VPTAT to pin VFP. The former method is optimized using the SSI 32D4661 Time Base Generator, since the current source into pin IFP is available at the DAC F output of the SSI 32D4661. Furthermore, the voltage reference input is supplied to pin VR3 of the SSI 32D4661 by the reference voltage from the VPTAT pin of the SSI 32F8001. This reference voltage is internally generated by a band-gap circuit in conjunction with a temperature varying reference to create a voltage which is proportional to absolute temperature.

The VPTAT voltage will compensate for internal temperature variation of the f_c and boost circuits.

The cutoff frequency, determined by the -3dB point relative to a very low frequency value (< 10 kHz), is related to the current IVFP injected into pin IFP by the following formulas.

f_c (ideal, in MHz)

$$32F8002 = 30.0 \cdot IFP = 30.0 \cdot IVFP \cdot 1.8/VPTAT$$

$$32F8003 = 21.67 \cdot IFP = 21.67 \cdot IVFP \cdot 1.8/VPTAT$$

where IFP and IVFP are in mA, VPTAT is in volts, $T_a = 25^\circ\text{C}$, $0.2 \text{ mA} \leq IFP \leq 0.6 \text{ mA}$ for F8002, and $0.185 \leq IFP \leq 0.6 \text{ mA}$ for F8003.

If a current source is used to inject current into pin IFP, pin VFP should be left open.

If the SSI 32F8002/8003 cutoff frequency is set using voltage VPTAT to bias up a resistor tied to pin VFP, the cutoff frequency is related to the resistor value by the following formulas.

f_c (ideal, in MHz)

$$32F8002 = 30.0 \cdot IFP = 30.0 \cdot 1.8/(3 \cdot R_x)$$

$$32F8003 = 21.67 \cdot IFP = 21.67 \cdot 1.8/(3 \cdot R_x)$$

R_x in k Ω

If pin VFP is used to program cutoff frequency, pin IFP should be left open.

MAGNITUDE EQUALIZATION PROGRAMMING

The magnitude equalization, measured in dB, is the amount of high frequency peaking at the cutoff frequency relative to the original -3 dB point. For example, when 12 dB boost is applied, the magnitude response peaks up 9 dB above the DC gain.

The amplitude of the input signal at frequencies near the cutoff frequency can be increased using this feature. Applying an external voltage to pin VBP which is proportional to reference output voltage VPTAT (provided by the VPTAT pin) will set the amount of boost. A fixed amount of boost can be set by an external resistor divider network connected from pin VBP to pins VPTAT and GND. No boost is applied if pin FBST, frequency boost enable, is at a low logic level.

The amount of boost FB at the cutoff frequency F_c is related to the voltage VBP by the formula

$$FB \text{ (ideal, in dB)} = 20 \log_{10}[3.73(VBP/VPTAT)+1],$$

where $0 < VBP < VPTAT$.

POWER ON / OFF

The SSI 32F8002/8003 support a Power Down mode for minimal Idle mode power dissipation. When PWRON is pulled up to TTL logic high, the device is in Normal Operation mode. When PWRON is pulled down to TTL logic low, or left open, the device is in the Power Down mode.

SSI 32F8002/8003

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|------|---|
| VIN+, VIN- | I | Differential Signal Inputs. The input signals must be AC coupled to these pins. |
| VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- | O | Differential Normal Outputs. The output signals must be AC coupled. |
| VO_DIFF+, VO_DIFF- | O | Differential Differentiated Outputs. For minimum time skew, these outputs should be AC coupled. |
| IFP | I | Frequency Program Input. The filter cutoff frequency f_c , is set by an external current IFP, injected into this pin. IFP must be proportional to voltage VPTAT. This current can be set with an external current generator such as a DAC. VFP should be left open when using this pin. |
| VFP | I | Frequency Program Input. The filter cutoff frequency can be set by programming a current through a resistor from VPTAT to this pin. IFP should be left open when using this pin. |
| VBP | I | Frequency Boost Program Input. The high frequency boost is set by an external voltage applied to this pin. VBP must be proportional to voltage VPTAT. A fixed amount of boost can be set by an external resistor divider network connected from VBP to VPTAT and GND. No boost is applied if the FBST pin is grounded, or at logic low. |
| FBST | I | Frequency Boost. A high logic level or open enables the frequency boost circuitry. A low input disables this function. |
| PWRON | I | Power On. A high logic level enables the chip. A low level or open pin puts the chip in a low power state. |
| VPTAT | O | PTAT Reference Voltage. This pin outputs a reference voltage which is proportional to absolute temperature (PTAT). VBP, VFP or IFP must be referenced to this pin for proper operation. |
| VCC | O | +5 Volt Supply. |
| GND | I | Ground |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATINGS |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Storage Temperature | -65°C to +150°C |
| Junction Operating Temperature, T_j | +130°C |
| Supply Voltage, VCC | -0.5V to 7V |
| Voltage Applied to Inputs | -0.5V to VCC |

SSI 32F8002/8003

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | RATINGS |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| Supply voltage, VCC | 4.50V < VCC < 5.50V |
| Ambient Temperature | 0°C < Ta < 70°C |

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Unless otherwise specified recommended operating conditions apply.

Power Supply Characteristics

| PARAMETER | | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------------|-----|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| Power Supply Current | ICC | PWRON ≤ 0.8V | | 0.1 | 0.5 | mA |
| Power Supply Current | ICC | PWRON ≥ 2.0V | | 46 | 60 | mA |
| Power Dissipation | PD | PWRON ≥ 2.0V, VCC = 5.0V | | 230 | 300 | mW |
| | | PWRON ≥ 2.0V, VCC = 5.5V | | 275 | 330 | mW |
| | | PWRON ≤ 0.8V | | 0.5 | 2.5 | mW |

DC Characteristics

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----|------------|------|--|-----|----|
| High Level Input Voltage | VIH | TTL input | 2.0 | | | V |
| Low Level Input Voltage | VIL | | | | 0.8 | V |
| High Level Input Current | IIH | VIH = 2.7V | | | 20 | μA |
| Low Level Input Current | IIL | VIL = 0.4V | -1.5 | | | mA |

Filter Characteristics

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----|--|-------|------|-------|-----|
| Filter Cutoff Frequency *(f -3dB) | *fc | 32F8002 $f_c = \frac{30 \text{ MHz}}{\text{mA}} (\text{IVFP})$ | 6.0 | | 18.0 | MHz |
| | | 32F8003 $f_c = \frac{21.67 \text{ MHz}}{\text{mA}} (\text{IVFP})$ | 4 | | 13 | MHz |
| Filter fc Accuracy | FCA | fc = max. | -10 | | +10 | % |
| VO_NORM Diff Gain | AO | F = 0.67 fc, FB = 0 dB | 0.8 | | 1.2 | V/V |
| VO_DIFF Diff Gain | AD | F = 0.67 fc, FB = 0 dB | 0.8AO | | 1.2AO | V/V |
| Frequency Boost at fc | FB | VBP = VPTAT fc = max. | 12.0 | 13.5 | 15.0 | dB |
| | | fc = min. | 11.5 | 13.0 | 14.5 | dB |
| Frequency Boost Accuracy | FBA | VBP/VPTAT = 1.0 fc = max. | -1.5 | | +1.5 | dB |

SSI 32F8002/8003

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

FILTER CHARACTERISTICS (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|----------------------------------|---|-------|-----|-------|------------|
| Group Delay Variation TGDO | $f_c = \max, \frac{V_{BP}}{V_{PTAT}} = 0$ 8002 | -750 | | +750 | ps |
| Without Boost (continued) | $F = 0.2 f_c$ to f_c 8003 | -1 | | +1 | ns |
| | $f_c = \min, \frac{V_{BP}}{V_{PTAT}} = 0$ 8002 | -2.25 | | +2.25 | ns |
| | $F = 0.2 f_c$ to f_c 8003 | -3 | | +3 | ns |
| | $f_c = 6 - 18 \text{ MHz}$, 8002 $f_c = 4 - 13 \text{ MHz}$, 8003 | -2 | | +2 | % |
| | $F = 0.2 f_c$ to f_c , $\frac{V_{BP}}{V_{PTAT}} = 0$ | | | | |
| | $f_c = 6 - 18 \text{ MHz}$, 8002 $f_c = 4 - 13 \text{ MHz}$, 8003 | -3 | | +3 | % |
| | $F = f_c$ to $1.75 f_c$, $\frac{V_{BP}}{V_{PTAT}} = 0$ | | | | |
| Group Delay Variation TGDB | $f_c = \max, V_{BP} = V_{PTAT}$ 8002 | -750 | | +750 | ps |
| With Boost | $F = 0.2 f_c$ to f_c 8003 | -1 | | +1 | ns |
| | $f_c = \min, V_{BP} = V_{PTAT}$ 8002 | -2.25 | | +2.25 | ns |
| | $F = 0.2$ to f_c 8003 | -3 | | +3 | ns |
| | $f_c = 6 - 18 \text{ MHz}$ 8002 $f_c = 4 - 13 \text{ MHz}$ 8003 | -2 | | +2 | % |
| | $F = 0.2 f_c$ to f_c , $V_{BP} = V_{PTAT}$ | | | | |
| | $f_c = 6 - 18 \text{ MHz}$, 8002 $f_c = 4 - 13 \text{ MHz}$, 8003 $F = f_c$ to $1.75 f_c$, $V_{BP} = V_{PTAT}$ | -3 | | +3 | % |
| Filter Input Dynamic Range VIF | THD = 1% max, $F = 0.67 f_c$, $V_{BP} = 0V$ (1000 pF across Rx) | 1 | | | Vpp |
| | THD = 1.5% max, $F = 0.67 f_c$, $V_{BP} = 0V$, Normal output (1000 pF across Rx) | 1.5 | | | Vpp |
| Filter Input Dynamic Range VIF | THD = 2.0% max, $F = 0.67 f_c$, $V_{BP} = 0V$, Differentiated output (1000 pF across Rx) | 1.5 | | | Vpp |
| Filter Output Dynamic Range VOF | THD = 1% max, $F = 0.67 f_c$ $R_{LOAD} \geq 1k\Omega$ (1000 pF across Rx) | 1 | | | Vpp |
| Filter Diff Input Resistance RIN | | 3 | 4.3 | | k Ω |
| Filter Input Capacitance CIN | | | | 7 | pF |
| Output Noise Voltage EOUT | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ 8002 | | 3.3 | | mVRms |
| Differentiated Output | $f_c = \max$, $V_{BP} = 0V$ 8003 | | 3 | | mVRms |

SSI 32F8002/8003

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

FILTER CONTROL CHARACTERISTICS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|--|--------------|-----------|------------|--------------------------------|
| Output Noise Voltage | EOUT | | | | |
| Normal Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ 8002 $f_c = \text{max}$, VBP = 0V 8003 | | 2 | | mVRms |
| Output Noise Voltage | EOUT | | | | |
| Differentiated Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ 8002 $f_c = \text{max}$, VBP = VPTAT 8003 | | 5.0 | | mVRms |
| Output Noise Voltage | EOUT | | | | |
| Normal Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ 8002 $f_c = \text{max}$, VBP = VPTAT 8003 | | 2.5 | | mVRms |
| Filter Output Sink Current | IO - | 1 | | | mA |
| Filter Output Source Current | IO + | | | 2 | mA |
| Filter Output Resistance (Single ended) | RO | | | 60 | Ω |
| Reference Voltage | VPTAT | | 1.8 | | V |
| PTAT Voltage Input | VFP | | 2/3 VPTAT | | V |
| Programming Current | IVFP | | | | |
| Range | Ta = 25°C 8002 8003 | 0.2 0.185 | | 0.6 0.6 | mA |
| Programming Voltage | V _{VBP} | 0 | | VPTAT | V |
| Voltage at pin IFP | V _{IFP} | | 2/3 VPTAT | | V |
| Power Up Time | $f_c = \text{min}$ $f_c = \text{max}$ | | | 1.5 1 | μs μs |
| Power Down Time | | | | 1 | μs |

SSI 32F8002/8003

Low-Power Programmable

Electronic Filter

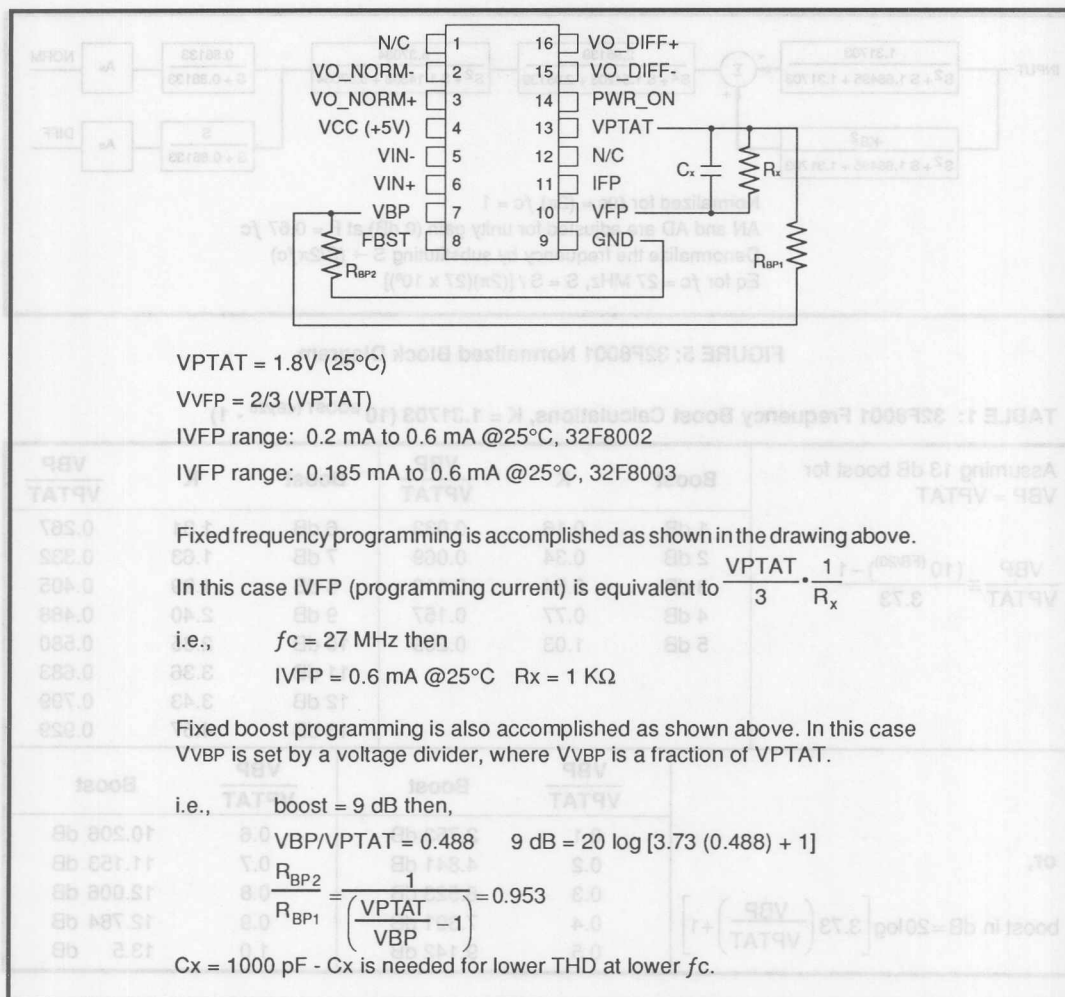


FIGURE 4: 32F8002/8003 Applications Setup

SSI 32F8002/8003

Low-Power Programmable

Electronic Filter

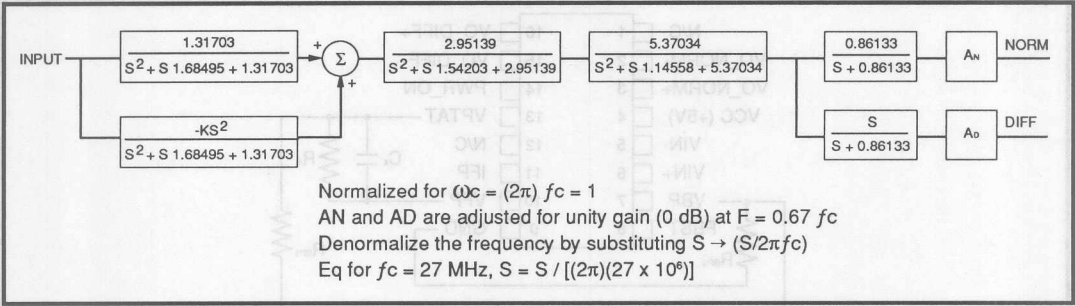


FIGURE 5: 32F8001 Normalized Block Diagram

TABLE 1: 32F8001 Frequency Boost Calculations, $K = 1.31703 (10^{\text{BOOST (dB)/20} - 1})$

| Assuming 13 dB boost for VBP = VPTAT | Boost | K | $\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VPTAT}}$ | Boost | K | $\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VPTAT}}$ |
|---|-----------------------------------|----------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| | 1 dB | 0.16 | 0.033 | 6 dB | 1.31 | 0.267 |
| | 2 dB | 0.34 | 0.069 | 7 dB | 1.63 | 0.332 |
| | 3 dB | 0.54 | 0.110 | 8 dB | 1.99 | 0.405 |
| | 4 dB | 0.77 | 0.157 | 9 dB | 2.40 | 0.488 |
| | 5 dB | 1.03 | 0.209 | 10 dB | 2.85 | 0.580 |
| | | | | 11 dB | 3.36 | 0.683 |
| | | | | 12 dB | 3.43 | 0.799 |
| | | | | 13 dB | 4.57 | 0.929 |
| or, boost in dB = $20 \log \left[3.73 \left(\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VPTAT}} \right) + 1 \right]$ | $\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VPTAT}}$ | Boost | | $\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VPTAT}}$ | Boost | |
| | 0.1 | 2.753 dB | | 0.6 | 10.206 dB | |
| | 0.2 | 4.841 dB | | 0.7 | 11.153 dB | |
| | 0.3 | 6.523 dB | | 0.8 | 12.006 dB | |
| | 0.4 | 7.391 dB | | 0.9 | 12.784 dB | |
| | 0.5 | 9.142 dB | | 1.0 | 13.5 dB | |

SSI 32F8002/8003

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

TABLE 2: Calculations

Typical change in f -3 dB point with boost

| Boost (dB) | Gain@ f_c (dB) | Gain@ peak (dB) | f_{peak}/f_c | f -3dB/ f_c |
|------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 0 | -3 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.00 |
| 1 | -2 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.21 |
| 2 | -1 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.51 |
| 3 | 0 | 0.15 | 0.70 | 1.80 |
| 4 | 1 | 0.99 | 1.05 | 2.04 |
| 5 | 2 | 2.15 | 1.23 | 2.20 |
| 6 | 3 | 3.41 | 1.33 | 2.33 |
| 7 | 4 | 4.68 | 1.38 | 2.43 |
| 8 | 5 | 5.94 | 1.43 | 2.51 |
| 9 | 6 | 7.18 | 1.46 | 2.59 |
| 10 | 7 | 8.40 | 1.48 | 2.66 |
| 11 | 8 | 9.59 | 1.51 | 2.73 |
| 12 | 9 | 10.77 | 1.51 | 2.80 |
| 13 | 10 | 11.92 | 1.53 | 2.87 |
| 14 | 11 | 13.06 | 1.53 | 2.93 |

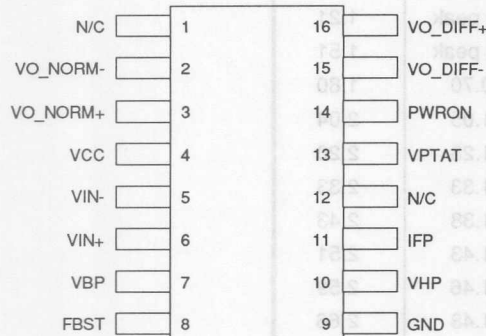
Notes: 1. f_c is the original programmed cutoff frequency with no boost
 2. f -3 dB is the new -3 dB value with boost implemented
 3. f_{peak} is the frequency where the amplitude reaches its maximum value with boost implemented
 i.e., $f_c = 9$ MHz when boost = 0 dB
 if boost is programmed to 5 dB then f -3 dB = 19.8 MHz
 $f_{peak} = 11.07$ MHz

SSI 32F8002/8003

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



16-Lead SON, SOL

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

THERMAL CHARACTERISTICS: θ_{ja}

| | |
|-----------------------|---------|
| 16-lead SON (150 mil) | 105°C/W |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 100°C/W |

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|------------------|------------|------------|
| SSI 32F8002 | | |
| 16-Lead SOL | 32F8002-CL | 32F8002-CL |
| 16-Lead SON | 32F8002-CN | 32F8002-CN |
| SSI 32F8003 | | |
| 16-Lead SOL | 32F8003-CL | 32F8003-CL |
| 16-Lead SON | 32F8003-CN | 32F8003-CN |

Preliminary Data: Indicates a product not completely released to production. The specifications are based on preliminary evaluations and are not guaranteed. Small quantities are available, and Silicon Systems should be consulted for current information.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8011/8012 Programmable Electronic Filter provides an electronically controlled low-pass filter with a separate differentiated low-pass output. A seven-pole, Bessel-type, low-pass filter is provided along with a single-pole, single-zero differentiator. Both outputs have matched delays. The delay matching is unaffected by any amount of programmed high frequency peaking (boost) or bandwidth. This programmability, combined with low group delay variation makes the SSI 32F8011/8012 ideal for use in many applications. Double differentiation high frequency boost is accomplished by a two-pole, low-pass with a two-pole, high-pass feed forward section to provide complementary real axis zeros. A variable attenuator is used to program the zero locations, which controls the amount of boost.

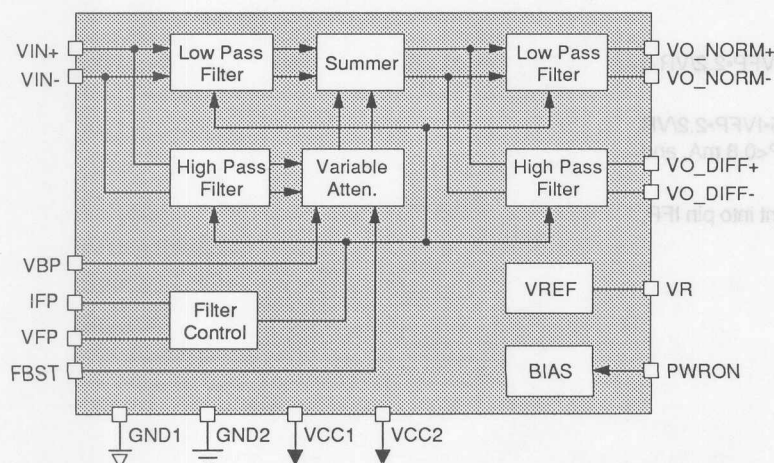
The SSI 32F8011/8012 programmable boost and bandwidth characteristics can be controlled by external DACs or DACs provided in the SSI 32D4661 Time Base Generator. Fixed characteristics are easily accomplished with three external resistors, in addition boost can be switched in or out by a logic signal.

The SSI 32F8011/8012 requires only a +5V supply and is available in 16-pin SON and SOL packages.

FEATURES

- **Ideal for:**
 - constant density recording applications
 - cellular telephone applications
 - radio
 - data acquisition
 - LAN
- **Programmable filter cutoff frequency**
(SSI 32F8011 $f_c = 5$ to 13 MHz)
(SSI 32F8012 $f_c = 6$ to 15 MHz)
- **Programmable high frequency peaking**
(0 to 9.5 dB boost at the filter cutoff frequency)
- **Matched normal and differentiated low-pass outputs**
- **Differential filter input and outputs**
- **± 0.75 ns group delay variation from 0.2 f_c to $f_c = 13$ MHz**
- **Total harmonic distortion less than 1%**
- **+5V only operation**
- **16-lead SON, and SOL packages**

BLOCK DIAGRAM



1293 - rev.

9-23

PIN DIAGRAM

| | | | |
|----------|---|----|----------|
| GND1 | 1 | 16 | VO_DIFF+ |
| VO_NORM- | 2 | 15 | VO_DIFF- |
| VO_NORM+ | 3 | 14 | PWRON |
| VCC1 | 4 | 13 | VR |
| VIN- | 5 | 12 | VCC2 |
| VIN+ | 6 | 11 | IFP |
| VBP | 7 | 10 | VFP |
| FBST | 8 | 9 | GND2 |

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 32F8011/8012

Programmable Electronic Filter

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8011/8012, a high performance programmable electronic filter, provides a low pass Bessel-type seven pole filter with matched normal and differentiated outputs. The device has been optimized for usage with several Silicon Systems products, including the SSI 32D4661 Time Base Generator, the SSI 32P54x family of Pulse Detectors, and the SSI 32P4720 Combo chip (Data Separator and Pulse Detector).

CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING

The programmable electronic filter can be set to a filter cutoff frequency from 5 to 13 MHz (with no boost) for SSI 32F8011 and 6 to 15 MHz for SSI 32F8012.

Cutoff frequency programming can be established using either a current source fed into pin IFP whose output current is proportional to the SSI 32F8011/8012 output reference voltage VR, or by means of an external resistor tied from the output voltage reference pin VR to pin VFP. The former method is optimized using the SSI 32D4661 Time Base Generator, since the current source into pin IFP is available at the DAC F output of the 32D4661. Furthermore, the voltage reference input is supplied to pin VR3 of the 32D4661 by the reference voltage VR from the VR pin of the 32F8011/8012. This reference voltage is an internally generated bandgap reference, which typically varies less than 1% over supply voltage and temperature variation.

The cutoff frequency, determined by the -3dB point relative to a very low frequency value (< 10 kHz), is related to the current IVFP injected into pin IFP by the following formulas.

SSI 32F8011

$$F_c (\text{ideal, in MHz}) = 16.25 \cdot \text{IFP} = 16.25 \cdot \text{IVFP} \cdot 2.2 / \text{VR}$$

SSI 32F8012

$$F_c (\text{ideal, in MHz}) = 18.75 \cdot \text{IFP} = 18.75 \cdot \text{IVFP} \cdot 2.2 / \text{VR}$$

where IFP and IVFP are in mA, $0.31 < \text{IFP} < 0.8 \text{ mA}$, and VR is in volts.

If a current source is used to inject current into pin IFP, pin VFP should be left open.

If the 32F8011/8012 cutoff frequency is set using voltage VR to bias up a resistor tied to pin VFP, the cutoff frequency is related to the resistor value by the following formulas.

SSI 32F8011

$$F_c (\text{ideal, in MHz}) = 16.25 \cdot \text{IFP} = 16.25 \cdot 2.2 / (3 \cdot R_x)$$

SSI 32F8012

$$F_c (\text{ideal, in MHz}) = 18.75 \cdot \text{IFP} = 18.75 \cdot 2.2 / (3 \cdot R_x)$$

where R_x is in k Ω , $0.917 < R_x < 2.366 \text{ k}\Omega$.

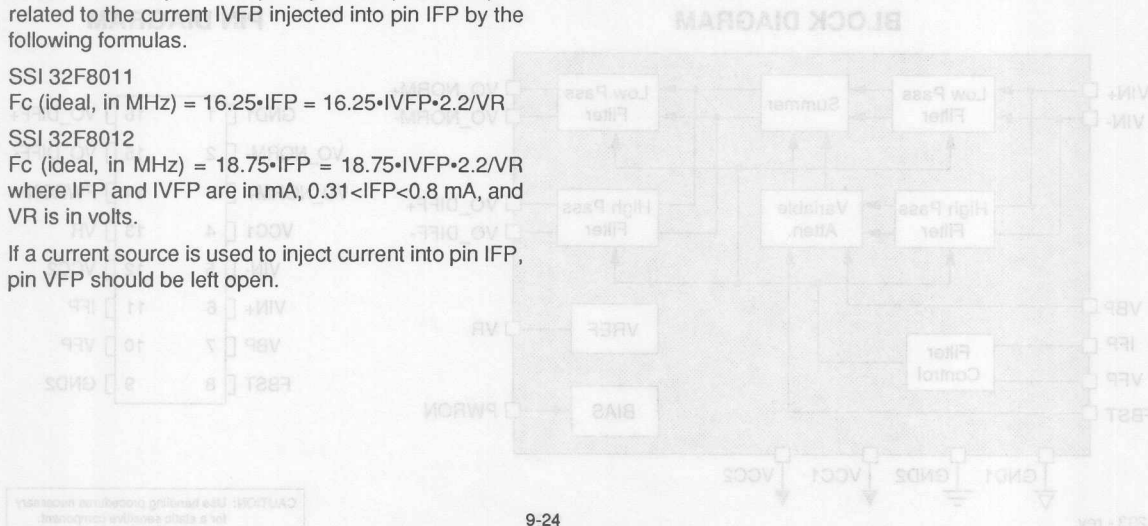
If pin VFP is used to program cutoff frequency, pin IFP should be left open.

SLIMMER HIGH FREQUENCY BOOST PROGRAMMING

The amplitude of the output signal at frequencies near the cutoff frequency can be increased using this feature. Applying an external voltage to pin VBP which is proportional to reference output voltage VR (provided by the VR pin) will set the amount of boost. A fixed amount of boost can be set by an external resistor divider network connected from pin VBP to pins VR and GND. No boost is applied if pin FBST, frequency boost enable, is at a low logic level.

The amount of boost FB at the cutoff frequency F_c is related to the voltage VBP by the formula

$$\text{FB (ideal, in dB)} = 20 \log_{10} [1.884 (\text{VBP}/\text{VR}) + 1], \text{ where } 0 < \text{VBP} < \text{VR}.$$



SSI 32F8011/8012
Programmable
Electronic Filter

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|---|
| VIN+, VIN- | DIFFERENTIAL SIGNAL INPUTS. The input signals must be AC coupled to these pins. |
| VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- | DIFFERENTIAL NORMAL OUTPUTS. The output signals must be AC coupled. |
| VO_DIFF+, VO_DIFF- | DIFFERENTIAL DIFFERENTIATED OUTPUTS. For minimum time skew, these outputs should be AC coupled to the pulse detector. |
| IFP | FREQUENCY PROGRAM INPUT. The filter cutoff frequency F_C , is set by an external current IFP, injected into this pin. IFP must be proportional to voltage VR. This current can be set with an external current generator such as a DAC. VFP should be left open when using this pin. |
| VFP | FREQUENCY PROGRAM INPUT. The filter cutoff frequency can be set by programming a current through a resistor from VR to this pin. IFP should be left open when using this pin. |
| VBP | FREQUENCY BOOST PROGRAM INPUT. The high frequency boost is set by an external voltage applied to this pin. VBP must be proportional to voltage VR. A fixed amount of boost can be set by an external resistor divider network connected from VBP to VR and GND. No boost is applied if the FBST pin is grounded, or at logic low. |
| FBST | FREQUENCY BOOST. A high logic level or open input enables the frequency boost circuitry. |
| PWRON | POWER ON. A high logic level or open circuit enables the chip. A low level puts the chip in a low power state. |
| VR | REFERENCE VOLTAGE. Internally generated reference voltage. |
| VCC1, VCC2 | +5 VOLT SUPPLY. |
| GND1, GND2 | GROUND |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATINGS |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Storage Temperature | -65 to +150°C |
| Junction Operating Temperature, Tj | +130°C |
| Supply Voltage, VCC1, VCC2 | -0.5 to 7V |
| Voltage Applied to Inputs | -0.5 to VCC + 0.5V |
| IFP, VFP Inputs Maximum Current* | ≤1.2mA |

* Exceeding this current may cause frequency programming lockup.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | RATINGS |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| Supply voltage, VCC1, VCC2 | 4.5 < VCC1,2 < 5.5V |
| Ambient Temperature | 0 < Ta < 70°C |

SSI 32F8011/8012

Programmable

Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Power Supply Characteristics (Unless otherwise specified, recommended operating conditions apply.)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| ICC Power Supply Current | PWRON \leq 0.8V VBP = VR | | 14 | 17 | mA |
| | VBP = 0V | | 12 | 15 | mA |
| ICC Power Supply Current | PWRON \geq 2.0V | | 67 | 80 | mA |

DC Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|------------------------------|------------|------|-----|---------|---------|
| VIH High Level Input Voltage | TTL input | 2.0 | | VCC+0.3 | V |
| VIL Low Level Input Voltage | | -0.3 | | 0.8 | V |
| IIH High Level Input Current | VIH = 2.7V | | | 20 | μ A |
| IIL Low Level Input Current | VIL = 0.4V | -1.5 | | | mA |

Filter Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|--|---------|------|-------|------------|
| FCA Filter f_c Accuracy | using VFP pin Rx = 0.917 k Ω | 32F8011 | 11.7 | 14.3 | MHz |
| | | 32F8012 | 13.5 | 16.5 | MHz |
| AO VO_NORM Diff Gain | F = 0.67 f_c , FB = 0 dB | 0.8 | | 1.20 | V/V |
| AD VO_DIFF Diff Gain | F = 0.67 f_c , FB = 0 dB | 0.8AO | | 1.0AO | V/V |
| FBA Frequency Boost Accuracy | VBP = VR @ f_c = 5 MHz | 8.5 | 9.5 | 10.5 | dB |
| TGD0 Group Delay Variation Without Boost* | f_c = Max f_c , VBP = 0V F = 0.2 f_c to f_c | -0.75 | | +0.75 | ns |
| TGDB Group Delay Variation With Boost* | f_c = Max f_c , VBP = VR F = 0.2 f_c to f_c | -0.75 | | +0.75 | ns |
| VIF Filter Input Dynamic Range | THD = 1% max, F = 0.67 f_c (no boost) | 1.5 | | | Vpp |
| VOF Filter Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1% max, F = 0.67 f_c | 1.5 | | | Vpp |
| RIN Filter Diff Input Resistance | | 3.0 | 3.8 | | k Ω |
| CIN Filter Diff Input Capacitance* | | | 2.5 | 7 | pF |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Differentiated Output | BW = 100 MHz, Rs = 50 Ω , Ifp = 0.8 mA, VBP = 0.0V | | 5.5 | 6.8 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Normal Output | BW = 100 MHz, Rs = 50 Ω , Ifp = 0.8 mA, VBP = 0.0V | | 2.75 | 3.6 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Differentiated Output | BW = 100 MHz, Rs = 50 Ω , Ifp = 0.8 mA, VBP = VR | | 6.0 | 8.1 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Normal Output | BW = 100 MHz, Rs = 50 Ω , Ifp = 0.8 mA, VBP = VR | | 3.25 | 4.4 | mVRms |

* Not directly testable in production, design characteristic.

SSI 32F8011/8012
Programmable
Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (continued)

Filter Characteristics (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|-----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| IO- Filter Output Sink Current | | 1.0 | | | mA |
| IO+ Filter Output Source Current | | 2.0 | | | mA |
| RO Filter Output Resistance Single ended | Source Current (IO+) = 1 mA | | | 60 | Ω |

Filter Control Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-------------------------------------|------------|-----|-----|------|-------|
| VR Reference Voltage Output | | 2.0 | | 2.40 | V |
| IvR Reference Output Source Current | | | | 2.0 | mA |

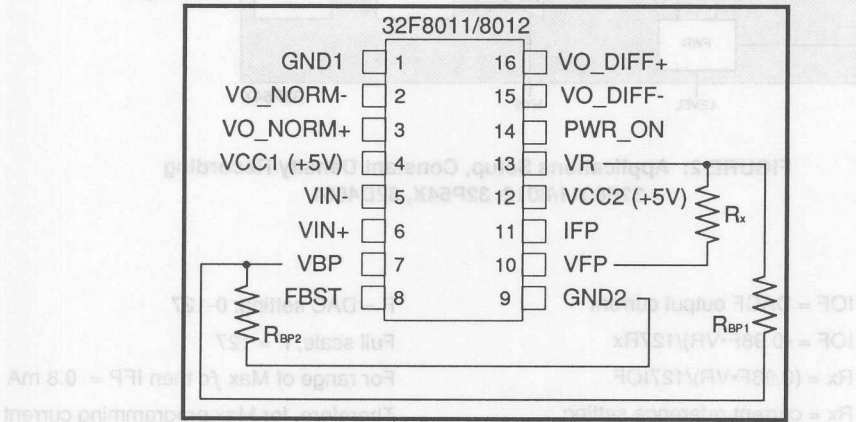


FIGURE 1: 32F8011/8012 Applications Setup, 16-Pin SO or DIP

$VR = 2.2V$

$VFP = 0.667 VR$

$Ivfp = 0.33VR/Rx$

Ivfp range: 0.31 mA to 0.8 mA
(5 MHz to 13 MHz for SSI 32F8011)
(6 MHz to 15 MHz for SSI 32F8012)

VFP is used when programming current is set with a resistor from VR. When VFP is used IFP must be left open.

SSI 32F8011/8012

Programmable

Electronic Filter

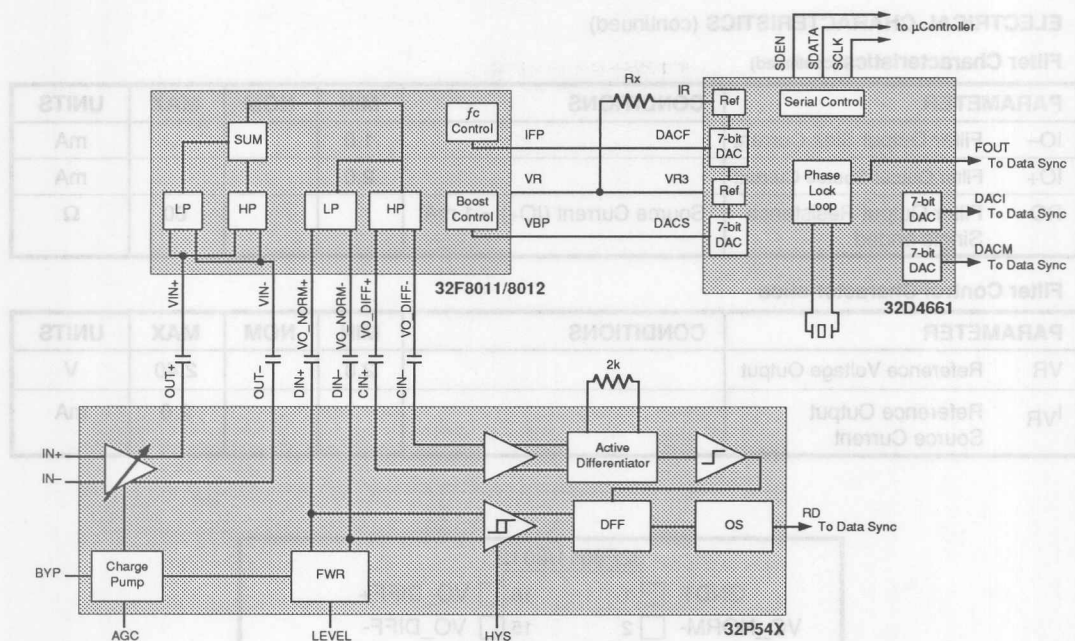


FIGURE 2: Applications Setup, Constant Density Recording
32F8011/8012, 32P54X, 32D4661

IOF = DACF output current

$$\text{IOF} = (0.98F \cdot \text{VR}) / 127R_x$$

$$R_x = (0.98F \cdot \text{VR}) / 127\text{IOF}$$

R_x = current reference setting resistor

VR = Voltage Reference = 2.2V

F = DAC setting: 0-127

Full scale, F = 127

For range of Max f_c then IFP = 0.8 mA

Therefore, for Max programming current range to 0.8 mA:

$$R_x = (0.98)(2.2/0.8) = 2.7 \text{ k}\Omega$$

Please note that in setups such as this where IFP is used for cutoff frequency programming VFP must be left open.

SSI 32F8011/8012 Programmable Electronic Filter

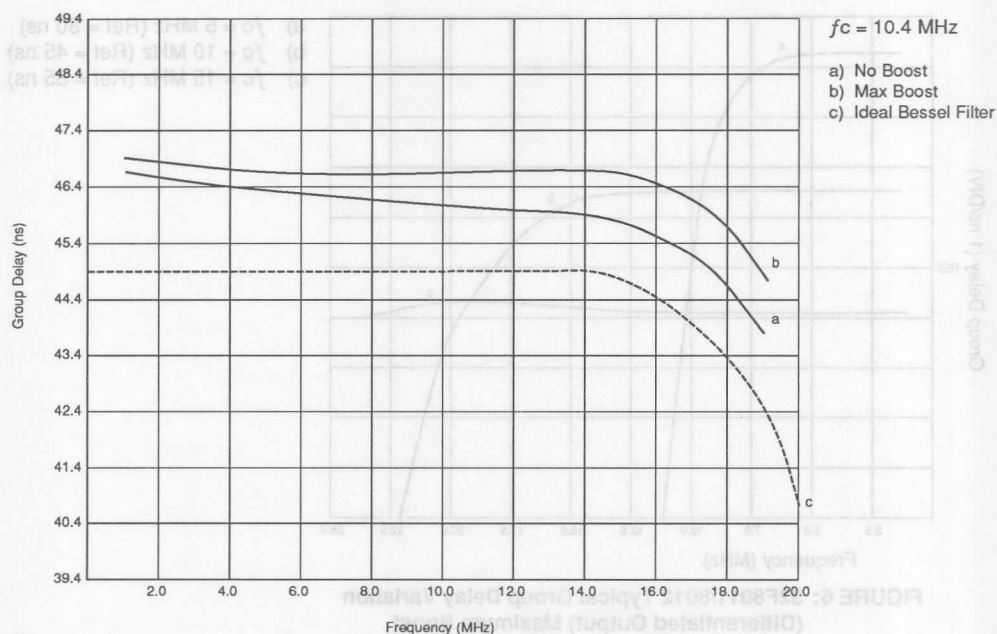


FIGURE 3: 32F8011/8012 Typical Group Delay Variation (Differentiated Output)

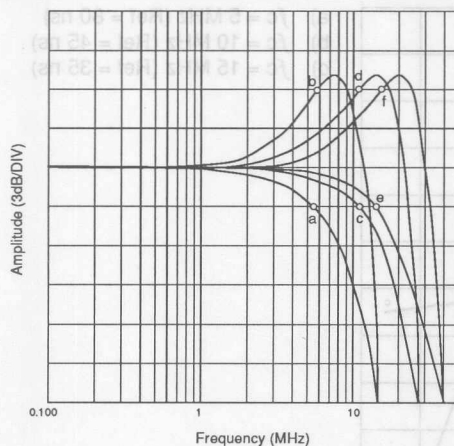


FIGURE 4: 32F8011/8012 Normal Low Pass Output Response (VO_NORM)

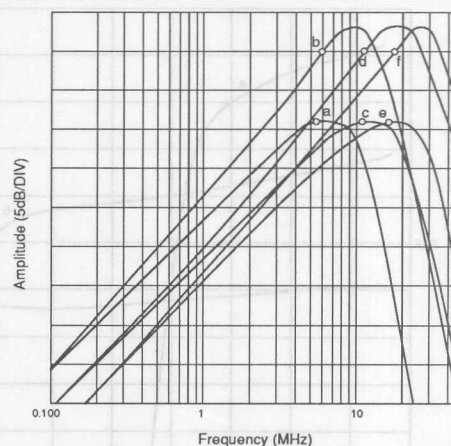


FIGURE 5: 32F8011/8012 Differentiated Low Pass Output Response (VO_DIFF)

- a) $f_c = 5$ MHz No Boost
- b) $f_c = 5$ MHz Max Boost
- c) $f_c = 10$ MHz No Boost

- d) $f_c = 10$ MHz Max Boost
- e) $f_c = 15$ MHz No Boost
- f) $f_c = 15$ MHz Max Boost

SSI 32F8011/8012

Programmable

Electronic Filter

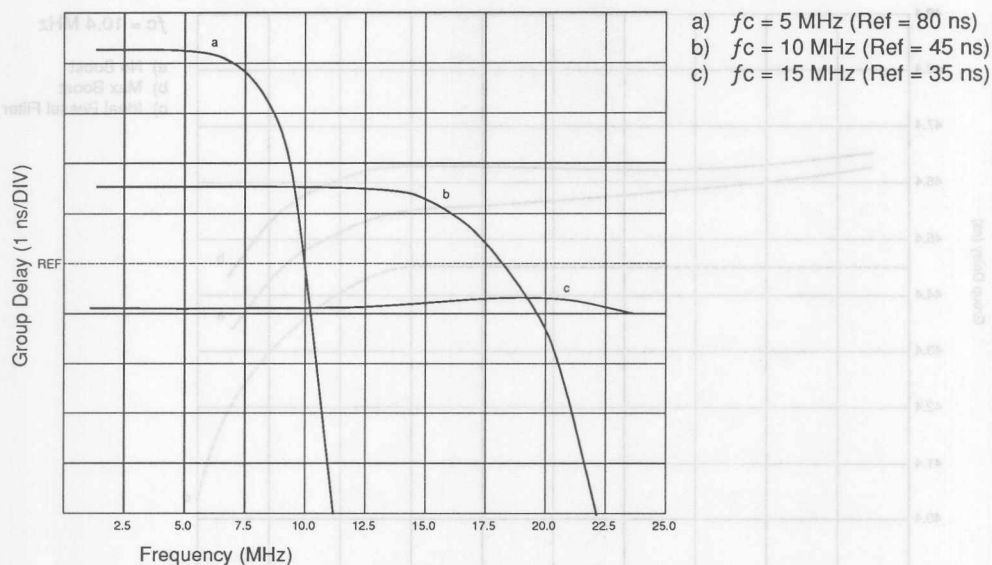


FIGURE 6: 32F8011/8012 Typical Group Delay Variation (Differentiated Output) Maximum Boost

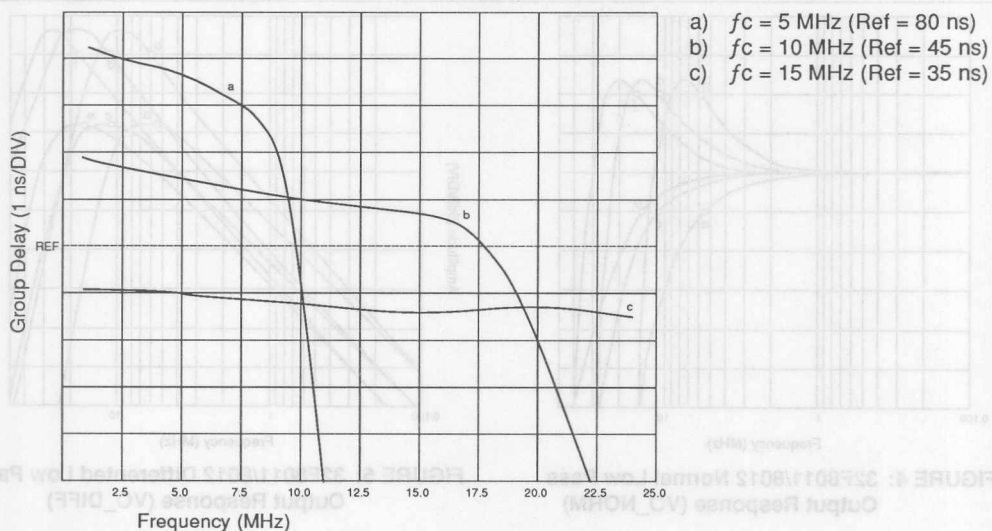


FIGURE 7: 32F8011/8012 Typical Group Delay Variation (Differentiated Output) No Boost

SSI 32F8011/8012
Programmable
Electronic Filter

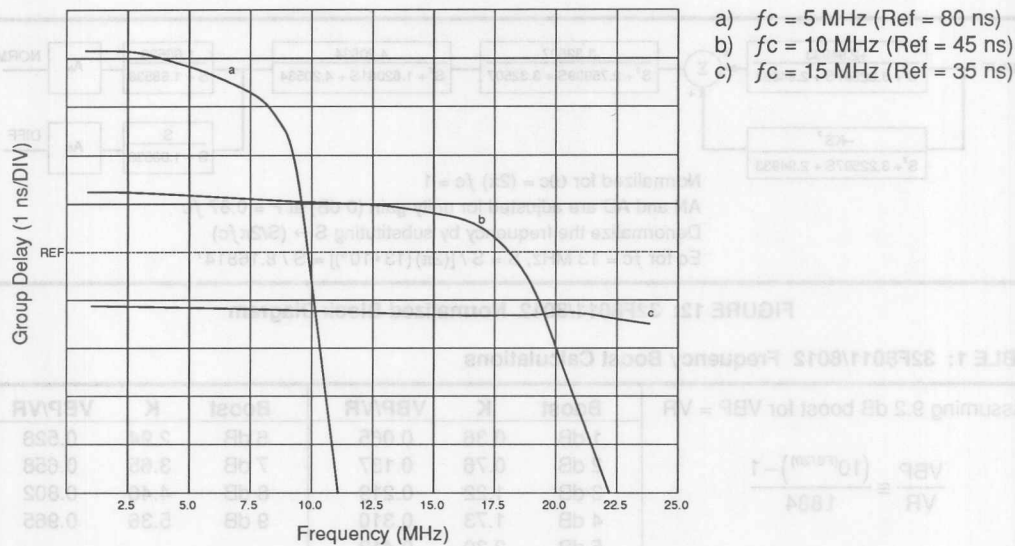


FIGURE 8: 32F8011/8012 Typical Group Delay Variation
(Normal Low Pass Output) Maximum Boost

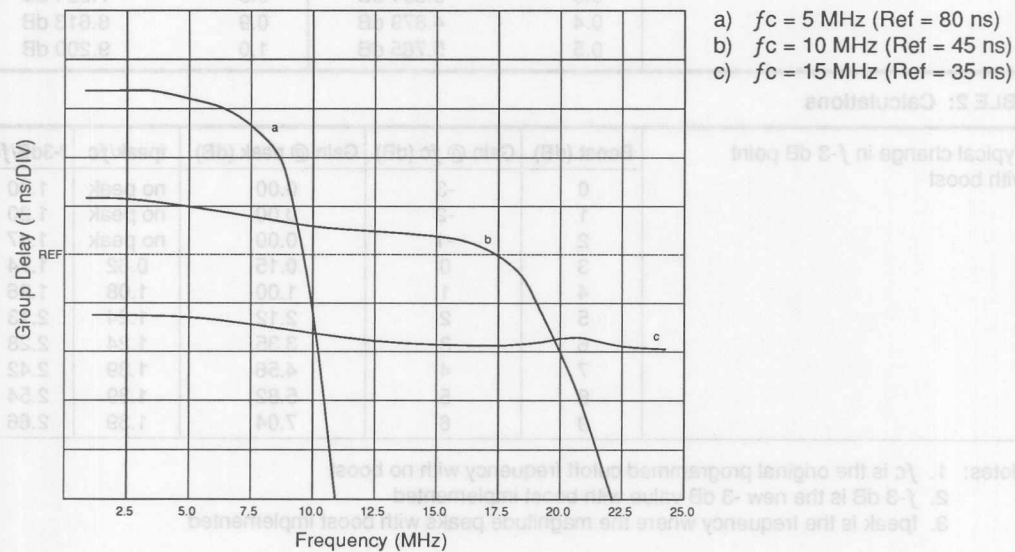


FIGURE 9: 32F8011/8012 Typical Group Delay Variation
(Normal Low Pass Output) No Boost

SSI 32F8011/8012

Programmable

Electronic Filter

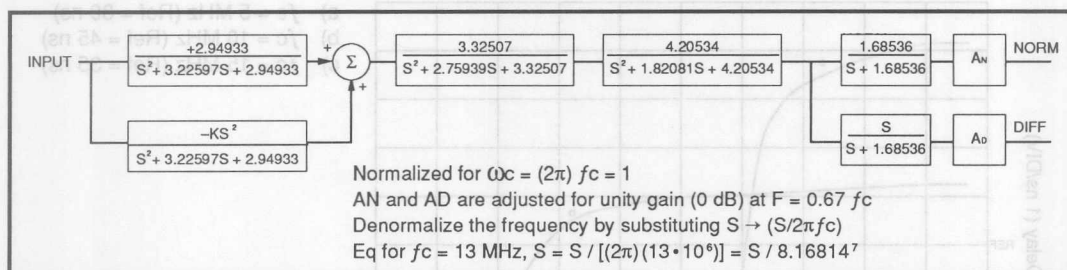


FIGURE 12: 32F8011/8012 Normalized Block Diagram

TABLE 1: 32F8011/8012 Frequency Boost Calculations

| Assuming 9.2 dB boost for $VBP = VR$ $\frac{VBP}{VR} \cong \frac{(10^{(FB/20)}) - 1}{1.884}$ | Boost | K | VBP/VR | Boost | K | VBP/VR |
|---|--------|----------|--------|--------|----------|--------|
| | 1 dB | 0.36 | 0.065 | 6 dB | 2.94 | 0.528 |
| | 2 dB | 0.76 | 0.137 | 7 dB | 3.65 | 0.658 |
| | 3 dB | 1.22 | 0.219 | 8 dB | 4.46 | 0.802 |
| | 4 dB | 1.73 | 0.310 | 9 dB | 5.36 | 0.965 |
| | 5 dB | 2.30 | 0.413 | | | |
| or, | VBP/VR | | Boost | VBP/VR | | Boost |
| boost in dB $\cong 20 \log \left[1.884 \left(\frac{VBP}{VR} \right) + 1 \right]$ | 0.1 | 1.499 dB | | 0.6 | 6.569 dB | |
| | 0.2 | 2.777 dB | | 0.7 | 7.305 dB | |
| | 0.3 | 3.891 dB | | 0.8 | 7.984 dB | |
| | 0.4 | 4.879 dB | | 0.9 | 8.613 dB | |
| | 0.5 | 5.765 dB | | 1.0 | 9.200 dB | |

TABLE 2: Calculations

| Typical change in f -3 dB point with boost | Boost (dB) | Gain @ f_c (dB) | Gain @ peak (dB) | f_{peak}/f_c | f -3dB/ f_c |
|--|------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| | 0 | -3 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.00 |
| | 1 | -2 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.20 |
| | 2 | -1 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.47 |
| | 3 | 0 | 0.15 | 0.62 | 1.74 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1.00 | 1.08 | 1.96 |
| | 5 | 2 | 2.12 | 1.24 | 2.13 |
| | 6 | 3 | 3.35 | 1.24 | 2.28 |
| | 7 | 4 | 4.56 | 1.39 | 2.42 |
| | 8 | 5 | 5.82 | 1.39 | 2.54 |
| | 9 | 6 | 7.04 | 1.39 | 2.66 |

- Notes: 1. f_c is the original programmed cutoff frequency with no boost
2. f -3 dB is the new -3 dB value with boost implemented
3. f_{peak} is the frequency where the magnitude peaks with boost implemented

i.e., $f_c = 13 \text{ MHz}$ when boost = 0 dB
if boost is programmed to 5 dB then f -3 dB = 27.69 MHz, $f_{peak} = 16.12 \text{ MHz}$

SSI 32F8011/8012

Programmable Electronic Filter

TABLE 3: Typical Change in $f - 3$ dB Point with Boost - $K = 2.94933 \left(10^{\frac{\text{BOOST (dB)}}{20}} - 1 \right)$

| Boost (dB) | Gain@ f_c (dB) | Gain@peak (dB) | f_{Peak}/f_c | $f - 3\text{dB}/f_c$ | K |
|------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------------|----------------------|------|
| 0 | -3 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.00 | 0 |
| 1 | -2 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.20 | 0.36 |
| 2 | -1 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.47 | 0.76 |
| 3 | 0 | 0.15 | 0.62 | 1.74 | 1.22 |
| 4 | 1 | 1.00 | 1.08 | 1.96 | 1.73 |
| 5 | 2 | 2.12 | 1.24 | 2.13 | 2.30 |
| 6 | 3 | 3.35 | 1.24 | 2.28 | 2.94 |
| 7 | 4 | 4.56 | 1.39 | 2.42 | 3.65 |
| 8 | 5 | 5.82 | 1.39 | 2.54 | 4.46 |
| 9 | 6 | 7.04 | 1.39 | 2.66 | 5.36 |
| 10 | 7 | 8.24 | 1.39 | 2.77 | 6.38 |

- Notes: 1. f_c is the original programmed cutoff frequency with no boost.
 2. $f - 3$ dB is the new -3 dB value with boost implemented.
 3. f_{peak} is the frequency where the magnitude peaks with boost implemented.

e.g., $f_c = 13$ MHz when boost = 0 dB
 if boost is programmed to 5 dB then $f - 3$ dB = 27.69 MHz
 $f_{\text{peak}} = 16.12$ MHz

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-----------------------|------------|------------|
| SSI 32F8011 | | |
| 16-lead SOL (150 mil) | 32F8011-CN | 32F8011-CN |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 32F8011-CL | 32F8011-CL |
| SSI 32F8012 | | |
| 16-lead SOL (150 mil) | 32F8012-CN | 32F8012-CN |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 32F8012-CL | 32F8012-CL |

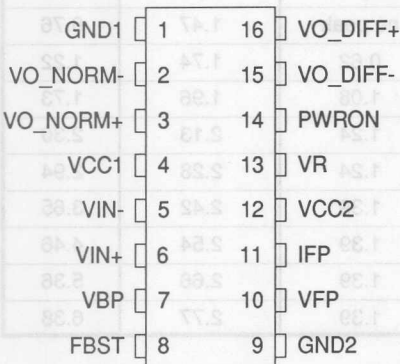
No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of the product not for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights to third parties resulting from its use. The license is granted under any patents, trademarks or other rights of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-8000, FAX (714) 573-8914

SSI 32F8011/8012
Programmable
Electronic Filter

PIN DIAGRAM

(Top View)



16-lead SON, SOL

Thermal Characteristics: θ_{JA}

| | |
|-----------------------|----------|
| 16-lead SON (150 mil) | 105° C/W |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 100° C/W |

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-----------------------|------------|------------|
| SSI 32F8011 | | |
| 16-lead SON (150 mil) | 32F8011-CN | 32F8011-CN |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 32F8011-CL | 32F8011-CL |
| SSI 32F8012 | | |
| 16-lead SON (150 mil) | 32F8012-CN | 32F8012-CN |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 32F8012-CL | 32F8012-CL |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8020A/8022A Programmable Electronic Filter provides an electronically controlled low-pass filter with a separate differentiated low-pass output. A seven-pole, 0.05° Equiripple-type linear phase, low-pass filter is provided along with a single-pole, single-zero differentiator. Both outputs have matched delays. The delay matching is unaffected by any amount of programmed equalization or bandwidth. The SSI 32F8021/8023 does not have differentiated outputs. This programmability combined with low group delay variation makes the SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023 ideal for use in constant density recording applications. Double differentiation pulse slimming equalization is accomplished by a two-pole, low-pass with a two-pole, high-pass feed forward section to provide complimentary real axis zeros. A variable attenuator is used to program the zero locations.

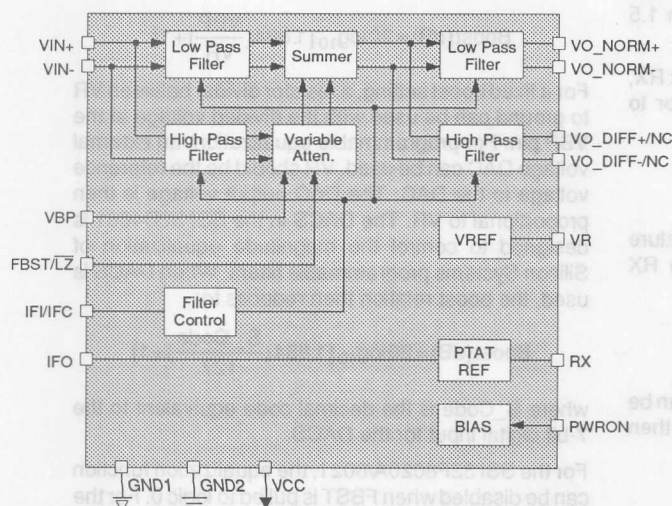
The SSI 32F8020A/8022A programmable equalization and bandwidth characteristics can be controlled by external DACs or DACs provided in the SSI 32D4661

(continued)

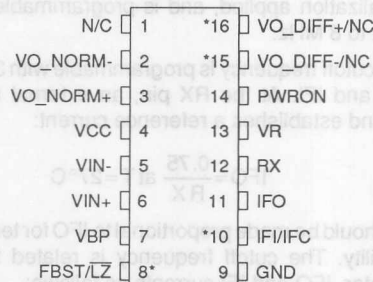
FEATURES

- Ideal for constant density recording applications
- Programmable filter cutoff frequency ($f_c = 1.5$ to 8 MHz)
- Programmable pulse slimming equalization (0 to 9 dB boost at the filter cutoff frequency)
- Matched normal and differentiated low-pass outputs (SSI 32F8020A/8022A)
- Differential filter input and outputs
- $\pm 10\%$ cutoff frequency accuracy
- $\pm 2\%$ maximum group delay variation from 1.5 - 8 MHz
- Total harmonic distortion less than 1%
- No external filter components required
- +5V only operation
- 16-pin SON and SOL package

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



- * Pin 8 = FBST - SSI 32F8020A/8021
LZ - SSI 32F8022A/8023
- * Pin 10 = IFI - SSI 32F8020A/8022A
IFC - SSI 32F8021/8023
- * Pin 15 & 16 = VO_DIFF - SSI 32F8020A/8022A
N/C - SSI 32F8021/8023

SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

DESCRIPTION (continued)

SSI32D4661 time base generator. Fixed characteristics are easily accomplished with three external resistors. External DACs are required for the SSI 32F8021/8023 to program the cutoff frequency. For the SSI 32F8020A/8021, equalization can be switched in or out by a logic signal. The input impedance of the SSI 32F8022A/8023 can be clamped low for fast recovery from input overload.

The SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023 require only a +5V supply and are available in 16-Lead SON and SOL packages.

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023 is a high performance programmable electronic filter. It features a 7-pole 0.05° phase equiripple filter with matched normal and differentiated outputs. The device has been optimized for usage with several Silicon Systems products, including the SSI 32D4661 Time Base Generator, the SSI 32P54X family pulse detectors, and the SSI 32P4720 combo chip (Data Separator and Pulse Detector).

CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING

The cutoff frequency, f_c , of the SSI 32F8020A/8022A is defined as the -3dB filter bandwidth with no magnitude equalization applied, and is programmable from 1.5 MHz to 8 MHz.

The cutoff frequency is programmable with 3 pins: RX, IFO and IFI. At the RX pin, an external resistor to ground establishes a reference current:

$$IFO = \frac{0.75}{R_X} \text{ at } T = 27^\circ\text{C}$$

IFI should be made proportional to IFO for temperature stability. The cutoff frequency is related to the RX resistor, IFO and IFI currents as follows:

$$f_c(\text{MHz}) = 8x \frac{IFI}{IFO} \times \frac{1.25}{R_x(\text{k}\Omega)}$$

For a fixed cutoff frequency setting, IFO and IFI can be tied together. The cutoff frequency equation then reduces to:

$$f_c(\text{MHz}) = 8x \frac{1.25}{R_x(\text{k}\Omega)}$$

For programmable cutoff frequency, an external current DAC can be used. The IFO should be the reference current into the DAC. The DAC output current drives IFI, which is then proportional to IFO. The DACF in the SSI 32D4661 Time Base Generator is designed to control f_c of the Silicon Systems programmable filters. When the DACF, which has a 4X current from its reference to full scale output is used, a 5-kΩ RX is used. The f_c is then given as follows:

$$f_c(\text{MHz}) = 8x \frac{F_Code}{127}$$

where F_Code is the decimal code equivalent to the 7-bit digital input for the DACF. The cutoff frequency programming for the SSI 32F8021/8023 is shown in Figure 3.

MAGNITUDE EQUALIZATION PROGRAMMING

The magnitude equalization, measured in dB, is the amount of high frequency peaking at the cutoff frequency relative to the original -3 dB point. For example, when 9 dB boost is applied, the magnitude response peaks up 6 dB above the DC gain.

The magnitude equalization is programmable with two pins: VR and VBP. The VR is a bandgap reference voltage, 2.3V typically. The voltage at the VBP pin determines the amount of high frequency boost. The boost function is as follows:

$$\text{Boost}(\text{dB}) = 20 \log_{10} [1.884 (\frac{VBP}{VR}) + 1]$$

For a fixed boost setting, a resistor divider between VR to ground can be used with the divided voltage at the VBP pin. For programmable equalization, an external voltage DAC can be used. VR should be the reference voltage to the DAC. The DAC output voltage is then proportional to VR. The DACS in the SSI 32D4661 is designed to control the magnitude equalization of Silicon Systems programmable filters. When DACS is used, the boost relation then reduces to:

$$\text{Boost}(\text{dB}) = 20 \log_{10} [1.884 (\frac{S_Code}{127}) + 1]$$

where S_Code is the decimal code equivalent to the 7-bit digital input for the DACS.

For the SSI 32F8020A/8021, the equalization function can be disabled when FBST is pulled to logic 0. For the SSI 32F8022A/8023, the VBP pin should be grounded to achieve 0 dB boost.

SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

LOW INPUT IMPEDANCE (SSI 32F8022A/8023 only)

When the LZ is at logic 1 or left open, the SSI 32F8022A/8023 input is at high impedance state. When the LZ is pulled to logic 0, the SSI 32F8022A/8023 input is clamped to a low impedance state, 200 Ω typical.

POWER ON/OFF

The SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023 support a power down mode for minimal Idle mode power dissipation. When PWRON is pulled up to logic 1, the device is in normal operation mode. When PWRON is pulled down to logic 0, or left open, the device is in the power down mode.

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| VIN+, VIN- | DIFFERENTIAL SIGNAL INPUTS. |
| VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- | DIFFERENTIAL NORMAL OUTPUTS. |
| VO_DIFF+ VO_DIFF- | DIFFERENTIAL DIFFERENTIATED OUTPUTS. |
| RX | PTAT REFERENCE CURRENT SET. PTAT (proportional to absolute temperature) reference current IFO is equivalent to the current set on this pin. |
| IFO | PTAT CURRENT REFERENCE OUTPUT. This pin outputs a PTAT reference current which is externally scaled for control input into IFI. |
| IFI | FREQUENCY PROGRAM INPUT. The filter cutoff frequency f_c , is set by an external current IFI, injected into this pin. IFI must be proportional to current IFO. This current can be set with an external current generator such as a DAC, referenced to IFO. |
| VBP | FREQUENCY BOOST PROGRAM INPUT. The slimmer high frequency boost is set by an external voltage applied to this pin. VBP must be proportional to voltage VR. A fixed amount of boost can be set by an external resistor divider network connected from VBP to VR and GND. No boost is applied if the FBST pin is grounded, or at logic low. |
| FBST (32F8020A/8021) | FREQUENCY BOOST. A high logic level or open input enables the frequency boost circuitry. No boost is applied if the FBST pin is grounded, or at logic low. |
| LZ (32F8022A /8023) | LOW IMPEDANCE MODE. With a low logic level, the analog input impedance is switched low for fast recovery from input overload. With a high logic level or left open, the input is at high impedance state. |
| PWRON | POWER ON. A high logic level circuit enables the chip. A low level puts the chip in a low power state. A low or open circuit disables the chip. |
| VR | REFERENCE VOLTAGE. Internally generated reference voltage. |
| VCC | +5 VOLT SUPPLY. |
| GND | GROUND |

SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|--|---------------|
| Storage Temperature | -65 to +150°C |
| Junction Operating Temperature, T _j | +130°C |
| Supply Voltage, VCC | -0.5 to 7V |
| Voltage Applied to Inputs | -0.5 to VCCV |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Supply voltage, VCC | 4.50V < VCC < 5.50V |
| Ambient Temperature | 0°C < T _a < 70°C |

Power Supply Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|-------------------------------|--|-----|-----|-----|------|
| ICC Power Supply Current | PWRON ≤ 0.8V | | | 0.5 | mA |
| | PWRON ≥ 2.2V SSI 32F8021/8023 | | 26 | 32 | mA |
| | PWRON ≥ 2.2V SSI 32F8020A/8022A | | 35 | 41 | mA |
| PD Power Dissipation | PWRON ≤ 0.8V | | | 3 | mW |
| | PWRON ≥ 2.2V, VCC = 5V SSI 32F8021/8023 | | 130 | 160 | mW |
| | PWRON ≥ 2.2V, VCC = 5.5V SSI 32F8021/8023 | | 143 | 176 | mW |
| | PWRON ≥ 2.2V, VCC = 5V SSI 32F8020A/8022A | | 175 | 205 | mW |
| | PWRON ≥ 2.2V, VCC = 5.5V SSI 32F8020A/8022A | | 193 | 226 | mW |

SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

DC Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|------------|-----------------------------|-----|-----------------------------|------|
| VIH High Level Input Voltage | TTL input | 2.0 | | | V |
| VIL Low Level Input Voltage | | | | 0.8 | V |
| IIH High Level Input Current | VIH = 2.7V | | | 20 | μA |
| IIL Low Level Input Current | VIL = 0.4V | -1.5 | | | mA |
| VICM VIN± Input Common Mode Voltage | | (V _{CC} -1.5) -0.3 | | (V _{CC} -1.5) +0.3 | V |
| VOCM VO_NORM± Output Common Mode Voltage | | VCC-2.3 -0.5 | | VCC-2.3 +0.5 | V |
| VOFFVO_NORM± Output Offset | VIN± open | -0.4 | | +0.4 | V |

Filter Characteristics

| | | | | | | |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|-------|-----|-------|-----|
| fc | Filter Cutoff Frequency | Rx = 5kΩ $f_c \text{ (MHz)} = 8 \cdot \frac{IFI}{4 \cdot IFO}$ (32F8020A/8022A) $f_c \text{ (MHz)} = 8 \cdot \frac{IFC}{4 \cdot IFO}$ (32F8021/8023) | 1.5 | | 8.0 | MHz |
| FCA | Filter fc Accuracy | fc (nominal) = 8 MHz | -10 | | +10 | % |
| AO | VO_NORM Diff Gain | F = 0.67 fc, FB = 0 dB | 0.8 | 1.0 | 1.2 | V/V |
| AD | VO_DIFF Diff Gain (32F8020A/8022A) | F = 0.67 fc, FB = 0 dB | 0.8AO | | 1.2AO | V/V |
| FB | Frequency Boost at fc | $FB(\text{db}) = 20 \log \left[1.884 \left(\frac{VBP}{VR} \right) + 1 \right]$ VBP = VR | | 9.2 | | dB |
| FBA | Frequency Boost Accuracy | FB (ideal) = 9.2 dB | -1 | | +1 | dB |
| TGD0 | Group Delay Variation Without Boost | fc = 8 MHz, VBP = 0V F = 0.2 fc to 1.75 fc fc = 1.5 MHz - 8 MHz F = 0.2 fc to 1.75 fc, VBP = 0V | -1.3 | | +1.3 | ns |
| | | | -2 | | +2 | % |
| TGDB | Group Delay Variation With Boost | fc = 8 MHz, VBP = VR F = 0.2 fc to 1.75 fc fc = 1.5 MHz - 8 MHz F = 0.2 fc to 1.75 fc, VBP = VR | -1.3 | | +1.3 | ns |
| | | | -2 | | +2 | % |

SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

Filter Characteristics (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|--|-----|-----|------|-----------------|
| VOF Filter Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1% max, $F = 0.67 f_c$ | 1.0 | | | V _{pp} |
| VOF Filter Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1.5%, $F = 0.67 f_c$ VO_DIFF±, $f_c = 1.5$ MHz, $0 < T_a < 10^\circ\text{C}$, THD = 2%, $F = 0.67 f_c$ | 1.5 | | | V _{pp} |
| RIN Filter Diff Input Resistance | 32F8020A/8021 32F8022A/8023 LZ = 1 or open | 3.0 | 4.0 | | kΩ |
| | 32F8022A/8023 LZ = 0 | | 200 | 400 | Ω |
| CIN Filter Input Capacitance | | | | 7 | pF |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage Differentiated Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ $f_c = 8$ MHz, VBP = 0.0V (32F8020A/8022A) | | 6.3 | 7.5 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage Normal Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ $f_c = 8$ MHz, VBP = 0.0V | | 2.7 | 4.0 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage Differentiated Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ $f_c = 8$ MHz, VBP = VR (32F8020A/8020A) | | 9.4 | 11.0 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage Normal Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ $f_c = 8$ MHz, VBP = VR | | 3.7 | 4.5 | mVRms |
| IO- Filter Output Sink Current | | 1.0 | | | mA |
| IO+ Filter Output Source Current | | 2.0 | | | mA |
| RO Filter Output Resistance (Single ended) | IO+ = 1.0 mA | | | 60 | Ω |

Filter Control Characteristics

| | | | | | |
|------|---|--|------|---------------------|----|
| VR | Reference Voltage | | 2.2 | 2.45 | V |
| VBP | Frequency Boost Control Voltage Range | VR = 2.3V FBOOST = 0 to 9.2 dB | 0 | 2.3 | V |
| VRX | PTAT Reference Current Set Output Voltage | TA = 25°C IRX = 0 - 0.6 mA Rx > 1.25 kΩ | | 750 | mV |
| IFO | PTAT Reference Current, Output Current Range | TA = 25°C 1.25 kΩ < Rx < 6.8 kΩ IFO = VRX/Rx VRX = 750 mV | 0.11 | 0.6 | mA |
| RIFO | IFO Output Impedance | | 50 | | kΩ |
| VIFO | IFO Voltage Compliance | | 0 | V _{cc} - 1 | V |

SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

Filter Control Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|------------------------------------|---|------|-----|-----|------|
| IFI PTAT Programming Current Range | TA = 25°C, VRX = 750 mV 32F8020A/8022A | 0.11 | | 0.6 | mA |
| RIFI IFI Input Impedance | 32F8020A/8022A | 1.0 | | 2.5 | kΩ |
| VIFI IFI Voltage Compliance | 32F8020A/8022A | 0.5 | | 2.5 | V |
| IFC PTAT Programming Current Range | TA = 25 °C, VRX = 750 mV 32F8021/8023 | 0.11 | | 0.6 | mA |
| TPWR Power On Recovery Time | DC voltages within 20 mV of final values | | | 500 | ns |
| TBST Boost Change Recovery | DC voltages within 20 mV of final values | | | 500 | ns |
| TFBW Bandwidth Change Recovery | DC voltages within 20 mV of final values | | | 500 | ns |

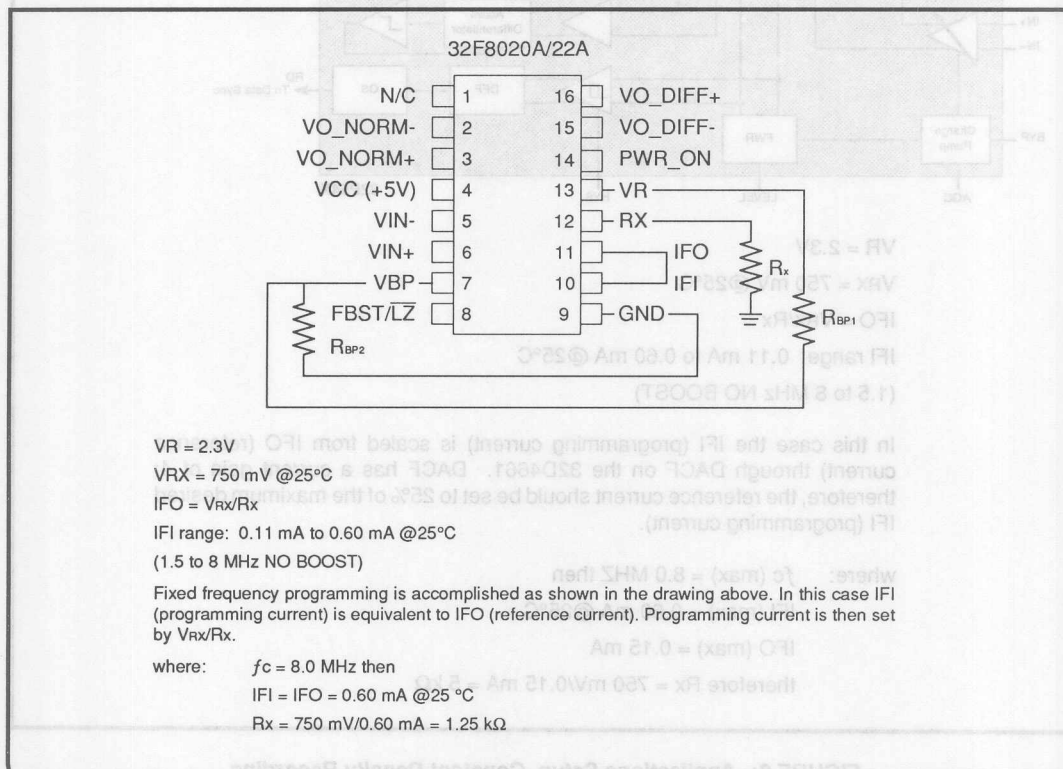


FIGURE 1: 32F8020A/8022A Applications Setup

SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

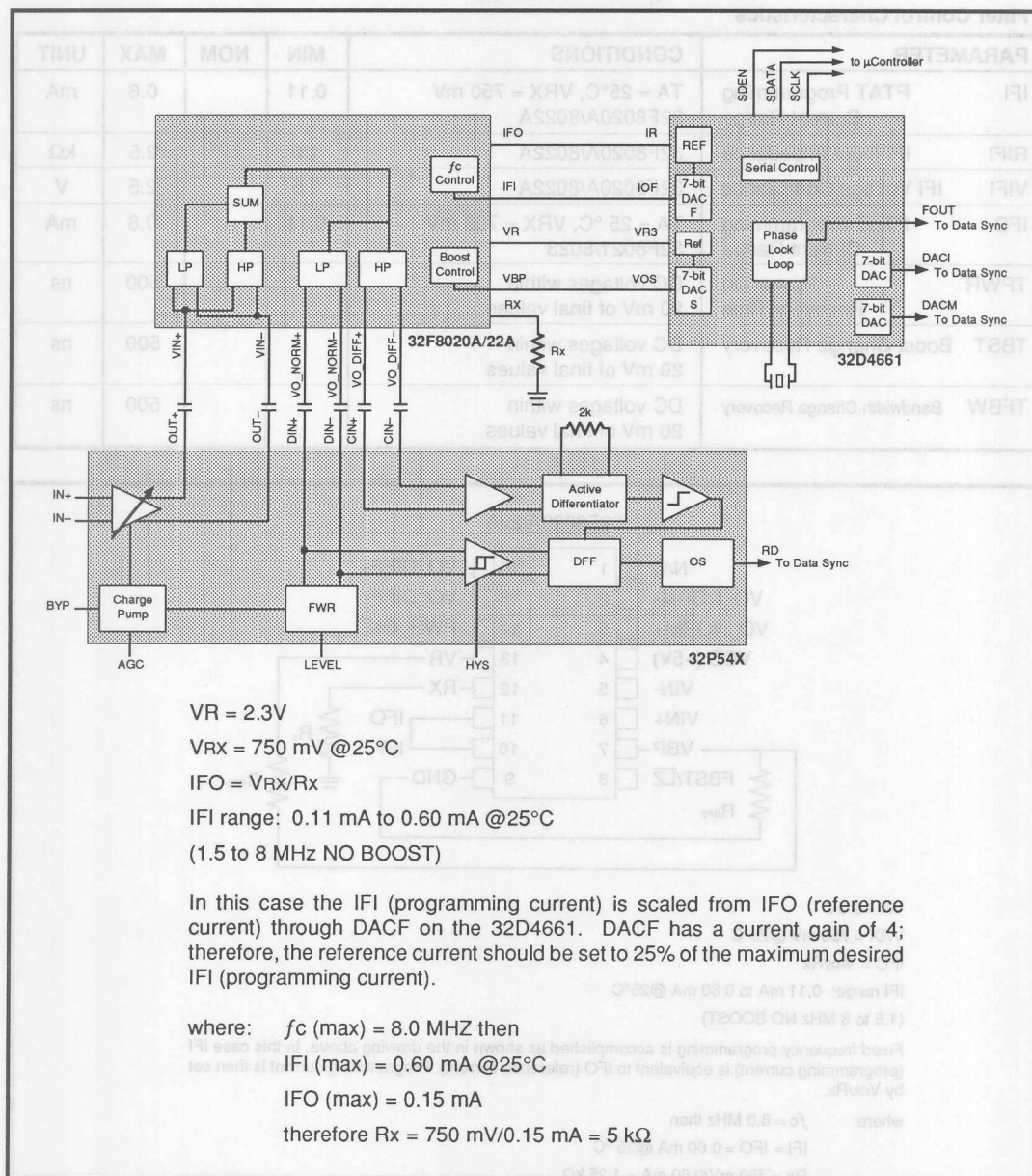


FIGURE 2: Applications Setup, Constant Density Recording
32F8020A/8022A, 32P54X, 32D4661

SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

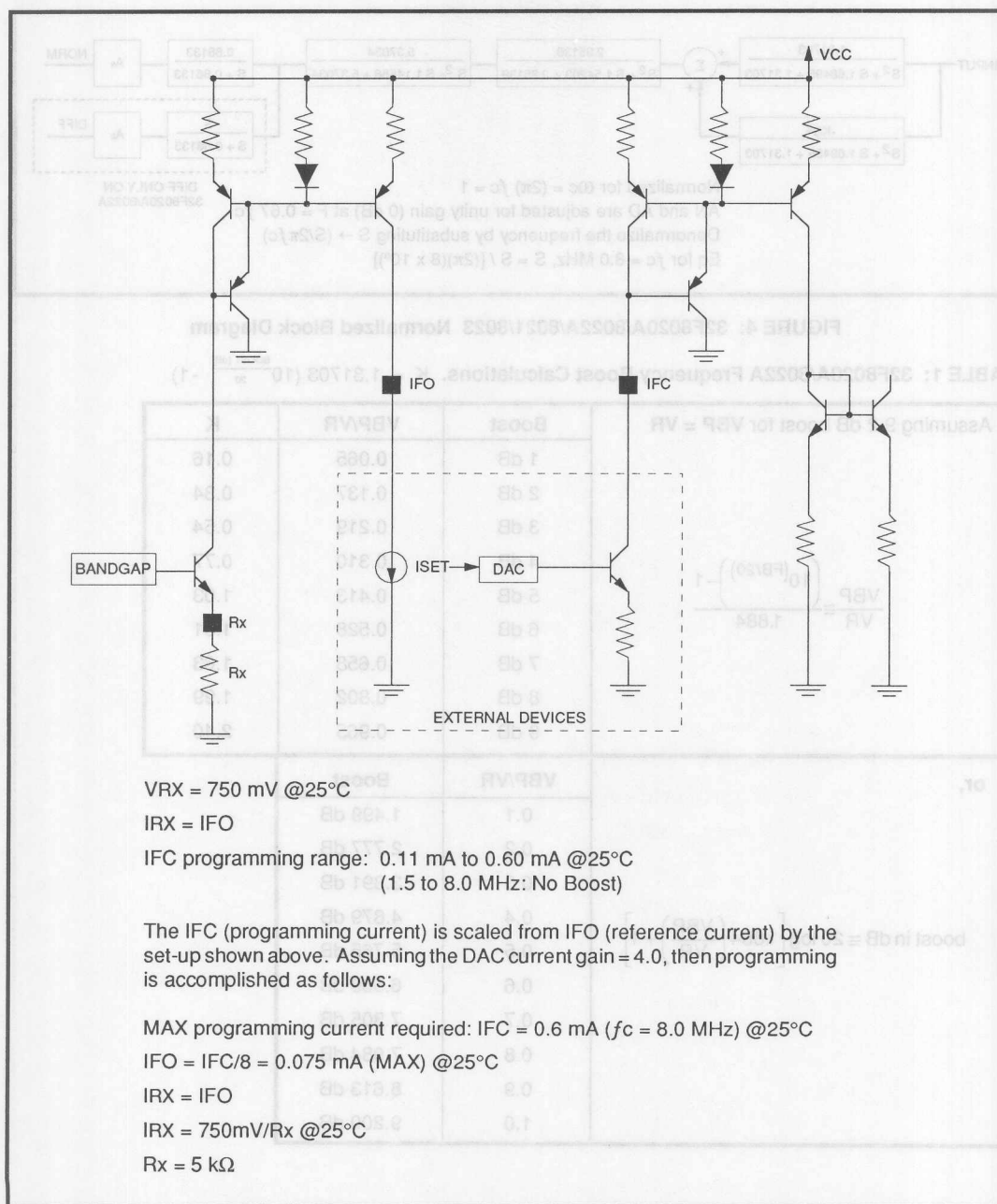


FIGURE 3: 32F8021/8023 Frequency Programming

SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

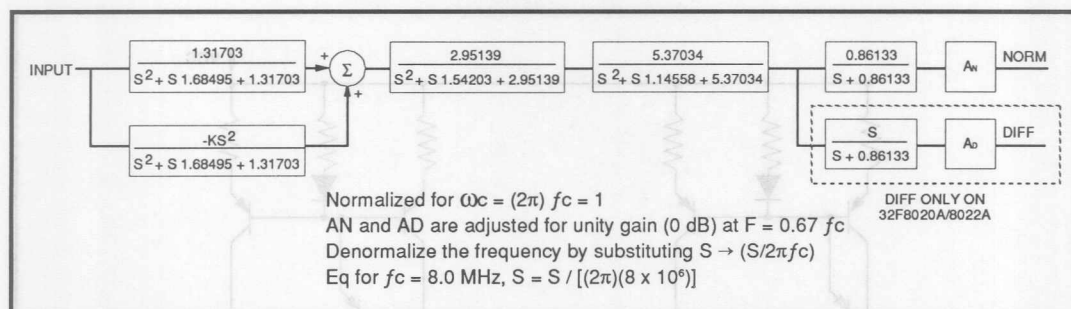
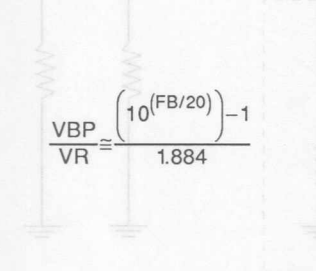


FIGURE 4: 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023 Normalized Block Diagram

TABLE 1: 32F8020A/8022A Frequency Boost Calculations. $K = 1.31703 \left(10^{\frac{\text{BOOST (dB)}}{20}} - 1 \right)$

| | | | | |
|---|--|---------------|---------------|----------|
| Assuming 9.2 dB boost for VBP = VR | | Boost | VBP/VR | K |
|  $\frac{VBP}{VR} \cong \frac{\left(10^{(FB/20)}\right) - 1}{1.884}$ | | 1 dB | 0.065 | 0.16 |
| | | 2 dB | 0.137 | 0.34 |
| | | 3 dB | 0.219 | 0.54 |
| | | 4 dB | 0.310 | 0.77 |
| | | 5 dB | 0.413 | 1.03 |
| | | 6 dB | 0.528 | 1.31 |
| | | 7 dB | 0.658 | 1.63 |
| | | 8 dB | 0.802 | 1.99 |
| | | 9 dB | 0.965 | 2.40 |
| or, | | VBP/VR | Boost | |
| $\text{boost in dB} \cong 20 \log \left[1.884 \left(\frac{VBP}{VR} \right) + 1 \right]$ | | 0.1 | 1.499 dB | |
| | | 0.2 | 2.777 dB | |
| | | 0.3 | 3.891 dB | |
| | | 0.4 | 4.879 dB | |
| | | 0.5 | 5.765 dB | |
| | | 0.6 | 6.569 dB | |
| | | 0.7 | 7.305 dB | |
| | | 0.8 | 7.984 dB | |
| | | 0.9 | 8.613 dB | |
| | | 1.0 | 9.200 dB | |

SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

TABLE 2: Calculations

Typical change in f -3 dB point and frequency peak with boost.

| Boost (dB) | Gain@ f_c (dB) | Gain@peak (dB) | f_{peak}/f_c | f -3 dB/ f_c |
|------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 0 | -3 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.00 |
| 1 | -2 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.21 |
| 2 | -1 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.51 |
| 3 | 0 | 0.15 | 0.70 | 1.80 |
| 4 | 1 | 0.99 | 1.05 | 2.04 |
| 5 | 2 | 2.15 | 1.23 | 2.20 |
| 6 | 3 | 3.41 | 1.33 | 2.33 |
| 7 | 4 | 4.68 | 1.38 | 2.43 |
| 8 | 5 | 5.94 | 1.43 | 2.51 |
| 9 | 6 | 7.18 | 1.46 | 2.59 |

NOTES: 1. f_c is the original programmed cutoff frequency with no boost.

2. f -3 dB is the new -3 dB value with boost implemented.

3. f_{peak} is the frequency where the magnitude peaks when boost is implemented.

i.e., $f_c = 8$ MHz when boost = 0 dB if boost is programmed to 5 dB then

f -3 dB = 17.6 MHz

$f_{peak} = 9.84$ MHz

| PACKAGE MARK | ORDER INFORMATION | PART DESCRIPTION |
|--------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 32F8020A-CN | 32F8020A-CN | SSI 32F8020A 16-Lead SON |
| 32F8020A-CL | 32F8020A-CL | 16-Lead SOL |
| 32F8022A-CN | 32F8022A-CN | SSI 32F8022A 16-Lead SON |
| 32F8022A-CL | 32F8022A-CL | 16-Lead SOL |
| 32F8021-CN | 32F8021-CN | SSI 32F8021 16-Lead SON |
| 32F8021-CL | 32F8021-CL | 16-Lead SOL |
| 32F8023-CN | 32F8023-CN | SSI 32F8023 16-Lead SON |
| 32F8023-CL | 32F8023-CL | 16-Lead SOL |

SiSilicon Systems, Inc. is not responsible for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights to third parties resulting from the use of this product. No license is granted under any patent, trademark, or other rights of SiSilicon Systems, Inc. or its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors. The user is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

SiSilicon Systems, Inc. 14581 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7052 (714) 873-0000 FAX (714) 873-8914

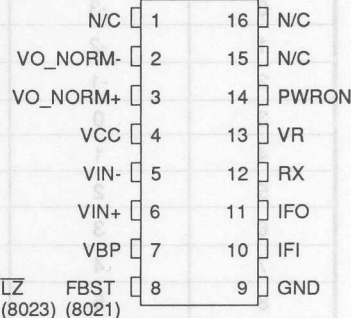
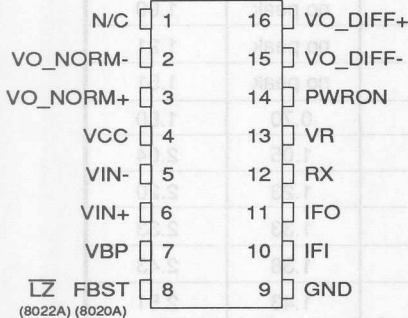
SSI 32F8020A/8022A/8021/8023
Low-Power Programmable
Electronic Filter

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS
(Top View)

THERMAL CHARACTERISTICS: θ_{ja}

16-Lead SON, SOL (150 mil)

105° C/W



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary
for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|--------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 32F8020A 16-Lead SON | 32F8020A-CN | 32F8020A-CN |
| 16-Lead SOL | 32F8020A-CL | 32F8020A-CL |
| SSI 32F8022A 16-Lead SON | 32F8022A-CN | 32F8022A-CN |
| 16-Lead SOL | 32F8022A-CL | 32F8022A-CL |
| SSI 32F8021 16-Lead SON | 32F8021-CN | 32F8021-CN |
| 16-Lead SOL | 32F8021-CL | 32F8021-CL |
| SSI 32F8023 16-Lead SON | 32F8023-CN | 32F8023-CN |
| 16-Lead SOL | 32F8023-CL | 32F8023-CL |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8030 Programmable Electronic Filter provides an electronically controlled low-pass filter with a separate differentiated low-pass output. A seven-pole, 0.05° Equiripple-type linear phase, low-pass filter is provided along with a single-pole, single-zero differentiator. Both outputs have matched delays. The delay matching is unaffected by any amount of programmed high frequency peaking (boost) or bandwidth. This programmability, combined with low group delay variation makes the SSI 32F8030 ideal for use in many applications. Double differentiation high frequency boost is accomplished by a two-pole, low-pass with a two-pole, high-pass feed forward section to provide complementary real axis zeros. A variable attenuator is used to program the zero locations, which controls the amount of boost.

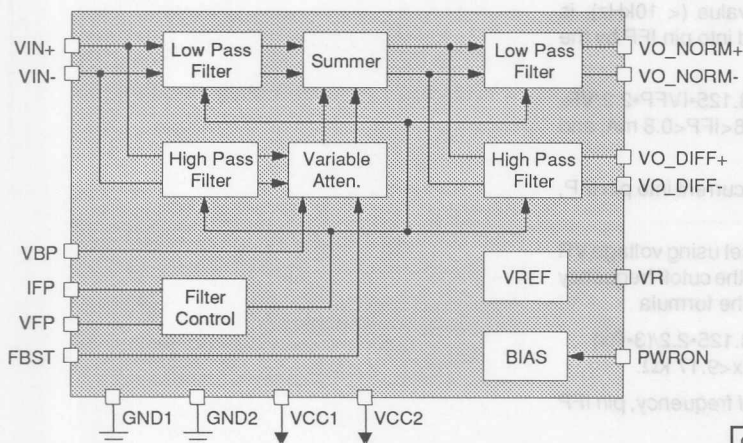
The SSI 32F8030 programmable boost and bandwidth characteristics can be controlled by external DACs or DACs provided in the SSI 32D4661 Time Base Generator. Fixed characteristics are easily accomplished with three external resistors. In addition, boost can be switched in or out by a logic signal.

The SSI 32F8030 requires only a +5V supply and is available in 16-Lead SON, and SOL packages.

FEATURES

- **Ideal for:**
 - constant density recording applications
 - magnetic tape recording
- **Programmable filter cutoff frequency**
($f_c = 250 \text{ kHz}$ to 2.5 MHz)
- **Programmable high frequency peaking**
(0 to 9 dB boost at the filter cutoff frequency)
- **Matched normal and differentiated low-pass outputs**
- **Differential filter input and outputs**
- **$\pm 3.0\%$ group delay variation from**
 $0.2 f_c$ to $1.75 f_c$, $0.25 \text{ MHz} \leq f_c \leq 2.5 \text{ MHz}$
- **Total harmonic distortion less than 1%**
- **+5V only operation**
- **16-Lead SON, and SOL packages**
- **5 mW idle mode**

BLOCK DIAGRAM



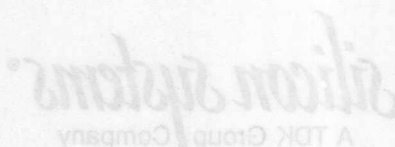
PIN DIAGRAM

| | | | |
|----------|---|----|----------|
| GND1 | 1 | 16 | VO_DIFF+ |
| VO_NORM- | 2 | 15 | VO_DIFF- |
| VO_NORM+ | 3 | 14 | PWRON |
| VCC1 | 4 | 13 | VR |
| VIN- | 5 | 12 | VCC2 |
| VIN+ | 6 | 11 | IFP |
| VBP | 7 | 10 | VFP |
| FBST | 8 | 9 | GND2 |

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 32F8030

Programmable Electronic Filter



FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8030, a high performance programmable electronic filter, provides a low pass 0.05° Equiripple-type linear phase seven pole filter with matched normal and differentiated outputs. The device has been optimized for usage with several Silicon Systems products, including the SSI32D4661 Time Base Generator, the SSI 32P54x family of Pulse Detectors, and the SSI 32P4720 Combo device (Data Separator and Pulse Detector).

CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING

The SSI 32F8030 programmable electronic filter can be set to a filter cutoff frequency from 250 kHz to 2.5 MHz (with no boost).

Cutoff frequency programming can be established using either a current source fed into the IFP pin, whose output current is proportional to the SSI 32F8030 output reference voltage VR, or by means of an external resistor tied from the output voltage reference pin VR to pin VFP. The former method is optimized using the SSI 32D4661 Time Base Generator, since the current source into pin IFP is available at the DAC F output of the 32D4661. Furthermore, the voltage reference input is supplied to pin VR3 of the 32D4661 by the reference voltage VR from the VR pin of the 32F8030. This reference voltage is an internally generated bandgap reference, which typically varies less than 1 % over voltage supply and temperature variation. (For the calculations below IVFP = current into IFP or VFP pins).

The cutoff frequency, determined by the -3dB point relative to a very low frequency value (< 10kHz), is related to the current IVFP injected into pin IFP by the formula

F_c (ideal, in MHz) = $3.125 \cdot IVFP = 3.125 \cdot IVFP \cdot 2.2 / VR$, where IFP and IVFP are in mA, $0.08 < IVFP < 0.8$ mA, and VR is in volts.

If a current source is used to inject current into pin IFP, pin VFP should be left open.

If the 32F8030 cutoff frequency is set using voltage VR to bias up a resistor tied to pin VFP, the cutoff frequency is related to the resistor value by the formula

F_c (ideal, in MHz) = $3.125 \cdot IFP = 3.125 \cdot 2.2 / (3 \cdot R_x)$ where R_x is in k Ω , & $0.917 \text{ k}\Omega < R_x < 9.17 \text{ k}\Omega$.

If pin VFP is used to program cutoff frequency, pin IFP should be left open.

SLIMMER HIGH FREQUENCY BOOST PROGRAMMING

The amplitude of the output signal at frequencies near the cutoff frequency can be increased using this feature. Applying an external voltage to pin VBP which is proportional to reference output voltage VR (provided by the VR pin) will set the amount of boost. A fixed amount of boost can be set by an external resistor divider network connected from pin VBP to pins VR and GND. No boost is applied if pin FBST, frequency boost enable, is at a low logic level.

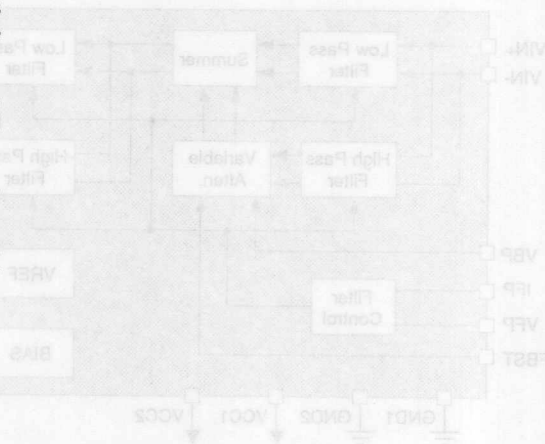
The amount of boost FB at the cutoff frequency F_c is related to the voltage VBP by the formula

FB (ideal, in dB) = $20 \log_{10} [1.884(VBP/VR) + 1]$, where $0 < VBP < VR$.

The SSI 32F8030 programmable boost and bandwidth characteristics can be controlled by external DACs or DACs provided in the SSI 32D4661 Time Base Generator. Fixed characteristics are easily accomplished with three external resistors. In addition, boost can be switched in or out by a logic signal.

The SSI 32F8030 requires only a +5V supply and is available in 16-Lead SON, and SOL packages.

BLOCK DIAGRAM



SSI 32F8030

Programmable Electronic Filter

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|---|
| VIN+, VIN- | DIFFERENTIAL SIGNAL INPUTS. The input signals must be AC coupled to these pins. |
| VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- | DIFFERENTIAL NORMAL OUTPUTS. The output signals must be AC coupled. |
| VO_DIFF+, VO_DIFF- | DIFFERENTIAL DIFFERENTIATED OUTPUTS. For minimum time skew, these outputs should be AC coupled to the pulse detector. |
| IFP | FREQUENCY PROGRAM INPUT. The filter cutoff frequency f_c , is set by an external current IFP, injected into this pin. IFP must be proportional to voltage VR. This current can be set with an external current generator such as a DAC. VFP should be left open when using this pin. |
| VFP | FREQUENCY PROGRAM INPUT. The filter cutoff frequency can be set by programming a current through a resistor from VR to this pin. IFP should be left open when using this pin. |
| VBP | FREQUENCY BOOST PROGRAM INPUT. The high frequency boost is set by an external voltage applied to this pin. VBP must be proportional to voltage VR. A fixed amount of boost can be set by an external resistor divider network connected from VBP to VR and GND. No boost is applied if the FBST pin is grounded, or at logic low. |
| FBST | FREQUENCY BOOST. A high logic level or open input enables the frequency boost circuitry. |
| PWRON | POWER ON. A high logic level enables the chip. A low level puts the chip in a low power state. |
| VR | REFERENCE VOLTAGE. Internally generated reference voltage. |
| VCC1, VCC2 | +5 VOLT SUPPLY. |
| GND1, GND2 | GROUND |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Storage Temperature | -65 to +150°C |
| Junction Operating Temperature, T_j | +130°C |
| Supply Voltage, VCC1, VCC2 | -0.5 to 7V |
| Voltage Applied to Inputs | -0.5 to VCC + 0.5V |
| IFP, VFP Inputs Maximum Current | ≤1.2 mA |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| Supply voltage, VCC1, VCC2 | 4.5 < VCC1,2 < 5.50V |
| Ambient Temperature | 0 < T_a < 70°C |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Power Supply Characteristics

Unless otherwise specified, recommended operating conditions apply.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| ICC Power Supply Current | PWRON \leq 0.8V | | | 0.5 | mA |
| ICC Power Supply Current | PWRON \geq 2.0V | | 28 | 42 | mA |
| PD Power Dissipation | PWRON \geq 2.0V | | 140 | 231 | mW |
| PD Power Dissipation | PWRON \leq 0.8V | | | 3 | mW |

DC Characteristics

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------|------------|------|--|---------|---------|
| VIH High Level Input Voltage | TTL input | 2.0 | | VCC+0.3 | V |
| VIL Low Level Input Voltage | | -0.3 | | 0.8 | V |
| IIH High Level Input Current | VIH = 2.7V | | | 20 | μ A |
| IIL Low Level Input Current | VIL = 0.4V | -1.5 | | | mA |

Filter Characteristics

f_c = 1.25 MHz unless otherwise stated

| | | | | | |
|---|---|-------|-----|-------|-----|
| FCA Filter f_c Accuracy | using IFP pin: IFP = 0.4 mA or using VFP pin: Rx = 1.84 k Ω | 1.125 | | 1.375 | MHz |
| AO VO_NORM Diff Gain | F = 0.67 f_c , FB = 0 dB | 0.8 | | 1.20 | V/V |
| AD VO_DIFF Diff Gain | F = 0.67 f_c , FB = 0 dB | 0.9AO | | 1.1AO | V/V |
| FBA Frequency Boost Accuracy | VBP = VR | 8.0 | 9.2 | 10.4 | dB |
| TGD0 Group Delay Variation Without Boost* | 0.25 MHz $\leq f_c \leq$ 2.5 MHz F = 0.2 f_c to 1.75 f_c | -3 | | +3 | % |
| TGDB Group Delay Variation With Boost* | 0.25 MHz $\leq f_c \leq$ 2.5 MHz VBP = VR, F = 0.2 f_c to 1.75 f_c | -3 | | +3 | % |
| VIF Filter Input Dynamic Range | THD = 1% max, F = 0.67 f_c (no boost, 1000 pF capacitor across Rx) | 1.0 | | | Vpp |
| VOF Filter Normal Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1% max, F = 0.67 f_c VBP = 0 (1000 pF capacitor across Rx) | 1.0 | | | Vpp |
| VOF Filter Normal Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1% max, F = 0.67 f_c VBP = VR (1000 pF capacitor across Rx) | 1.0 | | | Vpp |
| VOF Filter Differentiated Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1% max, F = 0.67 f_c VBP = 0 (1000 pF capacitor across Rx) | 1.0 | | | Vpp |
| VOF Filter Differentiated Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1% max, F = 0.67 f_c VBP = VR (1000 pF capacitor across Rx) | 1.0 | | | Vpp |

SSI 32F8030

Programmable

Electronic Filter

Filter Characteristics (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|---|-----|-----|-----|------------|
| RIN Filter Diff Input Resistance | | 3.0 | 4.0 | 5.0 | k Ω |
| CIN Filter Diff Input Capacitance* | | | 3.0 | | pF |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Differentiated Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$, $I_{fp} = 0.8$ mA, $V_{BP} = 0.0$ V | | 2.7 | 3.2 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Normal Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$, $I_{fp} = 0.8$ mA, $V_{BP} = 0.0$ V | | 1.6 | 2.0 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Differentiated Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$, $I_{fp} = 0.8$ mA, $V_{BP} = VR$ | | 3.1 | 3.8 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Normal Output | BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$, $I_{fp} = 0.8$ mA, $V_{BP} = VR$ | | 1.8 | 2.2 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Differentiated Output | BW = 10 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$, $I_{fp} = 0.08$ mA, $V_{BP} = 0.0$ V | | 1.8 | 2.1 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Normal Output | BW = 10 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$, $I_{fp} = 0.08$ mA, $V_{BP} = 0.0$ V | | 1.0 | 1.2 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Differentiated Output | BW = 10 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$, $I_{fp} = 0.08$ mA, $V_{BP} = VR$ | | 2.0 | 2.5 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage* Normal Output | BW = 10 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$, $I_{fp} = 0.08$ mA, $V_{BP} = VR$ | | 1.1 | 1.5 | mVRms |
| IO- Filter Output Sink Current | | 1.0 | | | mA |
| IO+ Filter Output Source Current | | 2.0 | | | mA |
| RO Filter Output Resistance** | Sinking 1 mA from pin | | | 70 | Ω |
| * Not directly testable in production, design characteristic. | | | | | |
| ** Single ended | | | | | |

Filter Control Characteristics

| | | | | | |
|---|--|-----|--|------|----|
| VR Reference Voltage Output | | 2.0 | | 2.40 | V |
| I_{VR} Reference Output Source Current | | | | 2.0 | mA |

SSI 32F8030

Programmable

Electronic Filter

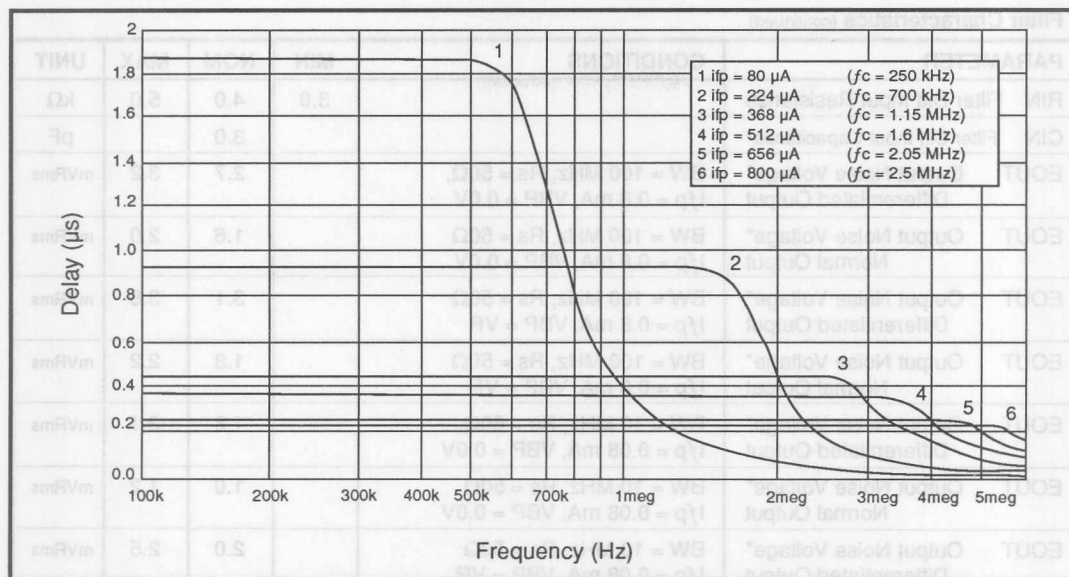


FIGURE 1: Typical Normal/Differentiated Output Group Delay Response

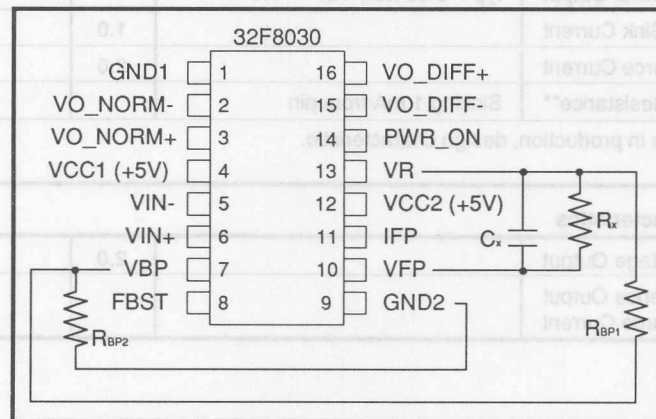


FIGURE 1: 32F8030 Applications Setup 16-Pin SO

$$VR = 2.2V$$

$$VFP = .667 VR$$

$$Cx = 1000 pF \text{ needed for THD at low } f_c$$

VFP is used when programming current is set with a resistor from VR. When VFP is used IFP must be left open.

$$I_{VFP} = .33VR/R_x$$

$$I_{VFP} \text{ range: } 0.08 \text{ mA to } 0.8 \text{ mA} \\ (0.25 \text{ MHz to } 2.5 \text{ MHz})$$

SSI 32F8030 Programmable Electronic Filter

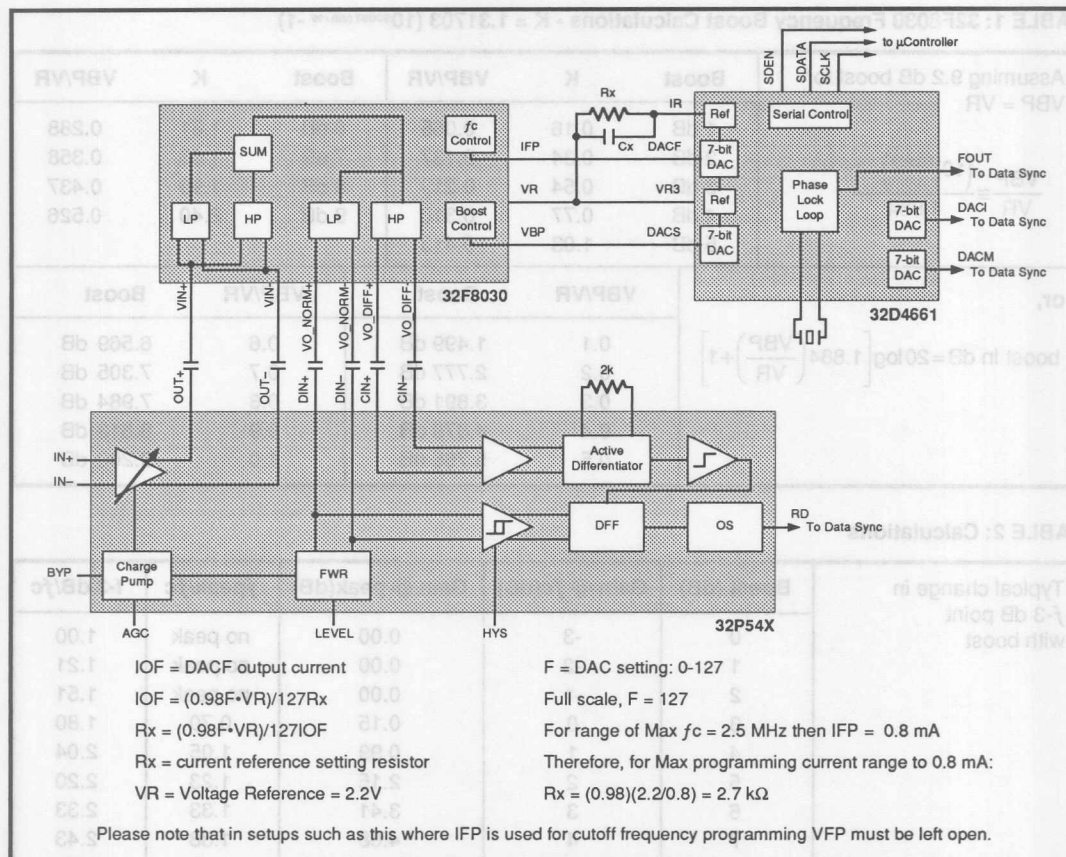


FIGURE 2: Applications Setup, Constant Density Recording
32F8030, 32P54X, 32D4661

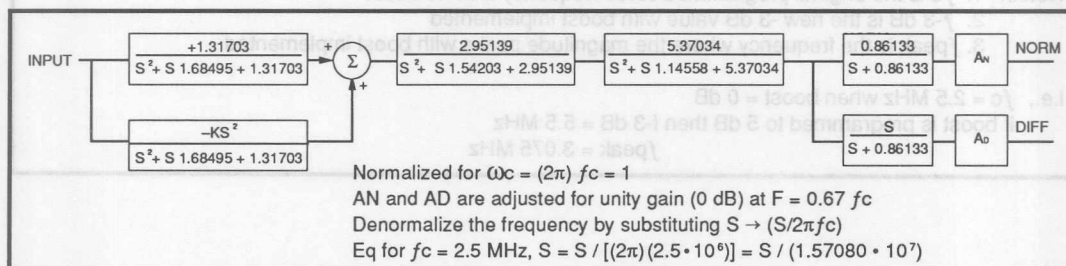


FIGURE 3: 32F8030 Normalized Block Diagram

SSI 32F8030

Programmable

Electronic Filter

TABLE 1: 32F8030 Frequency Boost Calculations - $K = 1.31703 (10^{\text{BOOST (dB)} / 20} - 1)$

| Assuming 9.2 dB boost for VBP = VR $\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VR}} \cong \frac{\left(10^{\left(\text{FB}/20\right)}\right)-1}{1.884}$ | Boost | K | VBP/VR | Boost | K | VBP/VR |
|---|--------|----------|--------|----------|------|--------|
| | 1 dB | 0.16 | 0.065 | 6 dB | 1.31 | 0.288 |
| | 2 dB | 0.34 | 0.137 | 7 dB | 1.63 | 0.358 |
| | 3 dB | 0.54 | 0.219 | 8 dB | 1.99 | 0.437 |
| | 4 dB | 0.77 | 0.310 | 9 dB | 2.40 | 0.526 |
| | 5 dB | 1.03 | 0.413 | | | |
| or, boost in dB=20log $\left[1.884\left(\frac{\text{VBP}}{\text{VR}}\right)+1\right]$ | VBP/VR | Boost | VBP/VR | Boost | | |
| | 0.1 | 1.499 dB | 0.6 | 6.569 dB | | |
| | 0.2 | 2.777 dB | 0.7 | 7.305 dB | | |
| | 0.3 | 3.891 dB | 0.8 | 7.984 dB | | |
| | 0.4 | 4.879 dB | 0.9 | 8.613 dB | | |
| | 0.5 | 5.765 dB | 1.0 | 9.200 dB | | |

TABLE 2: Calculations

| Typical change in <i>f</i> -3 dB point with boost | Boost (dB) | Gain @ <i>f</i> _c (dB) | Gain @ peak(dB) | <i>f</i> _{peak} / <i>f</i> _c | <i>f</i> -3 dB/ <i>f</i> _c |
|---|------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| | 0 | -3 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.00 |
| | 1 | -2 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.21 |
| | 2 | -1 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.51 |
| | 3 | 0 | 0.15 | 0.70 | 1.80 |
| | 4 | 1 | 0.99 | 1.05 | 2.04 |
| | 5 | 2 | 2.15 | 1.23 | 2.20 |
| | 6 | 3 | 3.41 | 1.33 | 2.33 |
| | 7 | 4 | 4.68 | 1.38 | 2.43 |
| | 8 | 5 | 5.94 | 1.43 | 2.51 |
| | 9 | 6 | 7.18 | 1.46 | 2.59 |

- Notes: 1. *f*_c is the original programmed cutoff frequency with no boost
 2. *f*-3 dB is the new -3 dB value with boost implemented
 3. *f*_{peak} is the frequency where the magnitude peaks with boost implemented

i.e., *f*_c = 2.5 MHz when boost = 0 dB
 if boost is programmed to 5 dB then *f*-3 dB = 5.5 MHz
*f*_{peak} = 3.075 MHz

SSI 32F8030

Programmable

Electronic Filter

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

| | | | |
|----------|---|----|----------|
| GND1 | 1 | 16 | VO_DIFF+ |
| VO_NORM- | 2 | 15 | VO_DIFF- |
| VO_NORM+ | 3 | 14 | PWRON |
| VCC1 | 4 | 13 | VR |
| VIN- | 5 | 12 | VCC2 |
| VIN+ | 6 | 11 | IFP |
| VBP | 7 | 10 | VFP |
| FBST | 8 | 9 | GND2 |

16-Lead SON, SOL

Thermal Characteristics: θ_{JA}

| | |
|-----------------------|----------|
| 16-lead SON (150 mil) | 105° C/W |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 100° C/W |

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|-----------------------|--------------|--------------|
| 16-lead SON (150 mil) | 32F8030-CN | 32F8030-CN |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 32F8030-CL | 32F8030-CN |

9

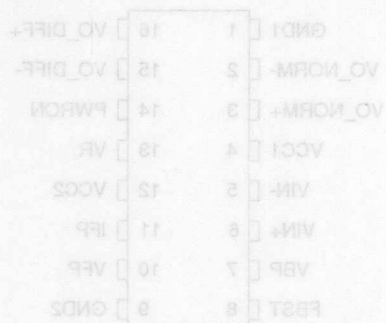
No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

Notes:

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)



16-Lead SON, SOL

Thermal Characteristics: θJA

| | |
|-----------------------|----------|
| 16-lead SON (150 mil) | 105° C/W |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 100° C/W |

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|-----------------------|--------------|--------------|
| 16-lead SON (150 mil) | 32F8030-CN | 32F8030-CN |
| 16-lead SOL (300 mil) | 32F8030-CL | 32F8030-CN |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringement of patents and trademarks of other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14851 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7059 (714) 878-8000, FAX (714) 878-6814

December 1993

DESCRIPTION

The 32F810X is a high performance, low power, digitally programmable low-pass filter for applications requiring variable-frequency filtering. The device consists of three functional blocks: [1] a 7th-order 0.05° Equiripple Low-Pass filter, [2] two DACs for controlling the filter cutoff frequency and high-frequency peaking (boost), and [3] a Serial Port for programming the f_c and Boost DACs. The device is offered in four frequency options: the 32F8101, 9-27 MHz; 32F8102, 6-18 MHz; 32F8103, 4-12 MHz; & 32F8104, 3-9 MHz.

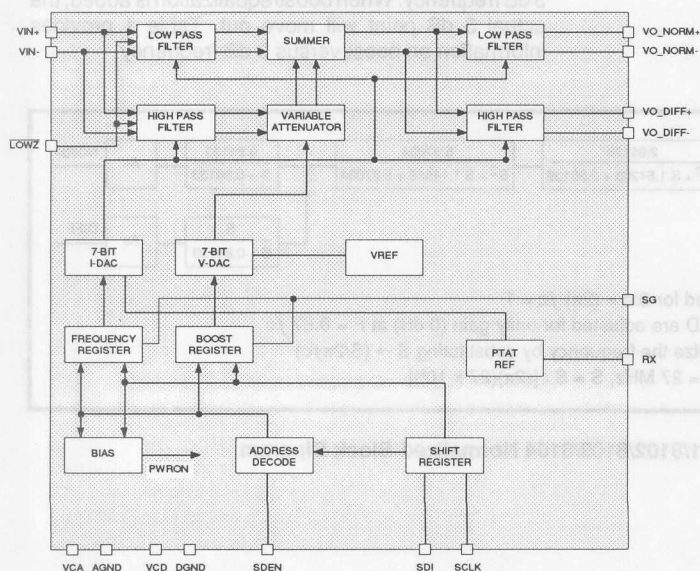
Cutoff frequency and boost are controlled by the two on-chip 7-bit DACs, which are programmed via the 3-line serial interface. Boost is programmable from 0 to 14.3 dB nominally at maximum f_c , and is implemented using two symmetrical, real-axis zeroes. Both boost and f_c control do not affect the flat group delay response.

The 32F810X device is ideal for variable data rate and variable frequency shaping applications. It requires only a +5V supply and has an Idle mode for minimal power dissipation. The SSI 32F810X is available in 16-lead SON, and 20-Lead SOV packages.

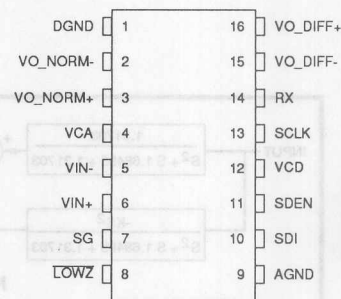
FEATURES

- **Programmable cutoff frequency:**
 - 32F8101 - 9 to 27 MHz
 - 32F8102 - 6 to 18 MHz
 - 32F8103 - 4 to 12 MHz
 - 32F8104 - 3 to 9 MHz
- **Programmable boost/equalization of 0 to 14.3 dB**
- **Matched normal and differentiated outputs**
- **$\pm 10\%$ f_c accuracy**
- **$\pm 2\%$ maximum group delay variation**
- **Less than 1% total harmonic distortion**
- **Low-Z input switch controlled by $\overline{\text{LOWZ}}$ pin**
- **No external filter components required**
- **95 mW nominal power, <5 mW idle**

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



16-Lead SON

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 32F8101/8102/8103/8104

Low-Power Programmable Filter

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F810X programmable filter consists of an electronically controlled low-pass filter with a separate differentiated low-pass output. A seven-pole, low-pass filter is provided along with a single-pole, single-zero differentiator. Both outputs have matched delays. The delay matching is unaffected by any amount of programmed equalization or bandwidth. Programmable bandwidth and boost/equalization is provided by internal 7-bit control DACs. High-frequency boost equalization is accomplished by a two-pole, low-pass with a two-pole, high-pass feed forward section to provide complimentary real axis zeros. A variable attenuator is used to program the zero locations.

The filter implements a 0.05 degree equiripple linear phase response. The normalized transfer functions (i.e., $\omega_c = 2\pi f_c = 1$) are:

$$V_{\text{norm}}/V_i = 13.65983 \cdot [(-Ks^2 + 1.31703)/D(s)] \cdot A_n$$

and

$$V_{\text{diff}}/V_i = (V_{\text{norm}}/V_i) \cdot (s/0.86133) \cdot A_d$$

Where $D(s) =$

$$(S^2 + 1.68495s + 1.31703)(S^2 + 1.54203s + 2.95139) \\ (S^2 + 1.4558s + 5.37034)(s + 0.86133),$$

A_n and A_d are adjusted for a gain of 1 at $f_s = (2/3)f_c$.

FILTER OPERATION

Normally AC coupled differential signals are applied to the $V_{IN\pm}$ inputs of the filter, although DC coupling can be implemented. To improve settling time of the coupling capacitors, the $V_{IN\pm}$ inputs are placed into a Low-Z state when the $LOWZ$ pin is brought high. The programmable bandwidth and boost/equalization features are controlled by internal DACs and the registers programmed through the serial port. The current reference for both DACs is set using a single 13.3 k Ω external resistor connected from pin RX to ground. The voltage at pin RX is proportional to absolute temperature (PTAT), hence the current for the DACs is a PTAT reference current.

Bandwidth Control: The programmable bandwidth is set by the filter cutoff DAC. This DAC has two separate 7-bit registers that can program the DAC value as follows:

$$f_c = 0.2126 \cdot \text{DACF (MHz)} \text{ for the 32F8101}$$

$$f_c = 0.1417 \cdot \text{DACF (MHz)} \text{ for the 32F8102}$$

$$f_c = 0.09449 \cdot \text{DACF (MHz)} \text{ for the 32F8103}$$

$$f_c = 0.07087 \cdot \text{DACF (MHz)} \text{ for the 32F8104}$$

where DACF = Cutoff Frequency Control Register value (decimal)

The filter cutoff set by the internal DAC is the unboosted 3 dB frequency. When boost/equalization is added, the actual 3 dB point will move out. Table 1 provides information on boost versus 3 dB frequency.

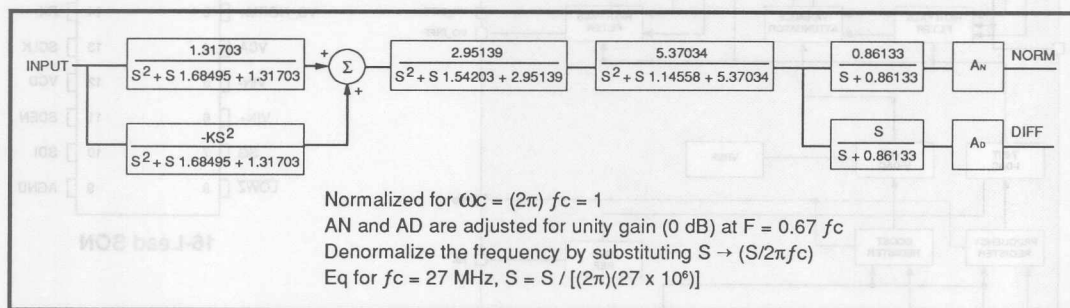


FIGURE 1: 32F8101/8102/8103/8104 Normalized Block Diagram

SSI 32F8101/8102/8103/8104

Low-Power Programmable Filter

TABLE 1: Calculations

Typical change in f -3 dB point with boost

| Boost (dB) | Gain@ f_c (dB) | Gain@ peak (dB) | f_{peak}/f_c | f -3dB/ f_c | K |
|------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|------|
| 0 | -3 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.00 | 0 |
| 1 | -2 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.21 | 0.16 |
| 2 | -1 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.51 | 0.34 |
| 3 | 0 | 0.15 | 0.70 | 1.80 | 0.54 |
| 4 | 1 | 0.99 | 1.05 | 2.04 | 0.77 |
| 5 | 2 | 2.15 | 1.23 | 2.20 | 1.03 |
| 6 | 3 | 3.41 | 1.33 | 2.33 | 1.31 |
| 7 | 4 | 4.68 | 1.38 | 2.43 | 1.63 |
| 8 | 5 | 5.94 | 1.43 | 2.51 | 1.97 |
| 9 | 6 | 7.18 | 1.46 | 2.59 | 2.40 |
| 10 | 7 | 8.40 | 1.48 | 2.66 | 2.85 |
| 11 | 8 | 9.59 | 1.51 | 2.73 | 3.36 |
| 12 | 9 | 10.77 | 1.51 | 2.80 | 3.93 |
| 13 | 10 | 11.92 | 1.53 | 2.87 | 4.57 |
| 14 | 11 | 13.06 | 1.53 | 2.93 | 5.28 |
| 15 | 12 | 14.18 | 1.56 | 3.0 | 6.09 |

Notes: 1. f_c is the original programmed cutoff frequency with no boost

2. f -3 dB is the new -3 dB value with boost implemented

3. f_{peak} is the frequency where the amplitude reaches its maximum value with boost implemented

i.e., $f_c = 9$ MHz when boost = 0 dB

if boost is programmed to 5 dB then f -3 dB = 19.8 MHz

$f_{peak} = 11.07$ MHz

$$4. K = 1.31703 \left(10^{\frac{\text{BOOST (dB)}}{20}} - 1 \right)$$

SSI 32F8101/8102/8103/8104

Low-Power Programmable Filter

BOOST/EQUALIZATION CONTROL

The programmable equalization is also controlled by an internal DAC. The 7-bit Filter Boost Control Register (FBCR) determines the amount of equalization that will be added to the 3 dB cutoff frequency, as follows:

$$\text{Boost} = 20 \log [(0.0339 \cdot \text{FBCR}) + 1] \text{ (dB)}$$

$$20 \log [(0.0283 \cdot \text{FBCR}) + (3.75 \cdot 10^{-5} \cdot \text{FBCR} \cdot \text{DACF}) + 1]$$

For example, with the DAC set for maximum output (FBCR = 7F hex or 127) at the maximum cutoff frequency (DACF = 7F hex or 127) there will be 14.3 dB of boost added at the 3 dB frequency. This will result in +10 dB of signal boost above the 0 dB baseline.

SERIAL INTERFACE OPERATION

The serial interface is a CMOS bi-directional port for reading and writing programming data from/to the internal registers of the 32F810X. For data transfers SDEN is brought high, serial data is presented at the SDATA pin, and a serial clock is applied to the SCLK pin.

After the SDEN goes high, the first 16 pulses applied to the SCLK pin will shift the data presented at the SDATA pin into an internal shift register on the rising edge of each clock. An internal counter prevents more than 16 bits from being shifted into the register. The data in the shift register is latched when SDEN goes low. If less than 16 clock pulses are provided before SDEN goes low, the data transfer is aborted.

All transfers are shifted into the serial port LSB first. The first byte of the transfer is address and instruction information. The LSB of this byte is the R/W bit which determines if the transfer is a read (1) or a write (0). The remaining seven bits determine the internal register to be accessed. The second byte contains the programming data. At initial power-up, the contents of the internal registers will be in an unknown state and they must be programmed prior to operation. During power down modes, the serial port remains active and register programming data is retained.

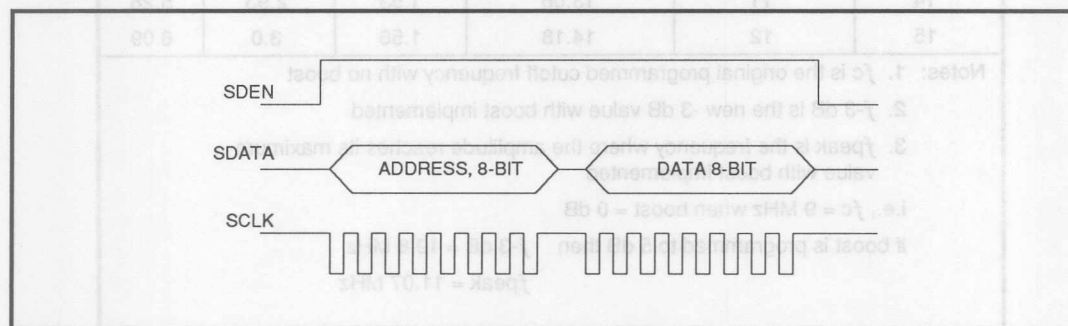


FIGURE 2: Serial Port Data Transfer Format

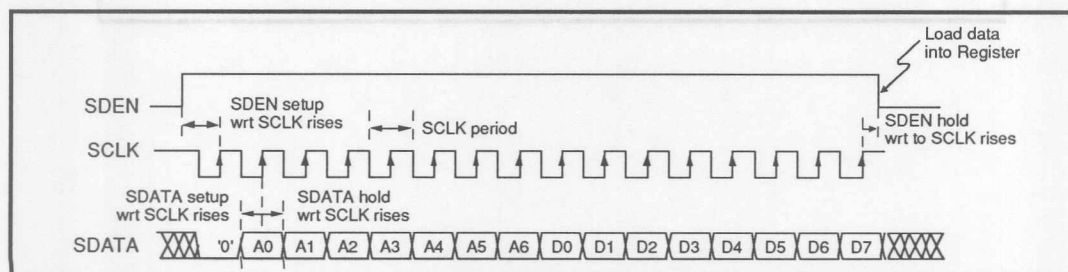


FIGURE 3: Serial Interface Timing Diagram - Writing Control Register

TABLE 2: Serial Port Register Mapping

| REGISTER NAME | ADDRESS | | | | | | | | R/W | DATA BIT MAP | | | | | | | | D0 |
|---------------------|---------|----|----|----|----|----|----|---|-----|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------------------------|--------------|--------------|----|
| | A6 | A5 | A4 | A3 | A2 | A1 | A0 | | | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| POWER DOWN CONTROL | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | | -- | -- | -- | -- | -- | FILTER 1=DISABLE 0=ENABLE | -- | | |
| DATA MODE CUTOFF | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | | * | DAC BIT 6 | DAC BIT 5 | DAC BIT 4 | DAC BIT 3 | DAC BIT 2 | DAC BIT 1 | DAC BIT 0 | |
| SERVO MODE CUTOFF | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | | * | DAC BIT 6 | DAC BIT 5 | DAC BIT 4 | DAC BIT 3 | DAC BIT 2 | DAC BIT 1 | DAC BIT 0 | |
| FILTER BOOST, DATA | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | | -- | DAC BIT 6 | DAC BIT 5 | DAC BIT 4 | DAC BIT 3 | DAC BIT 2 | DAC BIT 1 | DAC BIT 0 | |
| FILTER BOOST, SERVO | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | | -- | DAC BIT 6 | DAC BIT 5 | DAC BIT 4 | DAC BIT 3 | DAC BIT 2 | DAC BIT 1 | DAC BIT 0 | |

* These bits are used only for testing. They should be programmed to 0 in actual operation.

PIN DESCRIPTION

POWER SUPPLY PINS

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------|------|--------------------------------|
| VCA | - | Filter analog power supply pin |
| VCD | - | Serial port power supply pin |
| AGND | - | Filter analog ground pin |
| DGND | - | Serial port digital ground pin |

INPUT PINS

| | | |
|---------------|---|---|
| VIN+, VIN- | I | FILTER SIGNAL INPUTS: The AGC output signals must be AC coupled into these pins. |
| SG | I | SERVO GATE: TTL input when high enables servo frequency and boost registers to the control DACs. When low the data frequency and boost registers are enabled. |
| LOW \bar{Z} | I | LOW_Z CONTROL: TTL input when low reduces the filter input resistance. When high, the input is at high impedance state. |

OUTPUT PINS

| | | |
|--------------------|---|---|
| VO_DIFF+, VO_DIFF- | O | DIFFERENTIAL DIFFERENTIATED OUTPUTS: Filter differentiated outputs. These outputs are normally AC coupled. |
| VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- | O | DIFFERENTIAL NORMAL OUTPUTS: Filter normal low pass output signals. These outputs are normally AC coupled. |
| RX | - | REFERENCE RESISTOR INPUT: An external 13.3 k Ω , 1% resistor is connected from this pin to ground to establish a precise PTAT (proportional to absolute temperature) reference current for the filter. |

SERIAL PORT PINS

| | | |
|------|-----|---|
| SDEN | I/O | SERIAL DATA ENABLE: Serial enable CMOS compatible input. A high level TTL input enables the serial port. |
| SDI | I/O | SERIAL DATA: Serial data CMOS compatible input. NRZ programming data for the internal registers is applied to this input. |
| SCLK | I/O | SERIAL CLOCK: Serial clock CMOS compatible input. The clock applied to this pin is synchronized with the data applied to SDATA. |

SSI 32F8101/8102/8103/8104

Low-Power Programmable Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Unless otherwise specified, the recommended operating conditions are as follows: 4.5V < POSITIVE SUPPLY VOLTAGE < 5.5V, 0 °C < T (ambient) < 70 °C, and 25 °C < T(junction) < 135 °C. Currents flowing into the chip are positive. Current maximums are currents with the highest absolute value.
Rx = 13.3 kΩ, Cx = 1000 pF from Rx pin to VCA. Input signals are AC-coupled into VIN±.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation beyond the maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| Storage Temperature | -65 to 150 °C |
| Junction Operating Temperature | +130 °C |
| Positive Supply Voltage (Vp) | -0.5 to 7V |
| Voltage Applied to Logic Inputs | -0.5V to Vp + 0.5V |
| All other Pins | -0.5V to Vp + 0.5V |

POWER SUPPLY CURRENT AND POWER DISSIPATION

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------|--|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| ICC (VCA,D) | Output pins open Ta = 27 °C VP = 5.0 V, DACF = 127 Boost = 0 dB | | 19 | | mA |
| PWR Power Dissipation | Output pins open Ta = 27 °C VP = 5.0 V, Boost = 0 dB DACF = 127 | | 95 | | mW |
| Sleep Mode Power | PWRON = 1 | | | 5 | mW |

TTL COMPATIBLE INPUTS

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------|------------|------|--|-------------|----|
| Input low voltage (VIL) | | -0.3 | | 0.8 | V |
| Input high voltage (VIH) | | 2.0 | | VPD +0.3 | V |
| Input low current (IIL) | VIL = 0.4V | -0.4 | | | mA |
| Input high current (IIH) | VIH = 2.4V | | | 100 | μA |

CMOS COMPATIBLE INPUTS

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------|-----|--|-----|---|
| Input low voltage | Vp = 5.0V | | | 1.5 | V |
| Input high voltage | Vp = 5.0V | 3.5 | | | V |

SSI 32F8101/8102/8103/8104

Low-Power Programmable Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

SERIAL PORT

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| SCLK period | Read from serial port | 140 | | | ns |
| | Write to serial port | 100 | | | ns |
| SCLK low time TCKL | Read from serial port | 60 | | | ns |
| | Write to serial port | 40 | | | ns |
| SCLK high time TCKH | Read from serial port | 60 | | | ns |
| | Write to serial port | 40 | | | ns |
| Enable to SCLK TSENS | | 35 | | | ns |
| SCLK to disable TSENH | | 100 | | | ns |
| Data set-up time TDS | | 15 | | | ns |
| Data hold time TDH | | 15 | | | ns |
| SDATA tri-state delay TSENDL | | | | 50 | ns |
| SDATA turnaround time TTRN | | 70 | | | ns |
| SDEN low time TSL | | 200 | | | ns |

PROGRAMMABLE FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

| | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|--|--|-------|-----|-------|-----|
| Filter cutoff range (32F8101) | | f_c @ -3 dB point $f_c = (0.2126 \text{ MHz}) \times \text{DACF}$, Boost = 0 dB $42 \leq \text{DACF} \leq 127$ | 9 | | 27 | MHz |
| Filter cutoff range (32F8102) | | f_c @ -3 dB point $f_c = (0.1417 \text{ MHz}) \times \text{DACF}$, Boost = 0 dB $42 \leq \text{DACF} \leq 42$ | 6 | | 18 | MHz |
| Filter cutoff range (32F8103) | | f_c @ -3 dB point $f_c = (0.09449 \text{ MHz}) \times \text{DACF}$, Boost = 0 dB $42 \leq \text{DACF} \leq 127$ | 4 | | 12 | MHz |
| Filter cutoff range (32F8104) | | f_c @ -3 dB point $f_c = (0.07087 \text{ MHz}) \times \text{DACF}$, Boost = 0 dB $42 \leq \text{DACF} \leq 127$ | 3 | | 9 | MHz |
| Filter cutoff accuracy | | DACF = 42 and 125 | -15 | | 15 | % |
| FNP, FNN differential gain AN | | $f = 0.67 \times f_c$, boost = 0 dB | 0.7 | 1.0 | 1.25 | V/V |
| FDP, FDN differential gain AD | | $f = 0.67 \times f_c$, boost = 0 dB | 0.8AN | | 1.2AN | V/V |

SSI 32F8101/8102/8103/8104

Low-Power Programmable Filter

PROGRAMMABLE FILTER CHARACTERISTICS (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|--|---------------|-----|-------|-----------------|
| Boost accuracy | 6.3 dB, DACF = 42, DACS = 36 | -1.0 | | +1.0 | dB |
| | 6.8 dB, DACF = 127, DACS = 36 | -1.0 | | +1.0 | dB |
| | 9.5 dB, DACF = 42, DACS = 67 | -1.25 | | +1.25 | dB |
| | 10 dB, DACF = 127, DACS = 67 | -1.25 | | +1.25 | dB |
| | 13.6 dB, DACF = 42, DACS = 127 | 1.5 | | +1.5 | dB |
| Data mode group delay variation, DACF = 42 to 127, DACS = 0 to 127 | $f_c = 3$ to 9 MHz $f = 0.2 f_c$ to f_c | -2 | | +2 | % |
| | $f = f_c$ to $1.75 f_c$ | -3 | | +3 | % |
| Data mode group delay variation, DACS = 0 to 127 | $f_c = \max$ $f = 0.2 f_c$ to f_c | 32F8101 -0.5 | | +0.5 | ns |
| | | 32F8102 -0.75 | | +0.75 | ns |
| | | 32F8103 -1.0 | | +1.0 | ns |
| | | 32F8104 -1.25 | | +1.25 | ns |
| | $f_c = \min$ $f = 0.2 f_c$ to f_c | 32F8101 -1.25 | | +1.25 | ns |
| | | 32F8102 -1.9 | | +1.9 | ns |
| | | 32F8103 -2.5 | | +2.5 | ns |
| | | 32F8104 -3.75 | | +3.75 | ns |
| | $f_c = \max$ $f = f_c$ to $1.75 f_c$ | 32F8101 -0.75 | | +0.75 | ns |
| | | 32F8102 -1.15 | | +1.15 | ns |
| | | 32F8103 -1.5 | | +1.5 | ns |
| | | 32F8104 -1.9 | | +1.9 | ns |
| | $f_c = \min$ $f = f_c$ to $1.75 f_c$ | 32F8101 -1.9 | | +1.9 | ns |
| | | 32F8102 -2.85 | | +2.85 | ns |
| | | 32F8103 -3.75 | | +3.75 | ns |
| | | 32F8104 -5.65 | | +5.65 | ns |
| Filter differential input dynamic range | THD = 1.5%, $f = 0.67 f_c$ boost = 0 dB, normal and differentiated outputs | 1.0 | | | V _{pp} |
| Filter differential output dynamic range | THD = 1.5%, $f = 0.67 f_c$ boost = 0 dB, normal and differentiated outputs | 1.0 | | | V _{pp} |
| Filter differential input resistance | Normal | 5.0 | | | k Ω |
| | Low-Z | | 600 | | Ω |
| Filter differential input capacitance | | | | 7.0 | pF |

SSI 32F8101/8102/8103/8104

Low-Power Programmable Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

PROGRAMMABLE FILTER CHARACTERISTICS (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|------------------------------|------|------|------|------------|
| Output Noise Voltage: BW = 100 MHz, $R_s = 50\Omega$ | | | | | |
| 32F8101 | | | | | |
| differentiated output | $f_c = 27$ MHz, boost = 0 dB | | 4.4 | 6.6 | mV Rms |
| differentiated output | $f_c = 27$ MHz, DACS =127 | | 7.7 | 11.6 | mV Rms |
| normal output | $f_c = 27$ MHz, boost = 0 dB | | 2.5 | 3.8 | mV Rms |
| normal output | $f_c = 27$ MHz, DACS =127 | | 3.7 | 5.6 | mV Rms |
| 32F8102 | | | | | |
| differentiated output | $f_c = 18$ MHz, boost = 0 dB | | 3.8 | 5.7 | mV Rms |
| differentiated output | $f_c = 18$ MHz, DACS =127 | | 6.9 | 10.4 | mV Rms |
| normal output | $f_c = 18$ MHz, boost = 0 dB | | 2.2 | 3.3 | mV Rms |
| normal output | $f_c = 18$ MHz, DACS =127 | | 3.2 | 4.8 | mV Rms |
| 32F8103 | | | | | |
| differentiated output | $f_c = 9$ MHz, boost = 0 dB | | 4.1 | 6.2 | mV Rms |
| differentiated output | $f_c = 9$ MHz, DACS =127 | | 6.5 | 9.8 | mV Rms |
| normal output | $f_c = 9$ MHz, boost = 0 dB | | 2.2 | 3.3 | mV Rms |
| normal output | $f_c = 9$ MHz, DACS =127 | | 3.1 | 4.7 | mV Rms |
| 32F8104 | | | | | |
| differentiated output | $f_c = 9$ MHz, boost = 0 dB | | 3.6 | 5.4 | mV Rms |
| differentiated output | $f_c = 9$ MHz, DACS =127 | | 5.6 | 8.4 | mV Rms |
| normal output | $f_c = 9$ MHz, boost = 0 dB | | 2.0 | 3.0 | mV Rms |
| normal output | $f_c = 9$ MHz, DACS =127 | | 2.7 | 4.1 | mV Rms |
| Filter output sink current | | | 0.5 | | mA |
| Filter output offset voltage | | -200 | | 200 | mV |
| Filter output source current | | 2.0 | | | mA |
| Filter output resistance | single ended | | | 200 | Ω |
| Rx pin voltage | $T_a = 27^\circ\text{C}$ | | 600 | | mV |
| | $T_a = 127^\circ\text{C}$ | | 800 | | mV |
| Rx resistance | 1% fixed value | | 13.3 | | k Ω |

SSI 32F8101/8102/8103/8104

Low-Power Programmable Filter

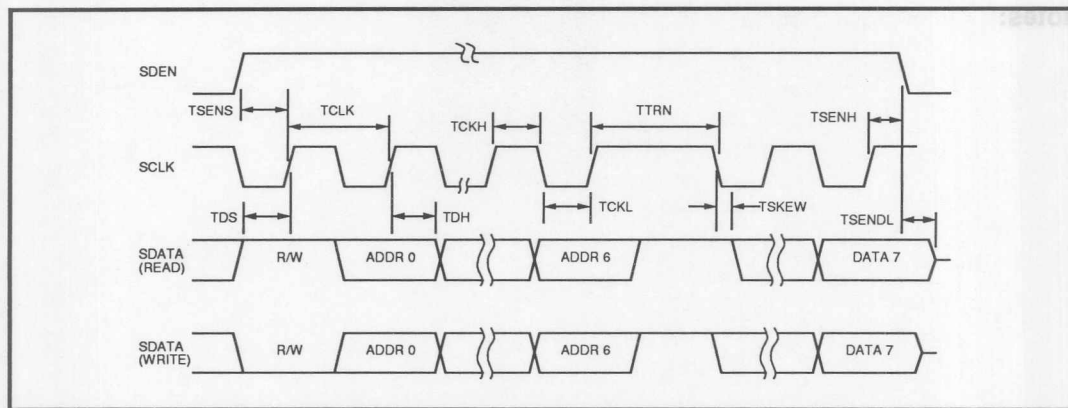


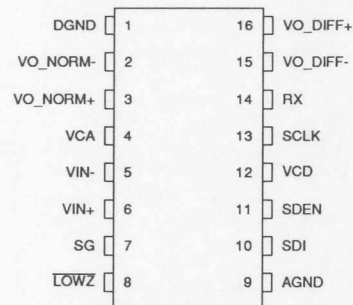
FIGURE 4: Serial Port Timing Information

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

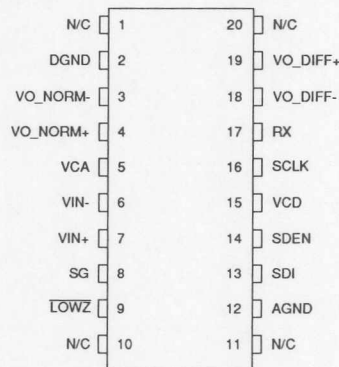
(Top View)

THERMAL CHARACTERISTICS: θ_{ja}

| | |
|-------------|----------|
| 16-lead SON | 100° C/W |
| 20-lead SOV | 125° C/W |



16-Lead SON



20-Lead SOV

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

Advance Information: Indicates a product still in the design cycle, and any specifications are based on design goals only. Do not use for final design.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

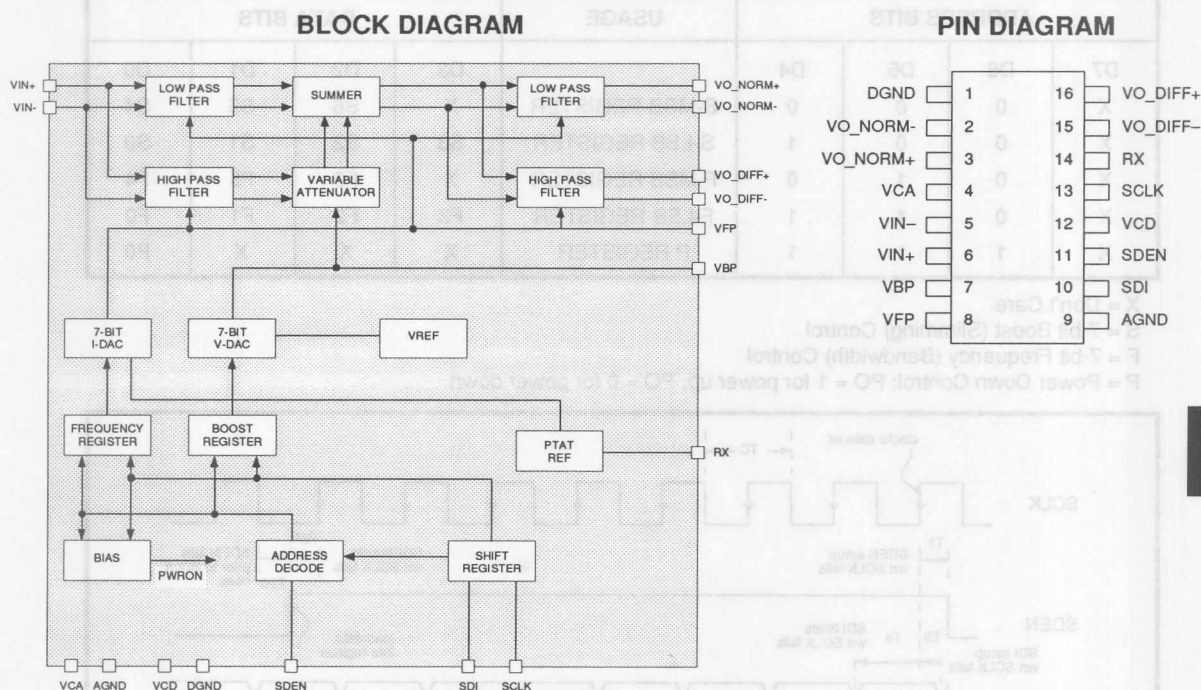
January 1994

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8120 is a continuous time, low pass filter with programmable bandwidth and high frequency boost. The low pass filter is a 2 zero / 7 pole 0.05° phase equiripple type, featuring excellent group delay characteristics. It features 1.5 - 8 MHz programmable bandwidth and 0-10 dB programmable boost. Both functions are controlled by 7-bit command words, which are input via a 3-line serial interface.

FEATURES

- Programmable filter cutoff frequency ($f_c = 1.5$ to 8 MHz) with no external components
- Programmable pulse slimming equalization (0 to 10 dB boost at the filter cutoff frequency)
- $\pm 10\%$ cutoff frequency accuracy
- Matched normal and differentiated low-pass outputs
- Differential filter inputs and outputs
- Device Idle mode
- +5V only operation
- No external filter components required
- Supports constant density recording



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 32F8120

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING

The SSI 32F8120 programmable electronic filter can be set to a filter cutoff frequency from 1.5 to 8 MHz. The cutoff frequency can be set by using the serial port through pins SDI, SDEN, and SCLK. SDI is the serial data input for an 8-bit control shift register, SDEN is the control register enable, and SCLK is the control register clock. The data packet is transmitted MSB (D7) first. The first four bits are the register address, the last four are the data bits. Registers larger than four bits must be loaded with two 8-bit data packets. See Table 1.

f_c is determined by the equation:

$$f_c \text{ (MHz)} = 0.061321 (F_Code) + 0.212264$$

$$1.5 \text{ MHz} \leq f_c \leq 8 \text{ MHz}$$

$$21 \leq F_Code \leq 127$$

SLIMMER HIGH FREQUENCY BOOST PROGRAMMING

The amplitude of the input signal at frequencies near the cutoff frequency can be increased using this feature. By controlling the V-DAC output, the boost can be determined. The amount of boost at the cutoff frequency is related to the V-DAC output by the following formula:

$$[\text{Output of V-DAC} = VBP = VREF \times \frac{S_Code}{127}]$$

$$\text{BOOST (dB)} = 20 \cdot \log [0.01703 (S_Code) + 1].$$

TABLE 1

| ADDRESS BITS | | | | USAGE | DATA BITS | | | |
|--------------|----|----|----|----------------|-----------|----|----|----|
| D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| X | 0 | 0 | 0 | S-MSB REGISTER | X | S6 | S5 | S4 |
| X | 0 | 0 | 1 | S-LSB REGISTER | S3 | S2 | S1 | S0 |
| X | 0 | 1 | 0 | F-MSB REGISTER | X | F6 | F5 | F4 |
| X | 0 | 1 | 1 | F-LSB REGISTER | F3 | F2 | F1 | F0 |
| X | 1 | 1 | 1 | P REGISTER | X | X | X | P0 |

X = Don't Care

S = 7-bit Boost (Slimming) Control

F = 7-bit Frequency (Bandwidth) Control

P = Power Down Control; PO = 1 for power up; PO = 0 for power down

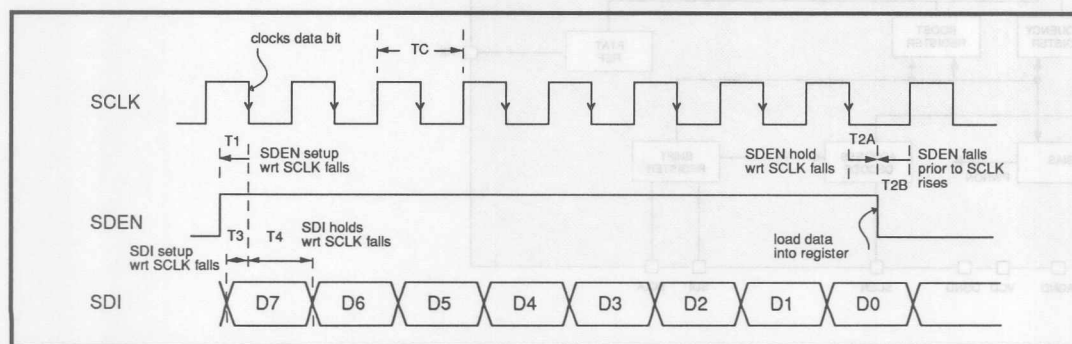


FIGURE 1: Serial Port Timing Diagram

SSI 32F8120

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|------|--|
| VIN+, VIN- | I | DIFFERENTIAL FILTER INPUTS. The input signals must be AC coupled to these pins. |
| VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- | O | DIFFERENTIAL NORMAL OUTPUTS. The output signals must be AC coupled to the pulse detector. |
| VO_DIFF+, VO_DIFF- | O | DIFFERENTIAL DIFFERENTIATED OUTPUTS. For minimum pulse pairing, these outputs should be AC coupled to the pulse detector. |
| SDEN | I | SERIAL DATA ENABLE. A logic HIGH level allows SERIAL CLOCK to clock data into the control register via the SERIAL DATA input. A logic LOW level latches the register data and issues the information to the appropriate circuitry. |
| SCLK | I | SERIAL CLOCK. Negative edge triggered clock input for serial register. |
| SDI | I | SERIAL DATA INPUT. |
| RX | - | REFERENCE CURRENT SET. With an external resistor ($R_x = 5 \text{ k}\Omega \pm 1\%$) to ground, this pin gives a voltage proportional to the absolute temperature, setting the range for VFP. |
| VCA | I | ANALOG +5 VOLT SUPPLY. |
| VCD | I | DIGITAL +5 VOLT SUPPLY. |
| AGND | I | ANALOG GROUND. |
| DGND | I | DIGITAL GROUND. |
| VBP | O | BOOST PROGRAMMING VOLTAGE. Output of V-DAC which programs the boost. |
| VFP | O | CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING VOLTAGE. Output of I-DAC which programs the cutoff frequency.* |

*A minimum load resistance of 150 k Ω should be used to avoid affecting the total minimum on-chip resistance of 1.35 k Ω .

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|-----|------|------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| V | | 0.2 | TTL input | High Level Input Voltage | V _{IH} |
| V | 0.8 | | | Low Level Input Voltage | V _{IL} |
| I _q | 20 | | V _{IH} = 2.7V | High Level Input Current | I _{IH} |
| I _{in} | | -1.5 | V _{IL} = 0.4V | Low Level Input Current | I _{IL} |

SSI 32F8120

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATING |
|---|----------------|
| Storage Temperature | -65 to +150 °C |
| Junction Operating Temperature, T _j | +130 °C |
| Supply Voltage, VCC | -0.5 to 7V |
| Voltage Applied to Inputs* | -0.5 to VCC V |
| Maximum Power Dissipation, f _c = 8 MHz, VCC = 5.5V | 0.5W |
| T1 Lead Temperature (1/16" from case for 10 seconds) | 260 °C |
| * Analog input signals of this magnitude shall not cause any change or degradation in filter performance after signal has returned to normal operating range. | |

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Supply voltage, VCC | 4.5V < VCC < 5.5V |
| Ambient Temperature | 0 °C < T _a < 70 °C |
| T _j Junction Temperature | 0 °C < T _j < 130 °C |

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Unless otherwise specified recommended operating conditions apply.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|------|
| I _{supply} | VCC = 5.5V, outputs unloaded | | 55 | 75 | mA |
| Idle Mode Current | | | 9 | 13 | mA |
| Idle to Active Mode Recovery Time | | | | 50 | μs |
| Serial port program to output response time | | | | 50 | μs |

DC Characteristics

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------------|------|-----|----|
| V _{IH} | High Level Input Voltage | TTL input | 2.0 | | V |
| V _{IL} | Low Level Input Voltage | | | 0.8 | V |
| I _{IH} | High Level Input Current | V _{IH} = 2.7V | | 20 | μA |
| I _{IL} | Low Level Input Current | V _{IL} = 0.4V | -1.5 | | mA |

SSI 32F8120

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

Filter Characteristics

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|---|------------|-----|------------|------|
| f_c Filter Cutoff Frequency | $21 \leq F_Code \leq 127$ | 1.5 | | 8 | MHz |
| FCA Filter f_c Accuracy | $F_Code = 127$ | -10 | | +10 | % |
| | $F_Code = 21$ | -15 | | +15 | % |
| Cutoff Resolution | 1.5 to 8 MHz | 100 | | | kHz |
| AO VO_NORM Diff Gain | $F = 0.67 f_c$ | 0.7 | | 1.1 | V/V |
| AD VO_DIFF Diff Gain | $F = 0.67 f_c$ | 0.90 AO | | 1.2 AO | V/V |
| FB Frequency Boost at f_c | $FB(dB) = 20 \log [0.01703 (S_Code) + 1]$ | 0 | | 10 | dB |
| FBA Frequency Boost Accuracy | 0 to 10 dB, $T_a < 22^\circ C$ | -1.5 | | +1.5 | dB |
| FBA Frequency Boost Accuracy | 0 to 10 dB, $T_a > 22^\circ C$ | -1 | | +1 | dB |
| TGD0 Group Delay Variation Without Boost $f_c = 1.5 - 8$ MHz gdm = group delay magnitude | $0.2 f_c - f_c$ | -2% gdm | | +2% gdm | ns |
| | $f_c - 1.75 f_c$ | -3% gdm | | +3% gdm | ns |
| TGDB Group Delay Variation With Boost $f_c = 1.5 - 8$ MHz | $0.2 f_c - f_c$ | -2% gdm | | +2% gdm | ns |
| | $f_c - 1.75 f_c$ | -3% gdm | | +3% gdm | ns |
| Boost Resolution | 1.5 to 8 MHz | .25 | | | dB |
| VOF Filter Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1.5% max, VBP = 0, VO_NORM 1000 pF capacitor across Rx $F_Code = 127$ | 1.5 | | | Vppd |
| VOF Filter Output Dynamic Range | THD = 3.5% max, VBP = 0, VO_DIFF 1000 pF capacitor across Rx $F_Code = 127$ | 1.5 | | | Vppd |
| VOF Filter Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1.5% max, VBP = 0, VO_NORM 1000 pF capacitor across Rx $F_Code = 21$ | 1.0 | | | Vppd |
| VOF Filter Output Dynamic Range | THD = 2.0% max, VBP = 0, VO_DIFF 1000 pF capacitor across Rx $F_Code = 21$ | 1.0 | | | Vppd |

SSI 32F8120

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

Filter Characteristics (continued)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|--|--|------|------|---------|------------|
| RIN Filter Diff Input Resistance | | 3.0 | | | k Ω |
| CIN Filter Input Capacitance | | | | 7 | pF |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage (VO_NORM) | BW = 100 MHz, 0 dB Boost 50 Ω input f_c = 8 MHz | | 1.8 | 3 | mVRms |
| | 10 dB Boost | | 2.35 | 4 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage (VO_DIFF) | BW = 100 MHz, 0 dB Boost 50 Ω input f_c = 8 MHz | | 4.2 | 6 | mVRms |
| | 10 dB Boost | | 5.85 | 9 | mVRms |
| IO- Filter Output Sink Current | | 1.0 | | | mA |
| IO+ Filter Output Source Current | | 3.0 | | | mA |
| RO Filter Output Resistance (Single ended) | Output source current, IO+ = 1 mA | | | 60 | Ω |
| TC Period, SCLK | | 100 | | | ns |
| T1 SDEN Setup to SCLK Falls | | 10 | | TC/2-10 | ns |
| T2A SDEN Hold wrt SCLK Falls | | 10 | | TC/4 | ns |
| T2B SDEN Falls prior to SCLK Rises | | 25 | | | ns |
| T3 SDI Setup to SCLK Falls | | 25 | | | ns |
| T4 SDI Hold to SCLK Falls | | 25 | | | ns |
| Power Supply Rejection Ratio | 100 mVpp @ 5 MHz on VCA, VCD | 40 | 70 | | dB |
| Common Mode Rejection Ratio | Vin = 0 VDC + 100 mVpp @5 MHz | 30 | 50 | | dB |
| Bias: Vin+, Vin- | VCC = 5V | 2.5 | 2.9 | 3.3 | V |
| VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- | VCC = 5V | 2.8 | 3.2 | 3.6 | V |
| VO_DIFF+, VO_DIFF- | VCC = 5V | 2.8 | 3.2 | 3.6 | V |
| Output offset Normal and Differentiated | | -150 | | +150 | mV |

SSI 32F8120

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

TABLE 2: Calculations

Typical change in f -3 dB point with boost

| Boost (dB) | Gain@ f_c (dB) | Gain@ peak (dB) | f_{peak}/f_c | f -3dB/ f_c | K |
|------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|------|
| 0 | -3 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.00 | 0 |
| 1 | -2 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.21 | 0.16 |
| 2 | -1 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.51 | 0.34 |
| 3 | 0 | 0.15 | 0.70 | 1.80 | 0.54 |
| 4 | 1 | 0.99 | 1.05 | 2.04 | 0.77 |
| 5 | 2 | 2.15 | 1.23 | 2.20 | 1.03 |
| 6 | 3 | 3.41 | 1.33 | 2.33 | 1.31 |
| 7 | 4 | 4.68 | 1.38 | 2.43 | 1.63 |
| 8 | 5 | 5.94 | 1.43 | 2.51 | 1.97 |
| 9 | 6 | 7.18 | 1.46 | 2.59 | 2.40 |
| 10 | 7 | 8.40 | 1.48 | 2.66 | 2.85 |

- Notes:
- f_c is the original programmed cutoff frequency with no boost
 - f -3 dB is the new -3 dB value with boost implemented
 - f_{peak} is the frequency where the amplitude reaches its maximum value with boost implemented
- i.e., $f_c = 2$ MHz when boost = 0 dB
- if boost is programmed to 5 dB then f -3 dB = 4.40 MHz
- $f_{peak} = 2.46$ MHz

| PACKAGE MARK | ORDER NUMBER | PART DESCRIPTION |
|--------------|--------------|------------------|
| 32F8120-CL | 32F8120-CL | 16-Lead SOL |
| 32F8120-CV | 32F8120-CV | 20-Lead SOV |

SSI 32F8120

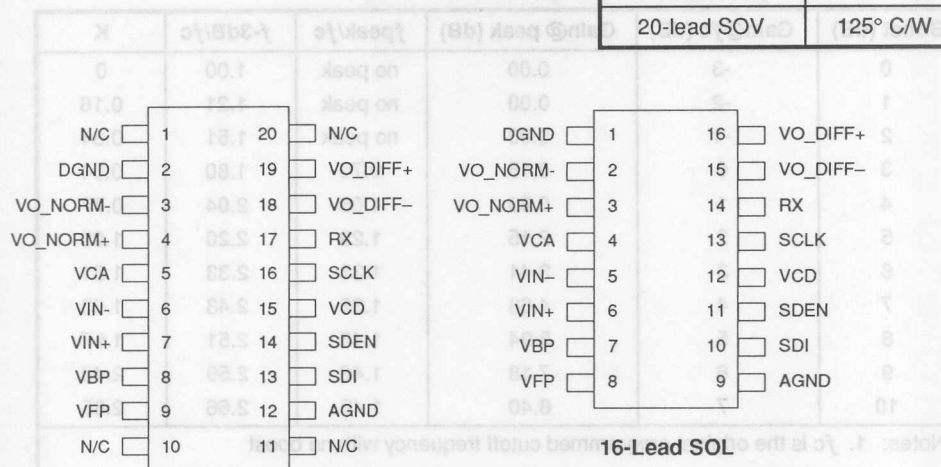
Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

THERMAL CHARACTERISTICS: θ_{ja}

| | |
|-------------|----------|
| 16-lead SOL | 100° C/W |
| 20-lead SOV | 125° C/W |



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|-------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| SSI 32F8120 16-Lead SOL | 32F8120-CL | 32F8120-CL |
| 20-Lead SOV | 32F8120-CV | 32F8120-CV |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX 714/573-6914

November 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8130/8131 Programmable Electronic Filters are digitally controlled low pass filters with a normal low pass output and a time differentiated low pass output. The low pass filter is of a 7-pole / 2-zero 0.05° phase equiripple type, with flat group delay response beyond the passband.

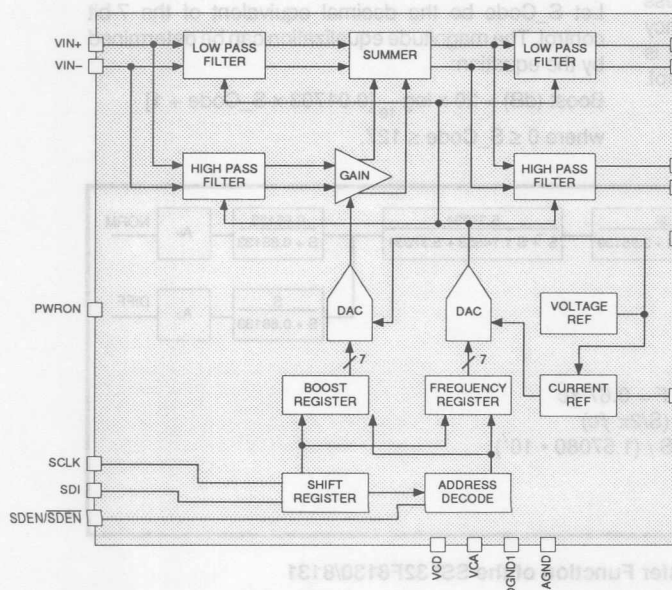
The SSI 32F8130/8131 bandwidth and boost are controlled by two on-chip 7-bit DACs, which are programmed via a 3-line serial interface. The SSI 32F8130 filter bandwidth is programmable from 200 kHz to 2.2 MHz. The SSI 32F8131 is programmable from 150 kHz to 1.4 MHz. The boost is programmable from 0 to 10 dB. Because the boost function is implemented as two zeros on the real axis with opposite sign, the flat group delay characteristic is not affected by the boost programming.

The SSI 32F8130/8131 are ideal for multi-rate, equalization applications. They require only a +5V supply and have a Power Down mode for minimal idle dissipation. The SSI 32F8130/8131 is available in a 16-lead SOL package.

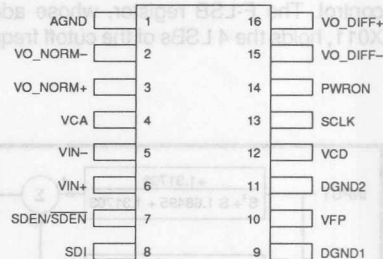
FEATURES

- Programmable filter cutoff frequency (SSI 32F8130 FC=0.20 to 2.2 MHz, SSI 32F8131: FC = 0.15 to 1.4 MHz) with no external components, serial data connections to minimize pin count
- Power Down mode (<5 mW)
- Programmable pulse slimming equalization (0 to 10 dB boost at the filter cutoff frequency)
- Matched normal and differentiated low-pass outputs
- Differential filter inputs and outputs
- Programming via internal 7-bit DACs
- No external filter components required
- +5V only operation
- Supports constant density recording

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM



SSI 32F8130: Lead 7 = SDEN
SSI 32F8131: Lead 7 = SDEN

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

SSI 32F8130/8131

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8130/8131, a high performance programmable electronic filter, provides a 7-pole / 2-zero 0.05° equiripple linear phase low pass function with matched normal and time differentiated outputs. The device includes multiple biquads and first-order sections to accomplish the filter function, two 7-bit DACs for bandwidth and boost controls, a 3-line serial interface, and complete bias reference circuits. Only one external precision 8.25 kΩ resistor should be connected from the VFP pin to ground for operation. See Figure 1.

SERIAL INTERFACE

The SSI 32F8130/8131 allows easy digital controls of filter bandwidth and magnitude equalization via a 3-line serial interface. The three pins are SDI, SDEN and SCLK. SDI is the serial data input to an internal 8-bit shift register. SDEN is the shift register enable. SCLK is the shift register clock. Besides the 8-bit shift register which accepts data from the SDI input, there are four 4-bit registers which hold the filter bandwidth and boost controls. Two 4-bit registers are assigned to each control function, because a 7-bit binary control is required for each function.

The S-MSB register, whose address code is X000, holds the 3 MSBs of the boost control. The S-LSB register, whose address code is X001, holds the 4 LSBs of the boost control. The F-MSB register, whose address code is X010, holds the 4 MSBs of the cutoff frequency control. The F-LSB register, whose address code is X011, holds the 4 LSBs of the cutoff frequency control.

The serial interface consists of data packets, which are structured as 4-bit address decode followed by 4-bit data. Figure 2 shows the serial interface timing to successfully program the SSI 32F8130/8131.

CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING

The cutoff frequency, f_c , is defined as the -3 dB bandwidth with no magnitude equalization applied, and is programmable from 200 kHz to 2.2 MHz for SSI 32F8130, and 150 kHz to 1.4 MHz for SSI 32F8131. While the f_c is controlled by an on-chip 7-bit DAC, the cutoff frequency resolution is better than 20-kHz step.

Let F_Code be the decimal equivalent of the 7-bit control. The cutoff frequency can be determined by the following equations:

$$SSI\ 32F8130\ f_c\ (kHz) = 17.3 \times F_Code$$

$$SSI\ 32F8131\ f_c\ (kHz) = 10.81 \times F_Code + 37$$

where $12 \leq F_Code \leq 127$.

MAGNITUDE EQUALIZATION PROGRAMMING

The magnitude equalization, measured in dB, is the amount of high frequency peaking at the cutoff frequency relative to the original -3 dB point. For example, when 10 dB boost is applied, the magnitude response peaks up 7 dB above the DC gain. This equalization function is also controlled by an on-chip 7-bit DAC.

Let S_Code be the decimal equivalent of the 7-bit control. The magnitude equalization can be determined by the equation:

$$Boost\ (dB) = 20 \times \log_{10} [0.01703 \times S_Code + 1]$$

where $0 \leq S_Code \leq 127$.

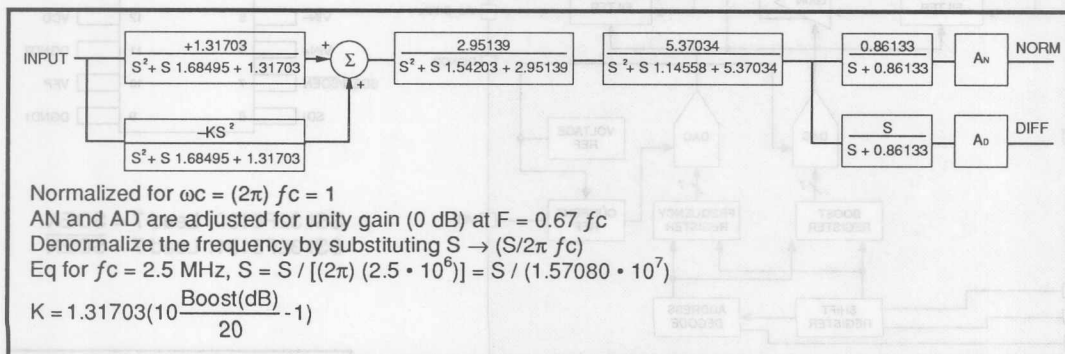


FIGURE 1: Normalized Transfer Function of the SSI 32F8130/8131

SSI 32F8130/8131

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

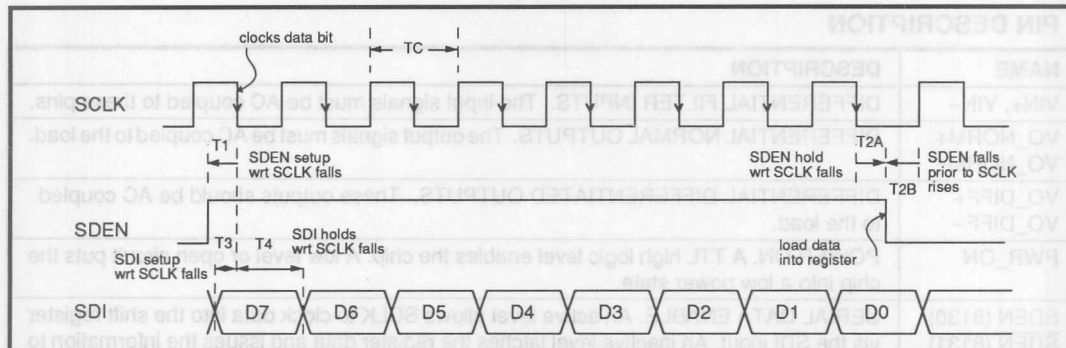


FIGURE 2: Serial Port Timing Relationship

Note:

The serial data enable function of the SSI 32F8130 and that of the SSI 32F8131 are of opposite polarity.

TABLE 1: Data Packet Fields

| | ADDRESS BITS | | | | USAGE | DATA BITS | | | |
|----|--------------|----|----|----|------------------|-----------|----|----|----|
| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| R0 | X | 0 | 0 | 0 | S - MSB REGISTER | X | S6 | S5 | S4 |
| R1 | X | 0 | 0 | 1 | S - LSB REGISTER | S3 | S2 | S1 | S0 |
| R2 | X | 0 | 1 | 0 | F - MSB REGISTER | X | F6 | F5 | F4 |
| R3 | X | 0 | 1 | 1 | F - LSB REGISTER | F3 | F2 | F1 | F0 |

X = Don't care bit.

SSI 32F8130/8131

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|---|
| VIN+, VIN- | DIFFERENTIAL FILTER INPUTS. The input signals must be AC coupled to these pins. |
| VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- | DIFFERENTIAL NORMAL OUTPUTS. The output signals must be AC coupled to the load. |
| VO_DIFF+, VO_DIFF- | DIFFERENTIAL DIFFERENTIATED OUTPUTS. These outputs should be AC coupled to the load. |
| PWR_ON | POWER ON. A TTL high logic level enables the chip. A low level or open circuit puts the chip into a low power state. |
| SDEN (8130) SDEN (8131) | SERIAL DATA ENABLE. An active level allows SCLK to clock data into the shift register via the SDI input. An inactive level latches the register data and issues the information to the appropriate circuitry. Active level for SSI 32F8130 is HIGH, for SSI 32F8131 is LOW. |
| SCLK | SERIAL CLOCK. Negative edge triggered clock input for serial register. |
| SDI | SERIAL DATA INPUT. |
| VCA | ANALOG +5 VOLT SUPPLY. |
| VCD | DIGITAL +5 VOLT SUPPLY. |
| AGND | ANALOG GROUND. |
| DGND1 DGND2 | DIGITAL GROUND. |
| VFP | CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING REFERENCE. A resistor of 8.25 k Ω should be connected between this pin and AGND. |

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may permanently damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATINGS |
|--|---------------|
| Storage Temperature | -65 to +150°C |
| Junction Operating Temperature, T _j | +130°C |
| Supply Voltage, VCC | -0.5 to 7V |
| Voltage Applied to Inputs* | -0.5 to VCCV |
| T1 Lead Temperature (1/16" from case for 10 seconds) | 260°C |

* Analog input signals of this magnitude shall not cause any change or degradation in filter performance after signal has returned to normal operating range.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| PARAMETER | RATINGS |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Supply voltage, VCC | 4.50 < VCC < 5.50V |
| Ambient Temperature | 0 < T _a < 70°C |
| T _j Junction Temperature | 0 < T _j < 130°C |

SSI 32F8130/8131

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Unless otherwise specified recommended operating conditions apply. F_Code = 64, S_Code = 0.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|--|--------------|---------|---------|-----------------|
| Idle Mode Current | | | | 1 | mA |
| I _{supply} | | | 60 | 70 | mA |
| Power Dissipation | PWR_ON ≤ 0.8V | | | 6 | mW |
| | PWR_ON ≥ 2.0V | | 303 | 385 | mW |
| Idle to Active Mode Recovery Time | | | | 50 | μs |
| Serial port program to output response time | | | | 50 | μs |
| <i>DC Characteristics</i> | | | | | |
| VIH High Level Input Voltage | TTL input | 2.0 | | | V |
| VIL Low Level Input Voltage | | | | 0.8 | V |
| IIH High Level Input Current | VIH = 2.7V | | | 20 | μA |
| IIL Low Level Input Current | VIL = 0.4V | -1.5 | | | mA |
| <i>Filter Characteristics</i> | | | | | |
| fc Filter Cutoff Frequency | 12 < F_Code < 127 | | | | |
| | SSI 32F8130 | 0.20 | | 2.2 | MHz |
| | SSI 32F8131 | 0.15 | | 1.4 | MHz |
| FCA Filter fc Accuracy | over fc range | -10 | | +10 | % |
| Cutoff Resolution | Resolution = $\frac{\text{Max } fc}{127}$ | F8130 | 20 | | kHz |
| | | F8131 | 12 | | kHz |
| AO VO_NORM Diff Gain | F = 0.67 fc | | 0.8 | 1.2 | V/V |
| AD VO_DIFF Diff Gain | F = 0.67 fc | 32F8131 | 1.0 AO | 1.2 AO | V/V |
| | | 32F8130 | 0.9 AO | 1.1 AO | V/V |
| FB Frequency Boost at fc | FB(dB) = 20 log [.01703 (S_Code) + 1] 0 ≤ S_Code ≤ 127 | 0 | | 10 | dB |
| FBA Frequency Boost Accuracy | 10 dB nominal | -1.5 | | +1.5 | dB |
| TGD0 Group Delay Variation Without Boost | 0.2 fc - fc | -2% gdm | | +2% gdm | ns |
| | fc = 0.25 - 2.5 MHz gdm = group delay magnitude | fc - 1.75 fc | -3% gdm | +3% gdm | ns |
| TGDB Group Delay Variation With Boost | 0.2 fc - fc | -2% gdm | | +2% gdm | ns |
| | fc - 1.75 fc | -3% gdm | | +3% gdm | ns |
| Boost Resolution | | 0.25 | | | dB |
| VOF_N Filter Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1% max, Normal Output | 1 | | | V _{pp} |

SSI 32F8130/8131

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (continued)

Unless otherwise specified recommended operating conditions apply. F_Code = 64, S_Code = 0.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNIT |
|---|--|------|------|---------|-------|
| <i>Filter Characteristics (continued)</i> | | | | | |
| VOF_D Filter Output Dynamic Range | THD = 1% max, Differentiated Output | 1 | | | Vpp |
| RIN Filter Diff Input Resistance | | 3.0 | 4.0 | 5.0 | kΩ |
| CIN Filter Input Capacitance | | | 3.0 | | pF |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage (VO_NORM) | BW = 100 MHz, 0 dB Boost 50Ω input | | 1.2 | 1.9 | mVRms |
| | fc = Max fc 10 dB Boost | | 1.4 | 2.0 | mVRms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage (VO_DIFF) | BW = 100 MHz, 0 dB Boost 50Ω input | | 2.1 | 2.7 | mVRms |
| | fc = Max fc 10 dB Boost | | 2.5 | 3.4 | mVRms |
| IO- Filter Output Sink Current | | 1.0 | | | mA |
| IO+ Filter Output Source Current | | 3.0 | | | mA |
| RO Filter Output Resistance (Single ended) | Output source current, IO+ = 1 mA | | 50 | 70 | Ω |
| T1 SDEN Set-up WRT SCLK Falls | | 10 | | TC/2-10 | ns |
| T2A SDEN Hold WRT SCLK Falls | | 10 | | TC/4 | ns |
| T2B SDEN Falls (rises for 8131) prior to SCLK rises | | 25 | | | ns |
| T3 SDI Set-up WRT SCLK Falls | | 25 | | | ns |
| T4 SDI Hold WRT SCLK Falls | | 25 | | | ns |
| SCLK Period, TC | | 100 | | | ns |
| Power Supply Rejection Ratio VO_NORM | 100 mVpp from 10 kHz to 10 MHz on VCA, VCD | 30 | 40 | | dB |
| Power Supply Rejection Ratio VO_DIFF | | 20 | 30 | | dB |
| Common Mode Rejection Ratio VO_NORM | Vin = 0VDC + 10 mVpp from 10 kHz to 10 MHz | 30 | 40 | | dB |
| Common Mode Rejection Ratio VO_DIFF | | 20 | 30 | | dB |
| Bias: VO_NORM± | VCC = 5V | 2.40 | 2.75 | 3.10 | V |
| Vin± | | 2.20 | 2.35 | 2.80 | V |
| VO_DIFF± | | 2.40 | 2.75 | 3.10 | V |
| Normal Output Offset Variation | F_Code switched from 12-127 | -200 | | 200 | mV |
| Differentiated Output Offset Variation | F_Code switched from 12-127 | -200 | | 200 | mV |

SSI 32F8130/8131

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

TABLE 1: Calculations

Typical change in f -3 dB point with boost

| Boost (dB) | Gain@ f_c (dB) | Gain@ peak (dB) | f_{peak}/f_c | f -3dB/ f_c | K |
|------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|------|
| 0 | -3 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.00 | 0 |
| 1 | -2 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.21 | 0.16 |
| 2 | -1 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.51 | 0.34 |
| 3 | 0 | 0.15 | 0.70 | 1.80 | 0.54 |
| 4 | 1 | 0.99 | 1.05 | 2.04 | 0.77 |
| 5 | 2 | 2.15 | 1.23 | 2.20 | 1.03 |
| 6 | 3 | 3.41 | 1.33 | 2.33 | 1.31 |
| 7 | 4 | 4.68 | 1.38 | 2.43 | 1.63 |
| 8 | 5 | 5.94 | 1.43 | 2.51 | 1.97 |
| 9 | 6 | 7.18 | 1.46 | 2.59 | 2.40 |
| 10 | 7 | 8.40 | 1.48 | 2.66 | 2.85 |

Notes: 1. f_c is the original programmed cutoff frequency with no boost
 2. f -3 dB is the new -3 dB value with boost implemented
 3. f_{peak} is the frequency where the amplitude reaches its maximum value with boost implemented
 i.e., $f_c = 1$ MHz when boost = 0 dB
 if boost is programmed to 5 dB then f -3 dB = 2.20 MHz
 $f_{peak} = 1.23$ MHz

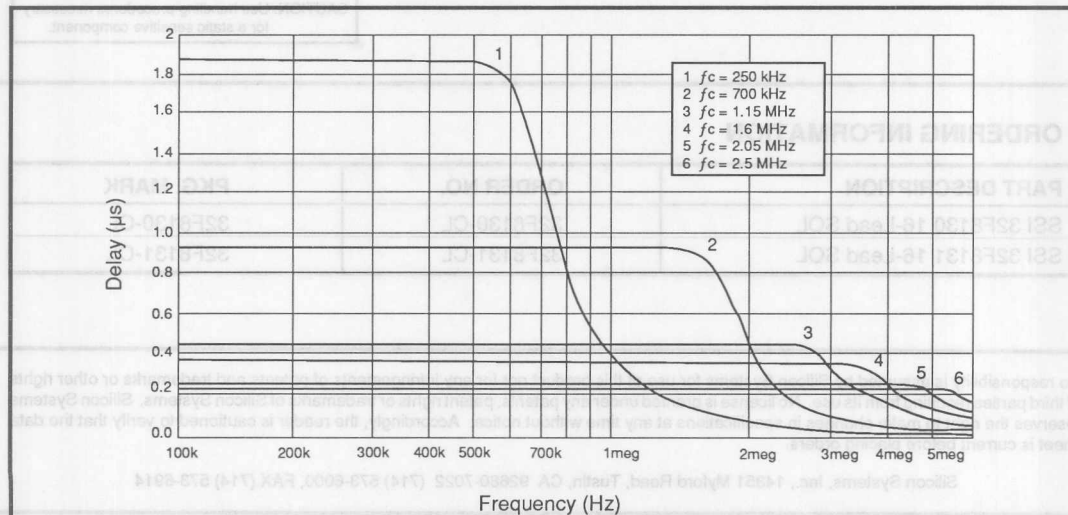


FIGURE 3: Typical Normal/Differentiated Output Group Delay Response

SSI 32F8130/8131

Low-Power Programmable Electronic Filter

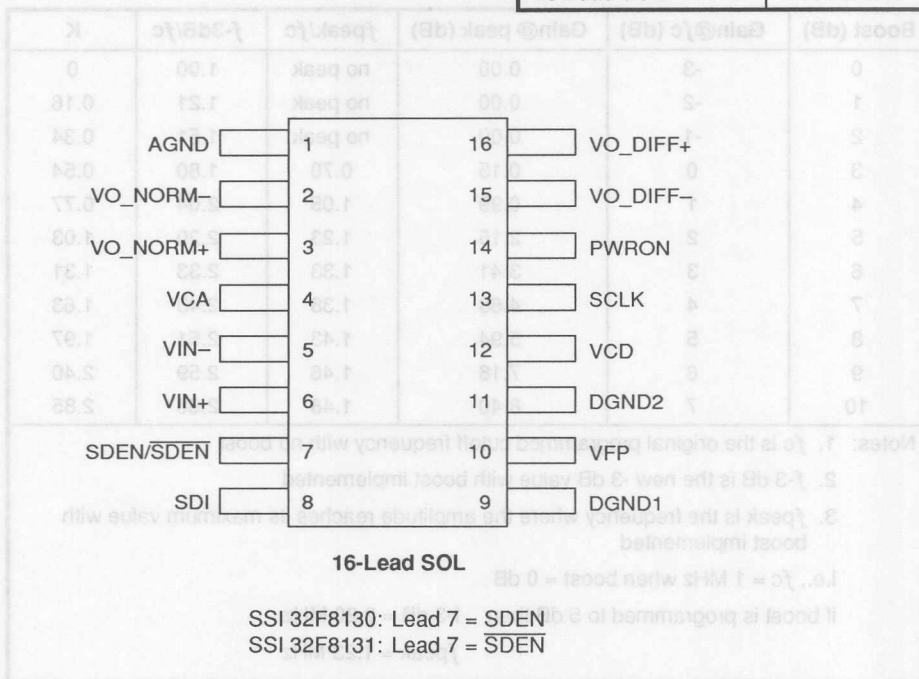
PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

THERMAL CHARACTERISTICS: θ_{JA}

16-Lead SOL

100° C/W



CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NO. | PKG. MARK |
|-------------------------|------------|------------|
| SSI 32F8130 16-Lead SOL | 32F8130-CL | 32F8130-CL |
| SSI 32F8131 16-Lead SOL | 32F8131-CL | 32F8131-CL |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

January 1994

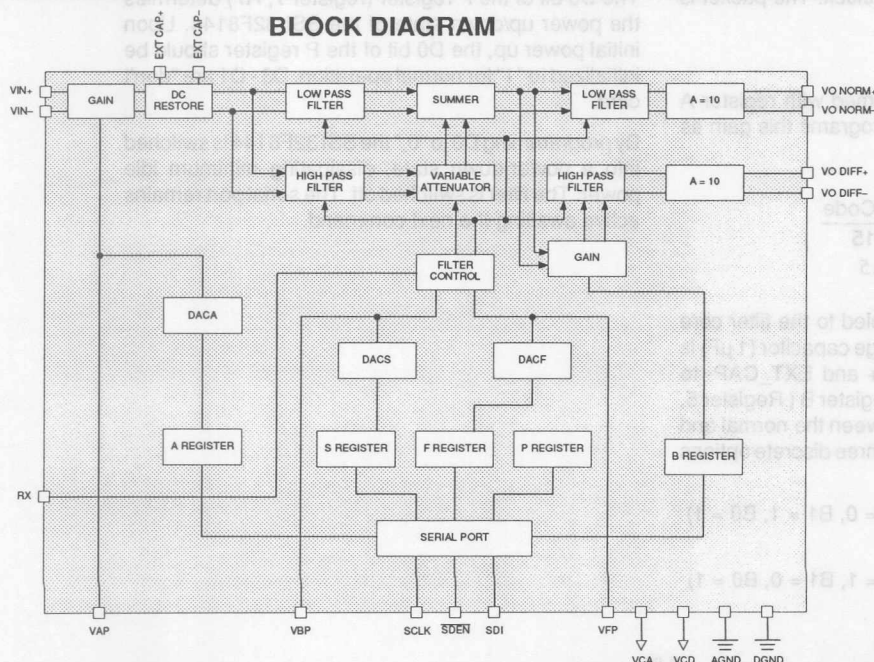
DESCRIPTION

This custom integrated circuit incorporates a pulse equalizer of variable equalization and variable bandwidth with a transfer function of a 2 zero/7 pole linear phase filter, as well as variable gain stages controlled by DACs. Equalization, gain and bandwidth changes are user-programmable via three serial lines to a microprocessor. The equalizer is totally contained and calibrating. It is realized in a high speed fully differential mode. A seven pole linear phase equiripple ± 0.05 degree filter forms the low-pass function. The cutoff frequency of the low-pass section is programmed via a 7-bit serial shift register and can be programmed from 7 to 27 MHz. Pulse slimming equalization uses two programmable magnitude, opposite sign zeroes on the real axis. Pulse slimming boost is from 0 to 9.5 dB at the filter cutoff frequency using a 7 bit serial shift register. Gain can be programmed from 10 V/V to 100 V/V for normal outputs and from 10 V/V to 50 V/V for differentiated outputs.

FEATURES

- Programmable filter cutoff frequency (7 MHz $\leq f_c \leq 27$ MHz) with no external components
- $\pm 10\%$ cutoff frequency accuracy
- Programmable pulse slimming equalization (0 to 9.5 dB boost at the filter cutoff frequency)
- Matched delay normal and differentiated low-pass outputs
- Differential filter inputs and outputs
- Device idle mode (45 mW nom.)
- +5V only operation
- Supports constant density recording
- Input stage gain control with DAC
- Relative gain between normal and differentiated outputs controlled with serial port

BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN DIAGRAM

| | | | |
|------------------|----|----|-------------------|
| EXT CAP+ | 1 | 20 | VCA |
| EXT CAP- | 2 | 19 | VIN+ |
| $\overline{I_Z}$ | 3 | 18 | VIN- |
| VO NORM- | 4 | 17 | AGND |
| VO NORM+ | 5 | 16 | VAP |
| VBP | 6 | 15 | SCLK |
| VO DIFF+ | 7 | 14 | VCD |
| VO DIFF- | 8 | 13 | \overline{SDEN} |
| VFP | 9 | 12 | SDI |
| RX | 10 | 11 | DGND |

20-lead SOL

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 32F8144, a high performance programmable electronic filter, provides a low pass equiripple type seven pole filter with matched normal and differentiated outputs with variable gain using DACs.

The SSI 32F8144 has seven control registers: A, B, S1, S2, F1, F2 and P registers. Register A contains four bits, B is three bits, and P is one bit. S1, S2, F1, and F2 contain seven bits. Register A controls the gain of the input stage and register B controls the gain between the normal and differentiated outputs. Since the F, S registers contain 7 bits, they require two data packets which must be loaded sequentially. S1-2 registers are for high frequency boost. F1-2 registers are for cutoff frequency control. The P register is for power down command. The structure and command of each register are described as follows.

Data is loaded serially with MSB first. Each data packet contains 8 bits. The first four bits (D7 - D4) are designated as address bits with D7 always a "don't care." The last four bits (D3 - D0) are the data bits (see Table 1).

The registers are loaded by using the serial port through the SDI, $\overline{\text{SDEN}}$ and SCLK pins. The SDI pin is the serial bit input. The $\overline{\text{SDEN}}$ pin is the control register enable. The SCLK is the control register clock. The packet is transmitted MSB (D7) first.

GAIN PROGRAMMING

The input gain stage is programmed with register A (Register 4, R4). The A_Code programs this gain as follows:

$$A_v(V/V) = 10 \cdot \frac{A_Code}{15}$$

$$1 \leq A_Code \leq 15$$

This input gain stage is DC coupled to the filter core through DC restore circuitry. A large capacitor (1 μF) is placed between pins EXT_CAP+ and EXT_CAP- to null the input offset to the filter. Register B (Register 5, R5) controls the relative gain between the normal and differentiated outputs. There are three discrete options which are listed as follows:

AN/AD = 1.0 B_Code = 3 (B2 = 0, B1 = 1, B0 = 1)

A_Code = 1

AN/AD = 1.5 B_Code = 5 (B2 = 1, B1 = 0, B0 = 1)

A_Code = 7

AN/AD = 2.0 B_Code = 6 (B2 = 1, B1 = 1, B0 = 0)

A_Code = 15 (B3 is a "don't care")

CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING

The filter cutoff frequency can be set from 7 to 27 MHz.

The 7-bit F_Code programs the cutoff frequency as follows:

$$f_c(\text{MHz}) = 27 \cdot \frac{F_Code}{127}$$

$$33 \leq F_Code \leq 127$$

SLIMMER HIGH FREQUENCY BOOST PROGRAMMING

The amplitude of the input signal at frequencies near the cutoff frequency can be increased using this feature. By controlling the DACS output, the boost can be determined. The amount of boost at the cutoff frequency is related to the DACS output by the following formula:

$$\text{BOOST (dB)} = 20 \cdot \log [0.01563(S_Code) + 1]$$

The 7-bit S_Code is loaded into S1 and S2 registers (registers 0 and 1 - R0, R1).

POWER-DOWN CONTROL

The D0 bit of the P register (register 7, R7) determines the power up/down state of the SSI 32F8144. Upon initial power up, the D0 bit of the P register should be initialized to "1" for normal operation. D3 - D1 are "don't care."

By programming D0 to "0," the SSI 32F8144 is switched into a power-down state, dissipating minimum idle power. The filter is switched off. The serial port remains active awaiting the next command.

SSI 32F8144

Programmable

Electronic Filter

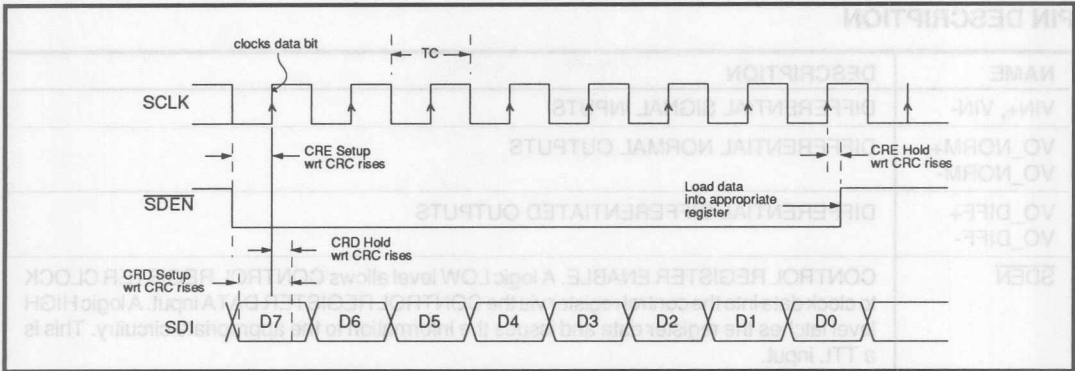


FIGURE 1: Serial Port Timing Relationship

TABLE 1: Control Register Assignment

| ADDRESS BITS | | | | | USAGE | DATA BITS | | | |
|--------------|----|----|----|----|-------------|-----------|----|----|----|
| | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| R0 | X | 0 | 0 | 0 | S1 REGISTER | X | S6 | S5 | S4 |
| R1 | X | 0 | 0 | 1 | S2 REGISTER | S3 | S2 | S1 | S0 |
| R2 | X | 0 | 1 | 0 | F1 REGISTER | X | F6 | F5 | F4 |
| R3 | X | 0 | 1 | 1 | F2 REGISTER | F3 | F2 | F1 | F0 |
| R4 | X | 1 | 0 | 0 | A REGISTER | A3 | A2 | A1 | A0 |
| R5 | X | 1 | 0 | 1 | B REGISTER | X | B2 | B1 | B0 |
| R7 | X | 1 | 1 | 1 | P REGISTER | X | X | X | P0 |

X = Don't Care

S = Boost (Slimming) Control

F = Frequency (Bandwidth) Control

A = Gain Setting (0-10)

B = Gain of VO_DIFF relative to the gain of VO_NORM

P = Sleep Mode Control (P0 = 1, On Mode; P0 = 0, Sleep Mode)

SDI is the serial data input for an 8-bit control shift register. The data packet is transmitted Most Significant Bit (D7) first. The first four bits are the register address, the last four are the data bits. Registers larger than four bits must be loaded with two 8-bit data packets. These packets should be loaded sequentially.

SSI 32F8144

Programmable

Electronic Filter

PIN DESCRIPTION

| NAME | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|--|
| VIN+, VIN- | DIFFERENTIAL SIGNAL INPUTS |
| VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- | DIFFERENTIAL NORMAL OUTPUTS |
| VO_DIFF+, VO_DIFF- | DIFFERENTIAL DIFFERENTIATED OUTPUTS |
| SDEN | CONTROL REGISTER ENABLE. A logic LOW level allows CONTROL REGISTER CLOCK to clock data into the control register via the CONTROL REGISTER DATA input. A logic HIGH level latches the register data and issues the information to the appropriate circuitry. This is a TTL input. |
| SCLK | CONTROL REGISTER CLOCK. Positive edge triggered clock input for serial register. This is a TTL input. |
| SDI | CONTROL REGISTER DATA. This is a TTL input (see Figure 1). |
| RX | CURRENT SET RESISTOR. This external resistor to ground provides a reference current. (RX = 5 k Ω \pm 1%) A 1000 pF capacitor must be connected in parallel with Rx. |
| VCA | ANALOG +5V SUPPLY. |
| VCD | DIGITAL +5V SUPPLY. |
| AGND | ANALOG GROUND. |
| DGND | DIGITAL GROUND. |
| VAP | ANALOG TO DIGITAL TEST VOLTAGE. This is an analog voltage that is proportional to the setting on the digital output on the A/D convertor. This is a test pin related to the variable gain. |
| VBP | BOOST PROGRAMMING VOLTAGE. A voltage that is related to the boost. A test pin. |
| VFP | CUTOFF FREQUENCY PROGRAMMING VOLTAGE. A voltage that is related to the cutoff frequency. A test pin. |
| EXT CAP+ EXT CAP- | EXTERNAL CAPACITOR. These pins are available for an external capacitor which is used in a feedback network to null the input offset. CEXT \geq 0.47 μ F, 1.0 μ F nominal. |
| LZ | LOW IMPEDANCE. This is a control signal which causes the input impedance of the filter to be low when this pin is low. The impedance is high if the pin is open or in the high state. This is a TTL input. |

SSI 32F8144

Programmable

Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Operation above maximum ratings may damage the device.

| PARAMETER | RATINGS |
|--|---------------|
| Storage Temperature | -65 to +150°C |
| Junction Operating Temperature, T _j | +130°C |
| Supply Voltage, VCC | -0.5 to 7V |
| Voltage Applied to Inputs* | -0.5 to VCCV |
| Maximum Power Dissipation, f _c = 27 MHz, V _{cc} = 5.5V | .55W |
| T1 Lead Temperature (1/16" from case for 10 seconds) | 260°C |

* Analog input signals of this magnitude shall not cause any change or degradation in filter performance after signal has returned to normal operating range.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|----|
| Supply voltage, VCC | 4.50 < VCC < 5.50 | V |
| Ambient Temperature | 0 < T _a < 70 | °C |
| T _j Junction Temperature | 0 < T _j < 130 | °C |

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Unless otherwise specified recommended operating conditions apply.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|------------------------|-----|-----|------|-------|
| Idle Mode Current | P0 = "0" | | 11 | 15 | mA |
| Supply Current | V _{cc} = 5.5V | | 85 | 100 | mA |
| PD Power Dissipation | P0 = "0" | | 45 | 71.5 | mW |
| | P0 = "1" | | 400 | 550 | mW |
| Idle to Active Mode Recovery Time | | | | 50 | μs |
| Serial port program to output response time | | | | 50 | μs |
| DC Characteristics | | | | | |
| V _{IH} High Level Input Voltage | TTL input | 2.0 | | | V |
| V _{IL} Low Level Input Voltage | | | | 0.8 | V |
| I _{IH} High Level Input Current | V _{IH} = 2.7V | | | 20 | μA |
| I _{IL} Low Level Input Current | V _{IL} = 0.4V | | | -1.5 | mA |
| Filter Characteristics | | | | | |
| f _c Filter Cutoff Frequency | 33 ≤ F_Code ≤ 127 | 7 | | 27 | MHz |

SSI 32F8144

Programmable

Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (continued)

Unless otherwise specified recommended operating conditions apply.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---|--|------------|-----|------------|------------|
| FCA Filter f_c Accuracy | Over full f_c range, $33 \leq F_Code \leq 127$ | -10 | | 10 | % |
| AO VO_NORM Diff Gain (Note) | $F = 0.67 f_c$ | 10 | | 100 | V/V |
| AD VO_DIFF Diff Gain (Note) | $F = 0.67 f_c$, set with serial port | 10 | | 50 | V/V |
| VO_NORM Gain Tolerance | $A_o = 100$ | -15 | | 15 | % |
| VO_DIFF Gain Tolerance | $A_D = 50$ | -15 | | 15 | % |
| FB Frequency Boost at f_c | $FB(dB) = 20 \log [0.01563 (S_Code) + 1]$ | 0 | | 9.5 | dB |
| FBA Frequency Boost Accuracy | 0 to 9.5 dB | -1.25 | | +1.25 | dB |
| TGD0 Group Delay Variation Without Boost gdm = group delay magnitude | $0.2 f_c - f_c$ | -2% gdm | | +2% gdm | ns |
| | $f_c - 1.75 f_c$ | -3% gdm | | +3% gdm | ns |
| TGDB Group Delay Variation With Boost | $0.2 f_c - f_c$ | -2% gdm | | +2% gdm | ns |
| | $f_c - 1.75 f_c$ | -3% gdm | | +3% gdm | ns |
| VOF Filter Output Dynamic Range | $V_o_NORM, THD = 1.5\%$ | 1 | | | Vpp |
| | $V_o_DIFF, THD = 2.0\%$ | 1 | | | Vpp |
| | $V_o_NORM, THD = 2.0\%$ | 1.5 | | | Vpp |
| | $V_o_DIFF, THD = 3.0\%$ | 1.5 | | | Vpp |
| RIN Filter Diff Input Resistance | | 3.0 | 3.5 | 4.0 | k Ω |
| CIN Filter Input Capacitance | | | | 7 | pF |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage (VO_NORM) | BW = 100 MHz, 0 dB Boost 50 Ω input | | 2.5 | 4.0 | mV rms |
| | $f_c = 27$ MHz 9.5 dB Boost | | 3.7 | 10 | mV rms |
| EOUT Output Noise Voltage (VO_DIFF) | BW = 100 MHz, 0 dB Boost 50 Ω input | | 4.4 | 6 | mV rms |
| | $f_c = 27$ MHz 9.5 dB Boost | | 7.8 | 14 | mV rms |
| IO- Filter Output Sink Current | | 1.0 | | | mA |
| IO+ Filter Output Source Current | | 3.0 | | | mA |
| RO Filter Output Resistance (Single ended) | $IO+ = 1$ mA | | 30 | 50 | Ω |
| SCLK Period, TC | | 100 | | | ns |
| SDEN Set-up WRT SCLK Rising Edge | | 10 | | 25 | ns |
| SDEN Hold WRT SCLK Rising Edge | | 5 | | TC/2-10 | ns |

Note: The overall gain of VO_DIFF with respect to VIN is 10 to 50 V/V. Additionally, the gain of VO_NORM with respect to VO_DIFF will be adjustable and have gain values of 1.0, 1.5 and 2.0.

SSI 32F8144

Programmable

Electronic Filter

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (continued)

Unless otherwise specified recommended operating conditions apply.

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|---|------|------|------|-------|
| \overline{SDEN} Rises Prior to \overline{SCLK} Falls | | 15 | | | ns |
| SDI Set-up WRT \overline{SCLK} Rising Edge | | 15 | | | ns |
| SDI Hold WRT \overline{SCLK} Rising Edge | | 15 | | | ns |
| Power Supply Rejection Ratio | 100 mVpp in VCA, VCD from 100 kHz to 10 MHz | 45 | 70 | | dB |
| Common Mode Rejection Ratio | VIN = 0 VDC + 100 mVpp from 100 kHz to 10 MHz | 40 | 65 | | dB |
| DC Bias: VO_NORM+, VO_NORM- VO_DIFF+, VO_DIFF- | VCC = 5V, single ended | 2.05 | 2.55 | 3.05 | V |
| Vin+, Vin- | | 2.5 | 3.0 | 3.5 | V |
| Delay mismatch normal and differentiated outputs | | | | 1 | ns |

TABLE 2: Calculations

Typical change in f -3 dB point with boost

| Boost (dB) | Gain@fc (dB) | Gain@ peak (dB) | f_{peak}/f_c | f -3dB/ f_c | K |
|------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|------|
| 0 | -3 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.00 | 0 |
| 1 | -2 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.21 | 0.16 |
| 2 | -1 | 0.00 | no peak | 1.51 | 0.34 |
| 3 | 0 | 0.15 | 0.70 | 1.80 | 0.54 |
| 4 | 1 | 0.99 | 1.05 | 2.04 | 0.77 |
| 5 | 2 | 2.15 | 1.23 | 2.20 | 1.03 |
| 6 | 3 | 3.41 | 1.33 | 2.33 | 1.31 |
| 7 | 4 | 4.68 | 1.38 | 2.43 | 1.63 |
| 8 | 5 | 5.94 | 1.43 | 2.51 | 1.97 |
| 9 | 6 | 7.18 | 1.46 | 2.59 | 2.40 |
| 10 | 7 | 8.40 | 1.48 | 2.66 | 2.85 |

Notes: 1. f_c is the original programmed cutoff frequency with no boost

2. f -3 dB is the new -3 dB value with boost implemented

3. f_{peak} is the frequency where the amplitude reaches its maximum value with boost implemented

e.g., $f_c = 9$ MHz when boost = 0 dB

if boost is programmed to 5 dB then f -3 dB = 19.8 MHz

$f_{peak} = 11.07$ MHz

SSI 32F8144

Programmable

Electronic Filter

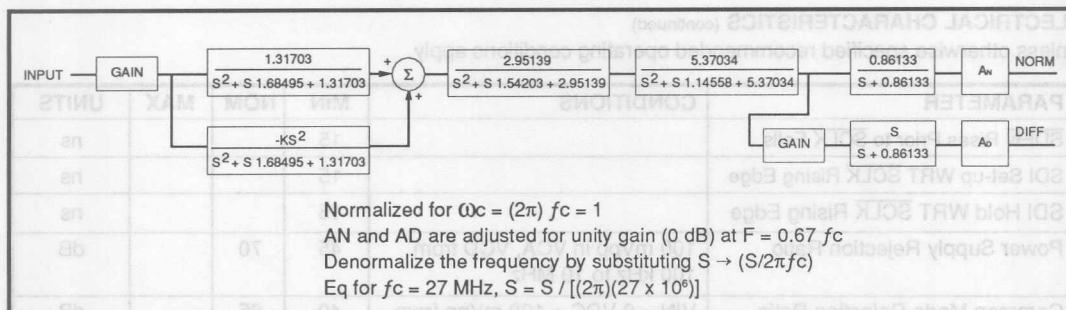


FIGURE 2: 32F8144 Normalized Block Diagram

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

THERMAL CHARACTERISTICS: θ_{ja}

| | |
|-------------|---------|
| 20-lead SOL | 95°C/W |
| 20-Lead SOV | 125°C/W |

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

| | | | |
|-----------------|----|----|------|
| EXT CAP+ | 1 | 20 | VCA |
| EXT CAP- | 2 | 19 | VIN+ |
| \overline{LZ} | 3 | 18 | VIN- |
| VO NORM- | 4 | 17 | AGND |
| VO NORM+ | 5 | 16 | VAP |
| VBP | 6 | 15 | SCLK |
| VO DIFF+ | 7 | 14 | VCD |
| VO DIFF- | 8 | 13 | SDEN |
| VFP | 9 | 12 | SDI |
| RX | 10 | 11 | DGND |

20-lead SOL, SOV

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDERING NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| SSI 32F8144 20-Lead SOL (300 mil) | 32F8144 - CL | 32F8144 - CL |
| SSI 32F8144 20-Lead SOV (220mil) | 32F8144 - CV | 32F8144 - CV |

Preliminary Data: Indicates a product not completely released to production. The specifications are based on preliminary evaluations and are not guaranteed. Small quantities are available, and Silicon Systems should be consulted for current information.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

Section **10**

PACKAGING/ORDERING INFORMATION

10

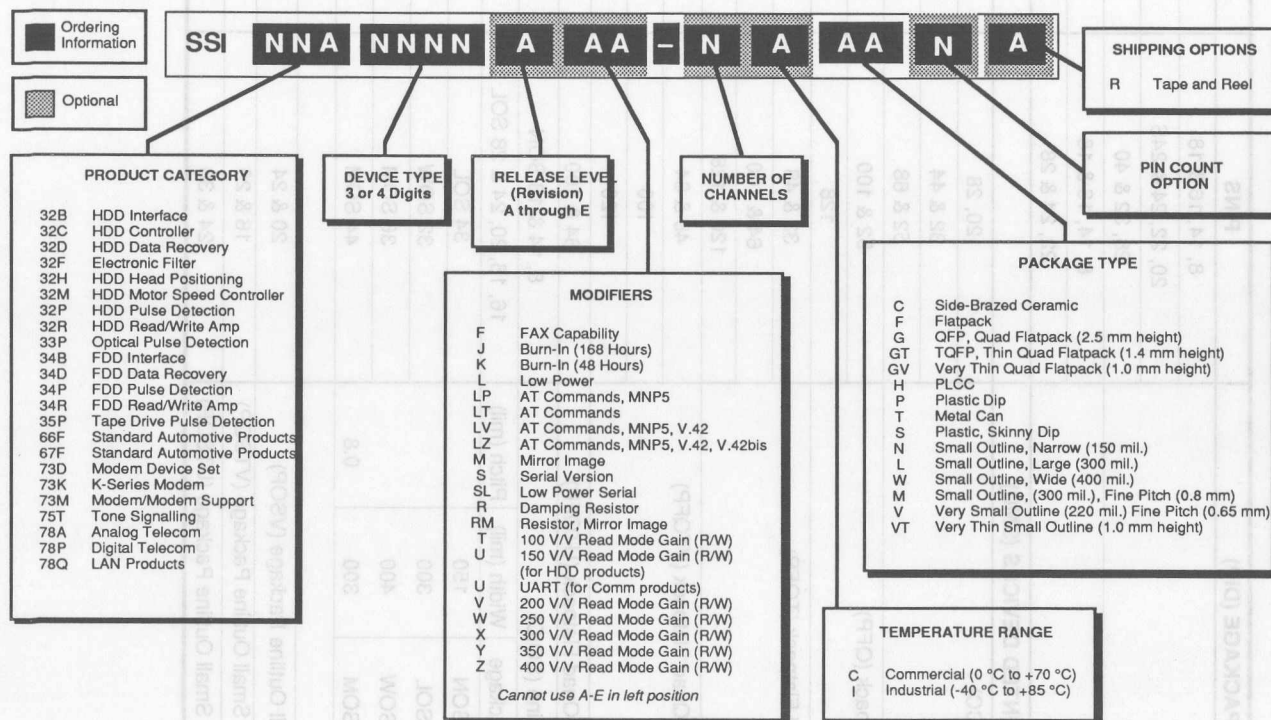
Section

PACKAGING/ORDERING INFORMATION

Silicon Systems

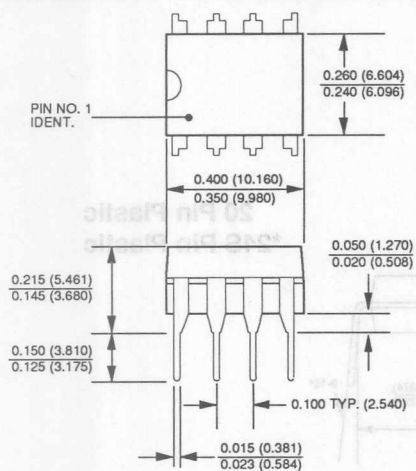
Packaging Index

| DUAL-IN-LINE PACKAGE (DIP) | | | | PINS | PAGE NO. |
|--|---------|-------------|-------------|-------------------------|----------|
| Plastic | | | | 8, 14, 16 & 18 | 10-3 |
| | | | | 20, 22, 24 & 24S | 10-4 |
| | | | | 28, 32 & 40 | 10-5 |
| Ceramic | | | | 8, 14, 16 & 18 | 10-6 |
| | | | | 22, 24 & 28 | 10-7 |
| SURFACE MOUNTED DEVICES (SMD) | | | | | |
| Quad (PLCC) | | | | 20, 28 | 10-8 |
| | | | | 32 & 44 | 10-9 |
| | | | | 52 & 68 | 10-10 |
| Quad Flatpack (QFP) | | | | 52 & 100 | 10-11 |
| | | | | 128 | 10-12 |
| Thin Quad Flatpack (TQFP) | | | | 32 & 48 | 10-13 |
| | | | | 64 & 100 | 10-14 |
| | | | | 120 & 128 | 10-15 |
| Very Thin Quad Flatpack (VTQFP) | | | | 48 & 64 | 10-16 |
| | | | | 100 | 10-17 |
| | | | | 120 | 10-18 |
| Ultra Thin Quad Flatpack (UTQFP) | | | | 64 & 100 | 10-19 |
| Small Outline (SOIC) | | | | 8, 14 & 16 SON | 10-20 |
| | Package | Width (mil) | Pitch (mil) | 16, 18, 20, 24 & 28 SOL | 10-21 |
| | SON | 150 | | 34 SOL | 10-22 |
| | SOL | 300 | | 32 SOW | 10-22 |
| | SOW | 400 | | 36 SOM | 10-22 |
| | SOM | 300 | 0.8 | 44 SOM | 10-23 |
| Very Small Outline Package (VSOP) | | | | 20 & 24 | 10-23 |
| Very Thin Small Outline Package (VTSOP) | | | | 16 & 20 | 10-24 |
| Ultra Thin Small Outline Package (UTSOP) | | | | 24 & 36 | 10-25 |

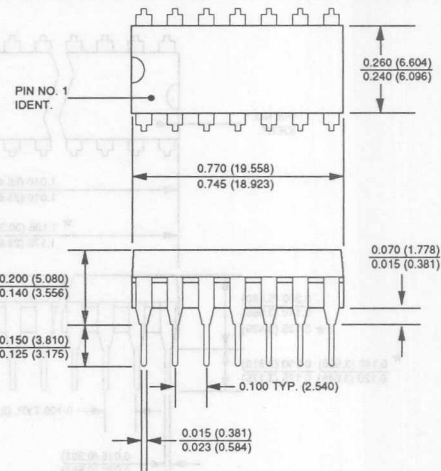


Package Information

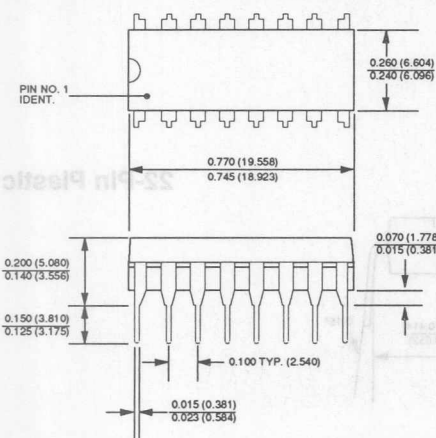
Plastic DIP



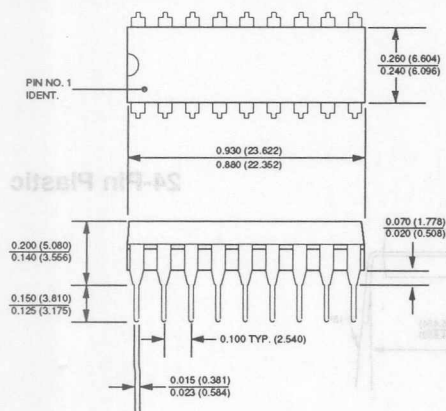
8-Pin Plastic



14-Pin Plastic

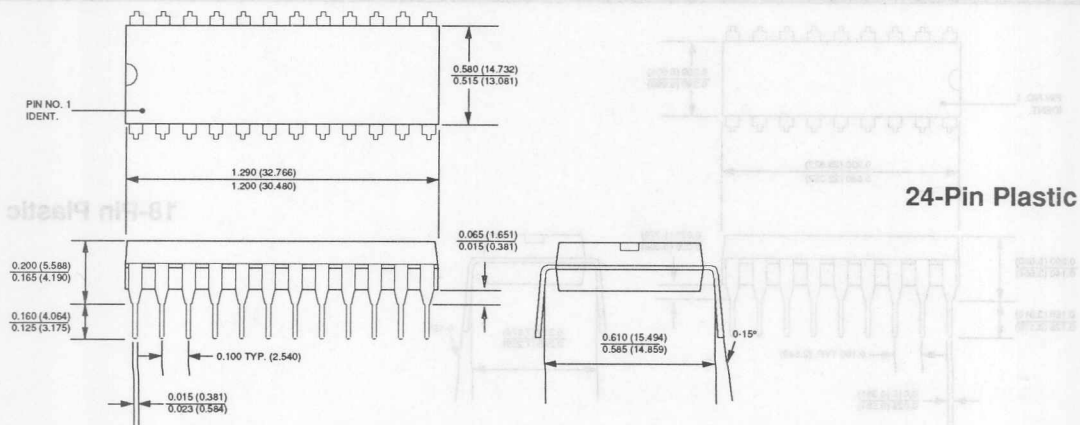
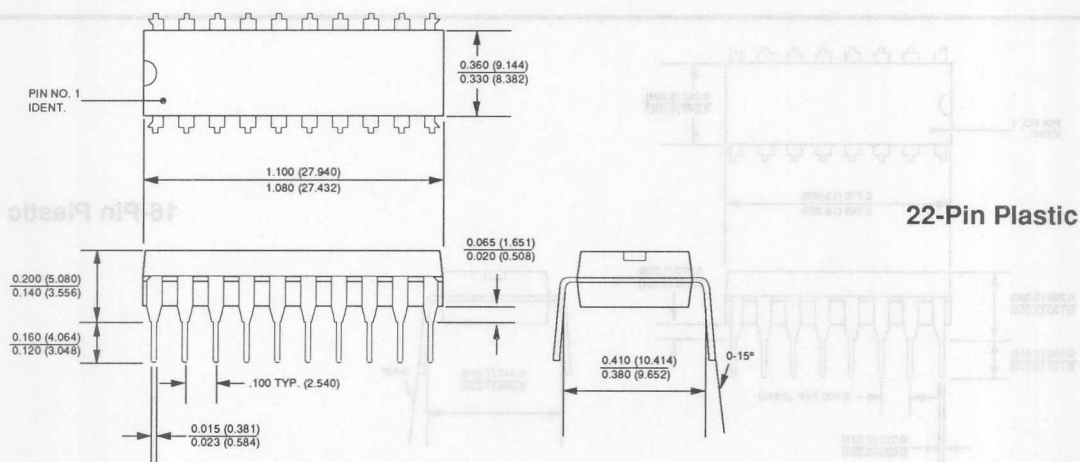
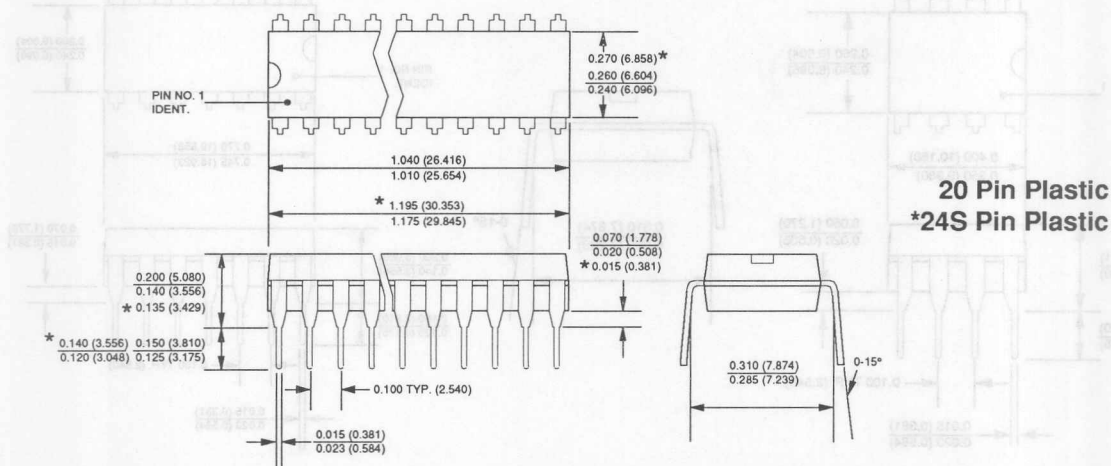


16-Pin Plastic



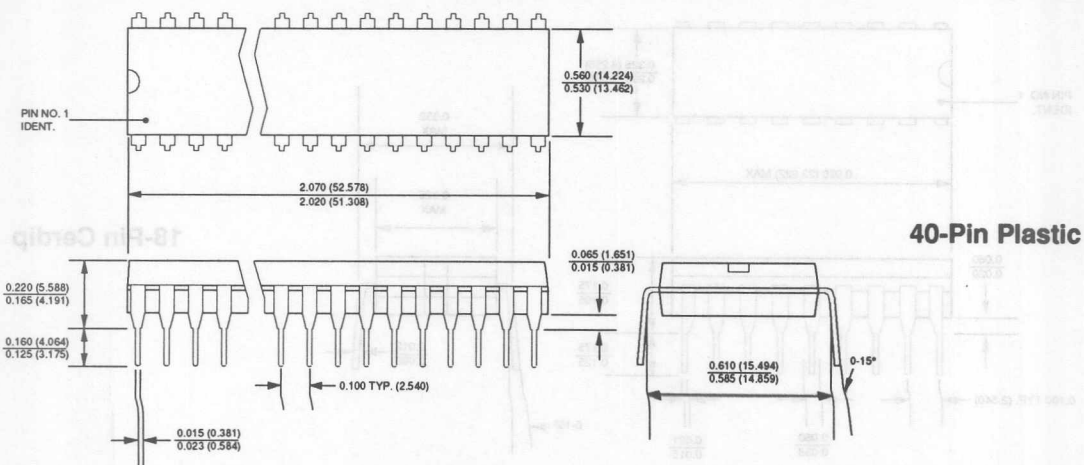
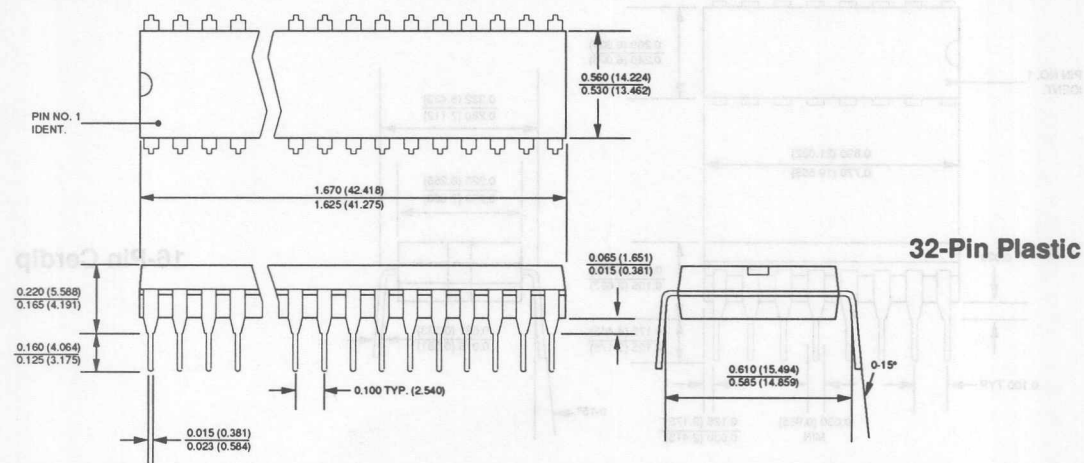
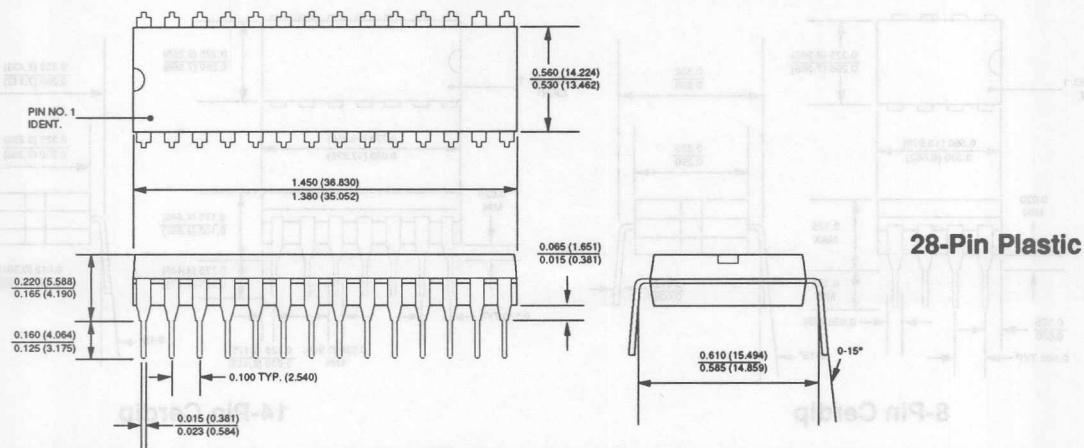
18-Pin Plastic

Package Information



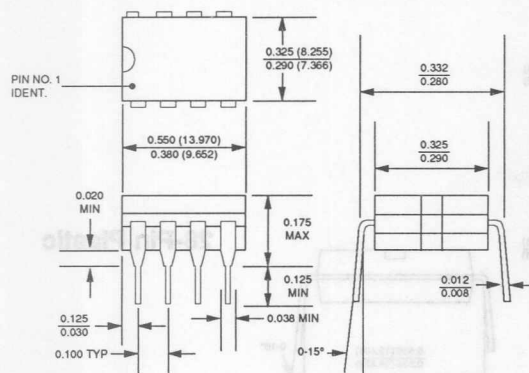
Package Information

Package Information

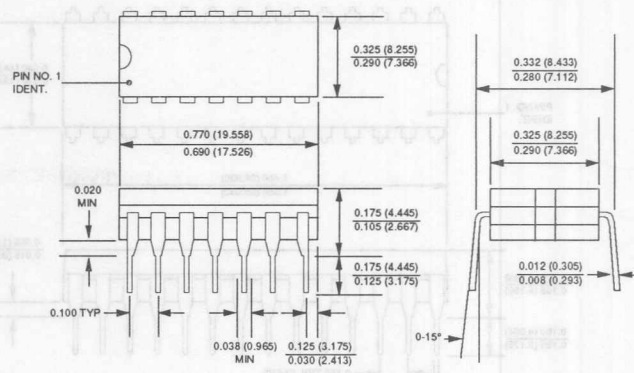


Package Information

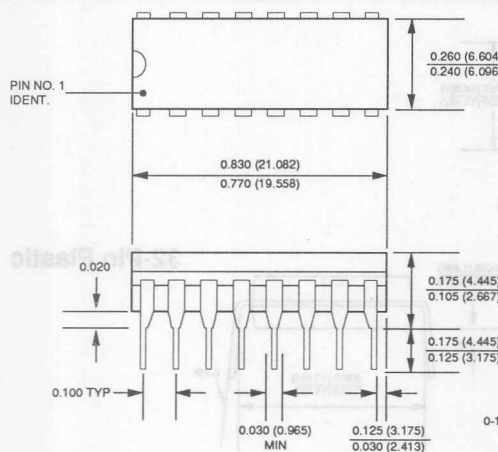
Cerdip



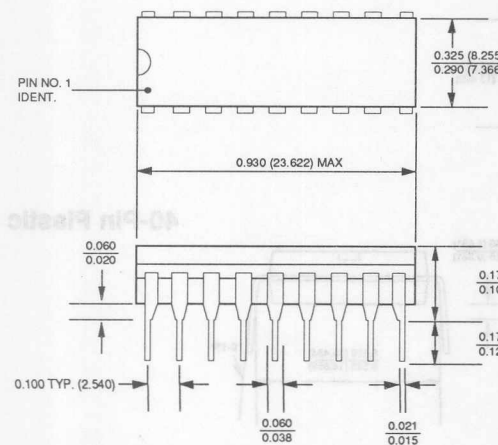
8-Pin Cerdip



14-Pin Cerdip

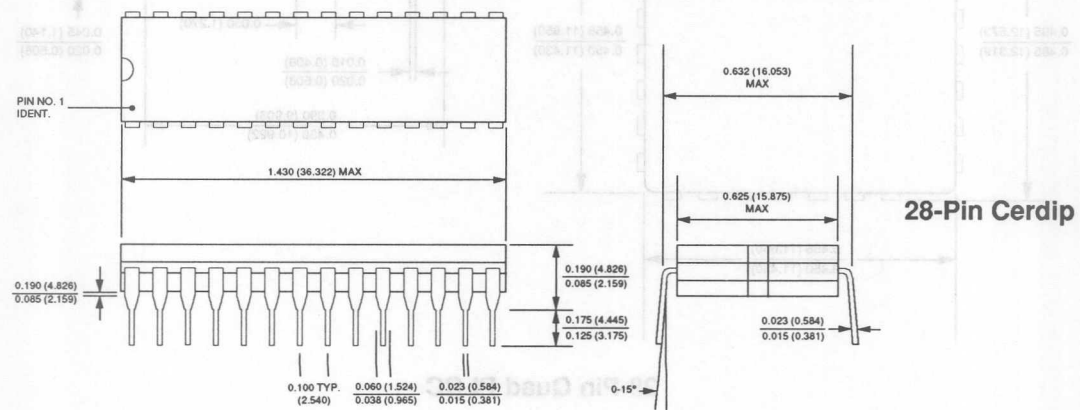
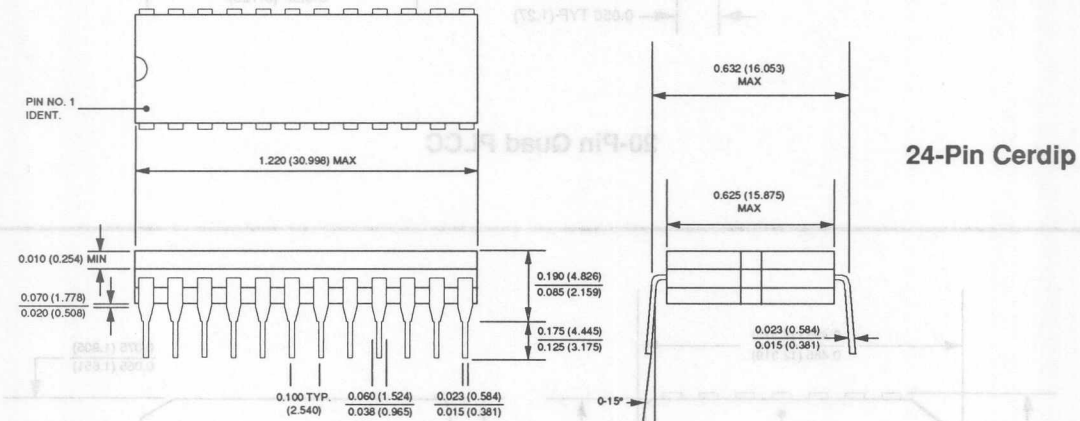
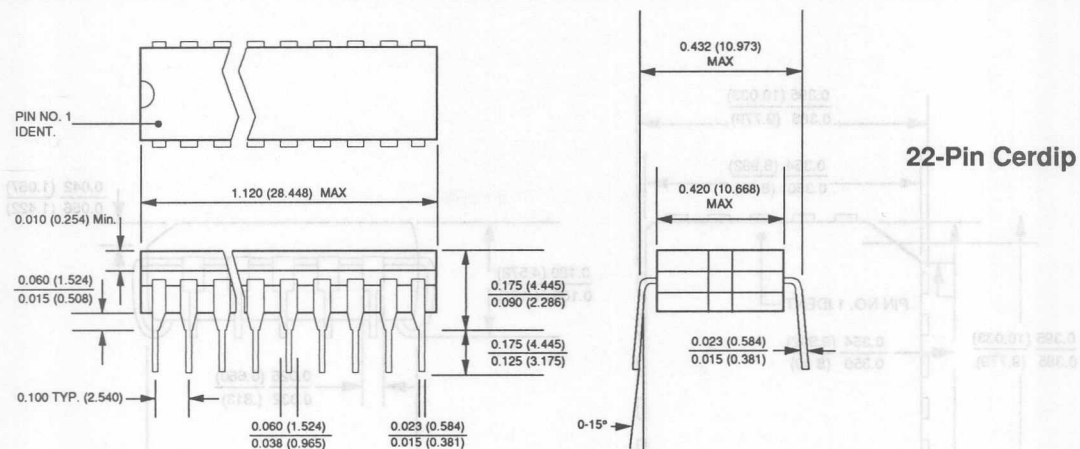


16-Pin Cerdip



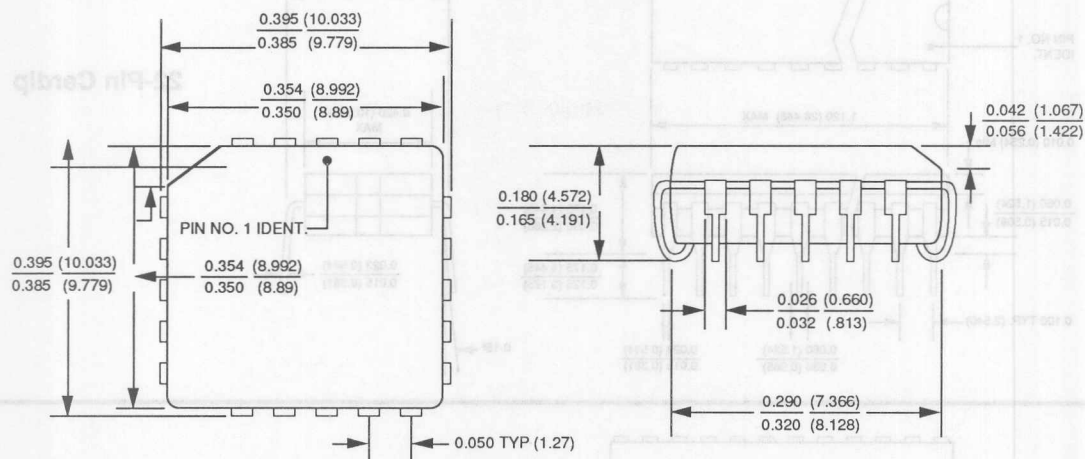
18-Pin Cerdip

Package Information

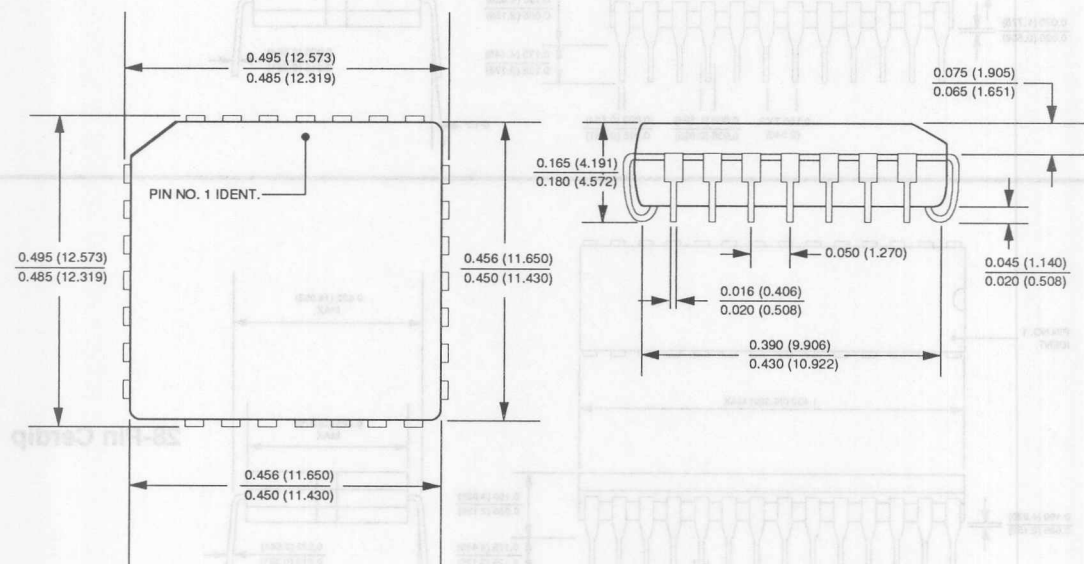


Package Information

Quad (PLCC)

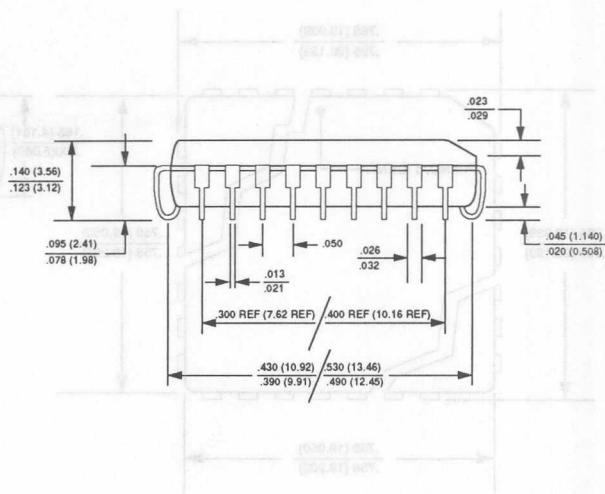
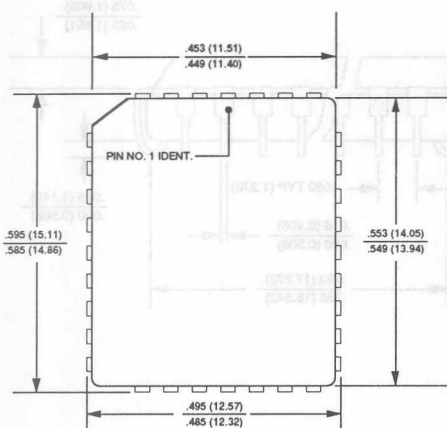


20-Pin Quad PLCC

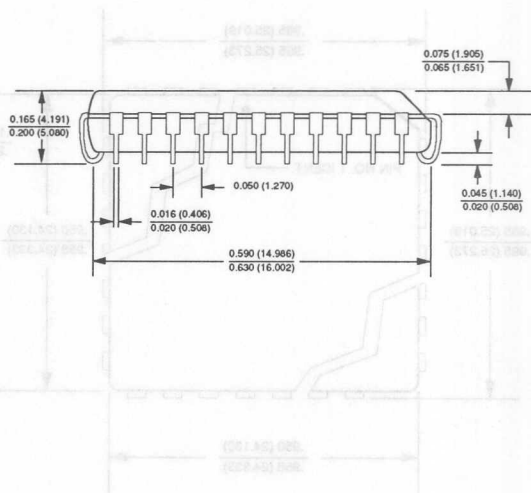
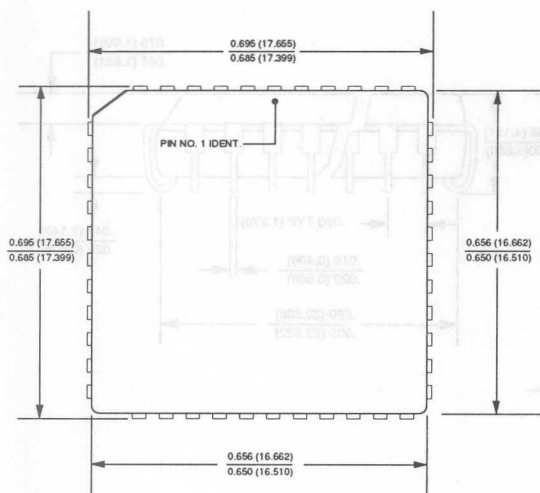


28-Pin Quad PLCC

Package Information



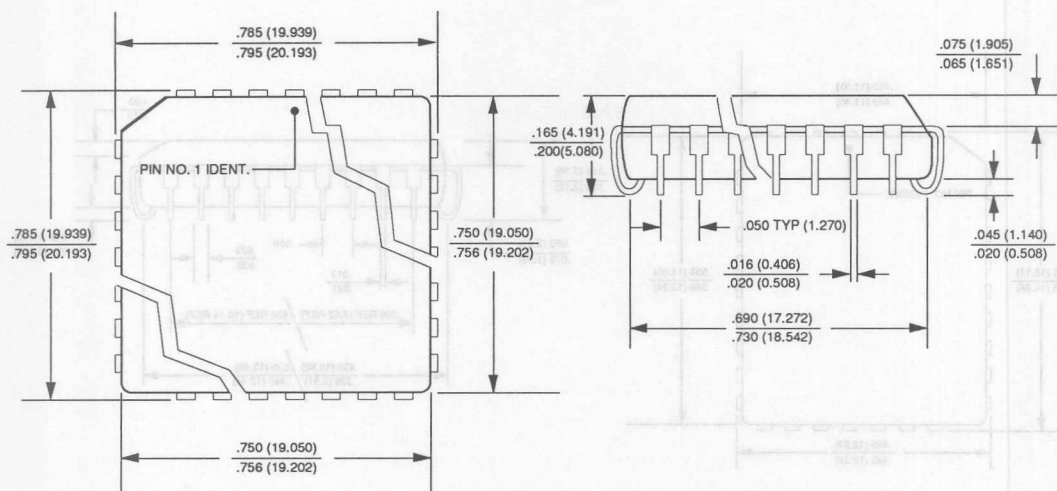
32-Pin Quad PLCC



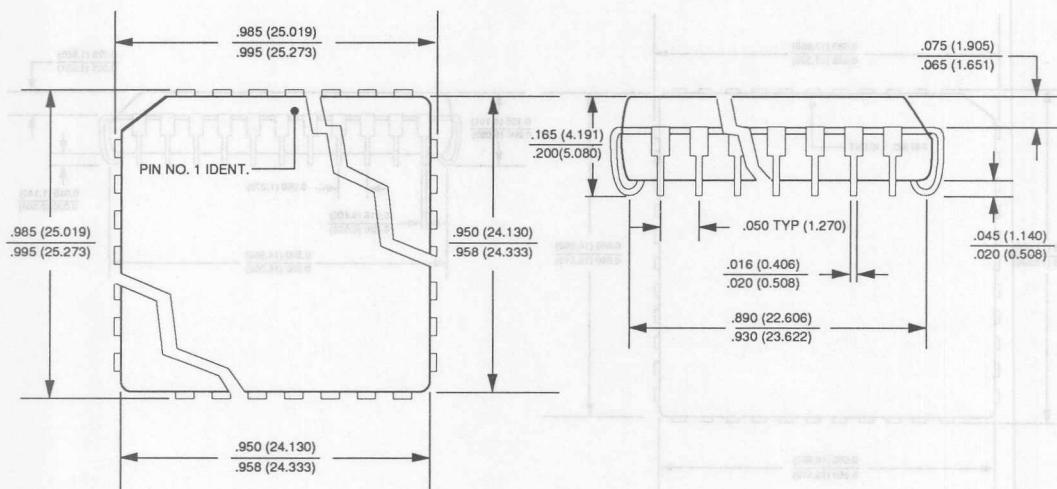
44-Pin Quad PLCC

Package Information

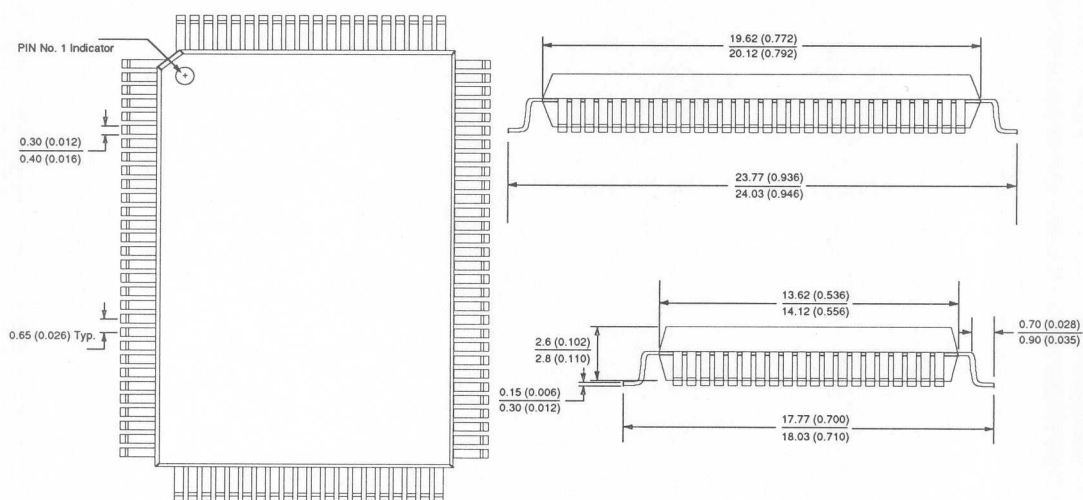
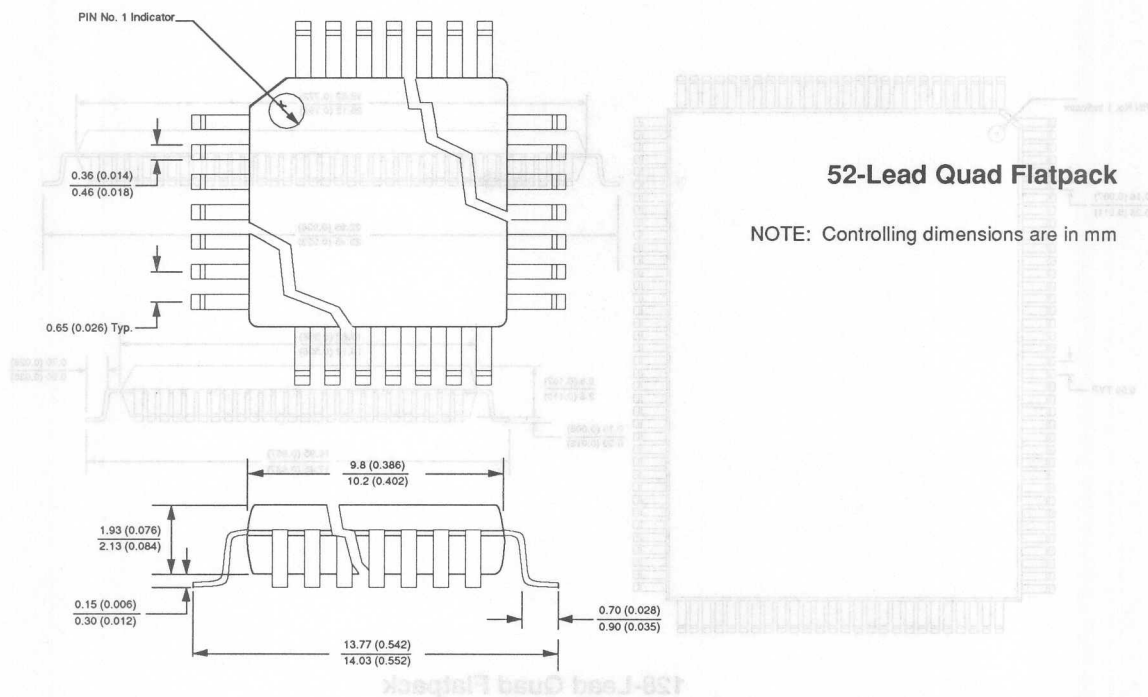
Package Information



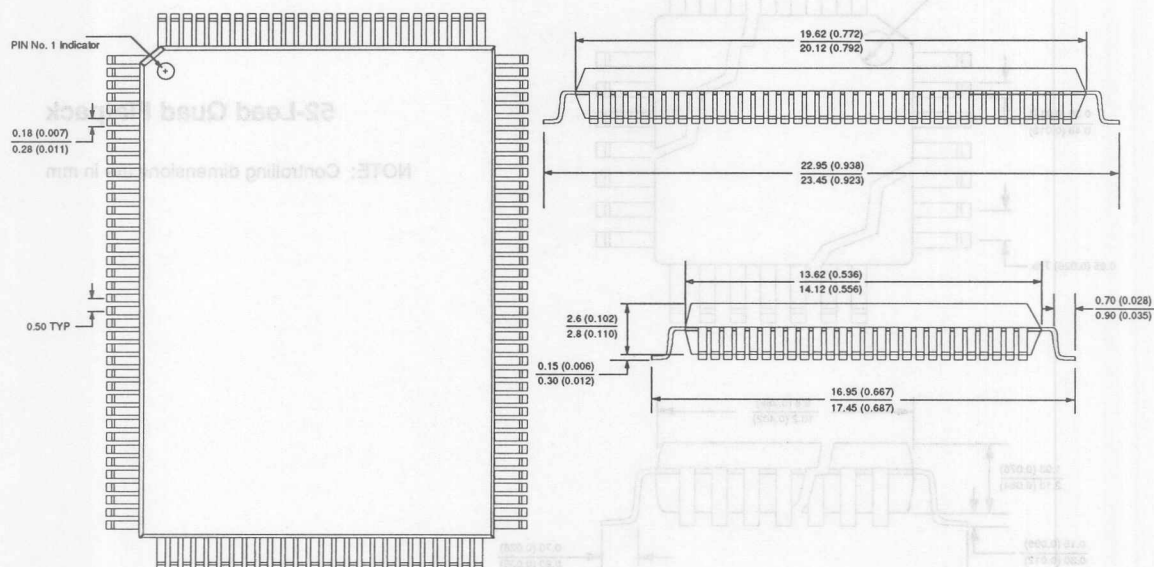
52-Pin Quad PLCC



68-Pin Quad PLCC

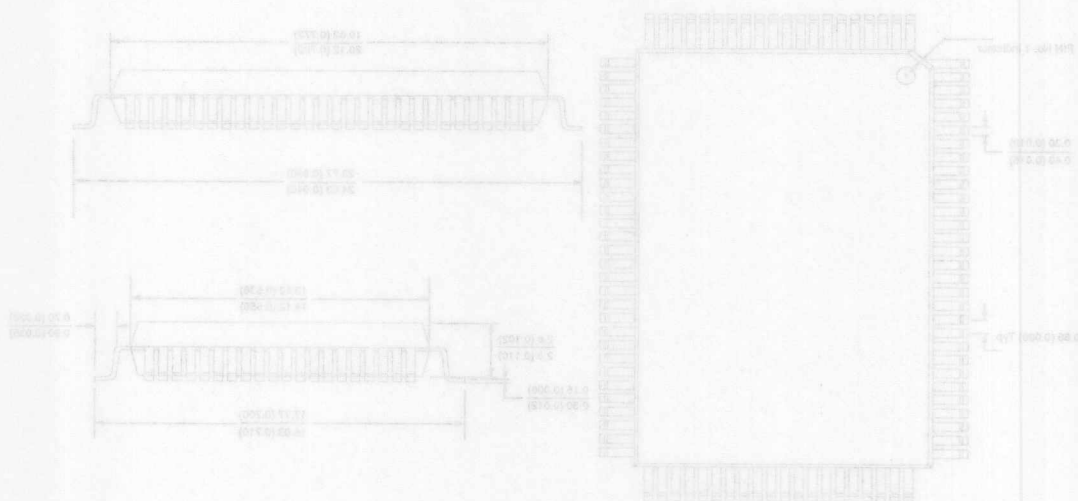


Package Information



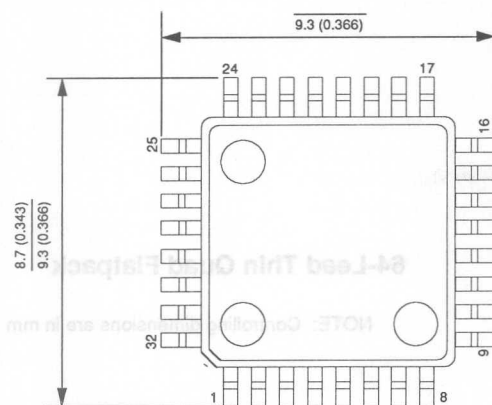
128-Lead Quad Flatpack

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm



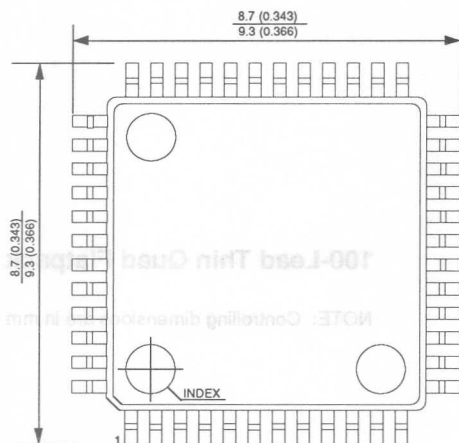
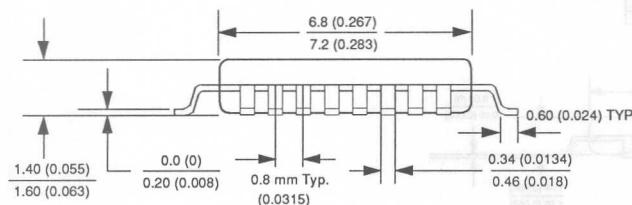
100-Lead Quad Flatpack

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm



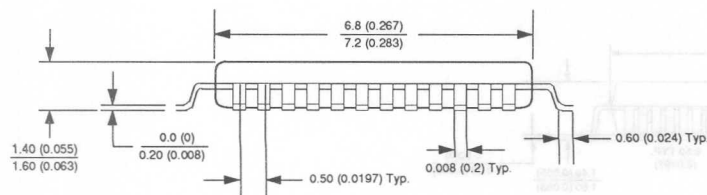
32-Lead Thin Quad Flatpack

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm

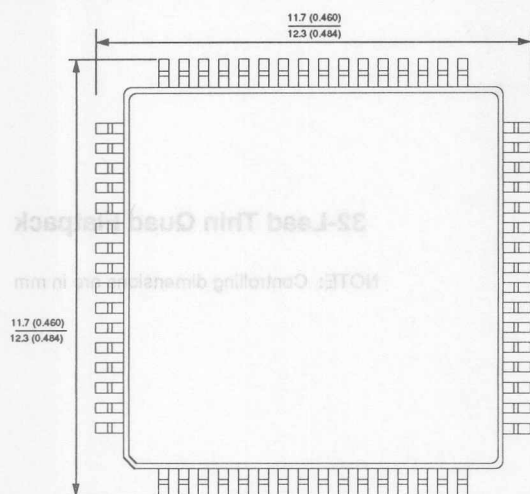


48-Lead Thin Quad Flatpack

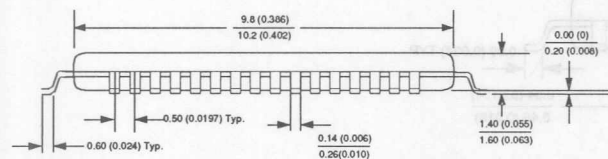
NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm



Package Information

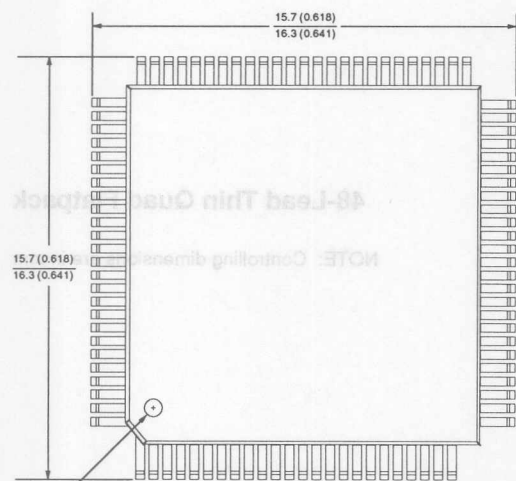


11.7 (0.460)
12.3 (0.484)



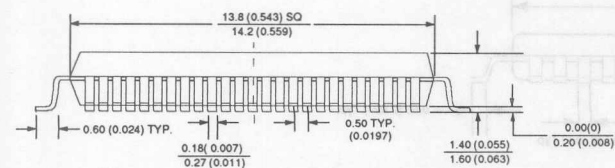
64-Lead Thin Quad Flatpack

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm



15.7 (0.618)
16.3 (0.641)

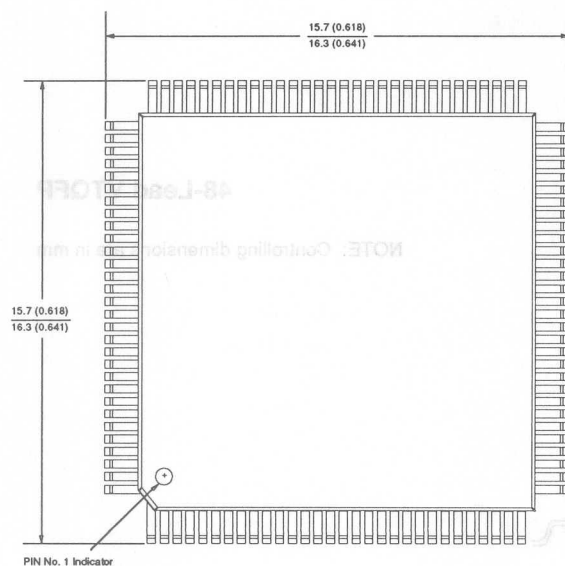
PIN No. 1 Indicator



100-Lead Thin Quad Flatpack

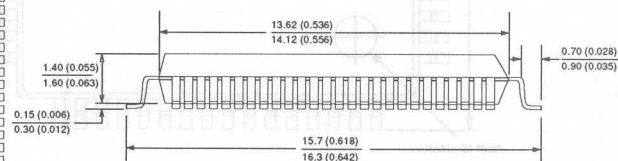
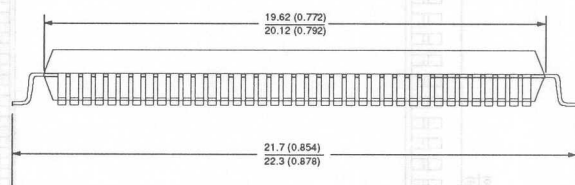
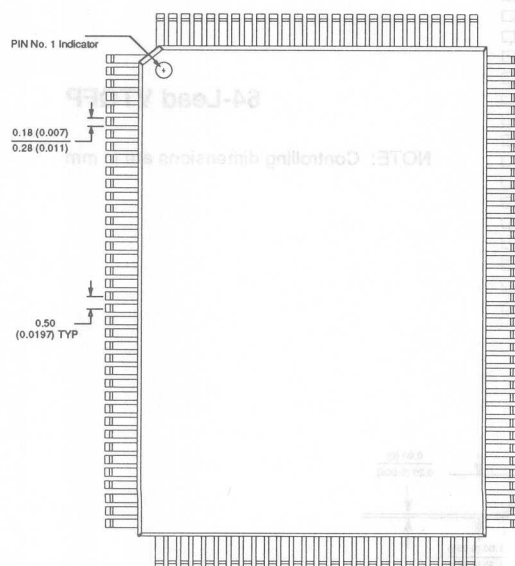
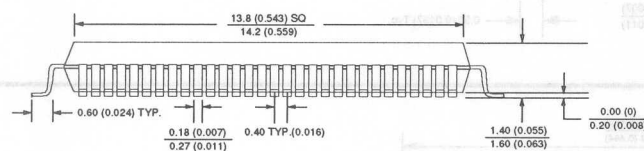
NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm

Package Information



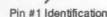
120-Lead Thin Quad Flatpack

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm

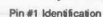
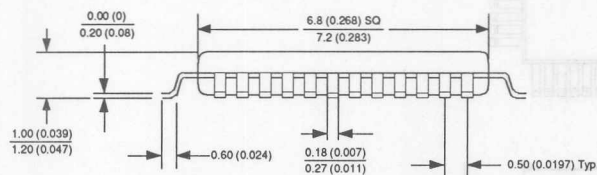


128-Lead Thin Quad Flatpack

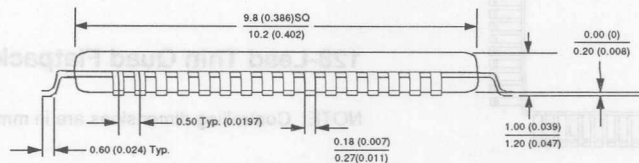
NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm

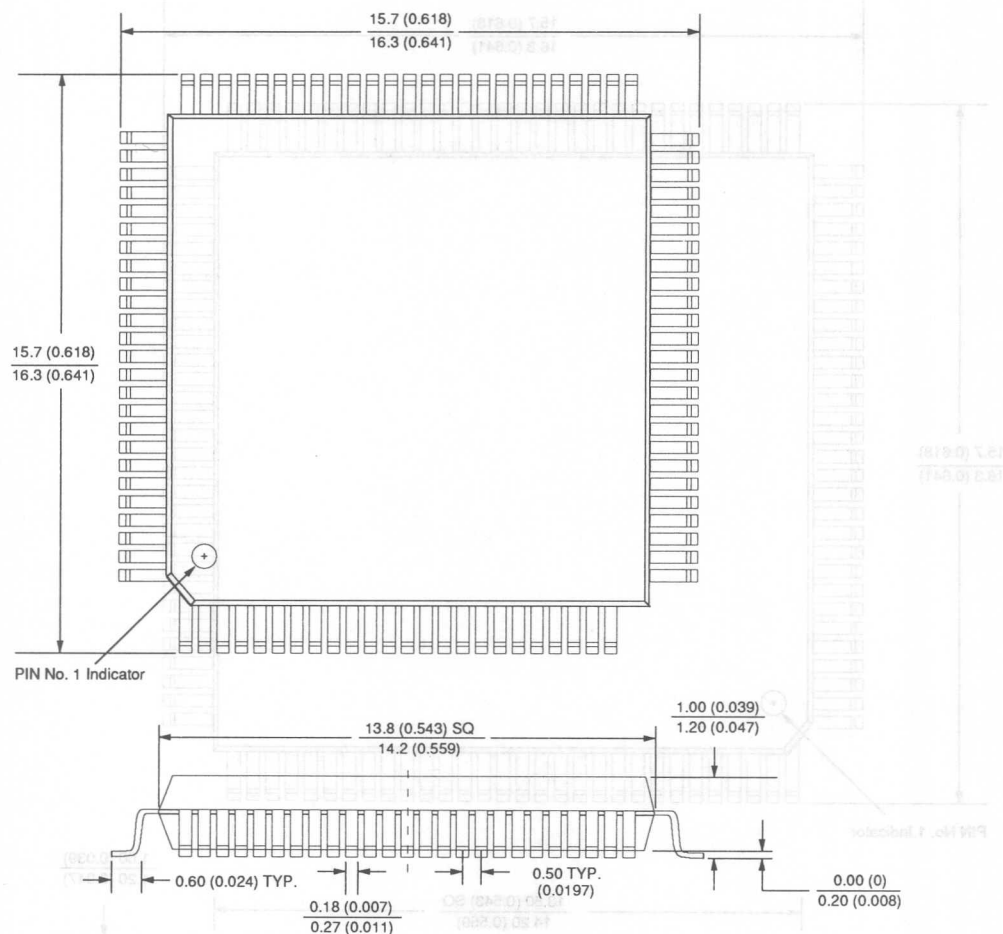


NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm



NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm

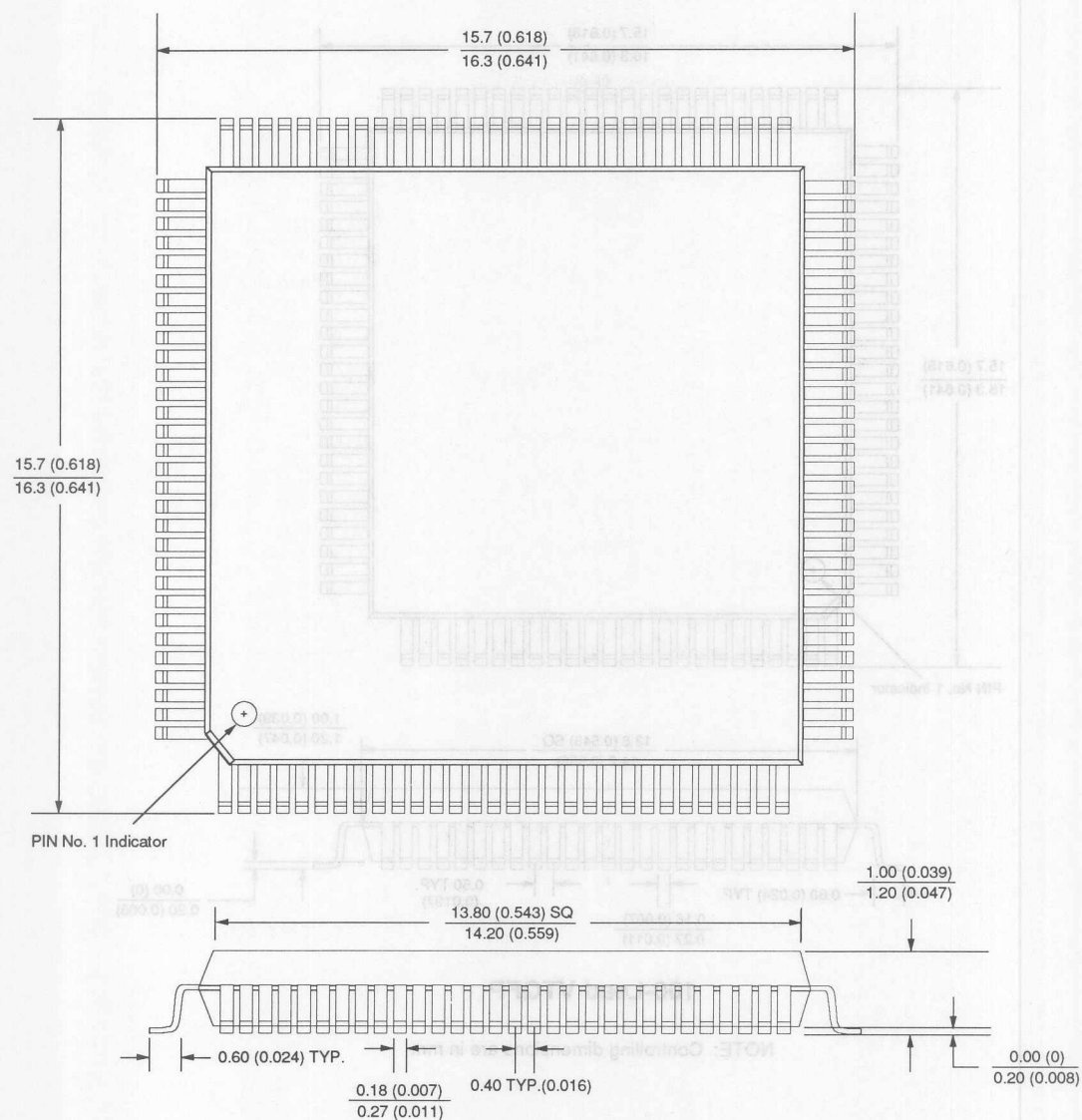




100-Lead VTQFP

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm

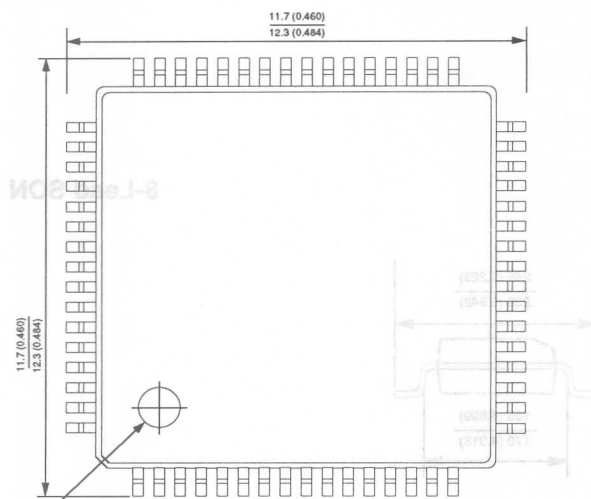
Package Information



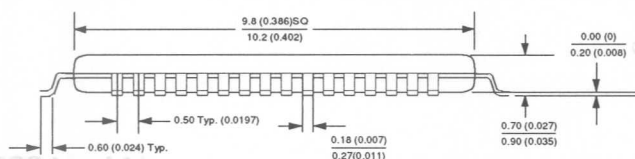
120-Lead VTQFP

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm

Package Information Ultra Thin Quad Flatpack (UTQFP)

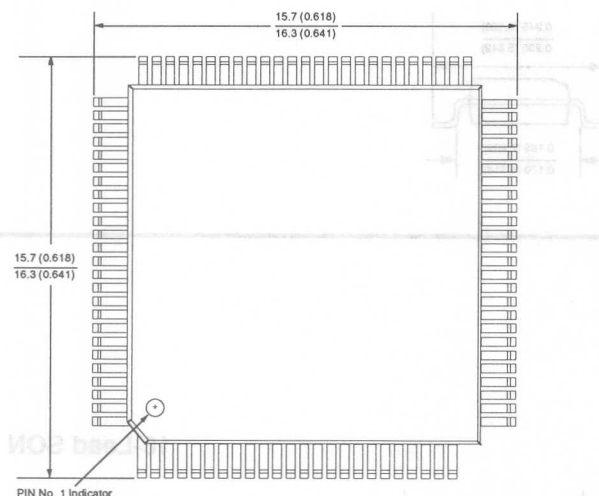


Pin #1 Identification

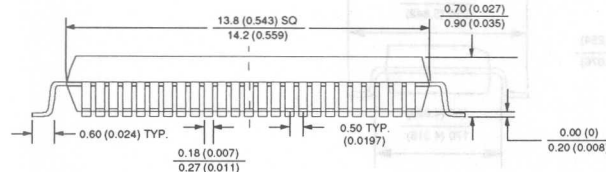


64-Lead Ultra Thin Quad Flatpack

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm



PIN No. 1 Indicator

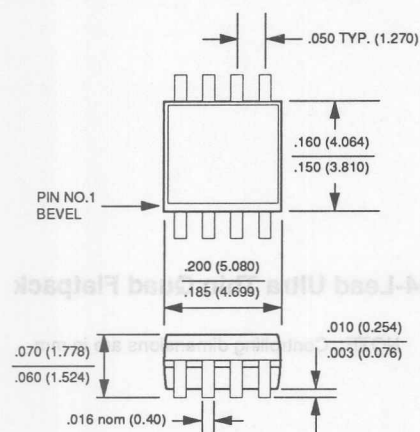


100-Lead Ultra Thin Quad Flatpack

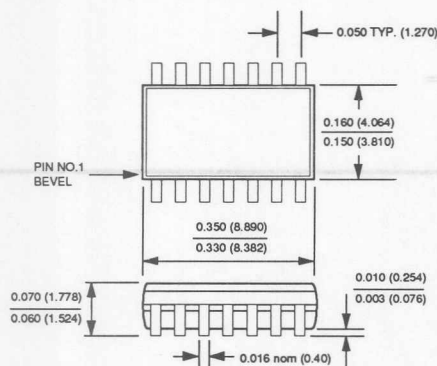
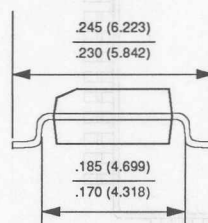
NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm

Package Information

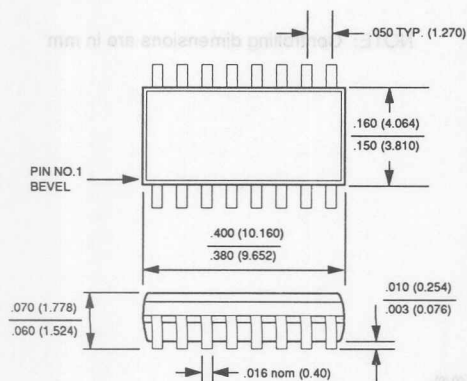
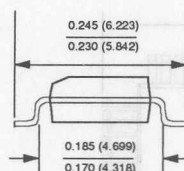
Small Outline (SON)



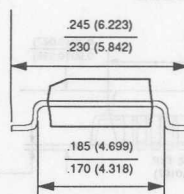
8-Lead SON

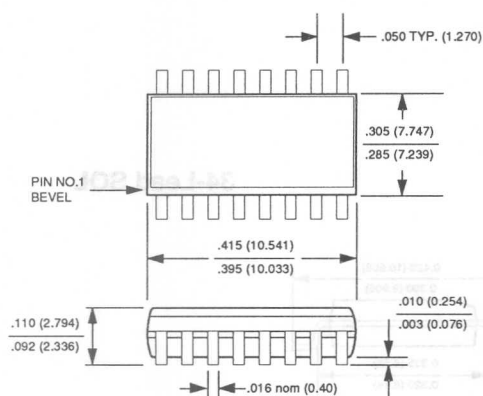


14-Lead SON

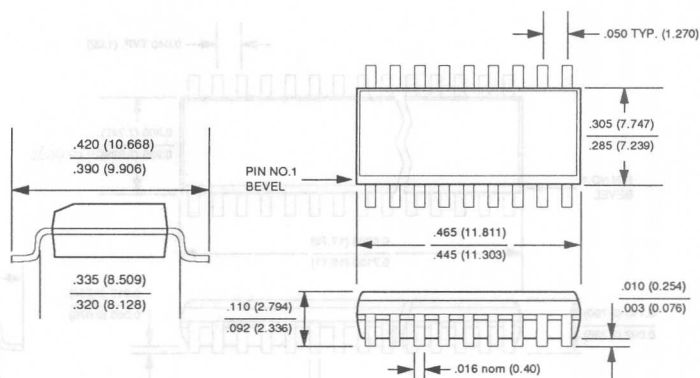


16-Lead SON

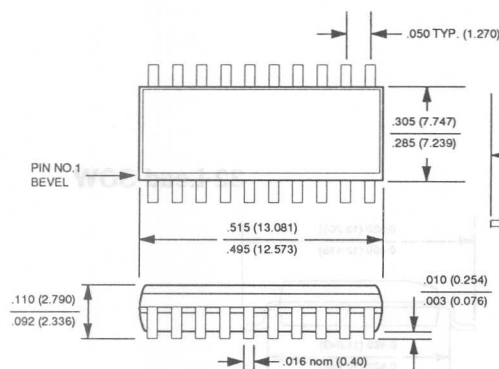




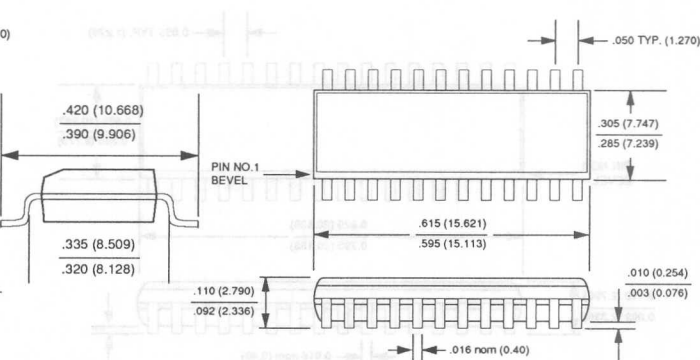
16-Lead SOL



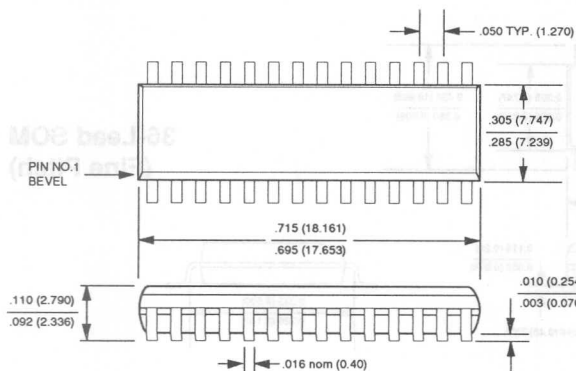
18-Lead SOL



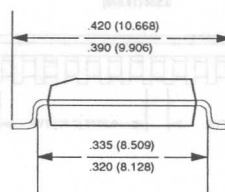
20-Lead SOL



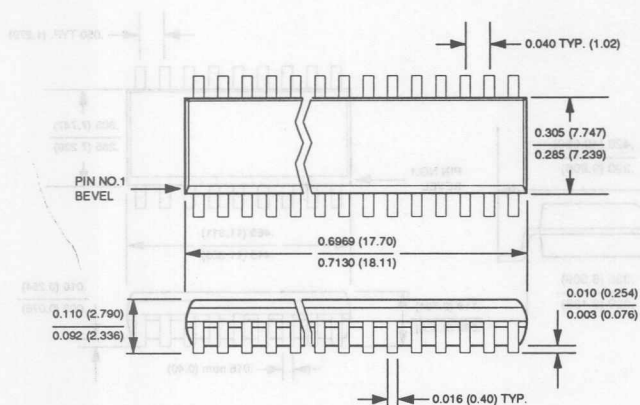
24-Lead SOL



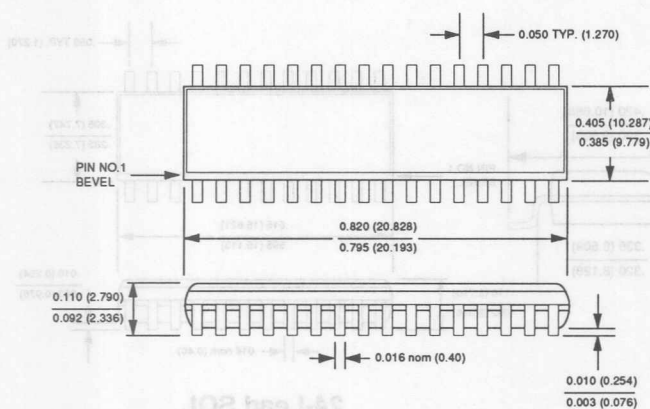
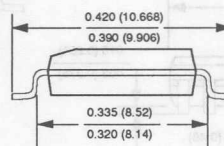
28-Lead SOL



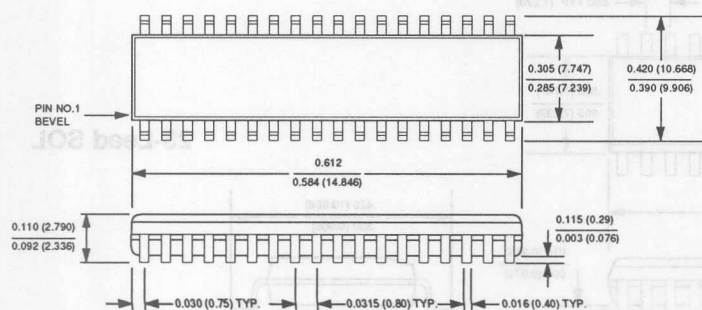
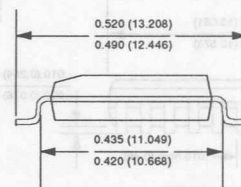
Small Outline (SOL/SOM/SOW)



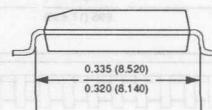
34-Lead SOL



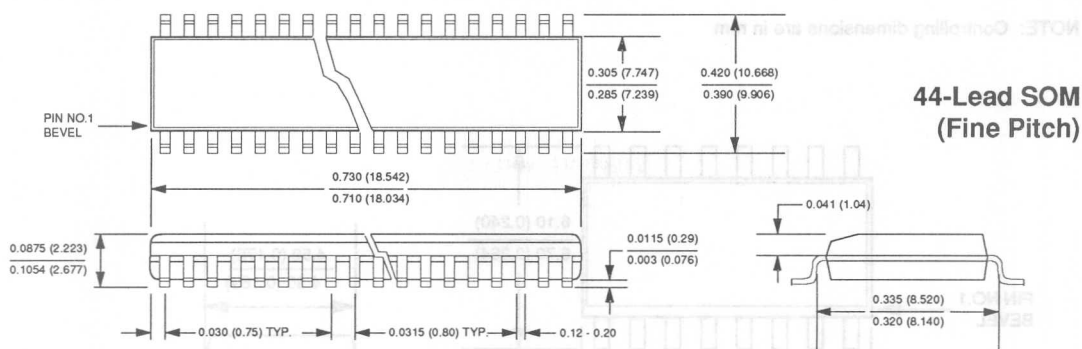
32-Lead SOW



36-Lead SOM (Fine Pitch)

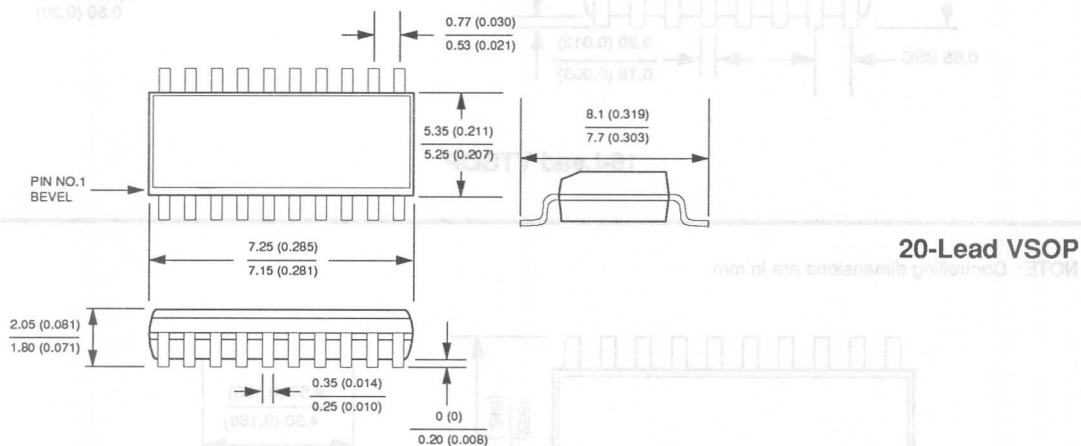


Package Information

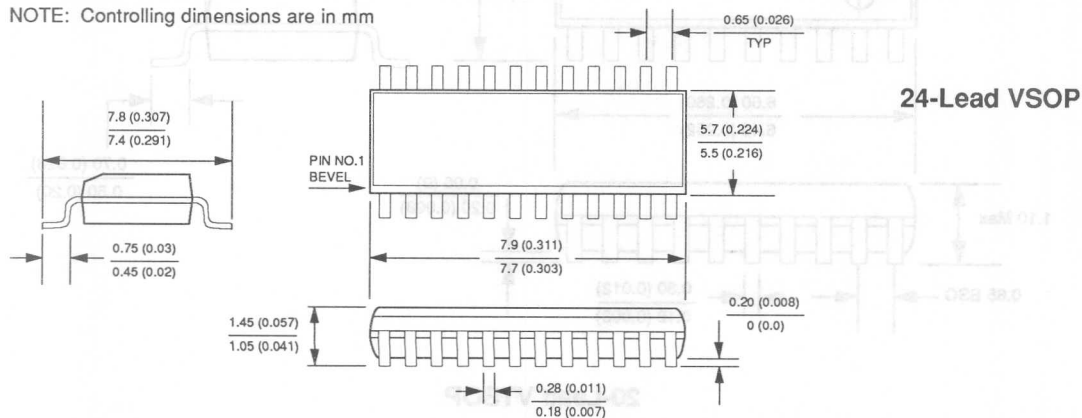


Package Information

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm



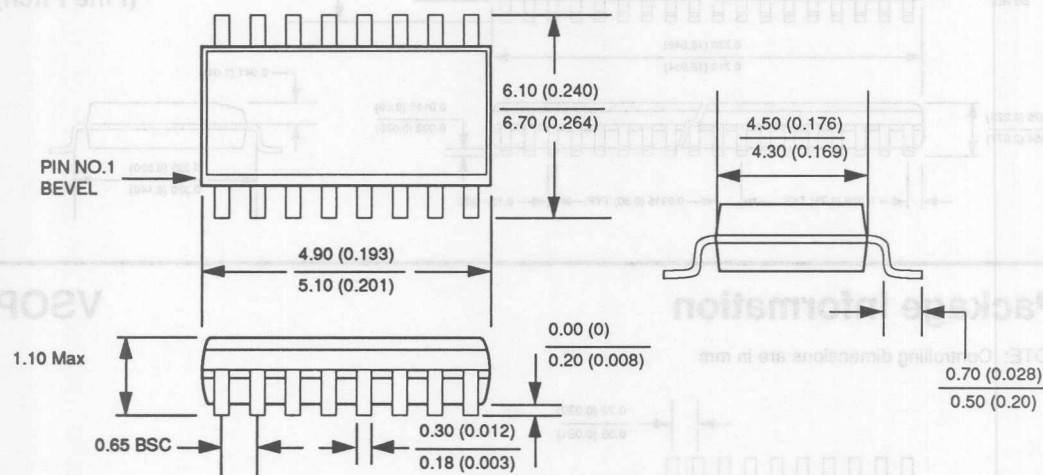
NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm



Package Information

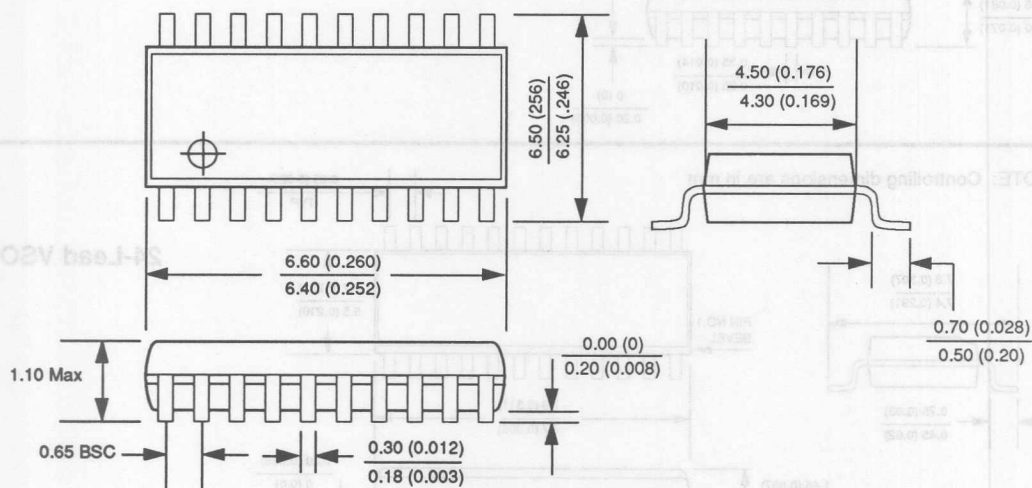
VTSOP

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm

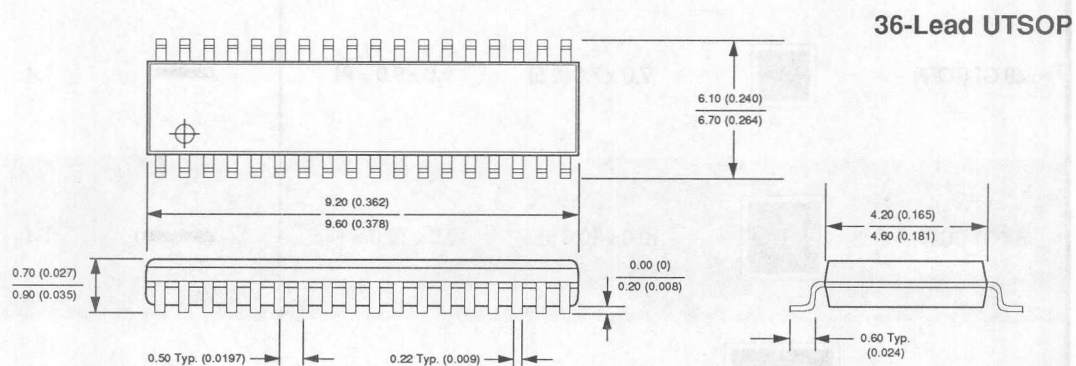
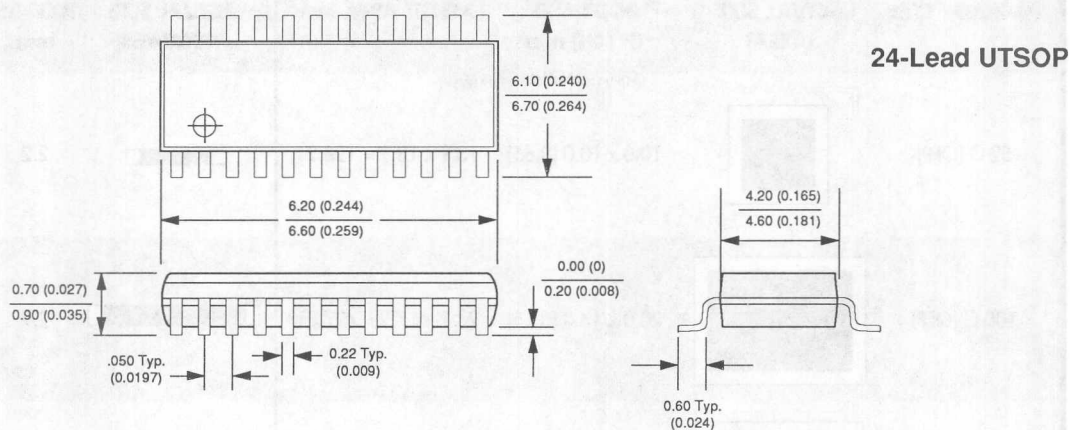


16-Lead VTSOP

NOTE: Controlling dimensions are in mm



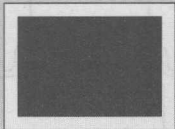









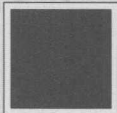





20-Lead VTSOP










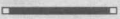







Small Form Factor Package Selector Guide















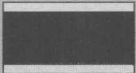







Quad Flatpack Packages

| PACKAGE TYPE | ACTUAL SIZE (AREA) | BODY SIZE (PITCH) mm | LAYOUT AREA mm ² | ACTUAL SIZE (THICKNESS) | THICKNESS mm |
|---|---|-------------------------|-----------------------------|---|-----------------|
| 52 G (QFP) |  | 10.0 x 10.0 (0.65) | 13.9 x 13.9 = 193.21 |  | 2.2 |
| 100 G (QFP) |  | 20.0 x 14.0 (0.65) | 23.9 x 17.9 = 427.81 |  | 2.9 |
| 128 G (QFP) |  | 20.0 x 14.0 (0.5) | 23.2 x 17.2 = 399.04 |  | 2.9 |
| 32 GT (TQFP) |  | 7.0 x 7.0 (0.8) | 9.0 x 9.0 = 81 |  | 1.4 |
| 48 GT (TQFP) |  | 7.0 x 7.0 (0.5) | 9.0 x 9.0 = 81 |  | 1.4 |
| 64 GT (TQFP) |  | 10.0 x 10.0 (0.5) | 12.0 x 12.0 = 144 |  | 1.4 |
| 100 GT (TQFP) |  | 14.0 x 14.0 (0.5) | 16 x 16 = 256 |  | 1.4 |
|  = Actual Body Size  = Full Layout Area All dimensions are nominal values. | | | | | |

Small Form Factor Package Selector Guide

| Quad Flatpack Packages | | | | | |
|---|---|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|--------------|
| PACKAGE TYPE | ACTUAL SIZE (AREA) | BODY SIZE (PITCH) mm | LAYOUT AREA mm ² | ACTUAL SIZE (THICKNESS) | THICKNESS mm |
| 120 GT (TQFP) |  | 14.0 x 14.0 (0.4) | 16.0 x 16.0 = 256 |  | 1.4 |
| 128 GT (TQFP) |  | 20.0 x 14.0 (0.5) | 22.0 x 16.0 = 352 |  | 1.4 |
| 48 GV (VTQFP) |  | 7.0 x 7.0 (0.5) | 9.0 x 9.0 = 81 |  | 1.0 |
| 64 GV (VTQFP) |  | 10.0 x 10.0 (0.5) | 12.0 x 12.0 = 144 |  | 1.0 |
| 100 GV (VTQFP) |  | 14.0 x 14.0 (0.5) | 16.0 x 16.0 = 256 |  | 1.0 |
| 120 GV (VTQFP) |  | 14.0 x 14.0 (0.4) | 16.0 x 16.0 = 256 |  | 1.0 |
| 64 GU (UTQFP) |  | 10.0 x 10.0 (0.5) | 12.0 x 12.0 = 144 |  | 0.7 |
|  = Actual Body Size  = Full Layout Area All dimensions are nominal values. | | | | | |

Small Form Factor Package Selector Guide

| Small Outline Packages | | | | | |
|---|---|-------------------------|-----------------------------|---|-----------------|
| PACKAGE TYPE | ACTUAL SIZE (AREA) | BODY SIZE (PITCH) mm | LAYOUT AREA mm ² | ACTUAL SIZE (THICKNESS) | THICKNESS mm |
| 16 SON |  | 9.8 x 3.9 (1.27) | 9.8 x 6.0 = 58.8 |  | 1.65 |
| 16 SOL |  | 10.2 x 7.5 (1.27) | 10.2 x 10.2 = 104 |  | 2.54 |
| 20 SOL |  | 12.8 x 7.5 (1.27) | 12.8 x 10.2 = 130.6 |  | 2.54 |
| 24 SOL |  | 15.4 x 7.5 (1.27) | 15.4 x 10.2 = 157 |  | 2.54 |
| 20 SOV (VSOP) |  | 7.2 x 5.4 (0.65) | 7.9 x 7.2 = 56.9 |  | 1.9 |
| 24 SOV (VSOP) |  | 7.8 x 5.6 (0.65) | 7.8 x 7.6 = 59.28 |  | 1.15 |
| 36 SOM (SSOP) |  | 15.1 x 7.5 (0.8) | 15.1 x 10.2 = 154 |  | 2.54 |
| 44 SOM (SSOP) |  | 18.3 x 7.5 (0.8) | 18.3 x 10.2 = 186.7 |  | 2.54 |
| 16 VT (VTSOP) |  | 5.0 x 4.4 (0.65) | 6.4 x 5.0 = 32 |  | 0.9 |
| 20 VT (VTSOP) |  | 6.5 x 4.4 (0.65) | 6.5 x 6.4 = 41.6 |  | 0.9 |
|  = Actual Body Size  = Full Layout Area All dimensions are nominal values. | | | | | |

Section

SALES OFFICES/ DISTRIBUTORS

United States

Regional Offices & Sales Representatives

NORTHWEST HEADQUARTERS

Jon Tammel, Area Director
Silicon Systems, Inc.
2001 Gateway Place
Suite 301 East
San Jose, CA 95110
Ph: (408) 432-7100
FAX: (408) 453-5988

CALIFORNIA

Magna Sales
Santa Clara
Ph: (408) 727-8753
FAX: (408) 727-8573

IDAHO

Western Technical Sales
Boise
Ph: (208) 376-8700
FAX: (208) 376-8706

MINNESOTA

OHMS Technology, Inc.
Minneapolis
Ph: (612) 932-2920
FAX: (612) 932-2918

OREGON

Western Technical Sales
Beaverton
Ph: (503) 644-8860
FAX: (503) 644-8200

WASHINGTON

Western Technical Sales
Bellevue
Ph: (206) 641-3900
FAX: (206) 641-5829
Spokane
Ph: (509) 922-7600
FAX: (509) 922-7603

SOUTHWESTERN HEADQUARTERS

Larry Cleland, Area Manager
Silicon Systems, Inc.
3445 Penrose Place, Suite 140
Boulder, CO 80301
Ph: (303) 440-9780
FAX: (303) 440-9783
Tustin Office
Ph: (714) 832-5310
FAX: (714) 832-5247

ARIZONA

Western High Tech Marketing, Inc.
Scottsdale
Ph: (602) 860-2702
FAX: (602) 860-2712

CALIFORNIA

Hadden Associates
San Diego
Ph: (619) 565-9444
FAX: (619) 565-1802
SC Cubed
Thousand Oaks
Ph: (805) 496-7307
FAX: (805) 495-3601
Tustin
Ph: (714) 731-9206
FAX: (714) 731-7801

COLORADO

Lange Sales
Littleton
Ph: (303) 795-3600
FAX: (303) 795-0373
Colorado Springs
Ph: (719) 632-8340
FAX: (719) 632-8419

MONTANA

Lange Sales
Boise, ID
Ph: (208) 323-0713
FAX: (208) 323-0834

NEW MEXICO

Western High Tech Marketing, Inc.
Albuquerque
Ph: (505) 884-2256
FAX: (505) 884-2258

TEXAS

OM Associates, Inc.
Austin
Ph: (512) 794-9971
FAX: (512) 794-9987
Richardson
Ph: (214) 690-6746
FAX: (214) 690-8721
Houston
Ph: (713) 789-4426
FAX: (713) 789-4825

UTAH

Lange Sales
Salt Lake City
Ph: (801) 487-0843
FAX: (801) 484-5408

EASTERN

HEADQUARTERS

Wayne Taylor, Area Manager
Silicon Systems, Inc.
53 Stiles Road
Salem, NH 03079
Ph: (603) 898-1444
FAX: (603) 898-9538
Georgia Sales Office
Dan Kilcourse
Ph: (404) 409-8405
FAX: (404) 368-1060
Detroit Sales Office
Fabian Battaglia
108 E. Grand River, Suite 6
Brighton, MI 48116
Ph: (313) 229-2811
FAX: (313) 229-3266

ALABAMA

Technology Mktg. Assoc. (TMA)
Huntsville
Ph: (205) 883-7893
FAX: (205) 882-6162

CONNECTICUT

Orion Group
Southington
Ph: (203) 621-8371
FAX: (203) 628-0494

FLORIDA

Technology Mktg. Assoc. (TMA)
Orlando
Ph: (407) 281-9195
FAX: (407) 281-3971
West Palm Beach
Ph: (407) 964-0009
FAX: (407) 965-0650
St. Petersburg
Ph: (813) 577-3304
FAX: (813) 577-0935

GEORGIA

Technology Mktg. Assoc. (TMA)
Norcross
Ph: (404) 446-3565
FAX: (404) 446-0569

ILLINOIS

Circuit Sales, Inc.
Itasca
Ph: (708) 773-0200
FAX: (708) 773-2721

INDIANA

Arete Sales, Inc.
Fort Wayne
Ph: (219) 423-1478
FAX: (219) 420-1440
Indianapolis
Ph: (317) 293-1425
FAX: (317) 293-1428
Micro Components, Inc.
Kokomo
Ph: (317) 454-6988
FAX: (317) 454-6987

IOWA

Cahill, Schmitz & Howe
Cedar Rapids
Ph: (319) 377-8219
FAX: (319) 377-0958
rush & west associates, inc.
Davenport
Ph: (319) 388-9494
FAX: (319) 388-9609

KANSAS

rush & west associates, Inc.
Olathe
Ph: (913) 764-2700
FAX: (913) 764-0096

KENTUCKY

See Indiana

MARYLAND

Burgin-Kreh Associates
Baltimore
Ph: (410) 265-8500
FAX: (410) 265-8536

MASSACHUSETTS

Mill-Bern Associates
Woburn
Ph: (617) 932-3311
FAX: (617) 932-0511

MICHIGAN

Trilogy Marketing, Inc.
Bloomfield Hills
Ph: (313) 338-2470
FAX: (313) 338-6720

MISSOURI

rush & west associates, inc.
St. Louis
Ph: (314) 965-3322
FAX: (314) 965-3529
NEBRASKA
(Refer calls to)
rush & west associates, inc.
Davenport, IA

NEW JERSEY - NORTH

Technical Marketing Group
West Caldwell
Ph: (201) 226-3300
FAX: (201) 226-9518

NEW JERSEY - SOUTH

Omni Sales
Erdenheim, PA
Ph: (215) 233-4600
FAX: (215) 233-4702

NEW YORK

Electra Sales
Rochester
Ph: (716) 427-7860
FAX: (716) 427-0614
East Syracuse
Ph: (315) 463-1248
FAX: (315) 463-1717
Technical Marketing Group
Melville
Ph: (516) 351-8833
FAX: (516) 351-8667

NO. CAROLINA

Technology Mktg. Assoc. (TMA)
Raleigh
Ph: (919) 872-5104
FAX: (919) 872-5086

OHIO

Makin Associates
Cincinnati
Ph: (513) 871-2424
FAX: (513) 871-2524

Dublin
Ph: (614) 793-9545
FAX: (614) 793-0256
Mayfield Village
Ph: (216) 461-3500
FAX: (216) 461-1335

PENNSYLVANIA

Omni Sales
Erdenheim
Ph: (215) 233-4600
FAX: (215) 233-4702

VIRGINIA

Burgin-Kreh Associates
Refer calls to
Burgin-Kreh, Maryland

WISCONSIN

Circuit Sales, Inc.
Waukesha
Ph: (414) 542-6550
FAX: (414) 542-2711

International Distributors & Sales Representatives

EUROPE

HEADQUARTERS

Neil Harrison, Area Manager
Silicon Systems, Europe
The Business Centre
Gor-ray House
758-760 Great Cambridge Rd.
Enfield
Middlesex EN13RN, England
Ph: (44) 81-443-7061
FAX: (44) 81-443-7022
TLX: 825824 BUSTEC G (ref. ENFIELD)

AUSTRIA

Codico GmbH
Wien
Ph: (43) 1-86-24-28
FAX: (43) 1-86-32-57

BELGIUM

Alcom Electronics nv/va
Kontich
Ph: (32) 3-458-3033
FAX: (32) 3-458-3126

DENMARK

C-88 West
Ikast
Ph: (45) 9725-0816
FAX: (45) 9725-0815

ENGLAND

Magna Technology (Rep. Sales only)
Swallowfield, Brookshire
Ph: (44) 73-488-0211
FAX: (44) 73-488-2116
Pronto (Distribution Sales only)
Ilford, Essex
Ph: (44) 81-554-6222
FAX: (44) 81-518-3222
TLX: 895-4213 PRONTO G
Siretta Microelectronics LTD
(Distribution Sales only)
Ph: (44) 73-425-8080
FAX: (44) 73-425-8070

FINLAND

Oy Bexab Finn-Crimp Ab
Espoo
Ph: (358) 0-5023200
FAX: (358) 0-5023294
TLX: 121926 KOMDL SF

FRANCE

MISIL
Rungis Cedex
Ph: (33) 1-45-60-00-21
FAX: (33) 1-45-60-01-86

GERMANY

Atlantik Elektronik GmbH
Munich
Ph: (49) 89-857-0000
FAX: (49) 89-857-3702
Hamburg
Ph: (49) 40-241-072
FAX: (49) 40-241-074

GREECE

Peter Caritato & Associates, Ltd.
Athens
Ph: (30) 1-902-0115
FAX: (30) 1-901-7024
TLX: 216-723 CARI GR

IRELAND

Memec Ireland, Ltd.
Limerick, Republic of Ireland
Ph: 353-61-411842
FAX: 353-61-411888

ITALY

Cefra/S.p.A.
Gruppo Sprague Italiana
Ivrea
Ph: (39) 125-613-605
FAX: (39) 125-613-606

THE NETHERLANDS

Alcom Electronics BV
2908 LJ Capelle A/D IJSSEL
Ph: (31) 10-451-9533
FAX: (31) 10-458-6482
TLX: 26160

NORWAY

Hans H. Schive
Asker
Ph: (47) 66-900-900
FAX: (47) 66-904-484
TLX: 19124 SKIVE N

PORTUGAL

Diode
Lisbon
Ph: (351) 1-571390
FAX: (351) 1-534987

SPAIN

Diode
Madrid
Ph: (34) 1-555-3686
FAX: (34) 1-556-7159
TLX: 42148 DIODE E
Amitron, S.A.
Madrid
Ph: (34) 1-542-09-06
FAX: (34) 1-541-76-55

SWEDEN

Bexab Technology AB
Täby
Ph: (46) 8-630-8800
FAX: (46) 8-732-7058
TLX: 136888 BEXTE S

SWITZERLAND

Ellyptic AG
Zurich
Ph: (41) 1-493-1000
FAX: (41) 1-492-2255
TWX: 822-542 ELYP CH

YUGOSLAVIA

Ellyptic AG
Maribor
Ph: (38) 62-24561

AFRICA & MIDDLE EAST

AFRICA (excluding So. Africa)

Monte Vista International
5976 W. Las Positas Blvd., Suite 220
Pleasanton, CA 94588 U.S.A.
Ph: (510) 463-8693
FAX: (510) 463-8732

REP. OF SOUTH AFRICA

Prime Source (PTY) LTD
Orange Grove
Ph: 27-11-444-7237
27-11-444-7298

ISRAEL

Rapac Electronics
Tel Aviv
Ph: (972) 3-6450333
FAX: (972) 3-493272
TLX: 342173 RAPAC IL

TURKEY

Inter
Istanbul
Ph: (90) 1-349-9400
FAX: (90) 1-349-9430

RUSSIA

P.T.G.
Laguna Beach, California
Ph: (714) 499-6736

FAR EAST

(excluding Japan)

HEADQUARTERS

K. S. Ong, Area Manager
Silicon Systems, Singapore
3015A Ubi Road 1, #01-01
Kampong UBI Industrial Estate
Singapore 1440
Ph: (65) 744-7700
FAX: (65) 748-2431

AUSTRALIA

R & D Electronics
Victoria
Ph: (61) 3-558-0444
FAX: (61) 3-558-0955

HONG KONG

CET, Ltd.
Wanchai
Ph: (852) 520-0922
FAX: (852) 865-0639

KOREA

Hanaro Corporation
Seoul
Ph: (82) 2-516-1144
FAX: (82) 2-516-1151
EASYLINK: 62057328

MALAYSIA

Dynamar Computer Products
Penang
Ph: 604-228-1860
FAX: 604-228-1420

NEW ZEALAND

Apex Electronics, Ltd.
Wellington
Ph: (64) 4-385-3404
FAX: (64) 4-385-3483

PHILIPPINES

Maetan Enterprises
Manila
Ph: (632) 812-3307
(632) 827-5154
FAX: (632) 818-3550

SINGAPORE

Dynamar Computer Products
Ph: (65) 281-3388
FAX: (65) 281-3308
TLX: RS26283 DYNAMA

TAIWAN

Dynamar Taiwan Co., Ltd.
Taipei
Ph: (886) 2-577-5670
FAX: (886) 2-577-5867

THAILAND

Dynamar Computer Products
Bangkok
Ph: (662) 376-0132
FAX: (662) 376-0133

JAPAN

SSI/TDK CORP. HEADQUARTERS

Den Suzuki, Area Manager
1-13-1 Nihonbashi, Chuo-Ku
Tokyo 103, Japan
Ph: (81) 3-5201-7231
FAX: (81) 3-5201-7232
TLX: J24270
J26937

JAPAN

Internix
Tokyo
Ph: (81) 3-3369-1105
FAX: (81) 3-3363-8486
TLX: 781-26733

MEXICO

CHIHUAHUA & SONORA ONLY

Western High Tech. Marketing
Albuquerque, New Mexico
Ph: (505) 884-2256
FAX: (505) 884-2258

All other areas:

SONIKA
Mexico City
Ph: (52) 5-754-6480
FAX: (52) 5-752-2787

Guadalajara

Ph: (52) 36-474250
FAX: (52) 36-473433

SOUTH AMERICA

ARGENTINA

YEL S. R. L.
Buenos Aires
Ph: (45) 1-372-7140
FAX: (45) 1-476-2551

BRAZIL

Hitech
Sao Paulo
Ph: (55) 11-536-0355
FAX: (55) 11-240-2650

CHILE

Victronics, Ltd.
Santiago Centro
Ph: (56-2) 633-0237
(56-2) 633-2787
FAX: (56-2) 633-4432

CANADA

(Sales Offices)

BRITISH COLUMBIA

Enerlec
Richmond
Ph: (604) 273-0882
FAX: (604) 273-0884

ONTARIO

Har-Tech
Downsview
Ph: (416) 660-3419
FAX: (416) 660-5102
Nepean
Ph: (613) 726-9410
FAX: (613) 726-8834

QUEBEC

Har-Tech
Pointe Claire
Ph: (514) 694-6110
FAX: (514) 694-8501

North American Authorized Distributor Offices

UNITED STATES

ALABAMA

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Huntsville
Ph: (205) 837-8700
FAX: (205) 830-2565
Nu Horizons
Huntsville
Ph: (205) 722-9930
FAX: (205) 722-9348

ARIZONA

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Phoenix
Ph: (602) 437-1200
FAX: (602) 437-2348
Aved, Inc.
Phoenix
Ph: (602) 951-9788
FAX: (602) 951-4182

CALIFORNIA

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Los Angeles
Ph: (818) 773-4500
FAX: (818) 773-4555
Costa Mesa
Ph: (714) 641-4100
FAX: (714) 641-4149
Sacramento
Ph: (916) 624-9781
FAX: (916) 961-0922
San Diego
Ph: (619) 751-7540
FAX: (619) 277-6136
San Jose
Ph: (408) 432-4000
FAX: (408) 745-6679
Aved, Inc.
San Diego
Ph: (619) 558-8890
FAX: (619) 558-3018
Tustin
Ph: (714) 573-5000
FAX: (714) 573-5050
Western Micro Technology
Greater LA area
Ph: 1(800) 634-2248
Irvine
Ph: (714) 637-0200
FAX: (714) 998-1883
San Diego
Ph: (619) 453-8430
FAX: (619) 453-1465
Saratoga
Ph: (408) 725-1660
FAX: (408) 446-0413

Colorado
Aved
Wheat Ridge
Ph: (303) 422-1701
FAX: (303) 422-2529
Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Englewood
Ph: (303) 790-1662
FAX: (303) 790-4991

COLORADO

Aved
Wheat Ridge
Ph: (303) 422-1701
FAX: (303) 422-2529
Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Englewood
Ph: (303) 790-1662
FAX: (303) 790-4991

CONNECTICUT

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Cheshire
Ph: (203) 271-2844
FAX: (203) 272-1704
Nu Horizons
Ph: (203) 265-0162

FLORIDA

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
St. Petersburg
Ph: (813) 541-7440
FAX: (813) 544-4394
Ft. Lauderdale
Ph: (305) 484-5482
FAX: (305) 484-4740
Nu Horizons
Ft. Lauderdale
Ph: (305) 735-2555
FAX: (305) 735-2880

GEORGIA

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Norcross
Ph: (404) 623-4400
FAX: (404) 476-8806
Nu Horizons
Norcross
Ph: (404) 416-8666
FAX: (404) 416-9060

ILLINOIS

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Bensenville
Ph: (708) 860-3800
FAX: (708) 773-7969

INDIANA

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Indianapolis
Ph: (317) 872-8875
FAX: (317) 876-7165

KANSAS

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Lenexa
Ph: (913) 888-4747
FAX: (913) 888-0523

MARYLAND

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Columbia
Ph: (410) 988-9800
FAX: (410) 381-2036
Nu Horizons
Columbia
Ph: (410) 995-6330
FAX: (410) 995-6332

Massachusetts
Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Peabody
Ph: (508) 532-3701
FAX: (508) 532-9802
Nu Horizons
Ph: (617) 246-4442
FAX: (617) 246-4462
Western Micro Technology
Ph: (617) 273-2800
FAX: (617) 229-2815

MASSACHUSETTS

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Peabody
Ph: (508) 532-3701
FAX: (508) 532-9802
Nu Horizons
Ph: (617) 246-4442
FAX: (617) 246-4462
Western Micro Technology
Ph: (617) 273-2800
FAX: (617) 229-2815

MICHIGAN

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Detroit
Ph: (313) 416-5800
FAX: (313) 416-5811

MINNESOTA

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Bloomington
Ph: (612) 881-2600
FAX: (612) 881-9461

MISSOURI

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
St. Louis
Ph: (314) 291-5350
FAX: (314) 291-0362

NEW JERSEY

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
No. New Jersey
Ph: (609) 751-2520
FAX: (609) 751-2552
Fairfield
Ph: (201) 515-3000
FAX: (201) 515-4475
Nu Horizons
Pine Brook
Ph: (201) 882-8300
FAX: (201) 882-8398
Western Micro Technology
So. New Jersey/Philadelphia
Ph: (609) 596-7775
FAX: (609) 985-2797

New York
Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Ronkonkoma
Ph: (516) 737-0600
FAX: (516) 737-0838
Rochester
Ph: (716) 475-9130
FAX: (716) 475-9119
Nu Horizons
Amityville
Ph: (516) 226-6000
FAX: (516) 226-0082
Rochester
Ph: (716) 292-0777
FAX: (716) 292-0750

North Carolina
Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Raleigh
Ph: (919) 872-0712
FAX: (919) 878-8729

Ohio
Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Solon
Ph: (216) 349-4632
FAX: (216) 248-4803
Worthington
Ph: (614) 888-3313
FAX: (614) 888-0767

Oregon
Western Micro Technology
Beaverton
Ph: (503) 629-2082
FAX: (503) 629-8645

Ontario
Har-Tech Electronics
Downsview
Ph: (416) 660-3419
FAX: (416) 660-5102

British Columbia
Enerlec
Surrey
Ph: (604) 273-0882
FAX: (604) 273-0884

Canada
Ontario
Har-Tech Electronics
Downsview
Ph: (416) 660-3419
FAX: (416) 660-5102

British Columbia
Enerlec
Surrey
Ph: (604) 273-0882
FAX: (604) 273-0884

Canada
Ontario
Har-Tech Electronics
Downsview
Ph: (416) 660-3419
FAX: (416) 660-5102

British Columbia
Enerlec
Surrey
Ph: (604) 273-0882
FAX: (604) 273-0884

Canada
Ontario
Har-Tech Electronics
Downsview
Ph: (416) 660-3419
FAX: (416) 660-5102

British Columbia
Enerlec
Surrey
Ph: (604) 273-0882
FAX: (604) 273-0884

OKLAHOMA

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Tulsa
Ph: (918) 254-6110
FAX: (918) 254-6207

PENNSYLVANIA

Nu Horizons
Mount Laurel, New Jersey
Ph: (215) 557-6450 - PA
Ph: (609) 231-0900 - NJ
FAX: (609) 231-9510 - NJ FAX

TEXAS

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
Austin
Ph: (512) 258-8848
FAX: (512) 258-3777
Dallas
Ph: (214) 553-4300
FAX: (214) 553-4395
Houston
Ph: (713) 781-6100
FAX: (713) 953-8420

UTAH

Aved, Inc.
Salt Lake City
Ph: (801) 975-9500
FAX: (801) 977-0245

WASHINGTON

Western Micro Technology
Redmond
Ph: (206) 828-2741
FAX: (206) 828-2719

WISCONSIN

Hamilton/Hall-Mark
New Berlin
Ph: (414) 797-7844
FAX: (414) 797-9259

CANADA

Ontario
Har-Tech Electronics
Downsview
Ph: (416) 660-3419
FAX: (416) 660-5102

BRITISH COLUMBIA

Enerlec
Surrey
Ph: (604) 273-0882
FAX: (604) 273-0884

Section **12**

**APPLICATION NOTES
AND GLOSSARY**

12

Section

APPLICATION NOTES AND GLOSSARY

January 1994

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Figures 1 and 2 show basic circuit diagrams for K-Series modem integrated circuits. K-Series products are designed to be used in conjunction with a control processor, a UART or RS-232 serial data interface, and a DAA phone line interface to function as a typical intelligent modem. The K-Series ICs interface directly with Intel 8048 and 80C51 microprocessors for control and status monitoring purposes. Two typical DAA arrangements are shown: one for a split ± 5 or ± 12 volt design and one for a single 5 volt design. These diagrams are for reference only and do not represent production-ready modem designs.

K-Series devices are available with two control interface versions: one for a parallel multiplexed address/data interface, and one for a serial interface. The parallel version is intended for use with 8039/48 or 8031/51 microcontrollers from Intel or many other manufacturers. The serial interface 22-pin version can be used with other microcontrollers or in applications where only a limited number of port lines are available or the application does not lend itself to a multiplexed address/data interface. The parallel versions may also be used in the Serial mode, as explained in the data sheet pin description.

In most applications the controller will monitor the serial data for commands from the DTE and the received data for break signals from the far end modem. In this way, commands to the modem are sent over the same line as the transmitted data. In other applications the RS-232 interface handshake lines are used for modem control.

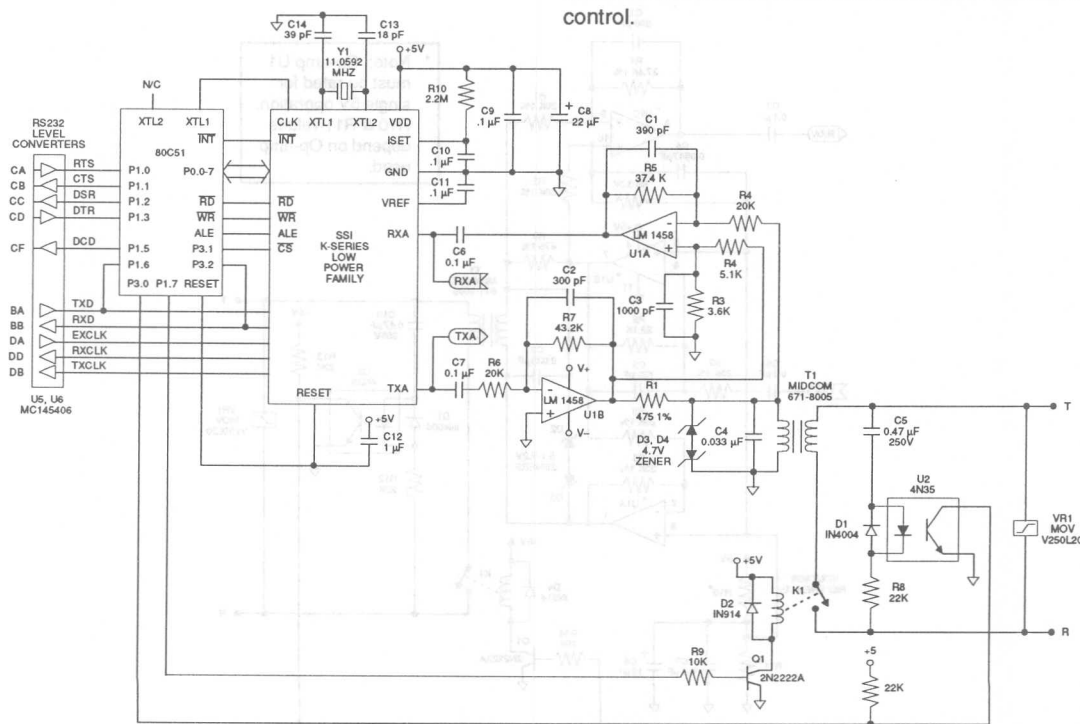


FIGURE 1: Basic Box Modem with Dual-Supply Hybrid

K-Series

Application Information

DIRECT ACCESS ARRANGEMENT (DAA)

The telephone line interfaces show two examples of how the "hybrid" may be implemented. The split supply design (Figure 1) is a typical two op-amp hybrid. The receive op-amp serves two purposes. It supplies gain to amplify the receive signal to the proper level for the modem's detectors and demodulator, and it removes the transmitted signal from the receive signal present at the transformer. This is done by supplying a portion of the transmitted signal to the non-inverting input of the receive op-amp at the same amplitude as the signal appearing at the transformer, making the transmit signal Common mode.

The single-supply hybrid is more complex than the dual-supply version described above, but its use eliminates the need for a second power supply. This circuit (Figure 2) uses a bridged drive to allow undistorted signals to be sent with a single 5 volt supply. Because DTMF tones utilize a higher amplitude than data, these

signals will clip if a single-ended drive approach is used. The bridged driver uses an extra op-amp (U1A) to invert the signal coming from the gain setting op-amp (U1B) before sending it to the other leg of the transformer. Each op-amp then supplies half the drive signal to the transformer. The receive amplifier (U1C) picks off its signal at the junction of the impedance matching resistor and the transformer. Because the bottom leg of the transformer is being driven in one direction by U1A and the resistor is driven in the opposite direction at the same time by U1B, the junction of the transformer and resistor remains relatively constant and the receive signal is unaffected.

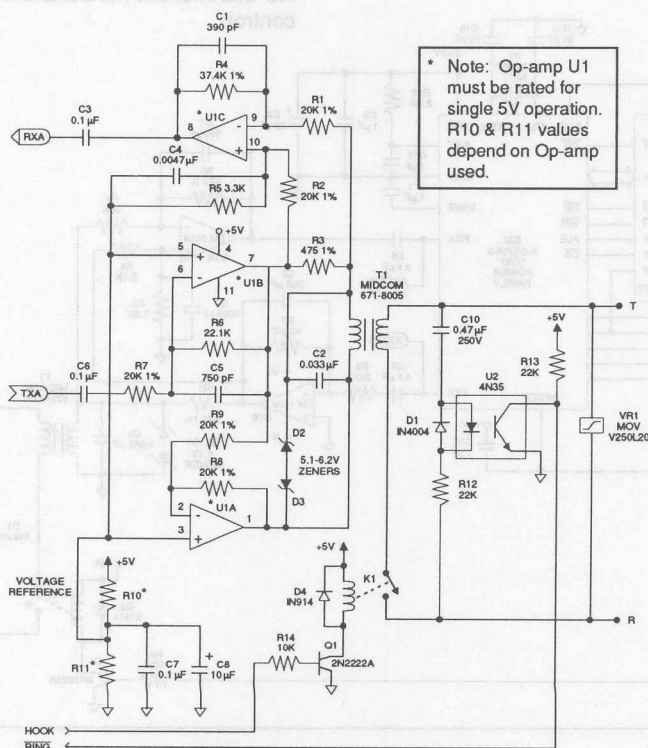


FIGURE 2: Single 5V Hybrid Version

K-Series

Application Information

DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

Silicon Systems 1-chip modem products include all basic modem functions. This makes these devices adaptable for use in a variety of applications, and as easy to control as conventional digital bus peripherals. Unlike digital logic circuitry, however, modem designs must properly contend with precise frequency tolerances and very low level analog signals, to ensure acceptable performance. Using good analog circuit design practices will generally result in a sound design. Following are additional recommendations which should be taken into consideration when starting new designs.

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

The K-Series crystal oscillator requires a Parallel mode (antiresonant) crystal which operates at 11.0592 MHz. It is important that this frequency be maintained to within $\pm 0.01\%$ accuracy.

In order for a Parallel mode crystal to operate correctly and to specification, it must have a load capacitor connected to the junction of each of the crystal and internal inverter connections, terminated to ground. The values of these capacitors depend primarily on the crystal's characteristics, and to a lesser degree on the internal inverter circuit. The values used affect the accuracy and start up characteristics of the oscillator.

LAYOUT CONSIDERATIONS

Good analog/digital design rules must be used to control system noise in order to obtain highest performance in modem designs. The more digital circuitry present on the PC board, the more this attention to noise control is needed. The modem should be treated as a high impedance analog device. A 22 μF electrolytic capacitor in parallel with a 0.1 μF ceramic capacitor between VDD and GND is recommended. Liberal use of ground planes and larger traces on power and ground are also highly favored. High speed digital circuits tend to generate a significant amount of EMI (Electro-Magnetic Interference) which must be minimized in order to meet regulatory agency limitations. To accomplish this, high speed digital devices should be locally bypassed, and the telephone line interface and K-Series device should be located close to each other near the area of the board where the phone line connection is accessed. To avoid problems, power

supply and ground traces should be routed separately to the analog and digital functions on the board, and digital signals should not be routed near low level or high impedance analog traces. The analog and digital grounds should only connect at one point near the K-Series device ground pin to avoid ground loops. The K-Series modem IC's should have both high frequency and low frequency bypassing as close to the package as possible.

For additional applications information consult the Silicon Systems K-Series Modem Design Manual.

Notes: Supply and ground traces should be routed separately to the analog and digital functions on the board, and digital signals should not be routed near low level or high impedance analog traces. The analog and digital grounds should only connect at one point near the K-Series device ground pin to avoid ground loops. The K-Series modem IC's should have both high frequency and low frequency bypassing as close to the package as possible.

For additional applications information consult the Silicon Systems K-Series Modem Design Manual.

DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

Silicon Systems 1-chip modem products include all basic modem functions. This makes these devices adaptable for use in a variety of applications, and easy to control as conventional digital bus peripherals. Unlike digital logic circuitry, however, modem designs must properly contend with precise frequency tolerances and very low level analog signals to ensure acceptable performance. Using good analog circuit design practices will generally result in a sound design. Following are additional recommendations which should be taken into consideration when starting new designs.

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

The K-Series crystal oscillator requires a Parallel mode (antiresonant) crystal which operates at 11.0592 MHz. It is important that this frequency be maintained to within $\pm 0.01\%$ accuracy.

In order for a Parallel mode crystal to operate correctly and to specification, it must have a load capacitor connected to the function of each of the crystal and internal inverter connections, terminated to ground. The values of these capacitors depend primarily on the crystal's characteristics, and to a lesser degree on the internal inverter circuit. The values used affect the accuracy and start up characteristics of the oscillator.

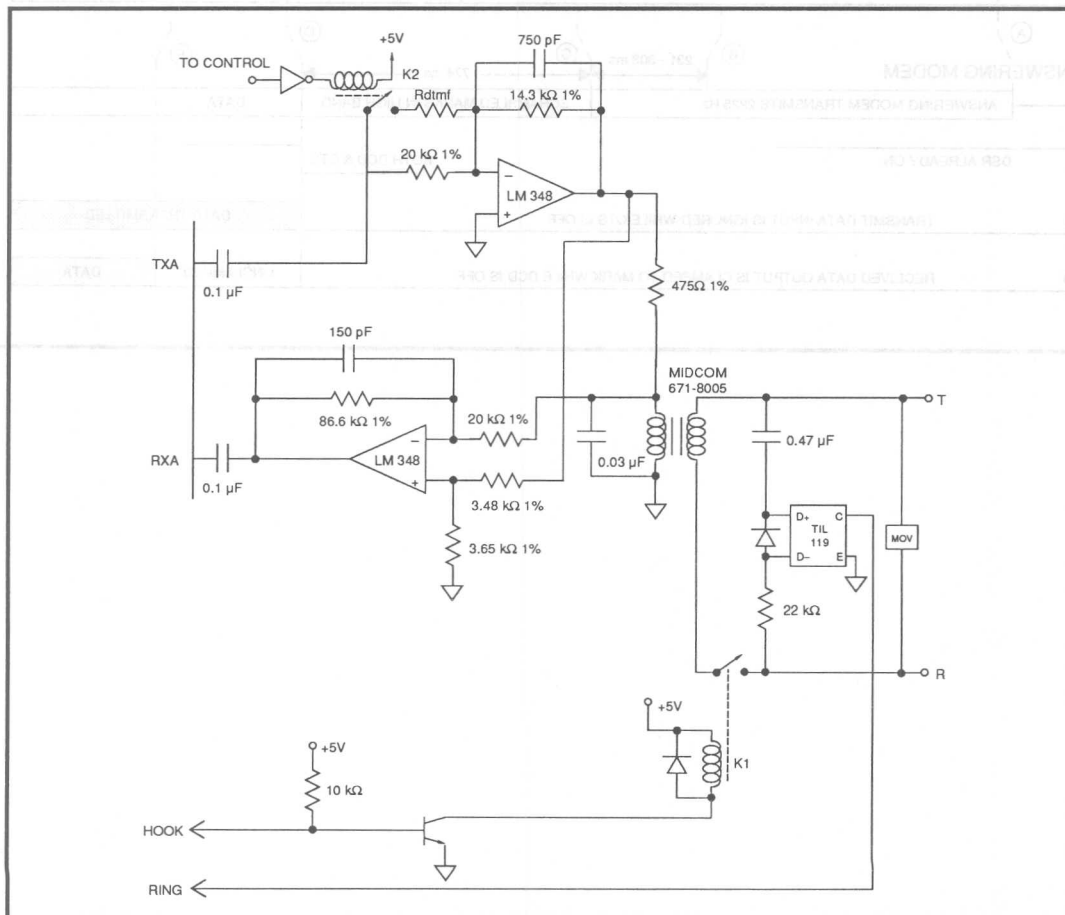
LAYOUT CONSIDERATIONS

Good analog/digital design rules must be used to control system noise in order to obtain highest performance in modem designs. The more digital activity present on the PC board, the more this attention to noise control is needed. The modem should be treated as a high impedance analog device. A 22 μF electrolytic capacitor in parallel with a 0.1 μF ceramic capacitor between VDD and GND is recommended. Liberal use of ground planes and larger traces on power and ground are also highly favored. High speed digital circuits tend to generate a significant amount of EMI (Electro-Magnetic Interference) which must be minimized in order to meet regulatory agency limitations. To accomplish this, high speed digital devices should be locally bypassed, and the telephone line interface and K-Series device should be located close to each other near the area of the board where the phone line connection is accessed. To avoid problems, power

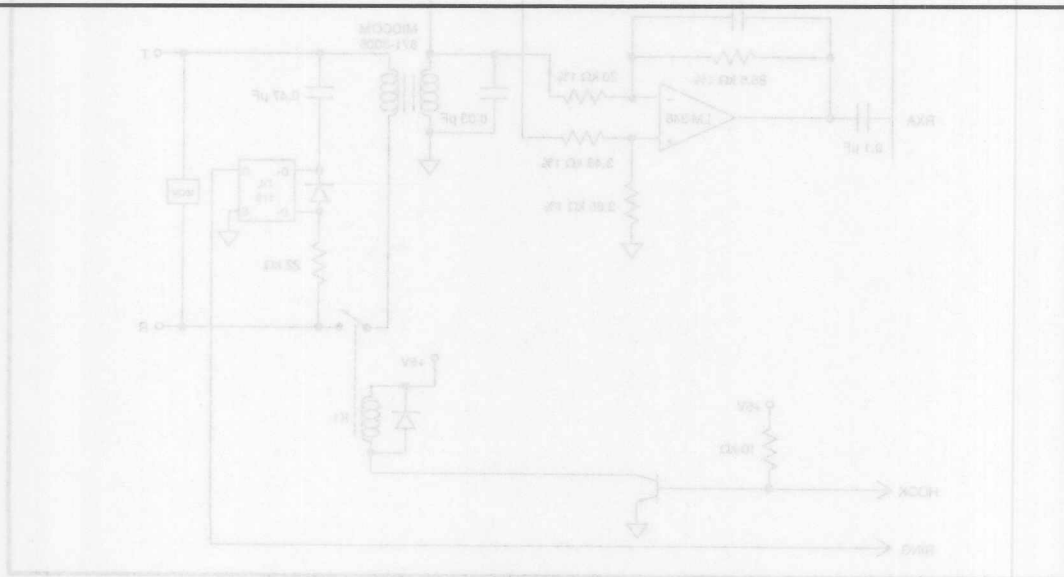
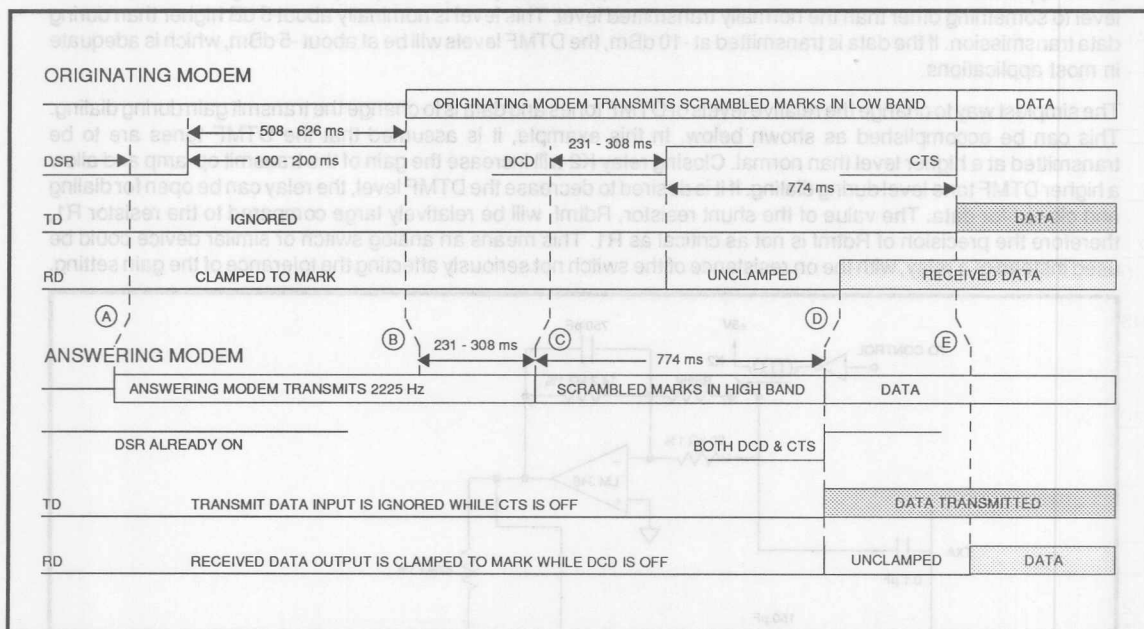
Setting DTMF Levels for 1200 Bit/s K-Series Modems

Some applications of the K-series modems without output level adjustment may require setting the DTMF transmit level to something other than the normally transmitted level. This level is nominally about 5 dB higher than during data transmission. If the data is transmitted at -10 dBm, the DTMF levels will be at about -5 dBm, which is adequate in most applications.

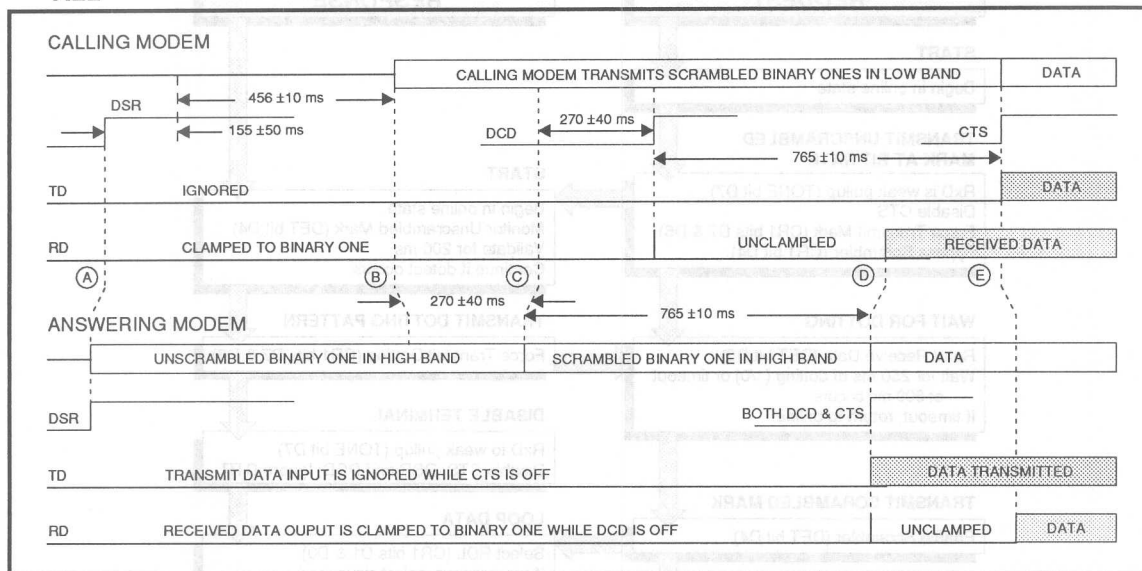
The simplest way to change the relative levels of DTMF tones and data is to change the transmit gain during dialing. This can be accomplished as shown below. In this example, it is assumed that the DTMF tones are to be transmitted at a higher level than normal. Closing relay K2 will increase the gain of the transmit op-amp and allow a higher DTMF tone level during dialing. If it is desired to decrease the DTMF level, the relay can be open for dialing and closed for data. The value of the shunt resistor, Rdtmf, will be relatively large compared to the resistor R1, therefore the precision of Rdtmf is not as critical as R1. This means an analog switch or similar device could be used instead of a relay, with the on resistance of the switch not seriously affecting the tolerance of the gain setting.



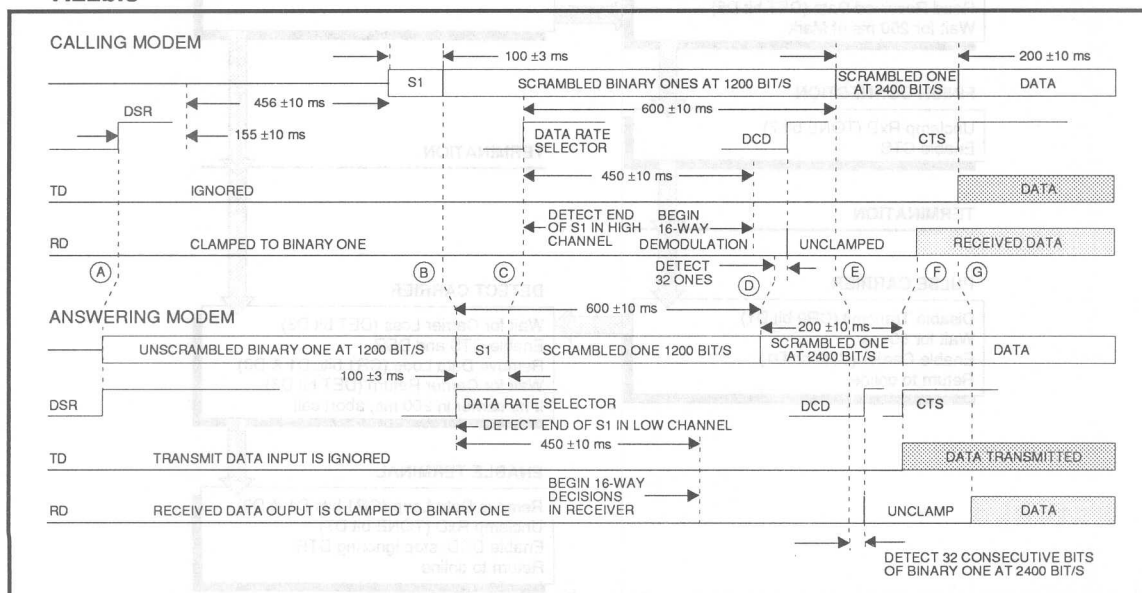
SSI 73K212A High Speed Connect Sequence



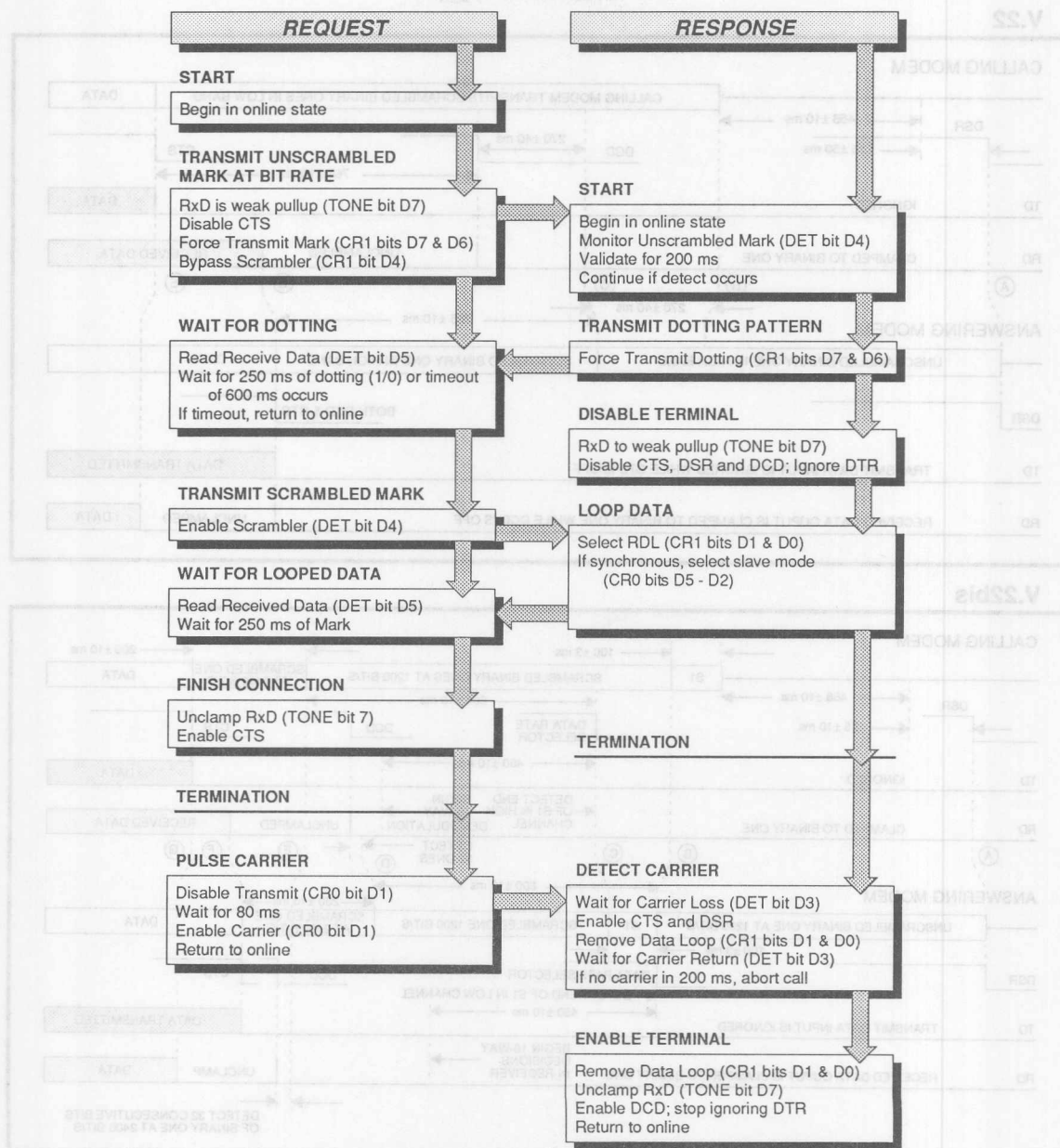
V.22



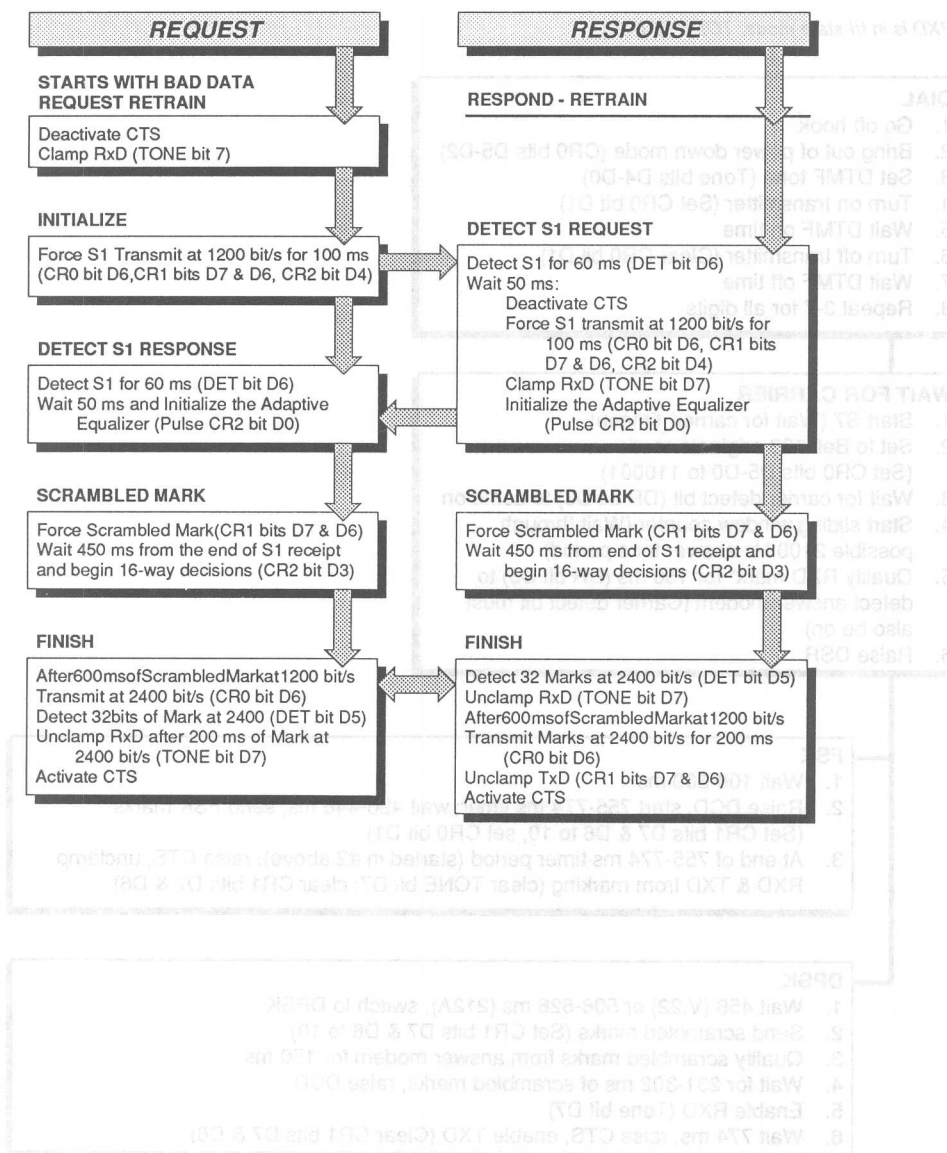
V.22bis



Remote Loop Handshake Sequence



**SSI 73K224L
Retrain at 2400**



SSI 73K212 & 73K222 Originate Handshake Sequence

(RXD is in tri-state mode, TONE bit D7≤1)

DIAL

1. Go off hook
2. Bring out of power down mode (CR0 bits D5-D2)
3. Set DTMF tone (Tone bits D4-D0)
4. Turn on transmitter (Set CR0 bit D1)
5. Wait DTMF on time
6. Turn off transmitter (Clear CR0 bit D1)
7. Wait DTMF off time
8. Repeat 3-7 for all digits

WAIT FOR CARRIER

1. Start S7 (Wait for carrier) timeout
2. Set to Bell 103 originate mode (Set CR0 bits D5-D0 to 110001)
3. Wait for carrier detect bit (DR bit D3) to come on
4. Start sliding window counter (Wait through possible 2100 Hz answer tone period)
5. Qualify RXD mark* for 150 ms (DR bit D5) to detect answer modem (Carrier detect bit must also be on)
6. Raise DSR

FSK

1. Wait 100-200 ms
2. Raise DCD, start 755-774 ms timer; wait 426-446 ms, send FSK marks (Set CR1 bits D7 & D6 to 10, set CR0 bit D1)
3. At end of 755-774 ms timer period (started in #2 above); raise CTS, unclamp RXD & TXD from marking (clear TONE bit D7; clear CR1 bits D7 & D6)

DPSK

1. Wait 456 (V.22) or 508-626 ms (212A), switch to DPSK
2. Send scrambled marks (Set CR1 bits D7 & D6 to 10)
3. Qualify scrambled marks from answer modem for 150 ms
4. Wait for 231-302 ms of scrambled marks, raise DCD
5. Enable RXD (Tone bit D7)
6. Wait 774 ms, raise CTS, enable TXD (Clear CR1 bits D7 & D6)

*This may be either answer tone from a Bell modem or unscrambled marks from a V.22 modem

SSI 73K212 & 73K222 Answer Handshake Sequence

(RXD is in tri-state mode, TONE bit D7=1)

If Answer Modem is BELL 212A/103

1. Go off hook at end of ring cycle
2. Raise DSR
3. Wait 2 seconds
4. Send 2225 Hz (Set TONE bit D5, clear bit D0, set CR0 bits D4-D0)

If Answer Modem is CCITT V.22

1. Go off hook at end of ring cycle
2. Wait 2 seconds
3. Send 2100 Hz for 3.3 seconds (Set TONE bits D5 & D1, CR0 bits D4-D0)
4. Silence for 75 ms (Clear CR0 bit D1, TONE bits D5 & D0)
5. Raise DSR
6. Send unscrambled marks at 1200 bit/s (Set CR1 bit D4, CR0 bit D1)

FSK

1. When carrier is detected, start sliding window counters for FSK & DPSK.
2. Monitor DR bit D5; change modes between FSK and DPSK if DR bit D5 is zero.
3. Continue until one window counter reaches zero. Proceed in that mode.

DPSK

Wait for FSK marks for 150 ms

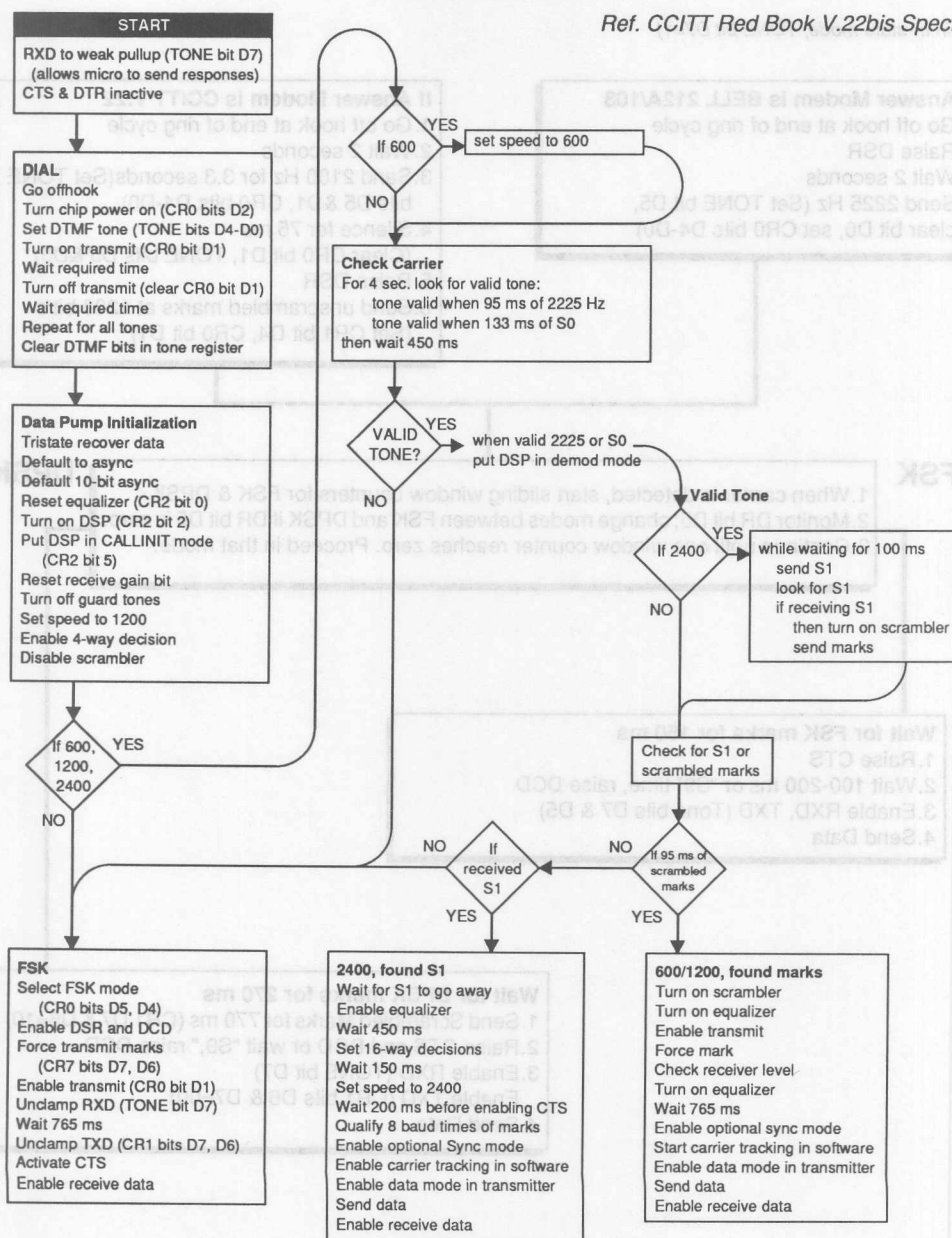
1. Raise CTS
2. Wait 100-200 ms or "S9" time, raise DCD
3. Enable RXD, TXD (Tone bits D7 & D5)
4. Send Data

Wait for DPSK marks for 270 ms

1. Send Scrambled Marks for 770 ms (CR1 D7 & D6=10)
2. Raise CTS and DCD or wait "S9," raise DCD
3. Enable RXD (TONE bit D7)
Enable TXD (CR1 bits D6 & D7=00)
4. Send Data

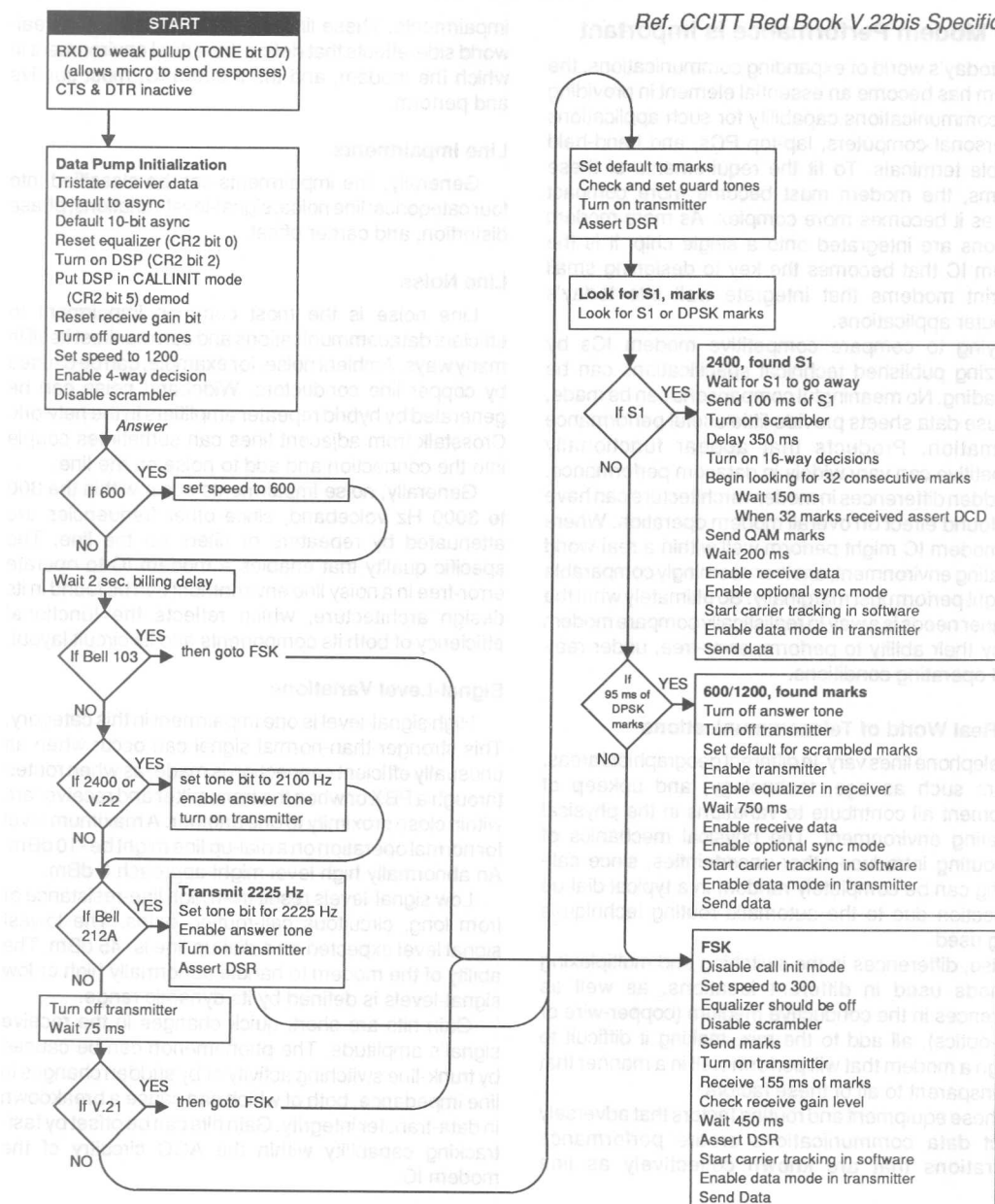
SSI 73K224L Originate Handshake Sequence

Ref. CCITT Red Book V.22bis Specification



SSI 73K224L Answer Handshake Sequence

Ref. CCITT Red Book V.22bis Specification



Performance Testing Silicon Systems K-Series Single-Chip Modem Family

Why Modem Performance Is Important

In today's world of expanding communications, the modem has become an essential element in providing data communications capability for such applications as personal computers, lap-top PCs, and hand-held portable terminals. To fit the requirements of these systems, the modem must become more compact even as it becomes more complex. As more modem functions are integrated onto a single chip, it is the modem IC that becomes the key to designing small footprint modems that integrate well into today's computer applications.

Trying to compare competitive modem ICs by analyzing published technical specifications can be misleading. No meaningful comparisons can be made, because data sheets provide little useful performance information. Products that appear functionally competitive can vary widely in datacom performance.

Hidden differences in modem architecture can have a profound effect on overall modem operation. Where one modem IC might perform well within a real-world operating environment, another seemingly comparable IC might perform just marginally. So ultimately what the designer needs is a way to realistically compare modem ICs by their ability to perform, error-free, under real-world operating conditions.

The Real World of Telecommunications

Telephone lines vary. In different geographical areas, factors such as age, technology, and upkeep of equipment all contribute to variations in the physical operating environment. The physical mechanics of call-routing introduce other uncertainties, since call-routing can be completely random in a typical dial-up connection due to the automatic routing techniques being used.

Also, differences in the switching and multiplexing methods used in different locations, as well as differences in the conductive medium (copper-wire or fiber-optics), all add to the mix, making it difficult to design a modem that will perform well in a manner that is transparent to all of these factors.

These equipment and routing factors that adversely affect data communications create performance aberrations that are known collectively as line

impairments. These line impairments cause the real-world side-effects that define the actual environment in which the modem, and the modem IC, must survive and perform.

Line Impairments

Generally, line impairments can be classified into four categories: line noise, signal-level variations, phase distortion, and carrier offset.

Line Noise

Line noise is the most common impairment to efficient datacommunications and can manifest itself in many ways. Ambient noise, for example, can be caused by copper line conductors. Wideband noise can be generated by hybrid repeater amplifiers in the network. Crosstalk from adjacent lines can sometimes couple into the connection and add to noise on the line.

Generally, noise impairments occur within the 300 to 3000 Hz voiceband, since other frequencies are attenuated by repeaters or filters on the line. The specific quality that enables a modem IC to operate error-free in a noisy line environment can be found in its design architecture, which reflects the functional efficiency of both its components and its circuit layout.

Signal-Level Variations

High signal-level is one impairment in this category. This stronger-than-normal signal can occur when an unusually efficient connection is made, as when routed through a PBX or when the transmitter and receiver are within close proximity to one another. A maximum level for normal operation on a dial-up line might be -10 dBm. An abnormally high level might approach 0 dBm.

Low signal-levels result from high line-resistance or from long, circuitous call-routing paths. The lowest signal level expected on a dial-up line is -45 dBm. The ability of the modem to handle abnormally high or low signal-levels is defined by its dynamic range.

Gain hits are short, quick changes in the receive signal's amplitude. The phenomenon can be caused by trunk-line switching activity or by sudden changes in line impedance, both of which can cause a breakdown in data-transfer integrity. Gain hits can be offset by fast-tracking capability within the AGC circuitry of the modem IC.

Phase Distortion

These impairments include phase jitter, phase hits, and group/envelope delay. Phase jitter is a periodic shift in the phase of the received carrier, which can be caused by variations in the line characteristics or by imperfections in the transmitting modem. Phase hits are more instantaneous in nature. They are characterized by significant changes in phase in the received carrier and are caused by ongoing switching action in the dial-up network. Group delay (envelope delay) results from reactive line-impedance characteristics that induce phase shifts in the frequencies present in the received signal. The modem must correct for group-delay distortion. Failure to do so can result in a phenomenon known as intersymbol interference. This occurs when frequency elements from one signal-modulation period overlap those of another, making it difficult to detect the original phase-encoded information in the signal, thus introducing data errors.

Carrier Offset

This impairment refers to a shift in frequency between the transmitted signal and the received signal. The condition is often introduced during long-distance call routing, where frequency-division multiplexing combines lower-frequency voiceband signals into a higher frequency signal. This phenomenon can be offset by the modem's phase-lock-loop tracking capabilities.

How Modems Can Be Compared For Performance

In order to compare modem ICs realistically, the design engineer needs to test each device under conditions that reflect real-life telephone line conditions. To achieve this, a test environment must be set up to simulate a set of actual line characteristics that conform to specifications defined by Bell System published standards. The engineer can then subject each test modem to artificially induced impairments under each of these line-standard conditions and compare the specific performance of competitive modems. A range of line conditions must be used to show how the modem will operate over the random variety of lines that might be encountered in typical operation.

Line Standards

Characteristics for dial-up telephone lines are not commonly specified, but leased lines are conditioned lines for which linear-distortion characteristics, including frequency-response and envelope-distortion parameters, are guaranteed by the telephone company. The Bell System line standards define four premium

line conditions that operate with characteristics similar to those found in dial-up lines. These lines, which allow for modem performance testing over a wide range of representative conditions, include the following:

The 3002 Line is the lowest quality leased line and represents the poorest environment for accurate data communications. Allowable amplitude variation is 15 dB over the voiceband range. Envelope delay can vary as much as 1750 microseconds over the 800 to 2600 Hz range.

The C1 Line is conditioned to a greater extent than the 3002 line and can be considered to represent the average in dial-up line characteristics. Amplitude variation over the frequency band of interest is limited to 8 dB. Allowable envelope delay is the same as for the 3002 line.

The C2 Line represents an intermediate-quality line for modem testing. Frequency response is limited to 8 dB amplitude variation. Envelope delay is improved to not more than 500 microseconds over a 1000 to 2600 Hz range.

The C4 Line represents the best line conditions to be expected in a dial-up telephone environment. Optimum modem performance would be expected using this standard. Group delay or attenuation is negligible. Frequency response is limited to 8 dB. Envelope delay distortion is held to less than 300 microseconds over a 1000 to 2600 Hz range.

The Testing Method

To qualify modem ICs for performance, the test method must be uniformly applied. A test unit is used to simulate each of the Bell System line standards and to generate the environmentally representative line impairments. A typical test set-up includes a line simulator, a personal computer, an RMS voltmeter, and a reference modem to test against. Control of the test parameters is handled by the PC connected to the test fixture through a GPIB data bus. The PC sets up and controls the line simulator, monitors the results, and accumulates the error count for each iteration.

Two modem ICs are compared in a typical test sequence. The modem IC to be tested is connected to the modem testing equipment via a breadboard evaluation fixture and is fed a continuous data stream for testing. The tester monitors the data received from the test modem and the data bit-errors are counted and plotted to signify the ratio between the number of bits transmitted compared to the number of transmission error-bits. This results in a statistical bit-error rate (BER).

The test method calls for a large sample of data errors to be simulated for each device, under each line condition. Multiple data points are taken for each test for each device. Test message data is transmitted in a

random, broad-range pattern. Each data point results from the transmission of a million data bits and a complete test sequence on a single modem IC could represent 100 hours of test time before a realistic error sampling might be realized.

The SSI K-Series Modem ICs

Silicon Systems' K-Series family of modem ICs use an integrated analog/digital design philosophy for enhanced high-performance operation, which virtually eliminates data-error-related modem failures. These pin and function-compatible family products comply with the full range of relevant worldwide operating standards for data transfer speeds ranging from 300 to 2400 bit/s. The SSI 73K224L, the industry's first 2400 bit/s single-chip modem for both US and European standards, features adaptive equalization, which further enhances performance by giving the modem the ability to adapt automatically to varying line conditions.

The K-Series modem ICs are used in the sample test curves presented with this document as a base against which competitive performance information can be compared.

MODEM PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

The curves presented here define modem IC performance under a variety of line conditions while inducing disturbances that are typical of those encountered during data transmission on public service telephone lines. Test data was taken using an AEA Electronics' "Autotest I" modem test set and line simulator, operating under computer control. All tests were run full-duplex, using a Concord Data Systems 224 as the reference modem. A 511 pseudo-random-bit pattern was used with 1×10^6 bits transmitted for each data point. Noise was C-message weighted and all signal-to-noise (S/N) ratios reflect total power similar to the CCITT V.56 measurement specification. The individual tests are defined as follows.

BER vs. S/N

This test measures the ability of the modem to operate over noisy lines with a minimum of data-transfer errors. Since some noise is generated in the best of dial-up lines, the modem must operate with the lowest S/N ratio possible. Optimum modem performance is indicated by test curves that are closest to the zero axis. A narrow spread between curves representing the four line parameters indicates minimal variation in performance while operating over a range of operating conditions. Typically, a DPSK modem will exhibit better BER-performance test curves operating in the highband range than in the lowband.

BER vs. Receive Level

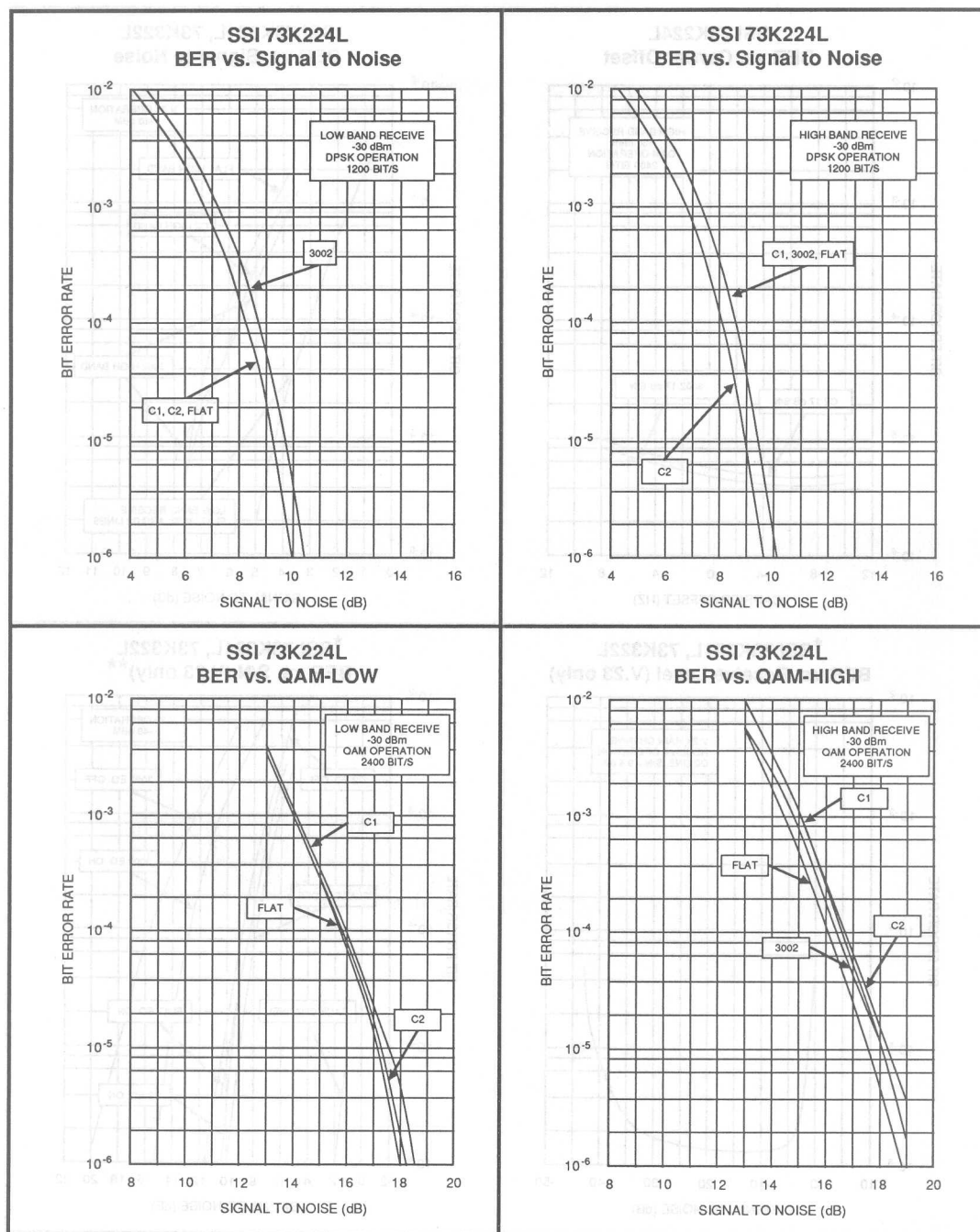
This test measures the dynamic range of the modem. Because signal levels vary widely over dial-up lines, the widest possible dynamic range is desirable. The minimum Bell specification calls for 36 dB of dynamic range. S/N ratios are held constant at the indicated values while the receive level is lowered from a very high to very low signal levels. The width of the "bowl" of these curves, taken at the BER point, is the measure of dynamic range.

BER vs. Phase Jitter

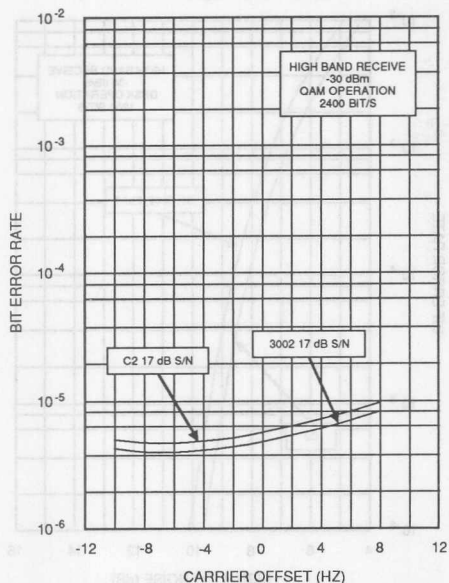
DPSK and QAM modulation is sensitive to phase jitter. Modems using these techniques need to be as tolerant as possible of phase jitter on the line. In this test, relatively flat curves indicate minimal degradation of performance when phase jitter is encountered on the line.

BER vs. Carrier Offset

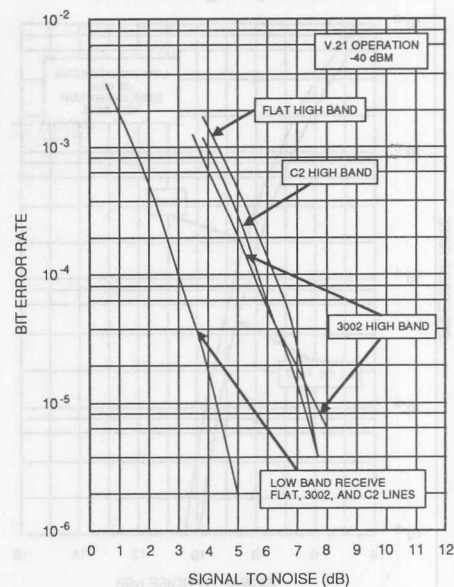
This parameter indicates how the modem's performance is affected by the shifts in carrier frequency encountered in normal public telephone network operation. Flat curves are an indication that there is no performance degradation from frequency offsets. The SSI K-Series modem ICs use a second-order, carrier-tracking phase-lock-loop that is insensitive to carrier offsets in excess of 10 Hz. Both the Bell and European/Japanese CCITT specifications allow as much as 7 Hz offset.



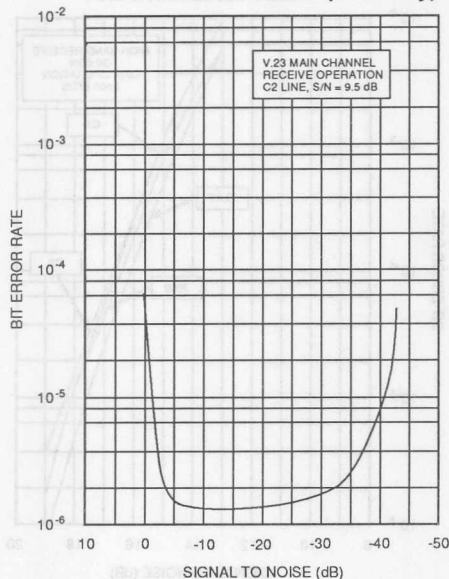
BER vs. Carrier Offset



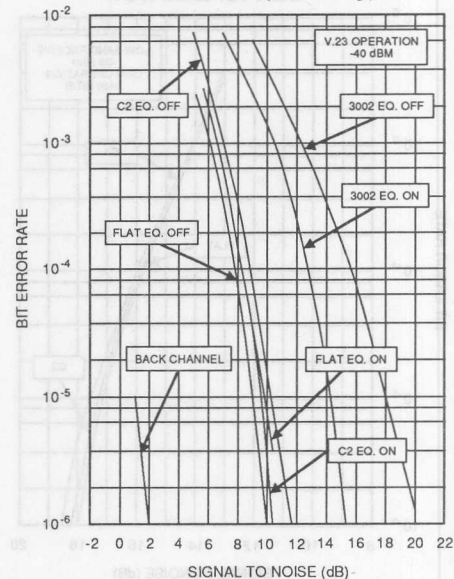
BER vs. Signal to Noise



*SSI 73K321L, 73K322L BER vs. Receive Level (V.23 only)

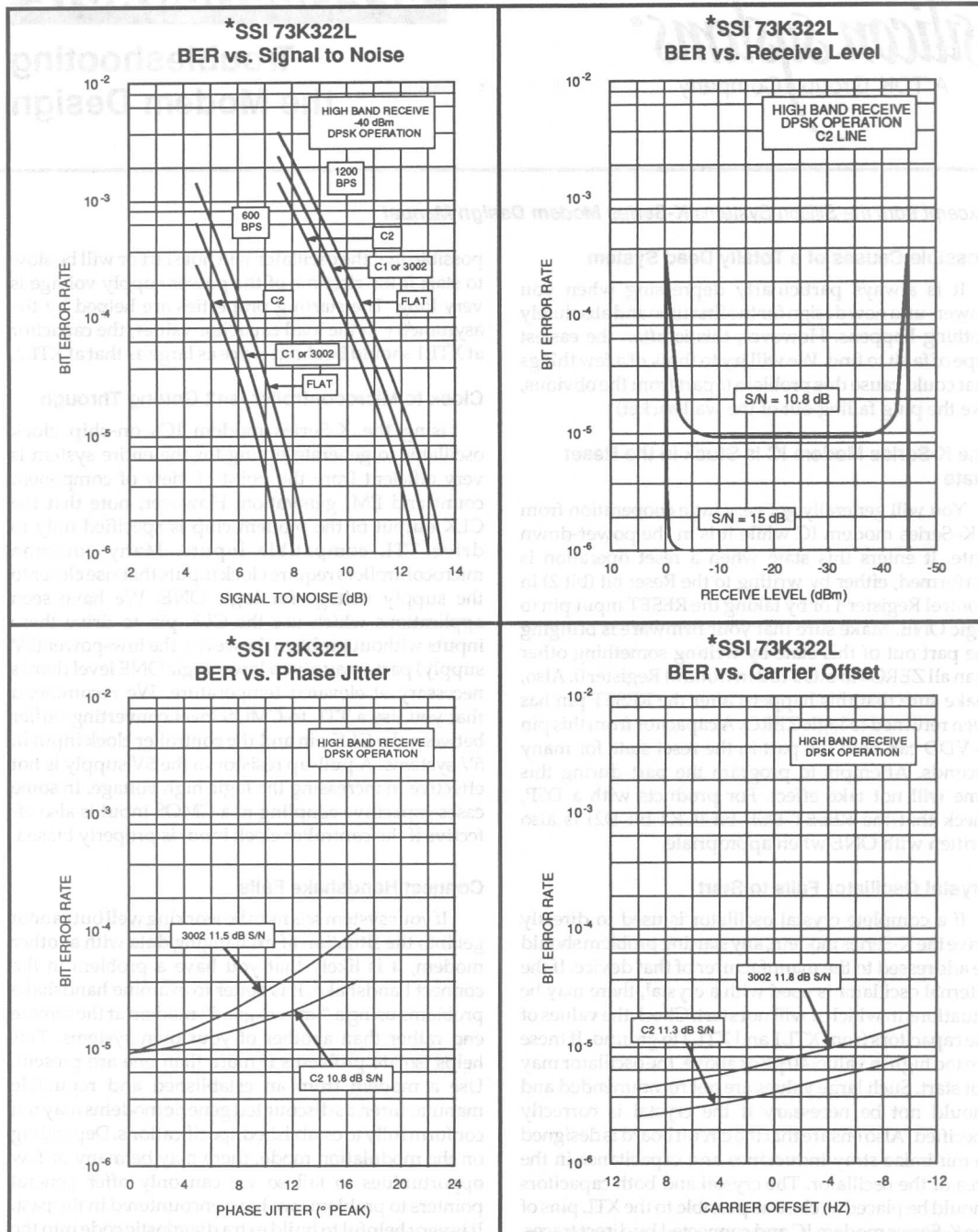


*SSI 73K321L, 73K322L BER vs. S/N (V.23 only)**



* = "EQ On" Indicates bit CR1 D4 is set for additional phase equalization.

** = 73K302L performance is similar to that of the 73K322L. V.23 operation corresponds to Bell 202.



* = "EQ On" Indicates bit CR1 D4 is set for additional phase equalization.

Troubleshooting the Modem Design

Excerpt from the Silicon Systems K-Series Modem Design Manual

Possible Causes of a Totally Dead System

It is always particularly depressing when you power-up a new design for the first time and absolutely nothing happens. However, this is often the easiest type of fault to find. We will try to think of a few things that could cause this problem (apart from the obvious, like the plug falling out of the wall socket).

The K-Series Modem IC is Stuck in the Reset State

You will generally get very little cooperation from a K-Series modem IC while it is in the power-down state. It enters this state when a reset operation is performed, either by writing to the Reset bit (bit 2) in Control Register 1 or by taking the RESET input pin to logic ONE. Make sure that your firmware is bringing the part out of this state by writing something other than all ZEROs to bits 5 to 2 in Control Register 0. Also, make sure that this happens after the RESET pin has been returned to logic ZERO. A capacitor from this pin to VDD can hold the part in the reset state for many seconds. Attempts to program the part during this time will not take effect. For products with a DSP, check that the RESET DSP bit (CR2 bit D2) is also written with ONE when appropriate.

Crystal Oscillator Fails to Start

If a complete crystal oscillator is used to directly drive the K-Series modem, any starting problem should be addressed to the manufacturer of that device. If the internal oscillator is used with a crystal, there may be situations in which it will not start. Check the values of the capacitors from XTL1 and XTL2 to ground. If these are too high in value, 40 pF or above, the oscillator may not start. Such large values are not recommended and should not be necessary if the crystal is correctly specified. Also ensure that the circuit board is designed to minimize stray inductance and capacitance in the area of the oscillator. The crystal and both capacitors should be placed as close as possible to the XTL pins of the K-Series modem IC and connected by direct traces. The ground connection of the capacitors should be via wide traces to the digital grounding system. It is also

possible that the oscillator will not start or will be slow to start if the risetime of the power supply voltage is very long. The starting properties are helped by the asymmetry in the load capacitor values, the capacitor at XTL1 should be about twice as large as that at XTL2.

Clock to Microcontroller Isn't Getting Through

Using the K-Series modem ICs on-chip clock oscillator to generate timing for the entire system is very efficient from the point of view of component count and EMI generation. However, note that the CLK output of the modem chip is specified only to drive TTL compatible inputs. Many common microcontrollers require clock inputs that rise closer to the supply voltage for logic ONE. We have seen applications which use the CLK pin to drive these inputs without problem, however, the low-power (5V supply) parts may give a lower logic ONE level than is necessary at elevated temperature. We recommend that you use a TTL to CMOS level converting buffer between the CLK pin and the controller clock input in 5V systems. A pull-up resistor to the 5V supply is not effective in increasing the logic high voltage. In some cases capacitive coupling to a CMOS input is also effective if the controller clock input is properly biased.

Connect Handshake Fails

If your system seems to be working well but cannot get into the situation of exchanging data with another modem, it is likely that you have a problem in the connect handshake. It is better to examine handshake problems using a "known good" modem at the remote end rather than another of your own systems. This helps isolate problems if more than one are present. Use a modem from an established and reputable manufacturer, as discounted generic modems may not conform fully to established specifications. Depending on the modulation mode, there may be many or few opportunities to fail so we can only offer general pointers to problems we have encountered in the past. It is very helpful to build extra diagnostic code into the handshake to diagnose unexpected conditions.

If things never start, check that the initial set-up of the chip is correct. The chip must be taken out of power-down before it will do anything and in DSP-based chips the DSP must have been reset after any previous call and then taken out of the reset state. (A DSP-based part cannot be used in a non-DSP socket without many such changes to the controller code; watch this when upgrading a 73K222 system to use a 73K224L.) If in CALLINIT mode the answer tone is not detected, check that you have selected the desired answer tone frequency by programming in the Tone Register. The selectivity of the answer tone detector is quite high, so verify that your answering modem is generating a frequency within the specifications of the modulation standard. You should be able to verify the operation of your various signal detectors with breakpoints in the controller code. If these do not fire at the appropriate point, the handshake is likely to hang-up or get out of step with the other modem. Be especially careful with the S1 detector, if this is failing you may get connections at 1200 bit/s which were supposed to be at 2400 bit/s. With DSP-based chips in QAM or DPSK modes, make sure that you are enabling the adaptive equalizer at the appropriate time. Enabling it too early, when the received signal is unsuitable for training, and too late, when there is too little time left before the gear shift to 2400 bit/s, can both give connect problems. Finally, make sure the crystal oscillator frequency is in specification as a gross error here can cause failure of the handshake.

Errors Committed Immediately After Handshake, With Later Improvement

We have seen situations in which a K-Series modem makes many data errors during the first few seconds of a connection, but then shapes up and performs normally thereafter. This is generally due to some problem in equalizer training in a DSP-based chip. The equalizer must be held in the initial state (bit 0 of CR2 = ZERO) up to the point in the handshake when scrambled DPSK binary ONES first appear at the receiver. It must then be released promptly (bit 0 of CR2 = ONE) and allowed to adapt so that it is fully trained before the gear shift to 2400 bit/s and the transition to data mode occurs. Enabling the equalizer too early will cause it to train on an unsuitable unscrambled signal. Because it adapts more rapidly immediately after being enabled, it may take a long time to recover from a bad solution when the correct receiver signal arrives. Enabling the equalizer too late reduces the time available for training before the received data is relied upon to be correct. If you have to put the equalizer back into the initialized state after a period of training, make sure that Equalizer Enable (bit 0 of CR2) stays at ZERO for at least 2 ms. It is better to have the Receiver Gain Boost bit dealt with

before the equalizer is enabled, otherwise transients caused by changing this bit may upset the equalizer solution.

Errors Experienced at High Receive Signal Levels

If the error rate gets worse at high receive signal levels, you should look for some source of clipping in the receive path. Injecting a signal of known level at the line coupling transformer and looking at the RXA pin with an oscilloscope should enable you to isolate any problem in the line interface. Look for excessive gain in the receiver buffer amplifier or other causes of clipping at this point such as badly chosen op-amps for single 5V supply operation. If the signal at RXA looks good and you are using a DSP-based modem chip, it is possible that the controller is incorrectly inserting the 12 dB receiver gain boost even if the Receive Level bit in the Detect Register is set. Note that early data sheets for the 73K224L gave this bit the wrong sense, i.e., ONE for low level. Only set Receive Gain Boost if this bit is ZERO.

Errors Experienced at Low Receive Signal Levels

There can be many causes of data errors at low receive signal levels, almost all associated with the presence of some level of interference or noise in the receive path. If you are performing tests over the telephone network, make sure that the error rate you are experiencing is not to be expected from the background noise level on the line. It is best to use a line simulator or a direct connection through an attenuator if looking for system noise problems. The capacitor across the feedback resistor of the receiver buffer amplifier is important to attenuate out-of-band noise at the modem chip receiver input.

Distortion in the telephone line interface can be located by injecting low-level signals into the line terminals and examining the signal at the RXA pin with a spectrum analyzer. Look for crossover distortion in the receiver buffer amplifier. This can arise from a poorly chosen op-amp type, such as the LM324 which makes a transition from class A to class AB operation at low signal levels and is not suitable for this application. We have found LM348 and LM1458 type op-amps to be free from this problem. It is also possible for the line coupling transformer to introduce harmonic distortion, particularly when a large D.C. holding current is flowing.

In the absence of significant distortion, look for a high noise level at the RXA pin. Another symptom of this problem, apart from data errors, is that the Carrier Detect bit (bit 3 in DR) comes on or blinks when no signal is applied to the modem receiver. The system may also fail to disconnect at the end of a call. If this is

your experience don't confine your search to the normal carrier bandwidth because the modem chip will also be susceptible to higher frequencies. Op-amps may be noisy or may self-oscillate at low level due to poor layout. If the op-amps themselves are not causing the noise, it may be due to poor circuit layout or grounding. If, finally, nothing suspicious is visible at the RXA pin then the noise must be getting into the receive signal inside the modem IC. This can be from the power supply and bias pins or from signals routed under the chip. Check the connections to GND, VDD, VREF and ISET pins for component values and placement and routing of decoupling components. You are more likely to have problems with supply noise if you are using a switching power supply. Look also for fast digital signals routed under the modem IC; these should be re-routed and a ground plane placed under the chip. Serious interference pickup problems can be created by two crystal oscillators producing beat frequencies in-band to the modem. We strongly recommend using one master crystal in the system. Check the gain in the receive path from the line terminals and, in DSP-based parts, the state of the Receive Gain Boost bit set by the controller. If either of these are incorrect, then noise in the chip will appear more significant compared to the signal.

The transmitter of the modem can be a source of noise in the receiver. It should not generate signals that are in-band to the receiver, but this can happen if either the buffer amplifier or the line transformer are causing harmonic distortion. This will be most noticeable in call mode, when the low band transmit signal has harmonics in the high band filter of the receiver. For 5V only systems, the choice of op-amps in the buffer amplifier and their D.C. bias point is crucial to obtaining a sufficient voltage swing without distortion. Because of its internal operation, a small amount of switching noise is present at the TXA pin. The capacitor across the buffer amplifier feedback resistor is important to prevent this signal from reaching the receiver. It is difficult to obtain good rejection of the transmit signal at the receiver for all practical line conditions, but you should check that your four-wire to two-wire hybrid circuit is operating correctly. For most terminations, the transmit signal at the RXA pin minus the receive buffer gain should be 6 dB below the level at the line.

Modem Works in Loopback but Fails to Connect or Makes Errors in Bursts with Some Other Modems

If anything appears "flaky" about the modem operation it is a good idea to check the oscillator frequency with a counter capable of resolving to at least ten parts per million. Using an oscilloscope is of no use whatsoever. Many systems that use crystal oscillators are not very particular about the exact frequency; this is not so of modems. Measure the frequency at the CLK pin and verify that it is between 11.0581 MHz and 11.0603 MHz. Do not measure at the XTL1 or XTL2 pins as the probe capacitance will alter the frequency of oscillation. Some causes of out-of-specification readings are: a) the wrong crystal frequency entirely, b) a series-resonant crystal, or c) a parallel-resonant crystal unmatched to the circuit capacitance.

Problems Unique to FSK Modes

The SSI 73K224L does not permit answer tone detection in FSK modes, so ensure that a mode other than FSK is selected before attempting to detect answer tones.

APPLICATION NOTE

In the past there have been numerous inquiries asking if we had an interface IC for the telephone side of our K-series modems. Until this time we have had to say no, but with a few opamps, a couple of transistors, a speaker driver, and a "few" other components you can build your own. Now there is a single device that is designed to be used for the line interface with our K-series modem ICs and performs a number of functions that are needed in most modem applications. It also significantly reduces the number of components required for the DAA circuitry. The 73M376 performs the hybrid function, has a speaker driver with volume control, and two relay drivers for the hook switch control. In addition there are two separate transmit paths available, a power down mode, and the relay drivers may be programmed to reduce the power to the relay holding coils. This note will acquaint you with the advantages this part brings to modem designs.

One of the problems with traditional opamp hybrid designs is that there are few low cost opamps that will meet the requirements of operating from a single 5 volt power supply and also drive the required load. We have in the past recommended several standard opamps for this function, but have always had to qualify that recommendation because of the need for extra components or opamp spec limitations. In the past we have recommended the LMC660, although it required two additional resistors and capacitors; the LM348 which is not rated in the National Semiconductor data book for single 5 volt operation; and the LM346 which also requires two additional resistors. Now we can without reservation recommend our own 73M376.

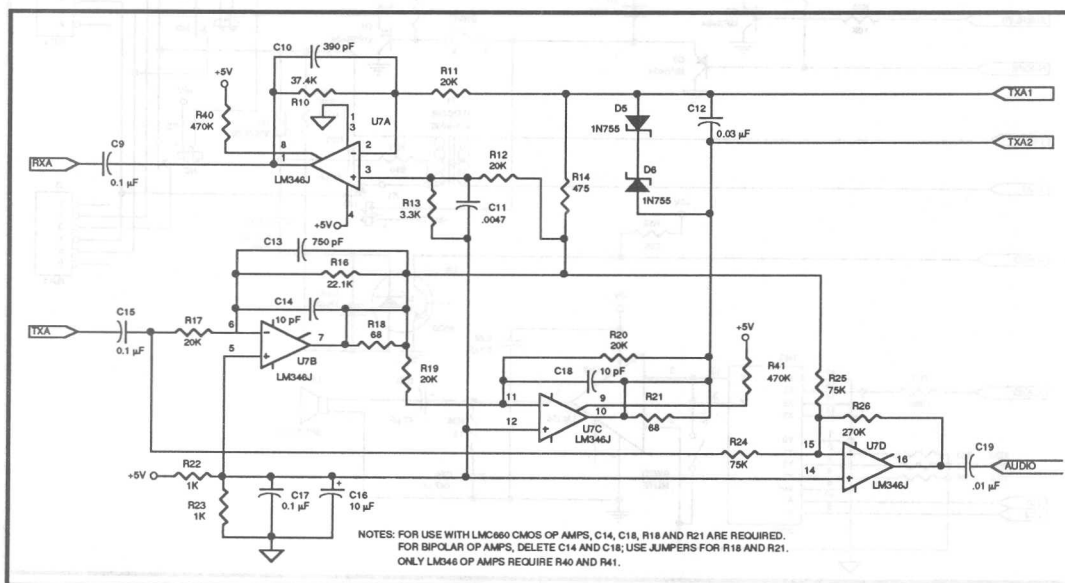


FIGURE 1: Typical Opamp Hybrid Circuit

Figure 1 shows a typical opamp based hybrid design. This is the same design used in the 2402DEK demonstration board for the 73K224L. Provision was made for different opamps to be used although the board is normally supplied with the National Semiconductor LMC660 opamp. TXA and RXA connect directly to the K-series device. TXA1 and TXA2 connect to the telephone isolation transformer. AUDIO outputs the mixed transmitted and received signals so both may be heard.

Figure 2 shows the telephone interface for the 2402DEK. The schematic shows three transistors for three relays, but in most applications only one or two are used. A SPDT relay could be used for the hook switch (K1) and cut off (K2) relay functions. The telephone interface for our purposes also includes the "audio interface" since many applications require a loudspeaker to monitor the progress of a call. This must also include provisions for volume control and squelch when audio is not desired. The 4052 multiplexer is used for these purposes. The LM386N is used to drive a low impedance loudspeaker.

Figure 3 shows the equivalent circuit using the 73M376 Integrated Line Interface IC. The difference in parts count is apparent although the function is identical. The difference in board space between the two designs can be significant for small footprint internal laptop or notebook designs where real estate is at a premium.

The timing for power reduction mode for the relay drivers is controlled by the .01 μ F capacitor C17 connected to HTIMER. This determines the time full relay voltage is applied to the holding coil before going into low power hold state. HTIMER may alternately be driven by a TTL signal. The holding coil voltage is as much as 24% less than the normal applied voltage. If the power saving feature is not needed and you do not want to use the additional capacitor, the HTIMER pin may be grounded. Note also that the PWR pin connects to the HOOK so whenever the modem is on hook the 73M376 will be in power down mode. These are features that are significant where minimum power dissipation is an important factor.

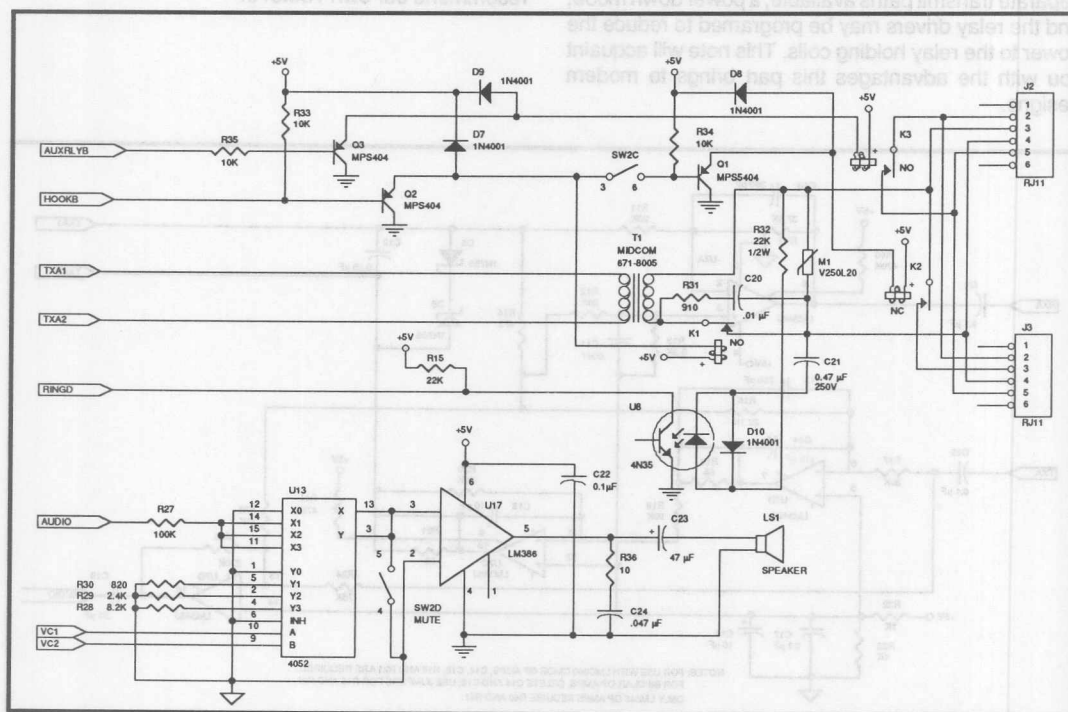


FIGURE 2: Telephone Interface Circuit

The 73M376 opamps are wideband high performance devices that need to be dealt with as with any similar opamp. The receive opamp stability is dependant on the input capacitance and the feed back resistance. The minimum feedback resistance should be $5K\Omega$, and the resistor used should be kept near that value. This prevents the high frequency gain from causing oscillation due to parasitic capacitance on the RCV pin. The RCV pin capacitance must be kept to a minimum. Socketing the 73M376 is not recommended since this tends to increase the parasitic capacitance. The output impedance of the receive amplifier is somewhat high, so addition of feedback capacitance to reduce high frequency gain in the amplifier will not be effective in this case. In cases where the input capacitance cannot be effectively controlled, a resistor from the RCV pin to the BIASC pin will reduce the loop gain and stabilize the amplifier but not affect the closed loop gain. This resistor value will range from 2K to 5K depending on the parasitic capacitance being encountered.

One feature of the 73M376 that is overlooked in this application is the alternate transmit path. This second path can be used to transmit the same signal at another level or a different signal such as FAX may be brought

in and the gain set separately. TXAP and TXAOUTP are the input and output respectively of the second transmit path. This transmit path is electrically identical to TXA and TXAOUT and is selected when the MUX pin is low. Remember there is an additional 12 dB (nominal) gain after this gain setting stage for both transmit amplifiers. This means for a K-series part the actual gain set by the external resistors will be less than one.

The difference in the parts count between a discrete design and a 73M376 based design are significant. The active components are reduced from 5 devices to one; the passives from 30 devices to 12 for an equivalent function. Fewer components mean lower assembly cost and rework, and higher reliability. The savings in component cost can also be compelling in large volume, price sensitive products. The component savings can be from \$.30 to \$1.00 depending on the cost model used.

The 73M376 should be considered in all designs, but for today's ever shrinking computers there are even more compelling reasons the 73M376 should be used. There is a better way to build a telephone line interface now that the 73M376 is available.

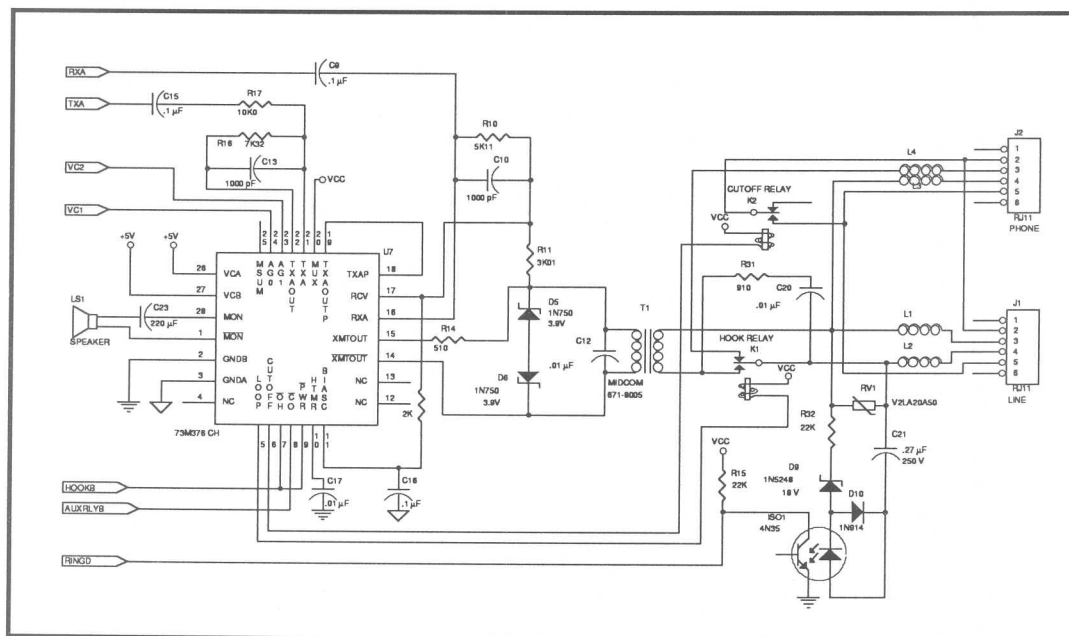


FIGURE 3: 73M376-based DAA Circuit

Notes:

Application Note

November 1993

DESCRIPTION

The 78P236 demo board is a PC board designed to facilitate the evaluation of the SSI 78P236 series of single chip transceiver ICs. The demo board can be used to test different transceiver ICs by changing various components. The demo board includes all of the necessary discrete components for the interface to a coded AMI line. A DIP switch allows easy control of the option pins on the IC. A loopback function is easily implemented using a slide switch. The same switch allows either an encoded signal (TPOS, TNEG, TCLK) or composite signal (TDATA, TCLK) be input to the transmitter. Simple test patterns can be injected into the data stream. Several jumpers allow the change of the transmitter and receiver clock polarity.

FEATURES

- Allows easy evaluation of AMI transceiver ICs
- Includes all necessary external components
- Includes a digital loopback mechanical switch
- Generates ALL ONEs and repeated ONE/ZERO patterns
- Accepts composite Clock/Data and converts them to AMI pulses (No B3ZS encoding)
- Allows the use of either the receive clock or an external clock as the transmitter clock
- 20-pin edge connector accepts flat coax cables and provides logical signals

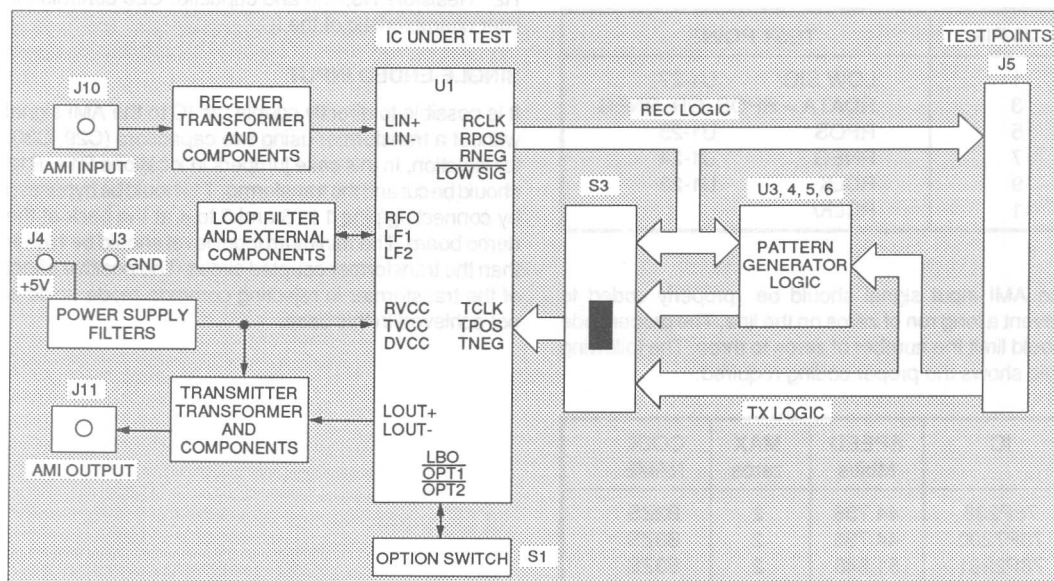


FIGURE 1: Demo Board Block Diagram

SSI 78P236/2361/2362/7200

Demo Board

POWER SUPPLY CONNECTION

The demo board is constructed as a four layer PC board. The outer two layers carry the signals. The internal two layers are the segmented ground and power supply planes. Three segments separate the receive, transmit and logical ground and supply planes. The three ground planes are connected together using PC board traces at JP2 and JP8 positions. These traces can be cut to isolate the three planes from each other. The power supply planes are connected to a single +5V banana jack (J4) using LC filters of 4.7 μ H and 0.1 μ F. When a separate digital +5V supply is available, L1 is removed and the DVCC supply can be connected to J2.

RECEIVE SIGNAL PATH

The AMI signal is connected to the BNC connector J10. The maximum recommended distance of the demo board to a DSX crosspoint is 450 feet. The IC can handle added resistive attenuation as referenced by its minimum input signal level specification. The IC recovers clock, positive and negative data from the AMI signal. The following table shows the available receiver logical signals on the test points and edge connector J5:

| J5 PIN | TEST POINT |
|--------|------------------------|
| 1 | LOW SIG/ U1-27 |
| 3 | RDATA = RPOS .OR. RNEG |
| 5 | RPOS U1-25 |
| 7 | RNEG U1-24 |
| 9 | RCLK U1-23 |
| 11 | RCLK/ |

The AMI input signal should be properly coded to prevent a long run of zeros on the line. The proper code should limit the number of zeros to three. The following table shows the proper coding required:

| IC | SPEED Mbit/s | MAX zeros | CODE NAME |
|---------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 78P236 | 44.736 | 2 | B3ZS |
| 78P7200 | 44.736 | 2 | B3ZS |
| 78P2361 | 51.840 | 2 | B3ZS |
| 78P2362 | 34.368 | 3 | HDB3 |

The demo board may be loaded with components which form a discrete equalizer for very long cables (R11, R12, R13, C31, L10). The AMI input signal to the IC can be monitored using a high impedance FET probe (TEKTRONIX P4064 or HP 1141A) connected to the TP14, TP15 pair.

The input signal is coupled through a 1:1 wideband transformer. The following table shows some of the suggested manufacturers of this part:

| MANUFACTURER | PART NO. |
|-------------------|-----------|
| Pulse Engineering | PE-65966 |
| Coilcraft | WB1010-PC |
| Mini Circuit | T1-1 |

The AMI line is terminated at 75 ohms using R10.

Table 1 shows the required external components for different ICs used for receiving AMI signals at different speeds. Resistor R2 sets the center frequency of the oscillator. Capacitor C6 is used to bypass any noise on R2. Resistors R3, R20 and capacitor C26 controls the jitter characteristic of the IC.

SINGLE ENDED INPUT

It is possible to directly couple the IC to the AMI signal without a transformer using two capacitors (C29, C30) for isolation. In this case jumpers in locations R11, R12 should be cut and the transformer T1 should be bypassed by connecting pins 1 to 6 and 3 to 4 at the back of the demo board. The minimum input level should be higher than the transformer coupled circuit. The positive effect of the transformer in rejecting common mode noise is not achieved in this case.

TRANSMIT SIGNAL PATH

The IC accepts CMOS level NRZ logical inputs (TCLK, TPOS, TNEG) and converts them to the proper AMI signal. As shown in Table 2, the three position switch S3 and jumpers JP1, 5, 6 allow selection of different sources for these logical signals. In its simplest case, placing S3 in the bottom position allows a digital loopback. The following table shows the test points and J5 edge connector pins used for the transmitter.

The outputs of the IC, LOUT+ and LOUT-, are connected

| J5 PIN | TEST POINT |
|--------|----------------------|
| 15 | TCLK clock input |
| 17 | TNEG negative data |
| 19 | TPOS positive data |
| 19 | TDATA composite data |

to a 1:1:1 wideband transformer. The following table shows some of the suggested transmitter transformers:

The transformer center tap is connected to the +5V

| MANUFACTURER | PART NO. |
|-------------------|----------|
| Pulse Engineering | PE-65969 |
| Minicircuit | T4-1 |

supply through a filter comprised of a 4.7 μ H inductor and a 0.1 μ F capacitor. The capacitor C27, when added to the PC board trace and the transformer input capacitances, will effect the pulse shape. This capacitor should be selected for individual PC boards. The objective is to meet a pulse template at any cable length up to a maximum of 450 feet. The generated AMI signal is available on the BNC connector, J11, and it can be monitored on TP12, TP13 pair using a high impedance probe.

OPTION PINS CONTROL

Switch S1 changes the logic level of the option pins on the IC which controls the transmitter. Table 3 shows the function of this switch.

PERFORMING TESTS WITH DEMO BOARD

The general test setup using the demo board is shown in Figure 2. When the switch S3 is placed in its bottom position (loopback), the receiver logical output signals (RCLK, RPOS, RNEG) from the IC are connected to the transmitter logical input (TCLK, TPOS, TNEG). As a result, the received AMI signal is transmitted back to the test equipment. Bit error rate testing will indicate the ability of the IC to receive and transmit the AMI signal with no errors.

As shown in Figure 2, 450 feet of 75 ohm coaxial cable (type RG59B) and resistive attenuation is inserted in the receive path to exercise the IC for its lowest input level. The following tests are performed on the receiver:

BIT ERROR RATE TEST

A pseudo-random pattern is generated by the test equipment. This pattern is created using a shift register of N bits. Preventing an all zero pattern, a combination of 2**N-1 patterns of N bits is created in a random manner. This pattern is used to simulate the live traffic on the AMI line. The following table shows the mostly used patterns to test the IC:

| IC | RANDOM PATTERN | FIXED PATTERN |
|---------|----------------|---------------|
| 78P236 | 2**15-1 | 100100... |
| 78P7200 | 2**15-1 | 100100... |
| 78P2361 | 2**15-1 | 100100... |
| 78P2362 | 2**23-1 | 10001000 |

When running these patterns, no bit errors are expected in the absence of any noise. The test is repeated for fixed patterns to exercise the IC for any pattern sensitivity.

JITTER TOLERANCE

Telecommunication equipments should be able to recover clock and correct data even if the AMI signal includes a reasonable amount of timing jitter. For this test, the test equipment adds jitter to the random AMI signal. For jitter at a set frequency, the amplitude of the jitter is slowly increased until bit errors are observed. This process is repeated at different frequencies and a plot of the maximum tolerated jitter vs the jitter frequency is made as shown in Figure 3. The IC should tolerate jitter in excess of specified requirements.

SSI 78P236/2361/2362/7200

Demo Board

INTRINSIC JITTER

The jitter generated by the IC in the absence of any jitter on its transmitter logical input (TCLK, TPOS TNEG), should be minimal.

JITTER TRANSFER FUNCTION

The IC should not cause any amplification of the system jitter, i.e., no peaking should be observed in the jitter transfer function. This objective is achieved by selecting the PLL filter components for an overdamped response. The test equipment adds jitter to the AMI signal received by the IC. Measuring the jitter transmitted by the IC in the digital loopback mode indicates the shape of the transfer function. As shown in Figure 4, the IC adds no peaking and higher frequency jitter is attenuated.

TRANSMITTER TESTS

The AMI pulse generated by the IC can be tested for its shape, amplitude and frequency content over different lengths of cable. The demo board is usually placed in the loopback mode (S3 in bottom position).

PULSE FREQUENCY CONTENTS

For an AMI signal with an all ones pattern, the transmitted signal should have a frequency spectrum with the main component at half of the bit rate. The signal power at the harmonics including the component at the bit rate should be at least 20 dB lower than the main component. A spectrum analyzer is used for this purpose.

PULSE AMPLITUDE

The pulse amplitude for a pattern of 100100... is measured at different cable lengths by connecting the end of the cable to the scope using a 75 ohm termination adaptor (POMONA 4119). Except for the 78P2362, whose transmitted pulse amplitude is needed to be fairly exact ($2 \text{ Vp-p} \pm 5\%$), other IC's transmit amplitude may fall in a wide range of amplitudes from 0.72 to 1.7 Vp-p.

PULSE TEMPLATE

The shape of the signal is examined by comparing it to the published templates. The test setup is shown in Figure 2. The program resident in the computer reads the transmitter waveform from the scope, scales it vertically, and plots it together with the published template masks. The pulse shape should meet the mask for all cable lengths from zero to 450 feet. The LBO pin as controlled by switch S1-1 should be properly set. For cable length of less than 225 feet this switch is open and for longer cables this switch should be closed. A typical pulse shapes for the 78P236 at the end of 450 feet of cable is shown in Figure 5.

PULSE IMBALANCE

The AMI pulse generated by the IC includes pulses of both negative and positive polarities. The pulse imbalance is examined by inverting the negative pulse using the scope and overlaying it on a typical positive pulse. No significant imbalance is observed.

TABLE 1: External Components List for Different ICs

| Data sheet ref. -> | | RFO | RLF1 | RLF2 | CLF1 | RTR | RTT | CTT |
|--------------------|--------|------------|------------|------------|---------------|----------|----------|-----|
| Demo board ref. -> | | R2 | R3 | R20 | C26 | R10 | R6 | C2 |
| Unit -> | | k Ω | k Ω | k Ω | μF | Ω | Ω | pF |
| 78P236 | 44.736 | 5.23 | 20 | 100 | 0.22 | 75 | None | 10 |
| 78P7200 | 44.736 | 5.23 | 6.04 | 100 | 0.22 | 75 | 301 | 10 |
| 78P2361 | 51.840 | 4.53 | 20 | 100 | 0.22 | 75 | None | 10 |
| 78P2362 | 34.368 | 6.81 | 20 | 100 | 0.22 | 75 | None | 5 |

SSI 78P236/2361/2362/7200 Demo Board

TABLE 2: Sources of the Transmitter Logical Signals

| Switch | Source of: TPOS/TNEG | | Source of: TCLK | | Polarity of: TCLK | |
|--------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|------------|----------------------|------------|
| | | | JP5 2-1 | JP5 2-3 | JP1 2-1 | JP1 2-3 |
| Top | | External | RCLK | EXT | Buffered | Inverted |
| Middle | JP6 2-1 | Converted from TDATA | RCLK | EXT | Buffered | Inverted |
| | JP6 2-3 | Internally generated | RCLK | EXT | Buffered | Inverted |
| Bottom | | RPOS / RNEG | RCLK | RCLK | RCLK | RCLK |

TABLE 3: Function of the DIP Switch S1

| Position | IC Pin | Function | Open | Closed |
|----------|--------|----------------------------------|----------|--------------|
| S1-1 | LBO | TX cable length | L < 225' | L > 225' |
| S1-2 | OPT1 | TX amplitude | Normal | Boost 2.7 dB |
| S1-3 | OPT2 | TX disable | Enable | Disable |
| S1-4 | None | test pattern JP6 2-3, S3 Mid. | 1010 ... | 111 ... |

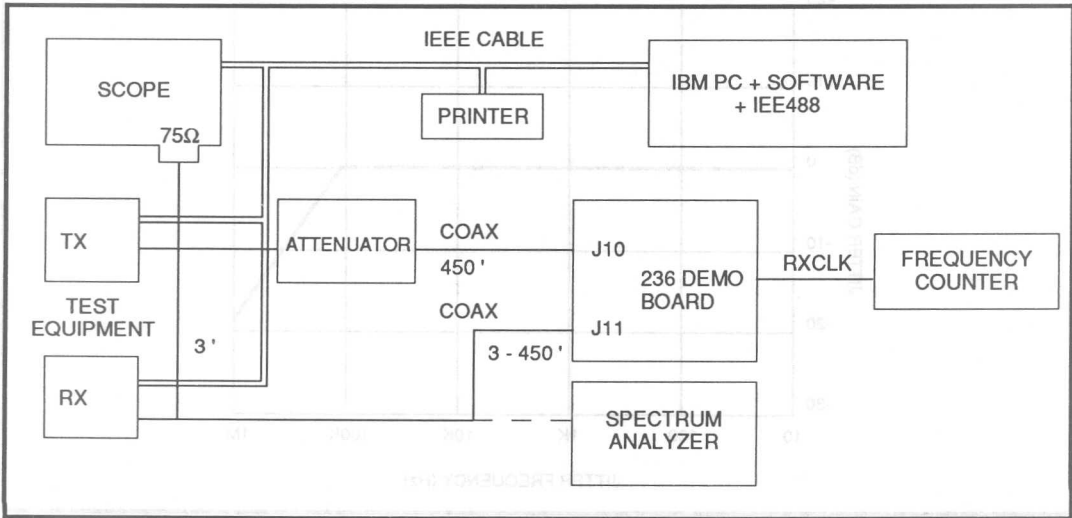


FIGURE 2: General Test Setup

SSI 78P236/2361/2362/7200

Demo Board

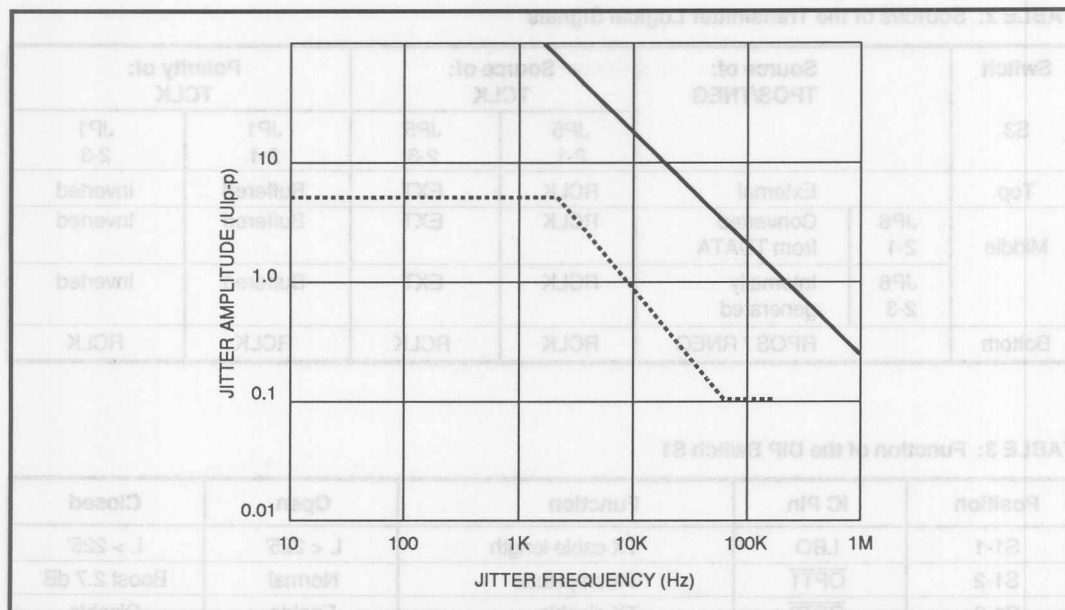


FIGURE 3: Jitter Tolerance for 78P236

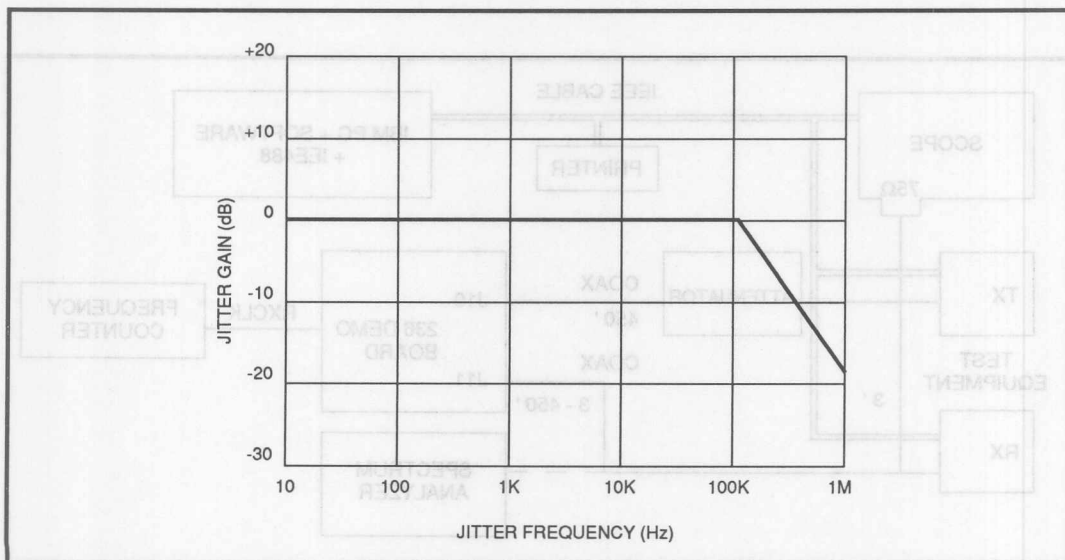


FIGURE 4: 78P236 Jitter Transfer Function
Loop Filter BW = 165 kHz

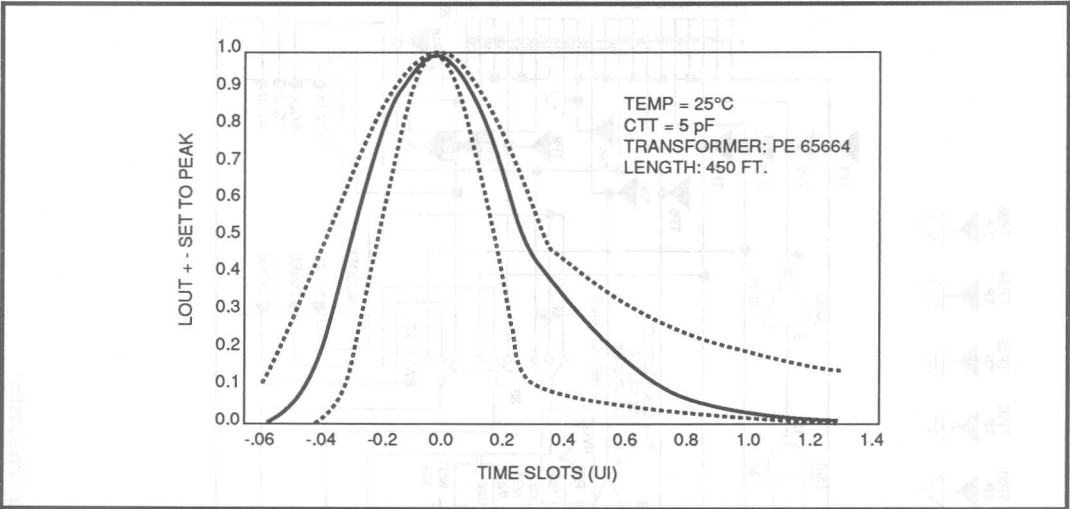


FIGURE 5: Transmitter Pulse Shape for 78P236

SSI 78P236/2361/2362/7200 Demo Board

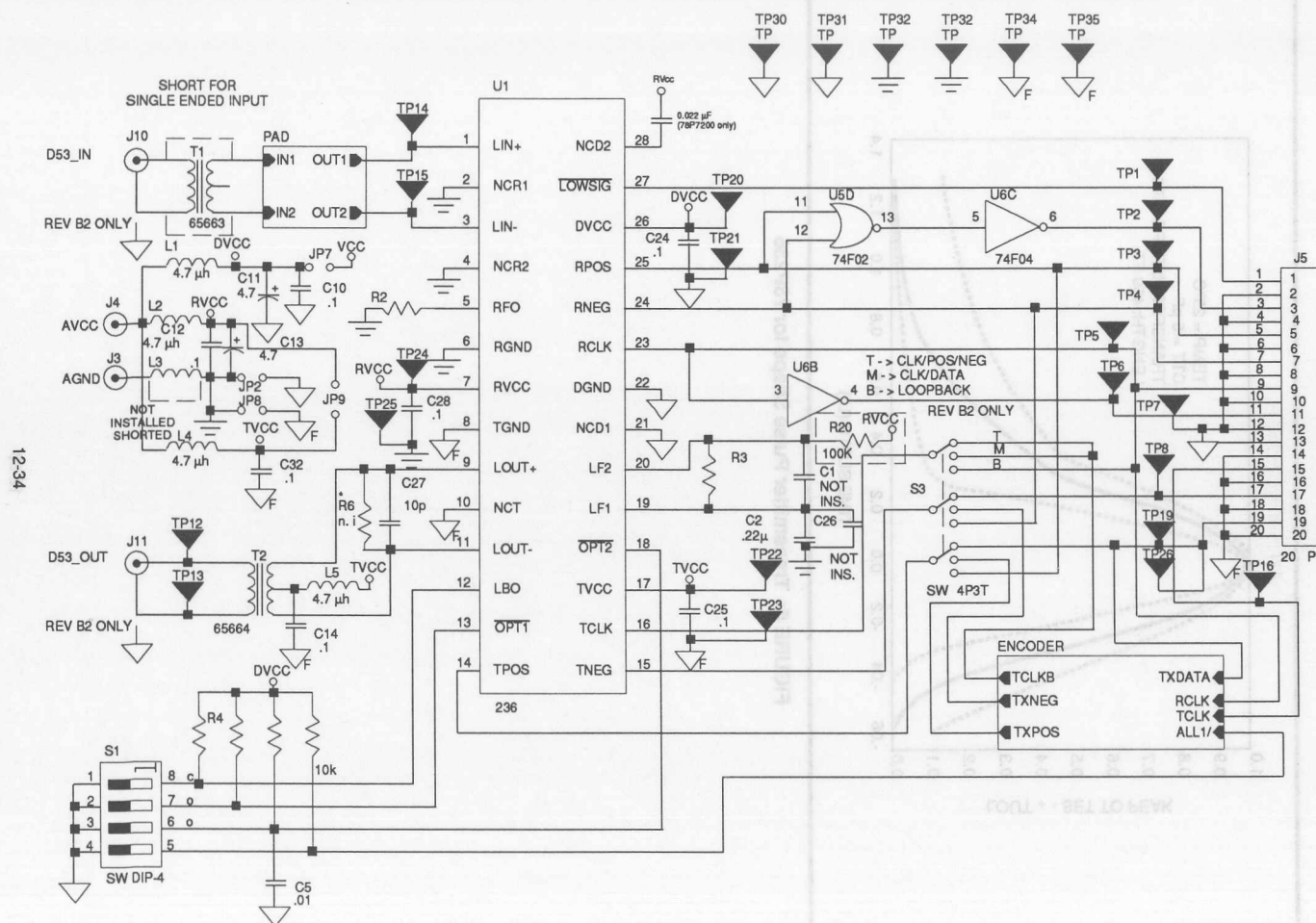


FIGURE 6: Demo Board Schematics

SSI 78P236/2361/2362/7200
Demo Board

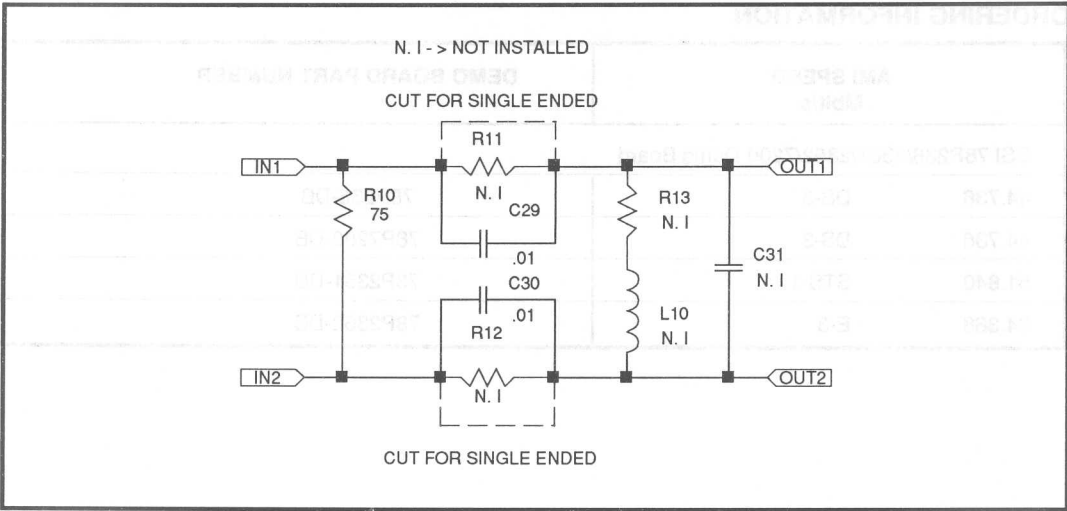


FIGURE 7: Pad / Equalizer

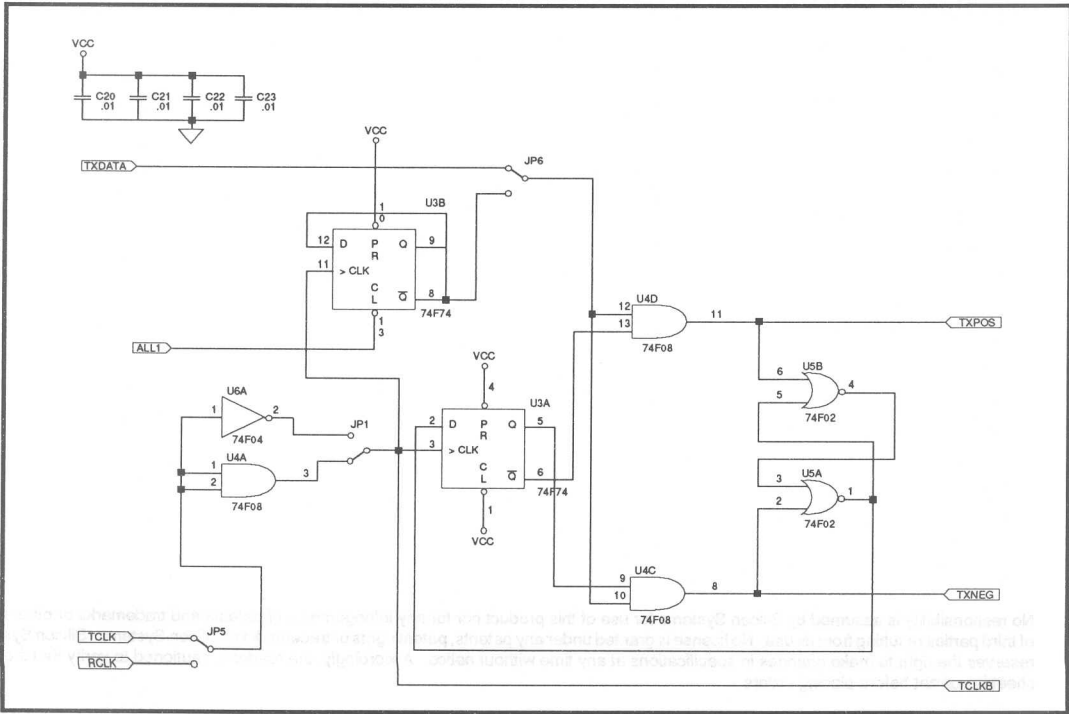
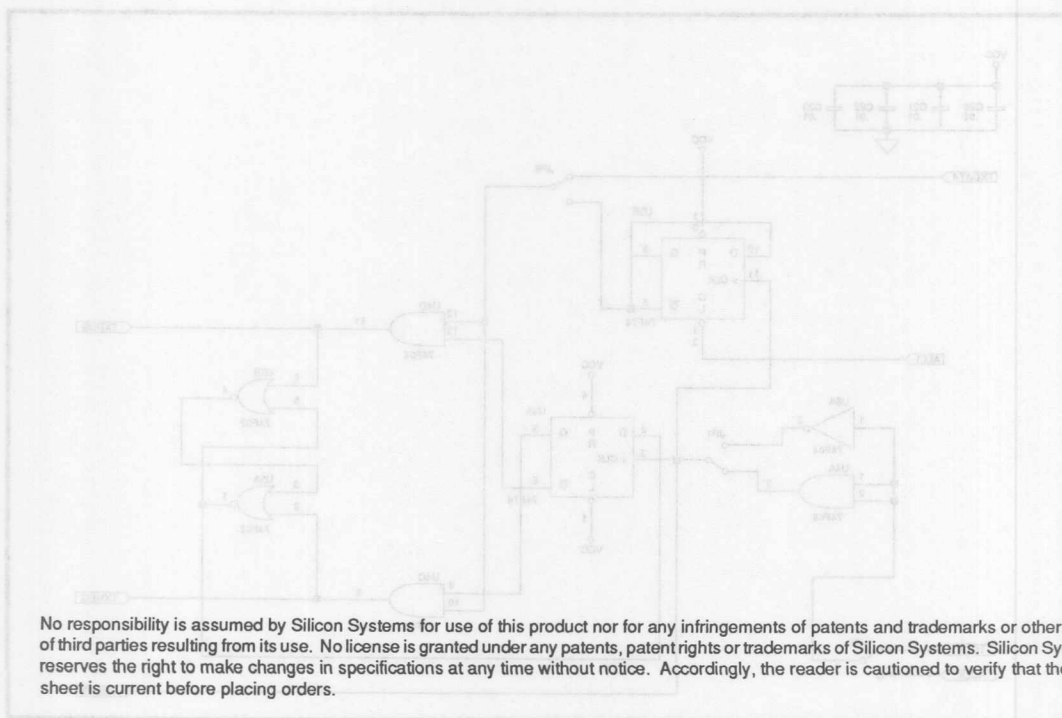


FIGURE 8: Encoder

SSI 78P236/2361/2362/7200 Demo Board

ORDERING INFORMATION

| AMI SPEED Mbit/s | | DEMO BOARD PART NUMBER |
|--------------------------------------|-------|------------------------|
| SSI 78P236/2361/2362/7200 Demo Board | | |
| 44.736 | DS-3 | 78P236-DB |
| 44.736 | DS-3 | 78P7200-DB |
| 51.840 | STS-1 | 78P2361-DB |
| 34.368 | E-3 | 78P2362-DB |



Silicon Systems, Inc. 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX (714) 573-6914

November 1993

DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78Q8330 Demo Board is the evaluation vehicle for Silicon Systems' low power 78Q8330 Ethernet Transceiver IC. This board is designed to be connected to 10Base-2 thin coax cable that complies with the IEEE 802.3 standard for Local Area Networks. The board can be used as a transceiver unit and tied to a network interface board through an AUI cable of up to 50 meters in length.

The SSI 78Q8330 works with thick coax cable (10Base-5) but different connection hardware must be used in such an application. Contact Silicon Systems' application engineering for more information.

Figure 2 shows a typical application with three systems already connected to the Ethernet 10Base-2 network. The Ethernet cable is then connected to the Demo Board at the BNC connector (BNC1). A 50Ω termination resistor must be placed at last station. The three pairs of differential signals (DI+/DI- data into the DTE, DO+/DO- data out of the DTE and CI+/CI- control into the DTE) are available at test points and at the

15-pin AUI cable. The AUI cable can be connected to a network interface board in the DTE. Please be sure that the network interface board is properly configured (either jumpers or software) to accept AUI (external) interface rather than an on-board (internal 10Base-2 or 10Base-T) interface.

FEATURES

- Evaluation board for low power 10Base-2/10Base-5 transceiver
- Provides AUI port to connect to a network card
- Jumpers for easy change of heartbeat feature
- Test points to measure data to/from DTE using scopes

BLOCK DIAGRAM

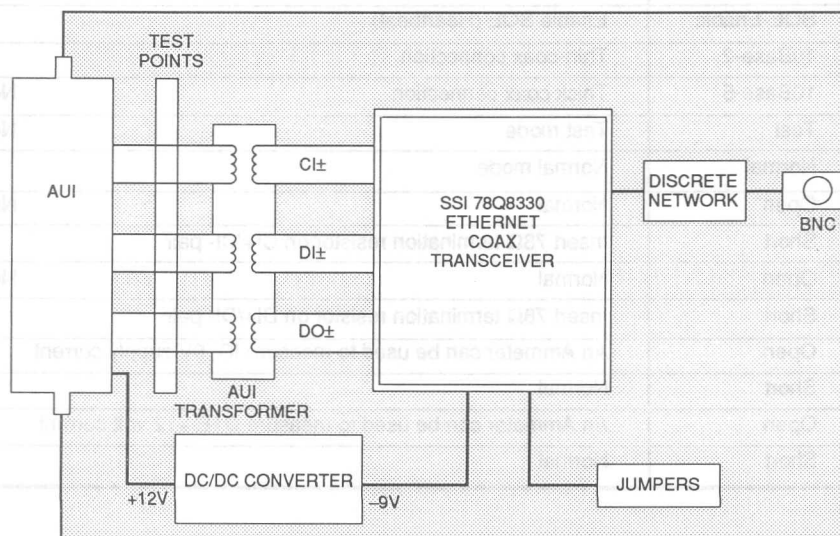


FIGURE 1: SSI 78Q8330 Demo Board Block Diagram

SSI 78Q8330 Ethernet Transceiver Demo Board

Application Note

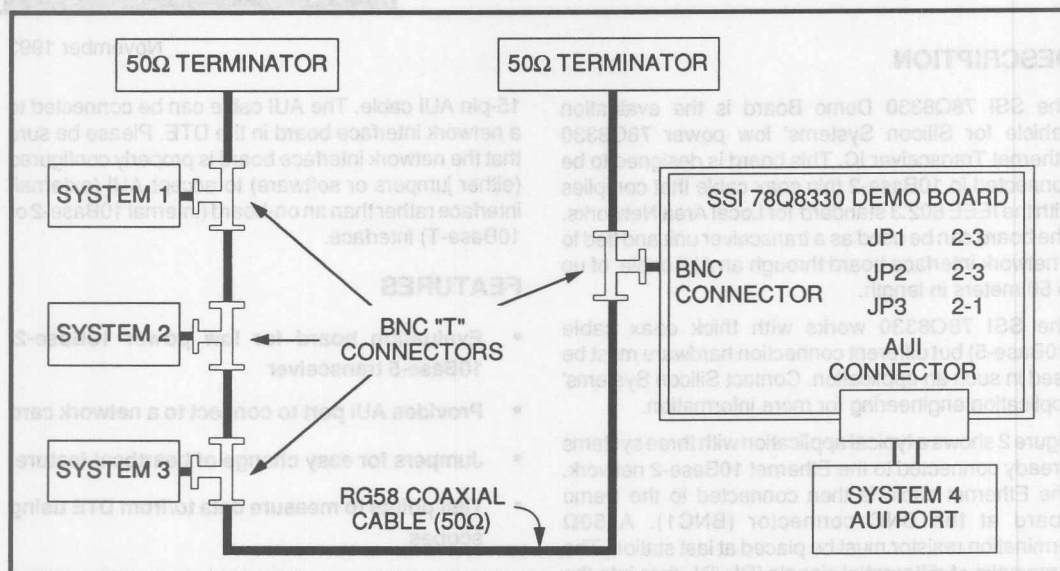


FIGURE 2: Silicon Systems' Typical LAN Connection Using Demo Board

TABLE 1: Jumper Description

| JUMPER | CONNECTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|-------------|---|
| JP1 | SQE-Disable | Disable SQE (Heartbeat) Note 1 |
| | SQE-Enable | Enable SQE (Heartbeat) |
| JP2 | 10Base-2 | Thin-coax connection |
| | 10Base-5 | Thick coax connection Note 2 |
| JP3 | Test | Test mode Note 3 |
| | Normal | Normal mode |
| JP4 | Open | Normal Note 4 |
| | Short | Insert 78Ω termination resistor on CI+/CI- pair |
| JP5 | Open | Normal Note 4 |
| | Short | Insert 78Ω termination resistor on DI+/DI- pair |
| JP6 | Open | An Ammeter can be used to measure IC -9V supply current |
| | Short | Normal |
| JP7 | Open | An Ammeter can be used to measure DTE +12 volt current |
| | Short | Normal |

Application Note

TABLE 1: Jumper Description (continued)

| JUMPER | CONNECTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|------------|--|
| JP8 | Open | This jumper is used to monitor IC -9V supply voltage. Top pin is -9V (VEE) and Bottom pin is GND (VCC) |
| | Short | ILLEGAL CONNECTION |
| NOTE: (1) SQE (heartbeat) inserts a 10 MHz signal on the CI+/CI- lines at the end of each transmission. The signal is used by the DTE for checking the transceiver. This option must be disabled if the transceiver is connected to a repeater device. | | |
| (2) Contact Silicon Systems CIPD Application Engineering for more information on interface to thick coax (10Base-5). | | |
| (3) Place jumper in NORMAL mode. | | |
| (4) If on-board termination resistance is used, disconnect the AUI cable to avoid double termination. | | |

SSI 78Q8330 Ethernet Transceiver Demo Board

Application Note

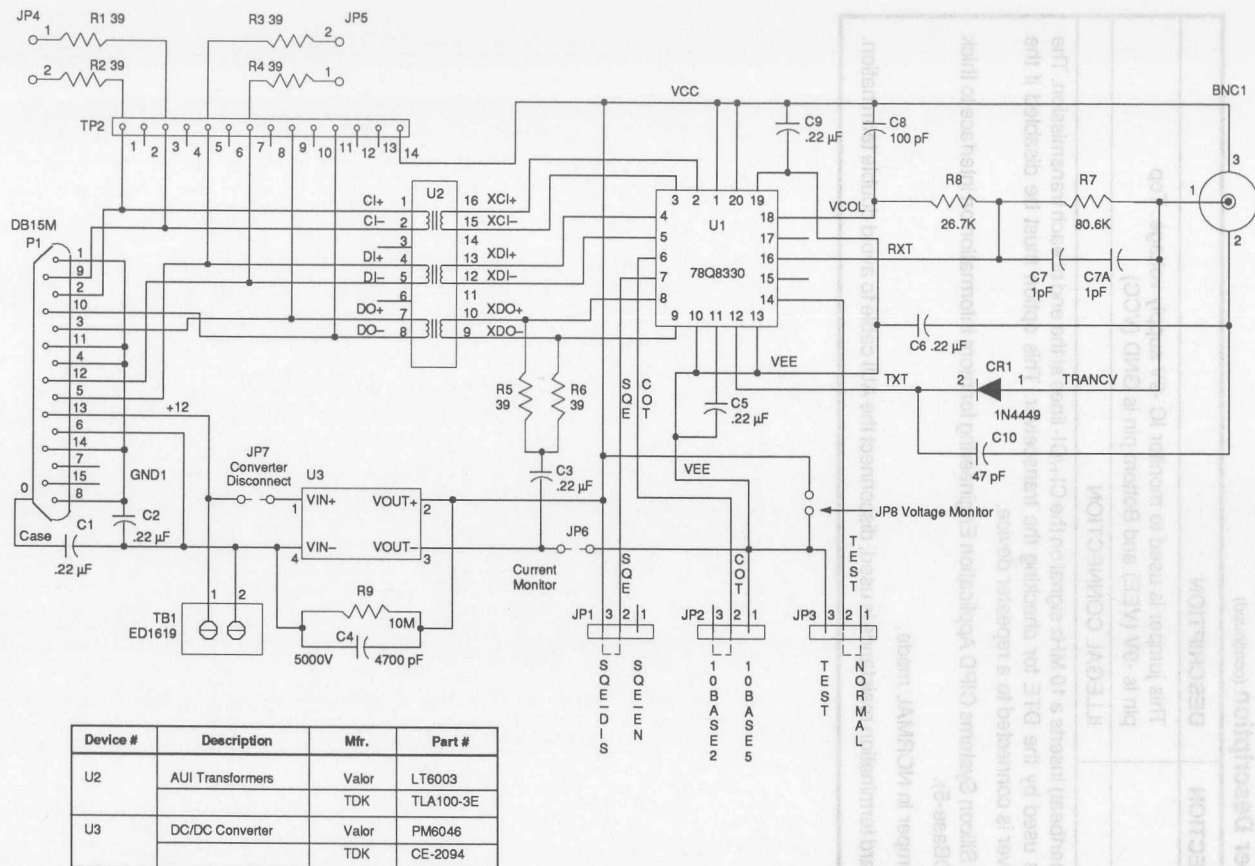


FIGURE 3: Schematics of 78Q8330 Demo Board

SSI 78Q8370

Technical Reference Guide



DISCLAIMER

THIS MANUAL IS INTENDED TO BE USED AS A GUIDE ONLY. Silicon Systems does not warrant any of the schematics shown or code segments provided to be qualified for production. No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use or installation of the products described herein, nor any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice.

221 7808370

221 7808370

Technical Reference Guide



DISCLAIMER

THIS MANUAL IS INTENDED TO BE USED AS A GUIDE ONLY. Silicon Systems does not warrant any of the schematics shown or code segments provided as qualified for production. No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use or installation of the products described herein, nor any infringement of patents and trademarks or copyrights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14851 Hybrid Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022 (714) 573-8000, FAX (714) 573-8814

0104

1 OVERVIEW

1.1 INTRODUCTION

The SSI 78Q8370 is a device for Ethernet LAN applications that consists of an Ethernet protocol controller, Manchester Encoder/Decoder, 10BaseT transceiver, AUI port, and PCMCIA Bus Interface logic on one chip. This document contains detailed descriptions of key parts of the protocol controller block, namely, the Buffer Manager block and the Data Link Controller block, along with bit descriptions of all of the control and status registers. In addition, there is information on the power management capabilities of the SSI 78Q8370, how to configure the part for host and medium connections, information about how a host processor would handle packet transmission and reception on a network, and descriptions of the media interfaces (10BaseT and AUI) and PCMCIA Bus Interface. For detailed pin descriptions, electrical and timing parameters, please refer to the SSI 78Q8370 Data Sheet.

1.2 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The SSI 78Q8370 combines the Ethernet network interface together with packet data management and consists of six major blocks:

- Buffer Manager (and SRAM Interface)
- Data Link Controller
- Host/PCMCIA Interface
- Manchester data Encoder/Decoder (ENDEC)
- Twisted-pair Transceiver
- Power Management

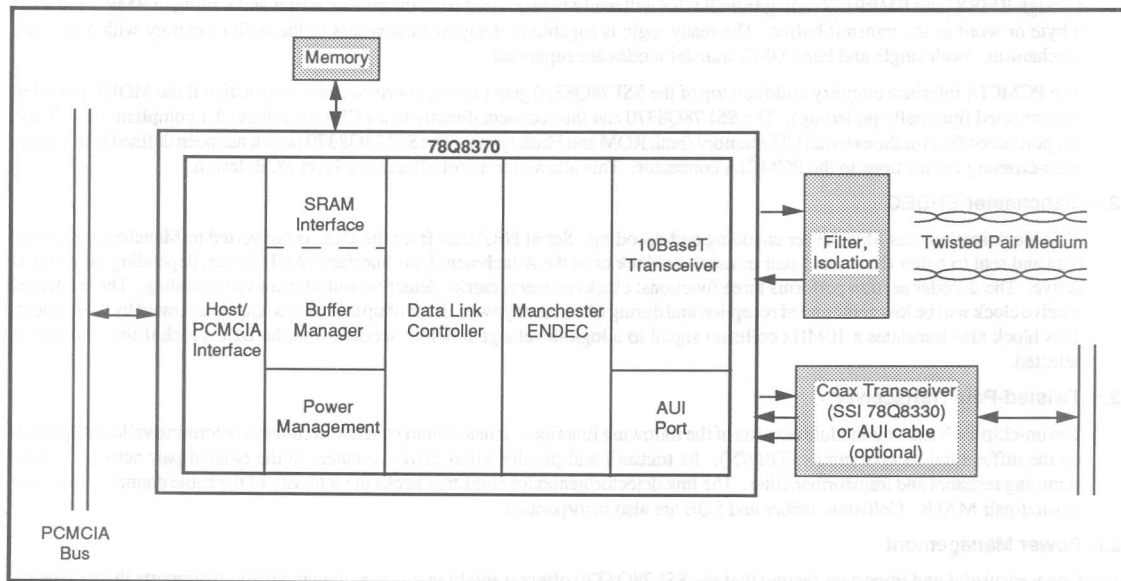


Figure 1-1: Block Diagram (78Q8370)

1.2.1 Buffer Manager

The Buffer Manager manages all accesses to the buffer memory through the SRAM interface. The buffer memory is connected directly to the Data Link Controller (DLC), thus eliminating the need for a local microprocessor. The Buffer Manager also keeps track of all buffer memory pointers automatically; simplifying the software driver task. Together with intelligent arbitration, the SSI 78Q8370 is a high performance LAN controller.

The buffer memory is divided into a transmit memory section and a receive memory section. The transmit memory section can be partitioned into 2K, 4K, 8K or 16Kbyte buffer sizes. If the transmit buffer size is greater than 2KB, then the transmit buffer is

1.2.1 Buffer Manager (continued)

configured into two banks of equal size. There is only one transmit bank if a 2KB buffer size is selected. With the two bank configuration, one transmit bank may be tied up during transmission but the host can still continue to load data packets into the second transmit bank to be transmitted later. The receive buffer has a ring architecture which can be configured from 4K to 62KB depending on the buffer memory configuration, which can range in size from 8K to 64KB.

A central arbitrator inside the Buffer Manager prioritizes and services requests for access to the buffer memory from four sources: the Transmitter, the Receiver, Host Read and Host Write. If necessary, the SSI 78Q8370 will assert a 'not ready' handshake to the host while servicing the Transmitter and/or Receiver. The SSI 78Q8370 arbitration mechanism provides packet management by interleaving packet data accesses to the buffer memory such that the operation appears to be simultaneous.

For instance, in the situation where 2 transmit banks are configured, the host can load the first transmit bank and initiate a transmission. While the first transmit bank is being transmitted, the host can continue to load packets in the second transmit bank. At this stage, the SSI 78Q8370 can potentially be receiving data from the medium and loading it into the receive buffer (if the SSI 78Q8370 is in a loopback mode or if self-reception occurs).

1.2.2 Data Link Controller

The Data Link Controller (DLC) implements the ISO/ANSI/IEEE 8802-3 CSMA/CD protocol. It consists of a Transmitter and a Receiver, each with its own independent CRC logic. Automatic generation and stripping of the 64-bit preamble and the 32-bit CRC code are provided on-chip.

1.2.3 Host/PCMCIA Interface

The Host Interface provides connection to the host system. It consists of the various registers, DMA circuits and ready logic. Both word and byte interfaces are supported as well as big endian and little endian data ordering. Host access to the buffer memory is through BMR8 (and BMR9). Reading from BMR8 will read a byte or word from the receive buffer and writing to BMR8 will write a byte or word to the transmit buffer. The ready logic is capable of delaying host access to the buffer memory with a time-out mechanism. Both single and burst DMA transfer modes are supported.

The PCMCIA interface circuitry builds on top of the SSI 78Q8370 generic host interface and is only active if the MODE pin is left unconnected (internally pulled-up). The SSI 78Q8370 can thus connect directly to a PCMCIA release 2.1 compliant bus. It also supports decoding for the external CIS memory (both ROM and Flash types). The SSI 78Q8370 pinout has been defined to minimize criss-crossing connections to the PCMCIA connector. This allows for a cost effective 2-layer PCB design.

1.2.4 Manchester ENDEC

This block implements Manchester encoding and decoding. Serial NRZ data from the DLC is converted to Manchester encoded data and sent to either the twisted-pair transceiver block or to the Attachment Unit Interface (AUI) driver, depending on which is active. The decoder section performs three functions: clock recovery, carrier detection and Manchester decoding. The recovered receive clock will be low at the end of reception and during idle to save power. Jitter of up to ± 18 nsec can be tolerated by the decoder. This block also translates a 10MHz collision signal to a logic-level signal before sending it to the DLC block if the AUI port is selected.

1.2.5 Twisted-Pair Transceiver

The on-chip Twisted-Pair module consists of the following functions. It has a smart squelch circuitry to determine valid data present on the differential receive inputs (TPIP/N). Its transmit and pre-distortion drivers connect to the twisted-pair network via the summing resistors and transformer/filter. The link detector/generator circuitry checks the integrity of the cable connection the two twisted-pair MAUs. Collision, jabber and SQE are also incorporated.

1.2.6 Power Management

One very useful and important feature that the SSI 78Q8370 offers is intelligent power management. It supports three different power saving modes: Intelligent, Standby, and Full Shutdown. All modes are configurable through registers. In the Intelligent mode, clocks are active only when they are needed. For example, when not transmitting, the clock supplied to the transmitter circuit in the DLC block is not active while host read from buffer memory may be active. In Standby mode, the oscillator clock is disconnected from the rest of the circuits, so that only the oscillator circuits draw power. Full Shutdown turns off the oscillator, resulting in maximum power savings. Note that this mode is not available when using an external clock source.

1.2.7 Pin Assignments

Following are the pin assignments for both the QFP and TQFP versions of the SSI 78Q8370.

TABLE 1: Pin Assignment Table - PCMCIA Bus Mode - 100-Pin TQFP

| PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE |
|------|-------------------|------|------|---------------------|------|------|------------------|------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1 | D1 | IO4 | 26 | \overline{OE} | I | 51 | RA4 | O4 | 76 | DON | AO |
| 2 | D8 | IO4U | 27 | \overline{WE} | I | 52 | RA5 | O4 | 77 | DOP | AO |
| 3 | D0 | IO4 | 28 | \overline{INPACK} | O4 | 53 | RA6 | O4 | 78 | AGND | P |
| 4 | A0 | I | 29 | \overline{REG} | I | 54 | GND | P | 79 | REXT | R |
| 5 | A1 | I | 30 | \overline{ROMG} | O4 | 55 | VDD | P | 80 | AVDD | P |
| 6 | A2 | I | 31 | \overline{FCE} | O4 | 56 | RA7 | O4 | 81 | TPIN | AI |
| 7 | A3 | I | 32 | \overline{XPD} | O4 | 57 | RA12 | O4 | 82 | TPIP | AI |
| 8 | RESET | SI | 33 | XRST | O4 | 58 | RA14 | O4 | 83 | MODE | TI |
| 9 | VDD | P | 34 | GND | P | 59 | \overline{RWE} | O4 | 84 | DIN | AI |
| 10 | GND | P | 35 | RD0 | IO4U | 60 | RA13 | O4 | 85 | DIP | AI |
| 11 | \overline{IOWR} | I | 36 | RD1 | IO4U | 61 | RA8 | O4 | 86 | CIN | AI |
| 12 | \overline{IORD} | I | 37 | RD2 | IO4U | 62 | RA9 | O4 | 87 | CIP | AI |
| 13 | $\overline{CE2}$ | I | 38 | RD3 | IO4U | 63 | RA11 | O4 | 88 | GND | P |
| 14 | D15 | IO4U | 39 | RD4 | IO4U | 64 | \overline{ROE} | O4 | 89 | SPKRIN | SI |
| 15 | $\overline{CE1}$ | I | 40 | RD5 | IO4U | 65 | RA15 | O4 | 90 | \overline{SPKR} | O8 |
| 16 | D14 | IO4U | 41 | RD6 | IO4U | 66 | OSCI | CI | 91 | CCRA | I |
| 17 | D7 | IO4 | 42 | RD7 | IO4U | 67 | OSCO | O | 92 | RRST | O4 |
| 18 | GND | P | 43 | GND | P | 68 | VDD | P | 93 | LEDLTR | OD16 |
| 19 | D13 | IO4U | 44 | $\overline{RCS0}$ | O4 | 69 | GND | P | 94 | CB | O4 |
| 20 | D6 | IO4 | 45 | $\overline{RCS1}$ | O4 | 70 | GND | P | 95 | $\overline{IOIS16}$ | O4 |
| 21 | D12 | IO4U | 46 | RA10 | O4 | 71 | TPDN | AO | 96 | \overline{IREQ} | O8 |
| 22 | D5 | IO4 | 47 | RA0 | O4 | 72 | TPDP | AO | 97 | \overline{WAIT} | O4 |
| 23 | D11 | IO4U | 48 | RA1 | O4 | 73 | TPON | AO | 98 | D10 | IO4U |
| 24 | D4 | IO4 | 49 | RA2 | O4 | 74 | TPOP | AO | 99 | D2 | IO4 |
| 25 | D3 | IO4 | 50 | RA3 | O4 | 75 | VDD | P | 100 | D9 | IO4U |

Legend:

- I: Input (TTL level)
- O4, O8: Output with IOL = 4 or 8 mA
- OD16: Output Open Drain with IOL = 16 mA
- IO4, IO4U: Input (TTL level) and Output with IOL = 4 mA; IO4U refers to IO4 with an internal pull-up resistor
- CI: CMOS level input
- SI: Schmitt trigger input
- TI: Three-state input. May be connected to low, high, or left open.
- AI: Analog input
- AO: Analog output
- P: Power
- R: Resistor to ground
- O: Output

TABLE 2: Pin Assignment Table - PCMCIA Bus Mode - 100-Pin QFP

| PIN # | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE |
|-------|-------------------|------|------|---------------------|------|------|------------------|------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1 | D10 | IO4U | 26 | D11 | IO4U | 51 | RA1 | O4 | 76 | TPON | AO |
| 2 | D2 | IO4 | 27 | D4 | IO4 | 52 | RA2 | O4 | 77 | TPOP | AO |
| 3 | D9 | IO4U | 28 | D3 | IO4 | 53 | RA3 | O4 | 78 | VDD | P |
| 4 | D1 | IO4 | 29 | \overline{OE} | I | 54 | RA4 | O4 | 79 | DON | AO |
| 5 | D8 | IO4U | 30 | \overline{WE} | I | 55 | RA5 | O4 | 80 | DOP | AO |
| 6 | D0 | IO4 | 31 | \overline{INPACK} | O4 | 56 | RA6 | O4 | 81 | AGND | P |
| 7 | A0 | I | 32 | \overline{REG} | I | 57 | GND | P | 82 | REXT | R |
| 8 | A1 | I | 33 | \overline{ROMG} | O4 | 58 | VDD | P | 83 | AVDD | P |
| 9 | A2 | I | 34 | \overline{FCE} | O4 | 59 | RA7 | O4 | 84 | TPIN | AI |
| 10 | A3 | I | 35 | \overline{XPD} | O4 | 60 | RA12 | O4 | 85 | TPIP | AI |
| 11 | RESET | SI | 36 | XRST | O4 | 61 | RA14 | O4 | 86 | MODE | TI |
| 12 | VDD | P | 37 | GND | P | 62 | \overline{RWE} | O4 | 87 | DIN | AI |
| 13 | GND | P | 38 | RD0 | IO4U | 63 | RA13 | O4 | 88 | DIP | AI |
| 14 | \overline{IOWR} | I | 39 | RD1 | IO4U | 64 | RA8 | O4 | 89 | CIN | AI |
| 15 | \overline{IORD} | I | 40 | RD2 | IO4U | 65 | RA9 | O4 | 90 | CIP | AI |
| 16 | $\overline{CE2}$ | I | 41 | RD3 | IO4U | 66 | RA11 | O4 | 91 | GND | P |
| 17 | D15 | IO4U | 42 | RD4 | IO4U | 67 | \overline{ROE} | O4 | 92 | SPKRIN | SI |
| 18 | $\overline{CE1}$ | I | 43 | RD5 | IO4U | 68 | RA15 | O4 | 93 | \overline{SPKR} | O8 |
| 19 | D14 | IO4U | 44 | RD6 | IO4U | 69 | OSCI | CI | 94 | CCRA | I |
| 20 | D7 | IO4 | 45 | RD7 | IO4U | 70 | OSCO | O | 95 | RRST | O4 |
| 21 | GND | P | 46 | GND | P | 71 | VDD | P | 96 | LEDLTR | OD16 |
| 22 | D13 | IO4U | 47 | $\overline{RCS0}$ | O4 | 72 | GND | P | 97 | CB | O4 |
| 23 | D6 | IO4 | 48 | $\overline{RCS1}$ | O4 | 73 | GND | P | 98 | $\overline{IOIS16}$ | O4 |
| 24 | D12 | IO4U | 49 | RA10 | O4 | 74 | TPDN | AO | 99 | \overline{IREQ} | O8 |
| 25 | D5 | IO4 | 50 | RA0 | O4 | 75 | TPDP | AO | 100 | WAIT | O4 |

Legend:

I: Input (TTL level)

O4, O8: Output with IOL = 4 or 8 mA

OD16: Output Open Drain with IOL = 16 mA

IO4, IO4U: Input (TTL level) and Output with IOL = 4 mA; IO4U refers to IO4 with an internal pull-up resistor

CI: CMOS level input

SI: Schmitt trigger input

TI: Three-state input. May be connected to low, high, or left open.

AI: Analog input

AO: Analog output

P: Power

R: Resistor to ground

O: Output

TABLE 3: Pin Assignment Table - Generic Bus Mode - 100-Pin TQFP

| PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE |
|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|
| 1 | HD1 | IO4 | 26 | RD8 | IO4U | 51 | RA4 | O4 | 76 | DON | AO |
| 2 | HD8 | IO4U | 27 | RD9 | IO4U | 52 | RA5 | O4 | 77 | DOP | AO |
| 3 | HD0 | IO4 | 28 | RD10 | IO4U | 53 | RA6 | O4 | 78 | AGND | P |
| 4 | HA0 | I | 29 | RD11 | IO4U | 54 | GND | P | 79 | REXT | R |
| 5 | HA1 | I | 30 | RD12 | IO4U | 55 | VDD | P | 80 | AVDD | P |
| 6 | HA2 | I | 31 | RD13 | IO4U | 56 | RA7 | O4 | 81 | TPIN | AI |
| 7 | HA3 | I | 32 | RD14 | IO4U | 57 | RA12 | O4 | 82 | TPIP | AI |
| 8 | RESET | SI | 33 | RD15 | IO4U | 58 | RA14 | O4 | 83 | MODE | TI |
| 9 | VDD | P | 34 | GND | P | 59 | RWE | O4 | 84 | DIN | AI |
| 10 | GND | P | 35 | RD0 | IO4U | 60 | RA13 | O4 | 85 | DIP | AI |
| 11 | WR | I | 36 | RD1 | IO4U | 61 | RA8 | O4 | 86 | CIN | AI |
| 12 | RD | I | 37 | RD2 | IO4U | 62 | RA9 | O4 | 87 | CIP | AI |
| 13 | BHE | I | 38 | RD3 | IO4U | 63 | RA11 | O4 | 88 | GND | P |
| 14 | HD15 | IO4U | 39 | RD4 | IO4U | 64 | ROE | O4 | 89 | DMACK | SI |
| 15 | CS | I | 40 | RD5 | IO4U | 65 | RA15 | O4 | 90 | DMREQ | O8 |
| 16 | HD14 | IO4U | 41 | RD6 | IO4U | 66 | OSCI | CI | 91 | EOP | I |
| 17 | HD7 | IO4 | 42 | RD7 | IO4U | 67 | OSCO | O | 92 | RRST | O4 |
| 18 | GND | P | 43 | GND | IO4U | 68 | VDD | P | 93 | LEDLTR | OD16 |
| 19 | HD13 | IO4U | 44 | RCS0 | P | 69 | GND | P | 94 | CB | O4 |
| 20 | HD6 | IO4 | 45 | RCS1 | O4 | 70 | GND | P | 95 | HWOR | O4 |
| 21 | HD12 | IO4U | 46 | RA10 | O4 | 71 | TPDN | AO | 96 | INT | O8 |
| 22 | HD5 | IO4 | 47 | RA0 | O4 | 72 | TPDP | AO | 97 | READY | O4 |
| 23 | HD11 | IO4U | 48 | RA1 | O4 | 73 | TPON | AO | 98 | HD10 | IO4U |
| 24 | HD4 | IO4 | 49 | RA2 | O4 | 74 | TPOP | AO | 99 | HD2 | IO4 |
| 25 | HD3 | IO4 | 50 | RA3 | O4 | 75 | VDD | P | 100 | HD9 | IO4U |

Legend:

- I: Input (TTL level)
- O4, O8: Output with IOL = 4 or 8 mA
- OD16: Output Open Drain with IOL = 16 mA
- IO4, IO4U: Input (TTL level) and Output with IOL = 4 mA; IO4U refers to IO4 with an internal pull-up resistor
- CI: CMOS level input
- SI: Schmitt trigger input
- TI: Three-state input. May be connected to low, high, or left open.
- AI: Analog input
- AO: Analog output
- P: Power
- R: Resistor to ground
- O: Output

TABLE 4: Pin Assignment Table - Generic Bus Mode -100-Pin QFP

| PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE | PIN# | PIN NAME | TYPE |
|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|------|----------|------|
| 1 | HD10 | IO4U | 26 | HD11 | IO4U | 51 | RA1 | O4 | 76 | TPON | AO |
| 2 | HD2 | IO4 | 27 | HD4 | IO4 | 52 | RA2 | O4 | 77 | TPOP | AO |
| 3 | HD9 | IO4U | 28 | HD3 | IO4 | 53 | RA3 | O4 | 78 | VDD | P |
| 4 | HD1 | IO4 | 29 | RD8 | IO4U | 54 | RA4 | O4 | 79 | DON | AO |
| 5 | HD8 | IO4U | 30 | RD9 | IO4U | 55 | RA5 | O4 | 80 | DOP | AO |
| 6 | HD0 | IO4 | 31 | RD10 | IO4U | 56 | RA6 | O4 | 81 | AGND | P |
| 7 | HA0 | I | 32 | RD11 | IO4U | 57 | GND | P | 82 | REXT | R |
| 8 | HA1 | I | 33 | RD12 | IO4U | 58 | VDD | P | 83 | AVDD | P |
| 9 | HA2 | I | 34 | RD13 | IO4U | 59 | RA7 | O4 | 84 | TPIN | AI |
| 10 | HA3 | I | 35 | RD14 | IO4U | 60 | RA12 | O4 | 85 | TPIP | AI |
| 11 | RESET | SI | 36 | RD15 | IO4U | 61 | RA14 | O4 | 86 | MODE | TI |
| 12 | VDD | P | 37 | GND | P | 62 | RWE | O4 | 87 | DIN | AI |
| 13 | GND | P | 38 | RD0 | IO4U | 63 | RA13 | O4 | 88 | DIP | AI |
| 14 | WR | I | 39 | RD1 | IO4U | 64 | RA8 | O4 | 89 | CIN | AI |
| 15 | RD | I | 40 | RD2 | IO4U | 65 | RA9 | O4 | 90 | CIP | AI |
| 16 | BHE | I | 41 | RD3 | IO4U | 66 | RA11 | O4 | 91 | GND | P |
| 17 | HD15 | IO4U | 42 | RD4 | IO4U | 67 | ROE | O4 | 92 | DMACK | SI |
| 18 | CS | I | 43 | RD5 | IO4U | 68 | RA15 | O4 | 93 | DMREQ | O8 |
| 19 | HD14 | IO4U | 44 | RD6 | IO4U | 69 | OSCI | CI | 94 | EOP | I |
| 20 | HD7 | IO4 | 45 | RD7 | IO4U | 70 | OSCO | O | 95 | RRST | O4 |
| 21 | GND | P | 46 | GND | P | 71 | VDD | P | 96 | LEDLTR | OD16 |
| 22 | HD13 | IO4U | 47 | RCS0 | O4 | 72 | GND | P | 97 | CB | O4 |
| 23 | HD6 | IO4 | 48 | RCS1 | O4 | 73 | GND | P | 98 | HWOR | O4 |
| 24 | HD12 | IO4U | 49 | RA10 | O4 | 74 | TPDN | AO | 99 | INT | O8 |
| 25 | HD5 | IO4 | 50 | RA0 | O4 | 75 | TPDP | AO | 100 | READY | O4 |

Legend:

| | |
|------------|--|
| I: | Input (TTL level) |
| O4, O8: | Output with IOL = 4 or 8 mA |
| OD16: | Output Open Drain with IOL = 16 mA |
| IO4, IO4U: | Input (TTL level) and Output with IOL = 4 mA; IO4U refers to IO4 with an internal pull-up resistor |
| CI: | CMOS level input |
| SI: | Schmitt trigger input |
| TI: | Three-state input. May be connected to low, high, or left open. |
| AI: | Analog input |
| AO: | Analog output |
| P: | Power |
| R: | Resistor to ground |
| O: | Output |

2 BUFFER MANAGER

The Buffer Manager manages accesses to the buffer memory through the SRAM interface. The buffer memory is connected directly to the Data Link Controller (DLC), thus eliminating the need for a local microprocessor. The Buffer Manager keeps track of all buffer memory pointers automatically, simplifying the software driver task. Together with intelligent arbitration for accesses to the buffer memory, this makes the SSI 78Q8370 a high performance LAN controller.

2.1 BUFFER MEMORY CONFIGURATION

There are 13 different ways in which to configure the transmit and receiver buffer SRAM for the SSI 78Q8370. This is done using 4 register bits, $DLCR6<3:0>$. $DLCR6<1:0>$ sets the total buffer memory size and $DLCR6<3:2>$ sets the transmit buffer size. If the transmit buffer is greater than 2KBytes, it is divided into two transmit banks as shown in the table below.

| BS1 DLCR6(1) | BS0 DLCR6(0) | TS1 DLCR6(3) | TS0 DLCR6(2) | TOTAL BUFFER MEMORY | TRANSMIT BUFFER MEMORY | | RECEIVE BUFFER MEMORY |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| | | | | | TX BANK #1 | TX BANK #2 | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 8KBYTES | 2KBYTES | -- | 6KBYTES |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 8KBYTES | 2KBYTES | 2KBYTES | 4KBYTES |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | Illegal set-up | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | Illegal set-up | | | |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 16KBYTES | 2KBYTES | -- | 14KBYTES |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 16KBYTES | 2KBYTES | 2KBYTES | 12KBYTES |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 16KBYTES | 4KBYTES | 4KBYTES | 8KBYTES |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Illegal set-up | | | |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 32KBYTES | 2KBYTES | -- | 30KBYTES |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 32KBYTES | 2KBYTES | 2KBYTES | 28KBYTES |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 32KBYTES | 4KBYTES | 4KBYTES | 24KBYTES |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 32KBYTES | 8KBYTES | 8KBYTES | 16KBYTES |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 64KBYTES | 2KBYTES | -- | 62KBYTES |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 64KBYTES | 2KBYTES | 2KBYTES | 60KBYTES |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 64KBYTES | 4KBYTES | 4KBYTES | 56KBYTES |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 64KBYTES | 8KBYTES | 8KBYTES | 48KBYTES |

The remaining buffer memory that is not used by the transmit memory will be used as the receive memory. Figure 2-1 shows an example of a buffer memory configuration of 64 KBytes.

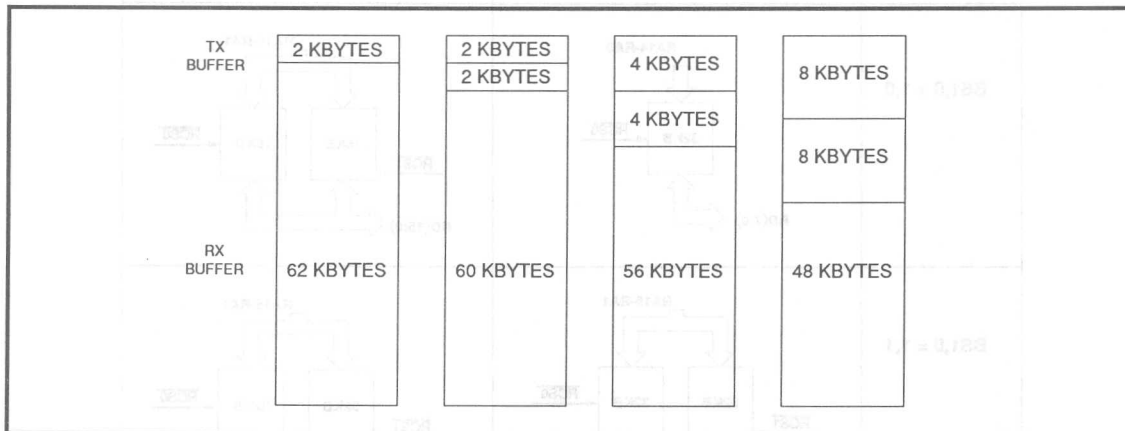


Figure 2-1: Maximum Buffer Size (64 KBytes) for Transmit and Receive Buffers

2.1 BUFFER MEMORY CONFIGURATION (continued)

The buffer memory path of the SSI 78Q8370 is 8 bits wide in PCMCIA Bus mode and can be either 8 or 16 bits wide in Generic Bus mode (The 8-bit path in PCMCIA mode is imposed due to the lack of enough pins). In the Generic Bus mode, the buffer memory data path width is selected through $DLCR6<4>$. If $DLCR6<4>$ is set to a 1, then the SSI 78Q8370 data path will be byte-wide. There are eight different SRAM configurations depending on whether the data path is 8- or 16-bit (refer to Figure 2-2). The $RCS0$ and $RCS1$ are the SRAM chip select pins. In the 8 bit-data bus for 8KByte and 32KByte configurations, only $RCS0$ is used and the address least significant bit starts from A0. Figure 2-2 shows the configurations possible for the SRAM.

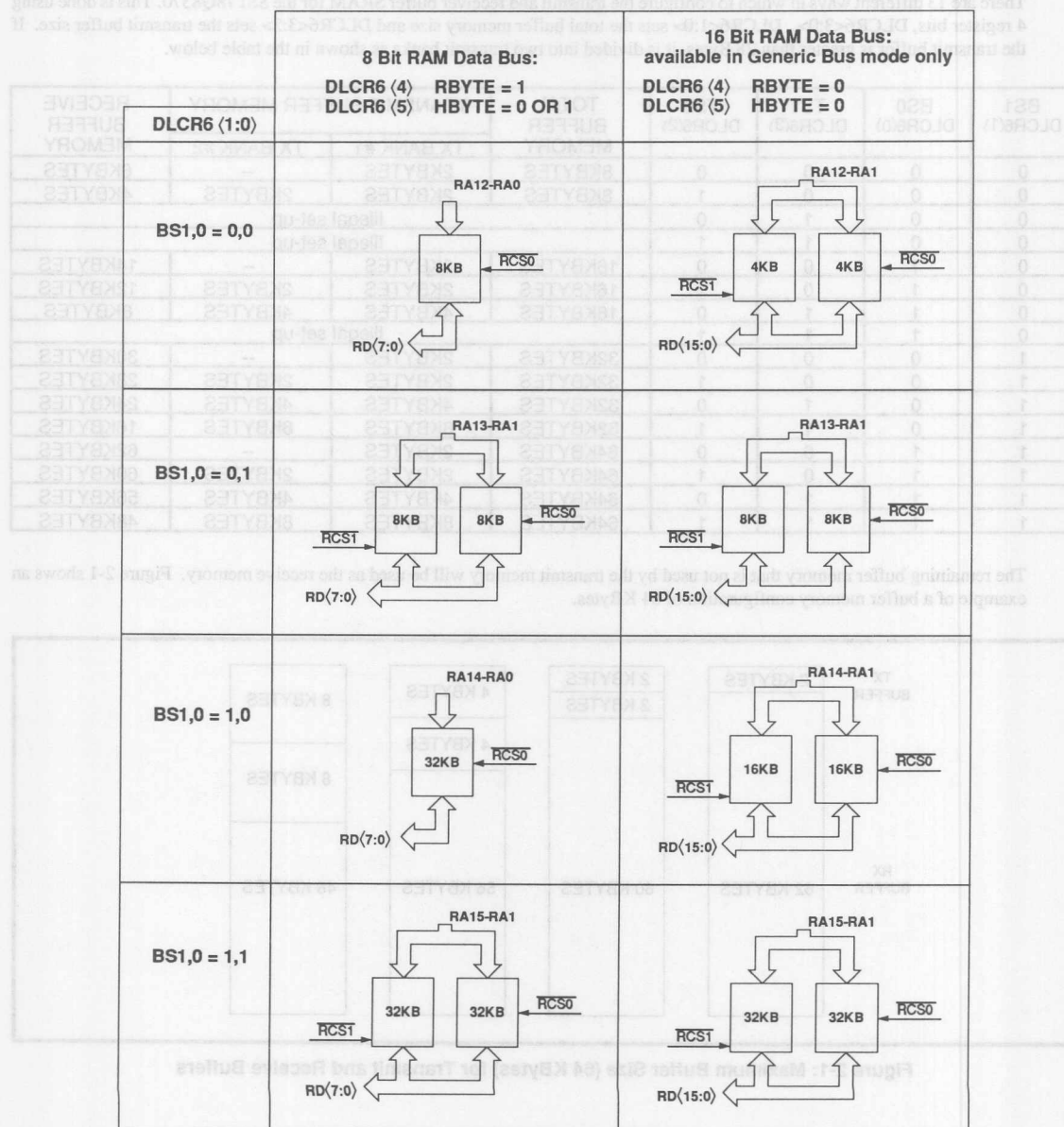


Figure 2-2: SRAM Configurations

2.2 TRANSMIT OPERATION

The SSI 78Q8370 complies with the IEEE 802.3 CSMA/CD specifications with a transfer rate of 10Mbit/s through the transmission medium. It will assemble all packets from the host and append a 64-bit preamble and a 32-bit CRC to the head and tail of each packet respectively before transmitting to the medium. As mentioned in the Buffer Memory Configuration section, one or more packets can be written by the system within a transmit memory bank until the remaining space is insufficient for another packet. The host can then issue a signal, called “Transmit start” which is stored in BMR10<7> to initiate a transmission to the medium. All packets within the same bank will thus be transmitted and followed by the status update or an interrupt if it is enabled. With the two transmit banks configuration, one bank can be transmitting and the second bank can be loading data from the system. This concurrent operation of transmitting and host writing will improve transmission throughput.

If the transmit packet encounter a collision in the medium, the SSI 78Q8370 will perform a truncated binary exponential backoff routine up to 16 attempts. After the 16th attempt, the SSI 78Q8370 will either skip the current packet or re-transmit the packet again depending on the status of BMR11<2:0>.

2.3 TRANSMIT PACKET DATA FORMAT

The packet to be transmitted is first loaded into the transmit buffer together with a 2-byte header of data length in bytes. Figure 2-3 shows an example of how 3 packets are stored within a single transmit buffer:

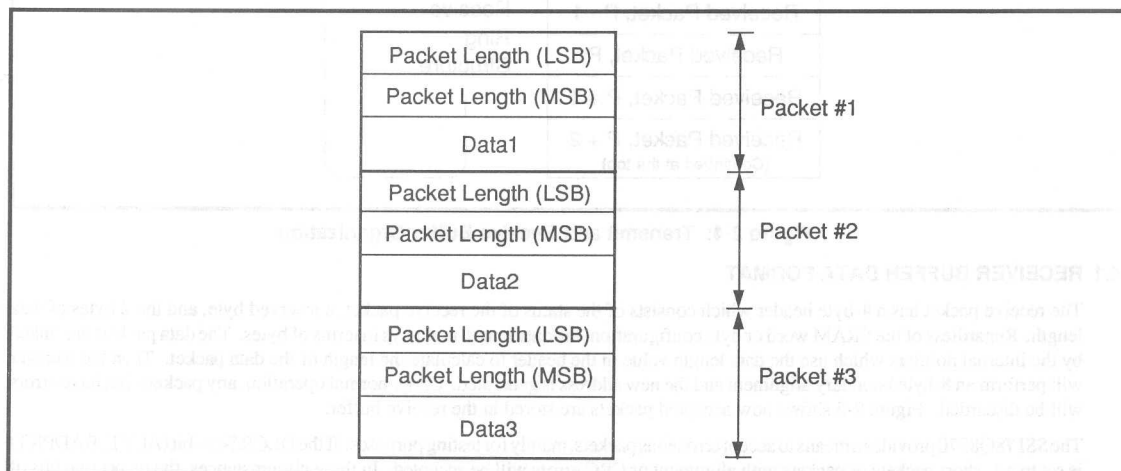


Figure 2-3: Packet Format In Transmit Buffer

After the packets are loaded, the host will write the number of packets to be transmitted into BMR10 and initiate transmission. At this stage, if a two transmit banks configuration is chosen, any new packets can now be loaded into the second bank.

2.4 RECEIVE OPERATION

The receive memory is configured as a ring structure which means the bottom of the memory is wrapped around to the top of the receive memory. There are two pointers to handle incoming packet management and they are the receive pointer and the host read pointer. The receive pointer will always point to the next empty location in the receive memory. The host read pointer is used by the host to retrieve accepted packets from the receive memory.

Initially, the values of the two pointers are equal which implies that the receive buffer is empty. As soon as data is loaded into the receive bank from the medium, the receive pointer will move away from the host read pointer. The preamble and the CRC bits are automatically removed by the data link controller (DLC) before storing the data to the receive buffer. While accepting the data, the size of the packet is checked. Under the IEEE specifications, the valid packet size is between 60 bytes to 1500 bytes (minus the preamble and CRC portions). However, if set to 1, the SSI 78Q8370 can accept packet sizes ranging from 6 bytes (by setting “accept short packet” in DLCR5<3> [ENA_SRTPKT] to a 1) to 2047 bytes. When a packet is successfully stored in the receive memory, the host can begin to read this packet. However, if there is more than one incoming packet or the packet size is too large, the receive pointer may override the host read pointer after wrapping around the ring structure. This situation is avoided with a buffer overflow flag, OVRFLO. When this flag is high, the receive pointer will not store any more data until the host read has cleared the memory.

2.4 RECEIVE OPERATION (continued)

Figure 2-4 shows the configuration of the transmit and receive buffer memory in the situation where the 2 transmit banks are selected and explains the concept of a ring architecture of the receive buffer. The received packets are stored as they are accepted by the SSI 78Q8370. The unused buffer space in the diagram shows that the host have read packets before 'Packet P-1' hence relieving that buffer space. Therefore the received packet 'Packet P+2' can be wrapped around the end of the receive buffer to the start once again.

The SSI 78Q8370 also checks the incoming packet for short packet errors, alignment errors and/or CRC errors. After one successful packet reception, the SSI 78Q8370 will perform an 8-byte re-alignment for the next packet in the receive buffer.

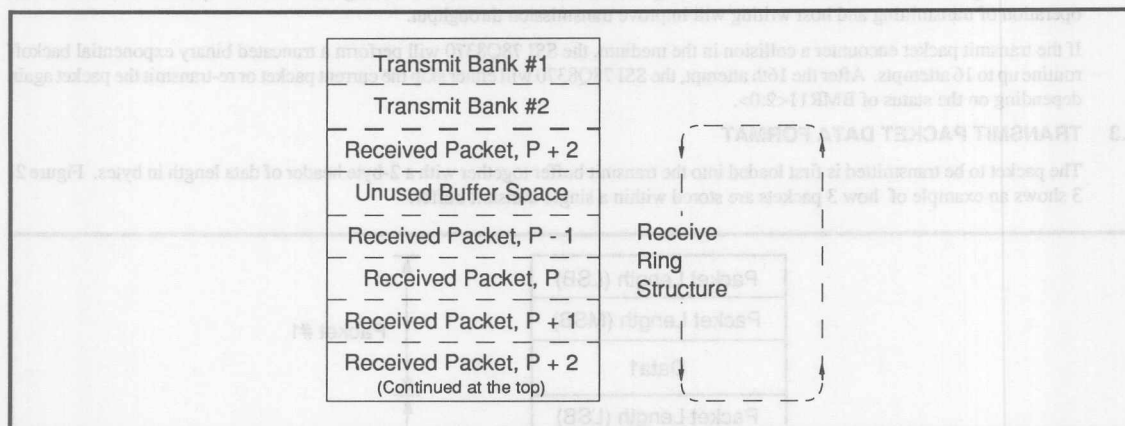


Figure 2-4: Transmit and Receive Buffer Organization

2.4.1 RECEIVER BUFFER DATA FORMAT

The receive packet has a 4-byte header which consists of the status of the receive packet, a reserved byte, and the 2 bytes of data length. Regardless of the SRAM word or byte configuration, the data length is always in terms of bytes. The data packets are linked by the internal pointers which use the data length value in the header to calculate the length of the data packet. Then the receiver will perform an 8-byte boundary alignment and the new address is generated. Under normal operation, any packets that have errors will be discarded. Figure 2-5 shows how accepted packets are stored in the receive buffer.

The SSI 78Q8370 provides a means to accept erroneous packets, mainly for testing purposes. If the $DLCR5<5>$ bit (ACPT_BADPKT) is set to a 1, short packets or packets with alignment or CRC errors will be accepted. In these circumstances, the respective bits of the receive status registers will not be set. But the status byte to the host will still indicate that the packet has error(s).

The format of the status byte is as shown below. Note that the bit names are similar to that of the DLC register bits. However, some of these bits are not a mirror image of the corresponding register bits and this is elaborated on in the Status Byte Format section.

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-----------|--------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| 0 | 0 | PACKET OK | REMOTE RESET | SHORT ERROR | ALIGN ERROR | CRC ERROR | OVER FLOW |

2.5 DMA OPERATION

Data transfer via Direct Memory Access is available only in the Generic Bus mode. The DMA write or DMA read operation is similar to the I/O write or I/O read except that the handshake is done using DMREQ, DMACK and EOP signals. The DMREQ signal is used to request for DMA transfers and the DMACK signal acts like the CS to access the BMR8 and BMR9 register pair. The \overline{WR} or \overline{RD} signals accompany the DMACK to perform host write or host read operations respectively.

An EOP signal is asserted during the last data word or byte transfer to terminate the process (the DMA_EOP register bit [$DLCR1<5>$] will be set when EOP is asserted). The SSI 78Q8370 will not assert further DMREQs when EOP has been asserted by the host DMA. If the DMA interrupts are enabled, the assertion of the EOP will also cause the SSI 78Q8370 to generate an interrupt to the host.

2.5 DMA OPERATION (continued)

Single or burst DMA operations are supported for data transfer between the host and the SSI 78Q8370. In single byte or word accesses, the SSI 78Q8370 asserts the DMREQ signal and waits for the host to respond with a $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ acknowledgment and a $\overline{\text{WR}}$ or $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signal. Upon acknowledgment, the SSI 78Q8370 negates the DMREQ until the host completes the data transfer. The $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ signal is set high when the transfer is complete. To start another DMA cycle, the SSI 78Q8370 will assert the DMREQ signal again. This continues until the host asserts the EOP signal during the last access cycle after which the SSI 78Q8370 will not make further DMREQ requests.

In burst modes, the DMA operation can be programmed for 4, 8 or 12 data transfers per DMREQ request. In these cases, the SSI 78Q8370 will negate DMREQ two cycles before the end of each burst. An EOP assertion will terminate a DMA operation anytime during the burst data transfer.

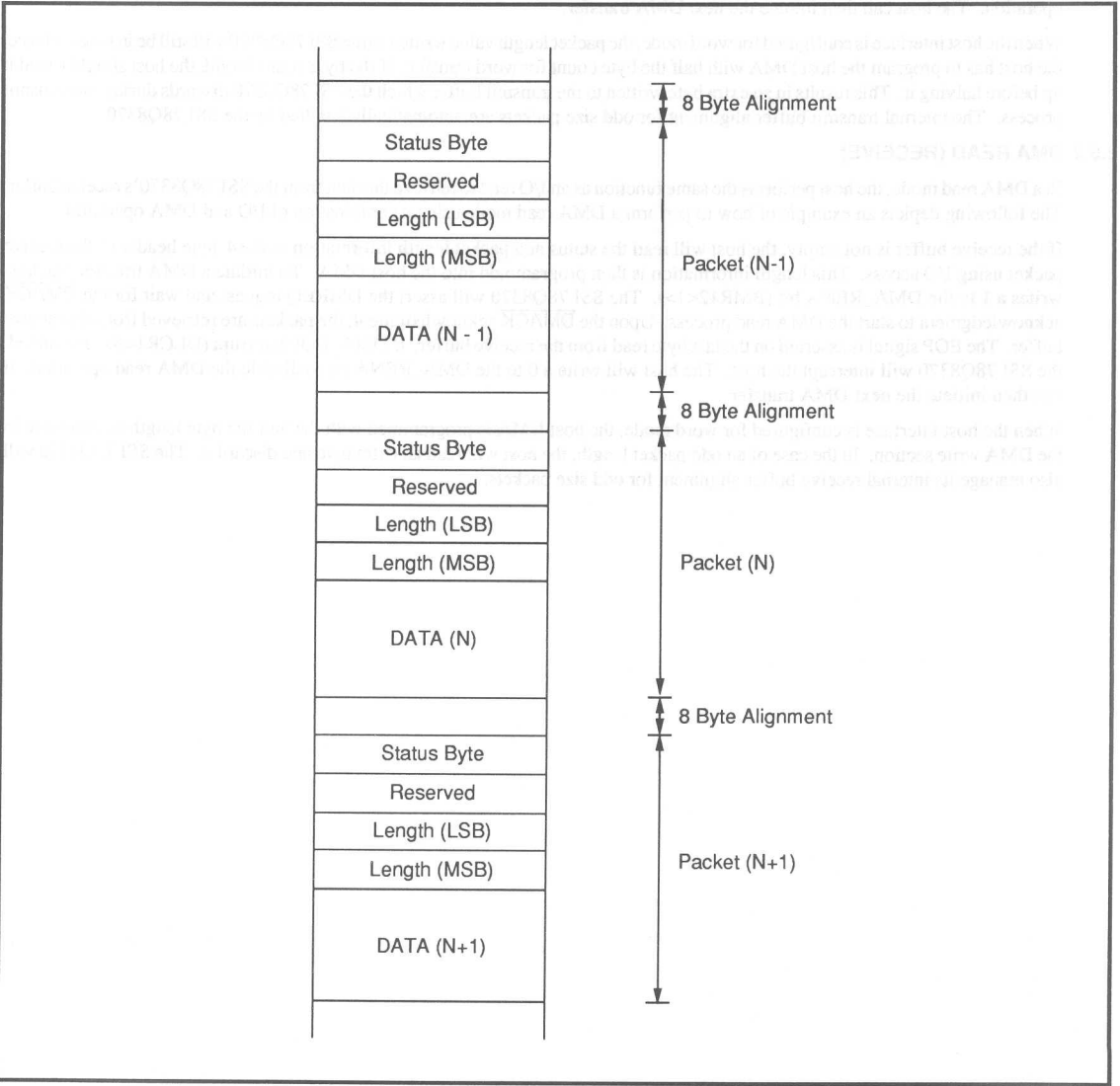


Figure 2-5: Packet Format in Receive Buffer

2.5.1 DMA WRITE (TRANSMIT)

In a DMA write mode, the host performs the same function as an I/O write to load the transmit bank with one or multiple packets of data. Typically the host has its own DMA controller which it programs to handshake with the DMA operation in the SSI 78Q8370. The host can use a combination of I/O and DMA to write a packet into the transmit buffer.

The following depicts an example of how to perform a DMA write mode using a combination of I/O and DMA operation. First, the host determines the size of the packet and writes the byte length into the SSI 78Q8370's transmit buffer using I/O access. Subsequently, the host DMA is programmed with this length information. To start a DMA transfer, the host writes a 1 to the DMA_TENA bit (BMR12<0>). The SSI 78Q8370 will assert a DMREQ request and wait for the $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ acknowledgment to start the DMA write process. When the acknowledgment is confirmed by the host DMA, the data packets are transferred into the transmit buffer. An EOP signal is asserted when the last byte is written to the SSI 78Q8370. If the DMA_EOP interrupt (DLCR1<5>) is enabled, the SSI 78Q8370 will interrupt the host upon completion. Writing a 0 to the DMA_TENA bit disables the DMA write operation. The host can then initiate the next DMA transfer.

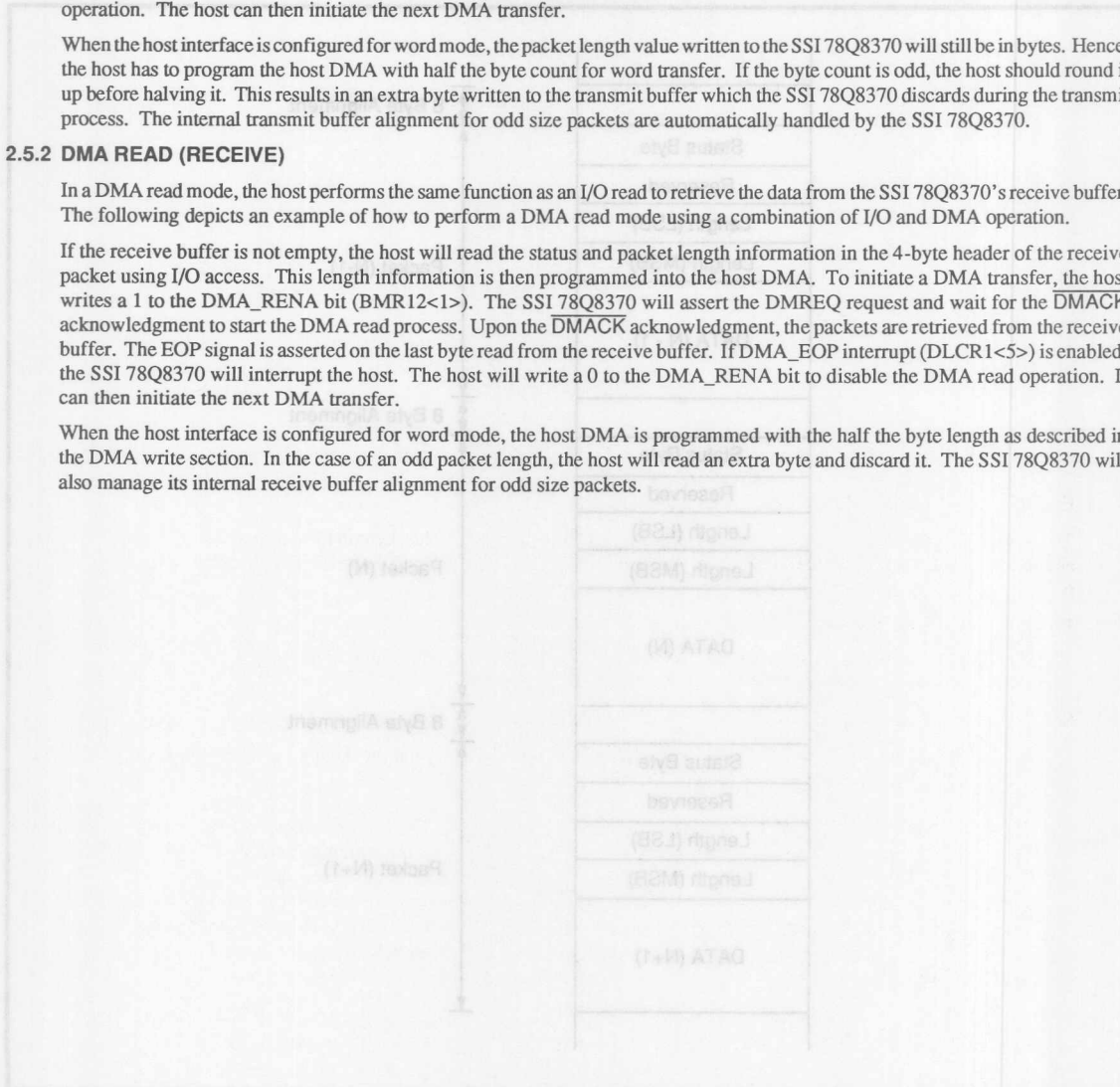
When the host interface is configured for word mode, the packet length value written to the SSI 78Q8370 will still be in bytes. Hence, the host has to program the host DMA with half the byte count for word transfer. If the byte count is odd, the host should round it up before halving it. This results in an extra byte written to the transmit buffer which the SSI 78Q8370 discards during the transmit process. The internal transmit buffer alignment for odd size packets are automatically handled by the SSI 78Q8370.

2.5.2 DMA READ (RECEIVE)

In a DMA read mode, the host performs the same function as an I/O read to retrieve the data from the SSI 78Q8370's receive buffer. The following depicts an example of how to perform a DMA read mode using a combination of I/O and DMA operation.

If the receive buffer is not empty, the host will read the status and packet length information in the 4-byte header of the receive packet using I/O access. This length information is then programmed into the host DMA. To initiate a DMA transfer, the host writes a 1 to the DMA_RENA bit (BMR12<1>). The SSI 78Q8370 will assert the DMREQ request and wait for the $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ acknowledgment to start the DMA read process. Upon the $\overline{\text{DMACK}}$ acknowledgment, the packets are retrieved from the receive buffer. The EOP signal is asserted on the last byte read from the receive buffer. If DMA_EOP interrupt (DLCR1<5>) is enabled, the SSI 78Q8370 will interrupt the host. The host will write a 0 to the DMA_RENA bit to disable the DMA read operation. It can then initiate the next DMA transfer.

When the host interface is configured for word mode, the host DMA is programmed with the half the byte length as described in the DMA write section. In the case of an odd packet length, the host will read an extra byte and discard it. The SSI 78Q8370 will also manage its internal receive buffer alignment for odd size packets.



3 DATA LINK CONTROLLER

The Data Link Controller (DLC) implements the ISO/ANSI/IEEE 8802-3 CSMA/CD protocol. It consists of a Transmitter and a Receiver, each with its own independent CRC logic. Automatic generation and stripping of the 64-bit preamble and the 32-bit CRC code are provided on-chip.

3.1 IEEE PACKET FORMAT

The DLC of the SSI 78Q8370 complies with the international standards for Ethernet, ISO/ANSI/IEEE 8802-3. The IEEE 802.3 Media Access Control (MAC) frame format is shown in Figure 3-1.

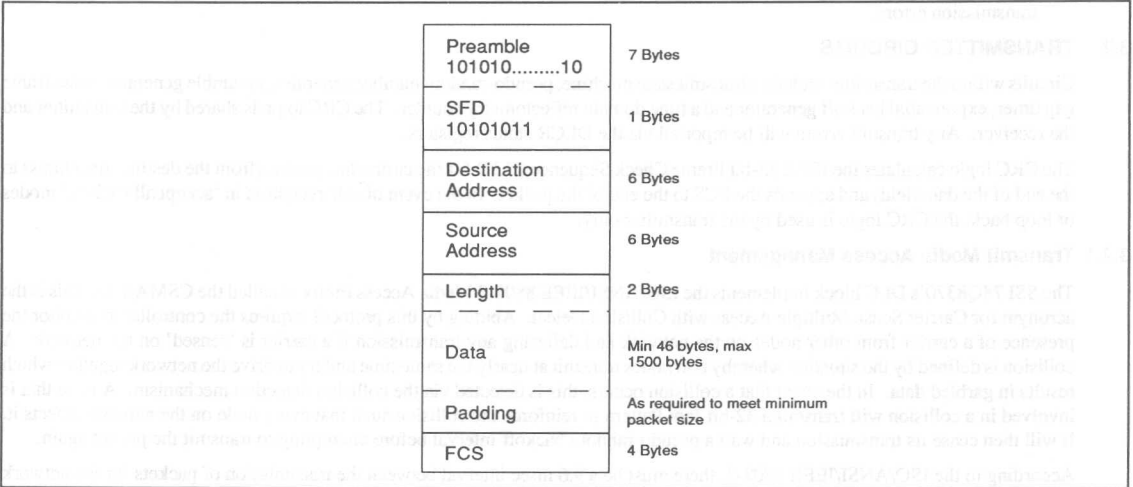


Figure 3-1: IEEE 802.3 Media Access Control (MAC) Frame Format

3.1.1 ELEMENTS OF THE MAC FRAME

The MAC frame size is defined to cover the Destination and Source Address fields, Length Field, Data Field, Padding (if necessary) and Frame Check Sequence Field (CRC Code). The minimum frame size defined in the IEEE Media Access Control Protocol is 64 bytes and the maximum frame size is 1518 bytes.

Preamble Field:

This is a 7-byte field consisting of alternating 1's and 0's to allow synchronization of phase lock loop (PLL) circuitry in the receiver.

Start Frame Delimiter (SFD) Field:

The SFD sequence is 10101011. This immediately follows the preamble and the double 1's signify the start of the frame.

Address Fields:

Each MAC frame consists of two address fields. The Destination Address Field specifies the destination address(es) for which the frame is intended and the Source Address Field specify the node that is transmitting the packet. The first bit (LSB) of the Destination Address is used to identify individual or group addressing. LSB = 0 indicates an individual address and LSB = 1 indicates a group address. The SSI 78Q8370 offers 3 types of group addressing called multicast group, multicast hash and broadcast addressing. A broadcast address consists of all 1's in the Destination Address field and is used to broadcast to all active stations on the network. Please refer to Node ID and Hash Table Configuration Registers for detailed information on the other two multicast addresses.

Length Field:

This is a 2-byte field whose value indicates the number of data bytes in the Data Field. The Length Field is transmitted with the high order byte first. However, some protocols use this field for other purposes (Ethernet calls this a **Type Field** instead). This is achieved by using values greater than the allocated values for a valid Length Field (value < 1500) to distinguish the protocol used. The SSI 78Q8370 does not perform a consistency check on the length of the data field that follows this field.

Data and PAD Fields:

The data field may contain any data from a minimum of 46 bytes to a maximum of 1500 bytes. If necessary, the data field is extended to meet the minimum frame size requirement. These extra bits are called Padding. The SSI 78Q8370 does not perform automatic padding. Upper layer software is responsible for this task.

Frame Check Sequence Field:

A cyclic redundancy check (CRC) is used by the transmit and receive algorithms to generate a CRC value for the FCS field. This is a 32-bit sequence that is computed as a function of the addresses, length, data (and pad) fields. The SSI 78Q8370 has a CRC circuitry that generates the CRC for the packet to be transmitted and checks the CRC of the received packets for transmission errors.

3.2 TRANSMITTER CIRCUITS

Circuits within the transmitter include a transmit state machine, pseudo-random number generator, preamble generator, inter-frame gap timer, exponential backoff generator and a time domain reflectometry counter. The CRC logic is shared by the transmitter and the receiver. Any transmit errors will be reported via the DLCR status registers.

The CRC logic calculates the IEEE 32-bit Frame Check Sequence (FCS) for the entire data packet (from the destination address to the end of the data field) and appends the FCS to the end of the packet. In the event of self-reception in 'accept all packets' modes or loop back, the CRC logic is used by the transmitter only.

3.2.1 Transmit Media Access Management

The SSI 78Q8370's DLC block implements the ISO/ANSI/IEEE 8802-3 Media Access Protocol called the CSMA/CD. This is the acronym for Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detect. Abiding by this protocol requires the controller to monitor the presence of a carrier from other nodes on the network and deferring any transmission if a carrier is 'sensed' on the network. A collision is defined by the situation whereby two nodes transmit at nearly the same time and try to drive the network together which results in garbled data. In the event that a collision occurs, this is detected via the collision detection mechanism. A node that is involved in a collision will transmit a 32-bit Jam Pattern to reinforce the collision such that every node on the network detects it. It will then cease its transmission and wait a pseudo-random backoff interval before attempting to transmit the packet again.

According to the ISO/ANSI/IEEE 8802-3, there must be a 9.6 msec interval between the transmission of packets for the network to recover. This is called the Inter-Frame Gap (IFG) and the SSI 78Q8370's DLC utilizes the IFG timer in the transmitter to record the interval starting from the end of the last packet on the network. The DLC will not transmit before this interval expires. If another node happens to transmit during the first 2/3 of the IFG interval, the SSI 78Q8370 will reset its IFG counter and start again at the end of this new transmission. However during the last 1/3 of the IFG interval, the SSI 78Q8370 will ignore any transmission on the network that occurs during that time in accordance with the IEEE standard. This is to assure fairness and equality in accessing the network. With two nodes transmitting at nearly the same time, a collision would occur resulting in pseudo-random backoff intervals for each node to resolve the contention.

The SSI 78Q8370's TDR counter keeps track of the number of bits that has been transmitted. The counter maintains the count of the actual number of bits transmitted just before a collision or loss of carrier occurs. The count can then be used to diagnose the medium as shown.

Estimating the distance, D (m) from the transmitting node to a fault:

N = number of bits transmitted (TDR Count)

R = transfer rate, 10 Mbit/s

S = signal propagation for coaxial cable (in the region of 2×10^8 m/sec

$D = (N \times S) / (2 \times R)$ meters

A pseudo-random number generator is used for collision backoffs. The range of the random number interval increases with each collision with the maximum range occurring for the 10th collision through the 16th collision. Hence it is called the truncated binary exponential backoff. The value obtained from the pseudo-random number generator is counted down every slot-time (512 bits). When the interval expires, the SSI 78Q8370 will check the IFG timer and attempt to re-transmit.

has been activated. Packets with alignment or CRC or short packet errors are accepted only if the ACPT_BADPKT bit (DCLR5<5>) is set to a 1. Alignment error indicates an incomplete byte frame at the end of a packet and CRC error indicates an error has occurred during transmission. A CRC error occurs when the received packet is checked by the CRC logic (from destination address to the end of the packet including the appended CRC) and the resultant is not the fixed constant expected in a no-error transmission. Short packet error is set if the received packet is less than the minimum length of 60 bytes. Buffer overflow error signals insufficient space in the receive buffer for the current packet and requires the host to read packets from the receive buffer to relieve more buffer space.

3.3.3 Encoder/Decoder

The internal ENDEC performs the recovery of the receive clock RXC, carrier detection and Manchester decoding of the data stream from the network. The received data stream is transferred to the ENDEC circuit block via either the on-board twisted-pair transceiver circuit or the AUI circuit, depending on which is active. When the ENDEC block receives a signal from the twisted-pair transceiver or the AUI circuit, it converts this carrier detection into the CRS signal for the controller. The recovered clock, RXC is achieved through the digital phase lock loop (DPLL) in the ENDEC which tries to synchronize to the incoming 5 MHz stream. (The preamble consists of alternating 1's and 0's when converted to Manchester encoding produces this waveform). The data stream is then decoded to NRZ format with the recovered RXC. This is passed to the controller as the received data, RXD. During idle periods, the RXC is not active.

3.4 LOOP BACK MODES

The SSI 78Q8370 provides for 2 types of loop back testing. They are defined as follows:

- i) ENDEC Loop Back
- ii) Media Loop Back (Twisted-pair transceiver or AUI Port)

Loop back i is used for testing functionality of the Manchester Encoder/Decoder (ENDEC). This can be invoked by setting the appropriate bit in the DLCR4<1>, but is intended for diagnostic testing only, and should not be set during normal operation. The Media Loop Backs are basically a normal transmission with a self-addressed packet or setting the Address Modes to an "accept all packets" mode (i.e. promiscuous mode occurs when AM<1,0> = 11). All of these loopbacks are illustrated in Figure 3-2.

For the ENDEC loop back, data is routed from the transmit buffer to the transmitter of the DLC, through the Manchester Encoder which loops the decoded data back to the Manchester decoder. The decoder decodes the Manchester code and passes the NRZ data to the receiver of the DLC which then stores it in the receive buffer. The EDLOOP bit (DLCR4<1>) is set to 0 for this loop back mode. This permits testing of the DLC's transmit and receive sections and the Manchester encoding and decoding sections. The host software can then read and verify the received data.

For the Media loop backs, data is routed from the transmit buffer to the transmitter of the DLC through the ENDEC and the medium (via either the internal twisted-pair transceiver or the AUI port, depending on which interface is selected) then back to the receiver of the DLC. This occurs when the SSI 78Q8370 is in the 'accept all packets' mode (promiscuous) where all packets that the transmitting node sends are accepted. Another way of achieving this effect is to send a packet with the destination address equal to the source address. This permits testing of the entire loop starting from the DLC to the medium and back. The host software can then read and verify the received data.

3.4.1 Self-Reception Criteria

In a normal operating mode, self-reception is only possible when the destination address of the transmitted packet matches the transmitting station's Node ID (physical address match). In this case, the transmitting station will not receive its own multicast (group or hash) or broadcast messages.

If the ENDEC Loopback mode is activated, the address recognition logic in the receiver will treat the loop back message as if it was coming from the medium. Thus if a match occurs (physical, multicast or broadcast), self-reception will take place.

In the 'accept all packets' mode, self-reception is guaranteed to happen for any transmission.

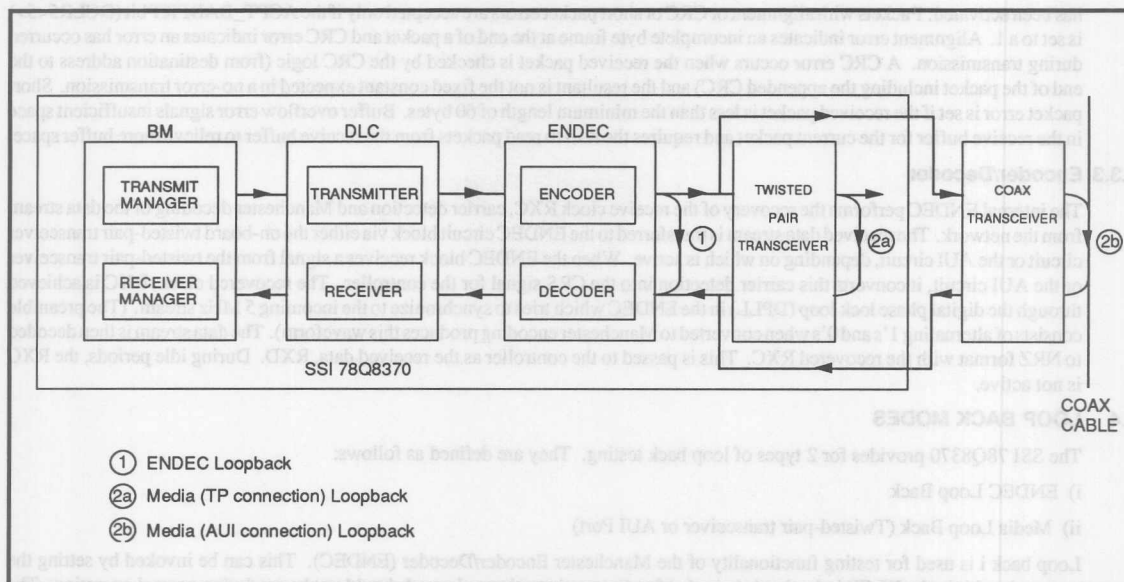


Figure 3-2: 78Q8370 Loop Back Modes

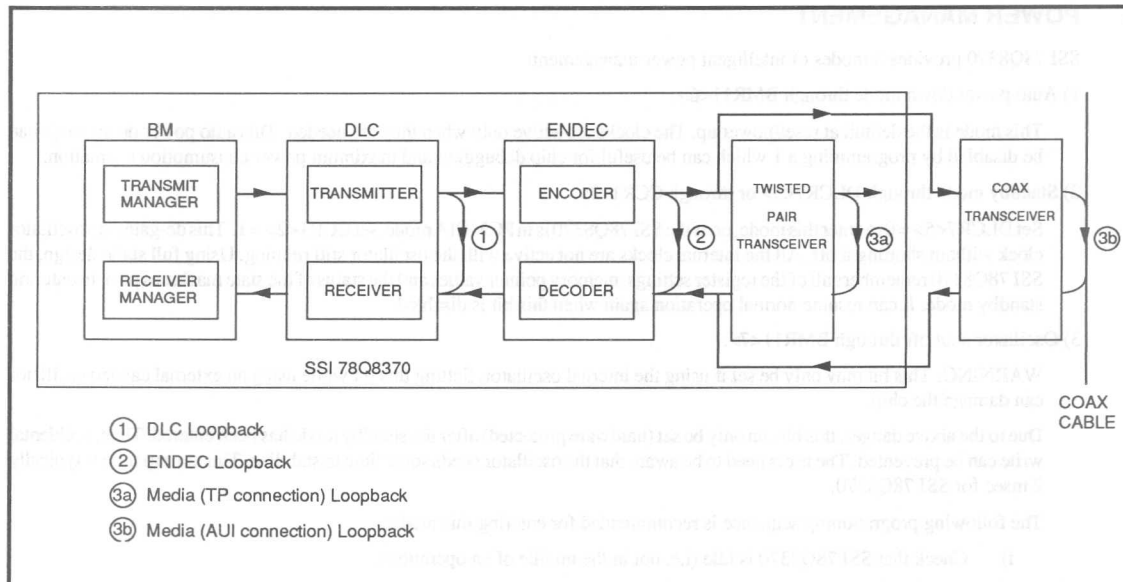


Figure 3-2: 78Q8370 Loop Back Modes

4 POWER MANAGEMENT

SSI 78Q8370 provides 3 modes of intelligent power management:

1) Auto power down mode through BMR11<6>.

This mode is the default at reset/power up. The clocks are active only when they are needed. This auto power down mode can be disabled by programming a 1 which can be useful for chip debugging and maximum power consumption estimation.

2) Standby mode through DLCR7<5> or through CCR1<2>.

Set DLCR7<5> = 0 to enter this mode, or, if the SSI 78Q8370 is in PCMCIA mode, set CCR1<2> = 1. This de-gates the oscillator clock without shutting it off. All the internal clocks are not active with the oscillator still running. Using full static design, the SSI 78Q8370 remembers all of the register settings, memory pointer values and the status of the state machines prior to entering standby mode. It can resume normal operation again when this bit is disabled.

3) Oscillator shut off through BMR11<7>.

WARNING: This bit may only be set if using the internal oscillator. Setting this bit while using an external canned oscillator can damage the chip.

Due to the above danger, this bit can only be set (hardware protected) after the standby mode has been entered. Thus, accidental write can be prevented. The users need to be aware that the oscillator needs some time to stabilize. This startup time is typically 2 msec for SSI 78Q8370.

The following programming sequence is recommended for entering this mode:

- i) Check that SSI 78Q8370 is idle (i.e. not in the middle of an operation).
- ii) Set DLCR7<5> to '0' to enter standby mode.
- iii) Set BMR11<7> to '1' to shut off the internal oscillator.

(SSI 78Q8370 is now in its lowest power consumption configuration).

The 'wake up' sequence is as follows:

- i) Set BMR11<7> to '0' to turn on the internal oscillator.
- ii) Allow some time for the internal oscillator to stabilize. This is typically 2 msec.
- iii) Set DLCR7<5> to '1' to go back to the normal mode.

5 CONTROL AND STATUS REGISTERS (continued)

A register bit-map is also included for the Data Link Controller Registers, Buffer Manager Registers, and PCMCIA registers.

Also shown are the default values for each register. Shaded bits are non-writeable.

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Transmit Status DLCR0 | TXOK 0 | NET_BSY 0 | SELF_RX 0 | TX_ERR 0 | JABBER 0 | COL 0 | 16COL 0 | HWR_ERR 0 |
| Receive Status DLCR1 | PKT_RDY 0 | HRD_ERR 0 | DMA_EOP 0 | RMTRST 0 | SRT_ERR 0 | ALG_ERR 0 | CRC_ERR 0 | OVRFLO 0 |
| Tx Interrupt Enable DLCR2 | TXOK INT ENABLE 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | SELF_RX INT ENABLE 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | JABBER INT ENABLE 0 | COL INT ENABLE 0 | 16COL INT ENABLE 0 | HWR_ERR INT ENABLE 0 |
| Rx Interrupt Enable DLCR3 | PKT_RDY INT ENABLE 0 | HRD_ERR INT ENABLE 0 | DMA_EOP INT ENABLE 0 | RMTRST INT ENABLE 0 | SRT_ERR INT ENABLE 0 | ALG_ERR INT ENABLE 0 | CRC_ERR INT ENABLE 0 | OVRFLO INT ENABLE 0 |
| Transmit Mode DLCR4 | COL 3 0 | COL 2 0 | COL 1 0 | COL 0 0 | NO_BACK 0 | NOT_CB 1 | EDLOOP 1 | DSC 0 |
| Receive Mode DLCR 5 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RX BUFMTY 1 | ACPT BADPKT 0 | ADD_SIZE 0 | ENA SRTPKT 0 | ENA RMTRST 0 | AM1 0 | AM0 0 |
| Config. 0 DLCR6 | ENADLC 1 | RAMSP 0 | HBYTE 1 | RBYTE 1 | TS1 0 | TS0 1 | BS1 1 | BS0 0 |
| Config. 1 DLCR7 | CTM 1 0 | CTM 0 0 | NOT_STDBY 1 | RDYSEL 0 | RBNK1 0 | RBNK0 0 | EOPSEL 0 | INTLMOT 0 |
| Tx Packet Counter BMR10 | TXST 0 | PACKET CNT 6 0 | PACKET CNT 5 0 | PACKET CNT 4 0 | PACKET CNT 3 0 | PACKET CNT 2 0 | PACKET CNT 1 0 | PACKET CNT 0 0 |
| 16 Collision Control BMR11 | OSC_OFF 0 | AUTOPD 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | HALT 0 | RESTART 0 | SKIP 0 |
| DMA Enable BMR12 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | DMA_RENA 0 | DMA_TENA 0 |
| DMA Burst Control BMR13 | APOL 0 | RTH 0 | ENLI 0 | PORT_SEL 0 | ASEL 0 | DMT 0 | DMAB1 0 | DMAB0 0 |
| Rx Pointer Control BMR14 | RESERVED BIT 0 | LD INT ENABLE 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | SKP_RX 0 | SQE INT ENABLE 0 | RXF 1 |
| Tranceiver Status BMR15 | RESERVED BIT 0 | LD 0 | OWCOL 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RPI 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | SQE 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 |
| Config. Option CCR0 | SRESET 0 | LEVIREQ 0 | CI 5 0 | CI 4 0 | CI 3 0 | CI 2 0 | CI 1 0 | CI 0 0 |
| Card Config. & Status CCR1 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | IOIS8 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | AUDIO 0 | PWRDWN 0 | INTR 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 |

5 CONTROL AND STATUS REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

A register bit-map is also included for the Data Link Controller Registers, Buffer Manager Registers, and PCMCIA registers.

Also shown are the default values for each register. Shaded bits are non-writeable.

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Transmit Status DLCR0 | TXOK 0 | NET_BSY 0 | SELF_RX 0 | TX_ERR 0 | JABBER 0 | COL 0 | 16COL 0 | HWR_ERR 0 |
| Receive Status DLCR1 | PKT_RDY 0 | HRD_ERR 0 | DMA_EOP 0 | RMTRST 0 | SRT_ERR 0 | ALG_ERR 0 | CRC_ERR 0 | OVRFLO 0 |
| Tx Interrupt Enable DLCR2 | TXOK INT ENABLE 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | SELF_RX INT ENABLE 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | JABBER INT ENABLE 0 | COL INT ENABLE 0 | 16COL INT ENABLE 0 | HWR_ERR INT ENABLE 0 |
| Rx Interrupt Enable DLCR3 | PKT_RDY INT ENABLE 0 | HRD_ERR INT ENABLE 0 | DMA_EOP INT ENABLE 0 | RMTRST INT ENABLE 0 | SRT_ERR INT ENABLE 0 | ALG_ERR INT ENABLE 0 | CRC_ERR INT ENABLE 0 | OVRFLO INT ENABLE 0 |
| Transmit Mode DLCR4 | COL 3 0 | COL 2 0 | COL 1 0 | COL 0 0 | NO_BACK 0 | NOT_CB 1 | EDLOOP 1 | DSC 0 |
| Receive Mode DLCR 5 | DLOOP 0 | RX BUFMTY 1 | ACPT BADPKT 0 | ADD_SIZE 0 | ENA SRTPKT 0 | ENA RMTRST 0 | AM1 0 | AM0 0 |
| Config. 0 DLCR6 | ENADLC 1 | RAMSP 0 | HBYTE 1 | RBYTE 1 | TS1 0 | TS0 1 | BS1 1 | BS0 0 |
| Config. 1 DLCR7 | CTM 1 0 | CTM 0 0 | NOT_STDBY 1 | RDYSEL 0 | RBNK1 0 | RBNK0 0 | EOPSEL 0 | INTLMOT 0 |
| Tx Packet Counter BMR10 | TXST 0 | PACKET CNT 6 0 | PACKET CNT 5 0 | PACKET CNT 4 0 | PACKET CNT 3 0 | PACKET CNT 2 0 | PACKET CNT 1 0 | PACKET CNT 0 0 |
| 16 Collision Control BMR11 | OSC_OFF 0 | AUTOPD 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | HALT 0 | RESTART 0 | SKIP 0 |
| DMA Enable BMR12 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | DMA_RENA 0 | DMA_TENA 0 |
| DMA Burst Control BMR13 | APOL 0 | RTH 0 | ENLI 0 | PORT_SEL 0 | ASEL 0 | DMT 0 | DMAB1 0 | DMAB0 0 |
| Rx Pointer Control BMR14 | RESERVED BIT 0 | LD INT ENABLE 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | SKP_RX 0 | SQE INT ENABLE 0 | RXF 1 |
| Tranceiver Status BMR15 | RESERVED BIT 0 | LD 0 | OWCOL 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RPI 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | SQE 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 |
| Config. Option CCR0 | SRESET 0 | LEVIREQ 0 | CI 5 0 | CI 4 0 | CI 3 0 | CI 2 0 | CI 1 0 | CI 0 0 |
| Card Config. & Status CCR1 | RESERVED BIT 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | IOIS8 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 | AUDIO 0 | PWRDWN 0 | INTR 0 | RESERVED BIT 0 |

5.1 LEGEND DESCRIPTION

The legend (column L in the register tables) used to describe register initial values, readability and writeability are denoted by the following abbreviations:

- R: READABLE
- W: WRITABLE
- C: CLEARABLE: Writing a '1' clears this bit; writing a '0' has no effect
- H: CONDITIONALLY WRITABLE: The default values can only be changed depending on other conditions
- 0/1: Power-up/Reset Default value

5.2 DATA LINK CONTROLLER REGISTERS

There are 8 Data Link Controller registers that will provide the status and control signals between the SSI 78Q8370 and host. In the following sections, each register bit will be explained.

5.2.1 DLCR0 - Transmit Status Register

This register provides the transmit status to the host. These status bits can also produce interrupts if DLCR2 interrupt enable signals are set (see DLCR2 for details). The status bits can be cleared by writing a '1' to the respective bit but writing a '0' has no effect on it. Note that more than one status bit can produce a common interrupt signal. Hence it is advisable for the host to check this register to find out how many of the status bits could have caused the generation of the interrupt signal.

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|---------|-------------|---|
| 7 | TXOK | R C 0 | TRANSMIT OK: When the packet is transmitted through the medium without any errors or skipped due to excessive collisions, this bit is set high. If DLCR2<7> is enabled, then the bit can trigger an interrupt to the host. |
| 6 | NET_BSY | R 0 | NET BUSY: If this bit is read as 1, it indicates that the network is busy at the receiver. This bit reflects the status of the CRS signal. |
| 5 | SELF_RX | R C 0 | SELF RECEPTION: The bit is used to indicate that self-reception has occurred. Writing a 1 or power reset will clear this bit. If DLCR2<5> is enabled, it can trigger an interrupt to the host. |
| 4 | TX_ERR | R 0 | TRANSMIT ERROR: When read as a 1, this bit indicates a possible collision on the network or a loss of carrier during transmission. Automatically cleared on the next transmission. Writing a '1' or a '0' has no effect. |
| 3 | JABBER | R 0 | JABBER: When high, it indicates that excessive transmit length is detected by the internal jabber timer. This is a serious error condition which only occurs when the chip malfunctions. Can generate interrupts if enabled by the corresponding interrupt enable bit in DLCR2. This jabber error can only be cleared by hardware or software reset through DLCR6<7>. |
| 2 | COL | R C 0 | COLLISION: This bit is set high when a collision occurs on the data packet during transmission. The 78Q8370 performs up to 16 re-transmissions. If DLCR2<2> is enabled, it can trigger an interrupt to the host. The number of collisions is stored in DLCR4<7:4>. |
| 1 | 16COL | R C 0 | 16 COLLISIONS: If a data packet has suffered 16 unsuccessful transmission then this bit will set high. Generates an interrupt to the host if DLCR2<1> is enabled. |
| 0 | HWR_ERR | R C 0 | HOST WRITE ERROR: When the host attempts to write data to the transmit buffer memory and did not get the response from 78Q8370 after 2.4 msec, this flag is set. This is to indicate that the transmit buffer is full. If DLCR2<0> is enabled, it can trigger an interrupt to the host. |

5.2.2 DLCR1 - Receive Status Register

This register provides the receive status to the host. These status bits can also produce interrupts if DLCR3 interrupt enable signals are set (see DLCR3 for details). The status bits can be cleared by writing a '1' to the respective bit. Writing a '0' has no effect on the register bit. Note that more than one status bits can produce a common interrupt signal. Therefore it is best for the host to check this register to find out how many of the status bits could have caused the generation of the interrupt signal.

In this register, DLCR1<3:0> are status bits for the current received packet. If any of these bits are set then the packet will be discarded. However, 'bad packets' can be accepted by the SSI 78Q8370 under the following settings:

- (1). DLCR5<5>, ACPT_BADPKT set to high allows the acceptance of short packets and packets with alignment or CRC errors
- (2). DLCR5<3>, ENA_SRTPKT set to high allows the acceptance of packets with length between 6 bytes and 2047 bytes.

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|---------|-------------|---|
| 7 | PKT_RDY | R C 0 | PACKET READY: When a data packet is successfully loaded into the buffer memory, this bit is set. Can generate an interrupt if DLCR3<7> is enabled. |
| 6 | HRD_ERR | R C 0 | HOST READ ERROR: If the receive buffer is empty and the host has waited for the response from 78Q8370 for more than 2.4 msec during host read then this bit is set. Can generate an interrupt if DLCR3<6> is set. |
| 5 | DMA_EOP | R 0 | DMA END OF PROCESS: When a DMA process is over, the host will assert a high to the EOP pin to indicate the end of process. Can generate an interrupt if DLCR3<5> is set. To clear this bit, a value of 00H must be written into BMR12. Writing either a '1' or '0' has no effect. |
| 4 | RMTRST | R C 0 | REMOTE RESET PACKET RECEIVED: This bit is set if a packet received contains the pattern 0900H in its Type Field and ENA_RMTRST (DLCR5<2>) is set to a 1. Can generate an interrupt if enabled by DLCR3<4>. The value on this bit is mirrored onto the pin RRST (pin 96). |
| 3 | SRT_ERR | R C 0 | SHORT PACKET ERROR: This bit is set when the received packet is less than 60 bytes (excluding preamble and CRC). 60 bytes is the IEEE minimum frame size. Can generate an interrupt if enabled by DLCR3<3>. |
| 2 | ALG_ERR | R C 0 | ALIGNMENT ERROR: Set when the receive packet has 1 to 7 extra bits at the end of the packet. This may be due to collision or faulty transceiver. Can generate an interrupt if enabled by DLCR3<2>. |
| 1 | CRC_ERR | R C 0 | CRC ERROR: Set when the packet has CRC errors indicating that the packet is corrupted. Can generate an interrupt if enabled by DLCR3<1>. |
| 0 | OVRFLO | R C 0 | RECEIVE BUFFER OVERFLOW: Set when the receive buffer is full. Can generate an interrupt if enabled by DLCR3<0>. |

5.2.3 DLCR2 - Transmit Interrupt Enable Register

This register contains the bits to enable the status bits in DLCR0 to generate interrupts to the host.

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|-------------------------|----------|--|
| 7 | TXOK INT ENABLE | R,W 0 | TXOK INTERRUPT ENABLE: When set high, it enables transmit OK signal, TXOK to generate an interrupt. |
| 6 | 0 | N,0 | RESERVED BIT |
| 5 | SELF_REC INT ENABLE | R,W 0 | SELF RECEPTION INTERRUPT ENABLE: Enables the transmit receive in loop back to produce an interrupt. |
| 4 | 0 | N,0 | RESERVED BIT |
| 3 | JABBER INT ENABLE | R,W 0 | JABBER INTERRUPT ENABLE: When high, enables JABBER to generate an interrupt. |
| 2 | COLLISION INT ENABLE | R,W 0 | COLLISION INTERRUPT ENABLE: When high, enables COL to generate an interrupt. |
| 1 | 16 COL INT ENABLE | R,W 0 | 16 COLLISION INTERRUPT ENABLE: When high, enables 16COL to generate an interrupt. |
| 0 | HWR_ERR INT ENABLE | R,W 0 | HWR_ERR INTERRUPT ENABLE: When high, enables host write error signal, HWR_ERR to produce an interrupt. |

5.2.6 DLCR5 - Receive Mode Register

This register controls the way that SSI 78Q8370 receives a packet. DLCR5<5> set high allows SSI 78Q8370 to accept packets that contains alignment or CRC errors. DLCR5<3> set high allows SSI 78Q8370 to accept packets with packet length that is between 6 bytes and 2047 bytes (excluding preamble and CRC). Allowing the acceptance of a 6-byte packet is usually a diagnostic mode. The Receive Buffer Empty (DLCR5<6>) informs the host when there is no more data in the receive buffer memory.

| BITS | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|-------------|---|--|-----|-----|----------------------------|---|---|--------------------|---|---|--|---|---|---|---|---|--------------------|
| 7 | RESERVED | – | RESERVED BIT | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | RX_BUFMTY | R 1 | RECEIVE BUFFER EMPTY: When the receive buffer has no data for the host, this is set to a high by 78Q8370. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | ACPT_BADPKT | R W 0 | ACCEPT BAD PACKET: If this bit is set high, short packets and packets with alignment and/or CRC errors will be accepted. Otherwise, erroneous packets are rejected. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | ADD_SIZE | R W 0 | ADDRESS SIZE: When set high, only the first 40 bits of the destination address are compared to the Node ID (normal mode requires the comparison of all 48 bits). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | ENA_SRTPKT | R W 0 | ENABLE SHORT PACKET: When set high, allows short packets (packet length between 6 and 2047 bytes minus the preamble and CRC) to be stored in the receive buffer memory. When this bit is set low, any packets with less than 60 bytes in length will be rejected. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | ENA_RMTRST | R W 0 | ENABLE REMOTE RESET: When set to a 1, enables other nodes on the network to reset external peripheral(s) connected to this node. If set to a 0, a received packet with the 0900h pattern in the Type Field will not succeed in resetting these peripherals | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1,0 | AM1,0 | R W 0,1 | ADDRESSING MODE BITS: These two bits control the address filtering of the incoming packets. <table><tr><th>AM1</th><th>AM0</th><th>ADDRESSES ACCEPTANCE MODES</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>REJECT ALL PACKETS</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST GROUP</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST HASH TABLE</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>ACCEPT ALL PACKETS</td></tr></table> | AM1 | AM0 | ADDRESSES ACCEPTANCE MODES | 0 | 0 | REJECT ALL PACKETS | 0 | 1 | NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST GROUP | 1 | 0 | NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST HASH TABLE | 1 | 1 | ACCEPT ALL PACKETS |
| AM1 | AM0 | ADDRESSES ACCEPTANCE MODES | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | REJECT ALL PACKETS | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 1 | NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST GROUP | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 0 | NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST HASH TABLE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | ACCEPT ALL PACKETS | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

5.2.6 DLCR5 - Receive Mode Register

This register controls the way that SSI 78Q8370 receives a packet. DLCR5<5> set high allows SSI 78Q8370 to accept packets that contains alignment or CRC errors. DLCR5<3> set high allows SSI 78Q8370 to accept packets with packet length that is between 6 bytes and 2047 bytes (excluding preamble and CRC). Allowing the acceptance of a 6-byte packet is usually a diagnostic mode. The Receive Buffer Empty (DLCR5<6>) informs the host when there is no more data in the receive buffer memory.

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-------------|---|--|-----|-----|----------------------------|---|---|--------------------|---|---|--|---|---|---|---|---|--------------------|
| 7 | DLOOP | R W 0 | DLC LOOP BACK: A DLC loop back (without on-chip ENDEC) is enabled when this is set to a 1. This provides a means of testing the transmitter and receiver sections of the DLC. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | RX_BUFMTY | R 1 | RECEIVE BUFFER EMPTY: When the receive buffer has no data for the host, this is set to a high by 78Q8370. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | ACPT_BADPKT | R W 0 | ACCEPT BAD PACKET: If this bit is set high, short packets and packets with alignment and/or CRC errors will be accepted. Otherwise, erroneous packets are rejected. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | ADD_SIZE | R W 0 | ADDRESS SIZE: When set high, only the first 40 bits of the destination address are compared to the Node ID (normal mode requires the comparison of all 48 bits). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | ENA_SRTPKT | R W 0 | ENABLE SHORT PACKET: When set high, allows short packets (packet length between 6 and 2047 bytes minus the preamble and CRC) to be stored in the receive buffer memory. When this bit is set low, any packets with less than 60 bytes in length will be rejected. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | ENA_RMTRST | R W 0 | ENABLE REMOTE RESET: When set to a 1, enables other nodes on the network to reset external peripheral(s) connected to this node. If set to a 0, a received packet with the 0900h pattern in the Type Field will not succeed in resetting these peripherals. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1,0 | AM1,0 | R W 0,1 | ADDRESSING MODE BITS: These two bits control the address filtering of the incoming packets. <table><tr><th>AM1</th><th>AM0</th><th>ADDRESSES ACCEPTANCE MODES</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>REJECT ALL PACKETS</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST GROUP</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST HASH TABLE</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>ACCEPT ALL PACKETS</td></tr></table> | AM1 | AM0 | ADDRESSES ACCEPTANCE MODES | 0 | 0 | REJECT ALL PACKETS | 0 | 1 | NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST GROUP | 1 | 0 | NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST HASH TABLE | 1 | 1 | ACCEPT ALL PACKETS |
| AM1 | AM0 | ADDRESSES ACCEPTANCE MODES | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | REJECT ALL PACKETS | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 1 | NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST GROUP | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 0 | NODE ID, BROADCAST and MULTICAST HASH TABLE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | ACCEPT ALL PACKETS | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

5.2.7 DLCR5 - Configuration Register 0

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|----------|-----------------|---|-------|----------|-----------------|-----------------|----|-----|------|------|------|---|------|------|----|---|--------|-----|----|---|------|------|
| 7 | ENADLC | R W 1 | ENABLE DATA LINK CONTROLLER: Active low. Enables the receiver and transmitter of 78Q8370. Setting this bit to high will reset all the state machines to their idle states and allows access to Node ID and Hash Table registers (depending on DLCR7<3:2> settings). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | RAMSP | R,W 0 | RAM SPEED: When set to 1, selects 100 nsec cycle SRAM. Otherwise, the SRAM is of 150 nsec cycle. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | HBYTE | R,W 1 | HOST BYTE/WORD SELECT: If set high, host system bus will operate in byte mode. If set to 0, it will operate in word mode. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | RBYTE | R H 1 | RAM BYTE: When set high, the RAM databus will operate in byte mode, otherwise it will be word mode. In PCMCIA mode, this bit will be internally hard set to 1. This is because PCMCIA pinout makes use of the higher RAM databus. The following table is valid <u>ONLY</u> for Generic Bus mode: <table><tr><th>HBYTE</th><th>RAMBUS</th><th>HOST</th><th>BUFFER</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>word</td><td>word</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>word</td><td>byte</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>DO NOT</td><td>USE</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>byte</td><td>byte</td></tr></table> | HBYTE | RAMBUS | HOST | BUFFER | 0 | 0 | word | word | 0 | 1 | word | byte | 1 | 0 | DO NOT | USE | 1 | 1 | byte | byte |
| HBYTE | RAMBUS | HOST | BUFFER | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | word | word | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 1 | word | byte | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 0 | DO NOT | USE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | byte | byte | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3,2 | TS1,0 | R W 0,1 | TRANSMIT BUFFER SIZE: Sets configuration of transmit buffer. <table><tr><th>TS1,0</th><th>TX BANKS</th><th>SIZE OF TX BANK</th><th>TOTAL TX BUFFER</th></tr><tr><td>00</td><td>1</td><td>2KB</td><td>2KB</td></tr><tr><td>01</td><td>2</td><td>2KB</td><td>4KB</td></tr><tr><td>10</td><td>2</td><td>4KB</td><td>8KB</td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td>2</td><td>8KB</td><td>16KB</td></tr></table> | TS1,0 | TX BANKS | SIZE OF TX BANK | TOTAL TX BUFFER | 00 | 1 | 2KB | 2KB | 01 | 2 | 2KB | 4KB | 10 | 2 | 4KB | 8KB | 11 | 2 | 8KB | 16KB |
| TS1,0 | TX BANKS | SIZE OF TX BANK | TOTAL TX BUFFER | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 00 | 1 | 2KB | 2KB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01 | 2 | 2KB | 4KB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | 2 | 4KB | 8KB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | 2 | 8KB | 16KB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1,0 | BS1,0 | R W 1,0 | BUFFER MEMORY SIZE: Sets configuration of total Buffer Size. <table><tr><th>BS1</th><th>BS0</th><th>SRAM SIZE</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>8KB</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>16KB</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>32KB</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>64KB</td></tr></table> | BS1 | BS0 | SRAM SIZE | 0 | 0 | 8KB | 0 | 1 | 16KB | 1 | 0 | 32KB | 1 | 1 | 64KB | | | | | |
| BS1 | BS0 | SRAM SIZE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 8KB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 1 | 16KB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 0 | 32KB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | 64KB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

5.2.8 DLCR7 - Configuration Register 1

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|----------|------------------------------|--|-------|-------|-----------|---|---|------------------------------|---|---|-------------------|---|---|-------------------|---|---|----------|
| 7,6 | CTM1,0 | R,H 00 | CONTROLLER TEST MODES: Write 00 for normal operation. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | NOT_STBY | R W 1 | NOT STANDBY (POWER DOWN): Active low. The power down mode is for energy saving. If set high, it enables power to the chip for all functions. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | RDYSEL | R -- | READY SELECT: Reflects the real time image of the RDYSEL pin (pin 94). If RDYSEL pin is high, READY interface with the host is active high. Otherwise it is active low. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3,2 | RBNK1,0 | R W 0,0 | REGISTER BANK SELECT: To select the upper 8 registers as shown below: <table><tr><th>RBNK1</th><th>RBNK0</th><th>REGISTERS</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>DLCR0-7 + IDR8-13 + TDR14,15</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>DLCR0-7 + HTR8-15</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>DLCR0-7 + BMR8-15</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>RESERVED</td></tr></table> | RBNK1 | RBNK0 | REGISTERS | 0 | 0 | DLCR0-7 + IDR8-13 + TDR14,15 | 0 | 1 | DLCR0-7 + HTR8-15 | 1 | 0 | DLCR0-7 + BMR8-15 | 1 | 1 | RESERVED |
| RBNK1 | RBNK0 | REGISTERS | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | DLCR0-7 + IDR8-13 + TDR14,15 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 1 | DLCR0-7 + HTR8-15 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 0 | DLCR0-7 + BMR8-15 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | RESERVED | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | EOPSEL | R,W 0 | END OF PROCESS PIN SIGNAL POLARITY: When high, EOP pin is active high. When low, EIP pin is active low. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | INTLMOT | R W 0 | INTEL or MOTOROLA MODE: System must be in word mode. This applies to the non-transmitted buffer header and the packet data. When this bit is low (INTEL MODE), the least significant byte will occupy the even address. Otherwise, the most significant bytes will occupy the even address (MOTOROLA MODE). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

5.3 NODE ID REGISTERS

5.3.1 IDR 8:15 - Node ID Registers

| IDR | BIT7 | BIT6 | BIT5 | BIT4 | BIT3 | BIT2 | BIT1 | BIT0 |
|-----|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 8 | ID7 | ID6 | ID5 | ID4 | ID3 | ID2 | ID1 | ID0 |
| 9 | ID15 | ID14 | ID13 | ID12 | ID11 | ID10 | ID9 | ID8 |
| 10 | ID23 | ID22 | ID21 | ID20 | ID19 | ID18 | ID17 | ID16 |
| 11 | ID31 | ID30 | ID29 | ID28 | ID27 | ID26 | ID25 | ID24 |
| 12 | ID39 | ID38 | ID37 | ID36 | ID35 | ID34 | ID33 | ID32 |
| 13 | ID47 | ID46 | ID45 | ID44 | ID43 | ID42 | ID41 | ID40 |

The Node ID registers (IDR8-13) are located in register bank '00' (DLCR7<3:2> = 00) at address xxx8H through xxxDH. The unique Ethernet address is written into these registers during the initialization of the node with the first byte of the Ethernet address at IDR8. The IDR registers are readable and writable only when $\overline{\text{ENADLC}} = 1$ (DLCR6<7>). When $\overline{\text{ENADLC}} = 0$, normal network operations resume with the DLC controller.

During the reception of a packet, the destination address of the packet is matched with the Node ID in the IDR registers. Depending on the Address Mode (DLCR5<1:0>) selected for the node, either all or some of the six bytes of the incoming destination address are compared to the Node ID. If they match then the packet is accepted. Any mismatch in the addresses would result in the rejection of the packet.

5.4 TIME DOMAIN REFLECTOMETRY REGISTERS

5.4.1 TDR 14,15 - Time Domain Reflectometry (TDR) Registers

| TDR | BIT7 | BIT6 | BIT5 | BIT4 | BIT3 | BIT2 | BIT1 | BIT0 |
|-----|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 14 | TD7 | TD6 | TD5 | TD4 | TD3 | TD2 | TD1 | TD0 |
| 15 | 0 | 0 | TD13 | TD12 | TD11 | TD10 | TD9 | TD8 |

The Time Domain Reflectometry (TDR14-15) registers provide a means of locating a fault on the network. The TDR registers are located in the same register bank as the IDR8-13 but at address xxxEH through xxxFH. This 14-bit diagnostic counter keeps a count of the number of bits that has been transmitted during transmission of a packet starting from the preamble and including the CRC bits. TDR14 is the least significant byte and TDR15 is the most significant byte of the counter. The remaining 2 bits (TDR15<7:6>) are always zero as 14-bits are sufficient for the packet transmission of an IEEE compliant LAN.

The TDR count is cleared on the transmission of the next packet. A short or open on the network would cause reflections of the signal on the network that can be detected as a loss of carrier sense or a false collision respectively. In the event that a fault occurs on the network, the error messages in DLCR0<2> or DLCR0<4> will be able to indicate the type of fault. The TDR count can then be used to estimate the distance from the node to the fault location along the network cable.

5.5 HASH TABLE REGISTERS

5.5.1 HTR 8:15 - Hash Table Registers

| HTR | BIT7 | BIT6 | BIT5 | BIT4 | BIT3 | BIT2 | BIT1 | BIT0 |
|-----|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 8 | HT7 | HT6 | HT5 | HT4 | HT3 | HT2 | HT1 | HT0 |
| 9 | HT15 | HT14 | HT13 | HT12 | HT11 | HT10 | HT9 | HT8 |
| 10 | HT23 | HT22 | HT21 | HT20 | HT19 | HT18 | HT17 | HT16 |
| 11 | HT31 | HT30 | HT29 | HT28 | HT27 | HT26 | HT25 | HT24 |
| 12 | HT39 | HT38 | HT37 | HT36 | HT35 | HT34 | HT33 | HT32 |
| 13 | HT47 | HT46 | HT45 | HT44 | HT43 | HT42 | HT41 | HT40 |
| 14 | HT55 | HT54 | HT53 | HT52 | HT51 | HT50 | HT49 | HT48 |
| 15 | HT63 | HT62 | HT61 | HT60 | HT59 | HT58 | HT57 | HT56 |

The Hash Table Registers (HTR8-15) are located in register bank '01' (DLCR7<3:2> = 01) at address xxx8H through xxxFH. The Hash Table allows group addressing by filtering multicast addressed packets on the network. The 64-element table provides the host to select which of the the node should belong to and sets the appropriate groups to a 1. If the host does not want to belong to any groups, the entire table will be set to 0.

As a packet is received, the bit stream goes through the CRC block. If the incoming address is a multicast address (least significant bit of the destination address is a 1) then the following occurs. After the last bit of the 48-bit destination address has passed through the CRC block, the least significant 6 bits of the CRC at that point is used to index one of the 64 elements of the Hash Table. If that Hash Table element is set to a 1 then the packet is accepted. If it is set to a 0 the packet is rejected.

The Hash Table is readable and writeable when $\overline{\text{ENADLC}} = 1$ and the DLCR7<3:2> = 01. Selecting the Address Mode to include multicast hash addressing would enable this filtering. For instance, AM<1:0> = 10 (DLCR5<1:0>) allows for physical, broadcast and multicast hash addressing but AM<1:0> = 01 does not i.e. the hash filter would not be utilized in these situations. (AM<1:0> = 01 only allows for physical, broadcast and multicast group addressing).

5.6 BUFFER MEMORY REGISTERS

There are 8 registers for buffer memory interface, 16 collision control and DMA control in this set of register bank. Each bit is explained in the following sections.

5.6.1 BMR8, 9 - Buffer Memory Port

Reading or writing between the host and SSI 78Q8370 buffer memory is done via these two registers. The location for the buffer memory is dependent on the address unit of SSI 78Q8370. When SSI 78Q8370 is configured as byte mode, only BMR8 is used. Both BMR8 and BMR9 are used when the SSI 78Q8370 is set to word mode configuration.

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|------------------------|--------------|---|
| 7-0 | BMR8<7:0> BMR9<7:0> | R W -- | PACKET RECEIVE and TRANSMIT REGISTERS for the host and 78Q8360. |

5.6.2 BMR10 - Transmit Packet Counter

This register consists the TRANSMIT START BIT (TXST) and the total packet count for the SSI 78Q8370 to transmit. The packet count is the number of packets that the host wants to transmit. To activate transmission, the packet count must be written the same time that the TXST bit is set to a 1. The user should not write into this register until the packet count has reached zero.

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|-----------------|-------------|--|
| 7 | TXST | R W 0 | TRANSMIT START BIT: When the packet(s) in the transmit buffer is ready for transfer to the network, this bit is set to 1 in order to activate the transmit operation. Always read as a 0. |
| 6-0 | PACKET CNT<6:0> | R W 0 | TRANSMIT PACKET COUNT: The total number of packets to be transmitted to the network. Each time a packet is successfully transmitted, the packet count is decremented. The host can read this register to check how many packets have not been transmitted. |

5.6.3 BMR11 - 16 Collision Control

The setting of this register determines the actions of the controller to be taken after 16 consecutive attempts to transmit a packet. There are four modes (controlled by HALT, RESTART and SKIP bits in the register) to be selected:

- (1) automatic re-transmission of colliding packet
- (2) automatic skip of the colliding packet after 16 attempts
- (3) Halt for host intervention and retry transmission of colliding packet
- (4) Halt for host intervention and discontinue transmission of colliding packet.

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------------|-------------|---|------|----------|-------|-----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|
| 7 | OSC_OFF | R H 0 | OSCILLATOR SHUTOFF: When enabled ('1'), this bit shuts off the internal oscillator. Setting this bit while using an external canned oscillator can damage the chip. For this reason, this bit can only be set after the standby mode is entered (by setting DLCCR7<2> = '1') | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | AUTOPD | R W 0 | AUTO POWER: Upon power-up/reset, the chip is in automatic power management mode. This mode can be disabled by writing a '1' to this bit. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5-3 | RESERVED | - | RESERVED BIT | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 1 0 | HALT RESTART SKIP | R W 0 | 16 COLLISION CONTROL: These three bits control the action to be taken by 78Q8370 in the event that 16 collisions occur in the transmission of a packet. Host intervention is possible as shown below. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>HALT</th><th>RE-START</th><th>SKI P</th><th>DESCRIPTION OF ACTION TAKEN</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td><td>X</td><td>1</td><td>Do not halt. Skip colliding packet and continue transmitting.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>X</td><td>0</td><td>Do not halt. Retry transmission of colliding packet.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>Halt and await instruction from host for BMR11<1:0>. '11': results in colliding packet skipped and transmission resumed. '10': results in colliding packet re-transmitted.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> | HALT | RE-START | SKI P | DESCRIPTION OF ACTION TAKEN | 1 | X | 1 | Do not halt. Skip colliding packet and continue transmitting. | 1 | X | 0 | Do not halt. Retry transmission of colliding packet. | 0 | X | X | Halt and await instruction from host for BMR11<1:0>. '11': results in colliding packet skipped and transmission resumed. '10': results in colliding packet re-transmitted. |
| HALT | RE-START | SKI P | DESCRIPTION OF ACTION TAKEN | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | X | 1 | Do not halt. Skip colliding packet and continue transmitting. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | X | 0 | Do not halt. Retry transmission of colliding packet. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | X | X | Halt and await instruction from host for BMR11<1:0>. '11': results in colliding packet skipped and transmission resumed. '10': results in colliding packet re-transmitted. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

5.6.4 BMR12 - DMA Enable

The DMA RENA and DMA TENA activates the DMA operation as follows:

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|----------|-------------|--|
| 7-2 | RESERVED | - | RESERVED BIT |
| 1 | DMA_RENA | R W 0 | RECEIVE READ DMA ENABLE: When enabled (active high), it activates receive read DMA from the host. |
| 0 | DMA_TENA | R W 0 | TRANSMIT WRITE DMA ENABLE: When enabled (active high), it activates transmit write DMA from the host to ICE's buffer memory. |

5.6.5 BMR13 - DMA Burst & Transceiver Mode Register

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|----------|-------------|---|
| 7 | APOL | R,W 0 | AUTO POLARITY: When set to 0, it enables the automatic polarity correction of the received data. The reverse polarity is identified from either the start of idle signal or link pulses. |
| 6 | RTH | R,W 0 | REDUCED THRESHOLD: When set high, twisted pair receive threshold is reduced by 3 dB (for longer than the recommended 100 meters cable). |
| 5 | ENLI | R,W 0 | ENABLE LINK INTEGRITY: When set low, both transmit and receive link test functions are enabled. When high, no link test is performed and the link status is assumed to be up and twisted pair port is selected if auto select mode is enabled. When this bit is enabled, the transmit link pulses function is always active regardless to the status of the link. |
| 4 | PORT_SEL | R,W 0 | PORT SELECT: This bit manually selects between Twisted Pair (when 0) or AUI (when 1) and is only applicable when ASEL bit (BMR13<3>) is high (disabled). |
| 3 | ASEL | R,W 0 | AUTO PORT SELECT: When set to 0, automatic port selection mode is in effect. The selection is based on the state of link integrity status. Twisted pair port is selected or a good link and AUI port is selected for a link down condition. When set to 1, manual port selection is in effect through PORT_SEL bit (BMR13<4>). |
| 2 | DMT | R,W 0 | DMA DMREQ DROP TIME: When set low, DMREQ drops at the next-to-last transfer of DMA burst (same with 78Q8360). When set high, DMREQ drops at the last transfer of the burst. |
| 1,0 | DMAB1,0 | R W 0 | DMA BURST: This two bits select the burst length for DMA operation. The burst length transfer can either be byte mode or word mode depending on the system bus setting (SYSBUS in DLCR6<5>). |

| DMAB1 | DMAB0 | BURST LENGTH |
|-------|-------|--------------|
| 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 4 |
| 1 | 0 | 8 |
| 1 | 1 | 12 |

5.6.6 BMR14 - Receive Filter & Interrupt Enable Register

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|------------|-------------|--|
| 7 | RESERVED | - | RESERVED BIT |
| 6 | INT ENABLE | R W 0 | LINK DOWN INTERRUPT ENABLE: When high, enables LD (BMR15<6>) to generate an interrupt. Since LD cannot be cleared, the interrupt can be deactivated by clearing this enable bit. |
| 5-3 | RESERVED | - | RESERVED BIT |
| 2 | SKP RX | R W 0 | SKIP RECEIVE PACKET: If the host is reading the received packets in the buffer and decides to skip the current packet then this bit is set to high. The 78Q8370 controller will perform a hardware skip on the internal pointer within 200 nsec to the next packet start address if there is another packet in the buffer. |
| 1 | INT ENABLE | R,W 0 | SQE INTERRUPT ENABLE: When high, enables SQE (BMR15<1>) to generate an interrupt. |
| 0 | RXF | R W 1 | RECEIVE FILTER: When set to 1, disables the reception of own transmitted packet in the ACCEPT ALL PACKETS mode. When set to 0, enables the reception of own transmitted packet in the ACCEPT ALL PACKETS mode. ⁽¹⁾ |

¹⁾ Power up value for this bit is a '1' for SSI 78Q8370 and '0' for SSI 78Q8360. This may be used by the software driver to differentiate between the two chips.

5.6.7 BMR15 - Transceiver Status Register

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|----------|-------------|---|
| 7 | RESERVED | - | RESERVED BIT |
| 6 | LD | R,0 | LINK DOWN: When high, it indicates that the twisted pair port is in link down condition. Can generate an interrupt if enabled by BMR14<6>. The chip powers up in link up condition. When ENLI (BMR13<5>) is high (disabled), this bit is forced to a '1' (link up condition). |
| 5 | OWCOL | R C 0 | OUT OF WINDOW COLLISION: Indicates that a collision occurred after the slot time (51.2 μ s). Transmissions terminated and rescheduled as in normal collision. Writing a '1' will clear this bit. For software compatibility with the 78Q8360, writing a '1' to the COL bit (DLCR0<2>) will also clear this bit. |
| 4 | RESERVED | - | RESERVED BIT |
| 3 | RPI | R,0 | REVERSE POLARITY INDICATION: When high, it indicates that inverted data is being received over the twisted pair wire due to wiring error. This bit is only applicable when APOL (BMR13<2>) is low (enabled). When APOL is high (disables) this bit can never be set. |
| 2 | RESERVED | - | RESERVED BIT |
| 1 | SQE | R C 0 | SIGNAL QUALITY ERROR: When high, indicates detection of SQE signal at the end of a transmission. This bit applies to both the AUI and TP ports. Can generate interrupt if enabled by BMR14<1>. Writing a '1' clears this bit. |
| 0 | RESERVED | - | RESERVED BIT |

5.7 PCMCIA REGISTERS

There are 2 registers for the PCMCIA interface. Each bit is explained in the following sections.

5.7.1 CCR0 - Configuration Option Register

| BIT | SYMBOL | L | DESCRIPTION |
|-----|---------|-------------|--|
| 7 | SRESET | R W 0 | SYSTEM RESET: Setting this bit high is equivalent to assertion of hardware reset (except that this bit is not cleared). This bit is also reflected at the XRST pin to reset the rest of the devices on the card. |
| 6 | LevIREQ | R W 0 | LEVEL MODE INTERRUPT REQUEST: When high, level mode interrupt is selected. When low, pulse mode interrupt is selected. |
| 5:0 | CI(5:0) | R W 0 | CONFIGURATION INDEX: This field is written with the index number of the entry in the Card's Configuration Table that corresponds to the configuration which the system chooses for the card. When CI(5:0) is 0, the chip does not respond to any I/O cycle, but will use the memory cycle. |

The following diagram summarizes which address space has been allocated to each of the various components of the system:

6 78Q8370 & HOST INTERFACE CONFIGURATION

6.1 PCMCIA INTRODUCTION

PCMCIA is an acronym for Personal Computer Memory Card International Association. Its goal is to promote interchangeability of PC Cards among a variety of computer and other electronic products.

PC Cards are approximately 54 by 85 millimeters, but differ in thickness. Type 1 cards are 3.3 mm thick and type 2 cards are 5.0 mm. All have a 68-pin interface at one end.

6.1.1 Memory and I/O Address Space

A Memory Address Space of 64 Mbytes (A0-A25) is permitted for each memory card installed in a system. The Memory Address Space consists of Common Memory and Attribute Memory. The Common Memory may be accessed by a host for memory read and write operations.

There is an additional 64 Mbytes address space for Attribute Memory which is selected by the \overline{REG} signal at the interface. The Attribute Memory is divided into

- Card Information Structure (CIS) - contains the manufacturer's description of card capabilities and specifications.
- Card Configuration Registers (CCR) - a set of registers that allows the card to be configured by the host.

The I/O Address Space of 64 Mbytes is shared and divided among all cards installed in the system. The I/O interface requires that the Memory-Only Interface also be implemented within the same socket, and that the Memory-Only Interface be selected in the socket when no card is inserted and immediately following Card reset and the application of V_{cc} to the card. The I/O interface also supports additional signals like \overline{IREQ} , $\overline{IOIS16}$, \overline{IOWR} , \overline{IORD} , \overline{SPKR} , \overline{INPACK} and \overline{STSCHG} .

The following diagram summarizes which address space that the host is accessing depending on the logic values of \overline{REG} , I/O read/write and Memory read/write signals.

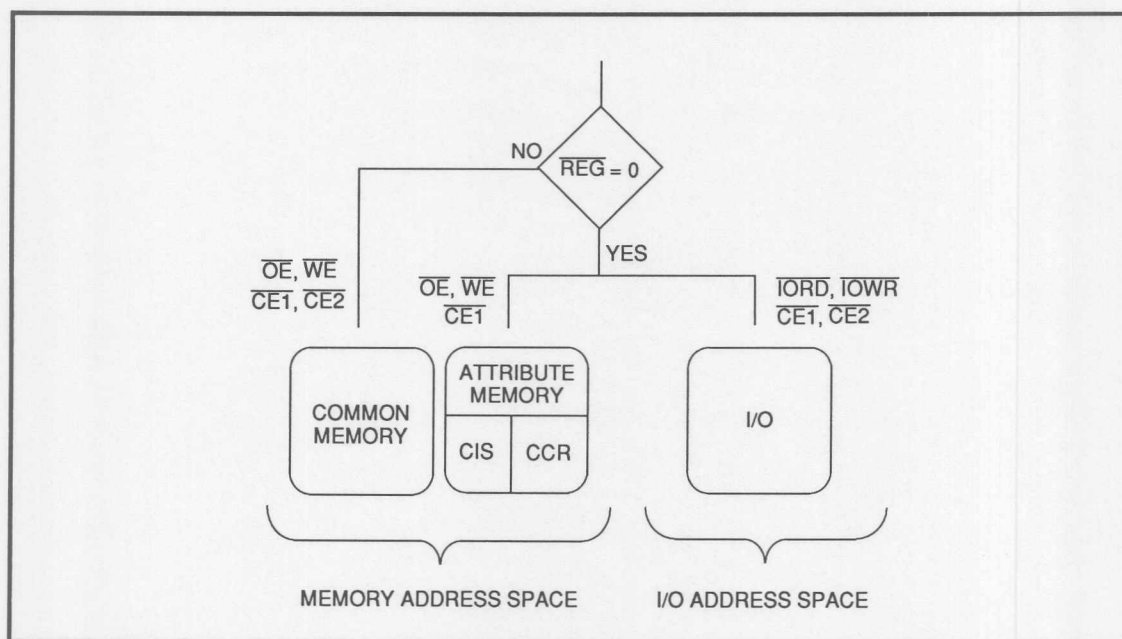


Figure 6-1. Host Address Space Accessing

6.2 PCMCIA INTERFACE FOR SSI 78Q8370

SSI 78Q8370 complies to the PCMCIA Release 2.01 Specifications and powers up as a memory card when in PCMCIA mode. To enter the I/O mode, the Configuration Index CI(5:0) in the CCR0 register must be written with a non-zero value. Only then can the other registers of SSI 78Q8370 be accessed by the host.

In the Attribute Memory Address Space, the CIS is located at address 0 and the CCR is located at an offset value determined by the CCRA pin, illustrated in Figure 6-2 below.

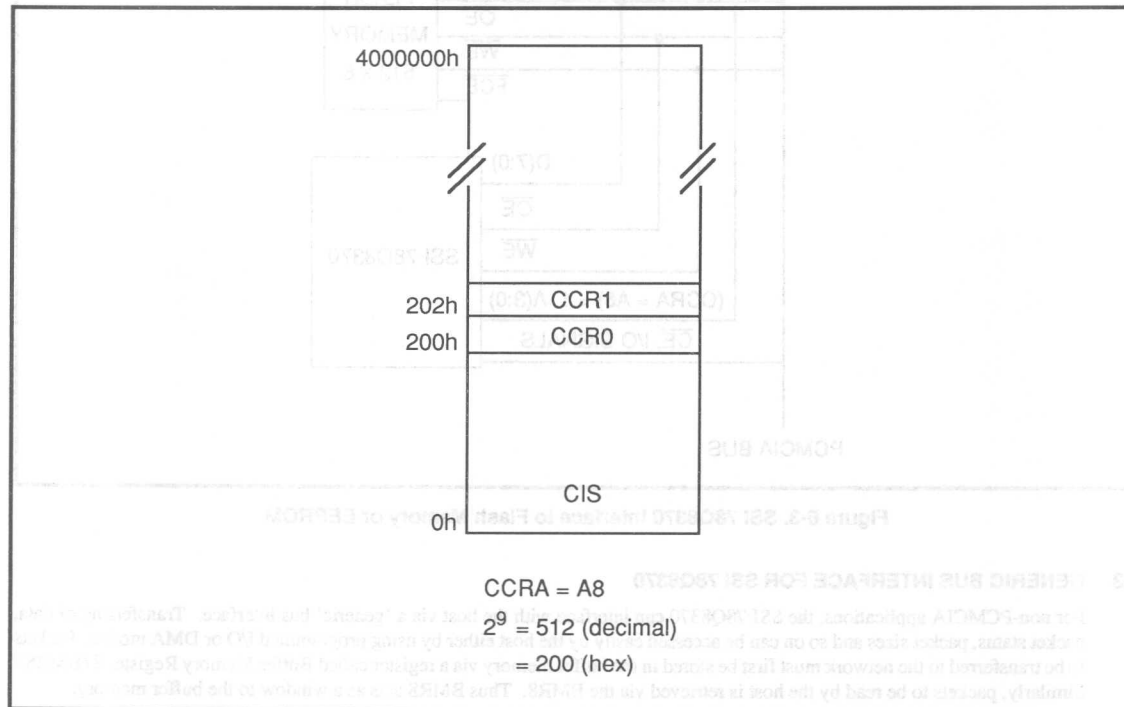


Figure 6-2. Attribute Memory Address Space

CCRA pin must be connected to another address pin apart from A(3:0). For instance, if CCRA is connected to A8, then CCR0 is located at address 200h, an offset of 200h from address 0. An example of how to use the SSI 78Q8370 with a Flash Memory or EEPROM is shown below.

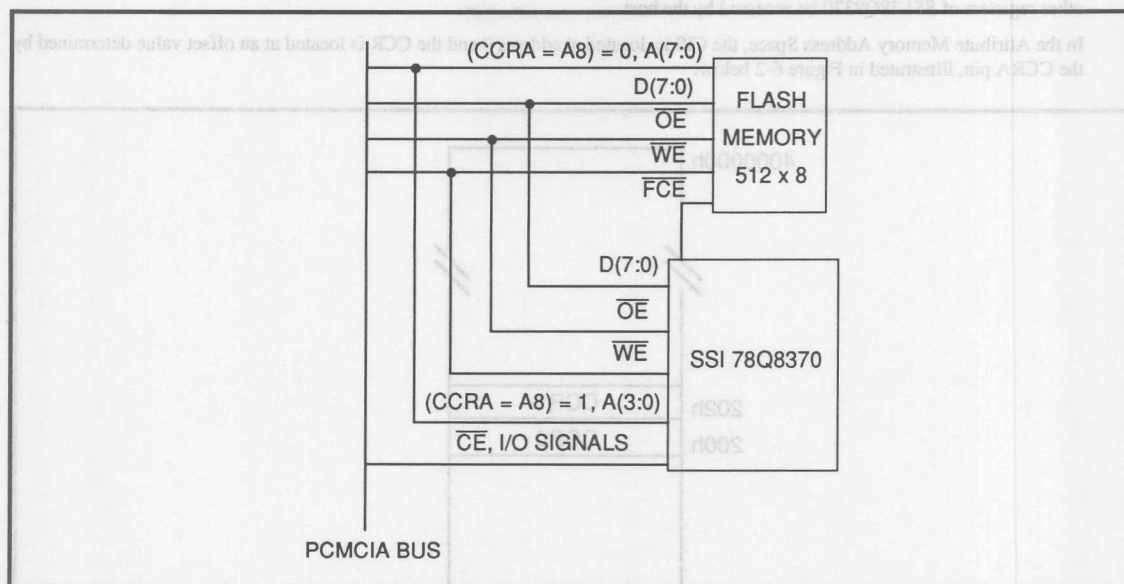


Figure 6-3. SSI 78Q8370 Interface to Flash Memory or EEPROM

6.3 GENERIC BUS INTERFACE FOR SSI 78Q8370

For non-PCMCIA applications, the SSI 78Q8370 can interface with the host via a 'generic' bus interface. Transferring of data, packet status, packet sizes and so on can be accessed easily by the host either by using programmed I/O or DMA modes. Packets to be transferred to the network must first be stored in the buffer memory via a register called Buffer Memory Register 8 (BMR8). Similarly, packets to be read by the host is retrieved via the BMR8. Thus BMR8 acts as a window to the buffer memory.

To interface with the host, the SSI 78Q8370 has 4 host address pins (HA<3:0>), 16 host data pins (HD<15:0>), 3 status pins (SWSB, EOP, INT) and handshake/chip select signals (CS, DMREQ, DMACK, RD, WR, READY). The host is also able to access the SSI 78Q8370's internal registers to retrieve more information (refer to the Register section).

7 78Q8370 & MEDIUM INTERFACE CONFIGURATION

The SSI 78Q8370 has an integrated twisted pair transceiver and supports interface to coax transceiver through AUI signaling. The two port selection (either AUI or TP) is done automatically based on the status of link integrity. In a link-good state, the TP port is selected and in a link-fail state, the AUI port is selected. This automatic selection can be disabled by writing a '1' to register bit BMR13<3> and manual selection is in effect. In manual selection mode, the AUI or TP port may be selected by writing appropriate value to BMR13<4>.

7.1 TWISTED PAIR TRANSCEIVER

The TP transceiver supports complete IEEE 10BASE-T functionality as well as several enhanced functions such as autopolarity detection and correction, smart-squelch logic and long distance mode.

7.1.1 Link Integrity

During idle periods, link pulses are generated and received by both MAUs (Medium Attachment Units) at either end of the twisted pair to ensure that the cable has not been broken or shorted. A positive, 100 ns Link Integrity signal is generated and transmitted by the SSI 78Q8370 every 13 ms during idle periods. The chip assumes a link-good state if it receives valid link pulses or a packet. If neither is received for 105 ms, the SSI 78Q8370 enters a link-fail state. It then needs 4 consecutive positive link pulses (or 8 negative link pulses) to resume link-good state. Only link pulses spaced between 3 ms and 105 ms are considered valid.

In a link-fail state, the SSI 78Q8370 disables normal Transmit, Receive, Collision, loopback and SQE test functions. The reception of a packet will put the device in a link-good state. However, that packet will not be relayed to the Manchester ENDEC unit. Subsequent packets will be relayed as per normal as long as the device remains in a link-good state.

The link status is flagged by register bit BMR15<6> as well as the LEDLTR pin. The Link Integrity function can be disabled by writing a '1' to BMR13<5> which forces the SSI 78Q8370 into a link-good state.

7.1.2 Autopolarity

Because twisted pair differential signals can easily be inverted due to wiring errors, the SSI 78Q8370 incorporates autopolarity detection and correction circuitry. Polarity circuitry monitors the polarity of the received SOI (Start Of Idle) and link pulses and corrects the data internally if the signal is inverted. The inverted polarity is flagged by register bit BMR15<3> and the autopolarity function may be disabled by writing a '1' to BMR13<7>.

7.1.3 Smart Squelch Logic

The twisted pair squelch logic dynamically adjusts the sensitivity and threshold of the receiver. Before signals begin to arrive at the TPIP/TPIN pins, the SSI 78Q8370 is in a high noise rejection, squelch state and no data is passed through. A valid incoming data needs to trip the threshold detectors with three peaks of alternating polarity occurring within a 400 ns window. Once a signal has been qualified by the squelch circuitry, the SSI 78Q8370 assumes an unsquelch state with reduced threshold. See the datasheet for the squelch and unsquelch threshold levels.

At the beginning of each packet there is a preamble consisting of alternating ones and zeros resulting in a 5 MHz Manchester signal on the twisted pair. The SSI 78Q8370 uses the standard 10BASE-T specified threshold levels to unsquelch the incoming preamble. As data begins to arrive, the 10 MHz component of the Manchester encoded signal may have less amplitude since it is attenuated more than the 5 MHz component. For this reason, the threshold levels are reduced in the unsquelch state. This greatly reduces the chance of prematurely detecting the SOI by the threshold detectors.

The twisted pair smart squelch circuitry is returned to a squelch state by any of these conditions: a normal SOI signal, an inverted SOI signal or a missing SOI signal. A missing SOI signal is assumed when no transitions crossing the threshold detectors have occurred for 250 ns after a packet has been received. In this case, a normal SOI signal is generated and appended to the received data.

7.1.4 Long Mode

Writing a '1' to BMR13<6> places the SSI 78Q8370 in long mode where the thresholds of the detectors are lowered to support longer cable length than the recommended 100 meters. Dynamic squelch circuitry is still functional in long mode. The squelch threshold of the long mode is the same as the unsquelch threshold of the normal mode and the unsquelch threshold of the long mode is another 3 dB down.

7.1.5 Collision Detection

A collision happens when both transmitting and receiving functions occur simultaneously in the twisted pair transceiver. The collision signal originating from the twisted pair transceiver is multiplexed together with the collision signal from the AUI module and is relayed to the controller. Collisions will not be reported when the device is in a link-fail state. The internal collision signal is also activated when a jabber condition occurs or when the SQE test is being performed.

7.1.6 SQE Test

An internal Signal Quality Error (SQE) test is also provided on chip. After each packet transmission, an SQE signal (also referred to as "heartbeat" signal) is sent internally to the controller. This feature is provided to match the coax transceiver functionality.

7.1.7 Jabber

An independent circuit monitors the length of each transmission and inhibits it if it surpasses a 26.2 ms maximum allowed transmit time. This function keeps a damaged node from continuously transmitting on the network. When jabber occurs, the transceiver also discontinues loopback and sends a collision signal to the controller. The jabber status is flagged by register bit DLCR0<3>.

7.1.8 Normal Loopback

The twisted pair transceiver provides the normal loopback function specified by the 10BASE-T standard. The normal loopback function is disabled when a collision occurs during which the received data from TPIP/N is passed through instead. Link fail and jabber states also disable the normal loopback.

7.1.9 LED

The LEDLTR pin serves three functions. A connected LED lights up during link-good state and blinks off temporarily during transmission and reception activity.

7.1.10 TP Driver

The transmit driver consists of four differential signals, the true and complement transmit data TPOP, TPON and their respective 50 ns delayed signals TPDN, TPDN. These drivers, when combined with the resistor network shown in Fig 7.1, provide the signal pre-equalization required by the 10BASE-T standard.

A Manchester encoded data consists of 10 MHz (50 ns) component as well as 5 MHz (100 ns) pulses. A twisted pair cable attenuates a 10 MHz signal more than a 5 MHz signal. Equalization is required to decrease the relative power in the 5 MHz component transmitted by the SSI 78Q8370. This causes the 10 MHz and 5 MHz components of the signal to have approximately the same power

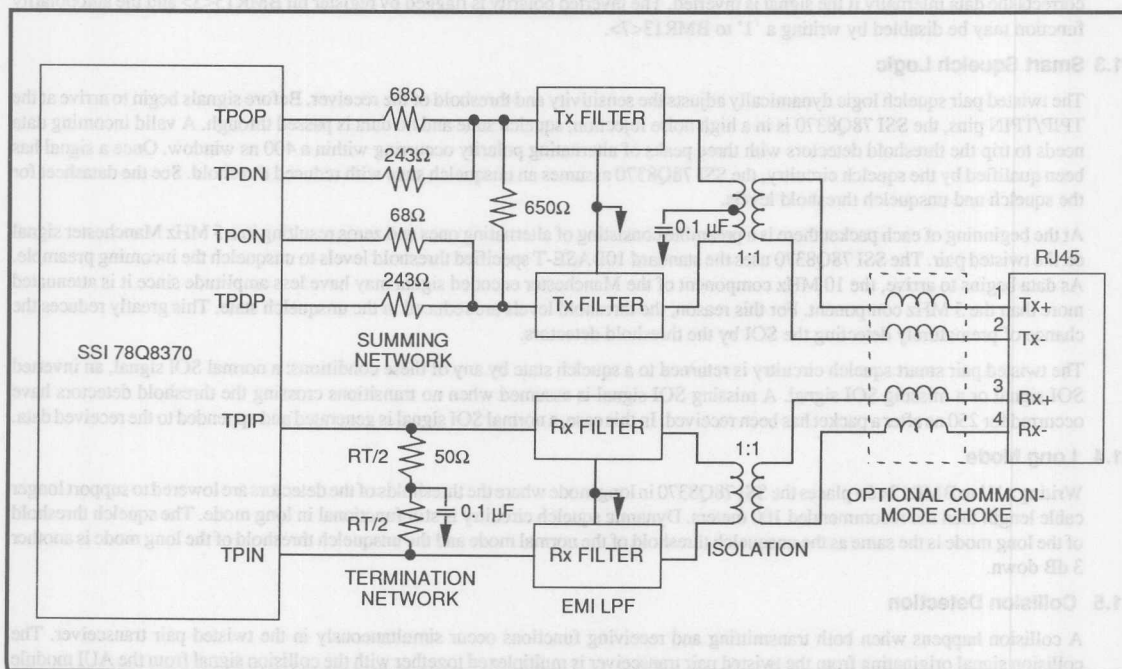


Figure 7.1. Twisted Pair Interface Connections

content at the far end of the twisted pair. To achieve the power reduction of the 5 MHz component, the four transmit signals are summed resistively as shown in Fig 7.2. The values of the five network resistors are selected to allow the twisted pair line to be terminated in 100 ohm.

The drivers are designed to have equal rise/fall times as well as balanced low-to-high and high-to-low propagation delays to minimize common-mode energy. It is also important to maintain equal load capacitance from the board layout for each data output so as to maintain the equal rise/fall times and propagation delays.

The twisted pair magnetics and filters shown in Fig 7.2 isolate the SSI 78Q8370 from the twisted pair media and reduce the radiated emissions. As a result of the well matched drivers, the common-mode choke is optional and the device still meets the 10BASE-T standard of +/- 50 mV of common-mode energy. Various integrated modules are available with different level of integration from a few vendors listed in Table 7.1.

Table 7.1

| Option | Resistor Network | EMI Filter & Isolation | Common-mode Choke |
|--------|------------------|--|-------------------|
| 1 | Discrete | 1) Pulse PE65421 2) Valor PT3877 3) BelFuse A556-2006-DE 4) FilMag 78Z1120B | (Optional) |
| 2 | Discrete | 1) Pulse PE65431 2) Valor FL1012 3) Bel Fuse 0556-2006-01, 0556-3392-00 | |
| 3 | | 1) Pulse PE65485 2) PCA EPE6052G | |

7.1.11 TP Receiver

The SSI 78Q8370 twisted pair receiver uses a high-speed differential comparator designed to preserve the edge timing of the incoming data. The comparator architecture significantly minimizes the bit jitter added by the transceiver. Dual threshold detectors are used by the twisted pair smart squelch circuitry to qualify both positive and negative signal peaks. The threshold levels are dynamically controlled to further enhance the immunity to noise. Refer to the smart squelch logic section.

7.2 ATTACHMENT UNIT INTERFACE (AUI)

AUI is a standard Ethernet interface that connects Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) to a Medium Attachment Unit (MAU). There are 3 pairs of differential signals that connect to an AUI: one pair for transmission, one pair for reception and the other one pair for collision indication. A typical AUI connection diagram is given in Fig 7.2.

7.2.1 AUI Driver

The SSI 78Q8370 AUI drivers have been designed to provide balanced differential voltage levels when signaling. The drivers have equal low-to-high and high-to-low propagation delays to provide minimal skew.

The external resistor connected from the REXT pin to ground controls the AUI driver current. The AUI driver current output is determined by the following relationship:

$$I_{op} \approx 220/REXT$$

To meet IEEE 802.3 AUI specifications of driving 50 meters of AUI cable, REXT is typically 20 Kohm $\pm 5\%$. If the coax transceiver is on board (10BASE2 applications), then the AUI current may be reduced with a corresponding reduction in power consumption.

At the end of transmission, the AUI drivers ramp to VDD slowly to avoid undershoot. An internal digital to analog converter ensures that the driver ramp-up occurs over approximately 8 μ s resulting in a smooth transition into an idle state.

7.2.2 AUI Receiver

The AUI receiver uses high-speed differential comparator to preserve the edges and duty cycle of the incoming data. A threshold detector and squelch circuit are used to qualify valid data from noise. During idle, the AUI is in a high noise rejection squelch state. When the first negative edge crosses the threshold of the threshold detector, the AUI enters into unsquelch state and begins receiving data. The AUI reverts back to squelch state by a normal Start-Of-Idle (SOI) signal or a missing SOI signal. A missing SOI signal is assumed when no transitions have occurred on the receiver inputs for 175 ns. In this case, an SOI signal is generated and appended to the received data.

7.2.3 Termination and Isolation

The AUI cable is specified by the standard to have characteristic impedance of 78 ohms. For minimal reflection, the AUI cable has to be terminated with a 78 ohm resistance at the far end. A 0.1 μF capacitor connected to the mid value point of the termination resistor helps to bypass common mode noise picked up by the AUI cable. This capacitor is optional for on-board transceiver because there will be minimum common mode noise.

The SSI 78Q8370 AUI supports both transformer coupling as well as capacitive coupling as shown in the figure. Please note that for capacitive coupling, the termination resistors have to reside at the inputs of the SSI 78Q8370 AUI receivers.

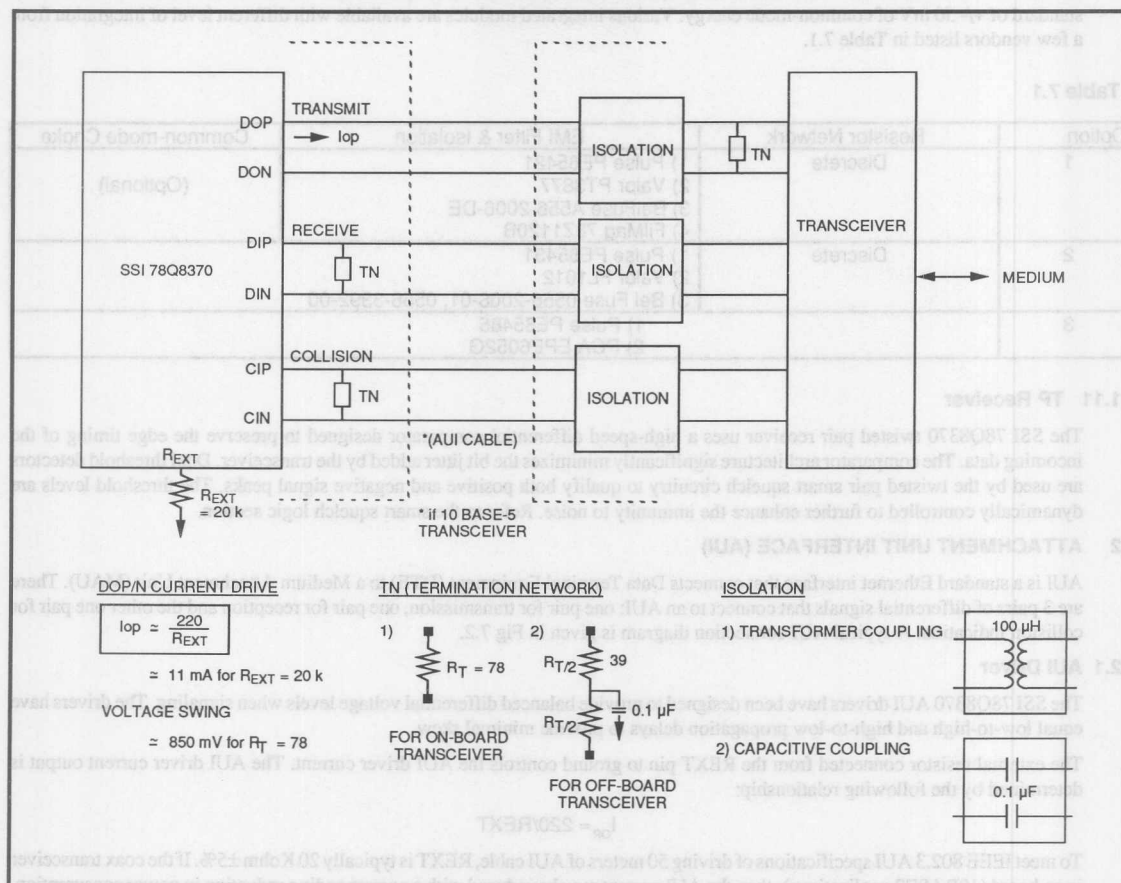


Figure 7.2. Attachment Unit Interface (AUI) Connections

8 USING THE SSI 78Q8370 ON THE NETWORK

This section deals with the transmission of data using the SSI 78Q8370 from the host point of view. It will cover the interaction of register configurations and the actual transmission executed. For more detailed information on the function of the Data Link Controller in this respect (with regards to Inter-Frame Gap, fairness and equality of the line, Jam Pattern, Backoff Algorithm etc.), please refer to the Transmitter Circuits Section.

8.1 INITIALIZATION

Initialization begins with a hardware reset immediately after power on. A pulse with a minimum of 200 nanosecond duration is required to be applied to the RESET pin. This resets ICE's internal pointers and registers to their initial state. $\overline{\text{ENADLC}}$, $\text{DLCR6}<7> = 1$ acts as a software reset resetting all buffer memory pointers. The software reset does not change the contents of the status and control registers or the DLCR0-7 , IDR8-13 , TDR14-15 , HTR8-15 and BMR10-15 registers. Hardware reset sets the $\overline{\text{ENADLC}}$ bit high.

The initialization of the 8370 by the host include the loading of the Ethernet Address of the node into IDR8-13 with IDR8 as the least significant byte of the address and group addressing in the Hash Table registers (if desired). To access the Node ID registers, (or any of the other bank of registers) the following is executed. Please note that all register values are in hexadecimal notation unless otherwise stated.

- a) Disable the DLC by setting $\text{DLCR6}<7> = 1$
- b) Select the register bank by setting $\text{DLCR7}<3:2>$ as required.
 - $\text{DLCR7}<3:2> = 00$ (default setting after hardware)
 - $\text{DLCR7}<3:2> = 01$ (selects Hash Table registers)
 - $\text{DLCR7}<3:2> = 10$ (selects Buffer Memory registers)
 - $\text{DLCR7}<3:2> = 11$ (Reserved)

The host should load the Ethernet Address and Hash Table Configurations at this stage.

- c) The default settings of DLCR0-7 after a hardware reset or power on are as follows:

- $\text{DLCR0} = 00$ (Transmit Status)
- $\text{DLCR1} = 00$ (Receive Status)
- $\text{DLCR2} = 00$ (Transmit Interrupt Mask)
- $\text{DLCR3} = 00$ (Receive Interrupt Mask)
- $\text{DLCR4} = 06$ (Transmit Mode)
- $\text{DLCR5} = 41$ (Receive Mode)
- $\text{DLCR6} = B6$ (Configuration Register 1)
- $\text{DLCR7} = 20$ (Configuration Register 2)

The host can now select the type of interrupt enables that should be activated in DLCR2-3 . Unless a loop back mode is required in a testing environment, DLCR4 need not be changed.

- d) The default setting of DLCR5 allows the reception of normal packets i.e. packets that meet the IEEE requirements and does not contain any errors. The host can enable the 'remote reset' capability of SSI 78Q8370 or enable the reception of 'bad packets' with the activation of appropriate bits in this register. The Address Mode bits can be reprogrammed for hash table acceptance if necessary. Please refer to the Data Link Controller Registers Section for details.

- e) DLCR6 configures the size of the transmit buffer and overall buffer size. This should be changed according to the host's requirements. $\text{DLCR6}<7>$ is reset to 0 for transmission and reception activities and set to 1 for access to the Node ID and Hash Table Register Banks.

- f) DLCR7 configures the access to the 3 register banks. To access the Node ID and Hash Table Register Banks, $\text{DLCR6}<7> = 1$ must be set to 1. $\text{DLCR7}<0>$ sets the big endian and little endian byte ordering depending on the host's configuration.

- g) BMR11 denotes the action to be taken by SSI 78Q8370 should a 16 collision happen on the network. This should be programmed accordingly before transmission or the default setting will be used.

8.2 PACKET TRANSMISSION USING THE SSI 78Q8370

8.2.1 Transmission Without Contention

Before initiating a transmission, the host will load in the data packet(s) into the transmit buffer via BMR8 (and BMR9 if in word mode). Each data packet will contain a 2-byte header of the total packet length, destination and source addresses and the data to be transmitted. The host initiates transmission by writing the number of packets into BMR10 and setting TXST bit = 1 ($\text{BMR10}<7>$).

The 2-byte header is loaded into a counter within the transmit circuit. The counter will decrement its value as each byte is transmitted to the medium. When it reaches zero, this signifies that an entire data packet has been transmitted. At the same time, the packet count value (PACKET CNT<6:0>) in BMR10 will decrement by 1 each time a data packet is transmitted. When packet count is zero, this indicates that there are no more packets in the transmit buffer. SSI 78Q8370 will enter its idle state and wait for the TXST bit to be set high again and the process is repeated.

SSI 78Q8370 will wait for a 'free' medium before transmitting to the network. When the network is free, SSI 78Q8370 will generate and append the preamble and start frame delimiter to the beginning of the packet (the 2-byte header is stripped off and not transmitted) and generate the CRC for the packet. The entire packet starting from the preamble to the CRC is encoded by the ENDEC to Manchester Encoding and output to the external transceiver via the TDN and TDP pins.

The HWR_ERR bit (DLCR0<0>) indicates a host write error if it is a 1. This means that the transmit bank is full and has insufficient buffer space for the next packet that the host is writing. When this happens, the host will have to initiate a TXST to start transmission hence clearing the transmit bank. In the case of a single transmit bank, the host will have to wait until this bank is cleared before writing another packet into the transmit buffer. SSI 78Q8370 can also be configured into two transmit banks. In this case, when the first bank is being transmitted (by initiating TXST), the host can continue writing to the second transmit bank. Similarly, when the second transmit bank is being transmitted (by initiating another TXST), the host can write to the first bank that had been cleared. It should be noted that the TXST can be initiated whenever the host wishes to transmit (even when the transmit banks are not full).

8.2.2 Collision and Recovery

While transmitting, SSI 78Q8370 monitors the network for collisions. In the event of a collision, the collision counter in DLCR4<7:4> is incremented and the transmission terminated. The COL bit (DLCR0<2>) will be set to indicate that at least one collision has occurred during the transmission of that packet. After the random interval deferment, SSI 78Q8370 will attempt to re-transmit the collided packet and all other packets in the transmit buffer until the PACKET CNT in BMR10<6:0> reaches zero. In the event of 16 collisions, SSI 78Q8370 will take appropriate action according to the 16 collision control register set in BMR11. There are four different actions for SSI 78Q8370 to choose when a packet has attempted 16 re-transmissions. The actions and bit settings are shown in the register section for BMR11. The 16COL bit (DLCR0<1>) will be set when 16 attempts was reached. Otherwise if SSI 78Q8370 successfully transmits all the packets in the transmit buffer, the TXOK (DLCR0<7>) bit will be set to signal a transmission completion and the collision counter will be reset to zero.

8.2.3 How the SSI 78Q8370 Handles Other Situations

Whether the buffer memory setup is in a word or byte mode, SSI 78Q8370 will always access the buffer memory in byte format and convert it into a serial bit stream before transmitting to the network. In the situation where a packet is of odd byte length for a word mode system, SSI 78Q8370 will transmit this packet properly and perform an even byte alignment. This will ensure that the new packet will always start at the even address location.

In reference to the DLCR7<0> bit for the INTEL or MOTOROLA format, the data order swapping only applies to the host that is configured in word format. DLCR7<0> set to 0 refers to the INTEL format and DLCR7<0> = 1 refers to the MOTOROLA format. In the INTEL format, the least significant byte is transmitted first then followed by the most significant byte. In the MOTOROLA format, the data order is reversed. Note that all the data stored in the buffer memory is affected, including the non-transmitted 2-byte headers for the length of the data packet. Only BMR8 and BMR9 are affected by this control bit.

The following tables describe the ordering of the packets depending on which format the host is configured. SSI 78Q8370 defaults to the INTEL format upon power up.

TRANSMIT PACKET:

| INTEL FORMAT | |
|--|--|
| HIGH BYTE | LOW BYTE |
| TX MSB length | TX LSB length |
| Destination address 2 nd byte | Destination address 1 st byte |
| Source address 2 nd byte | Source address 1 st byte |
| Length field LSB | Length field MSB |
| Data field 2 nd byte | Data field 1 st byte |

| MOTOROLA FORMAT | |
|--|--|
| HIGH BYTE | LOW BYTE |
| TX LSB length | TX MSB length |
| Destination address 1 st byte | Destination address 2 nd byte |
| Source address 1 st byte | Source address 2 nd byte |
| Length field MSB | Length field LSB |
| Data field 1 st byte | Data field 2 nd byte |

RECEIVE PACKET:

| INTEL FORMAT | |
|--|--|
| HIGH BYTE | LOW BYTE |
| Reserved | Packet status |
| Data length high byte | Data length low byte |
| Destination address 2 nd byte | Destination address 1 st byte |
| Source address 2 nd byte | Source address 1 st byte |
| Length field LSB | Length field MSB |
| Data field 2 nd byte | Data field 1 st byte |

| MOTOROLA FORMAT | |
|--|--|
| HIGH BYTE | LOW BYTE |
| Packet status | Reserved |
| Data length low byte | Data length high byte |
| Destination address 1 st byte | Destination address 2 nd byte |
| Source address 1 st byte | Source address 2 nd byte |
| Length field MSB | Length field LSB |
| Data field 1 st byte | Data field 2 nd byte |

8.3 PACKET RECEPTION USING THE SSI 78Q8370

8.3.1 Reception Without Contention

When not transmitting, SSI 78Q8370 will consistently monitor the network. To determine if a packet on the network is for the node, SSI 78Q8370 will check the destination address of the packet. Depending on the Address Modes (DLCR5<1:0>) of the node (set during initialization), SSI 78Q8370 will accept the packet if the destination address meets the criteria.

Upon a successful reception, the received packet is stored in the receive buffer. An internal counter in SSI 78Q8370 keeps track of the length of the packet. SSI 78Q8370 allocates 4 bytes in the receive buffer before storing the accepted packet in the receive buffer. This is for a 4-byte header of the accepted packet to the host (refer to Receive Buffer Data Format Section). The 4-byte header contains the packet length and the status (CRC error, alignment error etc.) of the packet. At the end of the packet reception, SSI 78Q8370 writes the status of the accepted packet in the allocated space. By default, if a packet contains any errors, it will be discarded and the receive buffer pointers will be restored automatically.

When a packet is accepted, the PKT_RDY (DLCR1<7>) bit is set and the RX_BUFMTY (DLCR5<6>) bit is cleared to indicate to the host that there is a packet in the Receive Buffer. The host will then proceed to read the packet from the buffer memory. When all the data packets in the receive buffer are read, the RX_BUFMTY (DLCR5<6>) is set to '1' again. An OVRFLO, DLCR1<0> error occurs when the receive buffer is full or has insufficient space for the next accepted packet. This will result in the rejection of the packet and the host would have to read the receive buffer to free some buffer space. Due to the ring structure of the receive buffer, once the host has read some packets, that buffer space becomes available for the future packets.

After accepting a packet, the receiver will perform an 8-byte alignment in the receive buffer. An 8-byte alignment means that the start address of the next packet will always begin at the 8-byte boundary (for example at address locations: 0000H, 0008H, 0010H....etc.). The execution of 8 byte alignment must be consistent between the receiver and the host read circuit. In the host read circuit, there is a counter that loads the packet length value from the 4-byte header of the receive packet (3rd and 4th bytes of the 4-byte header). In a byte configuration, the counter will decrement each time a byte has been read out by the host. When the counter reaches zero, this signifies that the entire packet has been read by the host. The host can continue to read the next packet if no other resource requires the attention of SSI 78Q8370.

8.3.2 Collision and Recovery

In the event of a collision, the receiver accepts the fragmented bits of the collision and decodes it just like a valid frame. A CRC check would inform the host that the received packet has CRC errors by setting the CRC_ERR (DLCR1<1>) to a 1. The host will then discard this packet and the receive buffer memory pointers will be adjusted accordingly for the reception of the next packet.

8.3.3 How the SSI 78Q8370 Handles Other Situations

When the host is configured as word mode, there will be a situation whereby there are packets in the receive buffer are of odd byte length. The host should discard the excess byte of the last word. SSI 78Q8370 maintains an internal counter and re-aligns accordingly.

SSI 78Q8370 has the capability of accepting packets with errors or perform an extra group addressing mode depending on the bits set in the Receive Mode Register, DLCR5. The effects on packet reception with reference to each specific bit is elaborated below.

If ACPT_BADPKT (DLCR5<5>) is activated, SSI 78Q8370 will accept short packets or packets with alignment and/or CRC errors. These errors may be due to network corruption or packet collision. In this case, the corresponding bits are not set when the packet is accepted. However, the status byte to the host in the receive buffer will continue to indicate these errors as they occur.

SSI 78Q8370 may be programmed to accept packets with a minimum length of 6 bytes to a maximum of 2047 bytes (excluding CRC bits). If ENA_SRTPKT is set to a 1, packets that are less than 60 bytes in length (from destination address to end of data field) will

be accepted by SSI 78Q8370. The SRT_ERR bit (DLCR1<3>) will not be set when the packet is accepted in this case. Similar to the case of ACPT_BADPKT, the status byte to the host will continue to indicate the error. If ENA_SRTPKT is set to 0, SSI 78Q8370 will reject this packet setting SRT_ERR bit (DLCR1<3>) to 1 to indicate the error. It should be noted that SSI 78Q8370 does not check for long packet errors (greater than the IEEE maximum length) and has no error flags for such packets.

The ADD_SIZE bit (DLCR5<4>) allows the multiplexing of the last byte of the destination address. When activated, it configures SSI 78Q8370 to match only 5 bytes of the destination address before deciding to accept the incoming packet.

The ENA_RMTRST bit (DLCR5<2>) enables other nodes on the network to remotely reset an external peripheral connected to this node. This is achieved by sending a packet to this node (using individual/physical addressing only) with a Type Field containing the 0900H pattern. The least significant bit (LSB) of the most significant byte (MSBYTE) of Type Field is transmitted first. Thus the 0900H pattern (09H is the most significant byte) would be transmitted as follows from left to right:

1001 0000 0000 0000

8.3.4 Status Byte Format

The status byte to the host has several bits that flag error messages or report the status of the accepted packet. It should be noted that these error and status bits do not reflect the settings of the corresponding register bits in DLCR0 and DLCR1. This is outlined below.

The format of the status byte is as follows:

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|--------|
| 0 | 0 | PACKET OK | REMOTE RESET | SHORT ERROR | ALIGN ERROR | CRC ERROR | OVRFLO |

Bit 7 and 6 are not used and always set at '0'. The settings of the status bits: 5, 3, 2 and 1 depend very much on the settings of ACPT_BADPKT (DLCR5<5>) and ENA_SRTPKT (DLCR5<3>). When ACPT_BADPKT is set to a 1, a packet that has any errors (such as short packet, alignment or CRC errors), will set the respective status bits (SHORT ERROR, ALIGN ERROR, CRC ERROR) to a 1 and the PACKET OK (bit 5) to a 0. The value in DLCR1 will not indicate any errors and DLCR1<7> is set to 1. Hence, the status byte of the RAM is not a mirror image of DLCR1. Similarly, this applies when ENA_SRTPKT (DLCR5<3>) is set to enable SSI 78Q8370 to accept short packets.

As for the OVRFLO bit, it will be set under the following conditions. When the receive buffer memory is too small to accommodate any in-coming packet, then DLCR1<0> will be set (but not bit 0 of the status byte as the packet has already rejected). Later, if a subsequent packet is successfully loaded into the receive buffer memory then the OVRFLO bit in the status byte will be set (but not DLCR1<0>). This is to indicate to the host that one or more packets have been reject by the receiver due to memory overflow problems.

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

January 1993

INTRODUCTION

The Silicon Systems integrated DTMF Receivers and Transceivers are complete Touch-Tone™ detection and generation systems. Each can operate in a stand-alone mode for the majority of telecommunications applications, thereby providing the most economical implementation of DTMF signaling systems possible. Each combines precision active filters and analog circuits with digital control logic on a monolithic CMOS integrated circuit. SSI DTMF chip use is straightforward and the external component requirements are minimal. This application guide describes device operation, performance, system requirements and typical application circuits for the SSI DTMF chips.

HOW THE SILICON SYSTEMS DTMF CIRCUITS WORK

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION

The task of a DTMF Receiver is to detect the presence of a valid DTMF signal on a telephone line or other transmission medium. The presence of a valid DTMF signal

indicates a single dialed digit; to generate a valid digit sequence, each DTMF signal must be separated by a valid pause.

Table 1 gives the established Bell system standards for a valid DTMF signal and a valid pause. The SSI DTMF Receivers meet or exceed these standards.

Similar device architecture is used in all SSI DTMF Receivers. Figure 1 shows the SSI 75T202 Block Diagram. This architecture is implemented in all Silicon Systems single chip receivers, as well as SSI Transceivers. In general terms, the detection scheme is as follows: The input signal is pre-filtered and then split into two bands, each of which contains only one DTMF tone group. The output of each band-split filter is amplified and limited by a zero-crossing detector. The limited signals, in the form of square waves, are passed through tone frequency bandpass filters. Digital logic is then used to provide detector sampling and determine detection validity, to present the digital output data in the correct format, and to provide device timing and control.

| PARAMETER | VALUE |
|----------------------------|--|
| One Low-Group Tone, and | 697, 770, 852 or 941 Hz |
| One High-Group Tone | 1209, 1336, 1477 or 1633 Hz |
| Frequency Tolerance | $f_0 \pm (1.5\% + 2 \text{ Hz})$ |
| Amplitude Range | $-24 \text{ dB} \leq A \leq 6 \text{ dBm @ } 600\Omega$ (Dynamic Range 30 dB) |
| Relative Amplitude (Twist) | $-8 \text{ dB} \leq \frac{\text{High Group Tone}}{\text{Low Group Tone}} \leq +4 \text{ dB}$ |
| Duration | 40 ms or longer |
| Inter-tone Pauses | 40 ms or longer |

TABLE 1: Bell System Standards

PERFORMANCE CONSTRAINTS

SPEECH IMMUNITY AND NOISE TOLERANCE

The two largest problems confronting a DTMF Receiver are:

- 1) Distinguishing between valid DTMF tone pairs and other speech or stray signals that contain DTMF tone pair frequencies. This is referred to as Speech Immunity.
- 2) Detecting valid tone pairs in the presence of noise, which is typically found in the telephone (or other transmission medium) environment. This is referred to as Noise Tolerance.

The SSI DTMF Receivers use several techniques to distinguish between valid tone pairs and other stray signals. These techniques are explained in later sections. Briefly, the techniques are:

- 1) Pre-filtering of audio signal. Removes supply noise and dial tone from input audio signal and emphasizes the voice frequency domain.

- 2) Zero-cross detection. Limits the acceptable level of noise during detection of a tone pair. Important for speech rejection.

- 3) Valid tone pair/pause sampling. Samples the detection filters and checks for consistency before a valid tone is declared.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION

AUDIO PREPROCESSOR

The Audio Preprocessor is an analog filter that band limits the input analog signal between 500 Hz and 6 kHz. In addition, it emphasizes the 2 kHz to 6 kHz voice region.

Band limiting suppresses power supply and dial tone frequencies, and high frequency noise. The emphasized voice region helps to equalize the audio response since many phone lines tend to roll off at about 1 kHz. In addition, preservation of the upper voice frequencies is important in providing speech immunity.

TONE BAND SPLITTING

After the analog signal is preprocessed, it is split into two bands, each of which contains only one DTMF tone

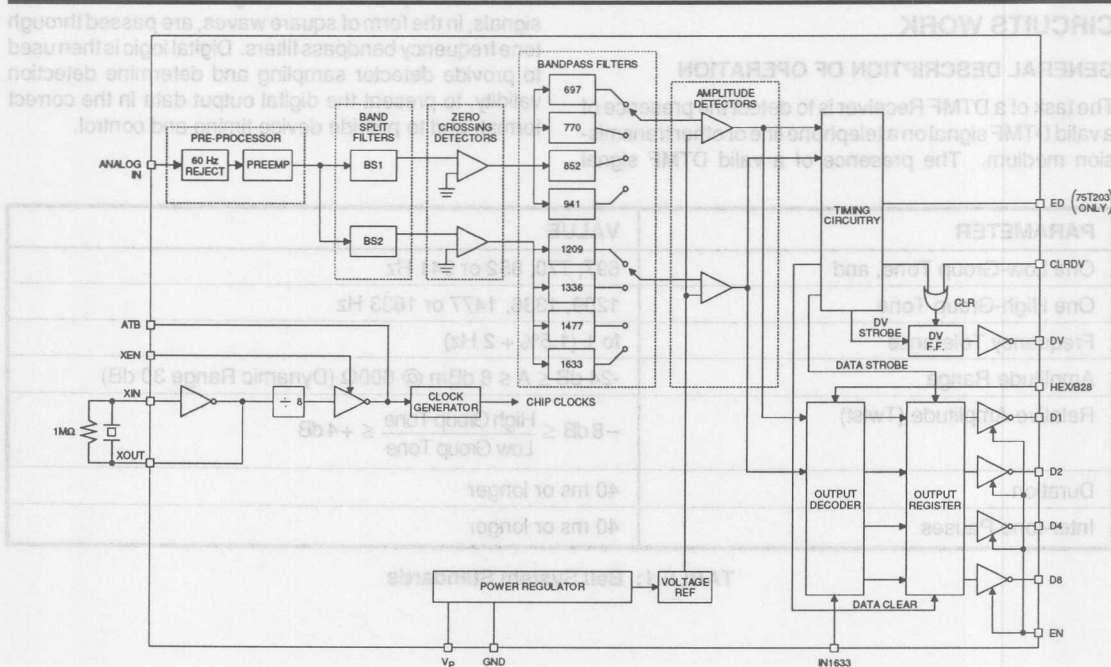


FIGURE 1: SSI 75T202 Block Diagram

group. The band-split filters are actually band-stop filters to maintain all frequencies except the *other* tone group; this is done to maintain all analog information to enhance speech immunity but not allow the other tone group to act as interfering noise for the band being detected. These band-stop filters have “floors” that limit the amount of tone pair twist which further enhances speech immunity. See device data sheets for acceptable twist limits.

ZERO-CROSSING DETECTORS

The output of each band-split filter is amplified and limited by a zero-crossing detector (limiter). The function of the zero-crossing detector is to produce a square wave at the prime frequency emanating from the band-split filter. If a pure tone is not present, as in the case of voice or other interfering noise, a rectangular wave with a variable period will result. Proportional to the interference, the limiter output power is spread over a broad frequency range as the zero crossings “dither.” When a high level of noise or speech occurs, no single bandpass filter pair will contain significant power long enough to result in a tone detection. On the other hand, when a pure DTMF tone exists with acceptable noise levels, the output of the limiter will not have any significant dither and tone detection will occur. The zero-crossing detector also acts as AGC (Automatic Gain Control) in that the output amplitude is independent of input amplitude; this additionally establishes an acceptable signal-to-noise ratio not dependent on tone amplitude.

BANDPASS FILTERS & AMPLITUDE DETECTORS

The bandpass filters perform tone frequency discrimination. Their responses are tailored so that if the frequency of the limited square wave from the zero-crossing detector is within the tone frequency tolerance, the filter output will exceed the amplitude detector threshold. The amplitude detectors are interrogated periodically by the digital control circuitry to ascertain the presence of only one tone in each band for the required duration. In a similar fashion, valid pauses are measured by the absence of valid tone pairs for the specified time.

TIMING AND LOGIC

During the qualification process, the output decoder generates the proper digital code for the received DTMF tone pair. After the fidelity and duration of this signal have been verified, the timing circuitry latches this code into the output register and raises the data valid (DV) flag.

The only precision external element needed for the SSI DTMF Receivers is a 3.58 MHz parallel resonant crystal (color-burst frequency) with a .01% tolerance for the on-board oscillator. A 1 M Ω 10% resistor should be connected in parallel with the crystal. This generates the

precise clock for the filters and for the logic timing and control of the chip.

CIRCUIT IMPLEMENTATION

Standard CMOS technology is used for the entire circuit. Logic functions use standard low-power circuitry while the analog circuits use precision switched-capacitor-filter technology.

HOW TO USE THE SSI DTMF RECEIVERS

PRECAUTIONS

Although static protection devices are provided on the high-impedance inputs, normal handling precautions observed for CMOS devices should be used.

All CMOS parts are prone to a destructive latch-up mode. This behavior is inherent to these parts due to their physical structure. The latch-up mode can best be described as a low impedance, high current state existing between the power supply connections on a CMOS chip. This is also referred to as triggering of parasitic SCR behavior.

The most common cause of a latch-up mode is operating a CMOS part outside its rated power supply voltage. This over-voltage need not be applied at power supply pins only to cause latch-up. Latch-up can occur when over-voltage is applied at any input or output. For the SSI DTMF Receivers & Transceivers, the pin voltages should be constrained to the range between $V_N - 0.5V$ and $V_P + 0.5V$ (except the analog input pin whose conditions are discussed below). Clamping diodes should be utilized wherever necessary to ensure that voltage ratings are not exceeded.

Another cause for latch-up is fast dv/dt transients affecting the chip. These transients are encountered in applications that require the connection/disconnection of “live” boards. While these applications are very rare and their implementation is best avoided, it must be mentioned that whenever they are necessary, they present a severe environment for CMOS parts. Care must be taken in such instances to ensure that ground planes and rails are connected first and disconnected last. This will go a long way in eliminating voltage transients.

Voltage transients that exist on power lines must also be eliminated. High voltage transients caused by switching of high current devices can trigger latch-up. High frequency decoupling is a requirement for the proper operation of the SSI DTMF devices. A 0.01 μF to a 0.1 μF ceramic decoupling capacitor should be connected to the power supply pin at the chip.

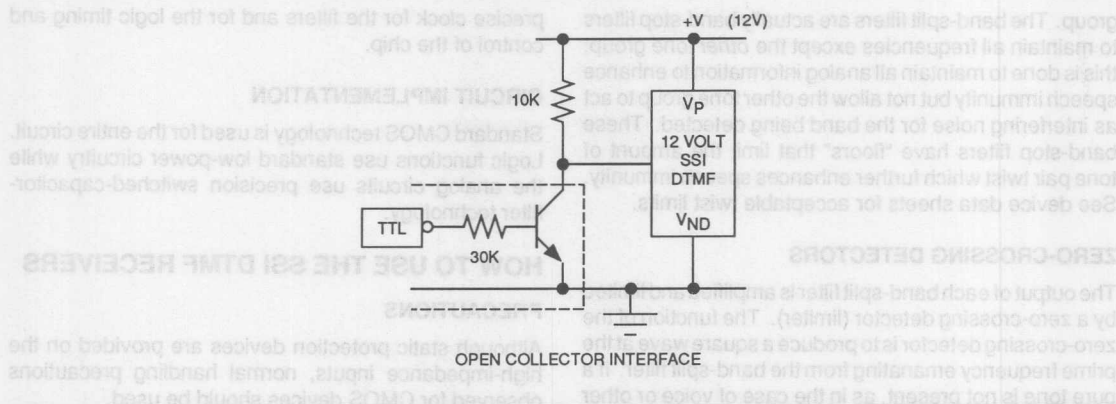


FIGURE 2: Interface Circuit for Conversion from TTL Output Levels to 12V SSI DTMF Input Levels

POWER SUPPLY

Excessive power supply noise should be avoided, and to aid the user in this regard, power supply hook-up options are provided on some devices.

Since the digital circuitry of the devices possess the high noise immunity characteristics of CMOS logic, it is the analog section that is affected most by power supply noise. On those SSI DTMF Receivers that have separate Analog Negative and Digital Negative supply connections (grounds), namely VNA and VND, an unfiltered supply may be used at VND. It is necessary that VND and VNA differ no more than 0.5V.

The analog circuitry of the devices require low power supply noise levels as specified on the device data sheet. The effects of excessive power supply noise are decreased tone amplitude sensitivity and less tone detection frequency bandwidth. Power supply noise can be significantly reduced by decoupling the chip with a 0.1 μ F ceramic capacitor. Power supply noise effects will be slightly less if the analog input is referenced to VP. This is normally accomplished by connecting VP to ground and utilizing a negative power supply.

DIGITAL INPUTS

The digital inputs are directly compatible with standard CMOS logic devices powered by VP and VN (or VND). The input logic levels should swing within 30% of VP or VN to insure detection. Any unused input must be tied to VN or VP. Figure 2 shows a method for interfacing TTL outputs to 12V SSI DTMF Receivers.

ANALOG INPUT

The analog input is the signal input pin for the devices, and is specially biased to facilitate its connection to external circuitry, as shown in Figure 3. The signal level at the analog input pin must not exceed the positive supply as stated on the device data sheets. If this condition cannot be guaranteed by the external circuitry, the signal must be AC coupled into the chip with a 0.01 μ F \pm 20% capacitor.

ANALOG INPUT NOISE

The SSI DTMF Receivers will tolerate wide-band input noise of up to 12 dB below the lowest amplitude tone component during detection of a valid tone pair. Any single interference frequency (including tone harmonics) between 1 kHz and 6 kHz should be at least 20 dB below the lowest amplitude tone component. Adherence to these conditions will ensure reliable detection and full tone detection frequency bandwidth. Because of the internal band limiting, noise with frequencies above 8 kHz can remain unfiltered. However, noise near the 56 kHz internal switched-capacitor-filter sampling frequency will be aliased (folded back) into the audio spectrum; noise above 28 kHz therefore should be low-pass filtered with a circuit as shown in Figure 4 using a cut-off frequency (f_c) of 6.6 kHz.

A 1 kHz cut-off frequency filter can be used on "normal" phone lines for special applications. When a phone line is particularly noisy, tone pair detection may be unreliable. A 1 kHz low pass filter will remove much of the noise energy but maintain the tone groups; however, a decreased speech immunity will result. This usage should only be considered for applications where speech immunity is not important, such as control paths that carry no speech.

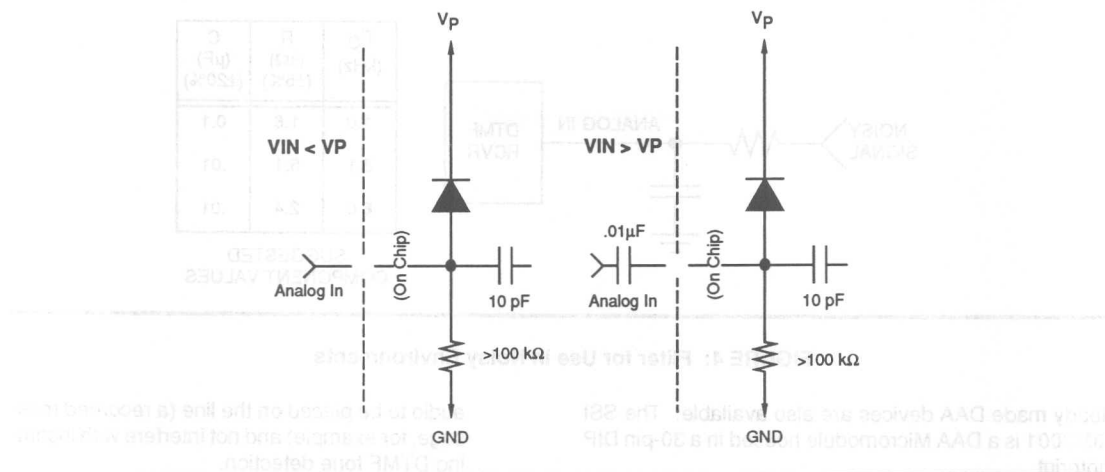


FIGURE 3: Direct and AC Coupled Configurations

Some DTMF tone pair generators output distorted tones which the SSI DTMF Receivers may not detect reliably (inexpensive extension telephones are an example). Most of the interfering harmonics of these may be removed by the use of a 3 kHz low-pass filter as in Figure 4. Some speech immunity degradation will result. It should be mentioned that when using low-pass filters, a higher cut-off frequency will preserve more of the speech immunity advantages.

The SSI DTMF Receivers provide superior speech immunity and noise rejection. The analog signals are subjected to stringent criteria and rigorous qualification in order to assure that only true DTMF tone pairs are detected and decoded properly. Stray signal and noise with sufficient amplitude will cause a DTMF receiver to disqualify a DTMF tone pair.

Such a condition can be occasionally encountered when using DTMF "beepers." Beepers are normally used to transmit DTMF signals from dial-pulse phones. It has been observed that the non-linearity in the response of carbon microphones in telephone handsets introduces intermodulation products, which actually produce new frequency components. These components happen to fall directly into the useful bandwidths of some of the basic tones that the receiver must detect. Because of the presence of these components (normally referred to as third-tone) with a valid DTMF tone, detection is disabled. To inhibit the more common higher frequency third tones from arriving to the receiver, the circuit shown in Figure 5 is suggested.

TELEPHONE LINE INTERFACE

In applications that use an SSI DTMF Receiver to decode DTMF signals from a phone line, a DAA (Direct Access Arrangement) must be implemented. Equipment intended for connection to the public telephone network must comply with and be registered in accordance to FCC Part 68. For PBX applications refer to EIA Standard RS-464.

Some of the basic guidelines are:

- 1) Maximum voltage and current ratings of the SSI DTMF Receivers must not be exceeded; this calls for protection from ringing voltage, if applicable, which ranges from 80 to 120V RMS over a 20 to 80 Hz frequency range.
- 2) The interface equipment must not breakdown with high-voltage transient tests (including a 2500V peak surge) as defined in the applicable document.
- 3) Phone line termination must be less than 200Ω DC and approximately 600Ω AC (200-3200 Hz).
- 4) Termination must be capable of sustaining phone line loop current (off-hook condition) which is typically 18 to 120 mA DC.
- 5) The phone line termination must be electrically balanced with respect to ground.
- 6) Public phone line termination equipment must be registered in accordance to FCC Part 68 or connected through registered protection circuitry. Registration typically takes about six months.

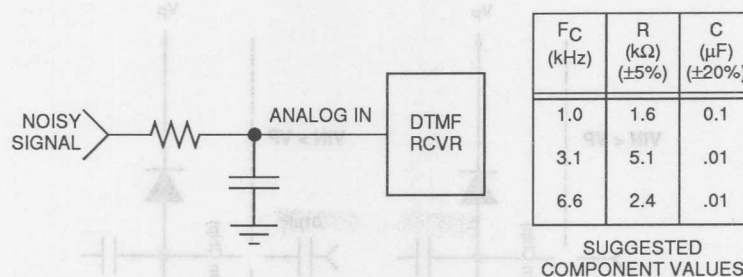


FIGURE 4: Filter for Use in Noisy Environments

Ready made DAA devices are also available. The SSI 73M9001 is a DAA Micromodule housed in a 30-pin DIP footprint.

audio to be placed on the line (a recorded message, for example) and not interfere with incoming DTMF tone detection.

Figure 6 shows a simplified phone line interface using a 600Ω 1:1 line transformer. Transformers specially designed for phone line coupling are available from many transformer manufacturers. Figure 7 shows a more enhanced version of Figure 6. These added features include:

- 1) A 150V surge protector to eliminate high voltage spikes.
- 2) A Texas Instruments TCM 1520A ring detector, optically isolated from the supervisory circuitry.
- 3) Back-to-back Zener diodes to protect the DTMF (and optional multiplexer Op-Amp) from ringer voltage.
- 4) Audio multiplexer which allows voice or other

OUTPUTS

The digital outputs of the SSI DTMF Receivers (except XOUT) swing between VP and VN (or VND) and are fully compatible with standard CMOS logic devices powered from VP and VN. The 5V DTMF devices will also interface directly to LSTTL. The 12V DTMF devices can interface to TTL or low voltage MOS with the circuit in Figure 8.

Data Outputs D8, D4, D2 and D1 are three-state enabled to facilitate interface to a three-state bus. Figure 9 shows the equivalent circuit for the data outputs in the high impedance state. Care must be taken to prevent either substrate diode in Figure 9 from becoming forward biased or damage may result.

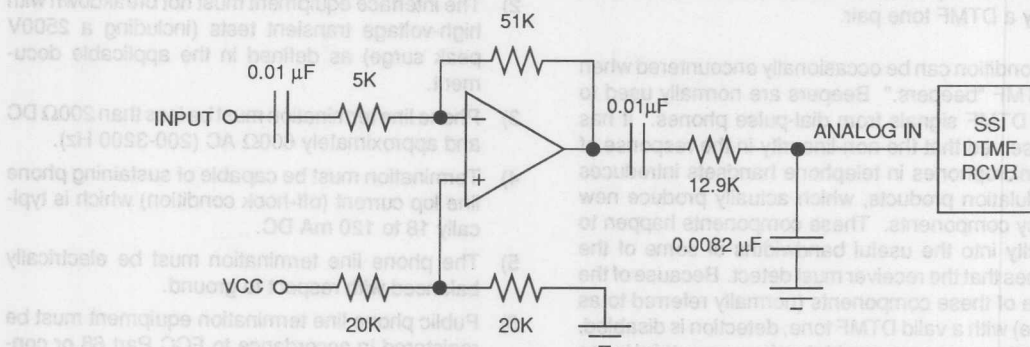


FIGURE 5: Filter for Use in Environments where a Third Tone Exists

TIMING

Within 40 ms of a valid tone pair appearing at the DTMF Receiver Analog Input, the Data Outputs D8, D4, D2 and D1 will become valid. Seven microseconds after the data outputs have become valid DV will be raised. DV will remain high and the outputs valid while the valid tone pair remains present. Refer to individual data sheets for the timing of signals.

SYSTEM INTERFACE

Provision has been made on the SSI DTMF Receivers (with the exception of SSI 75T204) for handshake interface with an outside monitoring system. In this mode, the DV strobe is polled by the monitoring system at least once every 40 ms to determine whether a new valid tone pair has been detected. If DV is high, the coded data is stored in the monitoring system and the CLRDV is pulsed high. With some systems operating in the handshake mode, it may be desirable to know when a valid pause has occurred. Ordinarily this would be indicated by the falling edge of DV. However, in the handshake mode, DV is cleared by the monitoring system each time a new valid tone pair is detected and, therefore, cannot be used to determine when a valid pause is detected. The detection of a valid pause in this case may be observed by detecting the clearing of the Data Outputs. Since, in hexadecimal format (the mode normally used with a handshake interface), the all zero state represents a commonly unused tone pair (D), the detection of a valid

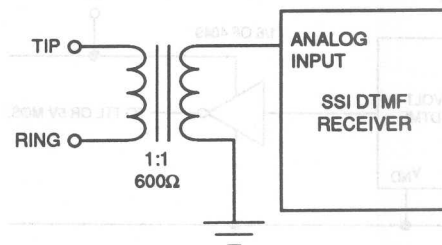


FIGURE 6: Simplified Phone Line Interface

pause may be detected by connecting a four-input NOR gate to the device outputs and sensing the all zero state.

TIME BASE

The SSI DTMF Receivers contain an on-chip oscillator for a 3.5795 MHz parallel resonant quartz crystal or ceramic resonator. The crystal (or resonator) is placed between XIN and XOUT in parallel with a 1 MΩ resistor, while XEN is tied high. Since the switched-capacitor-filter time base is derived from the oscillator, the tone detect band frequency tolerance is proportional to the time base tolerance. The SSI DTMF Receiver frequency response and timing is guaranteed with a time base accuracy of at least $\pm 0.01\%$. To obtain this accuracy the CTS Part No. MP036 or Workman Part No. CY1-C or

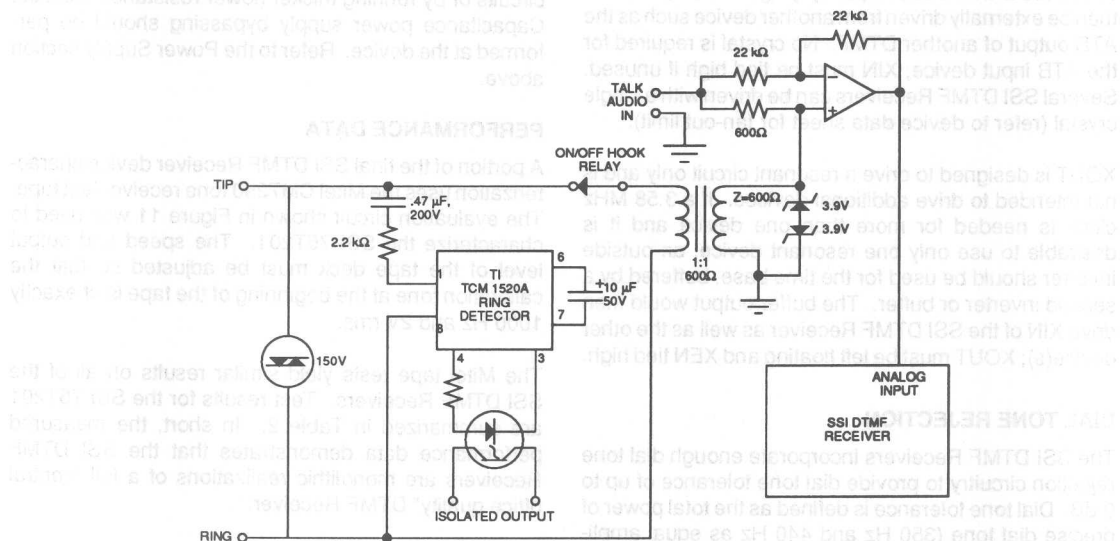


FIGURE 7: Full Featured Phone Line Interface

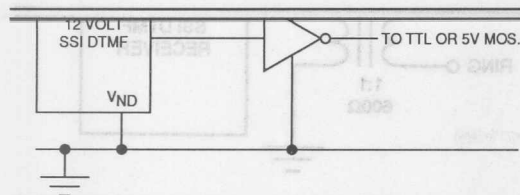


FIGURE 8: SSI 12V DTMF to TTL Level Interface

equivalent quartz crystal is recommended. In less critical applications a suitable ceramic resonator may be implemented.

The use of a ceramic resonator requires the addition of two $30\text{ pF} \pm 10\%$ capacitors; one between XIN and VN (or VND) and the other between XOUT and VN (or VND). Extra caution should be used to avoid stray capacitance on the resonant circuit when using a ceramic resonator instead of a quartz crystal.

When the oscillator is connected as above and XEN is tied high, the ATB (Alternate Time Base) pin delivers a square wave output at one-eighth the oscillator frequency (447.443 kHz nominal). The ATB pin can be converted to a time base input by tying XEN low; ATB can then be externally driven from another device such as the ATB output of another DTMF. No crystal is required for the ATB input device; XIN must be tied high if unused. Several SSI DTMF Receivers can be driven with a single crystal (refer to device data sheet for fan-out limit).

XOUT is designed to drive a resonant circuit only and is not intended to drive additional devices. If a 3.58 MHz clock is needed for more than one device and it is desirable to use only one resonant device, an outside inverter should be used for the time base, buffered by a second inverter or buffer. The buffer output would then drive XIN of the SSI DTMF Receiver as well as the other device(s); XOUT must be left floating and XEN tied high.

DIAL TONE REJECTION

The SSI DTMF Receivers incorporate enough dial tone rejection circuitry to provide dial tone tolerance of up to 0 dB. Dial tone tolerance is defined as the total power of precise dial tone (350 Hz and 440 Hz as equal amplitudes) relative to the lowest amplitude tone in a valid tone pair. The filter of Figure 10 may be used for further dial tone rejection. This filter exhibits an elliptic highpass

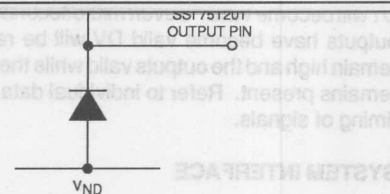


FIGURE 9: Equivalent Circuit of SSI DTMF Receiver Data Output in High Impedance State

response that provides a minimum of 18 dB rejection at 350 Hz, and 24 dB rejection at 440 Hz so long as the component tolerances indicated are observed. The DTMF on-chip filter rejects 350 Hz at least 6 dB more than 440 Hz. Therefore, employing the filter of Figure 10 yields a dial tone tolerance of +24 dB.

PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD IMPLEMENTATION

The SSI DTMF Receivers are analog in nature and should be treated as such; circuit noise should be kept to a minimum. To be certain of this, all input and output lines should be kept away from noise sources (high frequency data or clock lines); this is especially true for the Analog Input. Noise in the ground or power supply lines can be avoided by running separate traces to supportive logic circuits or by running thicker (lower resistance) busses. Capacitance power supply bypassing should be performed at the device. Refer to the Power Supply section above.

PERFORMANCE DATA

A portion of the final SSI DTMF Receiver device characterization uses the Mitel CM7290 tone receiver test tape. The evaluation circuit shown in Figure 11 was used to characterize the SSI 75T201. The speed and output level of the tape deck must be adjusted so that the calibration tone at the beginning of the tape is at exactly 1000 Hz and 2V rms.

The Mitel tape tests yield similar results on all of the SSI DTMF Receivers. Test results for the SSI 75T201 are summarized in Table 2. In short, the measured performance data demonstrates that the SSI DTMF Receivers are monolithic realizations of a full "central office quality" DTMF Receiver.

| TEST # | RESULTS |
|--------|---|
| 2a, b | B.W. = 5.0% of fo |
| 2c, d | B.W. = 5.0% of fo |
| 2e, f | B.W. = 5.3% of fo |
| 2g, h | B.W. = 4.9% of fo |
| 2i, j | B.W. = 5.0% of fo |
| 2k, l | B.W. = 5.3% of fo |
| 2m, n | B.W. = 5.3% of fo |
| 2o, p | B.W. = 4.8% of fo |
| 3 | 160 decodes |
| 4 | Acceptable Amplitude Ratio (Twist) = -19.1 dB to +15.2 dB |
| 5 | Dynamic Range = 32.5 dB |
| 6 | Guard Time = 23.3 ms |
| 7 | 100% Successful Decodes at N/S Ratio of -12 dBV |
| 8 | 2-3 Hits Typical on Talk-Off Test |

TABLE 2: Mitel #CM7290 Tape Test Results for SSI 75T201 (Averaged for 10 parts)

APPLICATIONS

CREATING HEXADECIMAL "0" OUTPUT UPON DIGIT "0" DETECTION

To be consistent with pulse-dialing systems, the SSI DTMF Receivers provide a hexadecimal "10" output upon the detection of a digit "0" tone pair when in the hexadecimal code format. However, some applications may instead require a hexadecimal "0" with a digit "0" detection. The circuit of Figure 12 shows an easy method to recode the hexadecimal outputs to do this using only 4 NOR gates.

Note that this circuit will not give proper code for the "*", "B", or "C" digits and will cause both digits "D" and "0" to output hexadecimal "0." This circuit should therefore be considered for numeric digits only. The output code format is shown in Table 3.

This circuit is useful for applications that require a display of dialed digits; the digit display usually requires a hexadecimal "0" input for a "0" to be displayed.

16-CHANNEL REMOTE CONTROL

DTMF signaling provides a simple, reliable means of transmitting information over a 2-wire twisted pair. The complete schematic of a 16-channel remote control is shown in Figure 13. When one of the key pad buttons is depressed, a tone pair is sent over the transmission medium to the SSI DTMF Receiver.

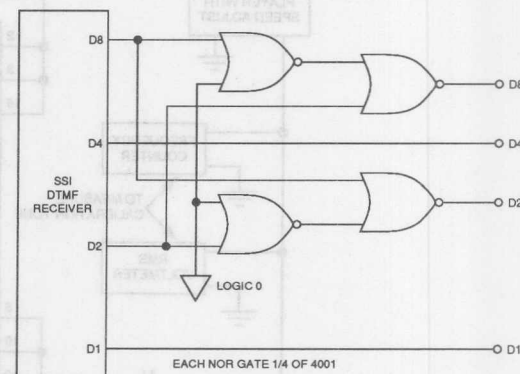


FIGURE 12: Hex "0" Out with Digit "0" Detect Conversion Circuit

The 4514 raises one of its 16 outputs in response to the 4-bit output code from the DTMF. The output at the 4514 will remain high until the next button is depressed.

| Hexadecimal | | | | | Hexadecimal & Figure 12 Circuit | | | | |
|-------------|----|----|----|----|---------------------------------|----|----|----|----|
| Digit | D8 | D4 | D2 | D1 | Digit | D8 | D4 | D2 | D1 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 2 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 7 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 7 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 8 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 9 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 9 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| * | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | * | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| # | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | # | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| A | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | A | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| B | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | B | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| C | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | C | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| D | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | D | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

TABLE 3: Output Code of Figure 13

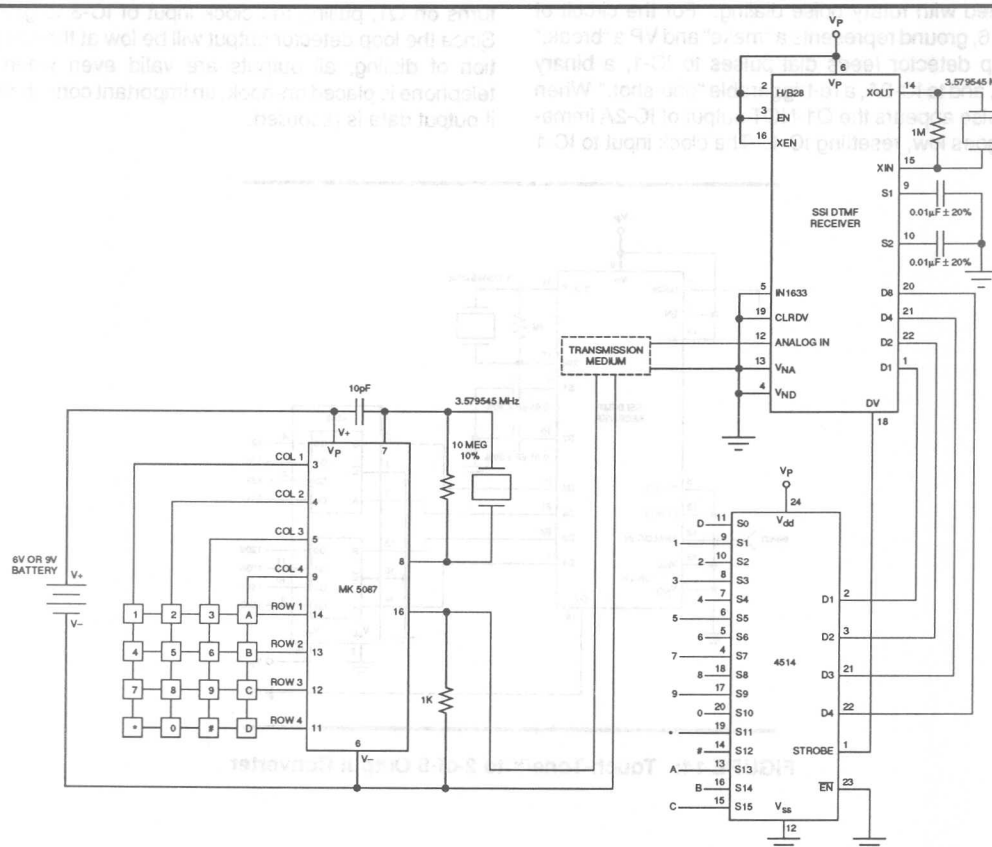


FIGURE 13: 16-Channel Remote Control

binary coded 2-of-8 to the actual 2-of-8 code (if 2-of-8 detection of 1633 Hz tone is inhibited). The output data will be valid while DV is high. If it is desired to force the eight outputs to zero when a valid tone is not present, DV should be inverted and connected to both E-NOT inputs of the 4555.

DTMF TO ROTARY DIAL PULSE CONVERTER

The 2-of-8 output of Figure 14 can be modified to interface with a pulse dialer as shown in Figure 15. If a 12V DTMF is used the 4049 will translate the 12V outputs to the 5V swings required for the MK5099 pulse dialer.

Figure 16 shows the interface for adding pulse detection and counting to a SSI DTMF Receiver.

The loop detector provides a digital output representing the telephone loop circuit "make" and "break" condition associated with rotary pulse dialing. For the circuit of Figure 16, ground represents a "make" and VP a "break." The loop detector feeds dial pulses to IC-1, a binary counter, and to IC-2A, a re-triggerable "one-shot." When a dial pulse appears the Q1-NOT output of IC-2A immediately goes low, resetting IC-1. The clock input to IC-1

output will go high. IC-3-R3 differentiate this pulse and clock the output latch, IC-3, holding the output pulse until the next digit.

The 0.2 second timeout of IC-2A indicates the end of dial pulsing since even a slow (8 pps) dial would input another pulse every 0.125 seconds. The binary outputs of IC-1 are paralleled with those of the SSI DTMF Receiver circuit through diodes to the inputs of IC-3. A pulldown resistor is necessary on each IC-3 input pin. IC-1 must be a binary, not BCD, counter.

With a 4175 for IC-3 the output data is latched until the next valid input, whether from a rotary dial or dual tone instrument. A unique situation exists, however, when going on-hook. The loop detector will output a continuous level of VP which would trigger IC-2A and put a single count into IC-1. A high level from the loop detector also turns on Q1, pulling the clock input of IC-3 to ground. Since the loop detector output will be low at the completion of dialing, all outputs are valid even when the telephone is placed on-hook, an important consideration if output data is recorded.

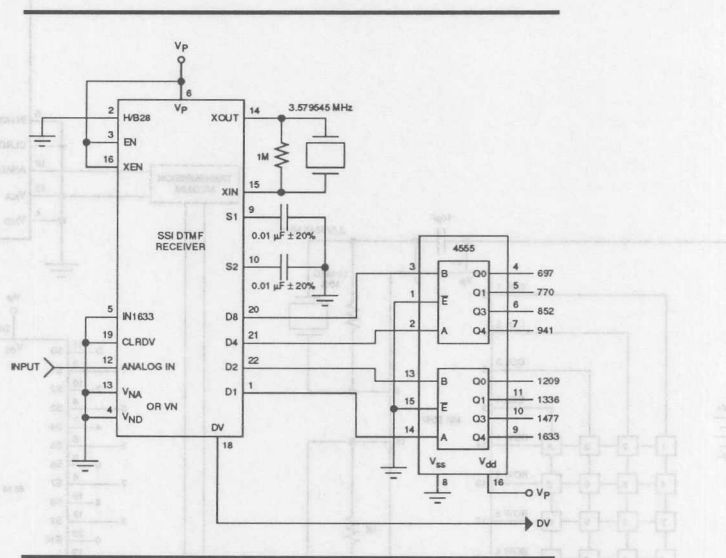


FIGURE 14: Touch-Tone™ to 2-of-8 Output Converter

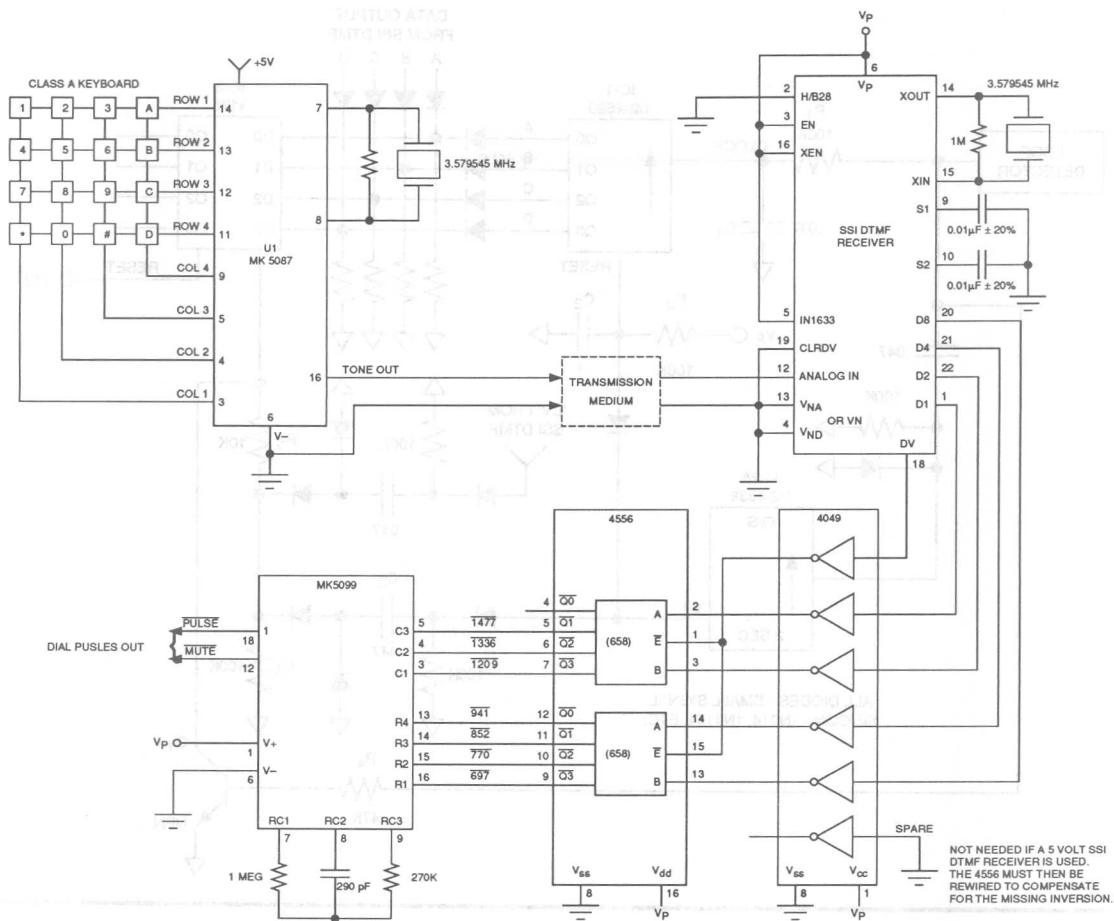


FIGURE 15: Touch-Tone™ to Rotary Dial Pulse Converter Adding Rotary Dial Pulse Detection Capabilities

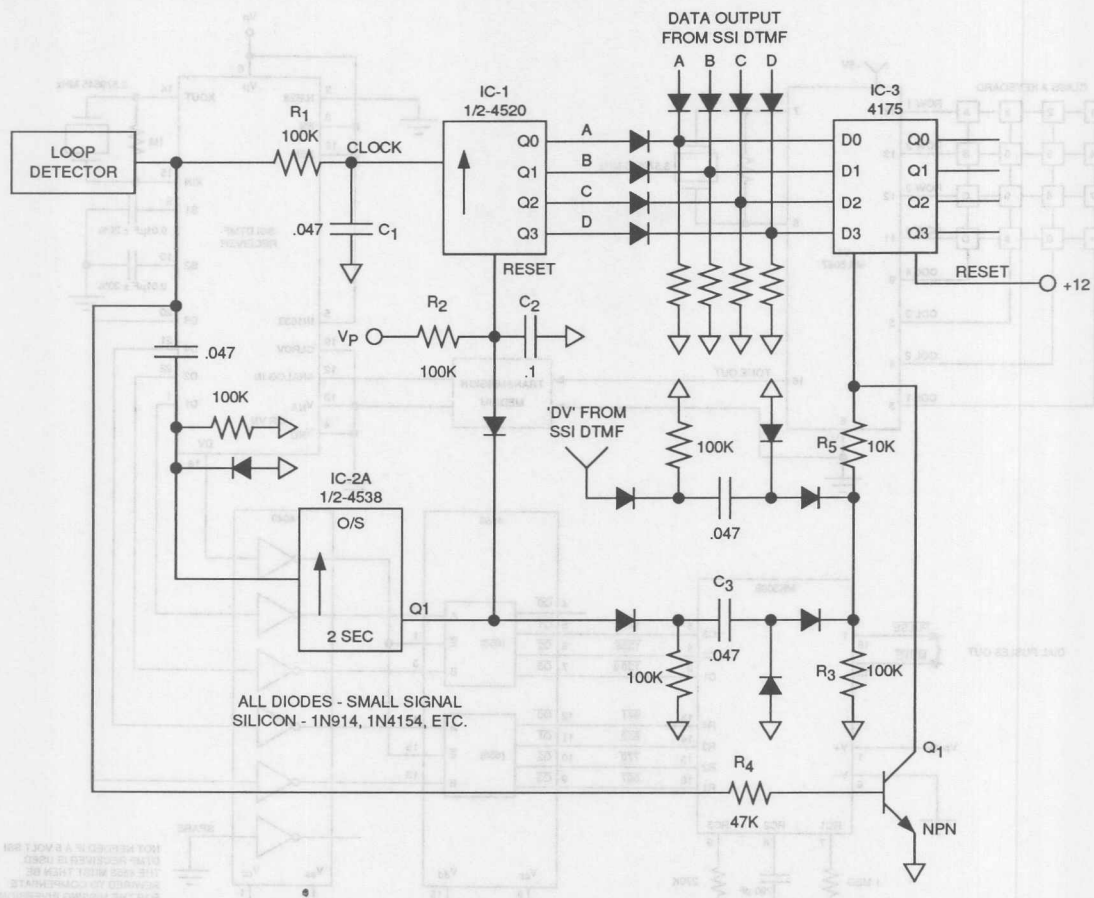


FIGURE 16: Adding Pulse Detection and Counting to the SSI DTMF Receiver

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems. Silicon Systems reserves the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6914

December 1993

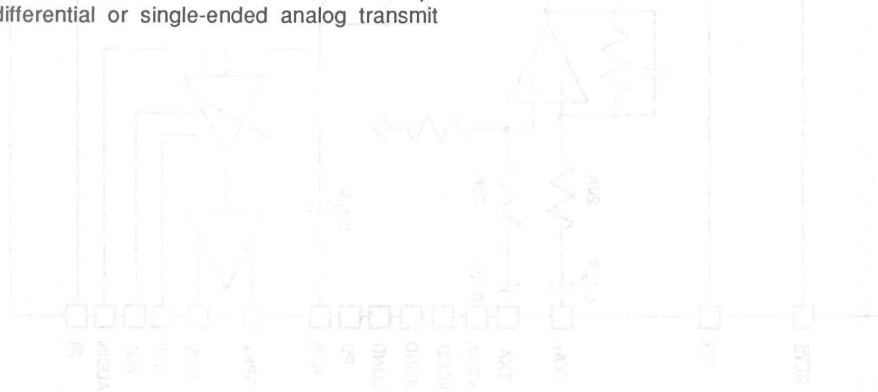
DESCRIPTION

The TDK 73M9001/UCJ Data Access Arrangement Micromodule is an interface that enables you to connect your high speed modem or fax circuit to the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN). Similar to its predecessor, the 73M9001, this DAA Micromodule provides the isolation, surge protection, filtering, and signal conversion necessary for high performance analog Fax/modem designs up through V.32 bis (14,400 bit/s). However, the 73M9001/UCJ is suitable for the telephone network of Japan as well as USA and Canada. Ideal for projects that are sensitive to space and power constraints, the Micromodule is very small (0.745" x 1.525" x 0.395") and requires little power (80 mW, active and 10 mW, standby at +5 V). Ring detection can be achieved even with the unit unpowered. The DAA complies with FCC, DOC, UL, CSA, and JATE requirements, thus simplifying the regulatory process.

In addition to standard fax and modem communication, the TDK 73M9001/UCJ can also be used to access Caller ID data, also known as Automatic Number Identification or ANI. The Micromodule includes a built-in audio amplifier that can directly power an 8 Ω speaker with up to 400 mW. Relay drivers are also included, making the 73M9001/UCJ ideal for complex as well as simple circuits. This DAA is suited for a variety of fax/modem circuits because it can accept either differential or single-ended analog transmit signals.

FEATURES

- Complete DAA function including:
 - Isolation
 - Surge protection
 - 2 to 4 wire converter
 - Ring detection
 - On/off hook relay
- FCC Part 68 compliant
- DOC CS-03 compliant
- UL and CSA compliant
- JATE compliant
- High speed throughput - V.32 bis, 14.4 kbit/s
- Low profile, small size: 0.745" x 1.525" x 0.395"
- Low power: 80 mW off-hook (active)
- Power down mode: 10 mW standby
- +5 Volt supply only
- Caller ID (ANI) capable
- Audio amp to drive 8 Ω speaker
- Dual relay drivers
- Accepts differential or single-ended transmit inputs
- 30-Pin DIP package



A TDK Group Company
Silicon Systems



TDK 73M9001/UCJ

DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

PIN DESCRIPTION (30-Pin DIP)

| NAME | # | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|----|------|---|
| TRAN1 | 1 | I/O | PSTN side of transformer for Caller ID applications |
| RING | 2 | I/O | Connects to Ring terminal of telephone line |
| — | 3 | - | No pin |
| — | 4 | - | No pin |
| — | 5 | - | No pin |
| \overline{RI} | 6 | O | Ring indication - open collector output |
| $\overline{RLY2}$ | 7 | I | Controls REOUT2 output - TTL input |
| \overline{OH} | 8 | I | Controls off hook relay and REOUT1 output - TTL input |
| REOUT2 | 9 | O | Relay coil driver output #2 - Sinks 35 mA @ +5V |
| AGND | 10 | I | Analog ground |
| SPK- | 11 | O | Negative audio amplifier output for 8 Ω speaker |
| SPK+ | 12 | O | Positive audio amplifier output for 8 Ω speaker |
| VCCA | 13 | I | Analog power supply +5V |
| AG0 | 14 | I | Controls audio gain of speaker along with AG1 - TTL input |
| AUDIN | 15 | I | Audio input to speaker driver - AC couple externally |
| VCCD | 16 | I | Digital power supply +5V |
| AG1 | 17 | I | Controls audio gain of speaker along with AG0 - TTL input |
| PD | 18 | I | Power down - TTL input |
| REOUT1 | 19 | O | Relay coil driver output #1 mimics off hook relay - Sinks 20 mA @ +5V |
| DGND | 20 | I | Digital ground |
| RXA | 21 | O | Analog receive - capacitively coupled output |
| TXA- | 22 | I | Differential analog transmit - capacitively coupled input |
| TXA+ | 23 | I | Differential analog transmit - capacitively coupled input |
| — | 24 | - | No pin |
| — | 25 | - | No pin |
| — | 26 | - | No pin |
| — | 27 | - | No pin |
| — | 28 | - | No pin |
| TIP | 29 | I/O | Connects to Tip terminal of telephone line |
| TRAN2 | 30 | I/O | PSTN side of transformer for Caller ID applications |

TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

In the application shown in Figure 2, the 73M9001/UCJ is being utilized for a high speed fax/modem with caller ID notification. When a call comes in on the phone line, the Ring Indicator (RI) becomes active. The controller responds by driving the Power Down (PD) low and the Relay #2 (RLY2) low. This wakes the DAA from its standby mode and capacitively connects the phone line to the 73M9001/UCJ to receive the Caller ID information. This information is then sent to the data pump through the Receive port (RXA). After receiving the Caller ID, the controller drives the RLY2 pin high. If the controller decides to answer the call, it drives the Off Hook (OH) low. The DAA goes off-hook thus enabling data to be sent from modem to modem via the Receive and Transmit (TXA+, TXA-) ports.

In this system, the controller uses the Micromodule to drive the 8Ω speaker. The audio amplifier derives its signal from the receive signal that is being sent to the data pump. The amplifier gain is controlled via the AG0 and AG1 pins. When the controller wants to send a different signal to the amplifier, it drives both AG0 and AG1 low and transmits the audio signal into the Audio Input (AUDIN) port. When using the speaker driver of the 73M9001/UCJ, the traces that feed the VCCD and DGND must be very short and wide. Speaker performance relies upon the fact that these traces not exceed 0.1Ω impedance.

The Analog Ground (AGND) of the DAA should be connected directly and solely to the analog ground of the data pump. The analog ground of the data pump may then be connected to your system's ground. This assures good common mode rejection.

One of the improvements added to the 73M9001/UCJ is that a sidactor has been incorporated into the DAA. If you are currently using the 73M9001 with a sidactor on Tip and Ring of the telephone line, as recommended by TDK, you can now insert the 73M9001/UCJ and "depopulate" the sidactor from the board. The fuse shown in the circuit is to meet UL1459 and DOC specifications. The normally closed relay controlled by REOUT1 is activated in parallel with the internal off hook relay. This ensures that the data stream between modems is not damaged due to inadvertent pickups of the the telephone set connected to the additional RJ-11 jack.

PIN DESCRIPTION (30-Pin DIP)

| NAME | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|------|---------------------------|
| TRANS | NO | PSTN side of transformer |
| RING | NO | Connects to Ring terminal |
| — | — | No pin |
| — | — | No pin |
| — | — | No pin |
| RI | O | Ring indication - open |
| RLY2 | I | Controls REOUT2 output |
| OH | I | Controls off hook relay |
| REOUT2 | O | Relay coil driver output |
| AGND | I | Analog ground |
| SPK- | O | Negative audio amplifier |
| SPK+ | O | Positive audio amplifier |
| VCCA | I | Analog power supply |
| AG0 | I | Controls audio gain of |
| AUDIN | I | Audio input to speaker |
| VCCD | I | Digital power supply |
| AG1 | I | Controls audio gain of |
| PD | I | Power down - TTL input |
| REOUT1 | O | Relay coil driver output |
| DGND | I | Digital ground |
| RXA | O | Analog receive - capac |
| TXA- | I | Differential analog trans |
| TXA+ | I | Differential analog trans |
| — | — | No pin |
| — | — | No pin |
| — | — | No pin |
| — | — | No pin |
| — | — | No pin |
| TIP | NO | Connects to Tip terminal |
| TRANS | NO | PSTN side of transformer |

TDK 73M9001/UCJ

DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

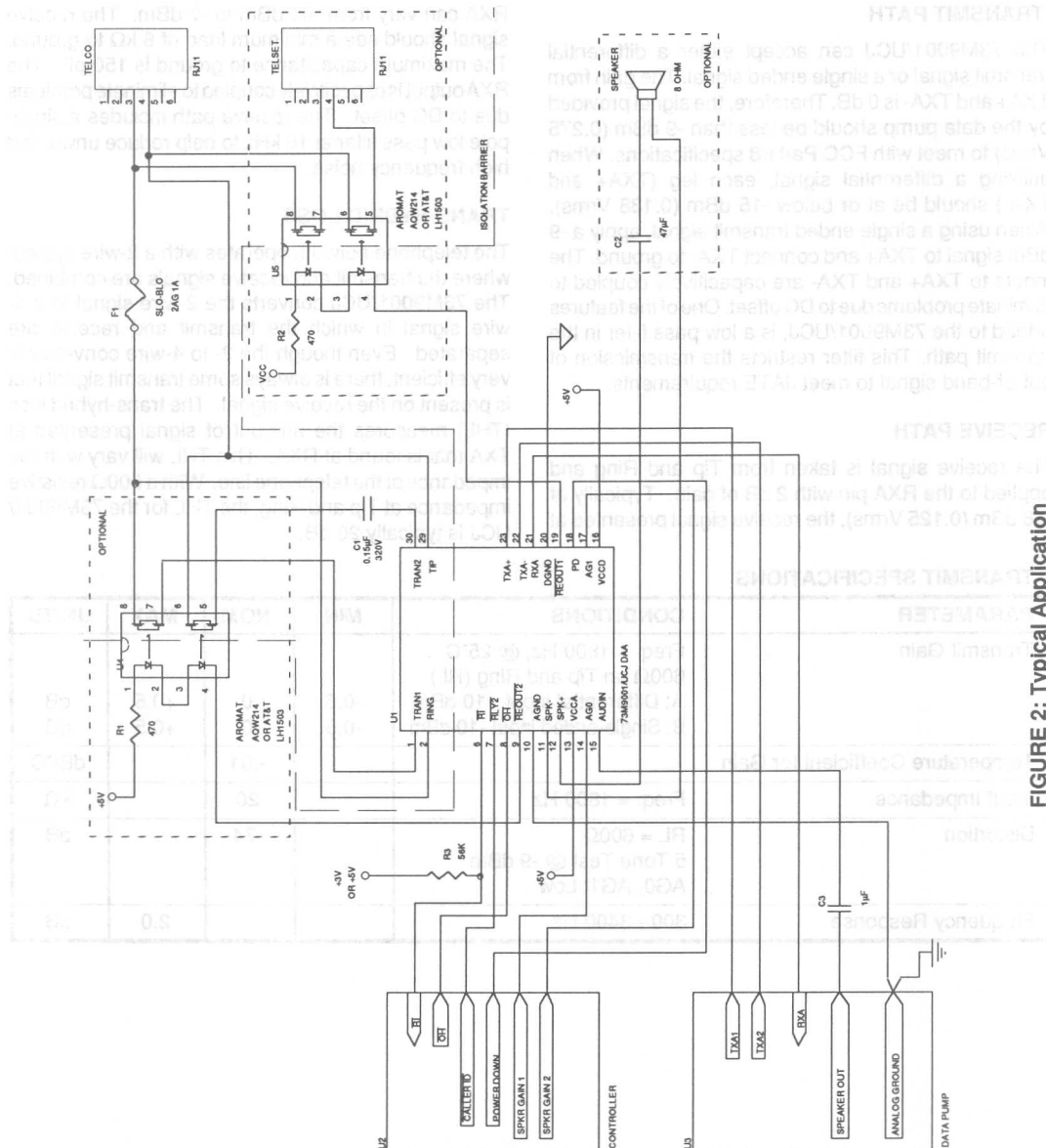


FIGURE 2: Typical Application

TDK 73M9001/UCJ

DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

TRANSMIT PATH

The 73M9001/UCJ can accept either a differential transmit signal or a single ended signal. The gain from TXA+ and TXA- is 0 dB. Therefore, the signal provided by the data pump should be less than -9 dBm (0.275 Vrms) to meet with FCC Part 68 specifications. When utilizing a differential signal, each leg (TXA+ and TXA-) should be at or below -15 dBm (0.138 Vrms). When using a single ended transmit signal, apply a -9 dBm signal to TXA+ and connect TXA- to ground. The inputs to TXA+ and TXA- are capacitively coupled to eliminate problems due to DC offset. One of the features added to the 73M9001/UCJ, is a low pass filter in the transmit path. This filter restricts the transmission of out-of-band signal to meet JATE requirements.

RECEIVE PATH

The receive signal is taken from Tip and Ring and applied to the RXA pin with 2 dB of gain. Typically at -18 dBm (0.125 Vrms), the receive signal presented at

RXA can vary from -41 dBm to -7 dBm. The receive signal should see a minimum load of 8 k Ω to ground. The maximum capacitance to ground is 150 pF. The RXA output is capacitively coupled to eliminate problems due to DC offset. The receive path includes a single pole low pass filter at 16 kHz to help reduce unwanted high frequency noise.

TRANS-HYBRID LOSS

The telephone network operates with a 2-wire system where the transmit and receive signals are combined. The 73M9001/UCJ converts the 2-wire signal to a 4-wire signal in which the transmit and receive are separated. Even though the 2- to 4-wire converter is very efficient, there is always some transmit signal that is present on the receive signal. The trans-hybrid loss (THL) measures the amount of signal presented at TXA that is found at RXA. This THL will vary with the impedance of the telephone line. With a 600 Ω resistive impedance at Tip and Ring, the THL for the 73M9001/UCJ is typically 20 dB.

TRANSMIT SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|----------------------------------|---|------|------|------|------------|
| Transmit Gain | Freq. = 1800 Hz, @ 25°C 600 Ω on Tip and Ring (RL) A: Differential input -10 dBm | -0.5 | 0 | +0.5 | dB |
| | B: Single-ended input -10 dBm | -0.5 | 0 | +0.5 | dB |
| Temperature Coefficient for Gain | | | -0.1 | | dB/°C |
| Input Impedance | Freq. = 1800 Hz | | 20 | | k Ω |
| Distortion | RL = 600 Ω 5 Tone Test @ -9 dBm AG0, AG1: Low | | -74 | | dB |
| Frequency Response | 300 - 3400 Hz | | | 2.0 | dB |

TDK 73M9001/UCJ

DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

RECEIVE SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|----------------------------------|--|-----|------|-----|----------|
| Receive Gain | Freq. = 1800 Hz, RL = 600Ω, @ 25°C | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.5 | dB |
| Temperature Coefficient for Gain | | | -.01 | | dB/°C |
| Output Impedance | Freq. = 1800 Hz A: Resistance to ground B: Capacitance to ground | 8 | | 150 | kΩ pF |
| Distortion | RL = 600 5 Tone Test @ -9 dBm AG0, AG1: Low | | -70 | | dB |
| Frequency Response | 300 - 3400 Hz | | | 2.0 | dB |
| Trans-Hybrid Loss | RL = 600Ω Freq. = 1000 Hz | | 20 | | dB |

TIP AND RING

The TDK 73M9001/UCJ has the necessary protection circuitry for FCC Part 68, UL1950, DOC CS-03, and CSA metallic and longitudinal surge requirements. The UL1459 and CSA power line cross tests can be destructive; therefore, TDK suggests the addition of a fuse to the Tip and/or Ring lines. The fuse should be a 1A, 2AG slo-blo and can be on either Tip, Ring, or both. TDK originally recommended adding a sidactor to the Tip and Ring circuit for the 73M9001. With the 73M9001/UCJ, this is no longer necessary, because a sidactor is incorporated into the DAA itself. NOTE: When replacing the 73M9001 in your circuit with the 73M9001/UCJ, FCC, DOC, UL, and CSA certification is unaffected if you make no other changes to your design. However, when you remove the sidactor, you must re-certify your design.

The 73M9001/UCJ is designed to provide the proper impedances to the telephone network in accordance with FCC Part 68 and EIA 496. If, in your circuit, you are not including an extra RJ-11 jack for a telephone set and you desire FCC Type B Ringer Equivalence, you will need to alter the on-hook impedance. To accomplish this you should connect a 0.15 μF, 320V capacitor in series with an 8.2 kΩ, 670 mW resistor in series with a pair of back-to-back 6.2V Zener diodes. This network should connect Tip to Ring and should be located between the DAA and the fuse.

Additional circuitry that may be helpful is a low pass RFI/EMI filter, if your application generates high frequency noise onto the telephone network in excess of the limits set by FCC Part 15. In-line ferrite beads such as the TDK MMZ Series or the TDK ACB Series can be added to Tip and Ring. These should be placed as closely as possible to the RJ-11 jack. The choice of bead will depend upon the frequencies that are causing the most difficulty. Contact your TDK representative for assistance with EMI/RFI suppression. If components are added to the Tip and Ring lines, such as filters or relays, they must meet FCC Part 68 isolation requirements.

CALLER ID

It is possible to extract the Caller ID signal, also known as Automatic Number Identification or ANI, by utilizing the TRAN1 and TRAN2 connections on the 73M9001/UCJ. Between the first and second rings of an incoming call, the PSTN's central office will transmit a short burst of data at 1200 bit/s using the Bell 202 modulation standard. This data contains the date, time, and number of the calling party. You can glean this data from the phone line by switching Tip and Ring to TRAN1 and TRAN2 through a 0.15 μF, 320 V capacitor. The Caller ID data will be presented at RXA for your modem to demodulate (See Figure 2). When this Caller ID circuit is used, the gain from Tip and Ring to RXA is

TIP AND RING SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--|--|---------------------|-----|-----|--------------------------|
| AC Impedance, off-hook | Freq. = 300 - 3400 Hz. @-10 dBm | 500 | 600 | 750 | Ω |
| Return Loss | Zr = 600W + 2.16 μ F A: Freq. = 260 - 500 Hz B: Freq. = 560 - 1960 Hz C: Freq. = 2200 - 3400 Hz | 7.0 11.0 14.0 | | | dB dB dB |
| DC Slope Impedance, off-hook ($\Delta V/\Delta I$) | Loop current = 20 - 120 mA | | | 150 | Ω |
| DC Impedance, on-hook | A: 0 - 100 VDC B: 100 - 200 VDC | 10 30 | | | M Ω k Ω |

CALLER ID (continued)

-6 dB for 1200 Hz and -3 dB for 2200 Hz, the two frequencies used in Bell 202 transmission. This should not require a change in your receive path because since the Caller ID data is generated at the central office, its strength will not fall below -30 dBm.

OFF HOOK RELAY

The internal off-hook relay is controlled by the TTL input \overline{OH} . When \overline{OH} is driven low, the 73M9001/UCJ goes off hook. Pulse dialing can be accomplished by toggling the \overline{OH} input. Pulse dialing digits should be sent at 10 ± 1 Hz.

RELAY DRIVERS

There are two relay drivers in the TDK Micromodule that are available for your external relays. One driver, REOUT1, mimics the internal off hook relay. When \overline{OH} is driven low, the REOUT1 output is low. REOUT1 is able to sink up to 20 mA of current. REOUT2 responds to signals placed at RLY2 and can sink up to 35 mA. If REOUT1 and/or REOUT2 are used to drive relays that

are switching Tip and Ring, the relays must meet FCC Part 68 requirements for isolation.

RING DETECTION

To identify an incoming call the central office sends an AC ring signal along Tip and Ring. This signal varies from 40V to 130V and from 15.3 Hz to 68 Hz. The DAA's Ring Indication output (RI) will pull low once for every cycle of the ring signal. The controller can thus determine the frequency and cadence of the ring signal. The ring detect circuit includes a filter to reduce the false RI signals resulting from noise on the phone line. This filter is new to the 73M9001/UCJ. The RI pin is an open collector output that requires a pull-up resistor of at least 56 k Ω . It can be pulled up to any voltage between +3 V and +6 V. This passive circuit can be utilized even when the 73M9001/UCJ is completely unpowered.

AUDIO AMPLIFIER

The audio amplifier can drive an 8 Ω speaker with up to 400 mW of power. When both Audio Gain inputs, AG0 and AG1, are driven low, the amplifier will give the

OFF HOOK & RELAY SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| REOUT1 Current | \overline{OH} = low | | | 20 | mA |
| REOUT2 Current | \overline{LCQ} = low | | | 35 | mA |
| REOUT1 Output Low Voltage | I = 20 mA | | | 0.8 | V |
| REOUT2 Output Low Voltage | I = 35 mA | | | 0.8 | V |

TDK Systems Development Center, 136 New Mohawk Road, Nevada City, California, 95959, (916) 478-8421, FAX: (916) 478-8290
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 669-8814

TDK 73M9001/UCJ

DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

RING INDICATOR SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-------------------------------------|--|------|-----|------|------------|
| Ring Detect Range | 40 - 150 Vrms | 15.3 | 20 | 68 | Hz |
| Minimum Pull-Up Resistance | Pull-up to 3 - 6 VDC | 56 | | | k Ω |
| \overline{RI} Output Low Voltage | 56 k Ω pull-up to 5 VDC, I = 10 μ A | | | 0.40 | V |
| \overline{RI} Output High Voltage | 56 k Ω pull-up to 5 VDC, I = 1 μ A | 4.60 | | | V |

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SPECIFICATIONS

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---|---|----------------|-----|----------------|
| Gain (Ref. to RXA) | A: AG0 = high, AG1 = low B: AG0 = low, AG1 = high C: AG0 = high, AG1 = high | | 13 20 24 | | dB dB dB |
| Gain (Ref. to AUDIN) | AG0 = low, AG1 = low | | 24 | | dB |
| Speaker Output | | | | 3.5 | Vpp |
| AUDIN Input Impedance | Freq. = 1000 Hz | 8 | | | k Ω |

AUDIO AMPLIFIER (continued)

Audio Input (AUDIN) signal 24 dB gain and send it to the speaker. When either AG0 or AG1 is driven high, the amplifier sends the Receive (RXA) signal to the speaker with a gain of 13 dB to 24 dB as measured from RXA. It is recommended that you include a capacitor in series with the speaker to eliminate possible DC offset. Note: When using the audio amplifier, it is important that the traces which feed VCCD and DGND be extremely short and fat. It is essential that the total resistance of these traces not exceed 0.1 Ω .

ANALOG AND DIGITAL POWER

The Analog Ground (AGND) should be directly and solely connected to the analog ground of the data pump. This is to ensure maximum common mode rejection between the data pump and DAA. The traces for Digital Power (VCCD) and Digital Ground (DGND) are critical when using the audio amplifier. The traces should be very wide and short and, thus, provide an impedance less than 0.1 Ω . Also, since the DAA is an analog circuit amongst digital circuits, it might be beneficial to add 0.1 μ F capacitors between VCCA and AGND and between VCCD and DGND.

DC ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--------------------------------|--|-----|-----|---------------|---------|
| Off Hook Current (VCCA + VCCD) | PD = low, \overline{OH} = low w/o speaker, w/o relays | | 16 | 25 | mA |
| On Hook Current | PD = low, \overline{OH} = high | | 10 | 16 | mA |
| Standby Current | PD = high, \overline{OH} = high | | 2 | 5 | mA |
| TTL Input High Voltage | TTL Inputs: \overline{OH} , LCQ, PD, AG0, AG1 | 2.0 | | VCCD + 0.3 | V |
| TTL Input Low Voltage | | | | 0.8 | V |
| TTL Input Low Current | V = 0.4V | 0.0 | | -0.4 | mA |
| TTL Input High Current | V = 2.4V | | | 100 | μ A |

TDK Systems Development Center, 136 New Mohawk Road, Nevada City, California, 95959, (916) 478-8421, FAX: (916) 478-8290
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 669-8814

TDK 73M9001/UCJ

DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

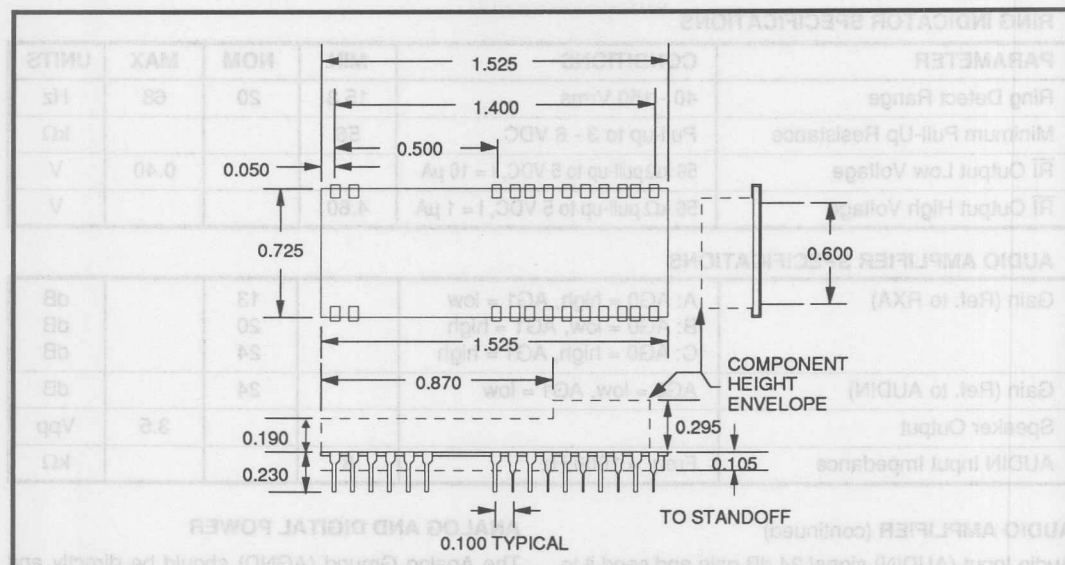


FIGURE 2: Mechanical Specifications

STANDBY MODE

The 73M9001/UCJ can be placed in standby mode to reduce power consumption. When the Power Down (PD) pin is driven high, the DAA is shifted into standby mode. In standby mode the on-hook current draw is reduced to 2 mA from 10 mA. When you want to go off hook to either place a call or answer one, you must first return the Micromodule to its active mode by driving PD low. To further reduce power consumption, the 73M9001/UCJ can be completely unpowered and still have an operating ring indication circuit. (See Ring Detection)

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Off Hook Current (VCCA + VCCD) | PD = low, OH = low |
| On Hook Current | PD = low, OH = high |
| Standby Current | PD = high, OH = high |
| TTL Input High Voltage | TTL inputs: OH, LCC, PD, AG, AG1 |
| TTL Input Low Voltage | V = 0.4V |
| TTL Input Low Current | V = 0.4V |
| TTL Input High Current | V = 2.4V |

TDK 73M9001/UCJ

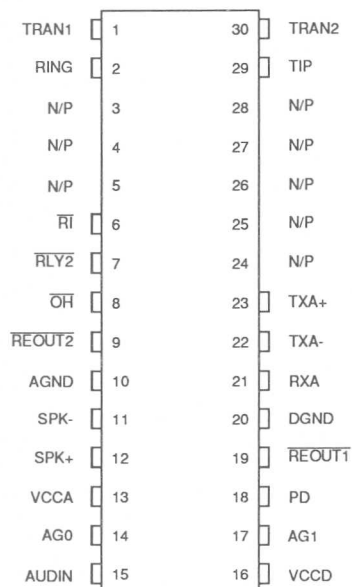
DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS

(Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.



30-Pin DIP

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|----------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| TDK 73M9001/UCJ 30-pin DIP | 73M9001/UCJ | 73M9001/UCJ |

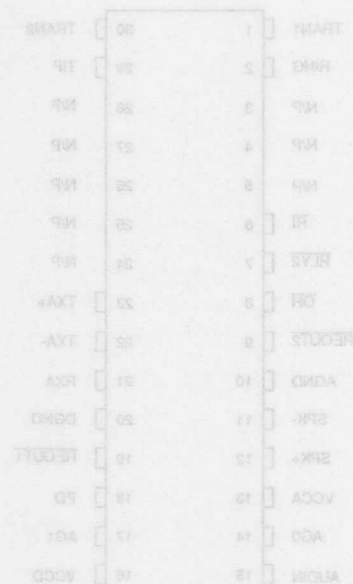
No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems or TDK for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems or TDK. Silicon Systems and TDK reserve the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

TDK Systems Development Center, 136 New Mohawk Road, Nevada City, California, 95959, (916) 478-8421, FAX: (916) 478-8290
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 669-8814

TDK 73M9001UC1 DAA Micromodule Designer's Guide

Notes: CAUTION: Use handling procedures for a static sensitive component.

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)



30-Pin DIP

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|---------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| TDK 73M9001UC1 30-Pin DIP | 73M9001UC1 | 73M9001UC1 |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems or TDK for use of this product for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems or TDK. Silicon Systems and TDK reserve the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the user is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

TDK Systems Development Center, 130 New Market Road, Nevada City, California 95959, (916) 478-8451, FAX: (916) 478-8290
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14851 Midway Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 373-8000, FAX: (714) 699-8814

January 1994

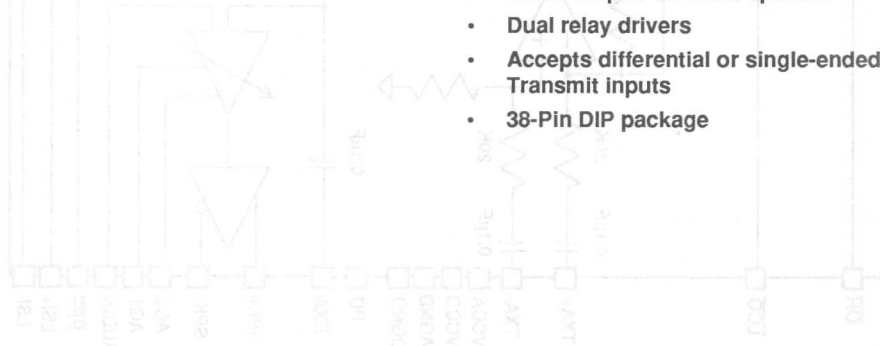
DESCRIPTION

The TDK 73M9002 Superintendent Data Access Arrangement Micromodule is an interface that enables you to connect your high Speed modem or fax circuit to the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) and monitor the status of the telephone line. As a pin-similar superset of the TDK 73M9001, the Superintendent DAA will not only provide the isolation, surge protection, filtering, and signal conversion necessary for high performance analog Fax/modem designs up through V.32 bis (14,400 bit/s), but will also monitor for line-in-use, additional telephone set pickup, line polarity, and remote disconnect. Ideal for projects that are sensitive to space and power constraints, the 73M9002 is very small (0.745" x 1.950" x 0.395") and requires little power (80 mW, active and 10 mW, standby at +5V). Ring detection can be achieved even with the unit unpowered. The DAA complies with FCC, DOC, UL, CSA, and JATE requirements, thus simplifying the regulatory process.

In addition to standard fax and modem communication, the TDK 73M9002 can access Caller ID data, also known as Automatic Number Identification or ANI. The Micromodule includes a built-in audio amplifier that can directly power an 8 Ω speaker with up to 400 mW. Relay drivers are also included making the 73M9002 ideal for complex as well as simple circuits. This DAA is suited for a variety of fax/modem circuits because it can accept either differential or single-ended analog transmit signals.

FEATURES

- **Complete DAA function including:**
 - Isolation
 - Surge protection
 - 2- to 4-wire converter
 - Ring detection
 - On/off hook relay
- **Additional line monitoring features:**
 - Line-in-use detection
 - Parallel phone pickup detection
 - Line polarity detection
 - Remote disconnect detection
- FCC part 68 compliant
- DOC CS-03 compliant
- UL and CSA compliant
- JATE compliant
- High speed throughput - V.32 bis, 14.4 kbit/s
- Low profile, small size: 0.745" x 1.950" x 0.395"
- Low power: 80 mW off-hook (active)
- Power Down mode: 10 mW standby
- +5 volt supply only
- Caller ID (ANI) receiver
- Audio amp to drive 8 Ω speaker
- Dual relay drivers
- Accepts differential or single-ended Transmit inputs
- 38-Pin DIP package



TDK 73M9002

Superintendent DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

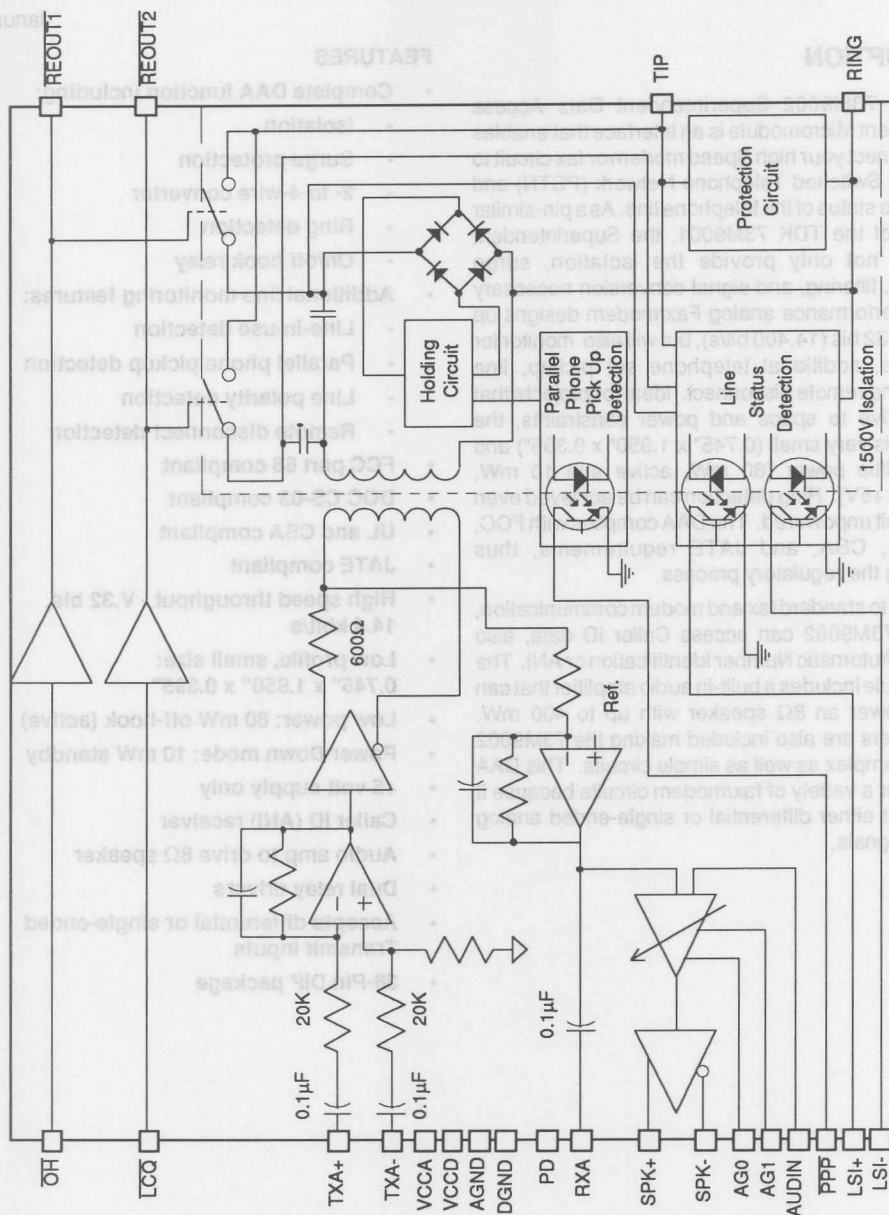


FIGURE1: Block Diagram

TDK 73M9002

Superintendent DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

PIN DESCRIPTION (38-Pin DIP)

| NAME | # | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|----|------|---|
| — | 1 | — | No connection - Leave this pin unconnected |
| — | 2 | — | No connection - Leave this pin unconnected |
| — | 3 | — | No connection - Leave this pin unconnected |
| — | 4 | — | No connection - Leave this pin unconnected |
| — | 5 | — | No connection - Leave this pin unconnected |
| RING | 6 | I/O | Connects to Ring terminal of telephone line |
| — | 7 | — | No pin |
| — | 8 | — | No pin |
| — | 9 | — | No pin |
| LSI- | 10 | O | Line Status Indicator (Neg.) - open collector output |
| LCQ | 11 | I | Line/Caller Query for line status or Caller ID - TTL input |
| OH | 12 | I | Controls off hook relay and REOUT1 output - TTL input |
| REOUT2 | 13 | O | Relay coil driver output #2 mimics LCQ - Sinks 20 mA @ +5V |
| AGND | 14 | I | Analog ground |
| SPK- | 15 | O | Negative audio amplifier output for 8Ω speaker |
| SPK+ | 16 | O | Positive audio amplifier output for 8Ω speaker |
| VCCA | 17 | I | Analog power supply +5V |
| AG0 | 18 | I | Controls audio gain of speaker along with AG1 - TTL input |
| AUDIN | 19 | I | Audio input to speaker driver - AC couple externally |
| VCCD | 20 | I | Digital power supply +5V |
| AG1 | 21 | I | Controls audio gain of speaker along with AG0 - TTL input |
| PD | 22 | I | Power down - TTL input |
| REOUT1 | 23 | O | Relay coil driver output #1 mimics off hook relay - Sinks 20 mA @ +5V |
| DGND | 24 | I | Digital ground |
| RXA | 25 | O | Analog receive - capacitively coupled output |
| TXA- | 26 | I | Differential analog transmit - capacitively coupled input |
| TXA+ | 27 | I | Differential analog transmit - capacitively coupled input |
| PPP | 28 | O | Parallel Phone Pickup detector - open collector output |
| LSI+ | 29 | O | Line Status Indicator (Pos.) - open collector output |
| — | 30 | — | No pin |
| — | 31 | — | No pin |

PIN DESCRIPTION (continued)

| NAME | # | TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------|----|------|--|
| — | 32 | — | No pin |
| TIP | 33 | I/O | Connects to Tip terminal of telephone line |
| N/C | 34 | — | No connection - Leave this pin unconnected |
| N/C | 35 | — | No connection - Leave this pin unconnected |
| N/C | 36 | — | No connection - Leave this pin unconnected |
| N/C | 37 | — | No connection - Leave this pin unconnected |
| N/C | 38 | — | No connection - Leave this pin unconnected |

TYPICAL APPLICATION NOTES

In the application, Figure 2, the 73M9002 is being utilized for a high speed fax/modem with Caller ID notification. When a call comes in on the phone line, the Line Status Indicators (LSI+ & LSI-) become active. The controller responds by driving the Power Down (PD) low and the Line/Caller Query (LCQ) low. This wakes the DAA from its Standby mode and properly connects the phone line to the 73M9002 to receive the Caller ID information. This information is then sent to the data pump through the Receive port (RXA). After receiving the Caller ID, the controller drives the LCQ pin high. If the controller decides to answer the call, it drives the Off Hook (OH) low. The DAA goes off-hook thus enabling data to be sent from modem to modem via the Receive and Transmit (TXA+, TXA-) ports.

In this system, the controller uses the Micromodule to drive the 8Ω speaker. The audio amplifier derives its signal from the receive signal that is being sent to the data pump. The amplifier gain is controlled via the AG0 and AG1 pins. When the controller wants to send a different signal to the amplifier, it drives both AG0 and AG1 low and transmits the audio signal into the Audio Input (AUDIN) port. When using the speaker driver of the 73M9002, the traces that feed the VCCD and DGND must be very short and wide. DAA performance relies upon the fact that these traces not exceed 0.1Ω impedance.

The Analog Ground (AGND) of the DAA should be connected directly and solely to the analog ground of the data pump. The analog ground of the data pump may then be connected to your system's ground. This assures good Common mode rejection.

On Tip or Ring of the telephone line, a fuse is added to meet UL1459 specifications. The normally closed relay controlled by REOUT1 is activated in parallel with the internal off hook relay. This ensures that the data stream between modems is not damaged due to inadvertent pickups of the telephone set connected to the additional RJ-11 jack. The controller also monitors the Parallel Phone Pickup Indicator (PPP) which identifies when a telephone device has gone off hook somewhere on the line.

To observe the activity on the phone line, the controller monitors the LSI outputs. When the LCQ is driven low, the Superintendent will activate one of the LSI outputs. This indicates that the line is not in use. When the DAA is off hook, one of the LSI outputs should be active. Shortly after the remote party hangs up, this LSI output will momentarily flip-flop.

TDK 73M9002 Superintendent DAA Micromodule Designer's Guide

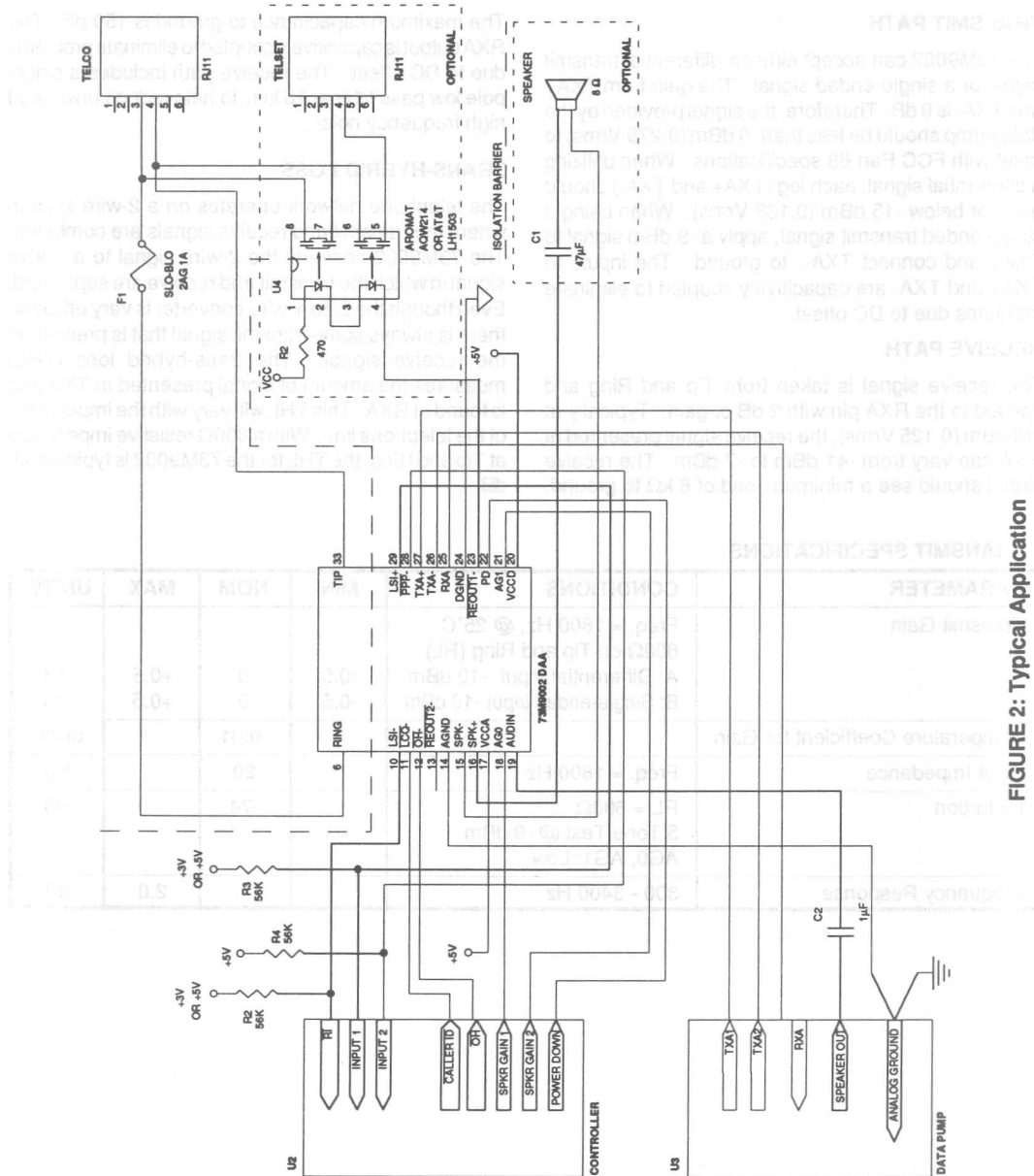


FIGURE 2: Typical Application

TDK 73M9002

Superintendent DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

TRANSMIT PATH

The 73M9002 can accept either a differential transmit signal or a single-ended signal. The gain from TXA+ and TXA- is 0 dB. Therefore, the signal provided by the data pump should be less than -9 dBm (0.275 Vrms) to meet with FCC Part 68 specifications. When utilizing a differential signal, each leg (TXA+ and TXA-) should be at or below -15 dBm (0.138 Vrms). When using a single ended transmit signal, apply a -9 dBm signal to TXA+ and connect TXA- to ground. The inputs to TXA+ and TXA- are capacitively coupled to eliminate problems due to DC offset.

RECEIVE PATH

The receive signal is taken from Tip and Ring and applied to the RXA pin with 2 dB of gain. Typically at -18 dBm (0.125 Vrms), the receive signal presented at RXA can vary from -41 dBm to -7 dBm. The receive signal should see a minimum load of 8 k Ω to ground.

The maximum capacitance to ground is 150 pF. The RXA output is capacitively coupled to eliminate problems due to DC offset. The receive path includes a single pole low pass filter at 16 kHz to help reduce unwanted high frequency noise.

TRANS-HYBRID LOSS

The telephone network operates on a 2-wire system where the transmit and receive signals are combined. The 73M9002 converts the 2-wire signal to a 4-wire signal in which the transmit and receive are separated. Even though the 2- to 4-wire converter is very efficient, there is always some transmit signal that is present on the receive signal. The trans-hybrid loss (THL) measures the amount of signal presented at TXA that is found at RXA. This THL will vary with the impedance of the telephone line. With a 600 Ω resistive impedance at Tip and Ring, the THL for the 73M9002 is typically 20 dB.

TRANSMIT SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|----------------------------------|--|--------------|--------|--------------|------------|
| Transmit Gain | Freq. = 1800 Hz, @ 25°C 600 Ω on Tip and Ring (RL) | | | | |
| | A: Differential input -10 dBm B: Single-ended input -10 dBm | -0.5 -0.5 | 0 0 | +0.5 +0.5 | dB dB |
| Temperature Coefficient for Gain | | | -0.01 | | dB/°C |
| Input Impedance | Freq. = 1800 Hz | | 20 | | k Ω |
| Distortion | RL = 600 Ω 5 Tone Test @ -9 dBm AG0, AG1: Low | | -74 | | dB |
| Frequency Response | 300 - 3400 Hz | | | 2.0 | dB |

TDK 73M9002

Superintendent DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

RECEIVE SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--------------------------------------|--|------|-----|-------|----------|
| Receive Gain | Freq. = 1800 Hz, @ 25°C RL = 600Ω | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.5 | dB |
| Temperature Coefficient for Gain-.01 | | -.01 | | dB/°C | |
| Output Impedance | Freq. = 1800 Hz A: Resistance to ground B: Capacitance to ground | 8 | | 150 | kΩ pF |
| Distortion (THD) | RL = 600Ω 5 Tone Test @ -9 dBm AG0,AG1: Low | | -70 | | dB |
| Frequency Response | 300 - 3400 Hz | | | 2.0 | dB |
| Trans-Hybrid Loss | RL = 600Ω Freq. = 1000 Hz | | 20 | | dB |

TIP AND RING SPECIFICATIONS

The TDK 73M9002 has the necessary protection circuitry for FCC Part 68, UL1950, DOC CS-03, CSA, and JATE metallic and longitudinal surge and UL1459 power line cross. The power line cross test can be destructive; therefore, TDK suggests the addition of a fuse to the Tip and/or Ring lines. The fuse should be a 1A, 2 AG slo-blo and can be on either Tip, Ring, or both (See Figure 2).

Additional circuitry that may be helpful is a low pass RFI/EMI filter if your application generates high frequency noise onto the telephone network in excess of the limits set by FCC Part 15. In-line ferrite beads such as the TDK ACB Series or the TDK MMZ Series can be added to Tip and Ring. These should be placed

as closely as possible to the RJ-11 jack. The choice of bead will depend upon the frequencies that are causing the most difficulty. Contact your TDK representative for assistance with EMI/RFI suppression. If components are added to the Tip and Ring lines, such as filters or relays, they must meet FCC Part 68 isolation requirements.

CALLER ID

It is possible to extract Caller ID, also known as Automatic Number Identification or ANI, by utilizing the Line/Caller Query (LCQ) on the 73M9002. Between the first and second rings of an incoming call, the PSTN's central office will transmit a short burst of data at calling party. You can glean this data from the phone line by activating the LCQ. The Caller ID data will be

TIP AND RING SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|--------------------------------------|---|---------------------|-----|-----|----------------|
| AC Impedance, Off Hook | Freq. = 300 - 3400 Hz. @ -10 dBm | 500 | 600 | 750 | Ω |
| Return Loss | Zr = 600Ω + 2.16 μF A: Freq. = 260 - 500 Hz B: Freq.: = 560 - 1960 Hz C: Freq.: = 2200 - 3400 Hz | 7.0 11.0 14.0 | | | dB dB dB |
| DC Slope Impedance ,Off Hook (ΔV/ΔI) | Loop current = 20 - 120 mA | | | 150 | Ω |
| DC Impedance, On Hook | A: 0 - 100 VDC B: 100 - 200 VDC | 10 30 | | | MΩ kΩ |

TDK Systems Development Center, 136 New Mohawk Road, Nevada City, California, 95959, (916) 478-8421, FAX: (916) 478-8290
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 669-8814

TDK 73M9002

Superintendent DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

CALLER ID (continued)

presented at RXA for your modem to demodulate. When this Caller ID circuit is used, the gain from Tip and Ring to RXA is -6 dB for 1200 Hz and -3 dB for 2200 Hz, the two frequencies used in Bell 202 transmission. This should not require a change in your receive path because since the Caller ID data is generated at the central office, its strength will not fall below -30 dBm.

RING DETECTION

To identify an incoming call the central office sends an AC ring signal along Tip and Ring. This signal varies from 40V to 130V and from 15.3 Hz to 68 Hz. The DAA's Line Status Indication outputs (LSI+ & LSI-) will pull low once for every cycle of the ring signal. The controller can thus determine the frequency and cadence of the ring signal. The LSI pins are open collector outputs that require pull-up resistors of at least 56 k Ω . They can be pulled-up to any voltage between +3V and +6V. Ring indication can be monitored even when the 73M9002 is completely un-powered.

TELEPHONE LINE ACTIVITY

There are various line conditions that can be monitored by the Superintendent. When the DAA is on hook, the Line/Caller Query (LCQ) input can be activated to determine whether the telephone line is in use. When LCQ is driven low, one of the Line Status Indicator outputs (LSI+ or LSI-) will be driven low. This indicates that the line is not in use. If LSI+ is low, then Ring is at

a higher potential than Tip. Similarly, LSI- low indicates that Tip is at a higher potential than Ring. Note: This function requires a phone line that operates at 48V. Some PBX systems operate with a lower battery (e.g., 24 V) that will invalidate the "line-in-use" feature of the 73M9002.

Once the DAA is off hook, one of the LSI outputs will be low. Shortly after the remote party hangs up, the central office will send a signal to your telephone line. This signal will be either a momentary (800 - 1000 ms) break in the current or a momentary battery reversal. In either case, the LSI pin that had been low will momentarily be driven high.

OFF HOOK RELAY

The internal off hook relay is controlled by the TTL input \overline{OH} . When \overline{OH} is driven low, the 73M9002 goes off hook. Pulse dialing can be accomplished by toggling the \overline{OH} input. Pulse dialing digits should be sent at 10 \pm 1 Hz.

RELAY DRIVERS

There are two relay drivers in the TDK Micromodule that can each sink up to 20 mA from your external relays. One driver, REOUT1, mimics the internal off hook relay. When \overline{OH} is driven low, the REOUT1 output is low. REOUT2 mimics the internal Line/Caller Query (LCQ) relay. If REOUT1 and/or REOUT2 are used to drive relays that are switching Tip and Ring, the relays must meet FCC Part 68 requirements for isolation.

LINE STATUS INDICATOR SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-----------------------------|---|------|-----|------|------------|
| Ring Detect Range | 40 - 150 Vrms | 15.3 | 20 | 68 | Hz |
| Line-in-Use Threshold (LSI) | \overline{OH} = high, \overline{LCQ} = low Voltage across Tip/Ring or Ring/Tip | 30 | 36 | 42 | VDC |
| Loop Current Detect (LSI) | \overline{OH} = low | | 1 | 10 | mA |
| PPP Detect Threshold | \overline{OH} = low % change in loop current | | -20 | -30 | % |
| Minimum Pull-Up Resistance | Pull-up to 3 - 6 VDC | 56 | | | k Ω |
| LSI & PPP Output Low | 56 k Ω pull-up to 5 VDC, I = 10 μ A | | | 0.40 | V |
| LSI & PPP Output High | 56 k Ω pull-up to 5 VDC, I = 1 μ A | 4.60 | | | V |

TDK Systems Development Center, 136 New Mohawk Road, Nevada City, California, 95959, (916) 478-8421, FAX: (916) 478-8290
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 669-8814

TDK 73M9002

Superintendent DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

OFF HOOK & RELAY SPECIFICATIONS

| PARAMETER | CONDITIONS | MIN | NOM | MAX | UNITS |
|-------------------|------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| REOUT1 Current | \overline{OH} = low | | | 20 | mA |
| REOUT2 Current | \overline{LCQ} = low | | | 35 | mA |
| REOUT1 Output Low | I = 20 mA | | | 0.8 | V |
| REOUT2 Output Low | I = 35 mA | | | 0.8 | V |

AUDIO AMPLIFIER

The audio amplifier can drive an 8 Ω speaker with up to 400 mW of power. When both Audio Gain inputs, AG0 and AG1, are driven low, the amplifier will give the Audio Input (AUDIN) signal 24 dB gain and send it to the speaker. When either AG0 or AG1 is driven high, the amplifier sends the Receive (RXA) signal to the speaker with a gain of 13 dB to 24 dB as measured from RXA. It is recommended that you include a capacitor in series with the speaker to eliminate possible DC offset. Note: When using the audio amplifier, it is important that the traces which feed VCCD and DGND be extremely short and fat. It is essential that the total resistance of these traces not exceed 0.1 Ω .

ANALOG AND DIGITAL POWER

The Analog Ground (AGND) should be directly and solely connected to the analog ground of the data pump. This is to ensure maximum Common mode rejection between the data pump and DAA. The traces for Digital Power (VCCD) and Digital Ground (DGND) are critical when using the audio amplifier. The traces should be very wide and short and, thus, provide an impedance less than 0.1 Ω . Also, since the DAA is an analog circuit amongst digital circuits, it might be beneficial to add 0.1 μ F capacitors between VCCA and AGND and between VCCD and DGND.

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SPECIFICATIONS

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---|---|----------------|-----|----------------|
| Gain (Ref. to RXA) | A: AG0 = high, AG1 = low B: AG0 = low, AG1 = high C: AG0 = high, AG1 = high | | 13 20 24 | | dB dB dB |
| Gain (Ref. to AUDIN) | AG0 = low, AG1 = low | | 24 | | dB |
| Speaker Output | | | | 3.5 | Vpp |
| AUDIN Input Impedance | Freq. = 1000 Hz | 8 | | | k Ω |

DC ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|--|-----|----|---------------|---------|
| Off-Hook Current (VCCA + VCCD) | PD = low, \overline{OH} = low w/o speaker, w/o relays | | 16 | 25 | mA |
| On-Hook Current | PD = low, \overline{OH} = high | | 10 | 16 | mA |
| Standby Current | PD = high, \overline{OH} = high | | 2 | 5 | mA |
| TTL Input High Voltage | TTL Inputs: \overline{OH} , \overline{LCQ} , PD, AG0, AG1 | 2.0 | | VCCD + 0.3 | V |
| TTL Input Low Voltage | | | | 0.8 | V |
| TTL Input Low Current | V = 0.4V | 0.0 | | -0.4 | mA |
| TTL Input High Current | V = 2.4V | | | 100 | μ A |

TDK 73M9002 Superintendent DAA Micromodule Designer's Guide

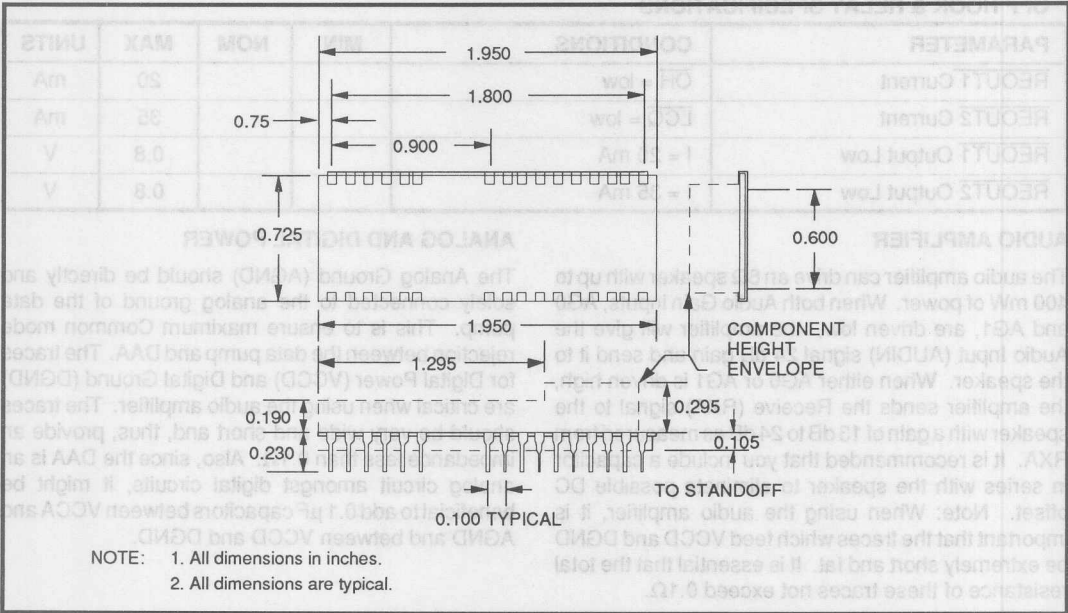


FIGURE 3: Mechanical Specifications

STANDBY MODE

The 73M9002 can be placed in Standby mode to reduce power consumption. When the Power Down (PD) pin is driven high, the DAA is shifted into Standby mode. In standby mode the on-hook current draw is reduced to 2 mA from 10 mA. When you want to go off hook to either place a call or answer one, you must first return the Micromodule to its Active mode by driving PD low. To further reduce power consumption, the 73M9002 can be completely un-powered and still have an operating ring indication circuit. (See Ring Detection).

| PARAMETER | UNIT | MAX | NOM | MIN |
|------------------------|------|-----|-----|-----|
| On-Hook Current | mA | 20 | 2 | |
| Standby Current | mA | 32 | 2 | |
| TTL Input High Voltage | V | 0.8 | | |
| TTL Input Low Voltage | V | 0.8 | | |
| TTL Input High Current | mA | 0.4 | | |
| TTL Input Low Current | mA | 100 | | |

TDK 73M9002

Superintendent DAA Micromodule

Designer's Guide

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

| | | | |
|--------|----|----|--------|
| N/C | 1 | 38 | N/C |
| N/C | 2 | 37 | N/C |
| N/C | 3 | 36 | N/C |
| N/C | 4 | 35 | N/C |
| N/C | 5 | 34 | N/C |
| RING | 6 | 33 | TIP |
| N/P | 7 | 32 | N/P |
| N/P | 8 | 31 | N/P |
| N/P | 9 | 30 | N/P |
| LSI- | 10 | 29 | LSI+ |
| LCQ | 11 | 28 | PPP |
| OH | 12 | 27 | TXA+ |
| REOUT2 | 13 | 26 | TXA- |
| AGND | 14 | 25 | RXA |
| SPK- | 15 | 24 | DGND |
| SPK+ | 16 | 23 | REOUT1 |
| VCCA | 17 | 22 | PD |
| AG0 | 18 | 21 | AG1 |
| AUDIN | 19 | 20 | VCCD |

38-Pin DIP

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| TDK 73M9002 38-pin DIP | 73M9002 | 73M9002 |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems or TDK for use of this product nor for any infringements of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patents, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems or TDK. Silicon Systems and TDK reserve the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

TDK Systems Development Center, 136 New Mohawk Road, Nevada City, California, 95959, (916) 478-8421, FAX: (916) 478-8290
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14351 Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680-7022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 669-8814

TDK 73M9002 Superintelligent DAA Micromodule Designer's Guide

Notes:

CAUTION: Use handling procedures necessary for a static sensitive component.

| | | | |
|----|-----|----|-----|
| 1 | WIC | 28 | WIC |
| 2 | WIC | 27 | WIC |
| 3 | WIC | 26 | WIC |
| 4 | WIC | 25 | WIC |
| 5 | WIC | 24 | WIC |
| 6 | WIC | 23 | WIC |
| 7 | WIC | 22 | WIC |
| 8 | WIC | 21 | WIC |
| 9 | WIC | 20 | WIC |
| 10 | WIC | 19 | WIC |
| 11 | WIC | 18 | WIC |
| 12 | WIC | 17 | WIC |
| 13 | WIC | 16 | WIC |
| 14 | WIC | 15 | WIC |
| 15 | WIC | 14 | WIC |
| 16 | WIC | 13 | WIC |
| 17 | WIC | 12 | WIC |
| 18 | WIC | 11 | WIC |
| 19 | WIC | 10 | WIC |
| 20 | WIC | 9 | WIC |
| 21 | WIC | 8 | WIC |
| 22 | WIC | 7 | WIC |
| 23 | WIC | 6 | WIC |
| 24 | WIC | 5 | WIC |
| 25 | WIC | 4 | WIC |
| 26 | WIC | 3 | WIC |
| 27 | WIC | 2 | WIC |
| 28 | WIC | 1 | WIC |

33-pin DIP

PACKAGE PIN DESIGNATIONS (Top View)

ORDERING INFORMATION

| PART DESCRIPTION | ORDER NUMBER | PACKAGE MARK |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| TDK 73M9002 33-pin DIP | 73M9002 | 73M9002 |

No responsibility is assumed by Silicon Systems or TDK for use of this product not for any infringement of patents and trademarks or other rights of third parties resulting from its use. No license is granted under any patent, patent rights or trademarks of Silicon Systems or TDK. Silicon Systems and TDK reserve the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice. Accordingly, the reader is cautioned to verify that the data sheet is current before placing orders.

TDK Systems Development Center, 133 New Market Road, Hayward, CA 94541, (415) 478-8200
Silicon Systems, Inc., 14321 Redwood Road, Tustin, CA 92680-1022, (714) 573-6000, FAX: (714) 573-6814

A

ACK - "Acknowledge" character. A transmission control character transmitted by a station as an affirmative response to the station with which a connection has been set up. An acknowledge character may also be used as an accuracy control character.

ACOUSTIC COUPLER - A type of low-speed modem interface frequently used with portable terminals. It sends and receives data using a conventional telephone handset and does not require an electrical connection to the line.

ADAPTIVE DIFFERENTIAL PULSE CODE MODULATION (ADPCM) - An encoding technique, standardized by the CCITT, that allows an analog voice conversation to be carried within a 32K bps digital channel. Three or four bits are used to describe each sample, which represents the difference between two adjacent samples. Sampling is done 8,000 times per second.

ALGORITHM - A prescribed set of well-defined rules for the solution of a problem in a finite number of steps, e.g., A full statement of an arithmetic procedure for evaluating $\sin x$ to a stated precision.

AMPLITUDE - Magnitude or size. In waveforms or signals occurring in a data transmission, a complete definition of the waveform can be made if the voltage level is known at all times. In this case, the voltage level is called the amplitude.

AMPLITUDE MODULATION - Method of modifying the amplitude of a sine wave signal in order to encode information.

ANALOG LOOPBACK - A technique used for testing transmission equipment that isolates faults to the analog signal receiving or transmitting circuitry. Basically, where a device, such as a modem, echoes back a received (test) signal that is then compared with the original signal.

ANALOG SIGNAL - Signal in the form of a continuously varying physical quantity such as voltage, which reflects variations in some quantity.

ANSI - American National Standards Institute. A highly active group affiliated with the International Standards Organization (ISO) that prepares and establishes standards for transmission codes (e.g., ASCII), protocols (e.g., ADCCP), media (tape and diskette), and high level languages (e.g., Fortran and Cobol), among other things.

ANSWERBACK - A reply message from a terminal that verifies that the correct terminal has been reached and that it is operational.

APPLICATION LAYER - The top of the seven-layer OSI model, generally regarded as offering an interface to, and largely defined by, the network user; in IBM's SNA, the end-user layer.

ASCII - American Standard Code for Information Interchange. A 7-bit binary code that defines 128 standard characters for use in data communications.

ASYNCHRONOUS - Occurring without a regular or predictable time relationship to a specified event, e.g., The transmission of characters one at a time as they are keyed. Contrast with synchronous.

ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION - Transmission in which each information character, or sometimes each word or small block, is individually synchronized, usually by the use of start and stop elements. Also called start-stop or character asynchronous transmission.

ATTENUATION - A decrease in the power of a current, voltage, or power of a received signal in transmission between points because of loss through lines, equipment or other transmission devices. Usually measured in decibels.

AUI - Attachment unit interface. The electrical interface between the traditional line electronics (transceiver) and the DTE components (ENDEC & MAC).

AUTO-ANSWER - Automatic answering; the capability of a terminal, modem, computer, or a similar device to respond to an incoming call on a dial-up telephone line, and to establish a data connection with a remote device without operator intervention.

AUTOBAUD - The generally used term for automatically detecting the bit rate of a start/stop (character asynchronous) communication format by measuring the length of the start bit of the first character transmitted. Some modems extend this to additionally determine the parity in use by stipulating that the first two characters from the DTE should be "AT." The word autobaud comes from a popular misuse of baud rate to mean the same as bit rate.

AUTODIAL - Automatic dialing; the capability of a terminal, modem, computer, or a similar device to place a call over the switched telephone network, and establish a connection without operator intervention.

AUTOMATIC DIALER, OR AUTODIALER - Device which allows the user to dial preprogrammed numbers simply by pushing a single button.

B

BANDPASS FILTER - A circuit designed to allow a single band of frequencies to pass; neither of the cut-off frequencies can be zero or infinite.

BANDWIDTH - 1) The range of frequencies that can pass over a given circuit. The bandwidth determines the rate at which information can be transmitted through the circuit. The greater the bandwidth, the more information that can be sent through the circuit in a given amount of time. 2) Difference, expressed in hertz (Hz), between the highest and lowest frequencies of a transmission channel.

10Base-T - Ethernet on unshielded twisted pair.

10Base-2 - Ethernet on thin coax.

10Base-5 - Ethernet on thick coax.

BASEBAND - Pertaining or referring to a signal in its original form and not changed by modulation. A baseband signal can be analog or digital.

BASEBAND SIGNALING - Transmission of a digital or analog signal at its original frequencies, i.e., a signal in its original form, not changed by modulation; can be an analog or digital signal.

BAUD - A measure of data rate, often misused to denote bits per second. A baud is equal to the number of discrete conditions or signal events per second. There is disagreement over the appropriate use of this word, since at speeds above 2400 bit/s, the baud rate does not always equal the data rate in bits per second.

BELLCORE - Bell Communications Research; organization established by the AT&T divestiture, representing and funded by the BOCs and RBOCs, for the purposes of establishing telephone network standards and interfaces; includes much of former Bell Labs.

BERT - Bit Error Rate Test. A test conducted by transmitting a known, pattern of bits (commonly 63, 511, or 2047 bits in length), comparing the pattern received with the pattern transmitted, and counting the number of bits received in error. Also see bit error rate. Contrast with BLERT.

BINARY CODE - Representation of quantities expressed in the base-2 number system.

BINARY SYNCHRONOUS COMMUNICATIONS - A half-duplex, character-oriented data communications protocol originated by IBM in 1964. It includes control characters and procedures for controlling the establishment of a valid connection and the transfer of data. Also called bisync and BSC. Although still enjoying widespread usage, it is being replaced by IBM's more efficient protocol, SDLC.

BIPOLAR - 1) The predominant signaling method used for digital transmission services, such as DDS and T1, in which the signal carrying the binary value successfully alternates between positive and negative polarities. Zero and one values are represented by the signal amplitude at either polarity, while no-value "spaces" are at zero amplitude. 2) A type of integrated circuit (IC or semiconductor) that uses NPN, PNP, and junction FET's as the primary active devices, as opposed to CMOS, which uses MOS FET's. See Alternate Mark Inversion.

BISDN - Broadband integrated services digital network.

BIT - The smallest unit of information used in data processing. It is a contraction of the words "binary digit."

BIT ERROR RATE (BER) - In data communications testing, the ratio between the total number of bits transmitted in a given message and the number of bits in that message received in error; a measure of the quality of a data transmission.

BITS PER SECOND (BIT/S) - Basic unit of measure for serial data transmission capacity; Kbit/s, or kilobits, for thousands of bits per second; Mbit/s, or megabit/s, for millions of bits per second, etc.

BOC - Bell Operating Company. One of 22 local telephone companies spun off from AT&T as a result of divestiture. The 22 operating companies are divided into seven regions and are held by seven RBHCs (Regional Bell Holding Company).

BROADBAND - Referring or pertaining to an analog circuit that provides more bandwidth than a voice grade telephone line, i.e., a circuit that operates at a frequency of 20 kHz or greater. Broadband channels are used for high-speed voice and data communications, radio and television broadcasting, some local area data networks, and many other services. Also called wideband.

BUFFER - A storage medium or device used for holding one or more blocks of data to compensate for a difference in rate of data flow, or time of occurrence of events, when transmitting data from one device to another.

BUS - 1) Physical transmission path or channel. Typically an electrical connection, with one or more conductors, wherein all attached devices receive all transmissions at the same time. Local network topology, such as used in Ethernet and the token bus, where all network nodes listen to all transmissions, selecting certain ones based on address identification. Involves some type of contention-control mechanism for accessing the bus transmission medium. In data communications, a network topology in which stations are arranged along a linear medium (e.g., a length of cable). 2) In computer architecture, a path over which information travels internally among various components of a system.

BYTE - Group of bits handled as a logical unit; usually 8.

C

CABLE - Assembly of one or more conductors within a protective sheath; constructed to allow the use of conductors separately or in groups.

CALL PROGRESS DETECTION (CPD) - A technique for monitoring the connection status during initiation of a telephone call by detecting presence and/or duty cycle of call progress signaling tones such as dial-tone or busy signals commonly used in the telephone network.

CALL PROGRESS TONES - Audible signals returned to the station user by the switching equipment to indicate the status of a call; dial tones and busy signals are common examples.

CAP MODEM - Carrierless amplitude phase modem.

CCITT - Comite Consultatif International de Telephonie et de Telegraphie. Telegraph and Telephone Consultative Committee. An advisory committee to the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) whose recommendations covering telephony and telegraphy have international influence among telecommunications engineers, manufacturers, and administrators.

CDPD - Cellular digital packet data 19.2 Kbit/s wireless modem.

CENTRAL OFFICE (CO) - See Exchange

CHANNEL BANK - Equipment typically used in a telephone central office that performs multiplexing of lower speed, digital channels into a higher speed composite channel. The channel bank also detects and transmits signaling information for each channel, and transmits framing information so that time slots allocated to each channel can be identified by the receiver.

CHANNEL SERVICE UNIT (CSU) - A component of customer premises equipment (CPE) used to terminate a digital circuit, such as DDS or T1 at the customer site; performs certain line-conditioning functions, ensures network compliance per FCC rules and responds to loopback commands from central office; also, ensures proper ones density in transmitted bit stream and performs bipolar violation correction.

CHANNEL, VOICE GRADE - Channel suitable for transmission of speech, analog data, or facsimile, generally with a frequency range of about 300 to 3000 Hz.

CHARACTER - Letter, figure, number, punctuation, or other symbol contained in the message. In data communication, common characters are defined by 7- or 8-bit binary codes, such as ASCII.

CHIP - A commonly used term which refers to an integrated circuit.

CIRCUIT, TWO-WIRE - A circuit formed by two conductors insulated from each other that can be used as either a one-way or two-way transmission path.

CLOCK - In logic or transmission, repetitive, precisely timed signal used to control a synchronous process.

CMOS - Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor. A type of transistor, typically used in low-power integrated circuits.

COAXIAL CABLE - Cable consisting of an outer conductor surrounding an inner conductor, with a layer of insulating material in between. Such cable can carry a much higher bandwidth than a wire pair.

CPE - Customer Premises Equipment

CROSSPOINT - 1) Switching array element in an exchange that can be mechanical or electronic. 2) Two-state semiconductor switching device having a low transmission system impedance in one state and a very high one in the other.

CROSSTALK - Interference or an unwanted signal from one transmission circuit detected on another, usually an adjacent circuit.

CYCLIC REDUNDANCY CHECK (CRC) - A powerful error detection technique. Using a polynomial, a series of two 8-bit block check characters are generated that represent the entire block of data. The block check characters are incorporated into the transmission frame, then checked at the receiving end.

Equipment that performs the functions required to connect data terminal equipment (DTE) to the data circuit. In a communications link, equipment that is either part of the network, an access-point to the network, a network node, or equipment at which a network circuit terminates; in the case of an RS-232C connection, the modem is usually regarded as DCE, while the user device is DTE, or data terminal equipment; in a CCITT X.25 connection, the network access and packet-switching node is viewed as the DCE.

DATA LINK - Any serial data communications transmission path, generally between two adjacent nodes or devices and without any intermediate switching nodes.

DATA SET - A synonym for modem used by AT&T and a few other vendors.

DATA SERVICE UNIT (DSU) - A device that replaces a modem on a Digital Data Service (DDS) line. The data service unit regenerates the digital signals for transmission over digital facilities.

DATA TERMINAL EQUIPMENT (DTE) - Equipment which is attached to a network to send or receive data, generally end-user devices, such as terminals and computers, that connect to DCE, which either generate or receive the data carried by the network; in RS-232C connections, designation as either DTE or DCE determines signaling role in handshaking; in a CCITT X.25 interface, the device or equipment that manages the interface at the user premises; see DCE.

dB - Decibel; unit for measuring relative strength of a signal parameter such as power, voltage, etc. The number of decibels is twenty times the logarithm (base 10) of the ratio of the power of two signals, or ratio of the power of one signal to a reference level.

dBm - Decibels relative to one milliwatt.

DDS - 1) Digital Data Service. A digital transmission service supporting speeds up to 56 Kbit/s. 2) Dataphone Digital Service. An AT&T leased line service offering digital transmission at speeds ranging from 2400 to 56 Kbit/s.

DECT - Digital European cordless telephone.

DJCT - Digital Japanese cordless telephone.

DELAY DISTORTION - The change in a signal from the transmitting end to the receiving end resulting from the tendency of some frequency components within a channel to take longer to be propagated than others.

scriber indicating that the switch is ready to receive dial pulses.

DIGITAL - Referring to communications procedures, techniques, and equipment whereby information is encoded as either binary "1" or "0"; the representation of information in discrete binary form, discontinuous in time, as opposed to the analog representation of information in variable, but continuous, waveforms.

DIGITAL LOOPBACK - A technique for testing the digital processing circuitry of a communications device. It may be initiated locally, or remotely via a telecommunications circuit. The device being tested will echo back a received test message, after first decoding and then re-encoding it, the results of which are compared with the original message.

DIGITAL SIGNAL - Discrete or discontinuous signal; one whose various states are discrete intervals apart.

DIP - Dual-In-Line Package. Method of packaging electronic components for mounting on printed circuit boards.

DISTORTION - The modification of the waveform or shape of a signal caused by outside interference or by imperfections of the transmission system. Most forms of distortion are the result of the characteristics of the transmission system to the different frequency components.

DOTTING, DOUBLE DOTTING, PATTERN - The term "dotting" was coined by Bell to describe a data pattern consisting of alternate marks and spaces. The CCITT uses the full description of "alternating binary ones and zeros" on first needing this idea in a recommendation, but then abbreviate this to "reversals." By extrapolation, "double dotting" has come into use to refer to the data pattern termed "S1" which is used in V.22bis to indicate 2400 bit/s capability. The full description is "unscrambled double dibit 00 and 11 at 1200 bit/s for 100 ± 3 ms."

DS-1 - Digital Signal level 1; telephony term describing a digital transmission format in which 24 voice channels are multiplexed into one 1.544 Mbit/s (U.S.) T1 digital channel.

DS-3 - Digital Signal level 3; telephony term describing the 44.736 Mbit/s digital signal carried on a T3 facility.

DSP RTOS - Digital signal processing real time operating system.

DTMF - Dualtone Multifrequency (DTMF) - Basis for operation of most push button telephone sets. An in-band signalling technique in which a matrix combination of two frequencies, each from a group of four, are used to transmit numerical address information; it encodes 16 possible combinations of tone pairs using two groups of four tones each. The two groups of four frequencies are 697 Hz, 770 Hz, 852 Hz, and 941 Hz, and 1209 Hz, 1336 Hz, 1477 Hz, and 1633 Hz. DTMF is used primarily for call initiation in GSTN telephone applications.

E

ECHO - The distortion created when a transmitted signal is reflected back to the originating station.

ECHO CANCELLER - A device used to reduce or eliminate echo. It operates by placing a signal that is equal and opposite to the echo signal on the return transmission path.

ECHO SUPPRESSOR - A mechanism used to suppress echoes on long-distance analog connections. The device suppresses the transmission path opposite in direction to the one being used. This feature, although necessary for voice transmission, often interferes with data transmission.

EIA - Electronic Industries Association

EIA INTERFACE, EIA232D, RS 232C - The logical, electrical and physical characteristics of the connection between a DTE and a modem is set out in EIA specification 232D. Previously this has been known as RS232C. The logical characteristics are essentially similar to those specified in CCITT recommendation V.24 and the electrical characteristics to those in V.28.

ELECTROMAGNETIC INTERFERENCE (EMI) - Radiation leakage outside a transmission medium that results mainly from the use of high-frequency wave energy and signal modulation. EMI can be reduced by appropriate shielding.

EMI - See Electromagnetic Interference.

ENDEC - Encoder/Decoder. The 10 Mbit/s Manchester encoder and decoder circuit for Ethernet signalling.

ENVELOPE DELAY - An analog line impairment involving a variation of signal delay with frequency across the data channel bandwidth.

EQUALIZATION - The introduction of components to an analog circuit by a modem to compensate for the attenuation (signal loss) variation and delay distortion with frequency (attenuation equalization) and propaga-

tion time variations with frequency (delay equalization). Generally, the higher the transmission rate, the greater the need for equalization.

ERROR - In data communications, any unwanted change in the original contents of a transmission.

ERROR BURST - A concentration of errors within a short period of time as compared with the average incidence of errors. Retransmission is the normal correction procedure in the event of an error burst.

ERROR CONTROL - A process of handling errors, which includes the detection and in some cases, the correction of errors.

ETHERNET - A media-access specification for local area networks, developed by IEEE and known as the IEEE 802.3 spec.

EXCHANGE - Assembly of equipment in a communications system that controls the connection of incoming and outgoing lines, and includes the necessary signalling and supervisory functions. Different exchanges, or switches, can be costed to perform different functions, e.g., Local exchange, trunk exchange, etc. See Class of Exchange. Also known as Central Office (U.S. Term).

EXCHANGE, PRIVATE AUTOMATIC BRANCH (PABX) - Private automatic telephone exchange that provides for the switching of calls internally and to and from the public telephone network.

EXCHANGE, PRIVATE BRANCH (PBX) - Private, manually operated telephone exchange that provides private telephone service to an organization and that allows calls to be transmitted to or from the public telephone network.

EXCHANGE AREA - Area containing subscribers served by a local exchange.

F

FILTER - Circuit designed to transmit signals of frequencies within one or more frequency bands and to attenuate signals of other frequencies.

FIRMWARE - Permanent or semi-permanent control coding implemented at a micro-instruction level for an application program, instruction set, operating routine, or similar user-oriented function.

FLOW CONTROL - The use of buffering and other mechanisms, such as controls that turn a device on and off, to prevent data loss during transmission.

FOUR-WIRE CIRCUIT OR CHANNEL - A circuit containing two pairs of wire (or their logical equivalent) for simultaneous (i.e., full-duplex) two-way transmission. Contrast with two-wire channel.

FRAME - 1) A group of bits sent serially over a communications channel; generally a logical transmission unit sent between data-link-layer entities that contain its own control information for addressing and error checking. 2) A piece of equipment in a common carrier office where physical cross connections are made between circuits.

FRAMING - Control procedure used with multiplexed digital channels such as T1 carriers, whereby bits are inserted so the receiver can identify the time slots allocated to each subchannel. Framing bits can also carry alarm signals indicating specific alarm conditions.

FREQUENCY - Rate at which an event occurs, measured in hertz, kilohertz, megahertz, etc.

FREQUENCY BANDS - Frequency bands are defined arbitrarily as follows:

| Range (MHz) | Name |
|----------------|--|
| 0.03-0.3 | Low frequency (LF) |
| 0.3-3.0 | Medium frequency (MF) |
| 3-30 | High frequency (HF) |
| 30-300 | Very High frequency (VHF) |
| 300-3000 | Ultra high frequency (UHF) |
| 3000-30,000 | Super high frequency (SHF) (micro wave) |
| 30,000-300,000 | Extremely high frequency (EHF)(millimeterwave) |

FSK - Frequency Shift Keying. A method of modulation that uses two different frequencies, usually phase continuous, to distinguish between a mark (digital 1) and a space (digital 0) when transmitting on an analog line. Used in modems operating at 1200 bit/s or slower.

FULL-DUPLEX - Pertaining to the capability to send and receive simultaneously.

G

GAIN - Denotes an increase in signal power in transmission from one point to another, usually expressed in dB.

GUARD TONE - In CCITT recommendations V.22 and V.22bis, guard tones may optionally be transmitted along with the data signal from the answering modem. A single frequency of either 1800 or 550 Hz is used and the data signal power must be reduced to keep the overall energy level the same as for transmission without guard tone. The purpose of the guard tone is to

prevent the high-band data signal from interfering with the operation of billing apparatus in certain countries.

GSTN - General Switched Telephone Network

H

HALF-DUPLEX - Pertaining to the capability to send and receive but not simultaneously.

HANDSHAKE - An exchange of control sequences between two locations to set up the correct parameters for transmission.

HDLC - High-level Data Link Control. Bit-oriented communication protocol developed by the ISO (International Standards Organization).

HARMONIC DISTORTION - A waveform distortion, usually caused by the nonlinear frequency response of a transmission.

HERTZ (Hz) - A measure of electromagnetic frequency; one hertz is equal to one cycle per second.

HF - High Frequency.

HIGH FREQUENCY (HF) - Portion of the electromagnetic spectrum, typically used in short-wave radio applications. Frequencies in the 3 to 30 MHz range.

Hz - See Hertz.

I

IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers.

IEEE 802.11 - Wireless local area network IEEE standard.

INITIALIZE - To set counters, switches, addresses, or contents of storage to zero or other starting values at the beginning of, or at prescribed points in, the operation of a computer routine.

INTERFACE - A hardware and/or software link between two devices. The interface defines all signal characteristics and other specifications for physical interconnection of the devices.

INTEROFFICE TRUNK - Direct trunk between local central offices (Class 5 offices), or between Class 2, 3, or 4 offices; also called intertoll trunk.

IS54 - Interim standard 54 - half analog/digital, second-generation North American standard.

ISO - International Organization for Standardization.

ITU - International Telecommunications Union. The parent organization of the CCITT.

J

JITTER - Slight movement of a transmission signal in time or phase that can introduce errors and loss of synchronization for high-speed synchronous communications. See Phase jitter.

K

KEY PULSING (KP) - Manual method of sending numerical and other signals by the operation of nonlocking pushkeys. Also called Key Sending.

KEY SERVICE UNIT (KSU) - Main operating unit of a key telephone system.

KEY TELEPHONE SYSTEM (KTS) - When more than one telephone line per set is required, pushbutton or key telephone systems offer flexibility and a wide variety of uses, e.g., pickup of several exchange lines, PABX station lines, private lines, and intercommunicating lines. Features of the system include pickup and holding intercommunications, visual and audible signals, cutoff, exclusion, and signaling.

KP - Key Pulse (signaling unlocking signal). See Key Pulsing.

kHz - Kilohertz, kilocycles per second.

KTU - Key Telephone Unit. See Key Service Unit.

L

LEASED LINE - A line rented exclusively to one customer for voice or data communications; dedicated circuit, typically supplied by the telephone company or transmission authority, that permanently connects two or more user locations and is for the sole use of the subscriber. Such circuits are generally voice grade in capacity and in range of frequencies supported, are typically analog, are used for voice or data, can be point-to-point, or multipoint, and can be enhanced with line conditioning. Also called private line, tie line, or dedicated facility.

LED - Light-Emitting Diode.

LIGHT-EMITTING DIODE (LED) - Semiconductor junction diode that emits radiant energy and is used as a light source for fiber optic communications, particularly for short-haul links.

LIMITED-DISTANCE MODEM - A short-haul modem or line driver that operates over a limited distance. Some limited-distance modems operate at higher speeds than modems that are designed for use over analog telephone facilities, since line conditions can be better controlled.

LINE HIT - A transient disturbance causing a detectable error on a communications line.

LINE-LOADING - The process of installing loading coils in series with each conductor on a transmission line. Usually 88 milliHenry coils installed at 6,000 foot intervals.

LINK - 1) A physical circuit between two points. 2) A logical circuit between two users of a packet switched (or other) network permitting them to communicate (although different physical paths may be used).

LINK LAYER - The logical entity in the OSI model concerned with transmission of data between adjacent network nodes. It is the second layer processing in the OSI model, between the physical and the network layers.

LOADING COILS - An inductance coil installed at regular intervals along a transmission line. Used to improve the quality of voice grade circuits.

LOCAL EXCHANGE - Exchange in which subscribers' lines terminate. The exchange has access to other exchanges and to national trunk networks. Also called local central office, end office.

LOCAL LOOP - The part of a communications circuit between the subscriber's equipment and the equipment in the local exchange.

LOCAL TRUNK - Trunks between local exchanges.

LOSS (TRANSMISSION) - Decrease in energy of signal power in transmission along a circuit due to the resistance or impedance of the circuit or equipment.

M

MAC - Media access controller - a protocol controller IC that implements the 802.3 CSMA/CO protocol.

MARK - The signal (communications channel state) corresponding to a binary one. The marking condition exists when current flows (current-loop channel) or when the voltage is more negative than -3 volts (EIA RS-232 channel).

MATRIX - In switch technology, that portion of the switch architecture where input leads and output leads meet, any pair of which may be connected to establish a through circuit. Also called switching matrix.

MAU - Media attachment unit - a transceiver that connects to the AUI port on an Ethernet interface card.

Mbit/s - Megabits per second.

MEGAHERTZ (MHz) - A unit of frequency equal to one million cycles per second.

MF - 1) Medium Frequency. 2) Multifrequency. See Dualtone Multifrequency Signaling (DTMF).

MODEM - A contraction of modulate and demodulate; a conversion device installed in pairs at each end of an analog communications line. The modem at the transmitting end modulates digital signals received locally from a computer or terminal; the modem at the receiving end demodulates the incoming signal, converting it back to its original (i.e., digital) format, and passes it to the destination business machine.

MODULATION - The application of information onto a carrier signal by varying one or more of the signal's basic characteristics (frequency, amplitude, or phase); the conversion of a signal from its original (e.g., digital) format to analog format.

MODULATION, PULSE CODE (PCM) - Digital transmission technique that involves sampling of an analog information signal at regular time intervals and coding the measured amplitude value into a series of binary values, which are transmitted by modulation of a pulsed, or intermittent, carrier. A common method of speech digitizing using 8-bit code words, or samples, and a sampling rate of 8 kHz.

ms - Millisecond. One-thousandth of a second.

MULTIPLEXER - Device that enables more than one signal to be sent simultaneously over one physical channel.

MULTIPLEXING - Division of a transmission facility into two or more channels either by splitting the frequency band transmitted by the channel into narrower bands, each of which is used to constitute a distinct channel (frequency-division multiplex), or by allotting this common channel to several different information channels, one at a time (time-division multiplexing).

MUX - See Multiplexer.

N

NAK - "Negative acknowledge" character. A transmission control character that indicates a block of data was received incorrectly.

NOISE - Undesirable energy in a communications path, which interferes with the reception or processing of a signal.

ns - Nanosecond; also nsec. One-billionth of a second.

O

OFF HOOK - By analogy with the normal household telephone, a modem is off-hook when it is using the telephone line to make a call. This is similar to raising the telephone handset, or taking it off the hook. Going off-hook is also known as "seizing the line."

ON-HOOK - By analogy with the normal household telephone, a modem is on-hook when it is not using the telephone line. As with a telephone where the handset is on the hook, the line may be used by other equipment to make a call. Going on-hook is also known as "dropping the line."

OSI - Open Systems Interconnection. Referring to the reference model, OSI is a logical structure for network operations standardized within the ISO; a seven-layer network architecture being used for the definition of network protocol standards to enable any OSI-compatible computer or device to communicate with any other OSI-compliant computer or device for a meaningful exchange of information.

OVERFLOW - Excess traffic on a particular route, which is offered to another (alternate) route.

P

PABX - Private Automatic Branch Exchange. See Exchange, Private Automatic Branch (PABX).

PACKET - A group of binary digits including data and call control signals that is switched as a composite whole. The data, call control signals, and error control information are arranged in a specified format.

PBX - Private Branch Exchange. See Exchange, Private Branch.

PCMCIA - Personal Computer Memory Card International Association. Type 1: 3.3 mm thick
Type 2: 5.0 mm thick

PHASE JITTER - In telephony, the measurement, in degrees out of phase, that an analog signal deviates from the referenced phase of the main data-carrying signal. Often caused by alternating current components in a telecommunications network; or: a random distortion of signal lengths caused by the rapid fluctuation of the frequency of the transmitted signal. Phase jitter interferes with interpretation of information by changing the timing.

PHASE MODULATION - One of three ways of modifying a sine wave signal to make it carry information. The sine wave or "carrier" has its phase changed in accordance with the information to be transmitted.

PROPAGATION DELAY - The period between the time when a signal is placed on a circuit and when it is recognized and acknowledged at the other end. Propagation delay is of great importance in satellite channels because of the great distances involved.

PROTOCOL - A set of procedures for establishing and controlling communications. Examples include BSC, SDLC, X.25, V.42, V.42bis, MNP, V.22bis handshake, etc.

PSK - Phase Shift Keying. A method of modulation that uses the differences in phase angle between two symbols to encode information. A reference oscillator determines the phase angle change of the incoming signal, which in turn determines which bit or dibit is being transmitted. DPSK (Differential Phase Shift Keying) is a variation of PSK which changes the phase relative to the previous phase.

PULSE CODE MODULATION (PCM) - A method of transmitting information by varying the characteristics of a sequence of pulses, in terms of amplitude, duration, phase, or number. Used to convert an analog signal into a digital bit stream for transmission.

R

REGENERATIVE REPEATER - 1) Repeater utilized in telegraph applications to retune and retransmit the received signal impulses and restore them to their original strength. These repeaters are speed- and code-sensitive and are intended for use with standard telegraph speeds and codes. 2) Repeater used in PCM or digital circuits which detects, retimes, and reconstructs the bits transmitted.

REGENERATOR - Equipment that takes a digital signal that has been distorted by transmission and produces from it a new signal in which the shape, timing, and amplitude of the pulses are that same as those of the original before distortion.

REPEATER - 1) In analog transmission, equipment that receives a pulse train, amplifies it and retimes it for retransmission. 2) In digital transmission, equipment that receives a pulse train, reconstructs it, retimes it, and often then amplifies the signal for retransmission. 3) In fiber optics, a device that decodes a low-power light signal, converts it to electrical energy, and then retransmits it via an LED or laser-generating light source. See also Regenerative Repeater.

REVERSE CHANNEL - A simultaneous low speed data path in the reverse direction over a half-duplex facility. Normally, it is used for positive/negative acknowledgements of previously received data blocks.

RINGER EQUIVALENCE NUMBER - This is a number that the FCC assigns to approved telecom equipment that measures how much load it places on the network during ringing. In the U.S.A., you can connect telephones, modems, FAX machines etc. In parallel to the same telephone line only as long as the sum of their ringer equivalence numbers is less than five. Most countries have a similar regulating system in force, although the methods used to arrive at the number vary widely.

RINGING SIGNAL - Any AC or DC signal transmitted over a line or trunk for the purpose of alerting a party at the distant end of an incoming call. The signal can operate a visual or sound-producing device.

RINGING TONE - Tone received by the calling telephone indicating that the called telephone is being rung. Also called Ringback.

RSSI - Receive signal strength indicator (i.e., go to gain control in AM signal).

S

SCRAMBLER/DESCRAMBLER - A scrambler function uses a defined method for modifying a data stream, in order to make the altered data stream appear random. A descrambler reverses the effect of the scrambler using the previously defined method to recover the original data stream. Most often used for data encryption, or to avoid transmitting repetitive data patterns that can adversely affect data recovery in modems and other data transmission equipment.

SDLC - Synchronous Data Link Control. IBM bit oriented protocol providing for half-duplex transmission; associated with IBM's System Network Architecture (SNA).

SHIELDED PAIR - Two insulated wires in a cable wrapped with metallic braid or foil to prevent interference and provide noise-free transmission.

SIGNAL-TO-NOISE RATIO - The relative power of a signal as compared to the power of noise on a line. As the ratio decreases, it becomes more difficult to distinguish between information and interference.

SIMPLEX - Pertaining to the capability to move in one direction only. Contrast with half-duplex and full-duplex.

SIGNALING - Process by which a caller or equipment on the transmitting end of a line informs a particular party or equipment at the receiving end that a message is to be communicated.

SMART IF - Microcontroller bus interface for program control of RF components.

SONET - Synchronous optical network.

SPACE - Opposite signal condition to a "mark." The signal (communications channel state) corresponding to a binary zero. In an EIA RS-232 channel, the spacing condition exists when the voltage is more positive than +3 volts.

SS - Spread spectrum.

ST - Start (signal to indicate end of outpulsing).

STS1 - 51.84 Mbit/s.

START-STOP (SIGNALING) - Signaling in which each group of code elements corresponding to a character is preceded by a start signal that serves to prepare the receiving mechanism for the reception and registration of character, and is followed by a stop signal that serves to bring the receiving mechanism to rest in preparation for the reception of the next character. Also known as asynchronous transmission.

STOP-BIT - In asynchronous transmission, the quiescent state following the transmission of a character; usually 1-, or 2-bit times long.

STOP ELEMENT - Last bit of a character in asynchronous serial transmission, used to ensure recognition of the next start element.

SUBSCRIBER LINE - Telephone line connecting the exchange to the subscriber's station. Also called (U.S. term) access line and subscriber loop.

SW56 - Switched 56 Kbit/s digital transmission.

SYNCHRONOUS - Having a constant time interval between successive bits, characters, or events. Synchronous transmission doesn't use non-information bits (such as the start and stop bits in asynchronous transmission) to identify the beginning and end of characters,

and thus is faster and more efficient than asynchronous transmission. The timing is achieved by transmitting sync characters prior to data or by extracting timing information from the carrier or reference.

SYNCHRONOUS NETWORK - Network in which all the communications links are synchronized to a common clock.

SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION - Transmission process where the information and control characters are sent at regular, clocked intervals so that the sending and receiving terminals are operating continuously in step with each other.

T

T-CARRIER - A time-division multiplexed, digital transmission facility, operating at an aggregate data rate of 1.544 Mbit/s and above. T-carrier is a PCM system using 64 Kbit/s for a voice channel.

T1 - A digital facility used to transmit a DS-1 formatted digital signal at 1.544 Mbit/s; the equivalent of 24 voice channels.

T1C/T2/T3/T4 - Digital carrier facilities used to transmit signals at 3.152M, 6.312M, 44.736M, 274.176 Mbit/s, respectively.

T3 - A digital carrier facility used to transmit a DS-3 formatted digital carrier signal at 44.736 Mbit/s; the equivalent of 672 voice channels.

TACS - Total access communications system. (U.K. analog cellular standard).

TDMA - Time division multiple access.

TCVCXO - Temperature-compensated, voltage - controlled crystal oscillator.

TOUCH-TONE - An AT&T trademark for dualtone multifrequency signaling equipment. Use of tones simplifies the switching system design and greatly expands the potential for adding features to telephone systems. It also speeds up the dialing operation for a person making a call.

TRANSCIVER - Device that can transmit and receive traffic.

TRUNK - Transmission paths that are used to interconnect exchanges in the main telephone network, two switching centers, or a switching center and a distribution point, such as a telephone exchange line that terminates in a PABX network.

TTL - Transistor-Transistor Logic. Digital logic family having common electrical characteristics.

TURNAROUND TIME - The time required to reverse the direction of transmission, e.g.; to change from receive mode to transmit mode in order to acknowledge on a half-duplex line. When individual blocks are acknowledged, as is required in certain protocols (e.g., IBM BSC) the turnaround time has a major effect on throughput, particularly if the propagation delay is lengthy, such as on a satellite channel.

TWO-WIRE CIRCUIT - Circuit formed of two conductors insulated from each other, providing a send and return path. Signals may pass in one or both directions.

V

VIDEOTEX - An interactive data communications application designed to allow unsophisticated users to converse with remote databases, enter data for transactions, and retrieve textual and graphics information for display on subscriber television sets or low-cost terminals.

VSLI - Very Large Scale Integration.

V SERIES RECOMMENDATIONS - (CCITT V.xx Standards)

Also see Voiceband Modem Standards chart on page 9-12.

V.1 - Definitions of key terms for binary symbol notation, such as binary 0 = space, binary 1 = mark.

V.2 (1) - Specification of power levels for data transmission over telephone line.

V.4 - Definition of the order of bit transmission, the use of a parity bit, and the use of start/stop bits for asynchronous transmission.

V.5 - Specification of data-signaling rates (bit/s) for synchronous transmission in the switched telephone network.

V.6 - Specification of data signaling rates (bit/s) for synchronous transmission on leased telephone circuits.

V.7 - Definitions of other key terms used in the V-series recommendations.

V.10 - Description of an unbalanced physical level interchange circuit (unbalanced means one active wire between transmitter and receiver with ground providing the return).

V.11 - Description of a balanced physical level interchange circuit (balanced means two wires between the transmitter and receiver with both wires' signals constant with respect to Earth).

V.15 - Description of use of acoustic couplers for data transmission.

V.16 - Description of the transmission of ECG (electrocardiogram) signals on the telephone channel.

V.19 - Description of one-way parallel transmission modems using push-button telephone sets.

V.20 - Description of one-way parallel transmission modems, excluding push-button telephone sets.

V.22 - Operating at 1.2 Kbit/s, encodes two consecutive bit (dibits); the dibits are encoded as a change relative to the previous signal element.

V.22bis - Operating at 2.4 Kbit/s, encodes four consecutive bits (quadbits); the first two bits are encoded relative to the quadrant of the previous signal element, the last two bits are associated with the point in new quadrant.

V.24 - Definition of the interchange circuit pins between DTEs (data terminal equipment) and DCEs (data circuit-terminating equipment).

V.25 - (2) - Specifications for automatic-answering equipment.

V.25bis - (2) - Specifications for automatic-answering equipment.

V.28 - Description of unbalanced interchange circuits operating below 20 Kbit/s.

V.29 - Operating at 9.6 Kbit/s, encodes four consecutive bits (quadbits); the first bit determines the amplitude, the last three bits use the encoding scheme of V.27.

V.29 - Operating at 4.8 Kbit/s, encodes two consecutive bits (dibits); amplitude is constant and phase changes are the same as V.26.

V.31 - Description of low-speed interchange circuits (up to 75 Bit/s).

V.31bis - Description of low-speed interchange circuits (up to 1.2 Kbit/s).

V.32 - Operating at 9.6 Kbit/s, encodes four consecutive bits (quadbits); the bits are mapped to a QAM signal.

V.32 - Operating at 9.6 Kbit/s with Trellis-coded modulation (TCM), encodes four consecutive bits, two of which are used to generate a fifth bit; the bits are mapped to a QAM signal.

V.32 - Operating at 4.8 Kbit/s, encodes two consecutive bits (dibits), which are mapped to a QAM signal.

V.42 - Defines a method of error control.

V.42bis - Defines a method of data compression.

Note: In the United States, EIA RS-496 specifies these measurements and RS-366 specifies these procedures.

VOICE-GRADE CHANNEL - a channel with a frequency range from 300 to 3000 Hz and suitable for the transmission of speech, data, or facsimile.

W

WORD - A group of bits handled as a logical unit; usually 16.

Voiceband Modem Standards

| CCITT Standard | Data Rate (Bit/s) | Full- or Half-Duplex | Channel Separation | Carrier Frequency (Hz) | Modulation Method | Modulation Rate (Baud) | Bits Encoded | Synchronous or Asynchronous | Back Channel | GSTN | Leased Lines | Equalization | Scrambler |
|---|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|--------------|--|--------------|------|----------------------------------|----------------|-----------|
| V.21 | 300 | Full | Frequency Division | 1080, & 1750 | Frequency Shift | 300 | 1:1 | Either | ND | Yes | No | ND | ND |
| V.22 | 1200 | Full | Frequency Division | 1200, & 2400 | Phase Shift | 600 | 2:1 | Either | ND | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Fixed | Yes |
| V.22 | 600 | Full | Frequency Division | 1200, & 2400 | Phase Shift | 600 | 1:1 | Either | ND | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Fixed | Yes |
| V.22bis | 2400 | Full | Frequency Division | 1200, & 2400 | Quadrature-Amplitude Modulation | 600 | 4:1 | Either | ND | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Fixed/Adaptive | Yes |
| V.23 | 600 (1) | Half | N/A | 1300, & 1700 | Frequency Modulation | 600 | N/A | Either | Yes | Yes | No | ND | ND |
| V.23 | 1200 (1) | Half | N/A | 1300, & 2100 | Frequency Modulation | 1200 | N/A | Either | Yes | Yes | No | ND | ND |
| V.25 | 2400 | Full | 4-Wire | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1200 | 2:1 | Synchronous | Yes | No | Point-to-Point Multipoint 4-Wire | ND | ND |
| V.26bis | 2400 | Half | N/A | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1200 | 2:1 | Synchronous | Yes | Yes | No | Fixed | ND |
| V.26bis | 1200 | Half | N/A | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1200 | 1:1 | Synchronous | Yes | Yes | No | Fixed | ND |
| V.26ter | 2400 | Either | Echo Cancellation | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1200 | 2:1 | Either | ND | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Either | Yes |
| V.26ter | 1200 | Either | Echo Cancellation | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1200 | 1:1 | Either | ND | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Either | Yes |
| V.27 | 4800 | Either | ND (3) | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1600 | 3:1 | Synchronous | Yes | No | Yes (3) | Manual | Yes |
| V.27bis | 4800 | Either | 4-Wire (4) | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1600 | 3:1 | Synchronous | Yes | No | 2-Wire, 4-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.27bis | 2400 | Either | 4-Wire (4) | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1200 | 2:1 | Synchronous | Yes | No | 2-Wire, 4-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.27ter | 4800 | Half | None | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1800 | 3:1 | Synchronous | Yes | Yes | No | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.27ter | 2400 | Half | None | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1200 | 2:1 | Synchronous | Yes | Yes | No | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.29 | 9600 | Either | 4-Wire | 1700 | Quadrature-Amplitude Modulation | 2400 | 4:1 | Synchronous | No | No | Point-to-Point 4-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.29 | 7200 | Either | 4-Wire | 1700 | Phase Shift (5) | 2400 | 3:1 | Synchronous | ND | No | Point-to-Point 4-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.29 | 4800 | Either | 4-Wire | 1700 | Phase Shift (5) | 2400 | 2:1 | Synchronous | ND | No | Point-to-Point 4-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.32 | 9600 | Full | Echo Cancellation | 1800 | Quadrature-Amplitude Modulation | 2400 | 4:1 | Synchronous | ND | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.32bis | 14400 | Full (proposed) | Echo Cancellation | 1800 | Quadrature-Amplitude Modulation | 2400 | 4:1 | Synchronous | ND | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.32 | 9600 | Full | Echo Cancellation | 1800 | Trellis-Coded Modulation | 2400 | 5:1 | Synchronous | ND | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.32 | 4800 | Full | Echo Cancellation | 1800 | Quadrature-Amplitude Modulation | 2400 | 2:1 | Synchronous | ND | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| V.33 | 14400 | Half | | | | | | Synchronous | ND | Yes | | Adaptive | Yes |
| Bell (U.S.) Standard | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 103 | 300 | Full | Frequency Division | 2225 & 1270(m) 2025 & 1070(s) | Frequency Shift | 300 | 1:1 | Either | No | Yes | No | Fixed | No |
| 201 | 2400 | Half | None | 1800 | Phase Shift | 1200 | 2:1 | Synchronous | No | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| 202 | 1200 | Half | None | 1200 & 2200 | FSK | 1200 | 1:1 | Either | Yes | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Fixed | No |
| 208 | 4800 | Half | None | 1800 | Quadrature-Amplitude Modulation | 1600 | 3:1 | Synchronous | No | Yes | Point-to-Point 2-Wire | Adaptive | Yes |
| 212 | 1200 | Full | Frequency Division | 1200 & 2400 | Phase Shift | 600 | 2:1 | Either | No | Yes | No | Fixed | Yes |
| 1. Bit/s not used in specification; rate stated in baud. Low speed 75 bit/s back channel for asymmetric full-duplex | | | | | | | | 4. For half-duplex, 2-wire used | | | | | |
| 2. Half-duplex may still use a backward channel | | | | | | | | 5. Amplitude is constant on a relative basis | | | | | |
| 3. Makes no mention of 4-wire (must be assumed) | | | | | | | | ND = Not defined (i.e., not specified in the recommendation) | | | | | |

